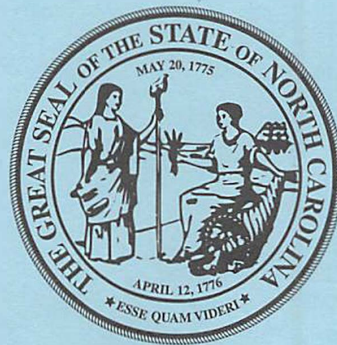


North Carolina State Building Code



ACCESSIBILITY CODE 2002 EDITION

North Carolina Building Code Council
and
North Carolina Department of Insurance
Post Office Box 26387
Raleigh, North Carolina 27611

**NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE COUNCIL
JUNE 1, 2001**

Chairman

Barry Gardner - 03
(General Contractor)
Shelco, Inc.
P.O. Box 25747
Winston-Salem, NC 27114
(336) 760-5005

Vice Chairman

Jack F. Neel, PE - 04
(Municipal Representative)
1007 Colonial Drive
Albemarle, NC. 28001
(704) 982-8434

Dan Tingen - 05
(Home Builder)
Tingen Construction Co.
8411 Garvey Drive, #101
Raleigh, NC
(919) 875-2161

William N. Bullock - 01
(Mechanical Contractor)
Environmental Air Systems
P. O. Box 13006
Greensboro, NC 27415
(336) 273-1975

Gregory F. Mulholland, PE - 01
(Electrical Engineer)
Calloway Johnson Moore &
West
119 Brookstown Ave./Ste. 100
Winston-Salem, NC 27101
(336) 714-2020

Dennis R. Norris, PE- 01
(Electrical Contractor)
Starr Electric Company, Inc.
P. O. Box 9298
Greensboro, NC 27429
(336) 275-0246

Dan Murray, PE - 06
(State Agency)
Division of State Construction
300 N. Wilmington St.
Raleigh, NC 27601
(919) 733-7962

Thomas P. Turner, FAIA - 04
(Architect)
ADEP, PA
3225 Wickersham Road
Charlotte, NC 28204
(704) 375-6038

Bradley C. Lail - 05
(Public Representative)
548 North Center Street
Hickory, NC 28601
(828) 322-3510

Aubrey Smith, PE - 03
(Building Inspector)
100 East 1st Street/Ste 337
Winston-Salem, N.C. 27101
(336) 727-2084

Gary T. York - 04
(County Gov't. Rep)
P. O. Box 48
Mount Airy, NC 27030
(336) 789-5561

Thomas L. Avery, PE- 03
(Structural Engineer)
Structural Systems, Inc.
P.O. Box 1563
Wilmington, NC 28402
(910) 763-7311

Robert C. Pierce - 01
(Gas Industry)
P. O. Box 33068
Charlotte, NC 28223
(704) 553-0102

Marshall Knight, Jr. - 04
(Coastal Residential
Contractor)
751 Body Road
Hertford, NC 27944
(252) 264-3201

J. Abert Bass, Jr., PE - 03
(Mechanical Engineer)
6425 Chapman Court
Raleigh, NC 27612
(919) 782-4689

Richard Strickland - 03
(Fire Services)
P. O. Drawer 1180
Rocky Mount, NC 27802-1180
(252) 972-1112

John Hitch, AIA - 04
(Architect)
The Smith Sinnett Associates
4601 Lake Boone Trail
Raleigh, NC 27607
(919) 781-8582

**NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT
OF INSURANCE**

By Statute the Commissioner of Insurance has general supervision of the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Code and the Engineering Division serves as the staff for the Building Code Council. Officials of the Insurance Department are:

JIM LONG
Commissioner

TIM BRADLEY
Senior Deputy Commissioner

WANDA EDWARDS, PE
Chief Code Council Engineer
Secretary, Building Code Council

GROVER L. SAWYER, JR., PE
Deputy Commissioner
and Chief Engineer

LAUREL W. WRIGHT
Chief
Building Accessibility Section

**COMMITTEES OF THE COUNCIL
June, 2001**

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION

Aubrey Smith, PE - Chairman
Barry Gardner
John Hitch, AIA
Dan Tingen
Thomas P. Turner, FAIA
Gary T. York
Bradley C. Lail
Dan Murray, PE

ELECTRICAL

Greg Mulholland, PE - Chairman
J. Albert Bass, Jr., PE
Dennis R. Norris, PE
William Bullock

ADMINISTRATION

Barry Gardner - Chairman
J. Albert Bass, Jr., PE
Dan Tingen
Aubrey Smith, PE
Thomas L. Avery, PE
Greg Mulholland, PE
Richard Strickland
Jack F. Neel, PE

RESIDENTIAL

Dan Tingen - Chairman
Jack F. Neel, PE
Marshal Knight, Jr.
Aubrey Smith, PE
Dennis R. Norris, PE
Thomas L. Avery, PE
Thomas P. Turner, FAIA
Dan Murray, PE

MECHANICAL

J. Albert Bass, Jr. PE-Chairman
Robert C. Pierce
Richard Strickland
Greg Mulholland, PE
Dennis R. Norris, PE
William N. Bullock
Marshall Knight, Jr.

ENERGY

Greg Mulholland, PE - Chairman
Dennis R. Norris, PE
J. Albert Bass, Jr., PE
William N. Bullock
Thomas P. Turner, FAIA

STRUCTURAL

Thomas L. Avery, PE - Chairman
John Hitch, AIA
Dan Murray, PE

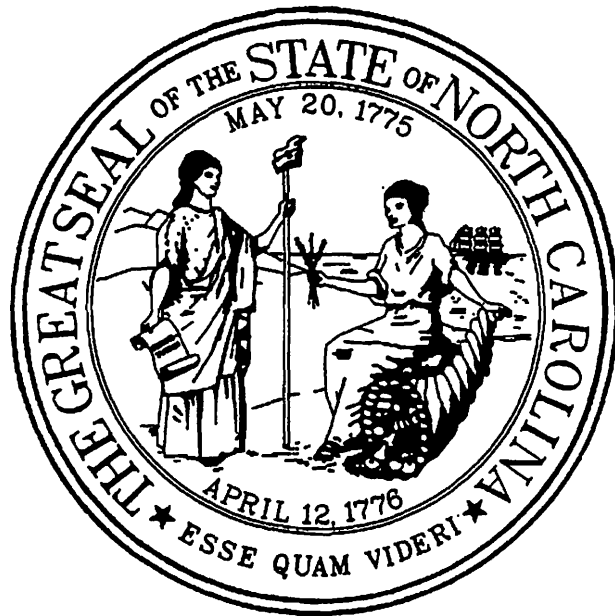
FIRE PREVENTION

Richard Strickland-Chairman
Robert C. Pierce
Bradley C. Lail
Gary T. York
Jack Neel, PE

NOTES FOR CODE USERS:

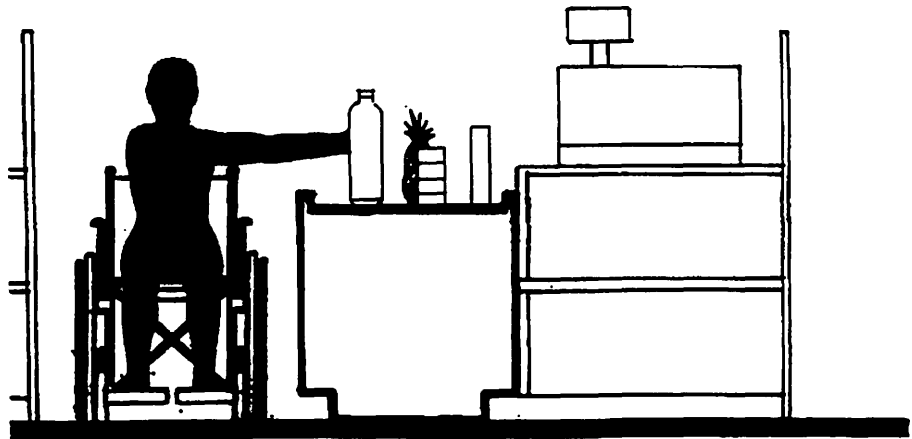
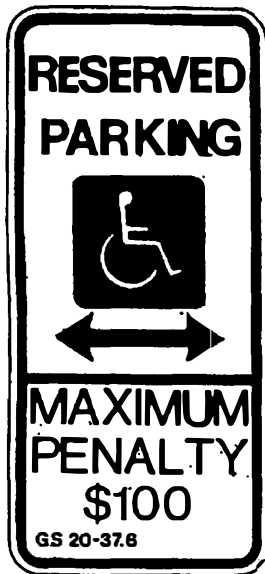
- 1) PARAGRAPHS/SECTION OF THIS CODE PREFACED BY AN ASTERISK (*) AND THE HIGHLIGHTED TEXT THEREIN DENOTE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT (ADA AND ADAAG) AND THIS CODE [FOR EXAMPLE: [*3.2.1 The clear width shall be **48 inches (1220 mm)** minimum.]
- 2) THE ANNOTATIONS* WITHIN THE MARGIN OF EACH TEXT PAGE ARE PROVIDED FOR CONVENIENCE ONLY. THEY ARE **NOT** NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS NOR ARE THEY TO BE INTERPRETED AS SUCH. (* THE SEVERAL "VOL. I-C" ANNOTATIONS DENOTE THE PREVIOUS EDITION OF THIS CODE [1989-1999], NOT THIS CURRENT CODE. THE SEVERAL "FR" ANNOTATIONS DENOTE THE *FEDERAL REGISTER*, THE PUBLICATION DATE, AND THE PAGE NUMBER [E.G., **FR 7/26/91 At 35581** IS: *FEDERAL REGISTER, JULY 26, 1991, PAGE 35581*].)
- 3) CODE USERS ARE CAUTIONED NOT TO RELY SOLELY ON THE ILLUSTRATIONS; SOME ILLUSTRATIONS ARE NOT ACCOMPANIED BY THE FULL TEXT; OR, CERTAIN REQUIREMENTS ARE NOT ILLUSTRATED AND ARE FOUND IN THE TEXT ONLY.
- 4) ALL REFERENCES IN THIS CODE TO "VOLUME I" SHALL MEAN THE NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE.

NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE



VOLUME I-C

MAKING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES ACCESSIBLE TO
AND USABLE BY PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES



1999 EDITION
NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE COUNCIL
AND
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF INSURANCE
POST OFFICE BOX 26387
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA 27611

GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA

168A-6. DISCRIMINATION IN PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION

IT IS A DISCRIMINATORY PRACTICE FOR A PERSON TO DENY A QUALIFIED HANDICAPPED PERSON THE FULL AND EQUAL ENJOYMENT OF THE GOODS, SERVICES, FACILITIES, PRIVILEGES, ADVANTAGES, AND ACCOMMODATIONS OF A PLACE OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION ON THE BASIS OF A HANDICAPPING CONDITION. **IN THE AREA OF STRUCTURAL MODIFICATIONS, THIS SECTION MAY BE SATISFIED BY COMPLIANCE WITH THE NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE.** (Emphasis Added.)

(1985, c.571, s.1.)

143-138. NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE

Police Power Authorizes Establishment Of Standards For Buildings.—IT IS WITHIN THE POLICE POWER OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY AND OF A CITY, WHEN AUTHORIZED, TO ESTABLISH MINIMUM STANDARDS, MATERIALS, DESIGNS, AND CONSTRUCTION OF BUILDINGS FOR THE SAFETY OF THE OCCUPANTS, THEIR NEIGHBORS, AND THE PUBLIC AT LARGE. *State v. Walker*, 265 N.C. 482, 114 S.E. 2d 419 (1965); *Walker v. City of Charlotte*, 276 N.C. 166, 171 S.E. 2d 431 (1970).

FOR THE PURPOSE OF PROTECTING LIFE, HEALTH, SAFETY AND WELFARE, THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY HAS POWER TO PROMULGATE RULES, FIX MINIMUM STANDARDS, PRESCRIBE MATERIALS AND DESIGNS FOR BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES SO LONG AS THEY ARE NOT ARBITRARY, CAPRICIOUS OR UNREASONABLE AND SO LONG AS THEY TEND TO PROMOTE HEALTH, SAFETY AND WELFARE. IN THESE MATTERS, PROPERTY RIGHTS MUST YIELD TO THE PROPER EXERCISE OF THE POLICE POWER. *Walker v. City of Charlotte*, 276 N.C. 166, 171 S.E. 2d 431 (1970).

Building Code Has Force Of Law.—THE 1936 NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE HAS THE FORCE OF LAW. *In Re O'Neal*, 24 N.C. 714, 92 S.E. 2d 189 (1956); *Lindstrom v. Chesnutt*, 15 N.C. App. 15, 189 S.E. 2d 749 (1972).

BY VIRTUE OF [143-138(f)], ON JULY 13, 1957, THE NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE OF 1953 HAD THE FORCE OF LAW. *Drum v. Bisaner*, 252 N.C. 305, 113 S.E. 2d 560 (1960).

A Violation Of The Building Code Is Negligence Per Se.—*Lindstrom v. Chesnutt*, 15 N.C. App. 15, 189 S.E. 2d 749, cert. denied, 281 N.C. 757, 191 S.E. 2d 361 (1972).

**NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE
VOLUME I-C**

**MAKING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES
ACCESSIBLE TO AND USABLE BY
PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES**

**THE NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF INSURANCE
COMMISSIONER JAMES E. LONG**

**EDITED AND ILLUSTRATED BY
JEFFREY S. KANNER, ARCHITECT
CHIEF
BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY SECTION
ENGINEERING DIVISION**

NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE COUNCIL

September 16, 1998

CHAIRMAN

BARRY W. GARDNER-03

(General Contractor)
Shelco, Inc.
P.O. Box 25747
Winston-Salem, N.C. 27114-5747
(910) 760-5005

VICE-CHAIRMAN:

JACK F. NEEL, P.E.-04

(Municipal Representative)
1007 Colonial Drive
Albemarle, N.C. 28001
(704) 982-8434

MEMBERS

MARK B. TROLLINGER-99

(Home Builder)
200 Worth Street
Asheboro, N.C. 27203
(910) 625-6033

STEPHEN B. PEAY-99

(Public Representative)
P.O. Box 8000
Clayton, N.C. 27520
(919) 550-7250

AUBREY SMITH, P.E.-03

(Building Inspector)
100 Liberty Walk/NCNB Plaza
Winston-Salem, N.C. 27101
(910) 727-2084

J. ALBERT BASS, JR., P.E.-03

(Mechanical Engineer)
Bass Nixon & Kennedy, Inc.
7416 Chapel Hill Road
Raleigh, N.C. 27607
(919) 851-4422

LARRY C. HAYES-98

(County Representative)
151 Hayes Lane
Mocksville, N.C. 27028
(704) 284-4471

GREGORY F. MULLHOLLAND, P.E.-01

(Electrical Engineer)
Joseph M. Gamewell Associates, Inc.
P.O. Box 2507
Salisbury, N.C. 28145-2507
(704) 636-0215

JOHN HITCH, AIA-04

(Architect)
4601 Lake Boone Tr.
Raleigh, N.C. 27607
(919) 781-8582

THOMAS AVERY, P.E.-03

(Structural Engineer)
P.O. Box 1563
Wilmington, N.C. 28402
(910) 763-7311

DENNIS R. NORRIS, P.E.-01

(Electrical Contractor)
P.O. Box 9298
Greensboro, N.C. 27804
(910) 275-0246

RICHARD STRICKLAND-03

(Fire Services)
District Chief Fire Prevention
2621 Sunset Avenue
Rocky Mount, N.C. 27804
(919) 972-1378

J. HARMON BYRD, P.E.-99

(State Agency)
N.C. Department of Administration
300 N. Wilmington Street
Raleigh, N.C. 27601

ROBERT C. PIERCE-01

(Gas Industry)
Piedmont Natural Gas Company
P.O. Box 33068
Charlotte, N.C. 28233
(704) 364-3126

WILLIAM N. BULLOCK-01

(Mechanical Contractor)
P.O. Box 13006
Greensboro, NC 27415
(336) 273-1975

**NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF INSURANCE**

By Statute The Commissioner Of Insurance Has General Supervision Of The Administration And Enforcement Of The North Carolina State Building Code And The Engineering Division Serves As The Staff For The Building Code Council. Officials Of The Department Of Insurance Are:

JAMES E. LONG
Commissioner

TIMOTHY L. BRADLEY
Senior Deputy Commissioner
JEFFREY S. KANNER, ARCHITECT
Chief
Building Accessibility Section

GROVER L. SAWYER, JR., P.E.
Deputy Commissioner & Chief Engineer
ELAINE R. BROWN, P.E.
Chief Code Council Engineer
Secretary To The Council

COMMITTEES OF THE COUNCIL
September 16, 1998

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION
Aubrey Smith, P.E.-Chairman
Mark Trollinger
Barry Gardner
Stephen Peay
John Hitch, AIA

STRUCTURAL
Harmon Byrd, P.E.-Chairman
Thomas Avery, P.E.

RESIDENTIAL
Mark Trollinger, Chairman
Jack Neel, P.E.
Thomas Avery, P.E.
Aubrey Smith, P.E.
Harmon Byrd, P.E.
Dennis Norris, P.E.

ELECTRICAL
Gregory Mulholland, P.E.-Chairman
J. Albert Bass, P.E.
Dennis R. Norris, P.E.

FIRE PREVENTION
Richard Strickland-Chairman
Stephen Peay
William N. Bullock
Jack Neel, P.E.
Robert Pierce

MECHANICAL
J. Albert Bass, P.E.-Chairman
Robert Pierce
Richard Strickland
Gregory Mulholland, P.E.
Dennis Norris, P.E.
William N. Bullock

ADMINISTRATION
Barry Gardner-Chairman
J. Albert Bass, P.E.
Mark Trollinger
Harmon Byrd, P.E.
Gregory Mulholland, P.E.
Aubrey Smith, P.E.

**NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE
VOLUME I-C**

**MAKING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES
ACCESSIBLE TO AND USABLE BY
PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES**

**PREVIOUS EDITIONS OF THIS CODE
ADOPTED BY THE
NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE COUNCIL
IN ACCORDANCE WITH AN ACT OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY
OF 1957, CHAPTER 1138:**

**CHAPTER (11X)
ADOPTED: MARCH 13, 1973
EFFECTIVE: SEPTEMBER 1, 1973**

**VOLUME I-C (PREVIOUS EDITION)
ADOPTED: SEPTEMBER 13, 1988
EFFECTIVE: APRIL 1, 1989**

**VOLUME I-C
ADOPTED: SEPTEMBER 16, 1998
EFFECTIVE: JULY 1, 1999**

**PUBLISHED BY
THE NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE COUNCIL
AND
THE NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF INSURANCE
POST OFFICE BOX 26387
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA 27611
TELEPHONE: (919) 733-3901
FACSIMILE: (919) 733-9171**

NOTES FOR CODE USERS:

- 1) PARAGRAPHS/SECTIONS OF THIS CODE PREFACED BY AN ASTERISK (*) AND THE HIGHLIGHTED TEXT THEREIN DENOTE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT (ADA AND ADAAG) AND THIS CODE [FOR EXAMPLE: [*3.2.1 The clear width shall be **48 inches (1220 mm)** minimum.]
- 2) THE ANNOTATIONS* WITHIN THE MARGIN OF EACH TEXT PAGE ARE PROVIDED FOR CONVENIENCE ONLY. THEY ARE NOT NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS NOR ARE THEY TO BE INTERPRETED AS SUCH. (* THE SEVERAL "VOL. I-C" ANNOTATIONS DENOTE THE PREVIOUS EDITION OF THIS CODE [1989-1999], NOT THIS CURRENT CODE. THE SEVERAL "FR" ANNOTATIONS DENOTE THE *FEDERAL REGISTER*, THE PUBLICATION DATE, AND THE PAGE NUMBER [E.G., **FR 7/26/91 At 35581** IS: *FEDERAL REGISTER, JULY 26, 1991, PAGE 35581*].)
- 3) CODE USERS ARE CAUTIONED NOT TO RELY SOLELY ON THE ILLUSTRATIONS; SOME ILLUSTRATIONS ARE NOT ACCOMPANIED BY THE FULL TEXT; OR, CERTAIN REQUIREMENTS ARE NOT ILLUSTRATED AND ARE FOUND IN THE TEXT ONLY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART I: TITLE, SCOPE AND DEFINITIONS

CHAPTER 1 TITLE AND SCOPE

1.1	Title	1
1.2	Scope	1
1.3	New Construction, Additions And Firewalls	6
1.4	Places Of Public Accommodation Or Commercial Facilities Located In Private Residences	14

CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS

2.1	Words Not Defined	17
2.2	Definitions	17
2.3	General Terminology	21

PART II: NEW CONSTRUCTION

CHAPTER 3 SITE ACCESS

3.1	General Requirements	23
3.2	Width Of Exterior Accessible Route	23
3.3	Walks	23

CHAPTER 4 PARKING LOTS, CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS AND PASSENGER LOADING ZONES

4.1	General Requirements	33
4.2	Minimum Number Of Spaces	33
4.3	Special Applications	34
4.4	Sizes Of Accessible Parking Spaces And Overhead Clearance	35
4.5	Parking Decks	35
4.6	Location And Travel Distance	35
4.7	Curb Cuts And Curb Ramps	49
4.8	Corner (Diagonal) Curb Cuts	50
4.9	Detectable Warnings	50
4.10	Islands	62
4.11	Passenger Loading Zones	62

CHAPTER 5 RAMPS

5.1	General Requirements	69
5.2	Slopes, Clearances, Interior Accessible Route, And Passing Space	69
5.3	Maximum Rise And Landings	69
5.4	Handrails	70
5.5	Edge Protection	71

CHAPTER 6 ENTRANCES AND MEANS OF EGRESS

6.1	Definitions And General Requirements	91
6.2	Public Entrances/Building Access	91
6.3	Accessible Means of Egress	100

CHAPTER 7 DOOR, DOORWAYS AND DOOR HARDWARE

7.1	General Requirements	121
7.2	Clear Passage Through Door	121
7.3	Clear Floor Space At Doors	125
7.4	Glass Doors	125
7.5	Vision Panels	126
7.6	Activating Pressure	135
7.7	Door Closers	135
7.8	Door Thresholds	135
7.9	Door Hardware	135
7.10	Doors to Hazardous Areas	136

CHAPTER 8 STAIRS AND HANDRAILS

8.1	General Requirements	141
8.2	Stair Construction	141
8.3	Handrails	141
8.4	Outdoor Conditions	142

CHAPTER 9 GROUND AND FLOOR SURFACES

9.1	General Requirements	149
9.2	Carpet	149

CHAPTER 10 PROTRUDING OBJECTS

10.1	General Requirements	151
10.2	Clear Headroom	151
10.3	Protruding Or Projecting Objects	151
10.4	Free-Standing Objects Located On, Or Between, Posts Or Pylons	151
10.5	Clear Width And Clear Floor Areas/Spaces	152

**CHAPTER 11 TOILET ROOMS, PLUMBING
FIXTURES, GRAB BARS AND
ACCESSORIES**

11.1	General Requirements	.161
11.2	Access To Toilets	.161
11.3	Floor Clearances	.161
11.4	Accessible Toilet Stalls	.167
11.5	Grab Bars	.168
11.6	Toilet Fixtures	.169
11.7	Toilet Accessories	.179
11.8	Individual Accessible Toilets	.186
11.9	Unisex/Disabled Restrooms	.189
11.10	Portable Toilets Or Bathing Units	.192
11.11	Accessible Sinks	.192

**CHAPTER 12 BATHROOMS, BATHING
FACILITIES AND SHOWER ROOMS**

12.1	General Requirements	.195
12.2	Transfer-Type Shower	.196
12.3	Roll-In Showers	.199
12.4	Accessible Bathtubs	.206

**CHAPTER 13 DRINKING FOUNTAINS
AND WATERCOOLERS**

13.1	General Requirements	.215
13.2	Clear Floor Space And Clearances	.216

CHAPTER 14 TELEPHONES

14.1	Accessible (Volume Control) Telephones	.223
14.2	Access To Volume Control And Text Telephones	.224
14.3	Text Telephones (TDD)	.233

**CHAPTER 15 ELEVATORS AND
PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS**

15.1	General Requirements	.245
15.2	Buildings Requiring Elevators	.249
15.3	Automatic Operation	.261
15.4	Elevator Cab Dimensions	.261
15.5	Hall Call Buttons, Hall Lanterns And Entrance Markings	.261
15.6	Door Protective And Reopening Device	.262
15.7	Door Signal And Timing	.268
15.8	Elevator Lobby And Car Floor Surfaces	.268
15.9	Elevator Cab Controls	.268
15.10	Emergency Communications	.269
15.11	Platform Wheelchair Lifts	.275

**CHAPTER 16 CONTROLS AND OPERATING
MECHANISMS AND AUTOMATIC
TELLER MACHINES**

16.1	General Requirements	.279
16.2	Mounting Heights	.279
16.3	Exceptions	.280
16.4	Automated Teller Machines	.280

CHAPTER 17 ALARMS

17.1	General Requirements	.289
17.2	Audible Indicating Appliances	.289
17.3	Visual Indicating Appliance	.291
17.4	Exemption	.292

CHAPTER 18 SIGNAGE

18.1	General Requirements	.295
18.2	Character Proportion/Height	.296
18.3	Raised And Braille Letters And Numerals, Pictorial Symbols	.296
18.4	Mounting Location And Height	.301

CHAPTER 19 DETECTABLE WARNINGS

19.1	Gen'l. Requirements (<i>Reserved</i>)	.305
19.2	Detectable Warning Characteristics	.305

CHAPTER 20 STORAGE

20.1	General Requirements	.307
20.2	Clear Floor Space	.307
20.3	Reach Ranges	.307
20.4	Hardware	.308
20.5	Exemption	.308

**CHAPTER 21 FIXED OR BUILT-IN
SEATING AND TABLES**

21.1	General Requirements	.313
21.2	Clear Floor Space	.313
21.3	Clearances And Height Of Tables	.313

CHAPTER 22 ASSEMBLY SEATING

22.1	General Requirements	.319
22.2	Placement And Location Of Wheelchair Seating	.321
22.3	Clear Floor Space	.325
22.4	Assistive Listening Systems	.325

CHAPTER 23 RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS

23.1 General Requirements331
23.2 Counter And Bars Where
Food/Drink Is Served/Consumed . .331
23.3 Dining Areas334
23.4 Food Service Lines334
23.5 Tableware, Condiment Areas,
And Other Dispensers338
23.6 Vending Machines338
23.7 Raised Platforms338

CHAPTER 24 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES

24.1 General Requirements341
24.2 Bus Stops And Terminals,
Passenger Pads And Shelters,
Route Signage..341
24.3 Passenger Transportation
Facilities And Stations345
24.4 Airports369

CHAPTER 25 LIBRARIES

25.1 General Requirements373
25.2 Book Stacks373
25.3 Card Catalogs And Magazine
Displays373
25.4 Check-Out Areas374
25.5 Traffic Control374

CHAPTER 26 BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE

26.1 General Requirements381
26.2 Sales/Service/Information
Counters381
26.3 Check-Out Aisles384

CHAPTER 27 DRESSING/FITTING ROOMS

.389

CHAPTER 28 MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES

28.1 General Requirements393
28.2 Number Of Bedrooms/Toilets394
28.3 Entrances394
28.4 Patient Bedrooms/Toilet Rooms . .394
28.5 Bedroom Floor Area/Space395
28.6 Patient Toilet Rooms395

CHAPTER 29 TRANSIENT LODGING

29.1 General Requirements399
29.2 Integration.399
29.3 Classes Of Sleeping
Accommodations399
29.4 No. Of Rooms For Persons With
Mobility Impairments404
29.5 No. Of Rooms For Persons With
Hearing Impairments409
29.6 Homeless Shelters, Halfway Houses,
Transient Group Homes416

CHAPTER 30 MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS

30.1 Scope421
30.2 Definitions426
30.3 Integration And Distribution430
30.4 Accessible Dwelling Units431
30.5 Fully Accessible Dwelling Units447
30.6 Laundry Equipment459

CHAPTER 31 COURTHOUSES AND COURTROOMS, PRISONS, JAILS, DETENTION CENTERS, AND LEGISLATIVE/REGULATORY FACILITIES

31.1 General Requirements461
31.2 Definitions461
31.3 Courthouses, Courtrooms, And
Courthouse Holding Facilities462
31.4 Prisons, Jails, Detention Centers,
Correction Facilities, And Police
Station Holding Facilities469
31.5 Legislative And Regulatory
Facilities481

CHAPTER 32 CHILDREN'S ENVIRONMENTS

32.1 General Requirements485
32.2 Technical Requirements485

PART III: APPENDICES FOR ALTERATIONS

CHAPTER 33 SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

33.1 Scope505
33.2 Existing Accessibility506
33.3 Maintenance And Safety507
33.4 Removal Of Barriers507

CHAPTER 34 DEFINITIONS, AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION AND PATH OF TRAVEL, AND DISPROPORTIONALITY

34.1 Definitions509

34.2 Path Of Travel And Disproportionality510

CHAPTER 35 SITE ACCESS

35.1 Width Of An Exterior Accessible Route521

35.2 Passing Space521

CHAPTER 36 PARKING LOTS

36.1 Scope523

36.2 Minimum Number Of Spaces523

36.3 Technical Infeasibility: Effect Of Zoning Ordinances/Land Use Laws526

36.4 Curb Cuts/Curb Ramps526

CHAPTER 37 RAMPS

37.1 Slopes, Width Of Accessible Route, And Passing Space529

CHAPTER 38 ENTRANCES AND MEANS OF EGRESS

38.1 Number Of Accessible Entrances .531

38.2 Accessible Mean Of Egress531

CHAPTER 39 TOILET ROOMS AND BATHING FACILITIES

39.1 General Requirement537

39.2 Fixture Count Reduction537

39.3 Accessible Toilet Stalls537

39.4 Unisex Toilet And/Or Bathing Facilities538

CHAPTER 40 TELEPHONES

40.1 Accessible (Volume Control) Telephones541

40.2 Text Telephones (TDD)541

CHAPTER 41 ELEVATORS AND PLATFORM LIFTS

41.1 General Requirements543

41.2 Elevator, Path Of Travel, And Disproportionality.543

41.3 Elevator Cab Dimensions.544

41.4 Door Reopening Device547

41.5 Platform Wheelchair Lifts547

CHAPTER 42 ASSEMBLY SEATING

42.1 General Requirements551

42.2 Seating for Persons Using Wheelchairs551

42.3 Accessible Aisle Seating551

42.4 Access to Performing Areas552

42.5 Integration, Dispersal, And Companion Seating552

42.6 Means Of Egress552

CHAPTER 43 RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS557

CHAPTER 44 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES

44.1 Disproportionality, Path Of Travel, And Area Of Primary Function559

44.2 Bus Passenger Pads And Route Identification Signs560

44.3 Passenger Transportation Facilities And Stations560

CHAPTER 45 BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE

45.1 Check Out Aisles (5,000 GSF Or Greater)565

45.2 Check-Out Aisles (Less Than 5,000 GSF)565

CHAPTER 46 DRESSING ROOMS567

CHAPTER 47 MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES

47.1 Accessible Parking569

47.2 Alterations Of, Or Additions To, Departments, Wings, Or Areas569

47.3 Alteration Or Addition Of An Individual Patient Room570

CHAPTER 48 TRANSIENT LODGING

48.1 Guest Rooms Accessible To Mobility Impaired Persons573

48.2 Sleeping Accommodations For Hearing Impaired Persons574

48.3 Homeless Shelters, Halfway Houses, Transient Group Homes577

CHAPTER 49 MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS

49.1 Privately-Owned Housing579

49.2 Publicly-Owned Housing579

49.3 Distribution579

49.4 Parking582

CHAPTER 50 JURY BOXES, WITNESS STANDS AND PRISON/JAIL HOUSING CELLS OR ROOMS

50.1 Access To Jury Boxes And Witness Stands585
50.2 Facilities Having Existing Cells Or Rooms Accessible To Persons With Mobility Impairments585

PART IV: APPENDIX FOR HISTORIC PRESERVATION

CHAPTER 51 HISTORIC PRESERVATION

51.1 Scope589
51.2 Definition589
51.3 General Requirements589
51.4 Historic Preservation: Minimum Requirements591
51.5 Historic Displays599

PART V: EXCERPTS FROM N.C. GENERAL STATUTES AND AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT

NORTH CAROLINA GENERAL STATUTES:

Appendix A Motor Vehicles: Definitions601
Appendix B Motor Vehicles: Definitions603
Appendix C Parking Privileges For Handicapped Drivers And Passengers605
Appendix D State Fair Housing Act.608
Appendix E Taxation (Corporate Owners)609
Appendix F Taxation (Resident Owners)611
Appendix G Definition Of Visually Handicapped Person613
Appendix H Uniform Signs And Other Traffic Control Devices615
Appendix J N.C. Building Code617
Appendix K Handicapped Persons.619
Appendix L Handicapped Persons Protection Act.621

AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT:

Appendix M Title — Employment623
Appendix N Title II—Public Services625
Appendix P State And Local Government Services: Program Accessibility627
Appendix Q Title III—Public Accommodations And Services Operated by Private Entities629
Appendix R Removal Of Barriers631
Appendix S State Immunity633
Appendix T Technical Assistance635
Appendix U (I.R.S.) Tax Credits And Deductions637

INDEX639

PART I:

**TITLE, SCOPE
AND DEFINITIONS**

CHAPTER 1 TITLE AND SCOPE

1.1 TITLE

Requirements in the following Chapters and Sections shall constitute and be known and may be cited as the "North Carolina State Building Code, Volume I-C: Making Building and Facilities Accessible To, And Usable By, Persons With Disabilities". (The document may also be known by its short title: "Volume I-C".)

1.2 SCOPE

1.2.1 The requirements of this Code shall apply to the construction, alteration, repair, replacement, equipment, appliances, fixtures and fittings in all buildings and facilities as identified by this Section.

1.2.2 The Code shall apply to the following occupancy classifications: (the examples listed in conjunction with each occupancy classification are illustrative and shall not be considered exhaustive):

* 1.2.3 ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCIES—GROUP A

Auditoriums; **Churches**; Dance Halls; Grandstands; Gymnasiums; Libraries; Motion Picture Theaters; Passenger Depots; Restaurants; Skating Rinks; Stadia; **Synagogues**; Theaters.

1.2.4 BUSINESS OCCUPANCY-GROUP B

Banks; Clinics-Outpatient; Educational Occupancies above the 12th grade; Fire and Police Stations; Motor Vehicle Showrooms; Professional Services (Architects, Attorneys, Dentists, Engineers, Physicians, etc.).

1.2.5 EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY-GROUP E

Buildings, facilities or structures used for educational purposes by six or more persons at any one time through the 12th grade; day care for more than five children older than 2 years of age.

1.2.6 FACTORY INDUSTRIAL OCCUPANCY-GROUP F

HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY-GROUP H

STORAGE OCCUPANCY-GROUP S

UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS-GROUP U

1.2.6.1 GROUP F

The use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for assembling, disassembling, fabricating, finishing, manufacturing, packaging, repair or processing operations that are not Classified as a Group H-Hazardous Occupancy. (See the list of examples in Volume I-Section 306).

1.2.6.2 GROUP H

The use of a building or structure or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing, generation, or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess of those found in Volume I-Tables 307.7(1) and 307.7(2).

1.2.6.3 GROUP S

The use of a building or structure, or portion thereof, for storage that is not classified as a Group H Occupancy.

* **1.2.6.3.1** *In coastal high hazard areas, if a primary Storage-Group S Occupancy is accessible and an attached secondary Mercantile-Group M Occupancy that:*

ADAAG 4.1.1(5):
Structurally
Impracticable

(1) *Has a first occupiable floor equal to, or less than, ten percent (10%) of the total Storage Occupancy floor area; and*

Items (1) And (2)
By Council

(2) *Is required to have a 10 feet (3 m) M.S.L. minimum base elevation; and*

(3) *Has all areas, spaces, rooms and elements accessible in compliance with this Code,*

FR 7/26/91 At
35578-----"Those
Portions That Can
Be Made Access.
Should Be Made
Accessible."

then the secondary Mercantile-Group M Occupancy is not required to have an accessible route from finished grade to the first occupiable level of the secondary occupancy.

1.2.6.4 GROUP U

Buildings and structures of an accessory character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy, including, but not limited to, greenhouses and live stock shelters (except for farm buildings outside of municipal jurisdictions).

1.2.7 INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY-GROUP I

1.2.7.1 GROUP I-1

A building or part thereof housing more than 16 persons, on a 24 hour basis, who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment that provides personal care services, including, but not limited to, residential board and care facilities, assisted living facilities, half-way houses, group homes, congregate care facilities, social rehabilitation facilities, alcohol and drug centers, and convalescent facilities.

1.2.7.2 GROUP I-2

Hospitals; Nursing Homes (both intermediate care facilities and skilled nursing facilities); Mental Hospitals; and Detoxification Facilities.

1.2.7.3 GROUP I-3

Prisons; Jails; Reformatories; Detention Centers; Correctional Centers; Prerelease Centers.

1.2.7.4 GROUP I-4

Custodial care for persons of any age for less than 24 hours; adult and child day care.

1.2.8 MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY-GROUP M

Buildings and structures or a portion thereof, for the display and sale of merchandise, and which involves stocks of goods, wares or merchandise incidental to such purposes and accessible to the public, including, but not limited to, Department Stores, Drug Stores, Markets, Motor Vehicle Service Stations, Retail/Wholesale Stores; Shopping Center and Shopping Malls.

1.2.9 RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY-GROUP R

1.2.9.1 GROUP R-1 (TRANSIENT)

Residential occupancies where the occupants are primarily transient in nature (less than 30 days) including: Bed and Breakfast Establishments; Boarding Houses (Transient); Motels; Hostels; Hotels.

1.2.9.1.1 Any privately-owned transient lodging establishment located within a building that contains not more than five (5) rooms for rent or hire and that is occupied by the proprietor of such establishment as the residence of such proprietor shall be exempt from the requirements of this Code.

Vol. I,
Chap. 2 (1994);
Title III, 301(7)(A);
GS41A-6(a)(1)
Sim.

1.2.9.2 GROUP R-2

Residential occupancies where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature including: Apartment Houses; Boarding Houses (not transient); Convents; Condominiums; Dormitories; Fraternities and Sororities; Monasteries; etc.

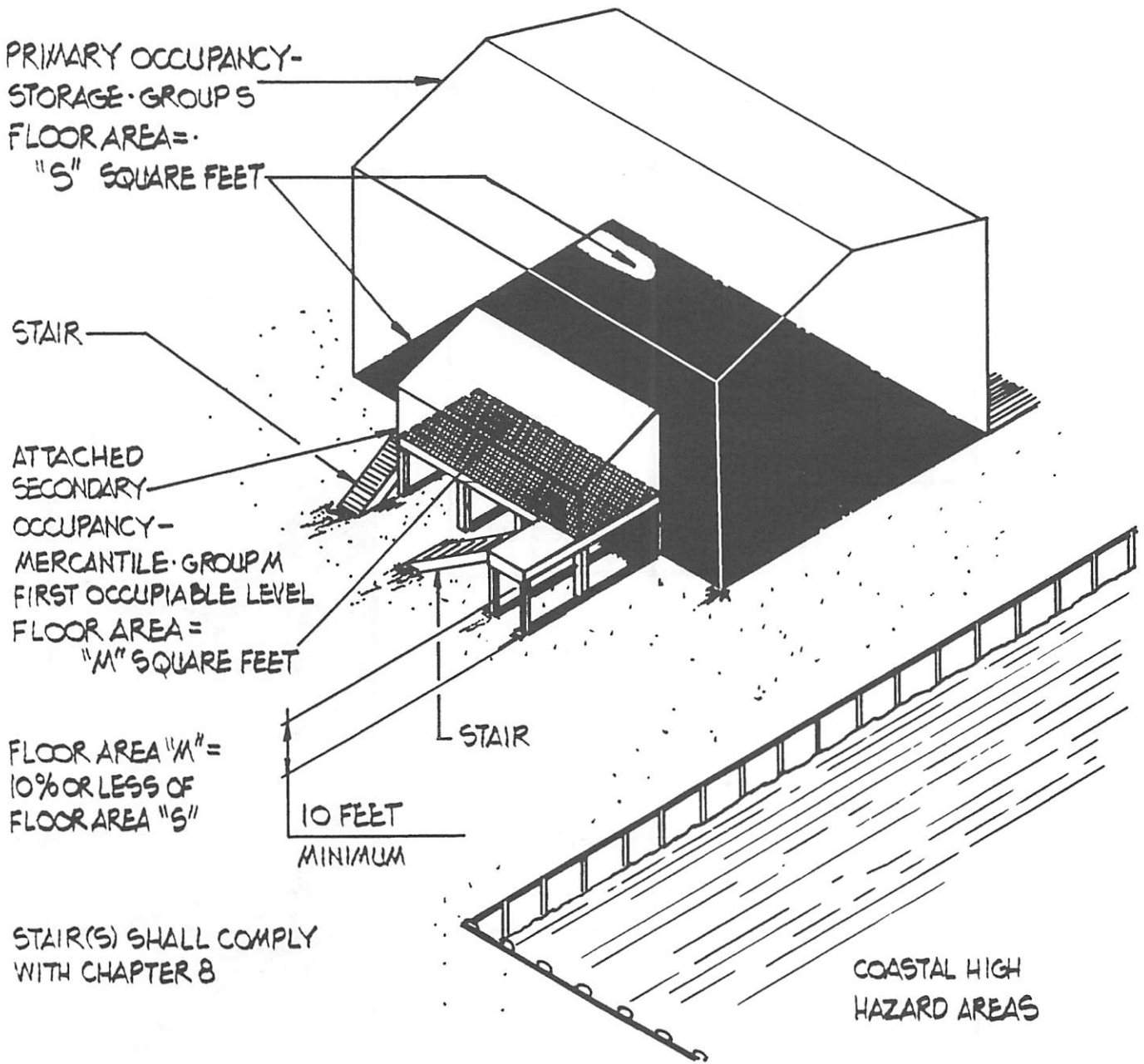
1.2.9.3 GROUP R-3

Single-story townhouses; adult and child care facilities that provide accommodations for five or fewer persons of any age for less than 24 hours.

1.2.9.4 GROUP R-4

Residential occupancies shall include buildings arranged by occupancy as Residential Care/Assisted Living Facilities, or adult and child care facilities that provide accommodations in a residence occupied as a home by the caregiver for persons of any age for less than 24 hours, including more than five but not more than 16 occupants, excluding staff.

1.2.9.5 A residence serving a specific employee position (see 30.1.3).



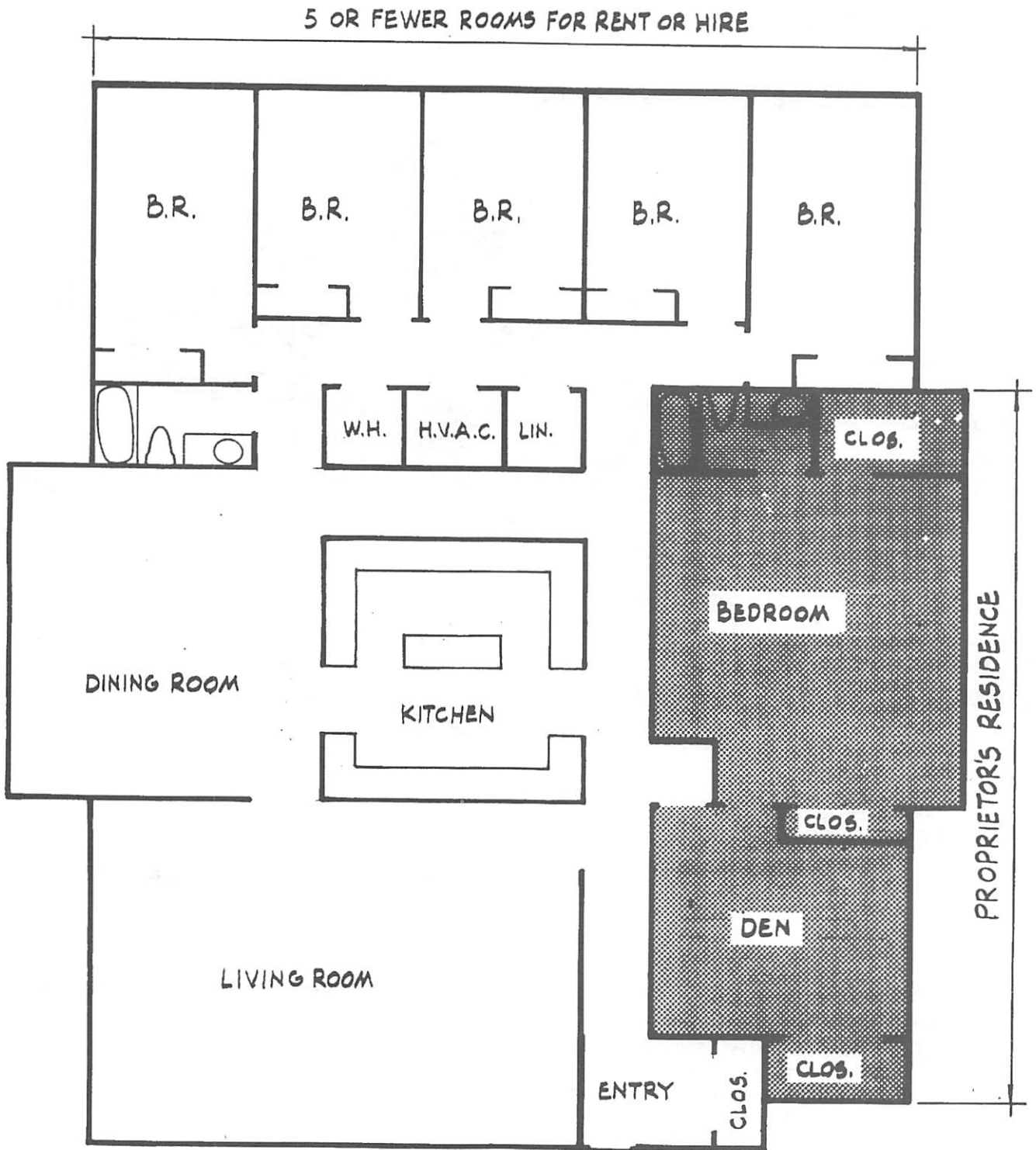
STAIR(S) SHALL COMPLY
WITH CHAPTER 8

1.2.6.3.1 IN COASTAL HIGH HAZARD AREAS, IF A PRIMARY STORAGE-GROUP S OCCUPANCY IS ACCESSIBLE AND ATTACHED SECONDARY MERCANTILE-GROUP M OCCUPANCY THAT:

- (1) HAS A FIRST OCCUPIABLE LEVEL EQUAL TO, OR LESS THAN, TEN PERCENT (10%) OF THE TOTAL STORAGE OCCUPANCY FLOOR AREA; AND
- (2) IS REQUIRED TO HAVE A 10 FEET (3 M) M.S.L. MINIMUM BASE ELEVATION; AND
- (3) HAS ALL AREAS, SPACES, ROOMS, AND ELEMENTS ACCESSIBLE IN COMPLIANCE WITH THIS CODE,

THEN THE SECONDARY MERCANTILE-GROUP M OCCUPANCY IS NOT REQUIRED TO HAVE AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE FROM FINISHED GRADE TO THE FIRST OCCUPIABLE LEVEL OF THE SECONDARY OCCUPANCY.

1.2.6.3--STORAGE OCCUPANCY-GROUP S



1.2.9.1.) PRIVATELY-OWNED TRANSIENT LODGING ESTABLISHMENTS ARE NOT REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH THIS CODE IF:
1) IT HAS 5 OR FEWER ROOMS FOR RENT OR HIRE; AND
2) THE PROPRIETOR LIVES IN THE BUILDING.
(1 AND 2 MUST OCCUR TOGETHER.)

1.2.10 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

1.2.10.1 The requirements of this Code are applicable for temporary buildings and facilities as well as those that are permanent. **ADAAG 4.1.1(4)**

1.2.10.2 Temporary buildings and facilities are those structures having a special building permit for a limited time. Such structures shall be completely removed upon expiration of the time limit stated in the permit. Buildings and facilities such as the following examples may be temporary (the examples given are illustrative and shall not be considered exhaustive): Bleacher Areas; Exhibit Areas; Reviewing Stands; Temporary Banking Facilities; Temporary Classrooms; Temporary Health Screening Services; Temporary Seating; Temporary Safe Pedestrian Passageways Around Construction Site; Tents For Assembly. **Vol. I, (1991), 501; SBCC (1994) 104.1.2; ADAAG 4.1.1(4)**

1.2.11 EXEMPTIONS TO COMPLIANCE

1.2.11.1 Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual process of construction (e.g., scaffolding, bridging, material hoists, construction storage sheds or trailers used for construction equipment or by construction personnel [i.e., those who are actually constructing the building and/or site], erection towers, etc.). **ADAAG 4.1.1(4)**

1.2.11.2 Compliance with this Code shall not be required to or in:

- (1) Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security or life or fire safety such as, but not limited to, observation or lookout galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers, or fixed life guard stands; **ADAAG 4.1.1(5)(b)(i) 1/13/98**
- (2) Non-occupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces or very narrow passageways, tunnels, non-passenger (freight) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of equipment. Such spaces may include, but are not limited to, elevator pits and penthouses, piping or equipment catwalks, water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations, electric substations and transformer vaults, and highway and tunnel utility facilities. **ADAAG 4.1.1(5)(b)(ii)**
- (3) Single occupant structures accessed only by a passageway that is below finished grade or that is elevated above standard curb height (i.e., a curb greater than 6 inches [150 mm]) including, but not limited to, toll booths accessed from underground tunnels. **ADAAG 4.1.1(5)(b)(iii) 1/13/98**

1.2.12 AREAS USED ONLY BY EMPLOYEES AS WORK AREAS

1.2.12.1 Areas that are used only as work areas shall be designed and constructed so that persons with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the areas. **ADAAG 4.1.1(3)**

1.2.12.2 This Code does not require that any areas used only as work areas be constructed to permit maneuvering within the work area or be constructed or equipped to be accessible (e.g., with racks or shelves, counters, knee and toe clearance under a desk, shelves, etc.) **ADAAG 4.1.1(3); FR 7/26/91 At 35414**

1.3 NEW CONSTRUCTION, ADDITIONS, AND FIREWALLS

1.3.1 The requirements of this Code are mandatory for all new facilities within each occupancy classification listed in 1.2, except where noted otherwise. Vol. I-C, 1.1; ADAAG 4.1.1(1)

1.3.2 ADDITIONS

1.3.2.1 Each addition to an existing building or facility shall be considered new construction and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Part II of this Code. Vol. I-C, 1.2(a); ADAAG 4.1.5

1.3.2.1.1 If an alteration to a building or facility affects, or could affect an existing Area of Primary Function, then the existing Area of Primary Function shall comply with 34.2. ADAAG 4.1.5, 4.1.6(2); USDoJ 36.403(c)

1.3.3 FIREWALLS AND MIXED USE/OCCUPANCIES

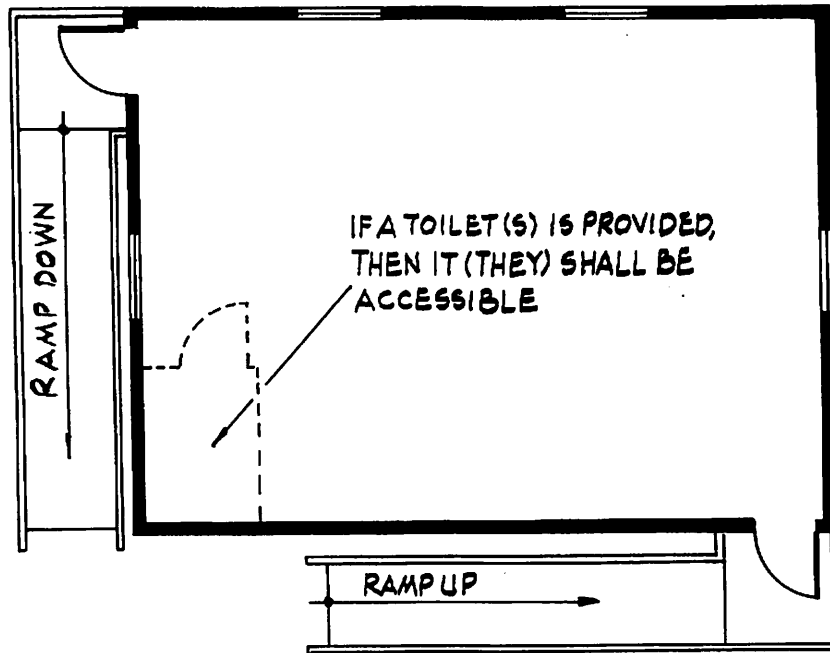
1.3.3.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to all newly constructed and altered occupancy classifications listed in 1.2. Scope

1.3.3.2 Areas within a single structure separated by firewalls and/or other horizontal separations and having a single use to not constitute separate buildings. Derived From HUD FR 3/6/91 At 9480

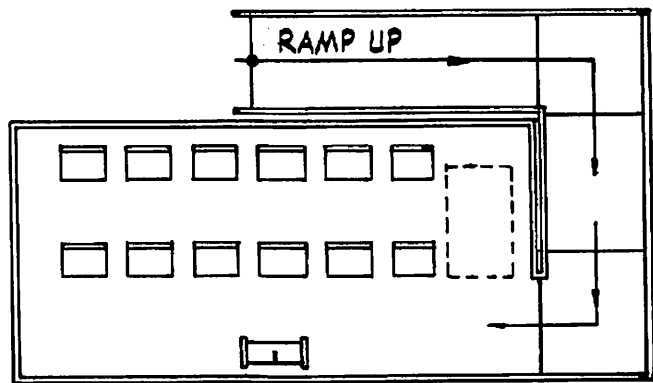
(E.G.: To comply with the Volume I requirements for height and area, a one-story middle school if Type *II-B* construction having a 72,500 square feet [6,735 square meters] total area is divided into five areas of 14,500 square feet [1,347 square meters], each separated from the other by a firewall. Although Volume I identifies this school as five individual buildings separated at their property lines by firewalls, for the purposes of this Code it is a single school facility, not five separate, independent buildings.)

1.3.3.3 With or without firewalls or other horizontal separation, if a building or facility contains more than one of the uses listed in 1.2, then each separate use shall comply with the requirements of this Code for that specific use.

(E.G.: A new hotel will have a restaurant and 800 guest rooms. In compliance with this Paragraph, the restaurant must comply with Chapter 23 [Restaurants and Cafeterias] and the guest rooms must Comply with Chapter 29 [Transient Lodging].) ADAAG 4.1.1(2)

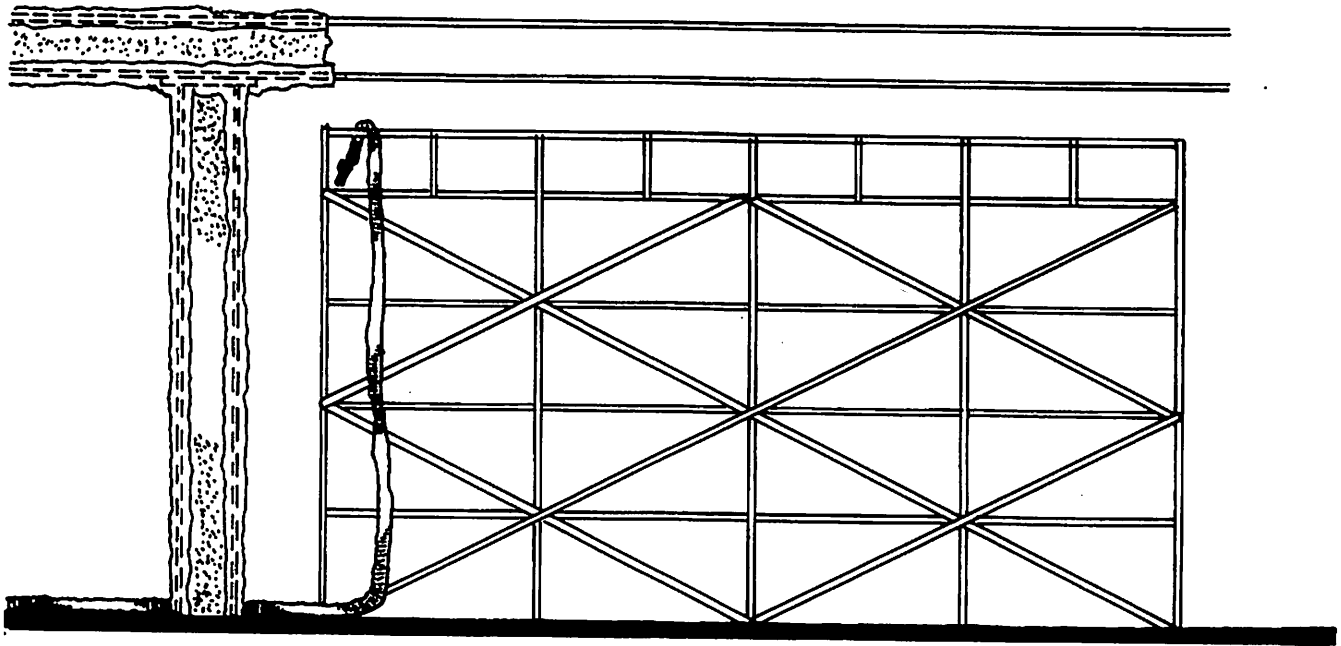


TEMPORARY CLASSROOM

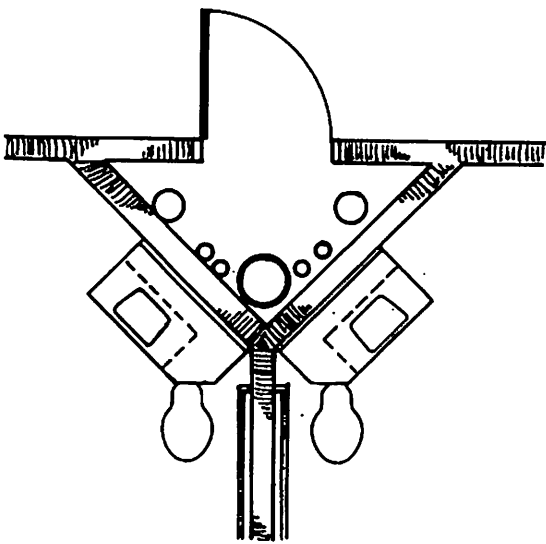


REVIEWING STAND

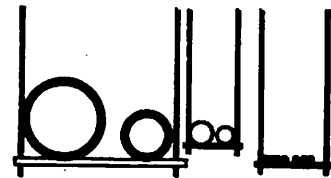
**1.2.10.1- TEMPORARY BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE
(SEE 1.2.10.2 FOR OTHER EXAMPLES)**



CONSTRUCTION SCAFFOLDING

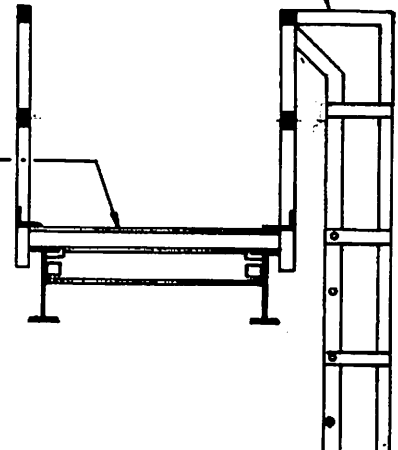


PIPE CHASE

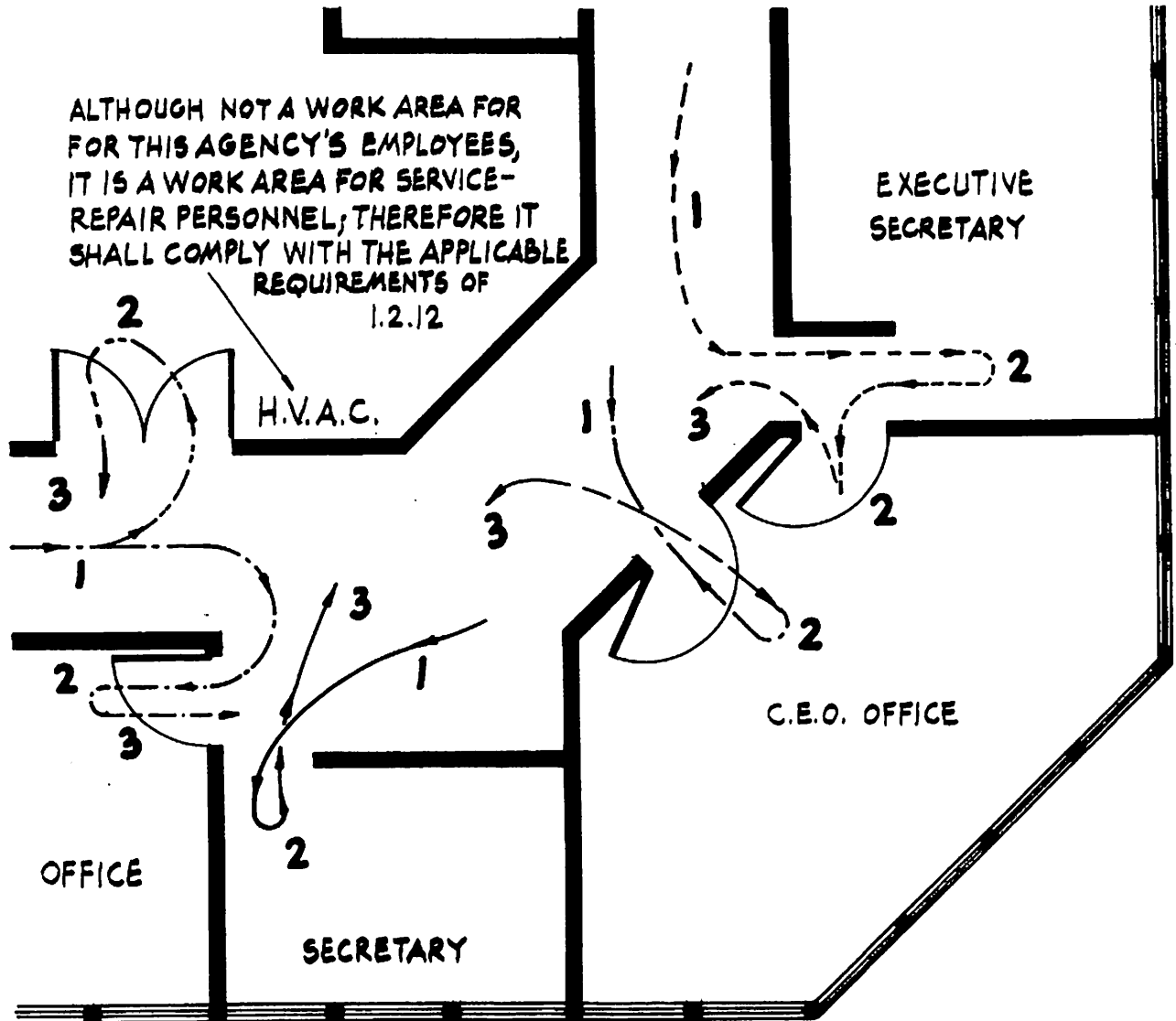


CATWALK ACCESS LADDER

PIPING OR EQUIPMENT CATWALKS



1.2.11- EXEMPTIONS TO COMPLIANCE
 (SEE 1.2.11.1 AND 1.2.11.2 FOR OTHER EXEMPTIONS)



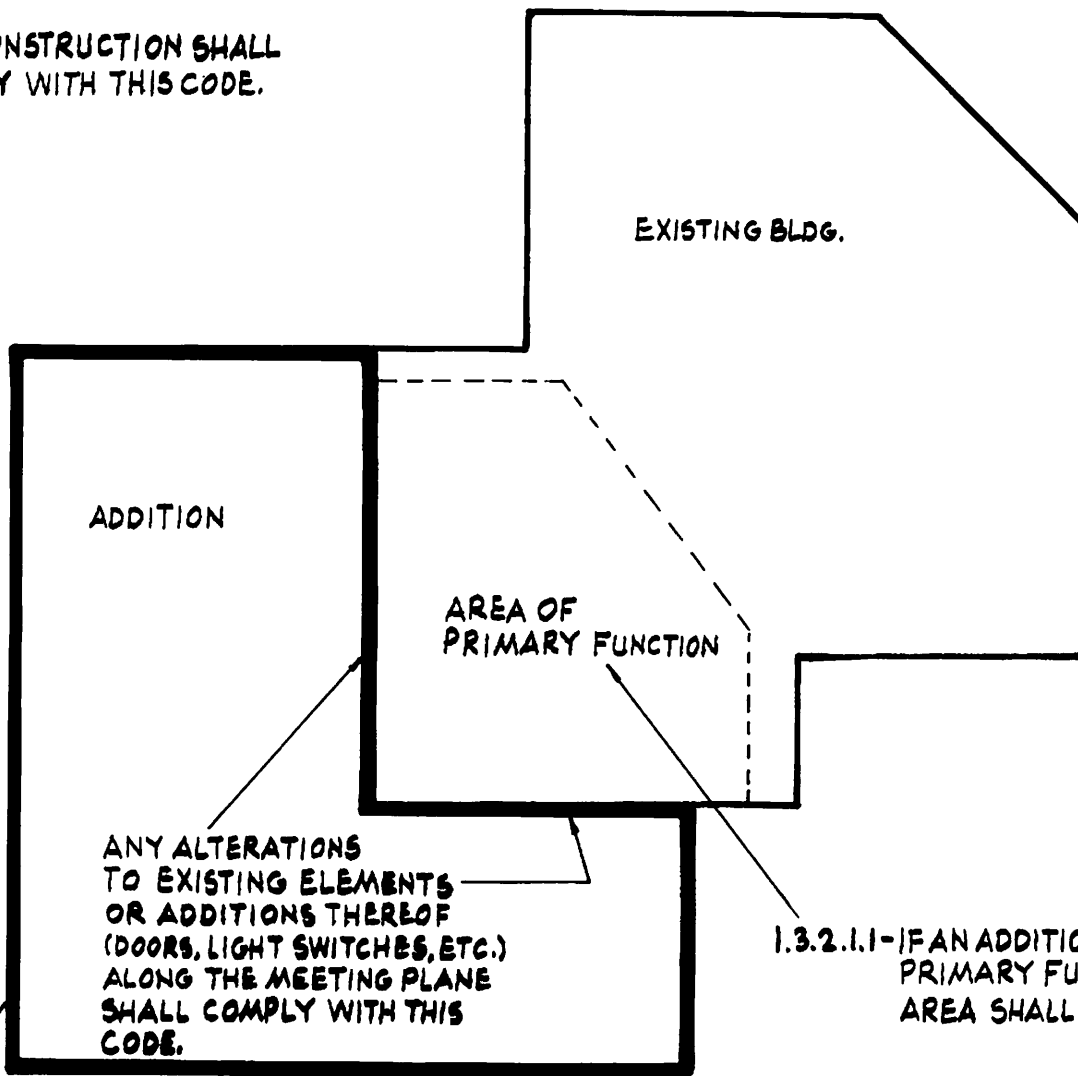
EMPLOYEE WORK AREAS SHALL BE DESIGNED AND CONSTRUCTED SO THAT A DISABLED PERSON CAN:

- 1) APPROACH;
- 2) ENTER; AND
- 3) EXIT

THE WORK AREA

1.2.12 - AREAS USED ONLY BY EMPLOYEES AS WORK AREAS
(SEE, ALSO, THE TEXT FOR THIS SECTION.)

1.3.1.1- NEW CONSTRUCTION SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS CODE.



ADDITION

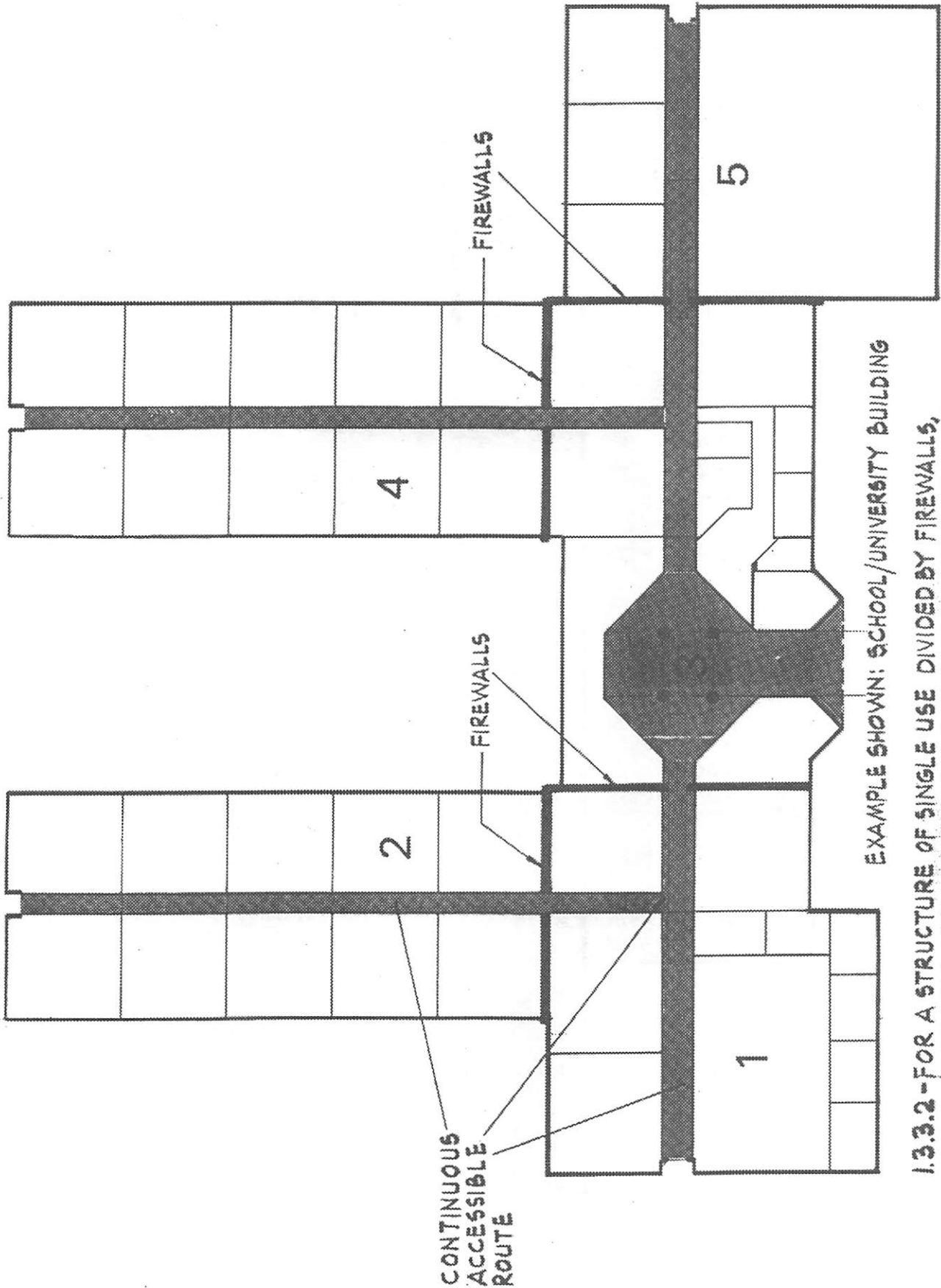
EXISTING BLDG.

AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION

ANY ALTERATIONS TO EXISTING ELEMENTS OR ADDITIONS THEREOF (DOORS, LIGHT SWITCHES, ETC.) ALONG THE MEETING PLANE SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS CODE.

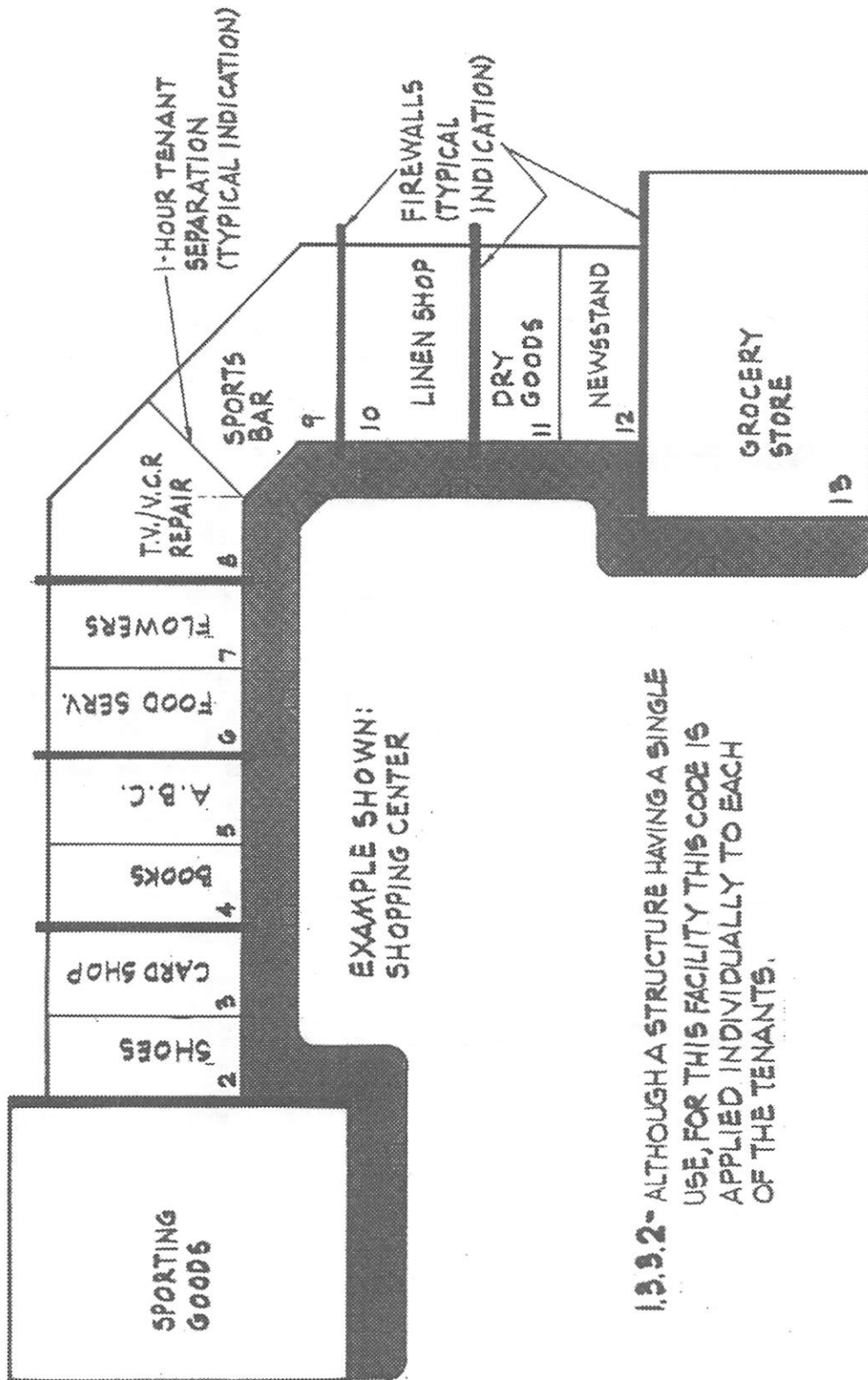
1.3.2.1.1- IF AN ADDITION AFFECTS AN AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION, THEN THE AREA SHALL COMPLY WITH 34.2.

1.3.2.1- AN ADDITION IS AN ALTERATION OF THE EXISTING BUILDING AND IS NEW CONSTRUCTION BY ITSELF. IT SHALL COMPLY WITH NEW CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS.



EXAMPLE SHOWN: SCHOOL/UNIVERSITY BUILDING

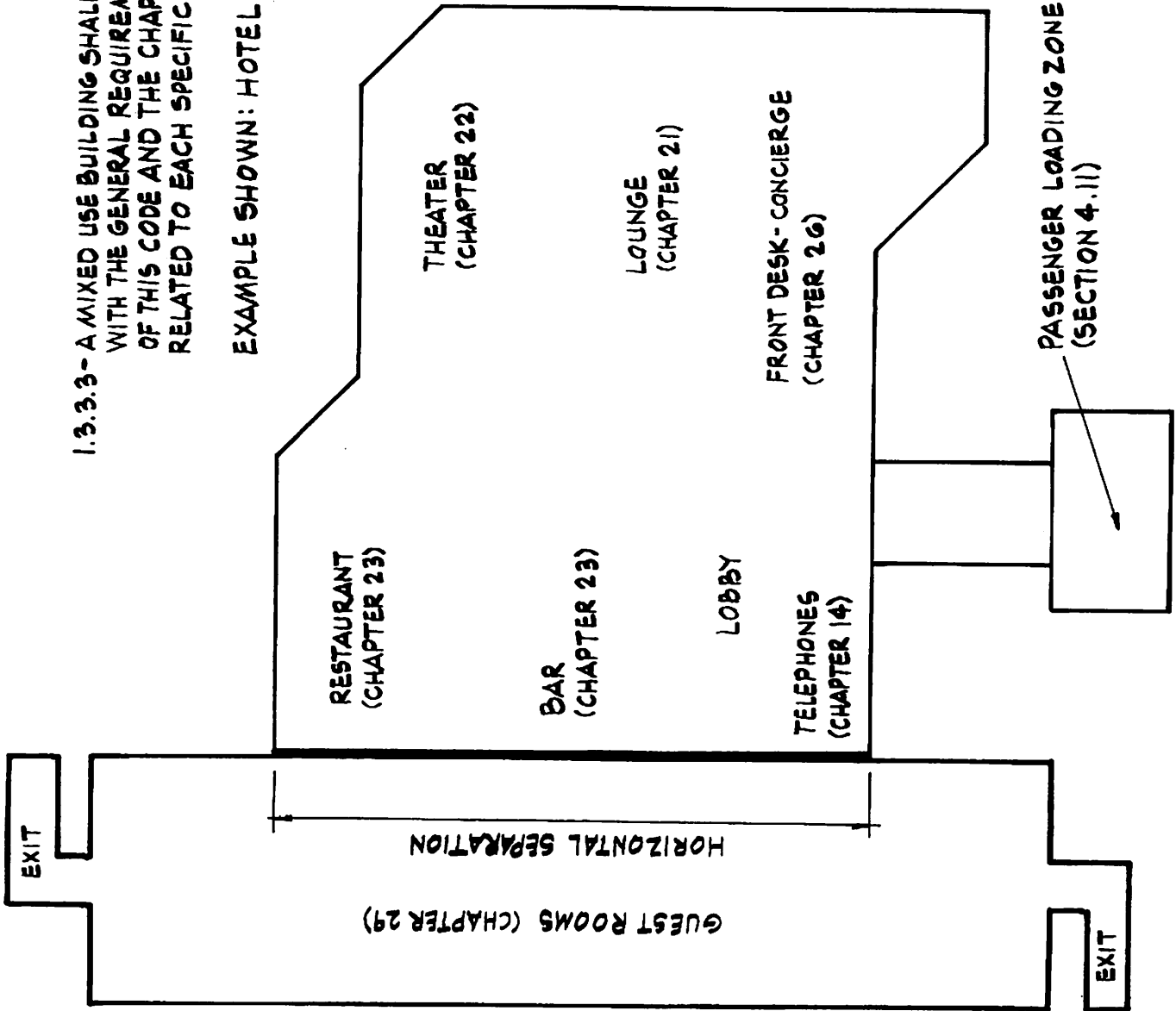
1.3.3.2 - FOR A STRUCTURE OF SINGLE USE DIVIDED BY FIREWALLS, THIS CODE APPLIES TO THE ENTIRE FACILITY (I.E., THIS CODE IS APPLIED ONCE, NOT 5 SEPARATE TIMES).



1.3.3.2- ALTHOUGH A STRUCTURE HAVING A SINGLE USE, FOR THIS FACILITY THIS CODE IS APPLIED INDIVIDUALLY TO EACH OF THE TENANTS.

1.3.3.3 - A MIXED USE BUILDING SHALL COMPLY WITH THE GENERAL REQUIREMENTS OF THIS CODE AND THE CHAPTERS RELATED TO EACH SPECIFIC USE.

EXAMPLE SHOWN: HOTEL



1.4 PLACES OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION OR COMMERCIAL FACILITIES LOCATED IN PRIVATE RESIDENCES

1.4.1 If a Place of Public Accommodation or a Commercial Facility is located within a privately owned residence, then either:

- (1) That part of the residence used exclusively in the operation of the public accommodation or commercial facility; or
- (2) That portion of the residence used for residential purposes and as a place of public accommodation or commercial facility

**USDoJ 36.207(a),
36.401(b)(1)**

shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code.

1.4.2 A Place of Public Accommodation shall be defined as a facility, operated by a private entity, whose operations affect commerce and fall within a minimum of one of the following 12 categories (the examples given shall be considered illustrative, not exhaustive):

USDoJ 36.104

1.4.2.1 A Place of Lodging (Inn; Hotel; Motel; except those Places of Lodging exempted by 1.2.9.1.1).

1.4.2.2 An Establishment Serving Food or Drink (Bar; Cafeteria; Restaurant).

1.4.2.3 A Place of Exhibition or Entertainment (Concert Hall; Motion Picture Theater; Playhouse).

1.4.2.4 A Place of Public Gathering (Auditorium; Convention Center; Lecture Hall).

1.4.2.5 Sales or Rental Establishments (Antique Shop; Bakery; Clothing Store; Grocery Store; Hardware Store).

1.4.2.6 Service Establishments (Barber or Beauty Shop; Funeral Parlor; Gas Station; Office of an Accountant, Architect, Dentist, Doctor, Insurance Agent; Pharmacy).

1.4.2.7 Stations Used for Specified Public Transportation (Terminal or Depot).

1.4.2.8 A Place of Public Display or Collection (Gallery; Library; Museum).

1.4.2.9 A Place of Recreation (Amusement Park; Park; Zoo).

1.4.2.10 A Place of Education (Elementary, Graduate, Nursery, Postgraduate, Secondary or Undergraduate Schools).

1.4.2.11 Social Service Center Establishments (Adoption Agency; Day Care Center; Food Bank; Homeless Shelter).

1.4.2.12 A Place of Exercise or Recreation (Bowling Alley; Gymnasium; Health Spa).

1.4.3 A Commercial Facility shall be defined as a facility, operated by a private entity, whose operations affect commerce, communication, trade traffic, transportation, or travel that are intended for nonresidential use which do not fall into at least one of the categories listed in 1.4.2

**USDoJ 36.104
(See, Also, FR
7/26/91 At 35577)**

1.4.4 If a Place of Public Accommodation or a Commercial Facility is located in a private residence, then that portion of the residence used exclusively in the operation of the Public Accommodation or Commercial Facility, or that portion used both for the Public Accommodation or Commercial Facility and for residential purposes shall require that the following elements available to or used by customers and clients be made accessible:

(1) The sidewalk leading up to the property (if such area is under the control of the owner of the property) and the walkway on the property leading up to the entrance;

(2) A minimum of one entrance;

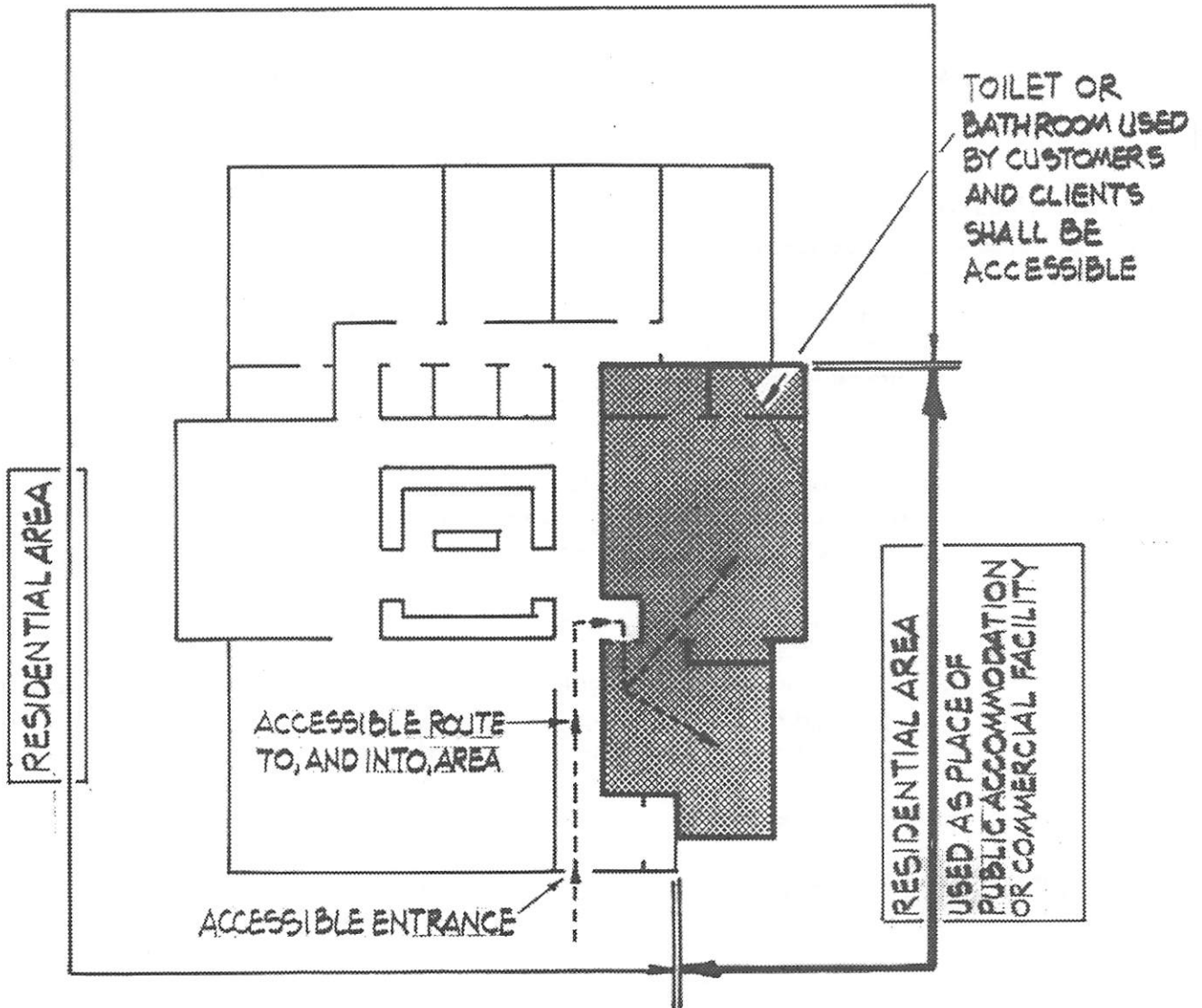
**USDoJ 36.207(a)
36.207(b)**

(3) Those portions of the residence, interior or exterior, available to or used by employees or visitors of the Public Accommodation or Commercial Facility;

**36.401(b)(1)
36.401(b)(2)**

(4) A minimum of one toilet room used by employees or visitors.

1.5 REMOVAL OF BARRIERS: See 33.4 in the Appendix.



1.4 - THAT PART OF A PRIVATELY-OWNED RESIDENCE USED AS A PLACE OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION OR A COMMERCIAL FACILITY SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE.

CHAPTER 2
DEFINITIONS

2.1 WORDS NOT DEFINED

- * 2.1.1 *Words not defined in this Chapter shall have the meanings stated in other volumes of the Code or Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary, as revised:*

2.2 DEFINITIONS

2.2.1 ACCESS AISLE

An accessible pedestrian space between elements, such as parking spaces, seating, and desks, that provides clearances appropriate for use of the elements.

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.2 ACCESSIBLE

Describes a site, building, facility or portion thereof that complies with this Code.

Vol. I-C, 2.1(a);
ADAAG 3.5

2.2.3 ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT

An element specified by this Code (e.g., door hardware, telephone, controls, drinking fountains, etc.).

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.4 ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

A continuous, unobstructed path connecting all accessible elements and spaces of a building or facility. Interior accessible routes may include corridors, floors, ramps, elevators, lifts, and clear floor space at fixtures. Exterior accessible routes may include parking access aisles, curb cuts or curb ramps, crosswalks at vehicular ways, walks, ramps, and lifts. (See, also, 2.2.27-Path of Travel.) An accessible route does not include steps, stairs, or escalators.

Vol. I-C, 2.1(b);
ADAAG 3.5

ADAAG 4.3.8

2.2.5 ACCESSIBLE SPACE

A space that complies with the requirements of this Code.

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.6 ADAPTABLE

The capability of certain building spaces and elements, such as kitchen counters, sinks, and grab bars to be adjusted or added so as to accommodate the needs of persons with and without disabilities, or to accommodate the needs of persons with different types or degrees of disabilities. (See, also, 30.2.2.)

Vol. I-C, 2.1(c);
ADAAG 3.5

* 2.2.7 ALTERATION

Any change or modification in **construction or occupancy** to a building facility or parts thereof. Alterations include, but are not limited to: **Change of Occupancy** (see, also, North Carolina Existing Buildings Code); Changes of Rearrangement in the Plan Configuration of Walls and Partitions; Changes or Rearrangement of the Structural Parts; Historic Restoration; Reconstruction; Rehabilitation; Remodeling, Renovation; **Resurfacing**.

Vol. I, Chap. 2;
ADAAG 3.5

<p>2.2.7.1 Normal maintenance, re-roofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and electrical systems are not considered alterations unless such alteration affects the usability of the building or facility.</p>	<p>ADAAG 3.5</p>
<p>2.2.8 AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE</p>	
<p>An area, which has direct access to an exit, where people who are unable to use stairs may remain temporarily in safety to await further instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.</p>	<p>ADAAG 3.5</p>
<p>2.2.9 AUTOMATIC DOOR</p>	
<p>A door equipped with a power-operated mechanism and controls that open and close the door automatically upon receipt of a momentary actuating signal. The switch that begins the automatic cycle may be a photoelectric device, a floor mat or a manual switch. (See, also, 2.2.28 Power-Assisted Door.)</p>	<p>ADAAG 3.5</p>
<p>2.2.10 CIRCULATION PATH</p>	
<p>An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians including, but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, stairways and stair landings.</p>	<p>ADAAG 3.5</p>
<p>2.2.11 CLEAR Unobstructed.</p>	<p>Vol. I-C, 2.1(d); ADAAG 3.5</p>
<p>* 2.2.12 CLEAR FLOOR AREA</p>	
<p>The minimum unobstructed floor or ground space required to accommodate <i>a single wheelchair and the minimum turning radius of the wheelchair (see 11.3.1). A clear floor area may incorporate, or be independent of, a clear floor space.</i></p>	<p>Defines Maneuvering Space ADAAG 3.5</p>
<p>* 2.2.13 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE</p>	
<p>The minimum unobstructed floor or ground space required to accommodate a single stationary wheelchair (See, for example, 11.6.2[3], 21.2.1, 29.4.5.2, etc.). <i>A clear floor space by be part of, or independent of, a clear floor area.</i></p>	<p>Defines Stationary Space (ADAAG 3.5)</p>
<p>* 2.2.14 THIS CODE <i>North Carolina <u>Accessibility Code</u>.</i></p>	
	<p>Explains Use In Text</p>
<p>2.2.15 CLOSED CIRCUIT TELEPHONE</p>	
<p>A telephone with a dedicated line(s) such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a building or facility</p>	<p>ADAAG 3.5</p>

2.2.16 COMMON USE

Those interior and exterior rooms, spaces, or elements that are made available for the use of a restricted group of people (e.g., occupants of a homeless shelter, occupants of an office building, or the guests of such occupants).

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.17 CROSS SLOPE

The slope of a walk, path, ramp, etc. that is perpendicular to the direction of travel. (See, also, 2.2.32 Running Slope.)

ADAAG 3.5

***2.2.18 CURB CUT**

A ramp of short horizontal projection that is cut through a curb. Derived From "Curb Ramp" (ADAAG 3.5)

***2.2.19 CURB RAMP**

A ramp of short horizontal projection that is built up to a curb.

2.2.20 DETECTABLE WARNING

A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired people of hazards on a circulation path.

ADAAG 3.5

***2.2.21 ELEMENT**

An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space or site *that can be used in making functional spaces accessible* (e.g., telephone, curb ramp, door, drinking fountain, seating, watercloset, etc.).

**Vol. I-C, 2.1(f);
ADAAG 3.5**

2.2.22 ENTRANCE

Any access point to a building, facility, or portion thereof, used for the purposes of entering. An entrance includes: the approach walk; the vertical access leading to the entrance platform; the entrance platform itself; vestibules (if provided); the entry door(s) or gate(s); and the operating hardware of the entry door(s) or gate(s).

ADAAG 3.5

***2.2.23 FACILITY**

All or any portion of a building, structure, or area *including the site on which such building, structure or area is located, wherein specific services are provided or activities are performed.*

**Vol. I-C, 2.1(g);
ADAAG 3.5**

2.2.24 GROUND FLOOR

Any occupiable floor less than one story above or below grade with direct access to grade. A building or facility always has at least one ground floor and may have more than one ground floor as where a split level entrance has been provided or where a building is built into a hillside. (See, also, 6.1.6 and 30.2.7.)

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.25 MARKED CROSSING	A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.	ADAAG 3.5
2.2.26 OPERABLE PART	A part of a piece of equipment or appliance used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust, the equipment or appliance (e.g., coin slot, push-button, handle, etc.).	ADAAG 3.5
*2.2.27 PATH OF TRAVEL: See 34.2.3.		Cross-Reference
2.2.28 POWER-ASSISTED DOOR	A door used for human passage with a mechanism that helps to open the door or relieves the opening resistance of a door upon the activation of a switch or a continued force applied to the door itself. (See, also, 2.2.9-Automatic Door.)	ADAAG 3.5
*2.2.29 PRIMARY FUNCTION	<i>A major activity for which the building or facility is intended.</i> (See, also, 34.2.2.1.1 and 44.1.3.1 in the Appendix).	USD_oJ 36.403(b)
2.2.30 PUBLIC USE	Describes interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is publicly or privately owned.	Vol. I-C, 2.1(j); ADAAG 3.5
*2.2.31 RAMP	A walking surface <i>in an accessible space</i> that has a running slope greater than 1 inch vertical rise in 20 inches horizontal run (1:20).	Vol. I-C, 2.1(k); ADAAG 3.5
*2.2.32 RUNNING SLOPE	The slope of a walk, path, ramp, etc. that is parallel to the direction of travel. <i>Slopes are noted throughout this Code as 1:20, 1:16, 1:12, etc.</i> (See, also, 2.2.17-Cross Slope.)	ADAAG 3.5
2.2.33 SERVICE ENTRANCE	An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.	Vol. I-C, 2.1(m); ADAAG 3.5
2.2.34 SIGNAGE	Displayed verbal, symbolic, tactile and pictorial information.	ADAAG 3.5
*2.2.35 SITE	A parcel of land bounded by a property line or designated portion of a public right-of-way <i>that is the location of an actual or planned building or facility.</i>	ADAAG 3.5; Webster's 9th New College Dictionary

2.2.36 SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS

Rooms in which people sleep (e.g., dormitory rooms, homeless shelters, hotel rooms, motel rooms, etc.)

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.37 SPACE

A definable area (e.g., alcove, assembly area, corridor, entrance, hall, lobby, room, storage room, toilet room, etc.)

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.38 TEXT TELEPHONE

Machinery or equipment that employs interactive graphic (i.e., typed) communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. Text telephones can include, for example, devices known as TDD's (Telecommunication Display Developments or Telecommunication Developments for the Deaf) or computers.

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.39 TRANSIENT LODGING

A building or facility, or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping accommodations. Transient lodging may include, but is not limited to, dormitories, group homes, hotels, hostels, inns, motels, resorts.

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.40 VEHICULAR WAY

A route intended for vehicular traffic such as a road, street, driveway or parking lot.

ADAAG 3.5

2.2.41 WALK

An exterior pathway with a prepared surface intended for pedestrian use including general pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts.

**Vol. I-C, 2.1(o);
ADAAG 3.5**

2.3 GENERAL TERMINOLOGY

2.3.1 COMPLY WITH

Meet one or more of the requirements of the Code.

ADAAG 3.4

2.3.2 IF...THEN

A requirement that applies only when the conditions described are present (e.g.: if laundry equipment is provided, then it shall comply with....).

ADAAG 3.4

2.3.3 MAY

Denotes an option or alternative (e.g.: The accessible route from a parking lot may use either a curb cut or a curb ramp).

**Vol. I-C, 2.3(b);
ADAAG 3.4**

2.3.4 SHALL

As used in the Code, is a mandatory requirement or specification.

**Vol. I-C, 2.3(c);
ADAAG 3.4**

PART II:

NEW CONSTRUCTION

Discrimination For The Purposes Of [Subpart D Of 28 CFR Part 36] Includes A Failure To Design And Construct Facilities For First Occupancy After January 26, 1993 That Are Readily Accessible To And Usable By Individuals With Disabilities.

(U.S. Department Of Justice, §36.401[a][1])

Each Facility Or Part Of A Facility Constructed By, On Behalf Of, Or For The Use Of A Public Entity Shall Be Designed And Constructed In Such A Manner That The Facility Or Part Of The Facility Is Readily Accessible To And Usable By Individuals With Disabilities, If The Construction Was Commenced After January 26, 1992.

(U.S. Department Of Justice, §35.151[a])

CHAPTER 3 SITE ACCESS

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

3.1.1 A minimum of one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking spaces, accessible passenger loading zones (if provided), public streets and sidewalks, to the accessible building entrance(s) which they serve. **ADAAG 4.1.2(1), 4.3.2(1); Vol. I-C, 3.1(a) Similar**

3.1.2 The accessible route shall coincide with the route provided for the general public. **ADAAG 4.3.2(1)**

3.1.3 A minimum of one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces that are on the same site. **Vol. I-C, 3.2(a)(2); ADAAG 4.1.2(2), 4.3.2(2)**

***3.1.4** *Entrances may be made accessible through the use of proper grading, walks, ramps, lifts (where such use is permitted), bridges, or similar elements of an accessible route.* **Vol. I-C, 3.1(b)**

3.1.5 All objects that protrude from surfaces or posts into circulation paths shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 10. **ADAAG 4.1.2(3)**

3.2 WIDTH OF AN EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

***3.2.1** The clear width shall be **48 inches (1220 mm)** minimum. (For exception see 10.5.1.) **Vol. I-C, 3.2(b)(1); Cross-Reference**

***3.2.2** *Clear turning space around an obstruction shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum regardless of the width of the obstruction (i.e.: the 48 inches [1220 mm] minimum clear width shall be maintained throughout; for a ramp, see 5.3.5 or 5.3.6.)* **Vol. I-C, 3.2(b)(2)**

3.3 WALKS

3.3.1 Public walks shall be fixed, firm and non-slip. If changes in level occur, then they shall comply with the following: **ADAAG 4.5.1**

(1) Up to 1/4 inch (6 mm) may be vertical and without edge treatment.

(2) Greater than 1/4 inch up to 1/2 inch [6 mm to 13 mm] shall be beveled with a slope of 1:2 (25 mm:50 mm) maximum. **Vol. I-C, 3.1(d); ADAAG 4.5.2**

(3) Greater than 1/2 inch (13 mm) shall be accomplished by a ramp that complies with 4.7.2, 4.7.3, or Chapter 5.

*** 3.3.2** Public walks shall have a 1:20 (25mm:510mm) maximum slope. If the public walk has a slope greater than 1:20 (25mm:510mm), up to a 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum, then it is a ramp and shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 5. A public walk may incorporate **a 1/4 inch per foot (6 mm per 305 mm)** maximum cross slope.

Vol. I-C, 3.3(a);
ADAAG 4.3.7

***3.3.3** *Public walks shall have a continuous common surface that shall not be interrupted by steps or abrupt changes in level greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm). If walks cross driveways or parking lots, then they shall blend to a common level by means of curb cuts, curb ramps or sloped areas whose gradient shall not exceed 1:12 (25mm:305mm). (See, also, 4.7 and 5.4.1.)*

Vol. I-C, 3.3(b)

3.3.4 If a public walk has less than 60 inches (1525 mm) clear width, then a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum clear passing space shall be provided at intervals not greater than 200 feet (61 m). The T-intersection of two walks is an acceptable passing space.

ADAAG 4.3.4

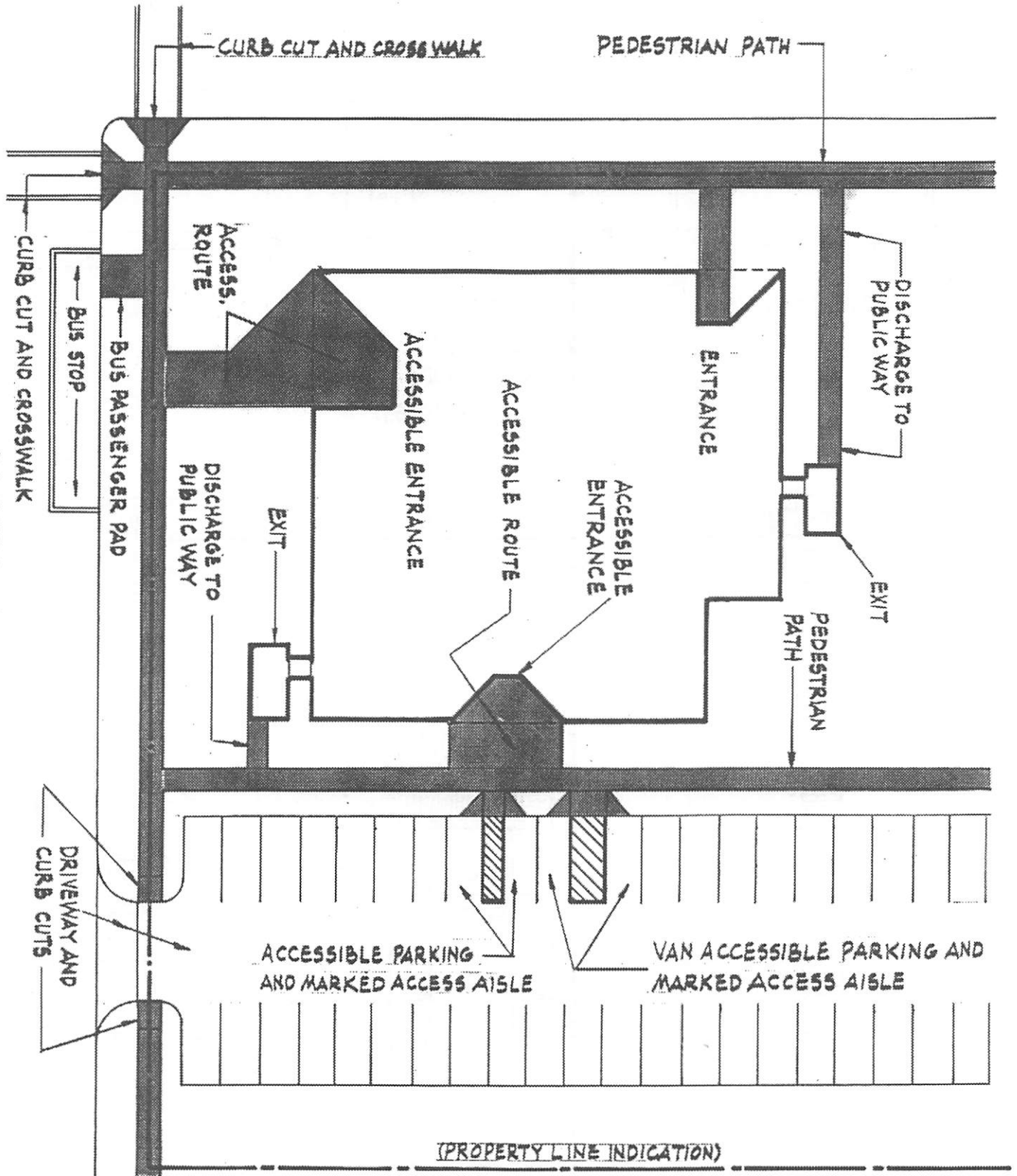
3.3.5 All public walks that terminate at accessible entrances shall have a clear floor area at the door(s) in compliance with the applicable requirements of 7.3.

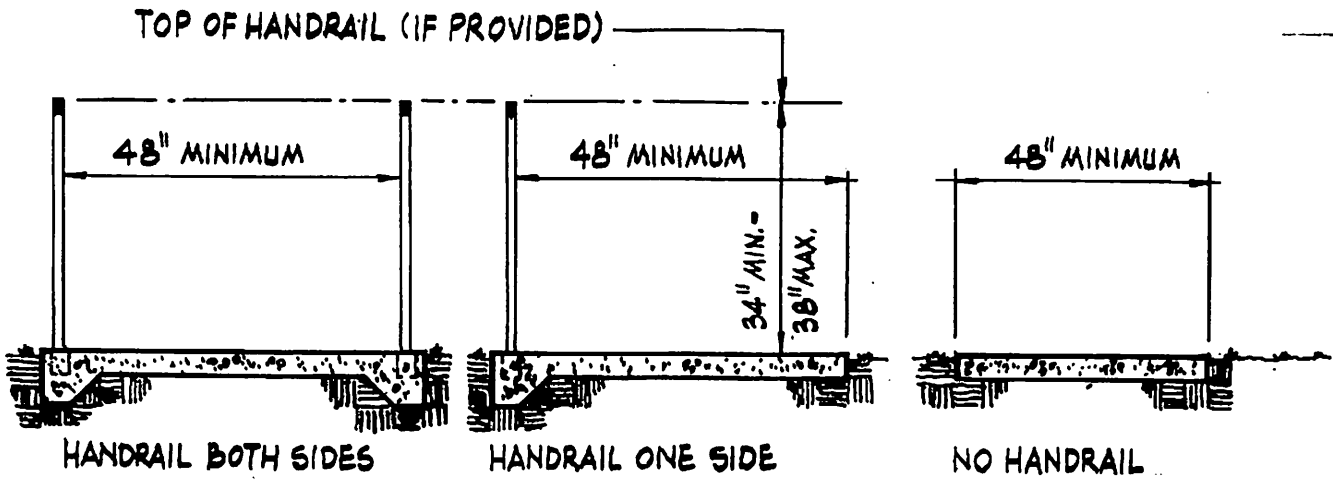
ADAAG 4.13.6

***3.3.6** If gratings are located in a public walk (*i.e., the 48 inches [1220 mm] minimum clear, continuous walking surface is interrupted*), then the grating openings shall have a 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum dimension. If the grating has elongated openings, then the grating shall be placed so that the long dimension of the opening is perpendicular to the direction of travel.

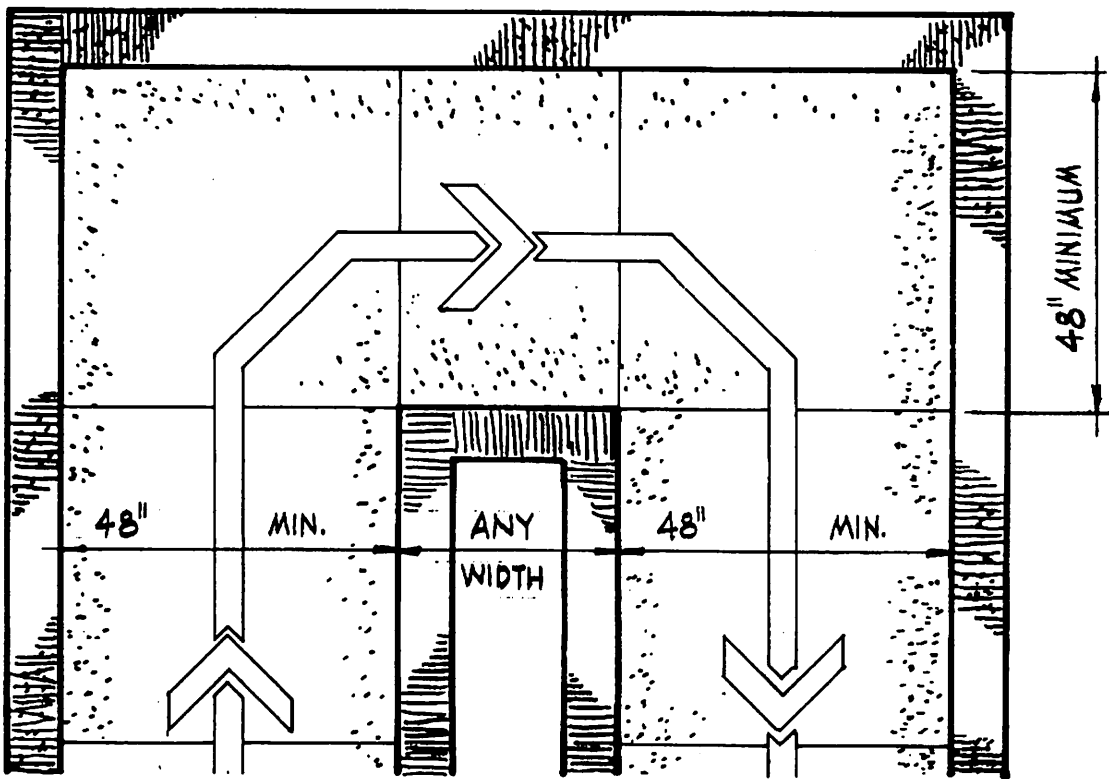
Vol. I-C, 3.3(d);
ADAAG 4.5.4

3.1 - SITE ACCESS: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



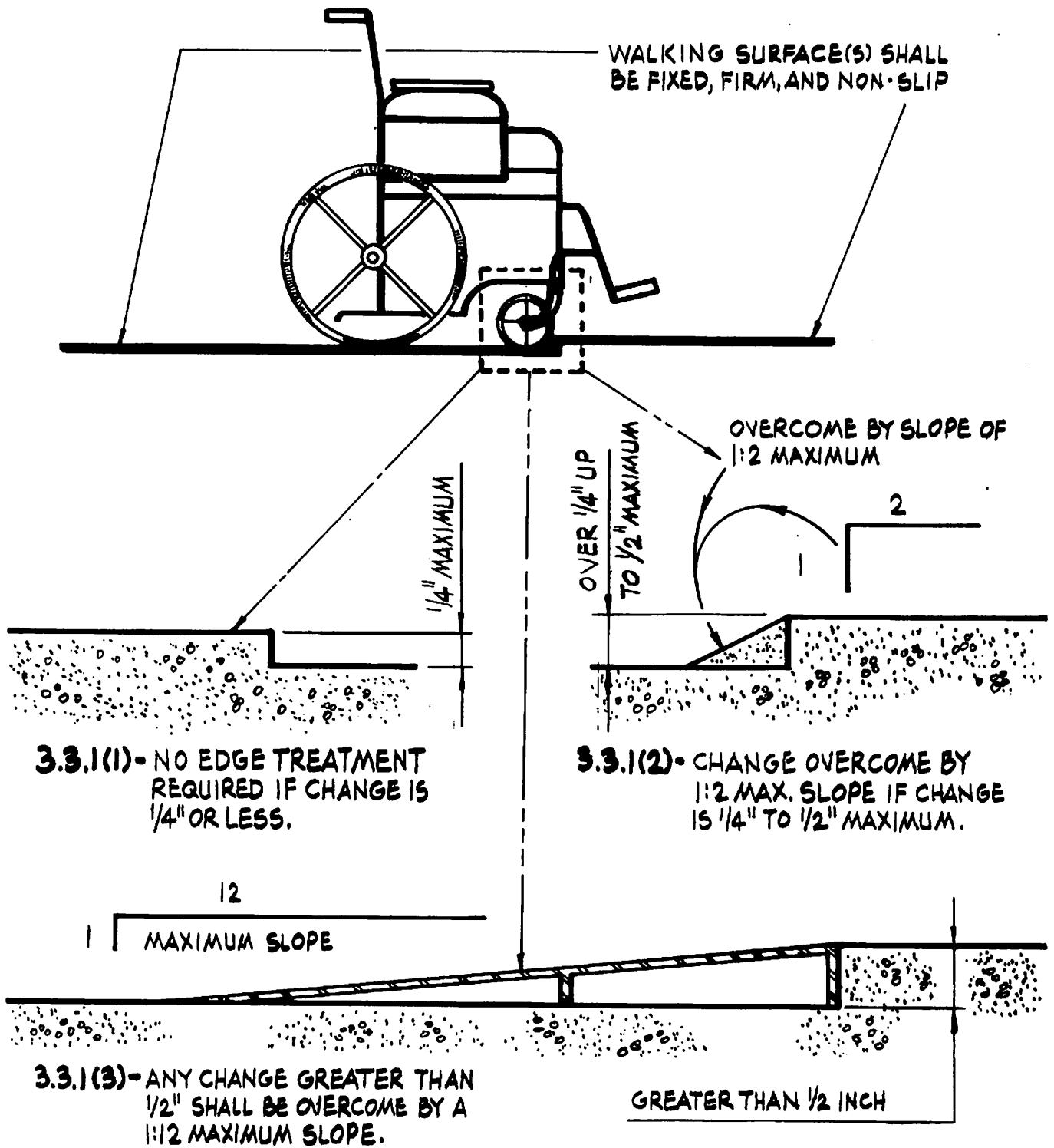


**3.2.1- EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE:
MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH
(FOR EXCEPTION SEE 10.5.1)**



**3.2.2- EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE:
TURNING SPACE AROUND
AN OBSTRUCTION**

3.2- EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE



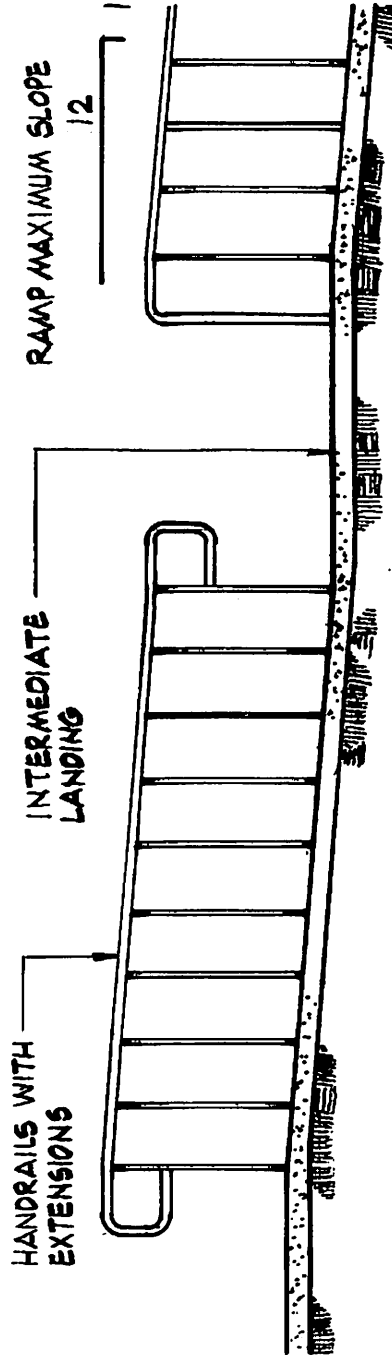
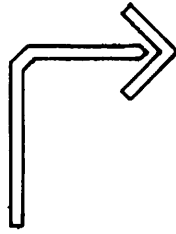
3.3.1- CHANGES IN LEVEL

FOR A WALK HANDRAILS ARE NOT REQUIRED BUT IF THEY ARE PROVIDED, THEN THEY SHALL COMPLY WITH 5.4.2.

PUBLIC WALK MAXIMUM SLOPE
20
1



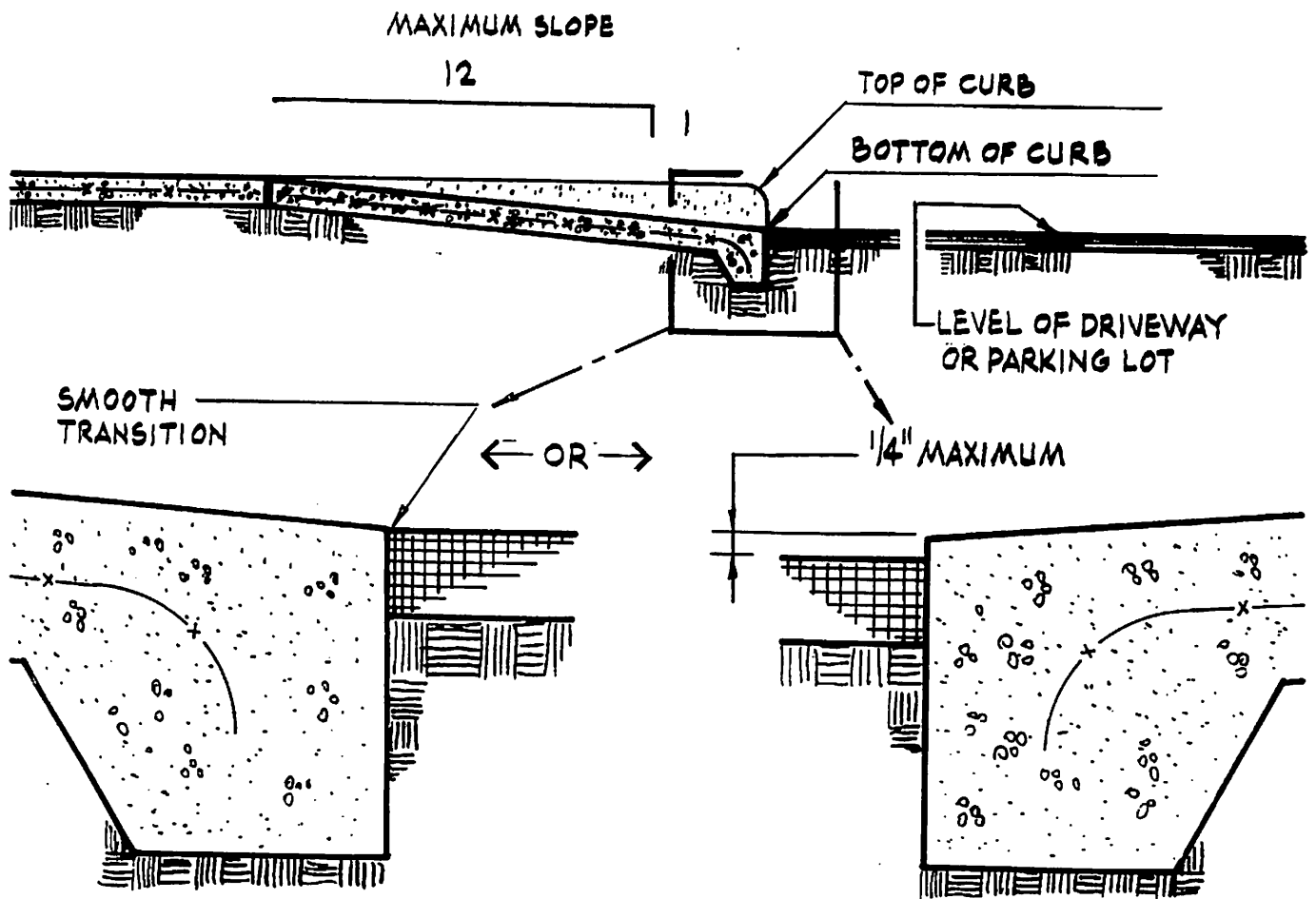
3.3.2-PUBLIC WALKS SHALL HAVE A 1:20 MAXIMUM SLOPE (1:20 = 5%). BUT.....



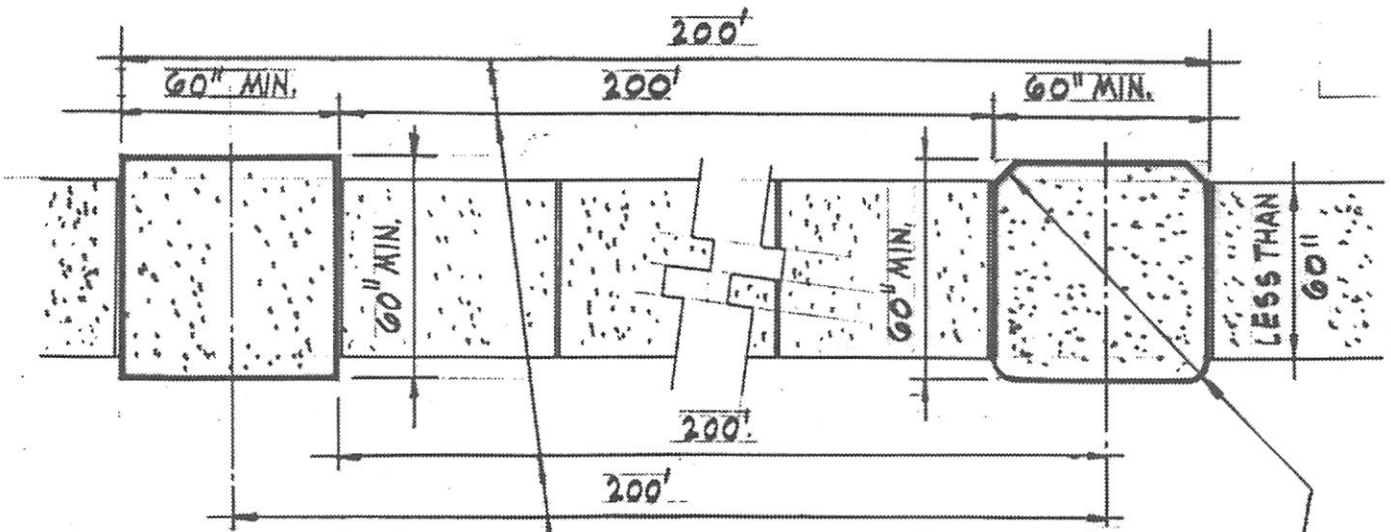
IF THE WALK (OR PARTS THEREOF) SLOPES MORE THAN 1:20 UP TO 1:12 MAXIMUM, THEN IT IS A RAMP AND SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 5.

FOR ALL ACCESSIBLE WALKS A 1/4" PER FOOT MAXIMUM CROSS SLOPE MAY BE USED.

3.3.2- MAXIMUM SLOPE(S) OF PUBLIC WALKS



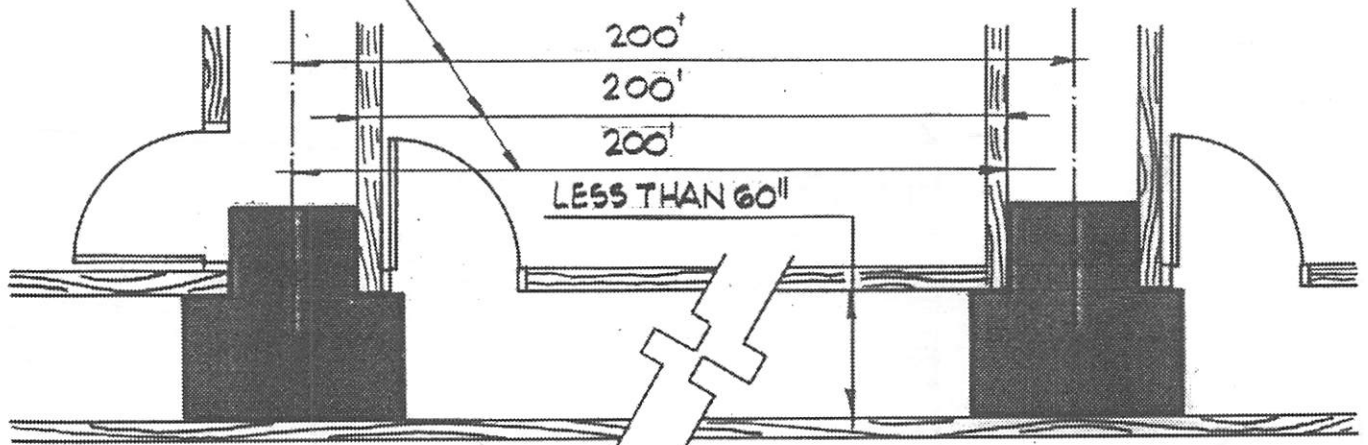
3.3.3-IF PUBLIC WALKS CROSS DRIVEWAYS OR PARKING LOTS, THEN THEY SHALL BLEND TO A COMMON LEVEL BY MEANS OF CURB CUTS, CURB RAMPS, OR SLOPED AREAS HAVING A 1:12 MAXIMUM SLOPE.



METHODS FOR DETERMINING DISTANCE NOT LIMITED TO EXAMPLES SHOWN.

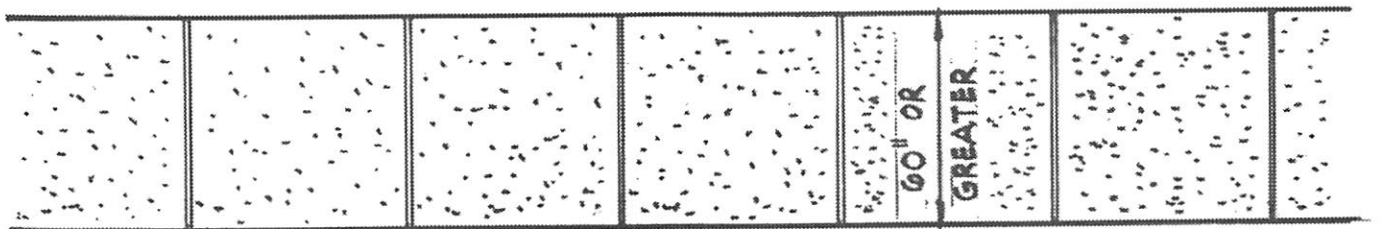
CORNERS DO NOT HAVE TO BE SQUARE.

PASSING SPACE - GENERAL



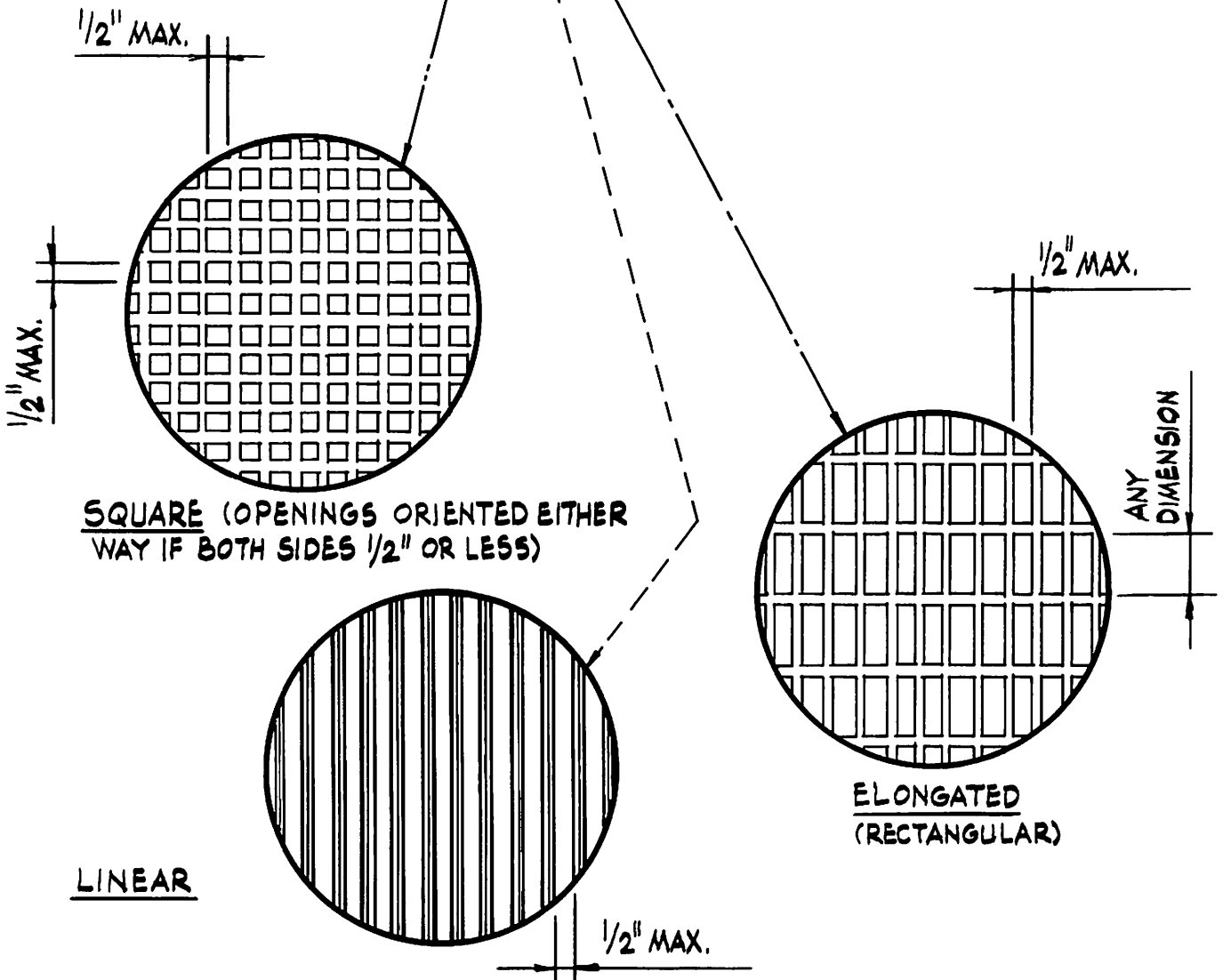
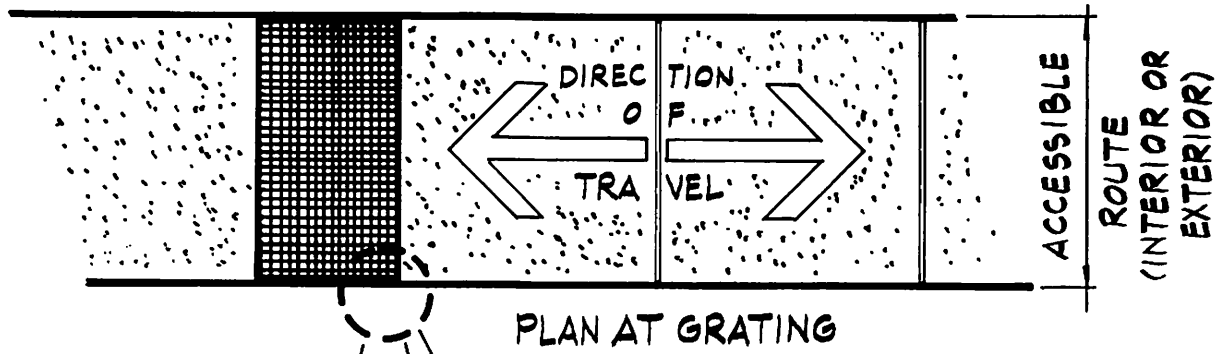
PASSING SPACE - "T" INTERSECTION OF 2 CORRIDORS

FOR "T"-TURN DIMENSIONS, SEE ILLUSTRATION FOR 11.3.1



PASSING SPACE NOT REQUIRED

PASSING SPACE:
3.3.4 - EXTERIOR
5.2.4 - INTERIOR



3.3.6- OPENINGS IN GRATINGS

**CHAPTER 4
PARKING LOTS, CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS
AND PASSENGER LOADING ZONES**

4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

4.1.1 If parking lots and/or parking decks are furnished for buildings to which 1.2 applies, then accessible parking spaces shall be provided.

Vol. I-C, 3.4(a),
3.4(c);
ADAAG 4.1.2(5)

4.1.1.1 Parking lots and/or parking decks serving a general area (as distinct from serving a particular building, or group of buildings on the same site) shall have accessible parking spaces in compliance with this Chapter.

Derived From
FR 7/26/91 At
35431

4.1.2 *General Statutes 20-37.5 and 20-37.6 contain the definition of handicapped and parking privileges of the handicapped; legal signage, including maximum penalty signage for illegal parking, and use of accessible parking spaces are all included in Appendices A, B, C, and H.

Vol. I-C, 3.4(a)

4.1.2 And 4.2.1
Satisfy ADAAG
4.1.2(7)(a)

4.2 MINIMUM NUMBER OF SPACES

4.2.1 Accessible parking spaces shall be provided in compliance with the following table *and shall be identified with above-ground signs as specified in General Statutes 20-37.6 and 136-30 (see Appendices C and H), and the North Carolina Department of Transportation Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices:

<u>TOTAL NUMBER OF SPACES IN LOT</u>	<u>MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE SPACES</u>
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9
501 to 1,000	two percent (2%) of total
1,001 and over	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000

Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(1);
ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(a)

4.2.2 One in every eight (1 in 8) accessible parking spaces, or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), shall be van accessible and shall be identified with the words "Van Accessible" on an above-ground sign. Van accessible parking spaces shall be open to all vehicles properly identified in compliance with General Statute 20-37.6.

ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(b)
ADAAG 4.6.4

4.2.2.1 If only one (1) accessible parking space is required, then it shall be van accessible.

Derived From
FR 7/26/91 At
35416

*4.2.3 **Accessible parking spaces and access aisles located on hard or paved surfaces (e.g., asphalt, concrete, etc.) shall be marked by painted lines or other suitable means.** Access aisles shall be clearly delineated (e.g., painted lines, change in ground surface materials, solid color, etc.).

FR 7/26/91 At
35432

4.3 SPECIAL APPLICATIONS

4.3.1 **MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS:** See 30.4.1.4.

Cross-Reference

4.3.2 **FACILITIES PROVIDING MEDICAL CARE AND MEDICALLY RELATED SERVICES FOR PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS:** See 28.1.4

Cross-Reference

*4.3.3 AUTOMOBILE/MOTOR VEHICLE SHOWROOMS

*4.3.3.1 *The minimum number of accessible parking spaces required in compliance with 4.2.1 shall be computed from the total number of spaces provided for customers and employees.*

Vol. I-C
Interpretation

4.3.3.2 The number of van accessible parking spaces shall be determined in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.

ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(b)

4.4 SIZES OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES AND OVERHEAD CLEARANCE

4.4.1 Accessible parking spaces shall have a 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum width and a minimum 60 inches (1525 mm) wide access aisle. Two adjacent accessible parking spaces may share a common access aisle.

Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(6);
ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(a),
4.6.3

4.4.2 Van accessible parking spaces shall have a 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum width and a minimum 96 inches (2440 mm) wide access aisle. Two adjacent van accessible parking spaces may share a common access aisle. (NOTE: If all accessible parking spaces comply with this Paragraph, then "Van Accessible" signs are not required.)

ADAAG 4.6.3,
Figure 9
ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(b)
ADAAG A4.6.3

4.4.2.1 If a van accessible parking space shares a common access aisle with an accessible parking space intended for a standard (i.e., non-van) vehicle, then the access aisle shall have a 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum width.

Derived From
FR 7/26/91 At
35416

4.4.3 The front of the access aisle shall connect to the accessible route that leads to an accessible entrance of the building or facility

FR 7/26/91 At
5432

4.4.4 Parked vehicle overhangs shall not reduce the minimum clear width of an accessible route.

ADAAG 4.6.3

*4.4.5 Van accessible spaces and the vehicular route to these spaces from the site or parking deck entrance(s) or exit(s) shall have a **108 inches (2.75 m)** minimum overhead clearance. 108": Vol. I-C, 3.4(c)(3)
(NOTE: Overhead clearance at accessible parking spaces serving standard [i.e., non-van] vehicles is not regulated by this Code.)

*4.4.6 Accessible parking spaces and access aisles may have a **1/4 inch per foot (6mm per 305 mm)** maximum slope in all directions for drainage. Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(6); ADAAG 4.6.3

4.5 PARKING DECKS

4.5.1 Parking decks serving non-medical buildings and facilities shall comply with 4.2 and the applicable requirements of 4.4. (For decks serving outpatient units and facilities, or units and facilities specializing in the treatment or services for mobility impaired persons, see 28.1.4.1 or 28.1.4.2, as applicable.) From Vol. I-C, 3.4(c)(1); ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(b)

*4.5.2 All accessible spaces may be located on one level of a parking deck provided that the designated parking level furnishes access to the building which it serves. Vol. I-C, 3.4(c)(2); ADAAG 4.1.2(5)(b)
For a parking deck that serves more than one building, the required number of spaces shall be divided proportionally between the number of buildings and dispersed as necessary on the designated parking level(s).

4.6 LOCATION AND TRAVEL DISTANCE

*4.6.1 *Travel distance along accessible routes from accessible parking spaces to accessible entrances shall not exceed 200 feet (61 m).* Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(7)

4.6.1.1 For buildings having multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible spaces shall be dispersed and located to the serve those entrances. ADAAG 4.6.2

(E.G.: For a multiple entrance building such as a shopping mall the accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed among the several accessible mall and major tenant entrances. For a multiple tenant building such as a shopping center, the accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed so as to afford access to the several tenant entrances.) FR 7/26/91 At 35431

4.6.2 A parking lot (or lots) that serves multiple buildings shall have the required number of accessible spaces located on an accessible route that connects parking access aisles to the accessible entrance(s) of the several buildings. Derived From FR 7/26/91 At 35431



STANDARD COLORS (ALL SIGNS):

BACKGROUND - WHITE

LETTERING/BORDER - GREEN

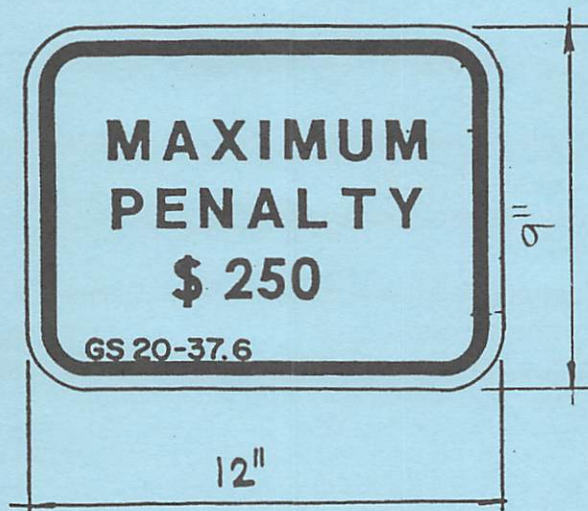
ARROW - GREEN

FIGURE - WHITE ON BLUE FIELD

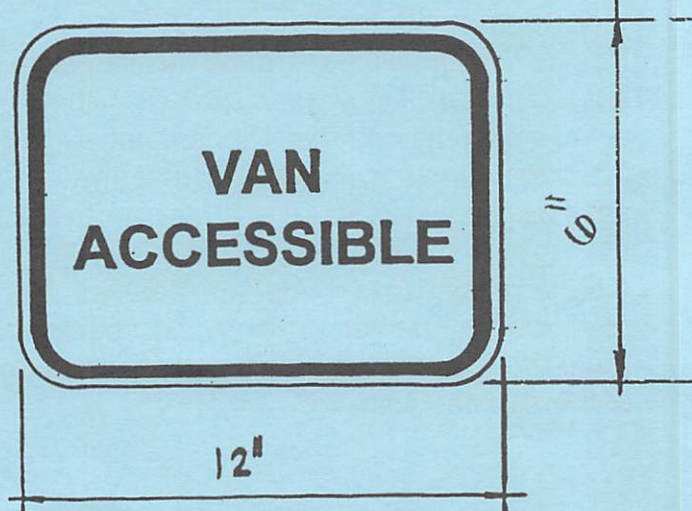
CORNER RADIUS = 1 1/2" (TYPICAL)

SIGN SIZE REVISED BY NCDOT AUG. 2000;
ADOPTED BY BUILDING CODE COUNCIL
JUNE 2001

MAXIMUM PENALTY INCREASED BY NC
GENERAL ASSEMBLY: HOUSE BILL 143,
SESSION LAW 1999-265

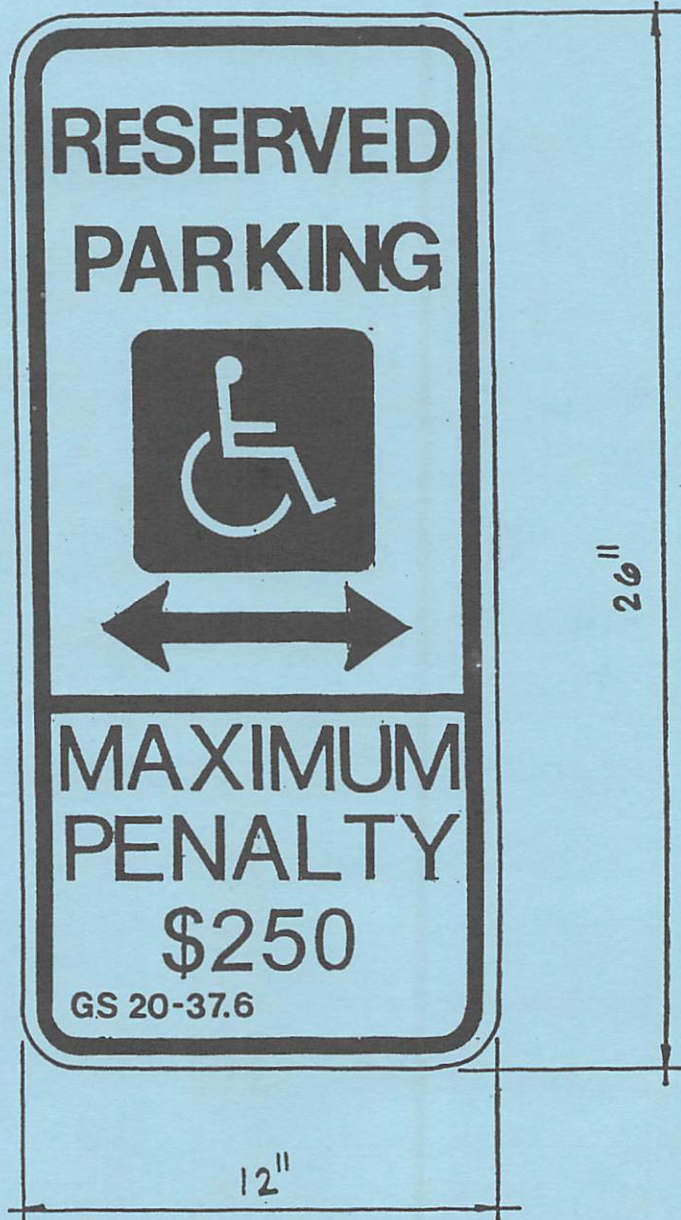


SIGN R7-8D



VAN ACCESSIBLE SIGN

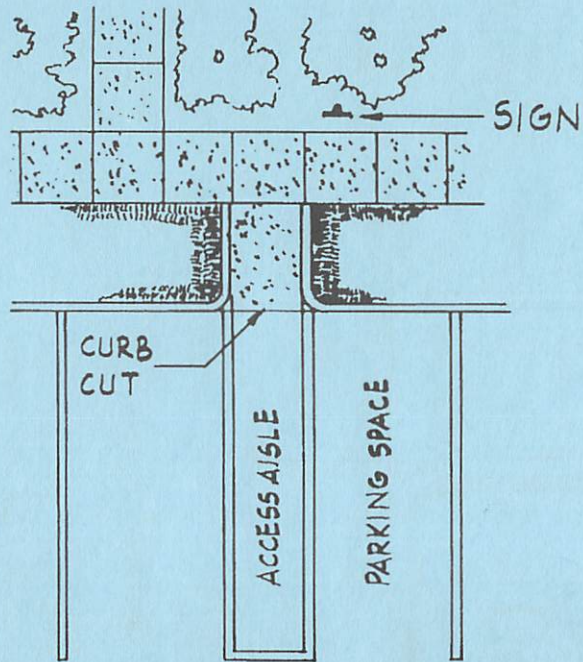
MAXIMUM PENALTY INCREASED BY NC
GENERAL ASSEMBLY: HOUSE BILL 143,
SESSION LAW 1999-265



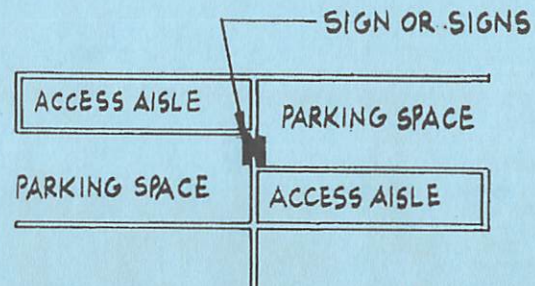
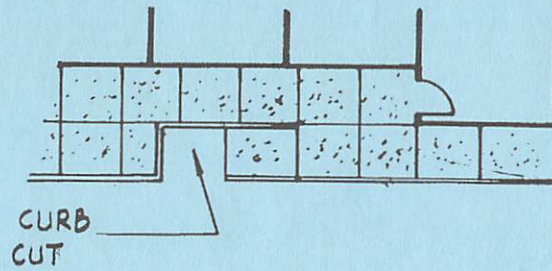
SIGN R7-8E

(COLORS/CORNER RADII SAME AS 4.1.2-PART 1)

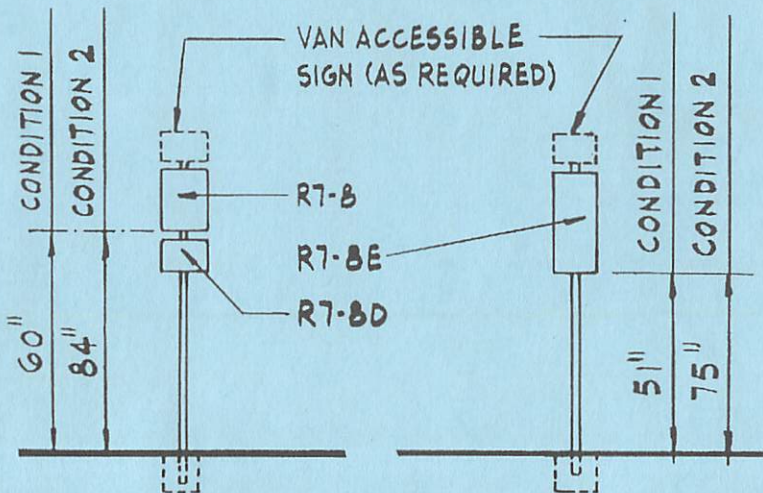
THIS SIGN MAY BE USED IN PLACE OF SIGNS
R7-8/R7-8D (SEE 4.1.2-PART 3)



CONDITION 1: PEDESTRIAN PATH DOES NOT PASS UNDER OR AROUND SIGN.



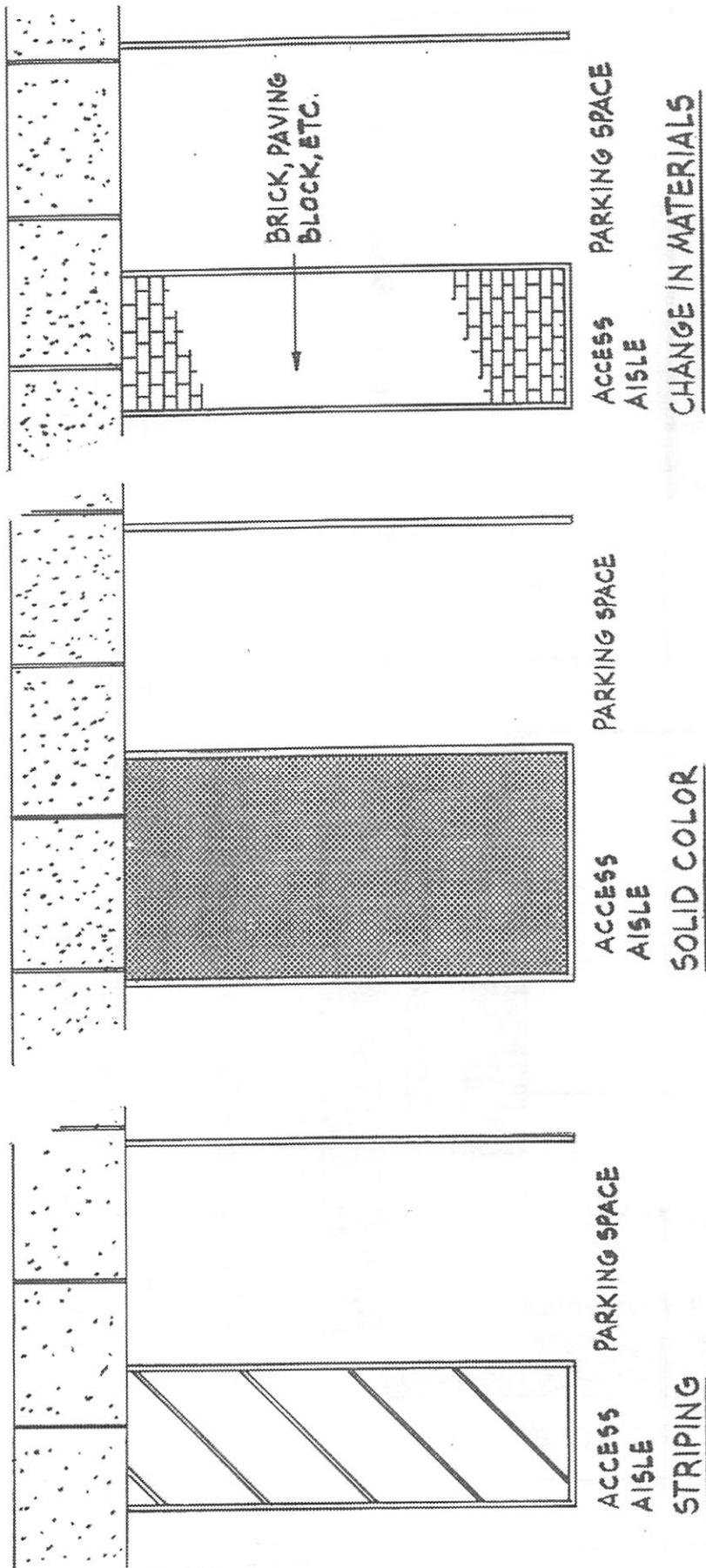
CONDITION 2: PEDESTRIAN PATH GOES BY, UNDER, OR AROUND SIGN.



4.1.2- SIGN MOUNTING HEIGHTS AT ACCESSIBLE SPACES (PART 3)

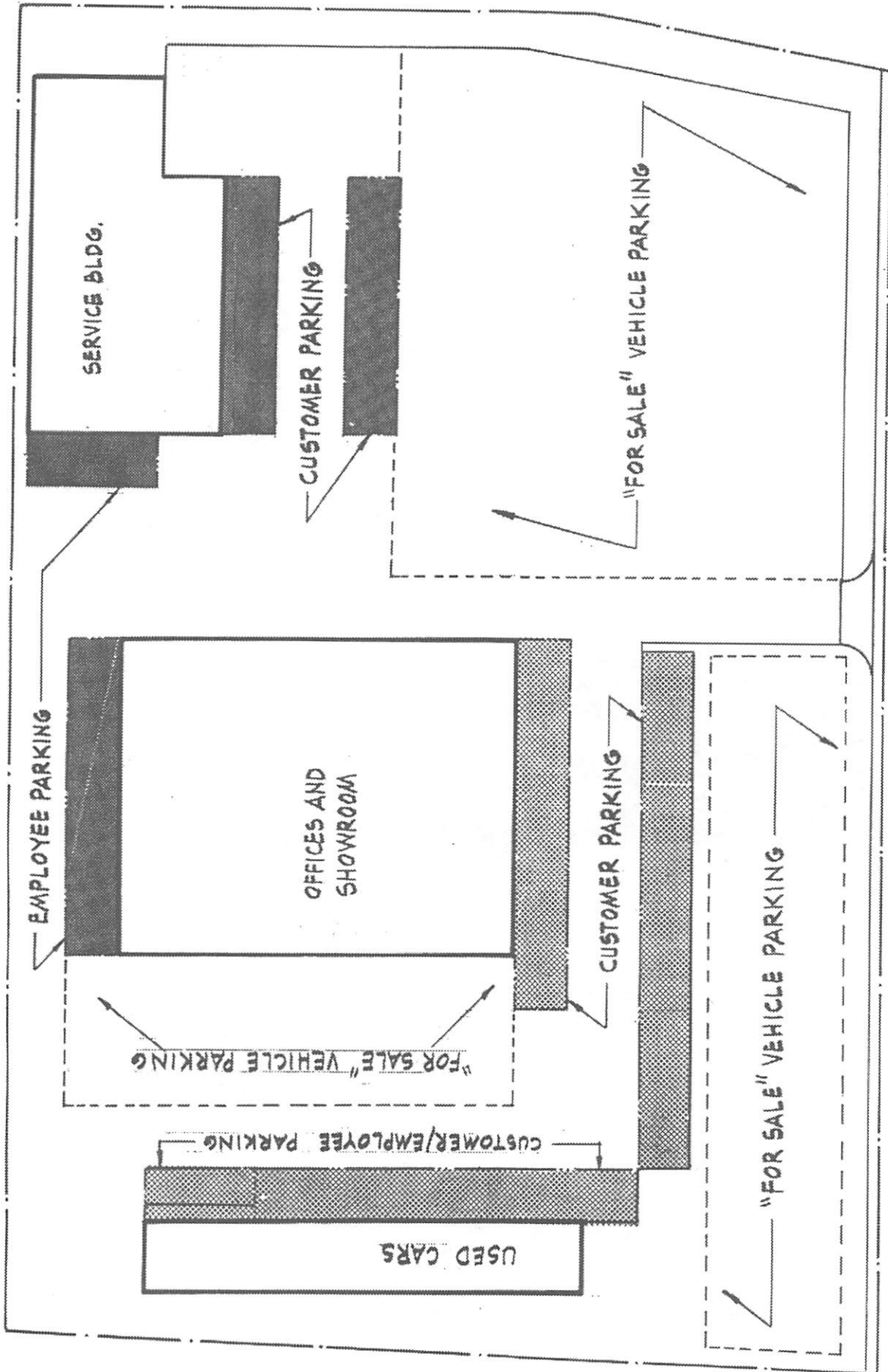
GENERAL NOTES:

1. REGARDLESS OF AGE, ALL ACCESSIBLE SPACES SHALL BE IDENTIFIED BY ABOVE-GROUND SIGNS ONLY. (SEE N.C.G.S.)
2. NEW SPACES SHALL NOT USE GROUND-PAINTED SYMBOLS.
3. ACCESSIBLE SPACES ARE REQUIRED TO BE STRIPED OFF ONLY; BLUE COLORING IS NOT NECESSARY NOR REQUIRED.
4. STRIPING IS WHITE ON DARK PAVEMENT; BLACK ON LIGHT PAVEMENT. (N.C.D.O.T.)



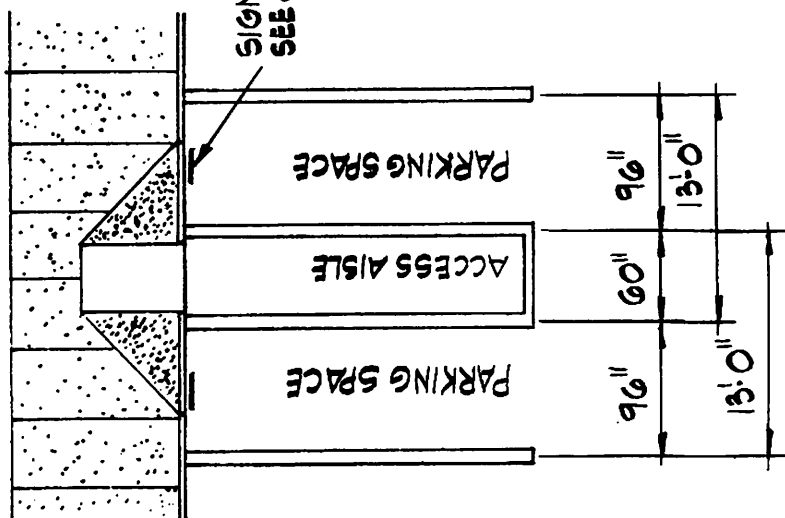
- ACCESS AISLES SHALL BE CLEARLY MARKED OUT:
1. METHODS FOR MARKING ARE NOT LIMITED TO THE EXAMPLES ILLUSTRATED ABOVE.
 2. CHANGE IN MATERIALS INCLUDES COMPLIANCE WITH CHAPTER 9 BOTH AT THE TRANSITION PERIMETER AND IN THE ACCESS AISLE ITSELF.
 3. FOR UNPAVED PARKING FIELDS (CLAY, MARL, ETC.) WHICH WILL NOT HOLD PAINT, AN ACCESSIBLE PARKING AREA(S) SHALL BE IDENTIFIED WITH THE APPROPRIATE ABOVE-GROUND SIGNS.

4.2.3 - DELINEATION (MARKING) OF PARKING ACCESS AISLES

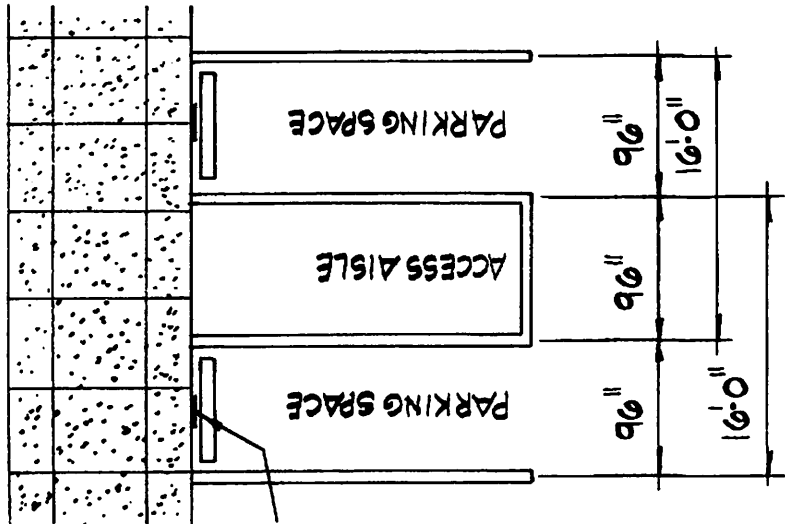


THE ACCESSIBLE PARKING REQUIREMENTS OF THIS CODE APPLY TO THE SHADED AREAS ONLY.

4.3.3- ACCESSIBLE PARKING: AUTOMOBILE/MOTOR VEHICLE SHOWROOMS

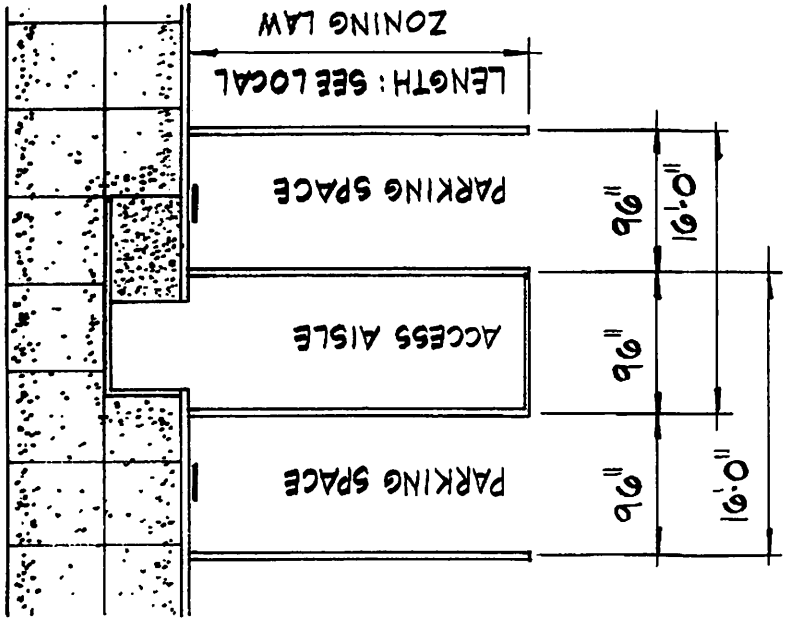


4.4.1-PARKING SPACE(S) FOR STANDARD (NON-VAN) VEHICLES



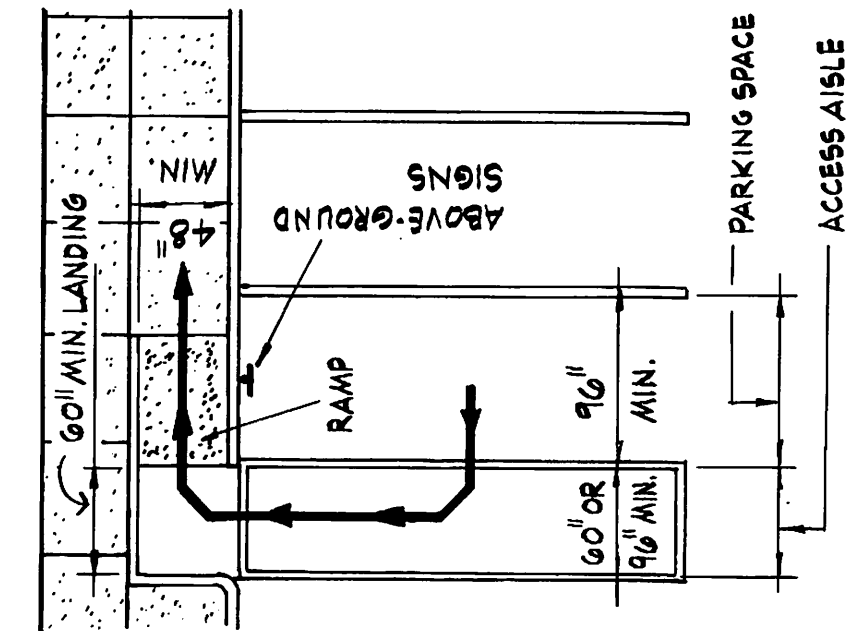
4.4.2-PARKING SPACE(S) FOR VANS

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE MINIMUM

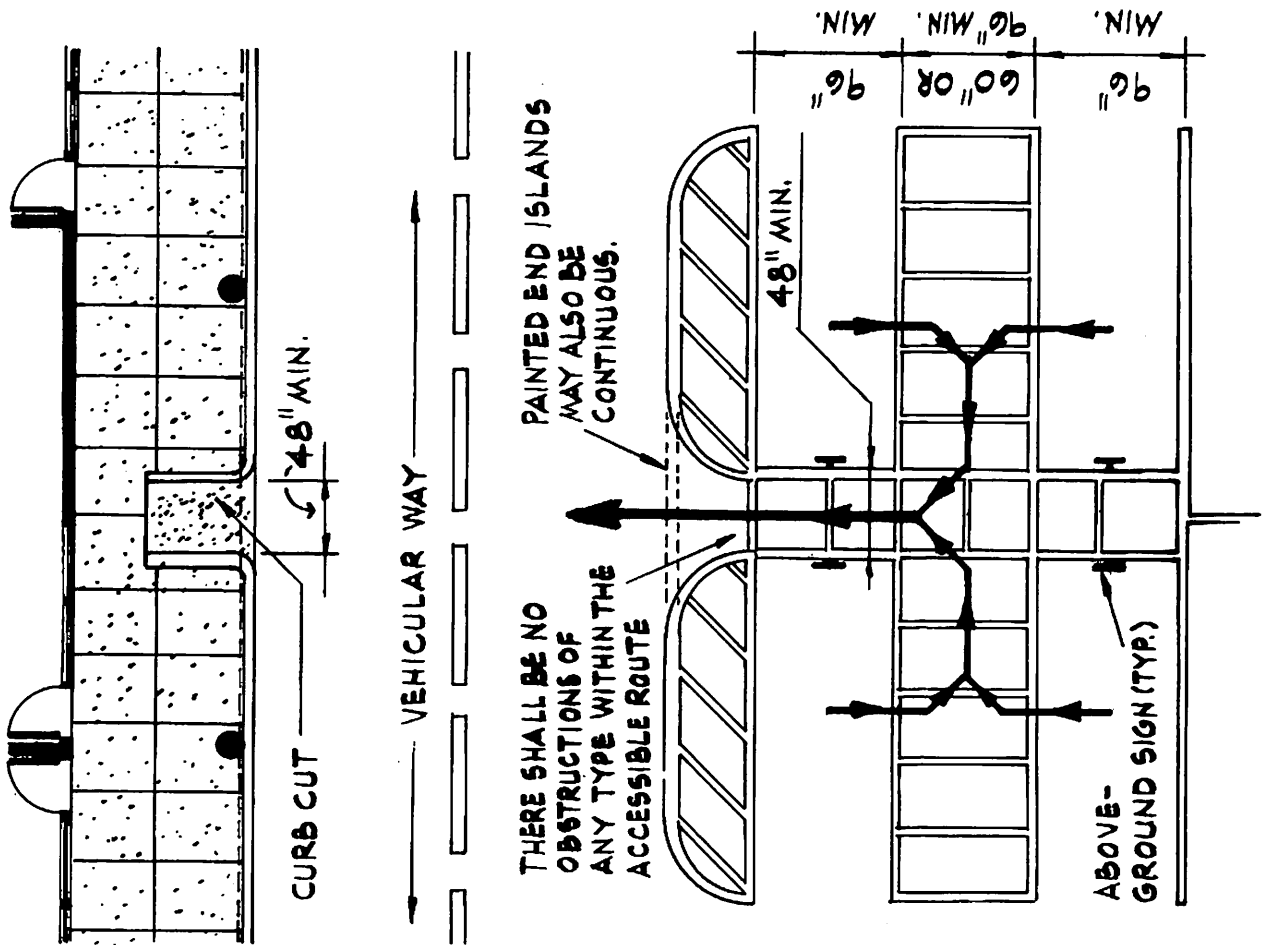


4.4.2.1- IF A NON-VAN PARKING SPACE SHARES AN ACCESSIBLE AISLE WITH A VAN ACCESSIBLE SPACE, THEN THE ACCESS AISLE SHALL BE 96" WIDE.

4.4-SIZES OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES



4.4.3- CONNECTION TO THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE LEADING TO THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE SHALL BE FROM THE FRONT OF THE ACCESS AISLE.



THERE SHALL BE NO OBSTRUCTIONS OF ANY TYPE WITHIN THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

PAINTED END ISLANDS MAY ALSO BE CONTINUOUS.

ABOVE-GROUND SIGN (TYP)

SUPPLEMENT TO VOLUME I-C

¶4.4.3 AND LOWER ILLUSTRATION, PAGE 42 (BOTTOM)

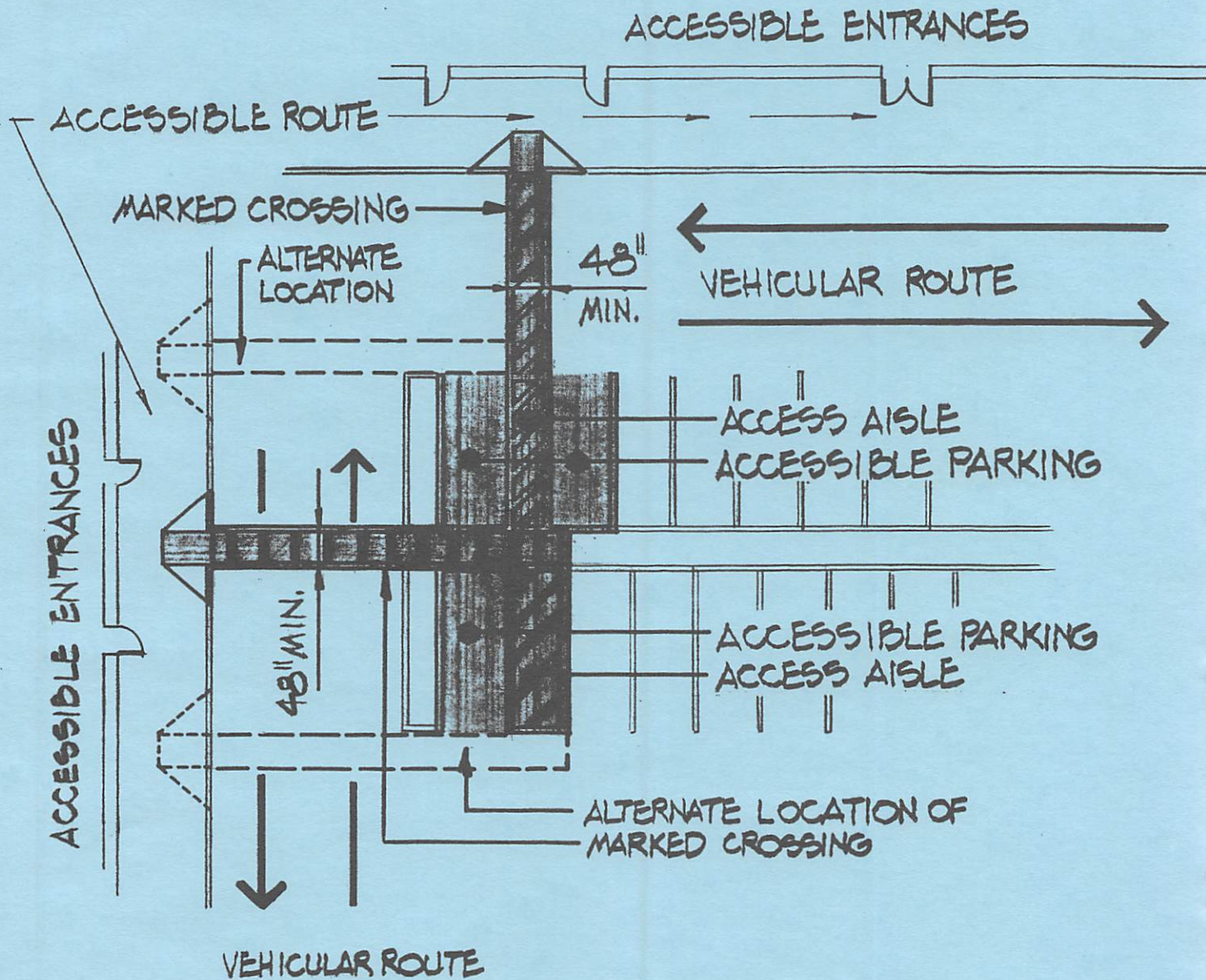
(Clarification Illustration Of May 19, 1999 Added By Council June, 1999)

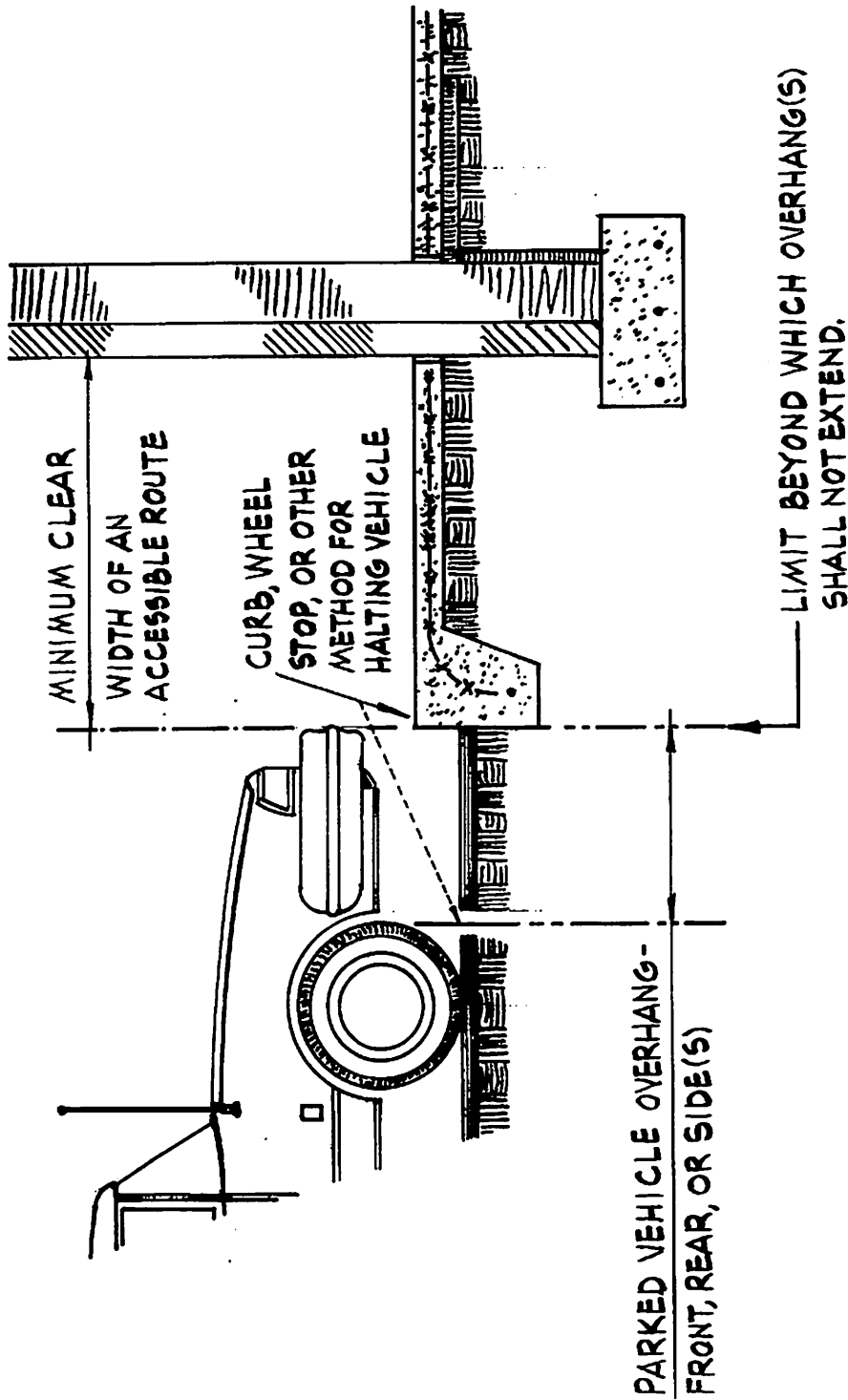
TEXT ¶4.4.3 (REPEATED ON ILLUSTRATION PAGE 42) CALLS FOR CONNECTION TO THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE VIA THE "...FRONT OF THE ACCESS AISLE." IF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES ARE LOCATED AGAINST THE EDGE OF AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH ¶4.4.3 IS REQUIRED (E.G., REFER TO ILLUSTRATION PAGES 41, TOP OF 42, AND 51). HOWEVER, THE ILLUSTRATION AT THE BOTTOM OF PAGE 42 IS NOT ENTIRELY CORRECT.

IF ACCESSIBLE PARKING IS SEPARATED FROM THE EDGE OF THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE LEADING TO AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE AND PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES MUST TRAVERSE ONE OR MORE VEHICULAR LANES TO REACH AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE, THEN A MARKED CROSSING SHALL BE USED AS PART OF THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO THE ENTRANCE.^{1,2}

(1) ADA Title III Technical Assistance Manual, 1994 Supplement, Page 13. See, also, the definition of "MARKED CROSSING" (Chapter 2, ¶2.2.25.)

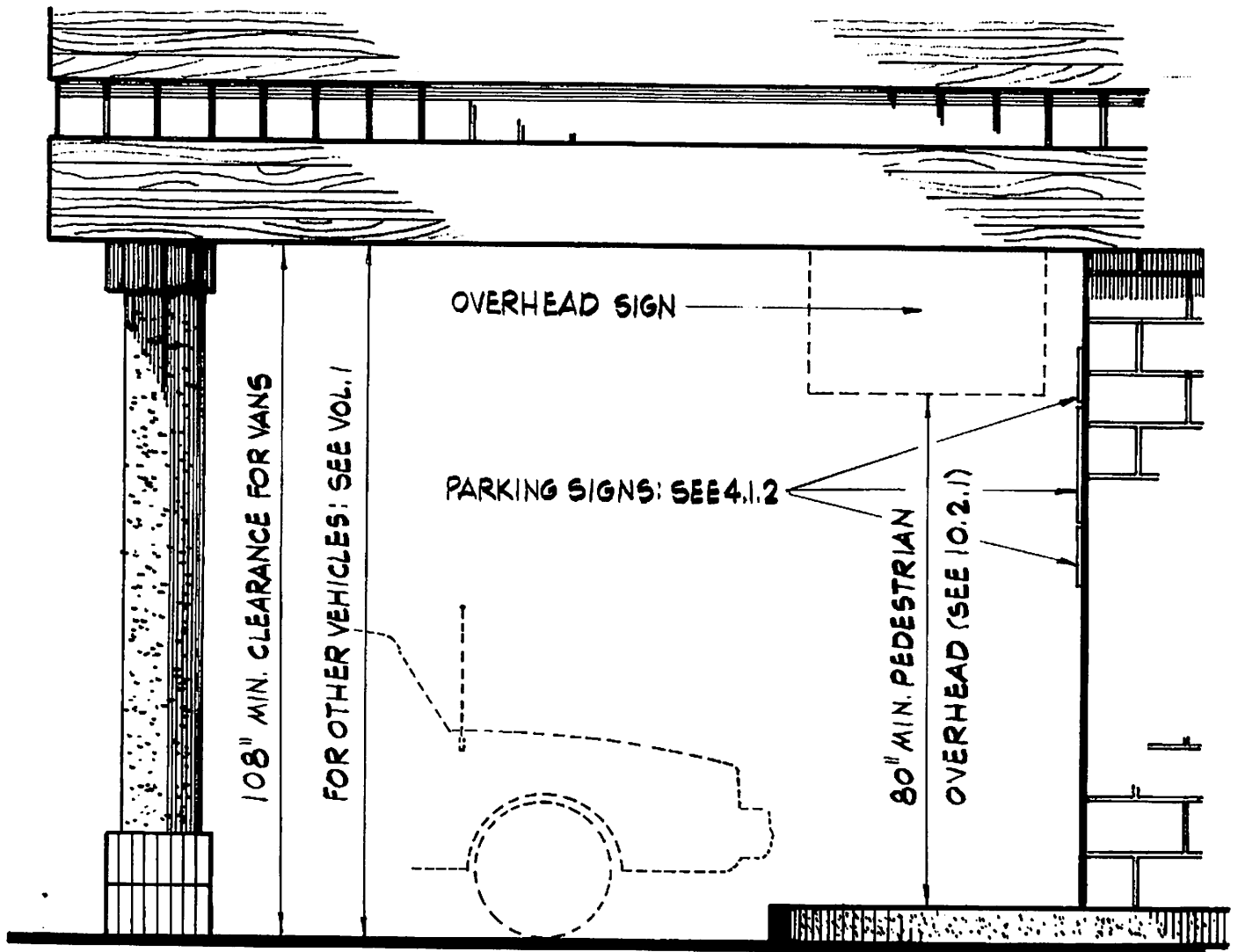
(2) US Department of Justice to the Hon. Christopher Shays (Conn.), MC. (USDoJ Web Site does not provide date for letter.)



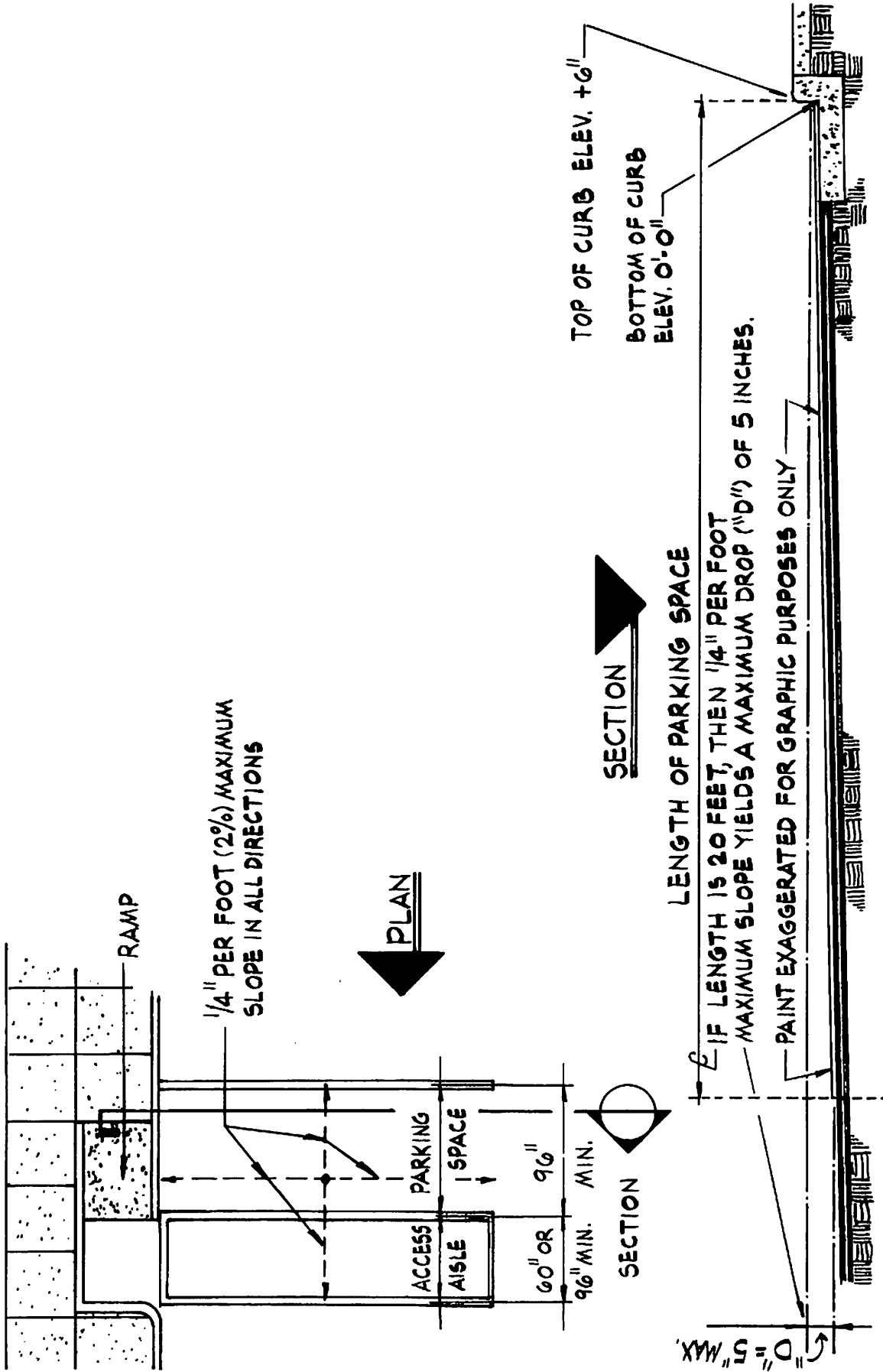


THE REQUIREMENT ILLUSTRATED
HERE APPLIES TO ALL VEHICLES.

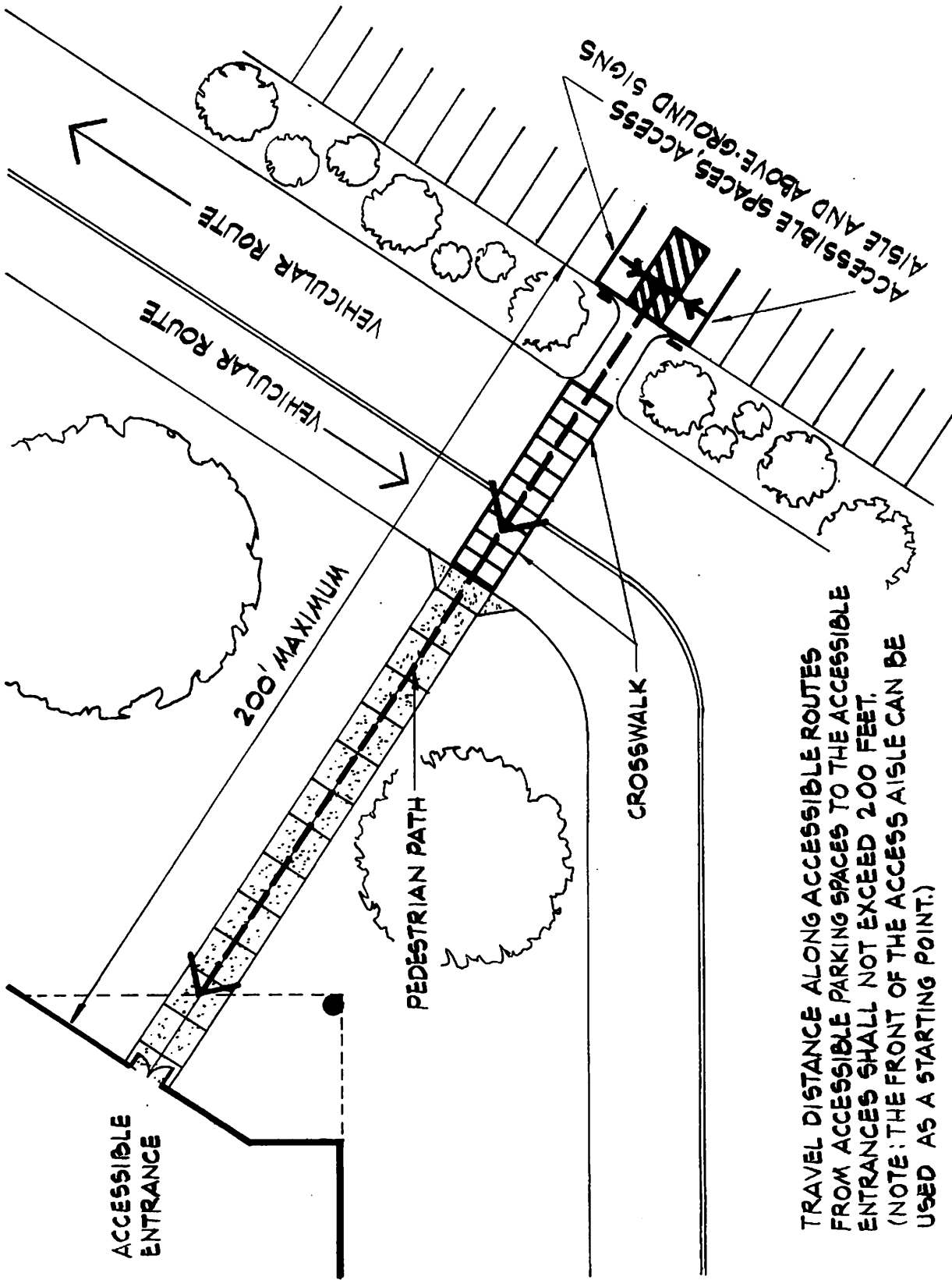
4.4.4.- ACCESSIBLE ROUTE AND PARKED VEHICLE OVERHANG(S)



4.4.5- THE VEHICULAR ROUTE TO, FROM, AND AT VAN ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES SHALL HAVE A 108" MINIMUM OVERHEAD CLEARANCE.

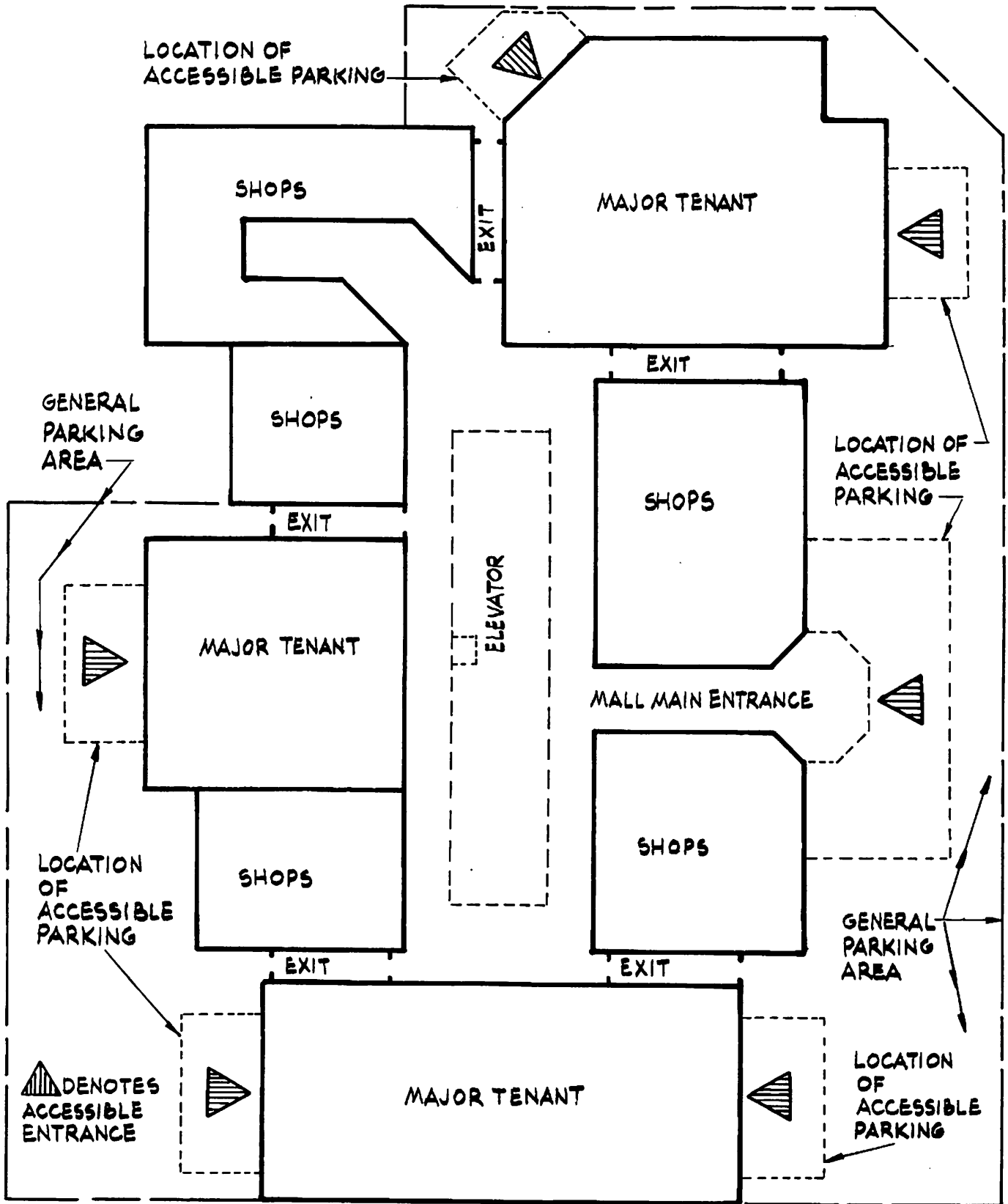


4.4.6- DRAINAGE SLOPE: PARKING SPACES/ACCESS AISLES

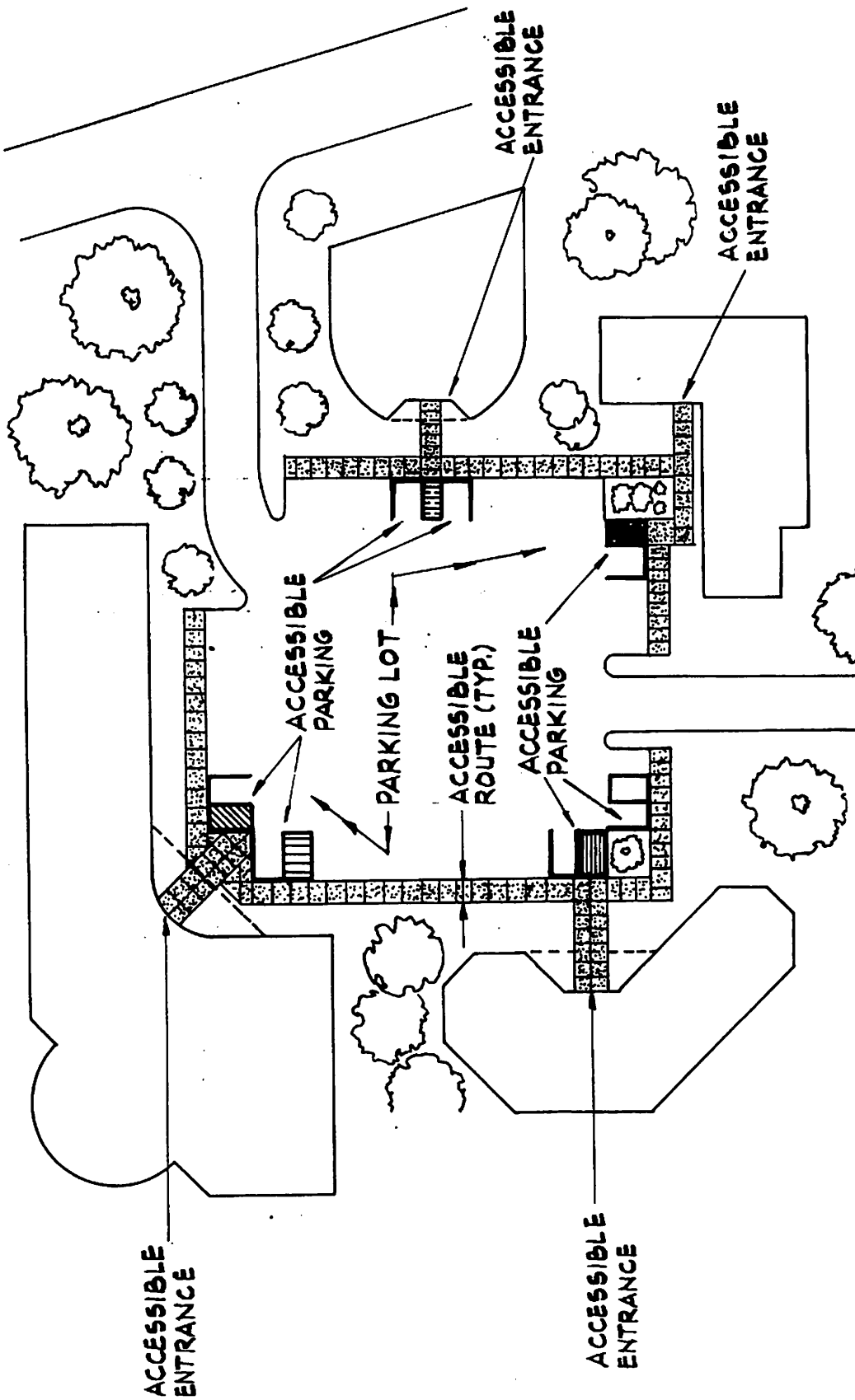


TRAVEL DISTANCE ALONG ACCESSIBLE ROUTES FROM ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES TO THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES SHALL NOT EXCEED 200 FEET. (NOTE: THE FRONT OF THE ACCESS AISLE CAN BE USED AS A STARTING POINT.)

4.6.1- ACCESSIBLE PARKING: LOCATION AND TRAVEL DISTANCE



4.6.1.1 - FOR A BUILDING (OR FACILITY) WITH MULTIPLE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES THE REQUIRED NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES SHALL BE DISPERSED AND LOCATED TO SERVE THOSE ENTRANCES



4.6.2- FOR A PARKING LOT (OR LOTS) SERVING MULTIPLE BUILDINGS ACCESSIBLE PARKING SHALL CONNECT TO THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE LEADING TO THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE(S)

4.7 CURB CUTS AND CURB RAMPS

4.7.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

4.7.1.1 Curb cuts and curb ramps provided at accessible parking spaces shall be located within the boundaries of the access aisle. Access aisles and curb cuts/curb ramps shall be open and unobstructed by planters, curbs, wheel stops, vehicle overhangs, etc.

ADAAG 4.7.8;
FR 7/26/91 At
35432

4.7.1.1.1 Curb ramps shall not be permitted to project into any vehicular traffic lane nor shall they project into any access aisle

ADAAG 4.7.6;
FR 7/26/91 At 35432

*4.7.1.2 Curb cuts and curb ramps shall be constructed of materials that are fixed, firm and non-slip (e.g., brick, concrete, wood, etc.).
Curb ramps shall not be constructed of materials that are subject to crumbling, deterioration, or permanent deformation due to vehicular contact, exposure to heat, sun, light, water, or the weather.

Sim. To:
Vol. I-C, 4.1(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.7.4

*4.7.1.3 Walking surfaces of curb cuts or curb ramps shall have a **48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear width** and a 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum slope. There shall be no abrupt changes where the curb cut or curb ramp meets walks, gutters, streets, parking lots, etc. Gutter and road surfaces immediately adjacent to a curb cut or curb ramp shall have a 1:20 (25mm:510mm) maximum slope.

Vol. I-C, 3.2(b)(1)

ADAAG 4.7.2
(1:20)

4.7.1.4 Curb cuts located outside the 90 degree arc of a curb shall comply with 4.7.2.

ADAAG 4.7.9,
Figures 15(a), 15(b)

4.7.1.5 Curb cuts that are constructed within the 90 degree arc of a curb are diagonal (corner) curb cuts and shall comply with 4.8.

ADAAG Figures
15(c), 15(d)

4.7.1.6 For handrails, see 5.4.

ADAAG 4.8.5

4.7.2 CURB CUTS

4.7.2.1 If the distance between the top of a curb cut and the far side of a public walk is 48 inches (1220 mm) or greater and pedestrians may walk across the curb cut, then side flares having a 1:10 (25mm:255mm) maximum slope shall be provided on both sides.

ADAAG 4.7.5,
Figure 12(a)

4.7.2.2 If the distance between the top of a curb cut and the far side of a public walk is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) and pedestrians must walk across the curb cut, then side flares having a 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum slope shall be provided on both sides.

ADAAG 4.7.5,
Figure 12(a)

4.7.2.3 If a curb cut is located so that pedestrians would not walk across it, then side flares are not required and the curb on both sides may return for the full depth of the curb cut. **ADAAG 4.7.5, Figure 12(b)**

4.7.2.4 If handrails or guardrails are provided, then the side flares may be omitted. **ADAAG 4.7.5**

4.7.2.5 Curb cuts shall have a continuous common surface as required by 3.3.3. **Vol. I-C, 3.3(b); ADAAG 4.7.2**

4.7.2.6 Curb cuts located at marked crossings shall be contained within the boundaries of the crossing markings, side flares excluded. **ADAAG 4.7.9**

4.7.3 CURB RAMPS

4.7.3.1 If pedestrians may walk across the ramp, then the side flares shall slope at 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum. If pedestrians do not walk across the ramp, then the side flares shall slope at 1:10 (25mm:255mm) maximum. **ADAAG 4.7.5**

4.7.3.2 If a curb ramp is constructed without side flares (i.e, it has straight, vertical sides), then handrails or edge protection shall be provided. **ADAAG 4.7.5**
(NOTE: For handrails, see 5.4; for edge protection, see 5.5.)

4.8 CORNER (DIAGONAL) CURB CUTS

4.8.1 The minimum clear width and maximum slope of a corner curb cut shall comply with 4.7.1.3. **ADAAG 4.7.2 (4.8.2)**

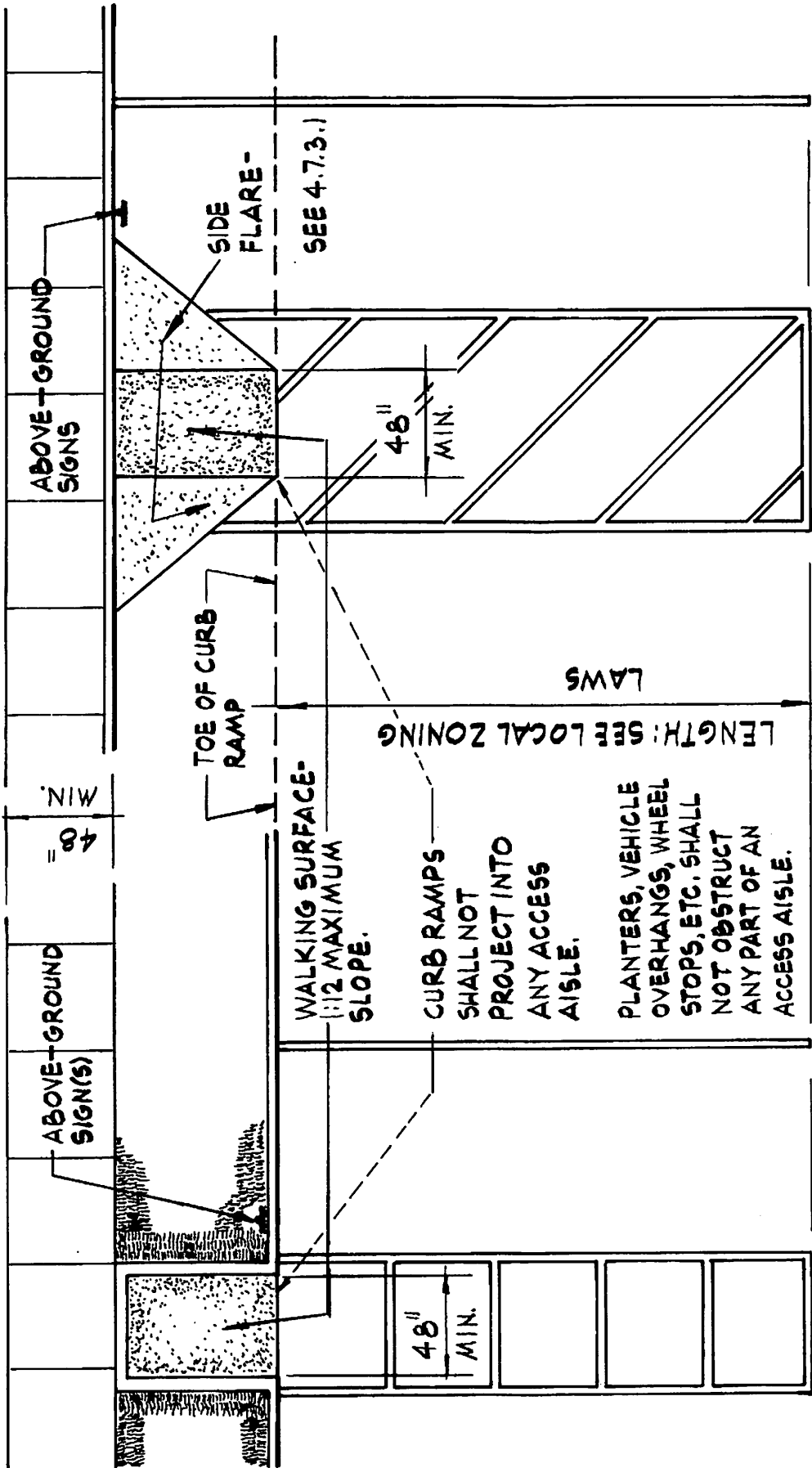
4.8.1.1 If side flares are provided, then a minimum 24 inches (610 mm) long straight curb segment shall be provided on each side of the curb cut beginning at the high point of the side flares and working away from the the curb cut. The straight segments, side flares and curb cut shall all be contained within the crosswalk markings. **ADAAG 4.7.10, Figure 15(c)**

4.8.1.2 If corner curb cuts are provided with returned curbs or other well defined edges (e.g., planter ends, knee walls, etc.), then such returned edges shall be parallel to the direction of pedestrian travel. **ADAAG 4.7.10, Figure 15(d)**

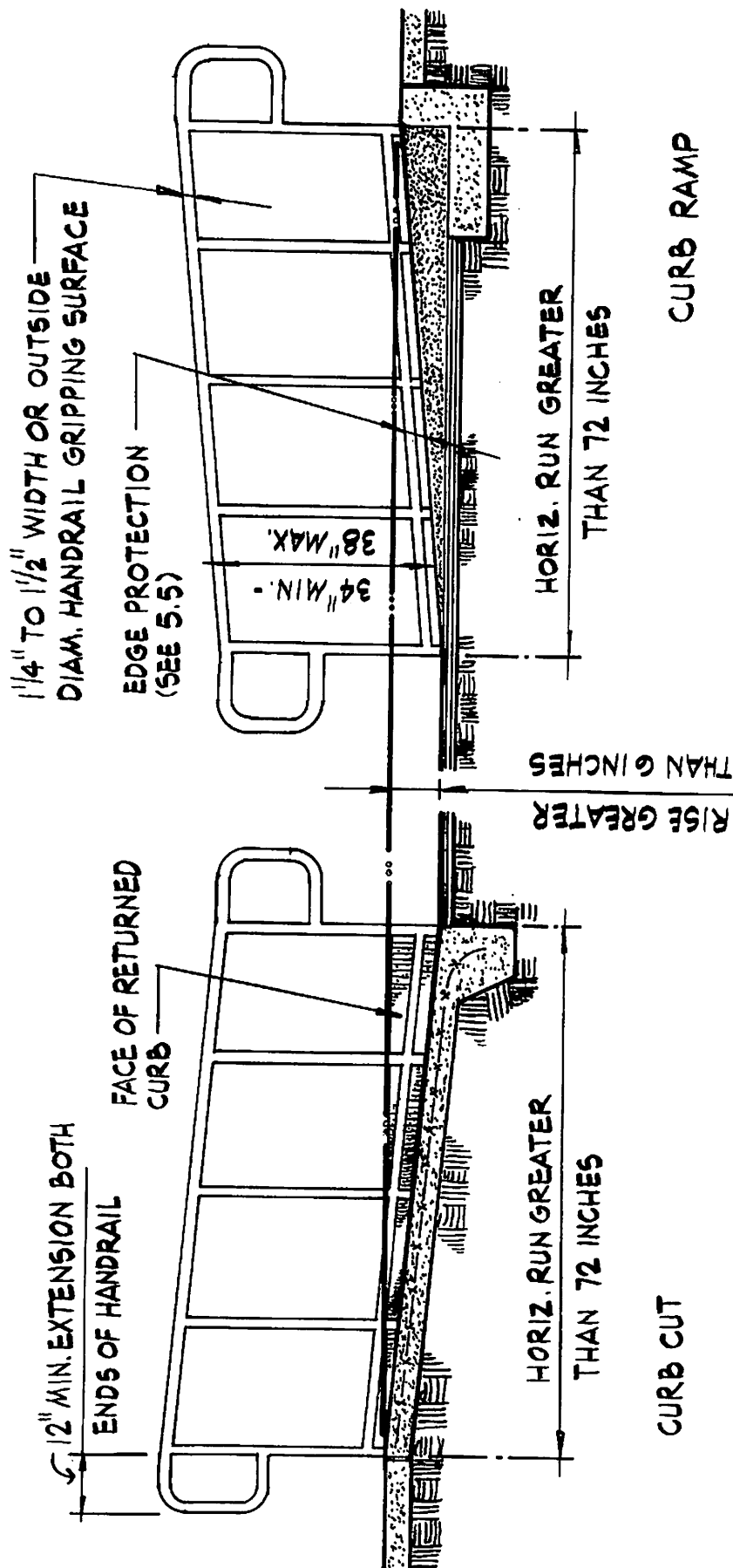
4.8.2 At the bottom of all corner curb cuts there shall be a 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear space measured from the mid-point of the arc of the curb at the toe to the nearest adjacent ground markings. The entire curb cut shall be contained within the crosswalk markings. **ADAAG 4.7.10, Fig. 15(c),15(d)**

* **4.8.3** *Curb cuts or curb ramps provided under 4.7 or 4.8 are not required to comply with the 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) top landing requirement of 5.3.3.* **Vol. I-C, 4.1(d)— NOTE**

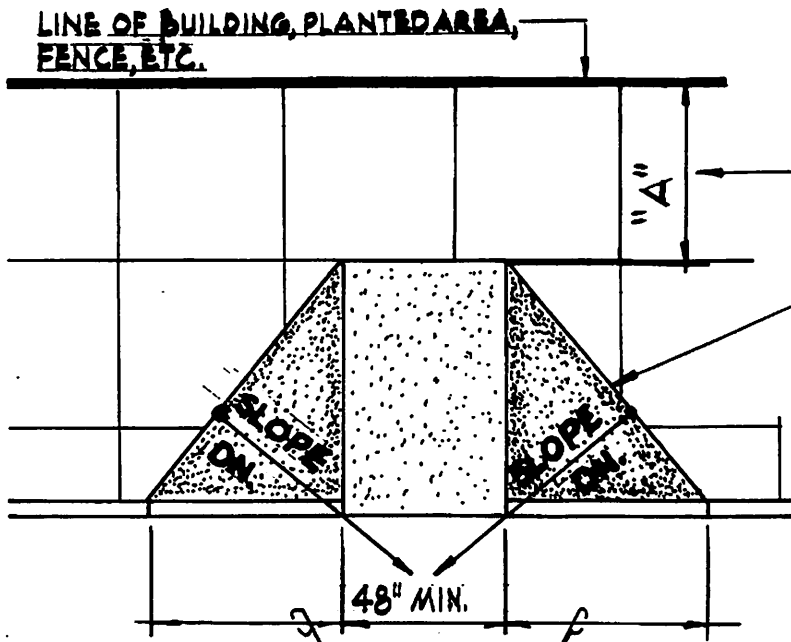
4.9 DETECTABLE WARNINGS ON CURB CUTS AND CURB RAMPS:
(RESERVED) **Temporarily Suspended: FR 4/12/94**



4.7.1- CURB CUTS AND CURB RAMPS: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
 (NOTE: THIS DRAWING DOES NOT ILLUSTRATE ALL REQUIREMENTS. REFER, ALSO, TO THE TEXT.)



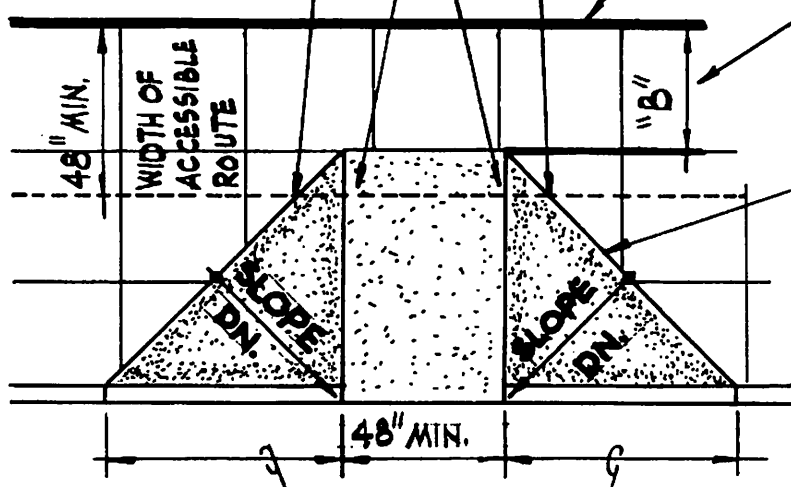
4.7.1.6- HANDRAILS SHALL BE REQUIRED ON CURB CUTS OR CURB RAMP THAT HAVE A RISE GREATER THAN 6 INCHES OR A HORIZONTAL RUN GREATER THAN 72 INCHES.



4.7.2.1-
 IF DIMENSION "A" IS 48" OR GREATER AND PEDESTRIANS MAY WALK ACROSS THE CURB CUT, THEN SIDE FLARES SHALL HAVE A 1:10 MAXIMUM SLOPE.

CURB SLOPES DOWN AT SAME RATE AS SIDE FLARES.

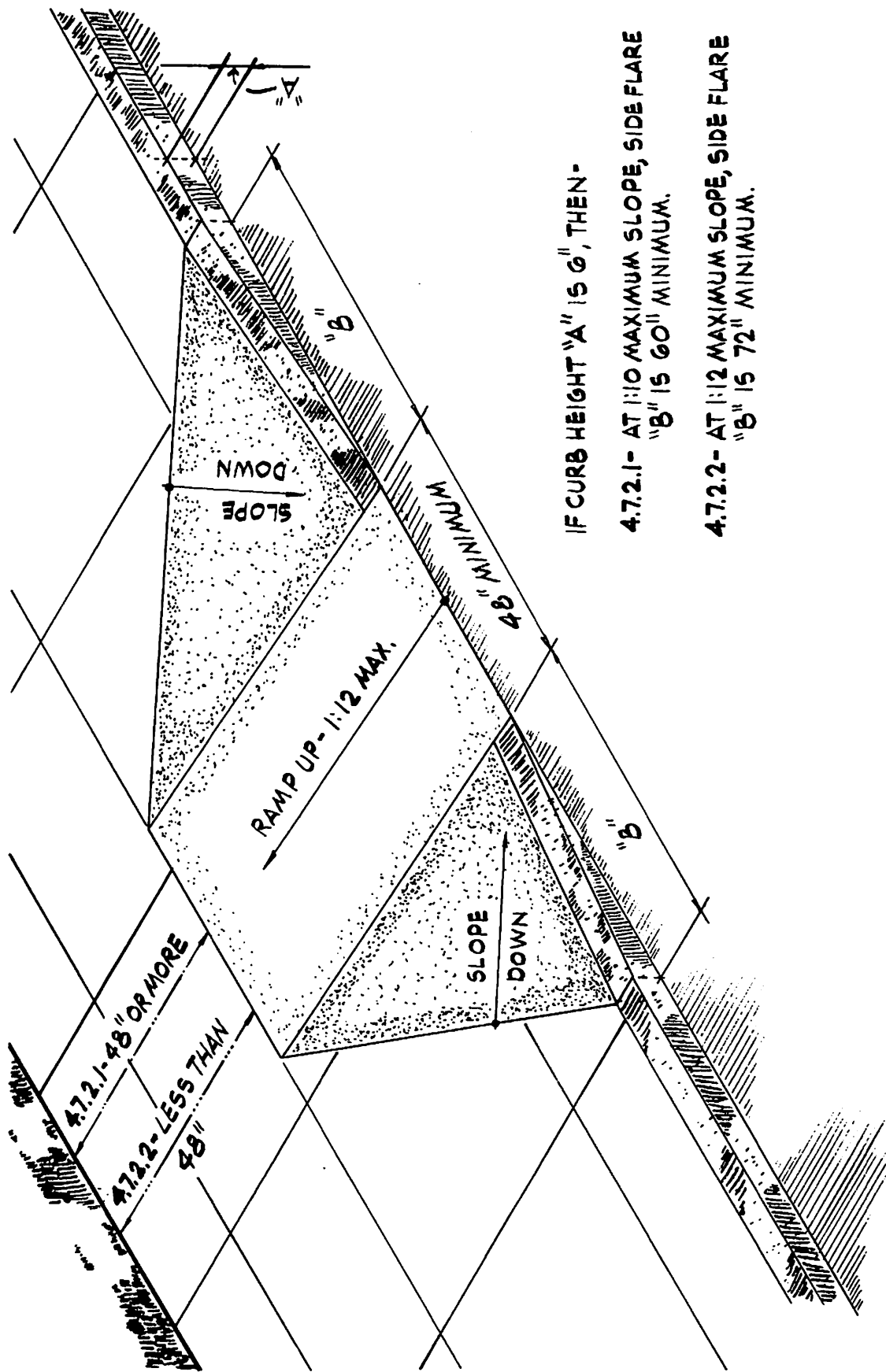
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE CROSSES OVER CURB CUT AND SIDE FLARES



4.7.2.2-
 IF DIMENSION "B" IS LESS THAN 48" AND PEDESTRIANS MUST WALK ACROSS THE CURB CUT, THEN SIDE FLARES SHALL HAVE A 1:12 MAXIMUM SLOPE.

CURB SLOPES DOWN AT SAME RATE AS SIDE FLARES

4.7.2- CURB CUTS AND SIDE FLARES

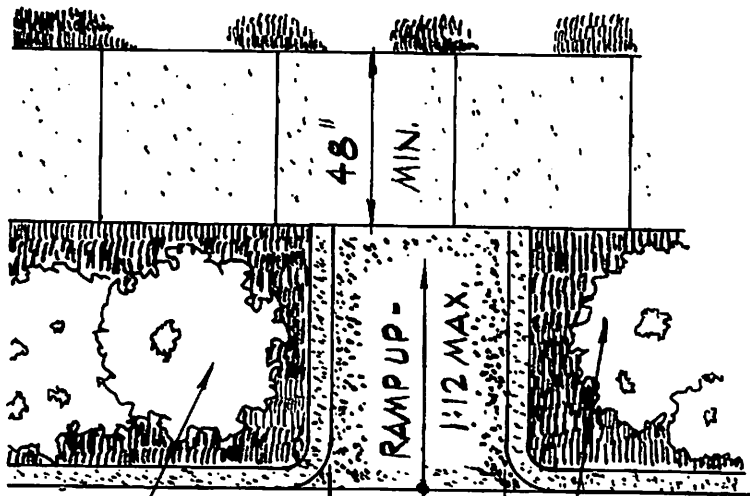


IF CURB HEIGHT "A" IS 6", THEN -

4.7.2.1- AT 1:10 MAXIMUM SLOPE, SIDE FLARE "B" IS 60" MINIMUM.

4.7.2.2- AT 1:12 MAXIMUM SLOPE, SIDE FLARE "B" IS 72" MINIMUM.

4.7.2- CURB CUTS AND SIDE FLARES



48"
MIN.

SIDE FLARES NOT REQUIRED

PLANTED AREAS
OR OTHER SURFACE MATERIAL
THAT IS NOT A PREPARED
PEDESTRIAN PATH

RAMP UP -
1:12 MAX.



BENCH (SHOWN) OR
OTHER PERMANENTLY
INSTALLED ELEMENT

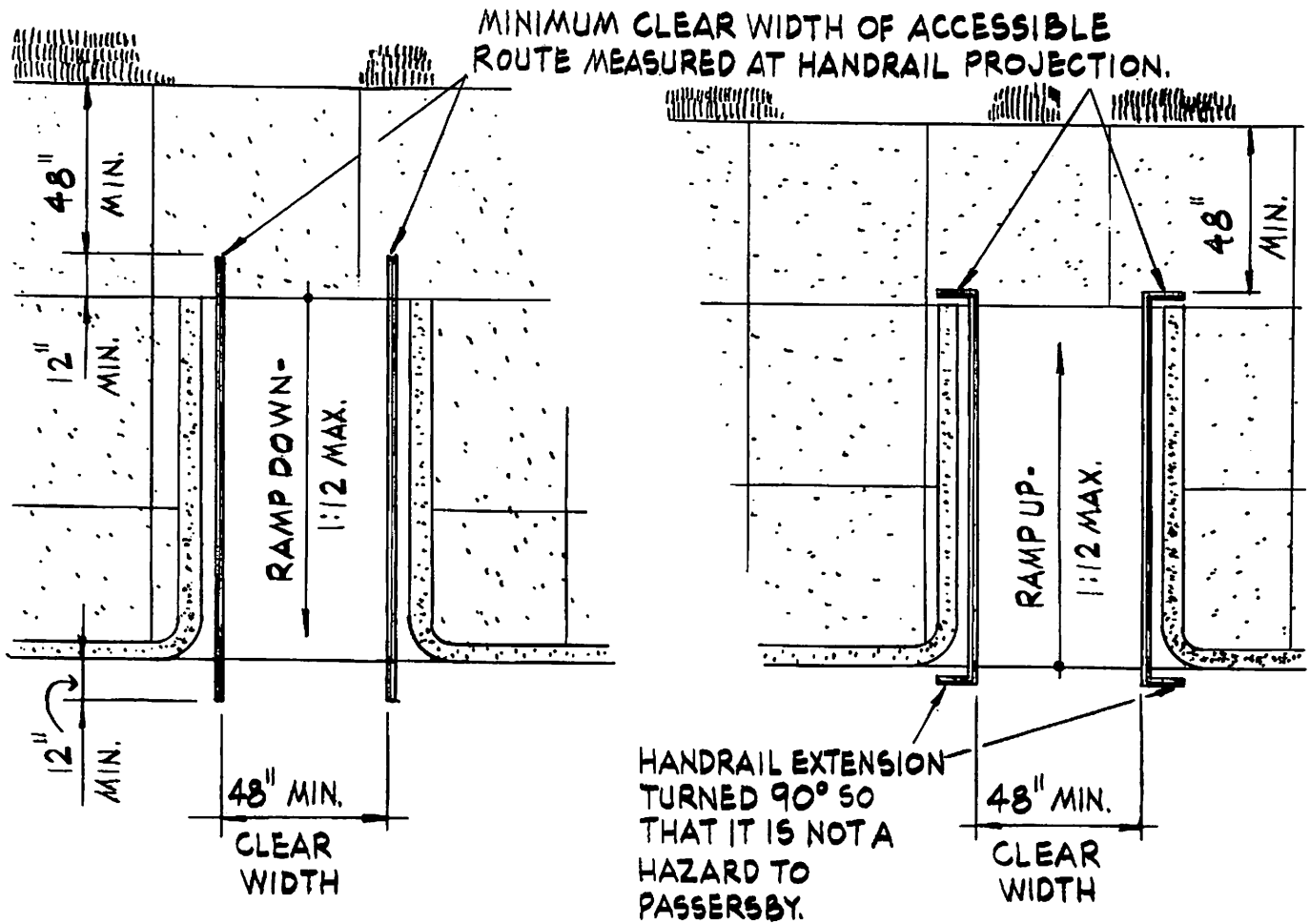
48"
MIN.

SIDE FLARES NOT REQUIRED

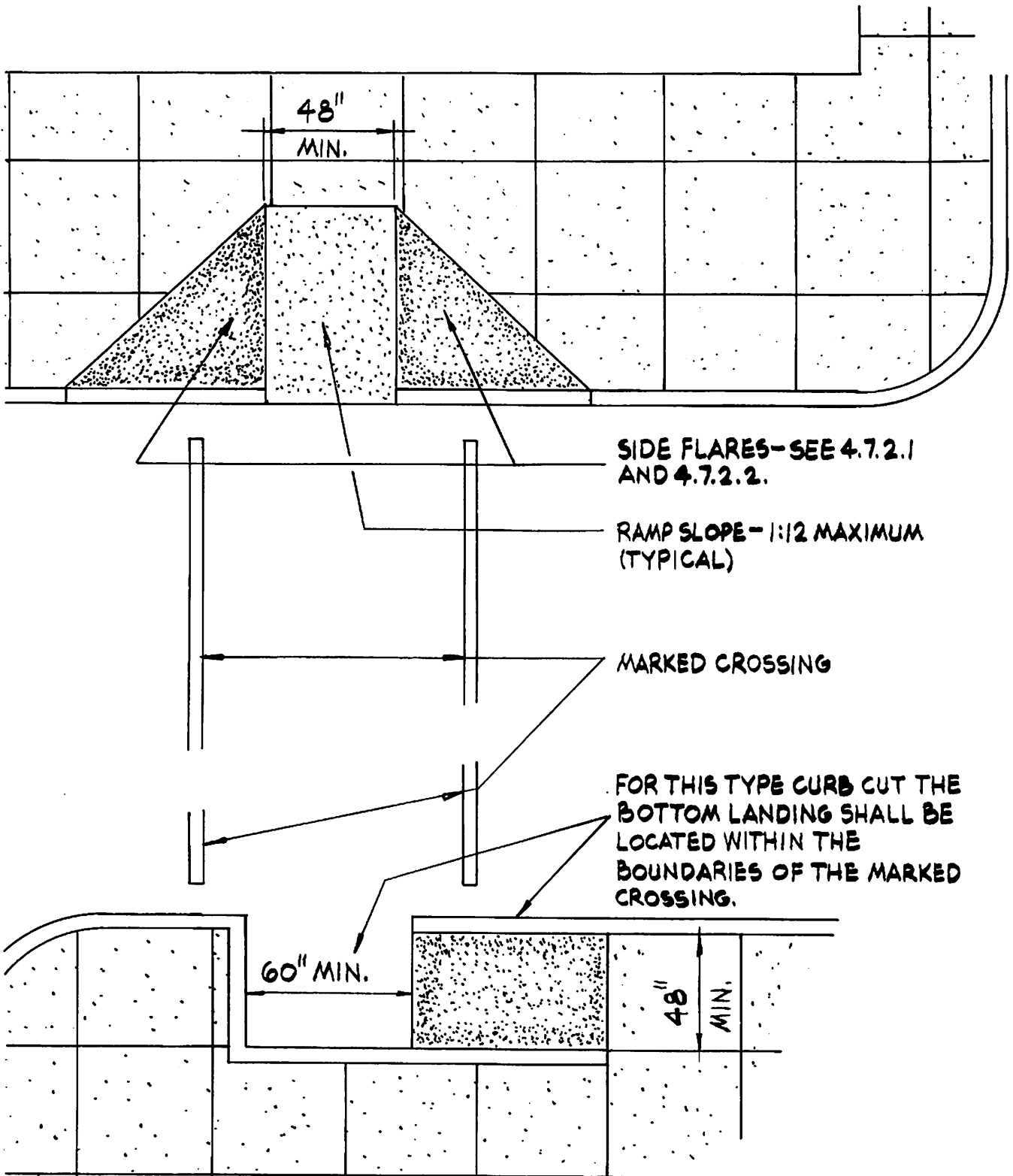
RAMP DOWN -
1:12 MAX.

48"
MIN.

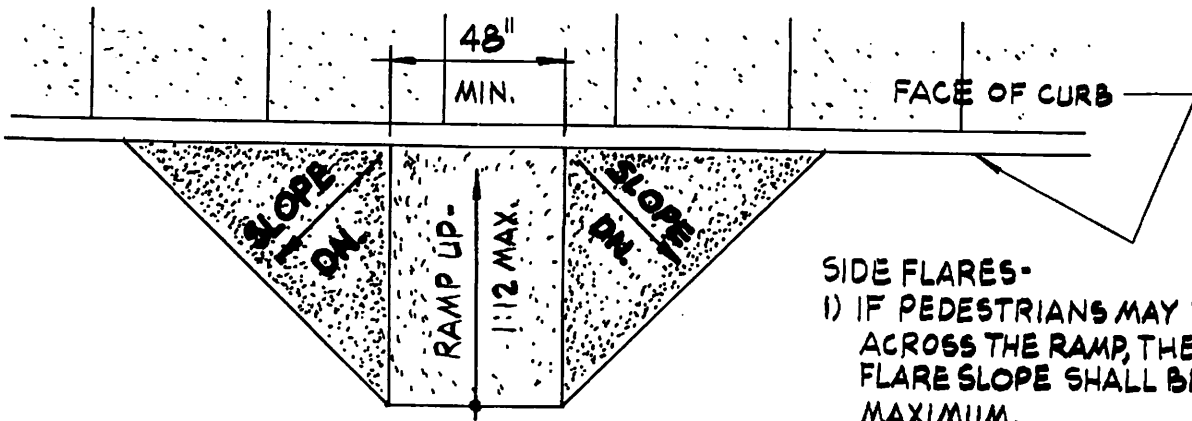
4.7.2.3- IF PEDESTRIANS DO NOT CROSS THE CURB CUT, THEN
SIDE FLARES ARE NOT REQUIRED AND CURB ON BOTH
SIDES MAY RETURN FOR FULL DEPTH OF CURB CUT.



4.7.2.4-CURB CUTS EQUIPPED WITH HANDRAILS MAY HAVE THE SIDE FLARES OMITTED.



4.7.2.6- EXCLUDING SIDE FLARES, CURB CUTS LOCATED AT MARKED CROSSINGS SHALL BE CONTAINED WITHIN THE BOUNDARIES OF THE CROSSING MARKINGS.



SIDE FLARES-

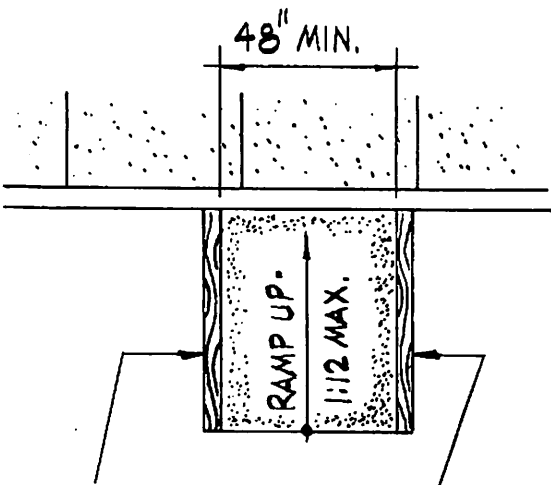
1) IF PEDESTRIANS MAY WALK ACROSS THE RAMP, THEN SIDE FLARE SLOPE SHALL BE 1:12 MAXIMUM.

2) IF PEDESTRIANS DO NOT WALK ACROSS THE RAMP, THEN SIDE FLARE SLOPE SHALL BE 1:10 MAXIMUM.

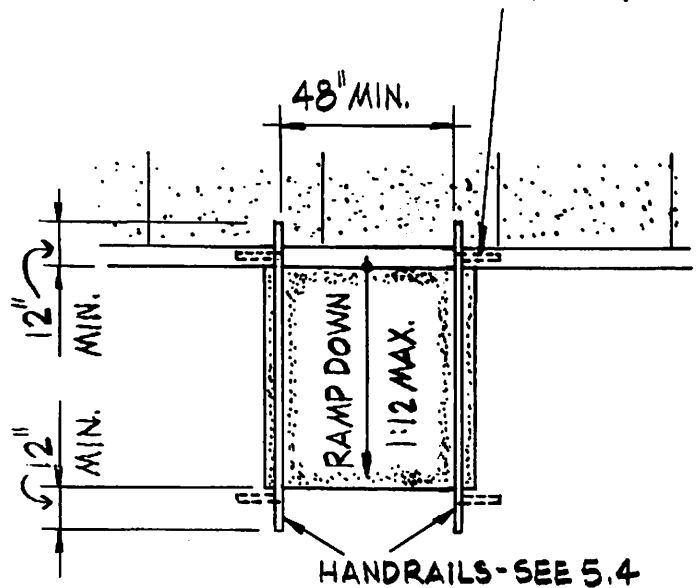
4.7.3.1- CURB RAMP WITH SIDE FLARES

4.7.1.1.1- CURB RAMPS SHALL NOT PROJECT INTO ANY VEHICULAR TRAFFIC LANE.

HANDRAIL EXTENSION TURNED 90°- SEE 4.7.2.4 (RIGHT SIDE)

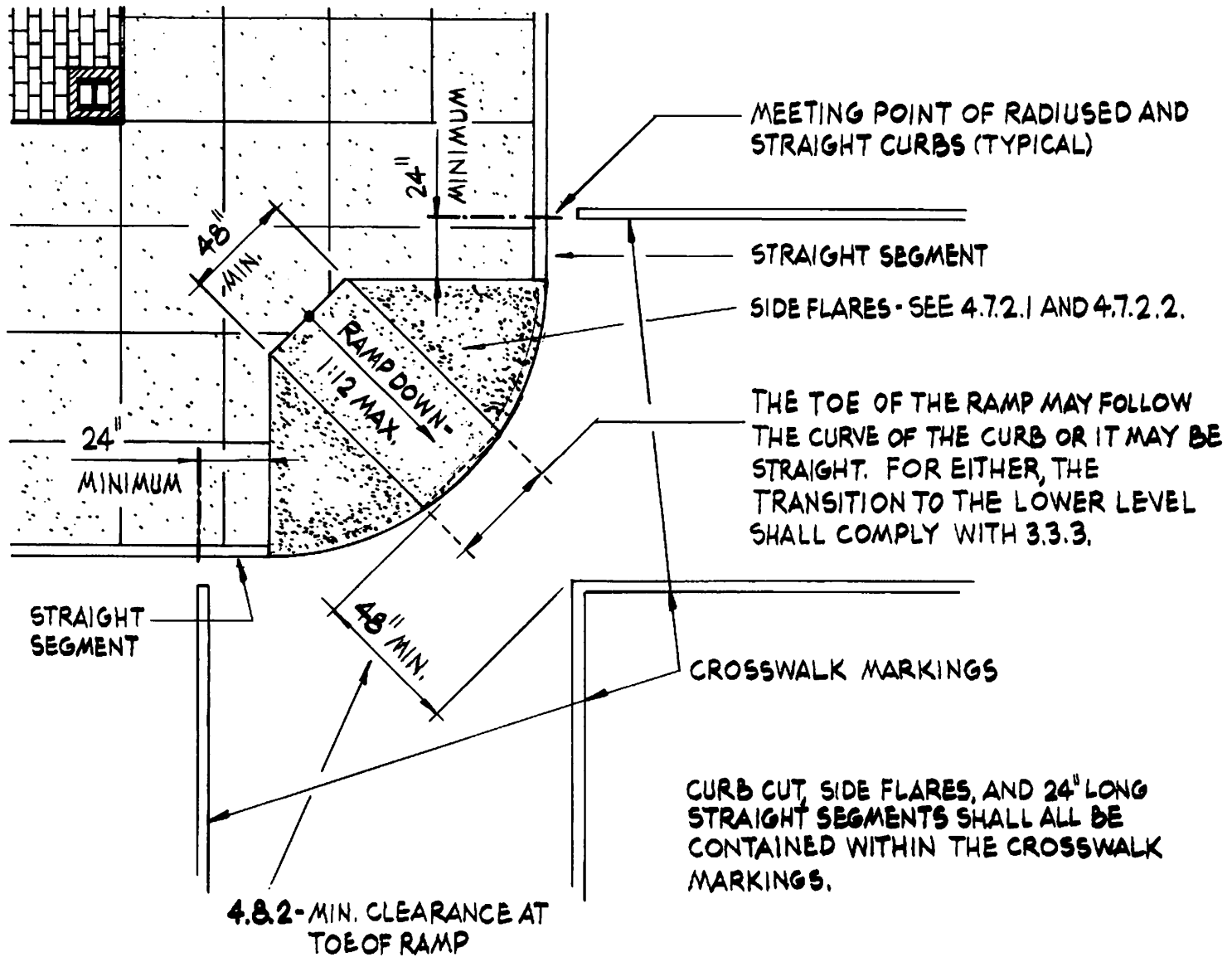


EDGE PROTECTION - TREATED WOOD (SHOWN), CONCRETE, BRICK, CONCRETE BLOCK, ETC.

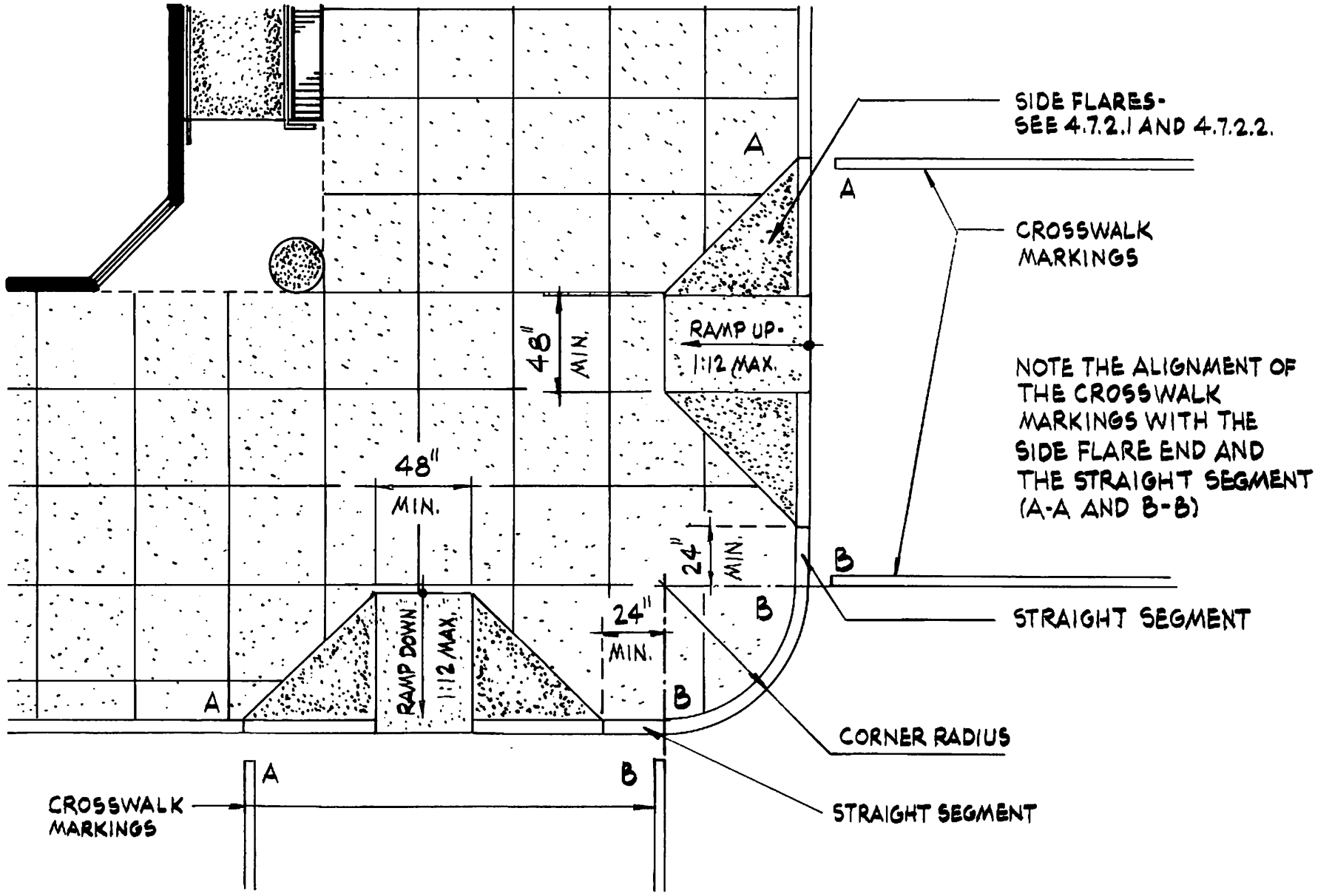


4.7.3.2- CURB RAMPS WITHOUT SIDE FLARES

4.7.3- CURB RAMPS

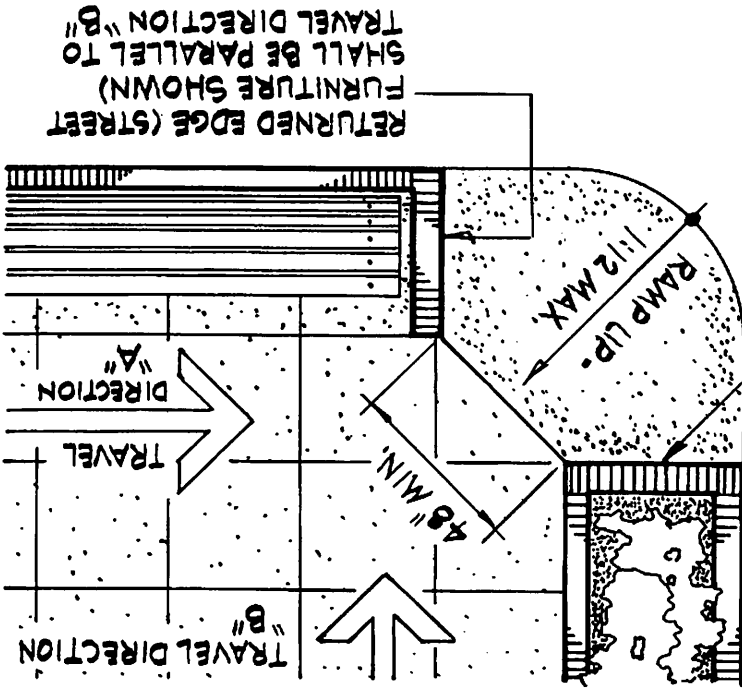


4.8.1.1 - CORNER CURB CUT (PART I - DIAGONAL)



4.8.1.1- CORNER CURB CUT (PART 2- ADJACENT TO CORNER CURB)

4.8.1.2- CORNER (DIAGONAL) CURB CUTS CONSTRUCTED WITHOUT SIDE FLARES SHALL HAVE WELL DEFINED EDGES ON THE SIDES WHICH SHALL BE INSTALLED PARALLEL TO THE DIRECTION OF PEDESTRIAN TRAVEL.



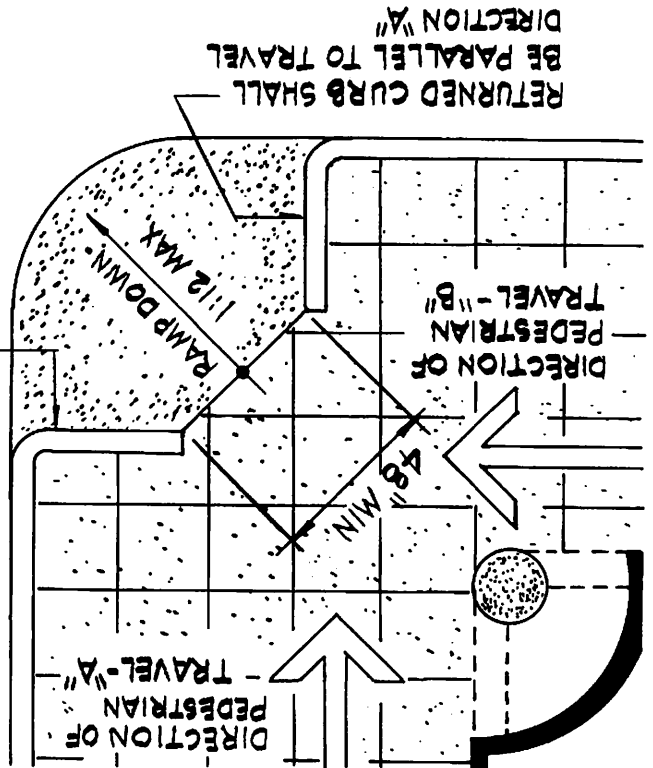
CORNER (DIAGONAL) CURB CUT BORDERED BY WELL DEFINED EDGES

RETURNED EDGE (PLANTER SHOWN) SHALL BE PARALLEL TO TRAVEL DIRECTION "A"

RETURNED EDGE (STREET FURNITURE SHOWN) SHALL BE PARALLEL TO TRAVEL DIRECTION "B"

CORNER (DIAGONAL) CURB CUT WITH RETURNED CURBS

RETURNED CURB SHALL BE PARALLEL TO TRAVEL DIRECTION "B"



RETURNED CURB SHALL BE PARALLEL TO TRAVEL DIRECTION "A"

DIRECTION OF PEDESTRIAN TRAVEL - "B"

DIRECTION OF PEDESTRIAN TRAVEL - "A"

4.10 ISLANDS

4.10.1 Raised islands at crossings shall be either:

- (1) Cut through at the level of the street and have a 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum space between opposite faces of the island; or
- (2) Have curb cuts in compliance with 4.7.1.3 with a 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum space on top of the island between curb cuts or curb ramps. If side flares flares are provided, then they shall comply with the applicable requirements of 4.7.2.1 or 4.7.2.2.

ADAAG 4.7.11,
Figures 15(a),
15(b)

4.11 PASSENGER LOADING ZONES

4.11.1 If passenger loading zones are provided, then a minimum of one accessible loading zone having a 60 inches (1525 mm) wide by 240 inches (6.1 m) long minimum clear floor area shall be provided adjacent to the vehicle pull-up space with the long dimension parallel to the vehicle direction of travel.

ADAAG
4.1.2(5)(c),
4.6.6

4.11.2 If curbs are provided between the access aisle and the vehicle pull-up space, then a curb cut or curb ramp shall be provided.

ADAAG 4.6.6

*4.11.3 Vehicle pull-up spaces and the adjacent loading zone may incorporate ***a 1/4 inch per foot (6 mm per 305 mm)*** maximum slope in all directions for drainage.

ADAAG 4.6.6

4.11.4 All passenger loading zones, vehicle pull-up areas and at least one vehicular access route to the loading zone from site entrance(s) and exit(s) shall have a 114 inches (2895 mm) minimum overhead clearance.

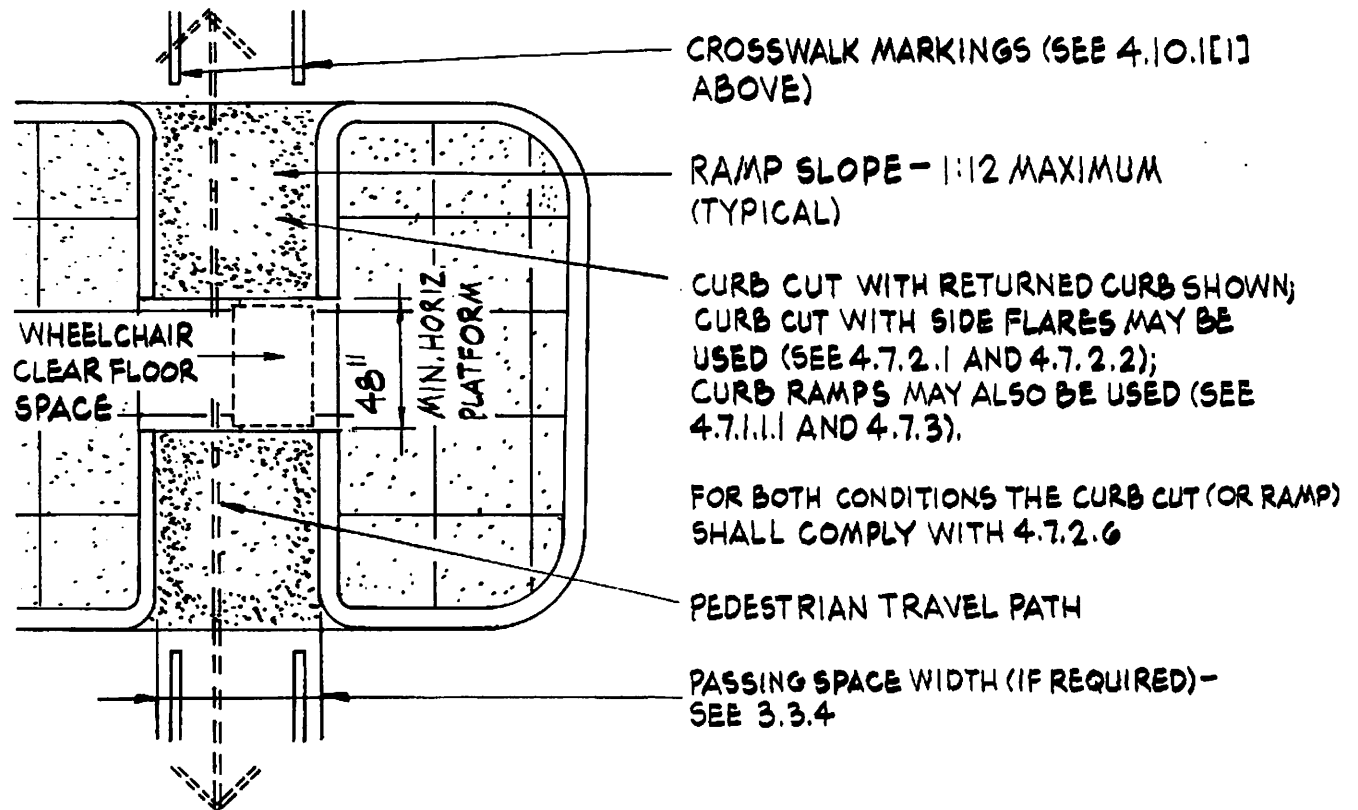
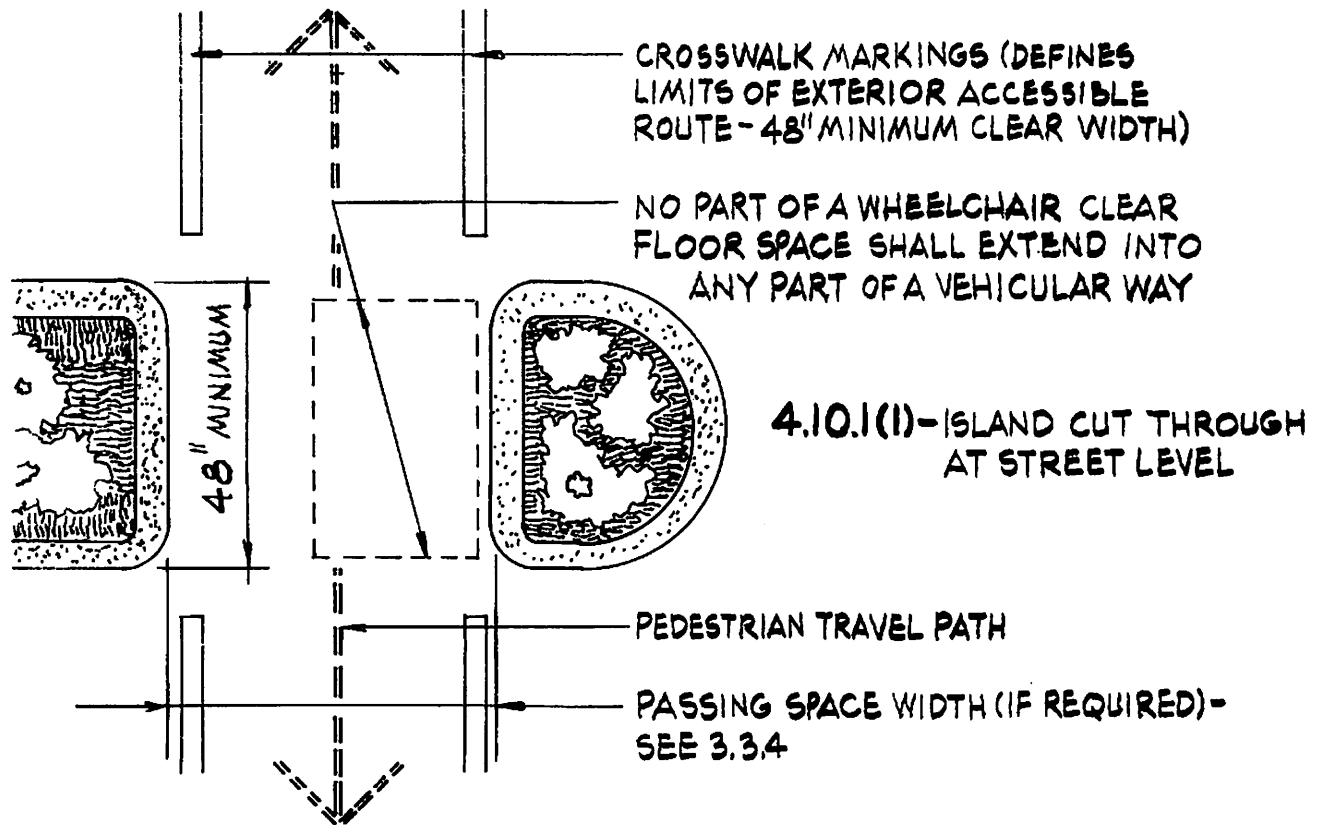
ADAAG 4.6.5

4.11.5 Passenger loading zones shall be identified by an above-ground sign which shall face on-coming traffic. The sign shall comply with 18.1.4 and 18.2.2, and shall display the International Symbol of Accessibility which shall have a 6 inches (150 mm) minimum border dimension (i.e., the unobstructed field within which the Symbol is located).

ADAAG 4.1.2(7)(b),
4.30.3, And 4.30.7

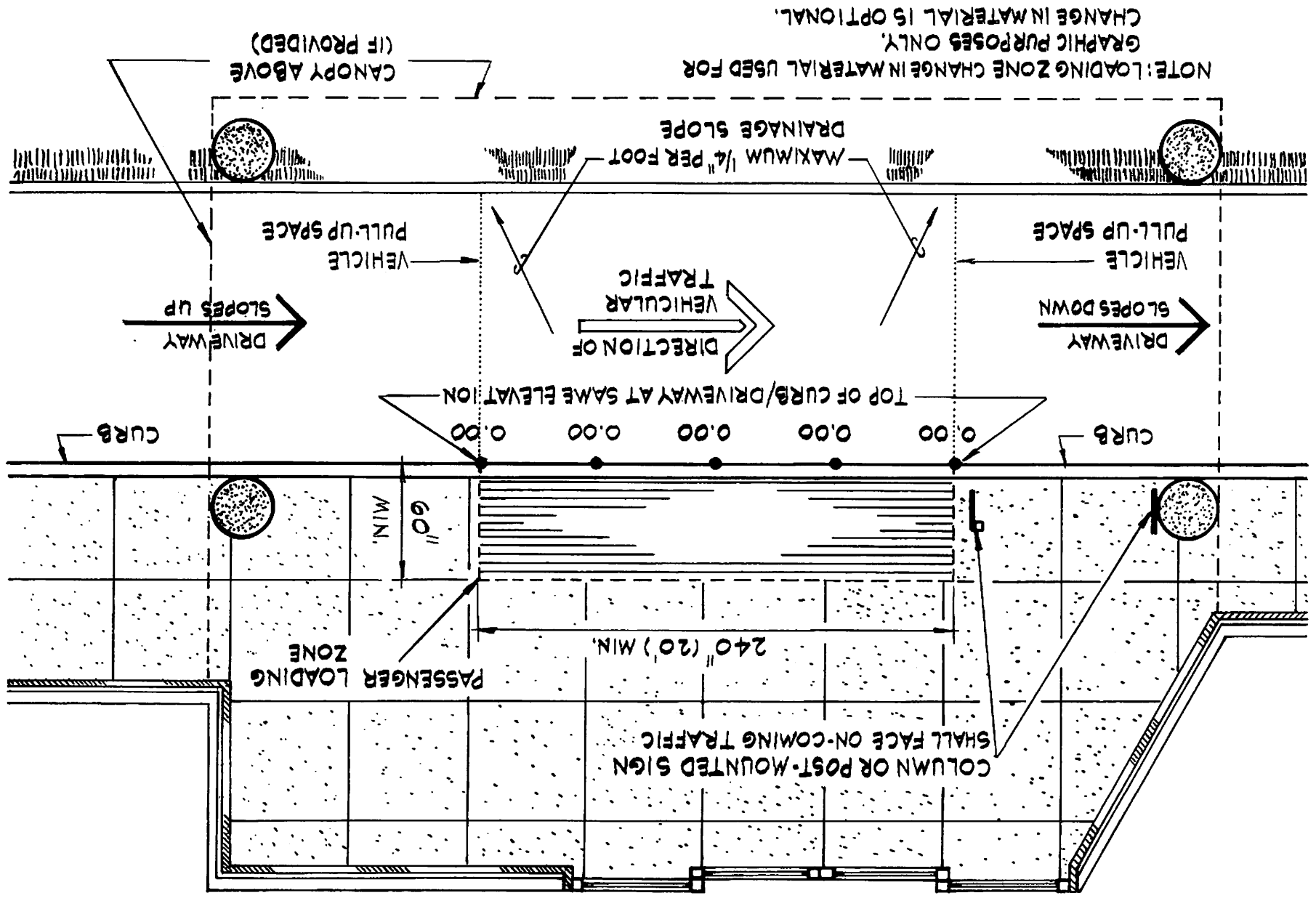
*4.11.5.1 ***The sign shall be permanently installed on fixed building elements (e.g., wall, retaining wall, column, etc.) or a post or pylon. For any installation the bottom of the sign shall be 84 inches (2135 mm) above the finished floor or ground level.***

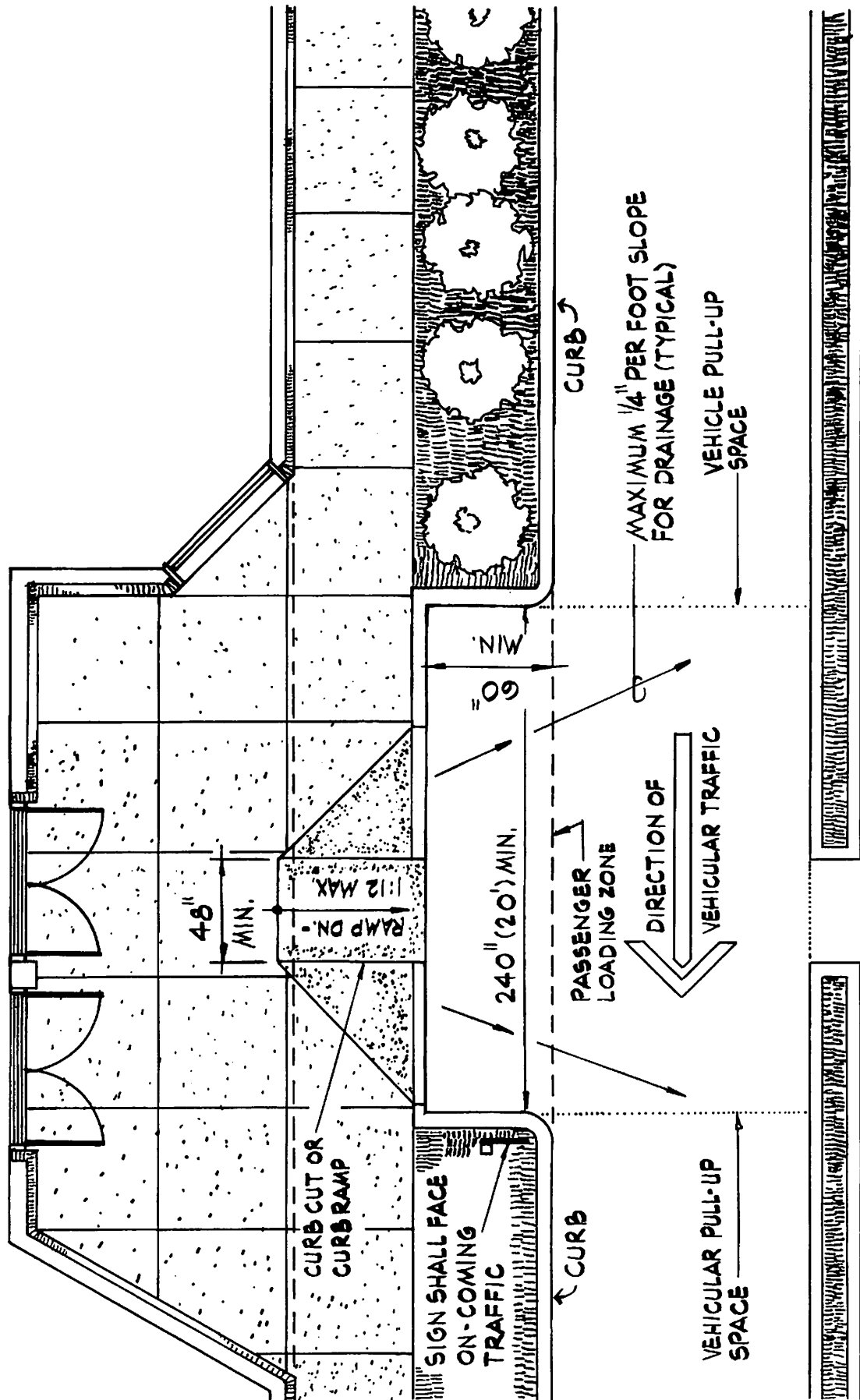
ADAAG Does Not Give
Height;
84" Consistent With NC
Dept. Of Transportation
Regulation For Height
Of Parking Signs (See
Illustration For 4.1.2)



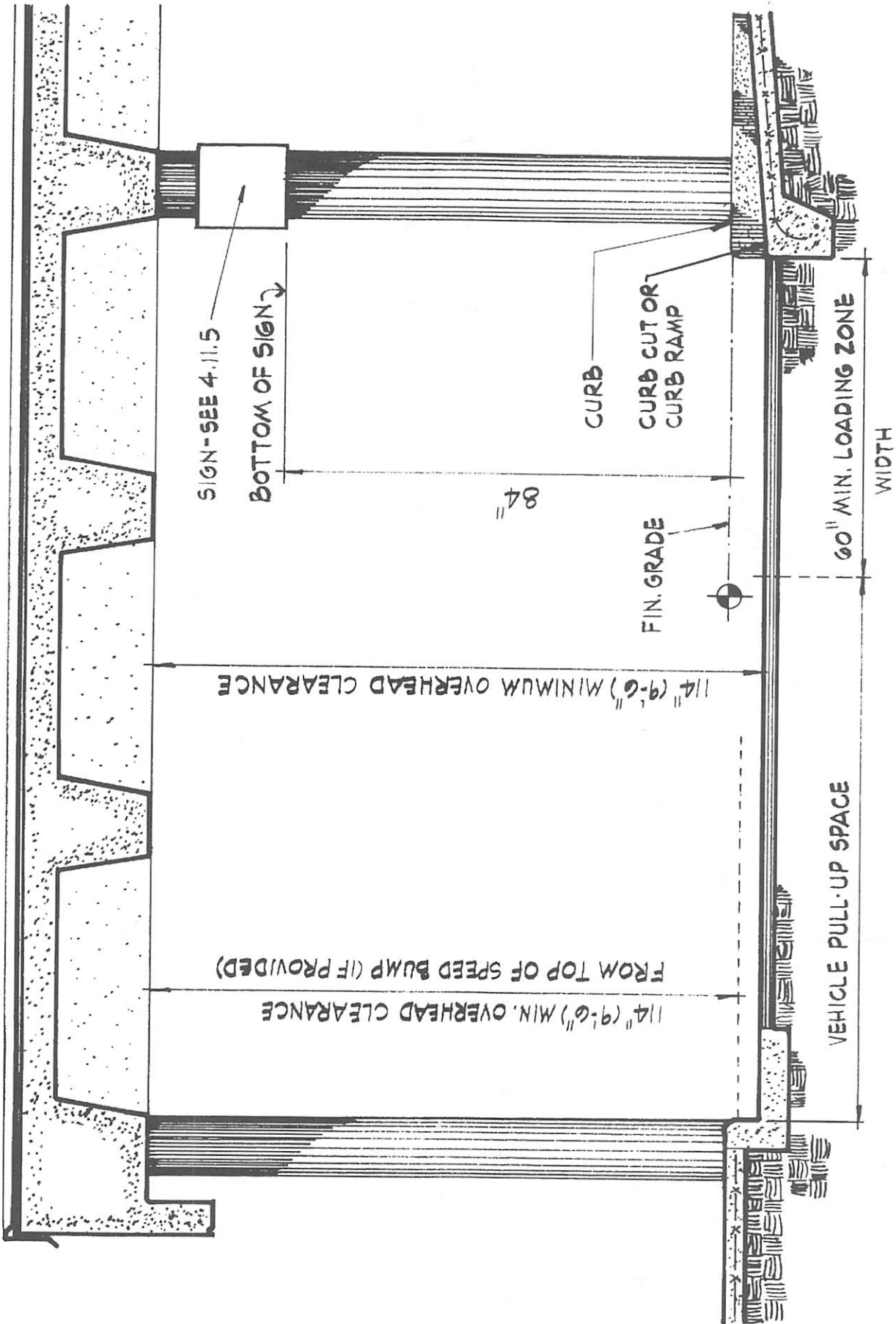
4.10.1(2) - ACCESSIBLE ROUTE CONTINUATION OVER RAISED ISLAND

4.11 - PASSENGER LOADING ZONE (EXAMPLE 1)



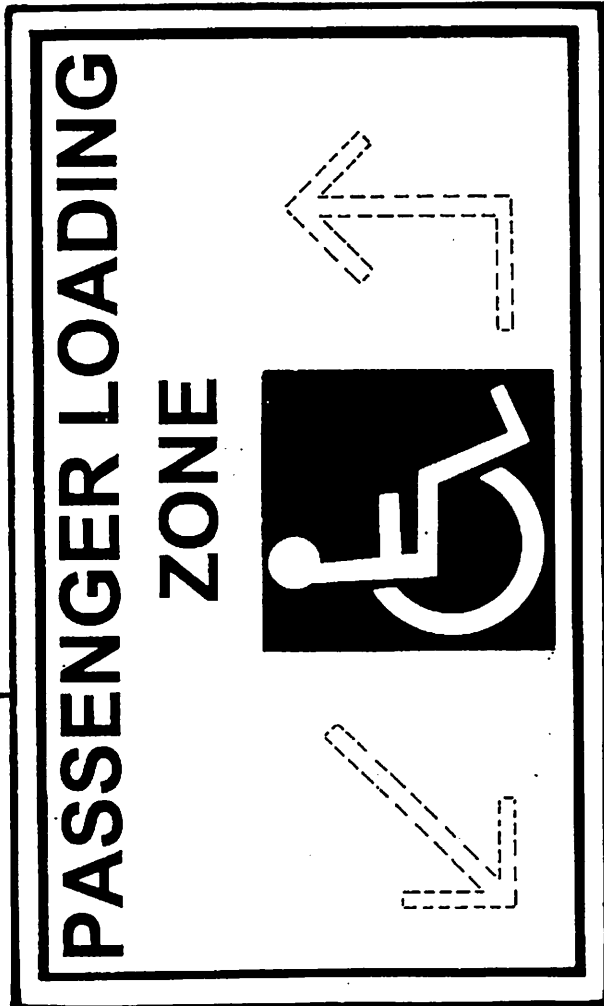


4.11- PASSENGER LOADING ZONE (EXAMPLE 2)

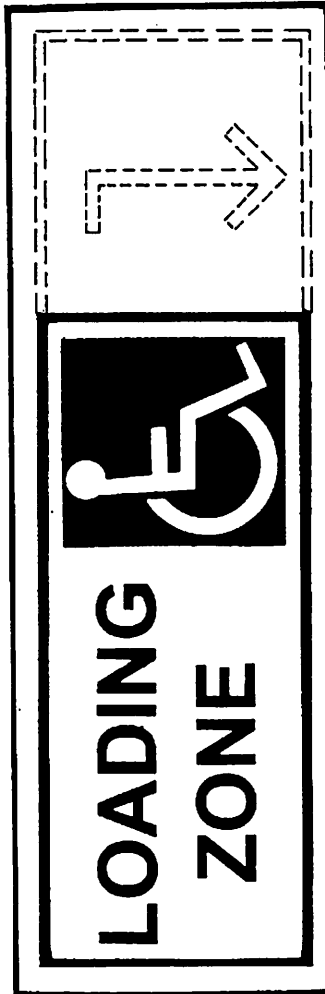


4.11.4-OVERHEAD CLEARANCE AT LOADING ZONE, VEHICLE PULL-UP AREA, AND VEHICLE ACCESS ROUTE

EXAMPLE 1



EXAMPLE 2



NOTES:

- 1) SIGN ORGANIZATION IS NOT LIMITED TO EXAMPLES SHOWN.
- 2) INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL SHALL ALWAYS BE PART OF ANY SIGN. BORDER DIMENSION IS 6" MINIMUM.
- 3) USE OF ARROWS IS OPTIONAL.
- 4) SIGN SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.4 AND 18.2.2.
- 5) STANDARD COLORS:
INTL. SYMBOL - BLUE FIELD/WHITE FIGURE
BACKGROUND - WHITE
LETTERS/BORDER - GREEN
ARROW - GREEN
- 6) OTHER COLORS MAY BE USED - SIGN SHALL STILL COMPLY WITH 18.1.4 AND 18.2.2.



4.11.5 - LOADING ZONE IDENTIFICATION SIGN

CHAPTER 5 RAMPS

5.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- 5.1.1 Inclined walking surfaces conforming to Definition 2.2.31 shall comply with this Chapter. Vol. I-C, 4.1(a)(1); ADAAG 4.8.1
- *5.1.2 Ramps shall have surfaces that are fixed, firm and non-slip. *Surfaces that become soft when exposed to heat, sun, light, water, etc. shall not be used. Surfaces such as, but not limited to, concrete, wood, or asphalt for exterior ramps, and carpet, resilient tile or ceramic tile for interior ramps are acceptable finished walking surfaces.* Vol. I-C, 4.1(a)(2); Sim. To ADAAG 4.8.6 [4.5.1]
- *5.1.3 Exterior ramps and landings may incorporate *a 1/4 inch per foot (6 mm per 305 mm)* maximum cross slope so as to prevent water accumulation on the walking surfaces Vol. I-C, 4.1(a)(3); ADAAG 4.8.6 And 4.8.8; Vol. I (1996), 1013.8
- *5.1.4 *Free-standing ramps shall be capable of supporting a minimum 100 pounds per square foot (488 Kg per square meter) live load.* Vol. I-C, 4.1(b)(2)

5.2 SLOPES, CLEARANCES, INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE, AND PASSING SPACE

- 5.2.1 The maximum slope of a ramp shall be 1:12 (25mm:305mm). Vol. I-C, 4.1(b)(1); ADAAG 4.8.2
- 5.2.2 For the minimum clear width of an exterior ramp, see 3.2. Cross-Reference
- *5.2.3 An interior accessible route (including ramps) shall have a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum clear width (for exception see 10.5.1). On a level plane, clear turning space around an obstruction shall be *48 inches (1220 mm) minimum regardless of the width of the obstruction.* For a ramp, see 5.3.5 or 5.3.6. Vol. I-C, 4.1(b)(3)
- 5.2.4 If an interior accessible route has a clear width that is less than 60 inches (1525 mm), then passing space complying with 3.3.4 shall be provided. ADAAG 4.3.4

5.3 MAXIMUM RISE AND LANDINGS

- 5.3.1 Ramps that have a slope of 1:16 (25mm:405mm) up to a 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum shall have an intermediate landing for each 30 feet (9 m) of horizontal run (i.e., each 30 inches [760 mm] of vertical rise). ADAAG 4.8.2, Figure 16
- 5.3.2 Ramps that have a slope of less than 1:16 (25mm:405mm) but greater than 1:20 (25mm:510mm) shall have an intermediate landing for each 40 feet (12 m) of horizontal run (i.e., each 30 inches [760 mm] of vertical rise). ADAAG 4.8.2, Figure 16

***5.3.3 At the top of each ramp there shall be a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum clear landing.** Vol. I-C, 4.1(d)

5.3.4 Intermediate landings required at straight ramp segments shall have a 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum length parallel to the direction of travel. Landing width shall be equal to the ramp width. ADAAG 4.8.4(1), 4.8.4(2)

5.3.5 If a ramp makes a 90 degree turn, then the clear dimension of the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum. ADAAG 4.8.4(3); Vol. I-C, Page 33

***5.3.6 If a ramp makes a 180 degree turn, then the minimum clear dimension of the intermediate landing shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) by the width of both ramps.** Sim. To Vol. I-C, Page 34

5.3.7 If a door is located at any ramp landing, then the clear floor area in front of the door shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.3. ADAAG 4.8.4(4)

5.3.8 At the bottom of the ramp there shall be a 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum straight and level clearance measured parallel to the direction of travel. The minimum width of the landing shall be equal to the width of the ramp. Vol. I-C, 4.1(e); ADAAG 4.8.4(2)

5.4 HANDRAILS

5.4.1 If a ramp has a rise greater than 6 inches (150 mm) or a horizontal run greater than 72 inches (1830 mm), then it shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails are not required adjacent to seating in assembly areas. ADAAG 4.8.5

5.4.2 Handrails shall comply with the following:

(1) Gripping surfaces shall be between 1-1/4 inches and 1-1/2 inches (32 mm to 38 mm) width or outside diameter. The use of 1-1/4 inches to 1-1/2 inches (32 mm to 38 mm) Interior Pipe Size is acceptable. Vol. I-C, 4.1(c)(6); ADAAG 4.26.2; Access Board FAQ No. 8

(2) Mounting height shall be between 34 inches minimum to 38 inches maximum (865 mm to 965 mm) above the finished walking surface. Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(b)- 30" To 34"; ADAAG 4.8.5(5)-34" To 38"

(3) Handrails shall be continuous. If not continuous, then they shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of each ramp segment. The 12 inches (305 mm) minimum extension shall parallel to the finished floor, ground level, or intermediate landing. Vol. I-C, 4.1(c)(4); ADAAG 4.8.5(2)

(4) Clear hand space between the rail and any wall or partition shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). ADAAG 4.8.5(3)

(5) On dogleg (90 degree turn) or switchback (180 degree turn) ramps the inside handrail shall be continuous. Horizontal extensions are not required. ADAAG 4.8.5(1)

(6) Gripping surfaces shall be continuous. ADAAG 4.8.5(4)

*** (7) If ramps terminate at walks, halls, corridors, passageways or aisles, then the horizontal extension may protrude 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) maximum into the connecting accessible route. The 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) maximum protrusion shall not reduce the clear required width for accessible routes or maneuvering spaces.** Vol. I-C, 4.1(c)(5)

*** (8) Handrails ends shall be rounded or shall return smoothly to the floor, wall or post. Care shall be taken that the handrail extension is not in itself a hazard. (NOTE: If the handrail extension returns to the wall, then a 1/4 inch [6 mm] maximum gap between the wall face and handrail end may be permitted to facilitate installation and alignment.)** ADAAG 4.8.5(6)

(9) Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings. ADAAG 4.8.5(7)

(10) Handrails and adjacent wall surfaces shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Handrail edges shall have a 1/8 inch (3 mm) minimum radius. ADAAG 4.26.4
(NOTE: The purpose of this requirement is the elimination of potential hazards caused by poor construction methods or workmanship, and/or indifferent building maintenance. This requirement shall not be interpreted to exclude materials such as concrete, unit masonry, stucco, etc., for the finished wall surface.) Code Interpretation By Staff

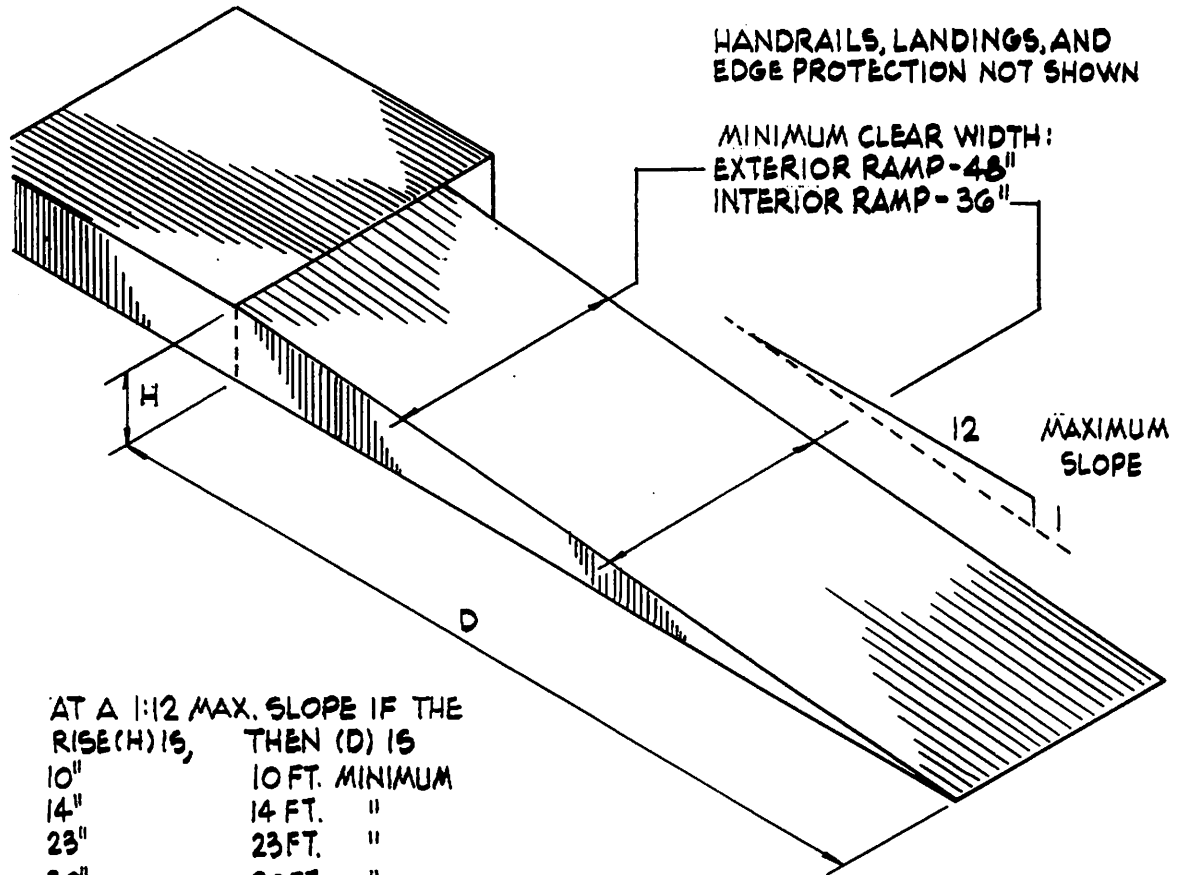
*** 5.4.3** If a handrail is located in a recess, then the recess shall have a **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)** maximum depth and the height of the recess above the top of the handrail shall be 18 inches (460 mm) minimum. ADAAG 4.26.2, Figure 39(d)

5.5 EDGE PROTECTION

*** 5.5.1** For the purposes of this Chapter a drop-off shall be defined as a vertical change in bearing surface greater than 1/2 inch (6 mm) or an adjacent slope steeper than 1:12 (25mm:305mm) or an adjacent slope steeper than 1:12 (25mm:305mm) (NOTE: The requirements of this Section are not applicable to curb cuts and curb ramps having 1:10 [25mm:255mm] side flares.) 1/2 Inch Consistent With: Vol. I-C, 3.1(d); Vol. I-C, 4.3.8(a); ADAAG 4.5.2; ADAAG 4.13.8

*5.5.2 In addition to handrails, ramps and landings with drop-offs shall have curbs, walls, railings or other projecting surfaces that will prevent ***chair wheels, crutches, canes or other similar aids to mobility from slipping off the ramp or landing edge.*** If curbs are used for protection, then they shall have a 2 inches (50 mm) minimum height with drainage provisions for exterior ramps and landings.

Vol. I-C, 4.1(g);
ADAAG 4.8.7



HANDRAILS, LANDINGS, AND
EDGE PROTECTION NOT SHOWN

MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH:
EXTERIOR RAMP-48"
INTERIOR RAMP-36"

12
1
MAXIMUM
SLOPE

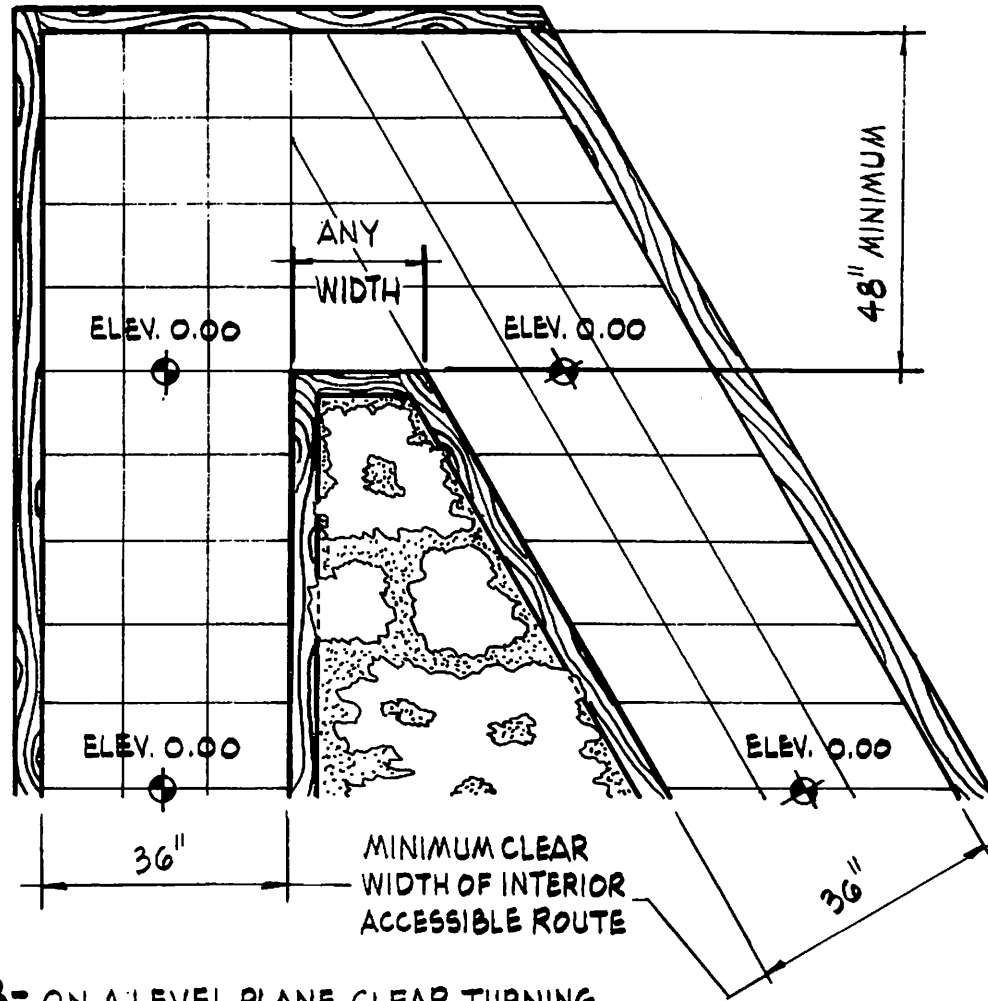
AT A 1:12 MAX. SLOPE IF THE
RISE (H) IS, THEN (D) IS
10" 10 FT. MINIMUM
14" 14 FT. "
23" 23 FT. "
30" 30 FT. "
SEE 5.3.1 AND 5.3.2 FOR INTERMEDIATE
LANDINGS.

5.2.J-RAMPS SHALL HAVE A
1:12 MAXIMUM SLOPE

5.2.2-EXTERIOR RAMPS SHALL HAVE
A MINIMUM 48" CLEAR WIDTH.

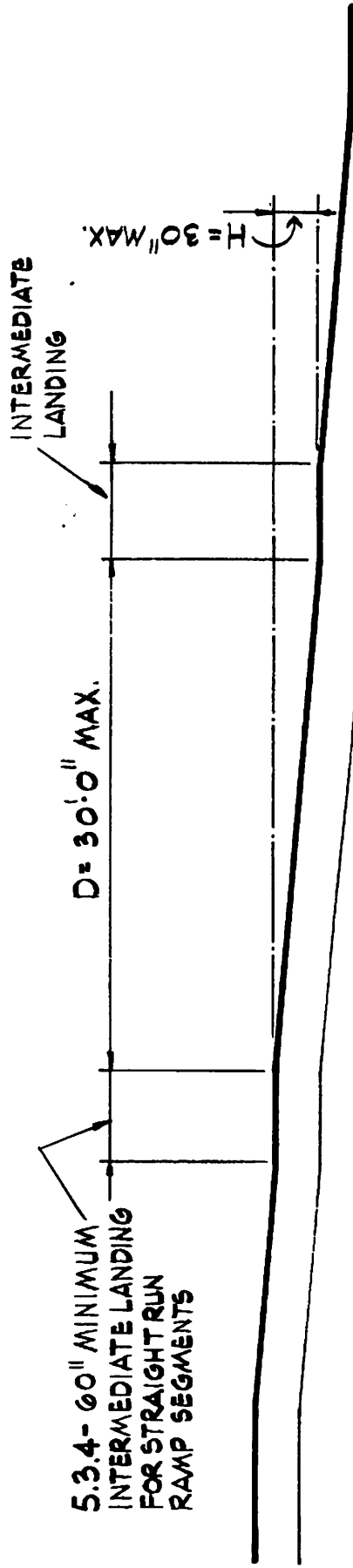
FOR EXCEPTION
SEE 10.5.1

5.2.3- AN INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE
(INCLUDING RAMPS) SHALL HAVE
A MINIMUM 36" CLEAR WIDTH.



⊕ ELEV. 0.00 THROUGHOUT
USED TO DENOTE LEVEL FLOOR

5.2.3- ON A LEVEL PLANE, CLEAR TURNING SPACE AROUND AN OBSTRUCTION SHALL BE 48" MINIMUM REGARDLESS OF THE OBSTRUCTION WIDTH. FOR RAMPS, SEE 5.3.5 OR 5.3.6.



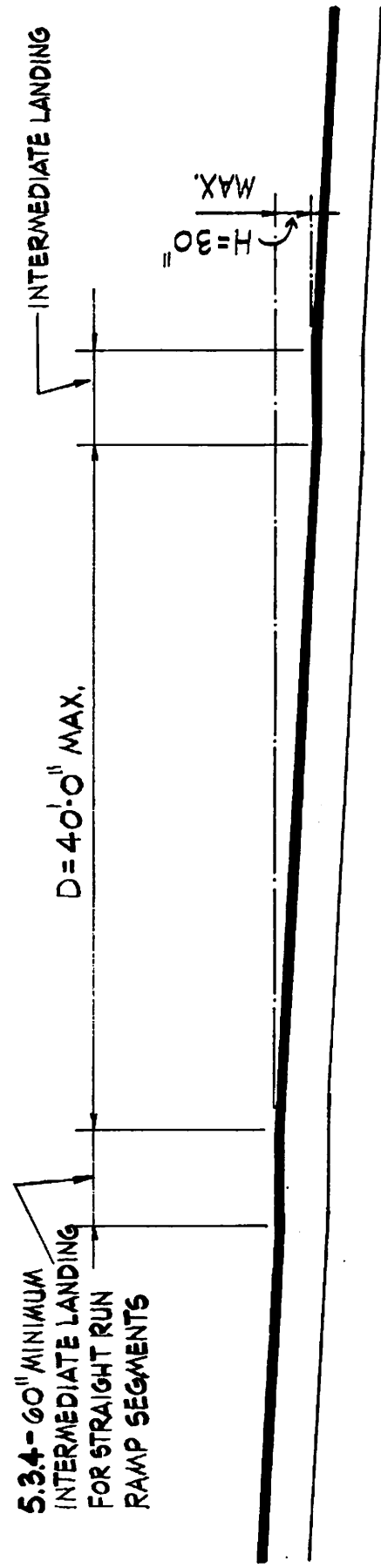
D = 30'-0" MAX.

INTERMEDIATE LANDING

5.3.4- 60" MINIMUM INTERMEDIATE LANDING FOR STRAIGHT RUN RAMP SEGMENTS

H = 30" MAX.

5.3.1- RAMPS WITH A SLOPE OF 1:16 UP TO 1:12 MAXIMUM SHALL HAVE AN INTERMEDIATE LANDING FOR EACH 30 FEET OF HORIZONTAL RUN.



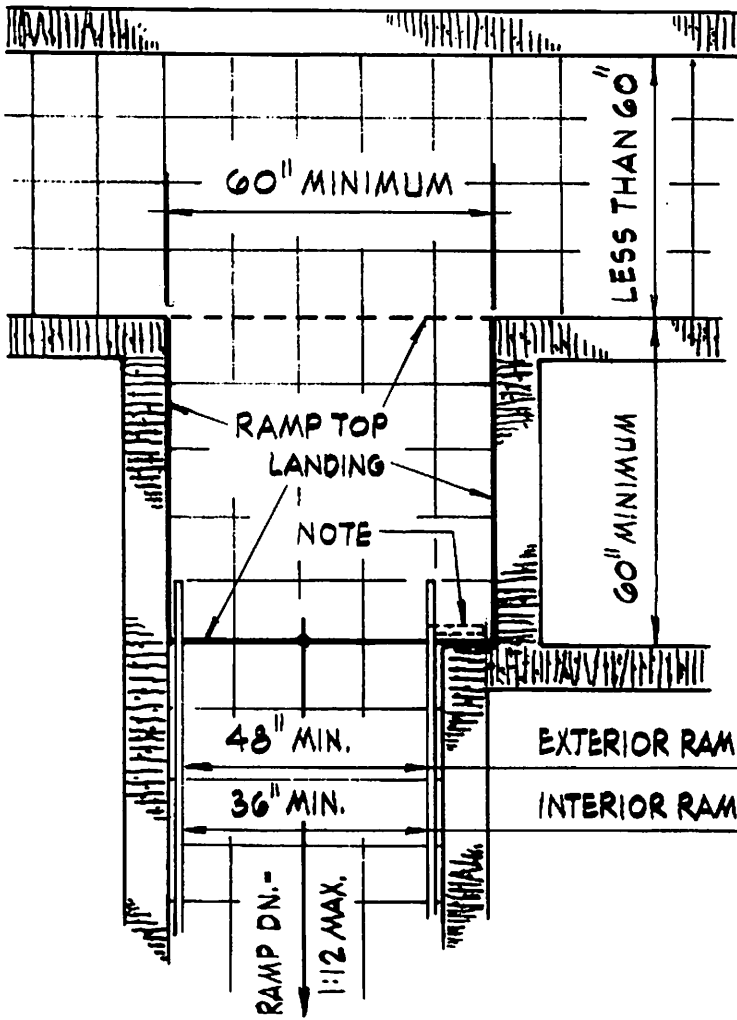
D = 40'-0" MAX.

INTERMEDIATE LANDING

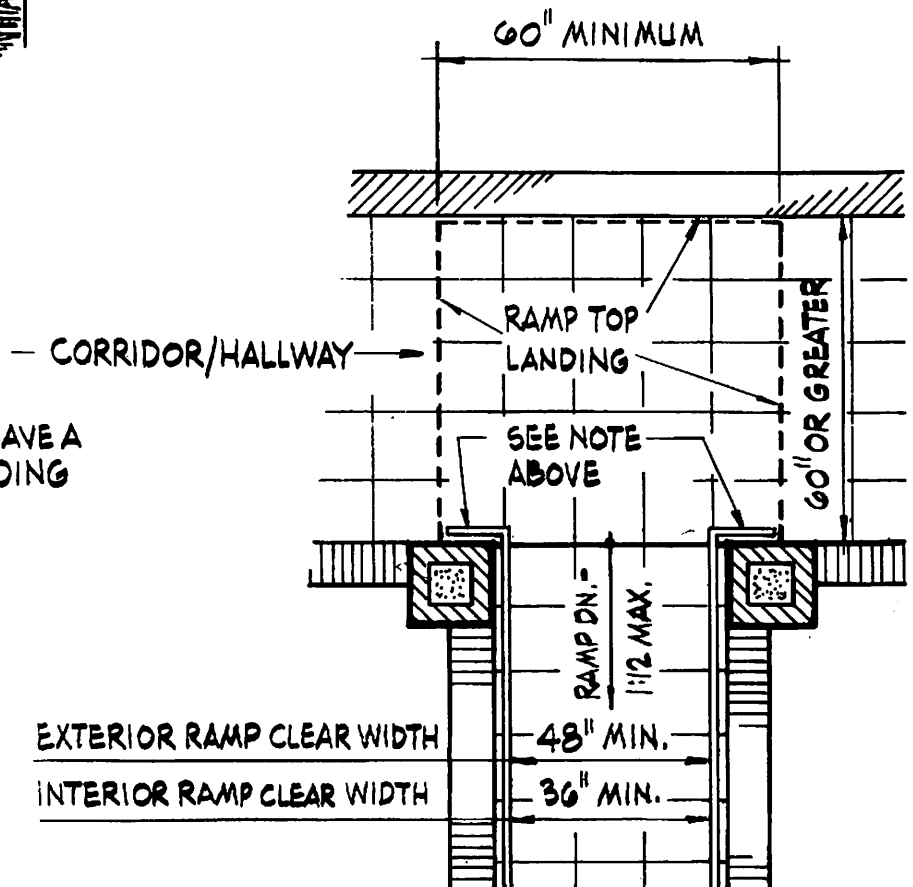
5.3.4- 60" MINIMUM INTERMEDIATE LANDING FOR STRAIGHT RUN RAMP SEGMENTS

H = 30" MAX.

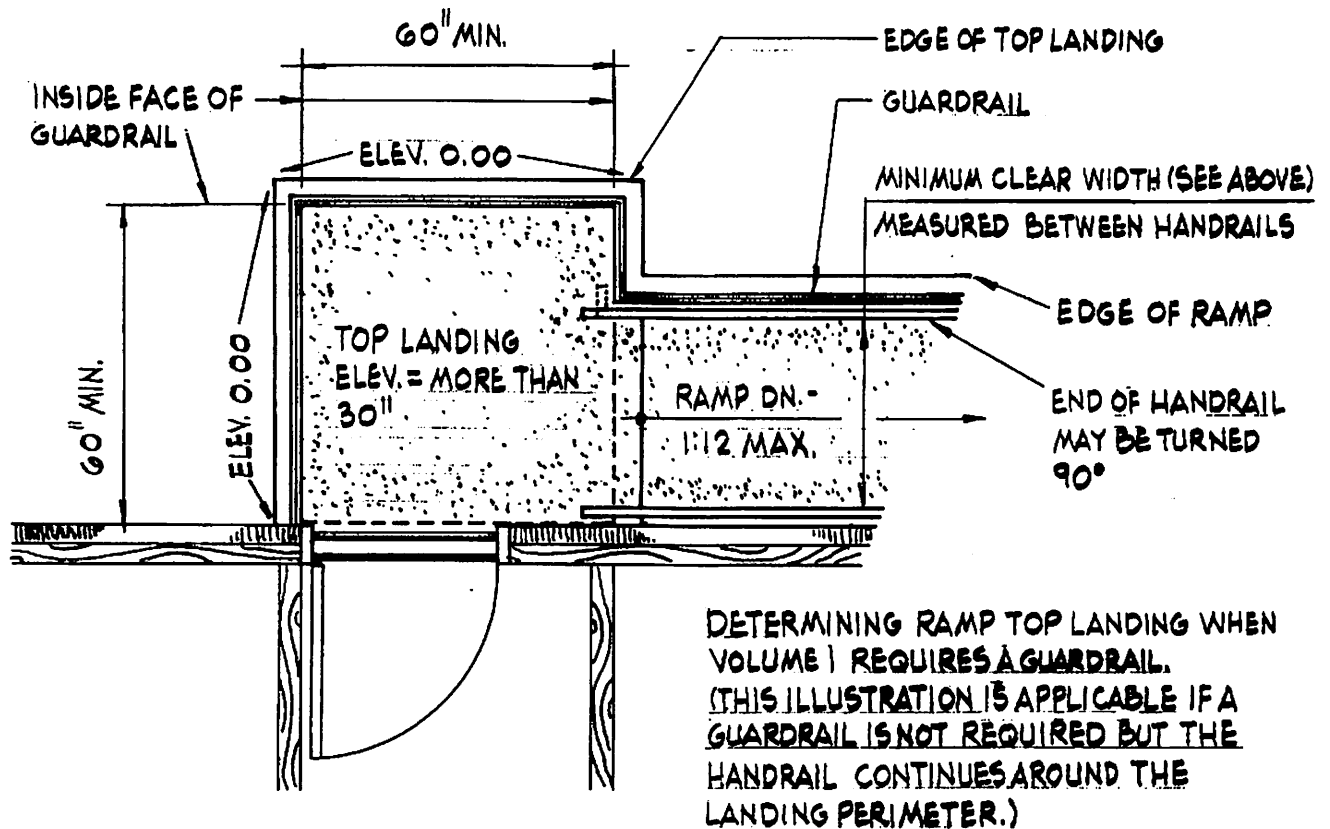
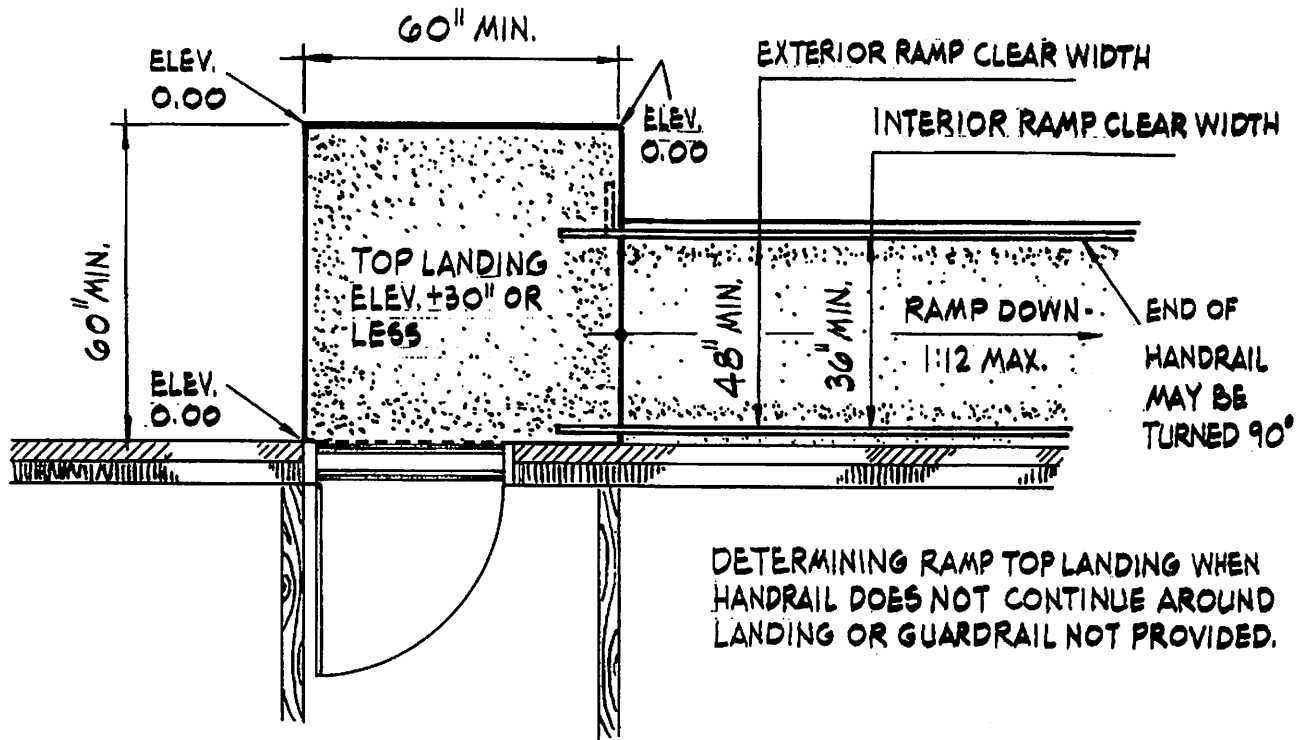
5.3.2- RAMPS WITH A SLOPE LESS THAN 1:16 BUT GREATER THAN 1:20 SHALL HAVE AN INTERMEDIATE LANDING FOR EACH 40 FEET OF HORIZONTAL RUN.



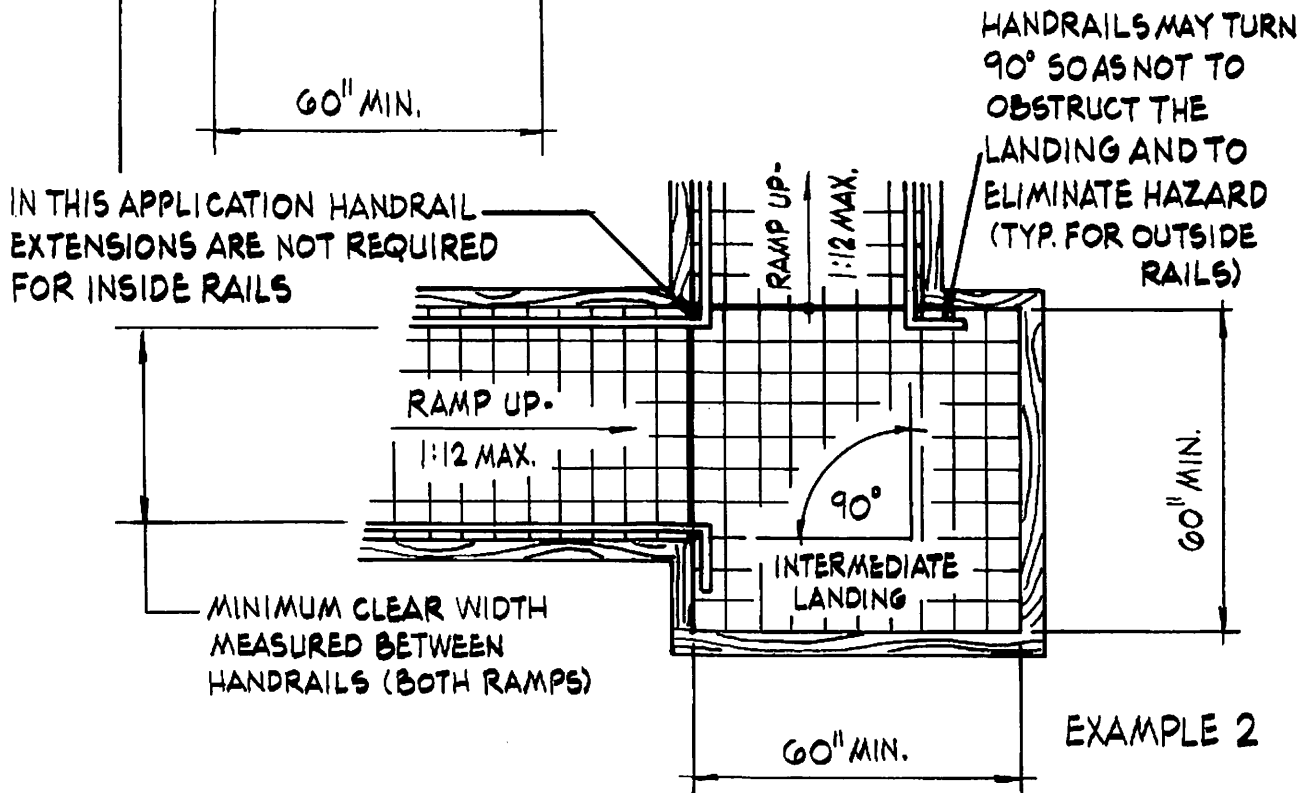
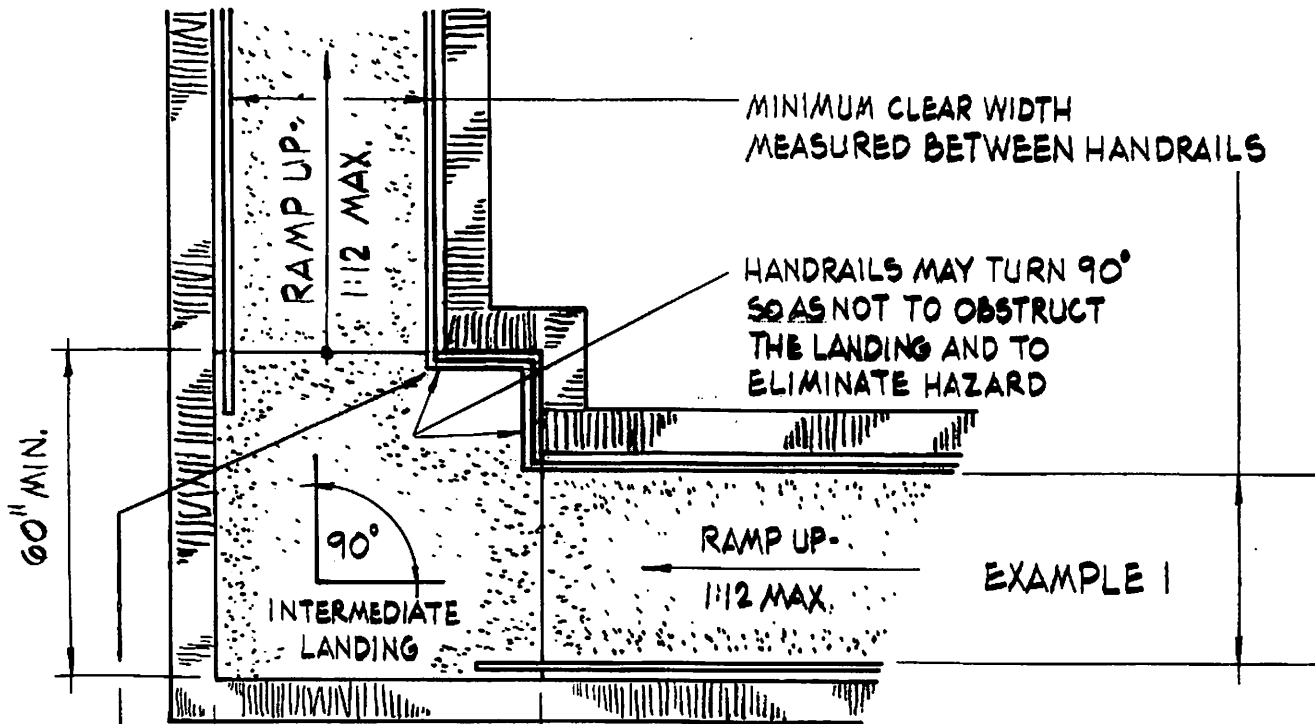
NOTE:
HANDRAIL MAY BE TURNED 90°
SO AS NOT TO BE A HAZARD
TO RAMP USERS.



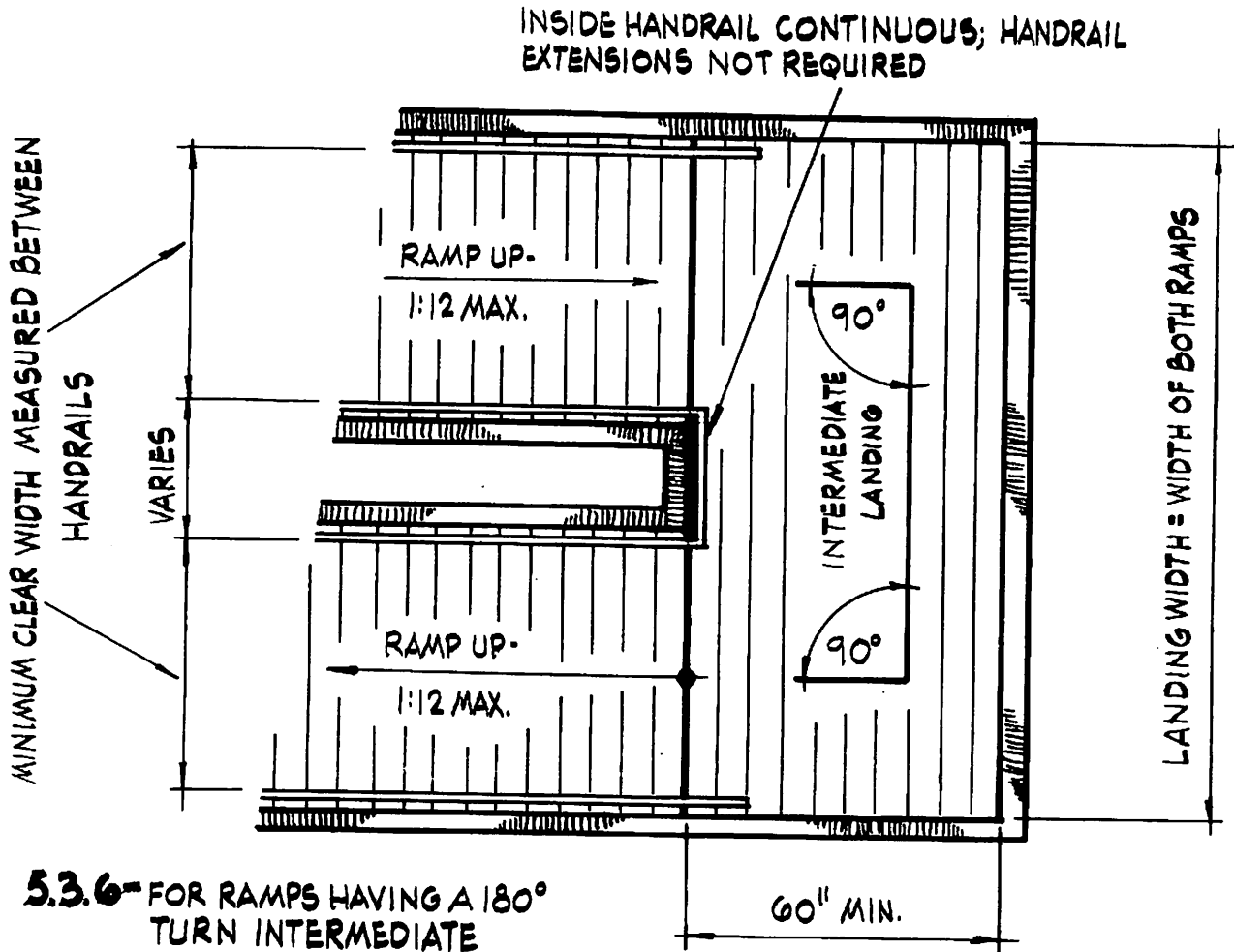
5.3.3- EACH RAMP SHALL HAVE A
60" x 60" TOP LANDING



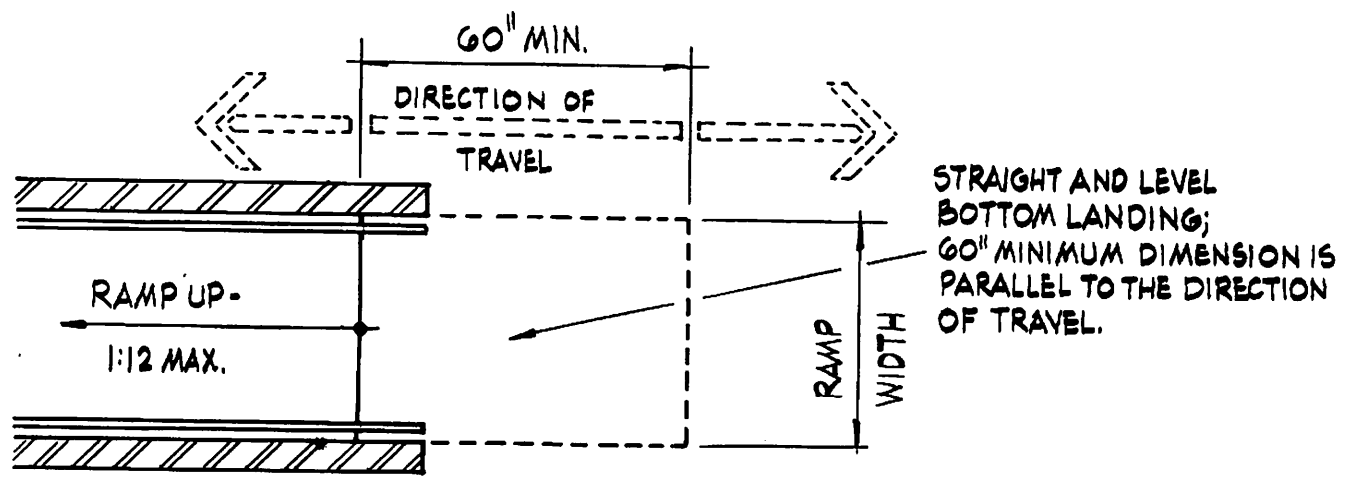
5.3.3- EACH RAMP SHALL HAVE A 60" x 60" TOP LANDING



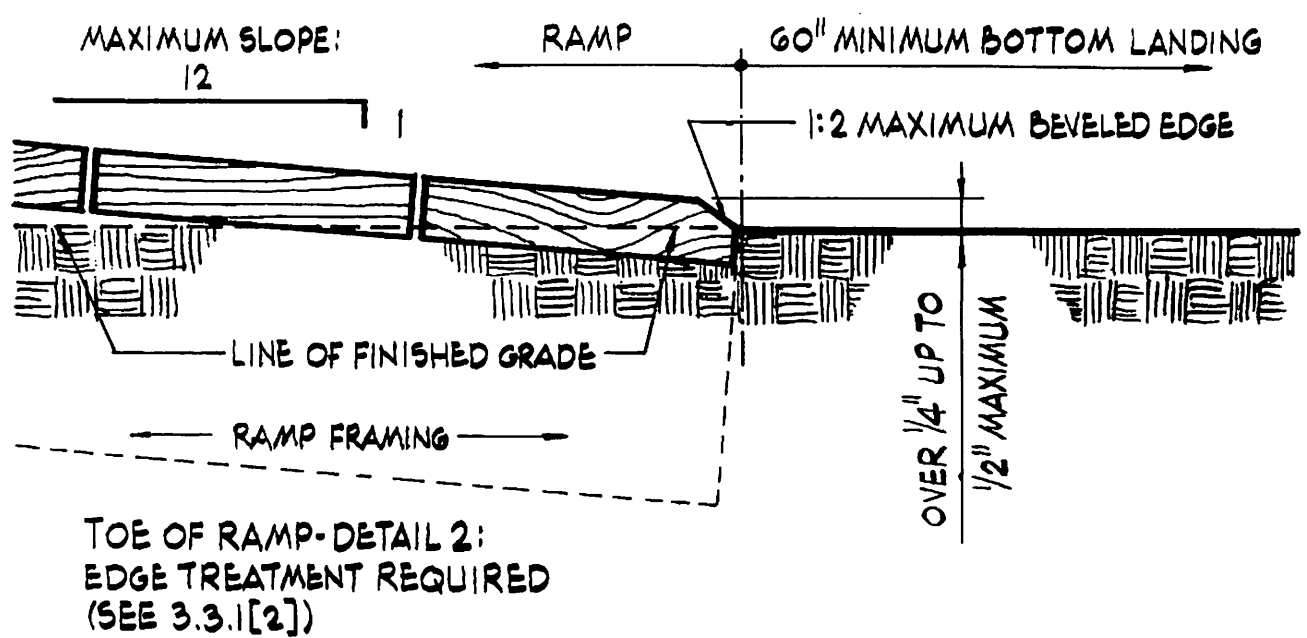
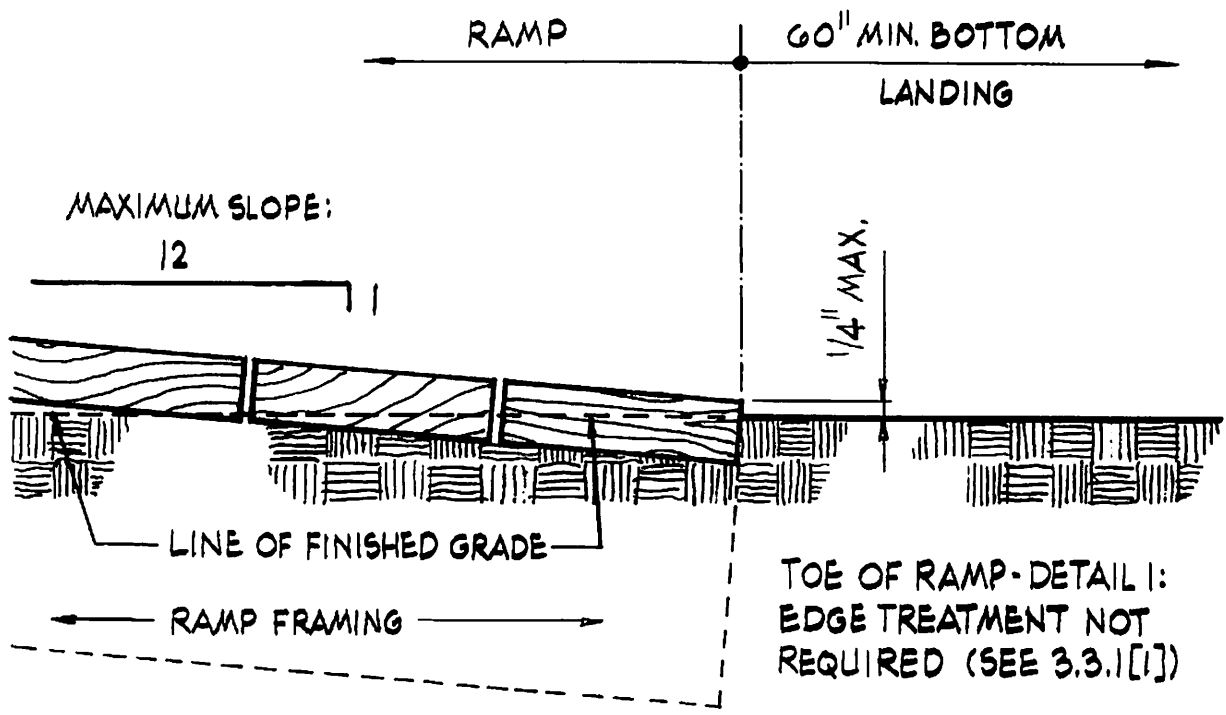
5.3.5- FOR RAMPS HAVING A 90° TURN INTERMEDIATE LANDINGS SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM 60" x 60" CLEAR DIMENSION.



5.3.6- FOR RAMPS HAVING A 180° TURN INTERMEDIATE LANDINGS SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM DIMENSION OF 60" X THE WIDTH OF BOTH RAMPS.

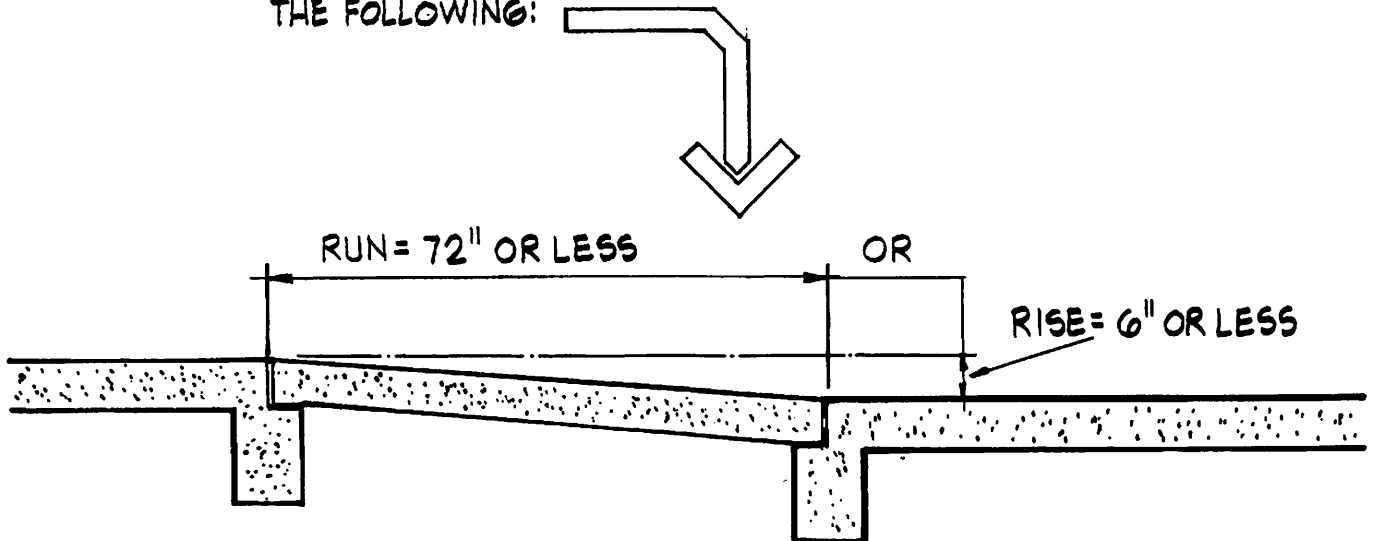


5.3.8- RAMP BOTTOM LANDING

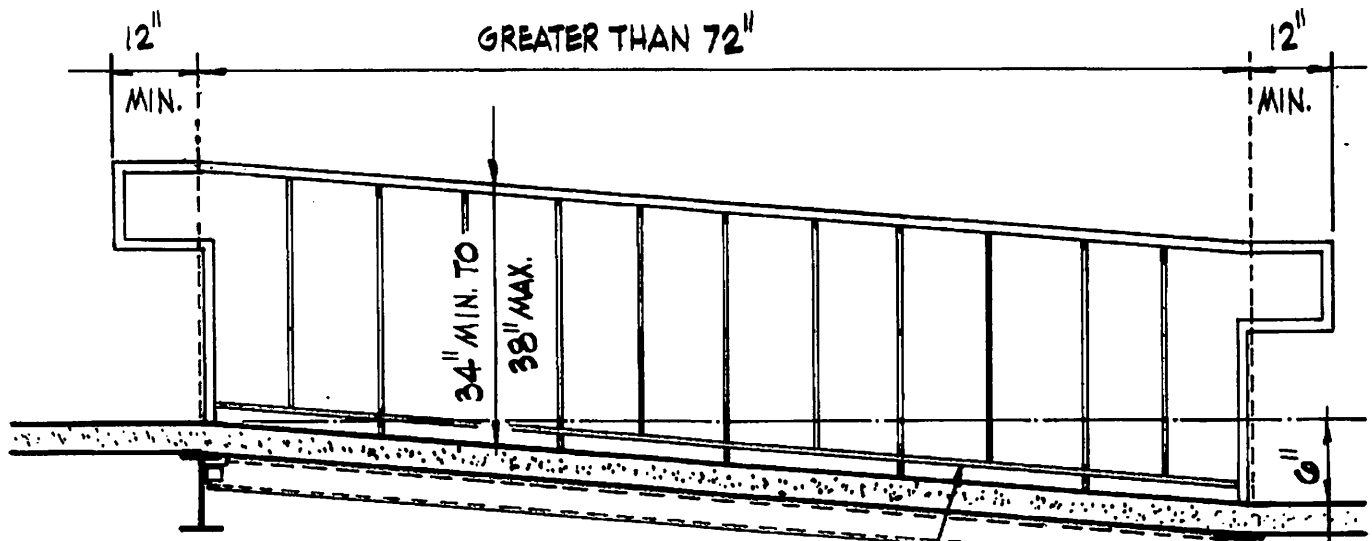


5.3.8- RAMP BOTTOM LANDING
 TOE OF RAMP DETAILS ILLUSTRATING CODE COMPLIANCE
 WHEN USING A WOOD RAMP AND AN EARTHEN
 ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.

5.4.1- HANDRAILS ARE NOT REQUIRED IF THE RAMP CONFORMS TO THE FOLLOWING:



RAMP SLOPE - SEE 5.3.1 AND 5.3.2

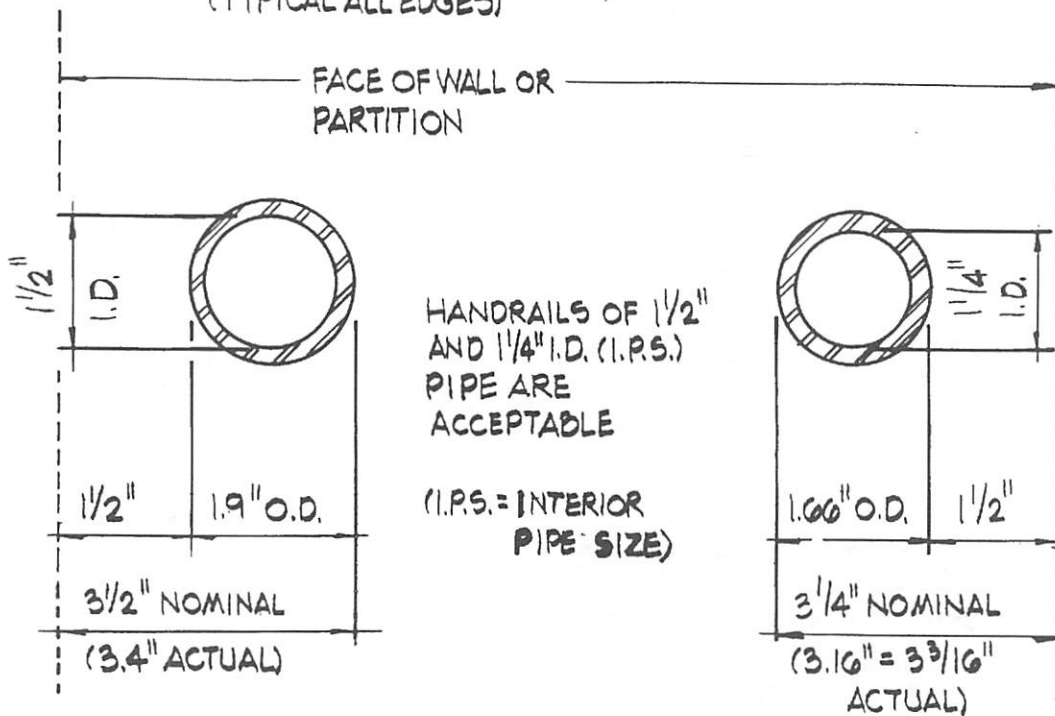
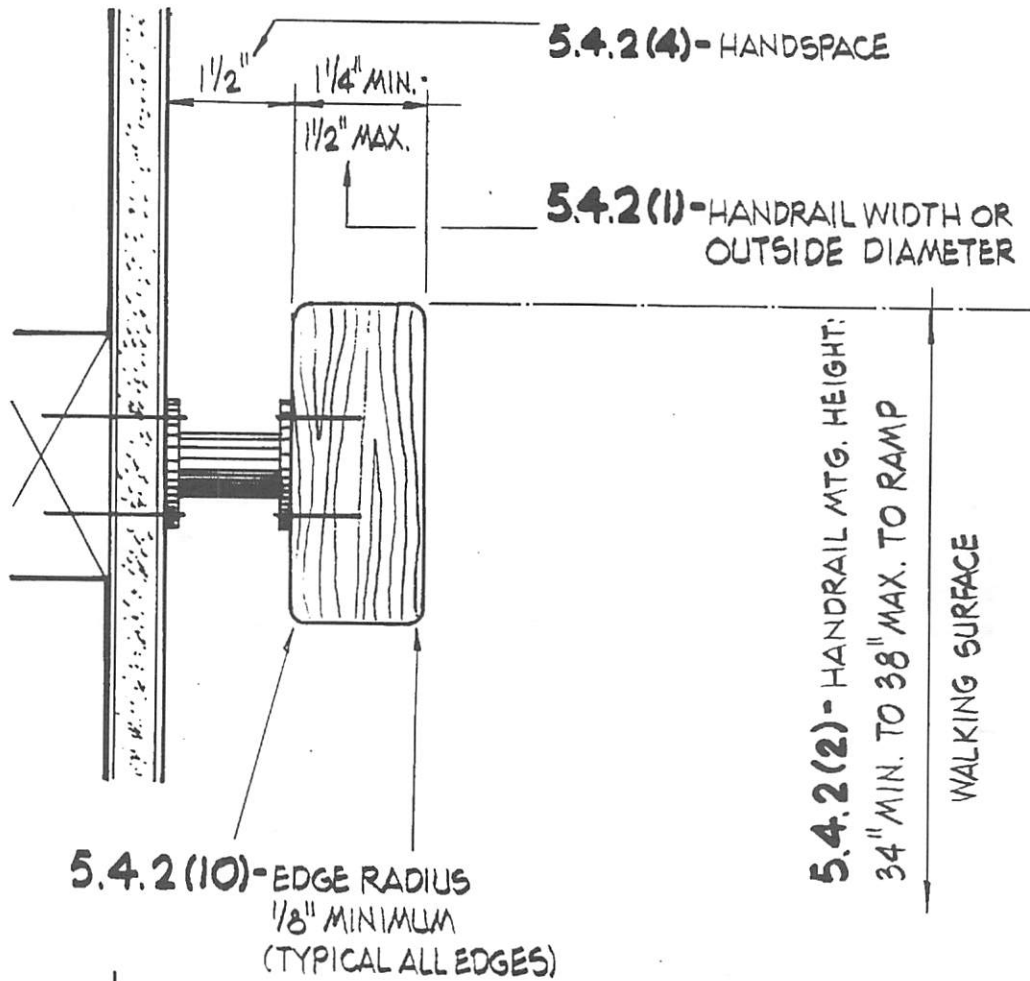


5.4.1- RAMPS HAVING A RISE GREATER THAN 6" OR A RUN GREATER THAN 72" SHALL HAVE HANDRAILS ON BOTH SIDES. (NOT REQUIRED IN ASSEMBLY SEATING AREAS.)

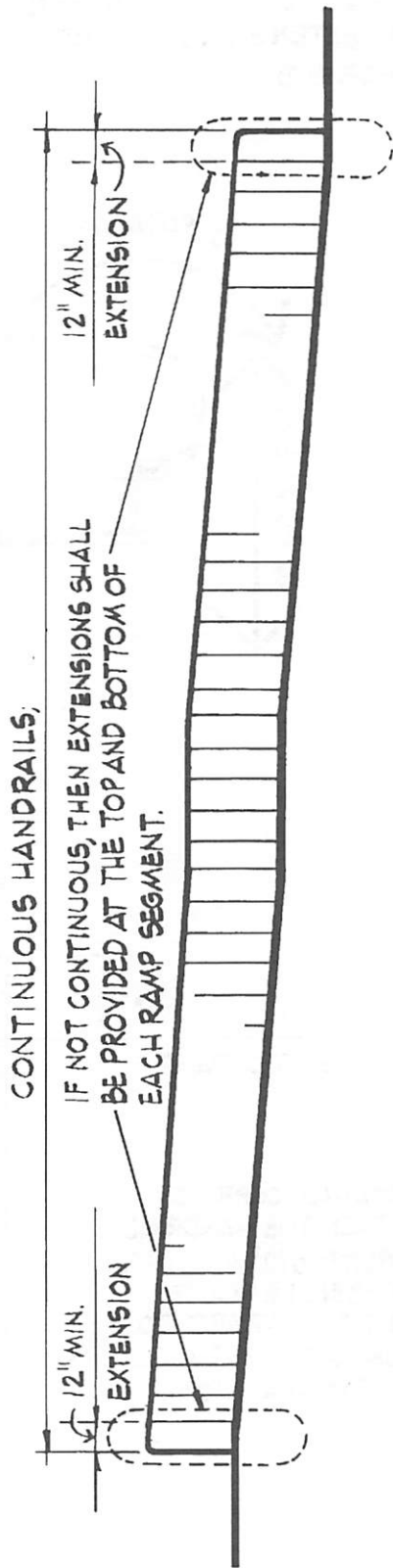
EDGE PROTECTION

GREATER THAN 6"

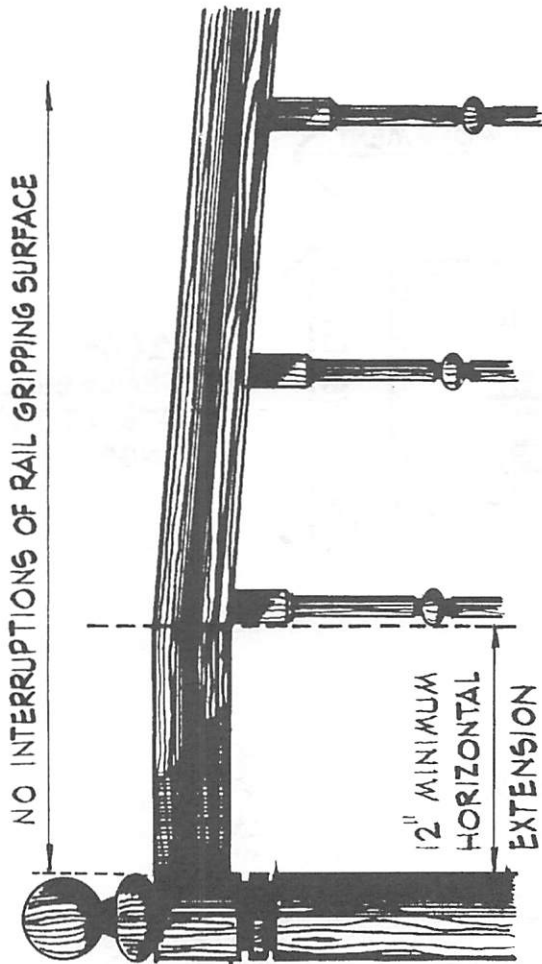
5.4.1- RAMPS REQUIRING HANDRAILS



5.4.2 - HANDRAILS



5.4.2(3)- HANDRAILS SHALL BE CONTINUOUS

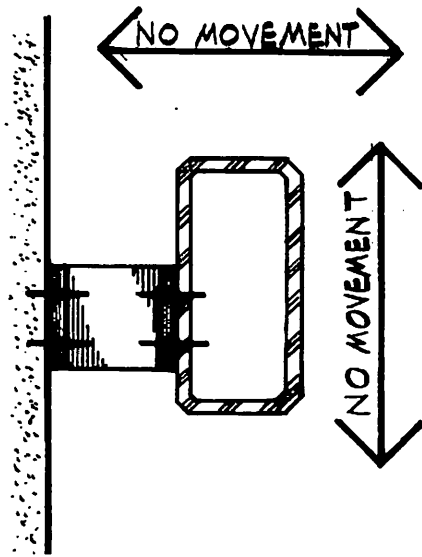


A NEWEL POST MAY BE INSTALLED OUTSIDE THE REQUIRED MINIMUM HORIZONTAL EXTENSION OF THE HANDRAIL.

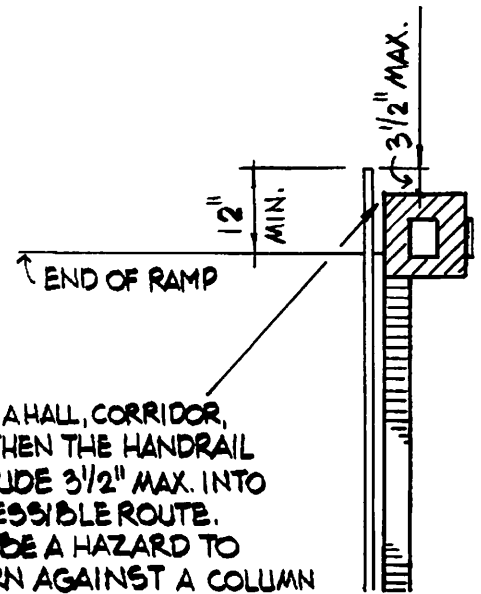
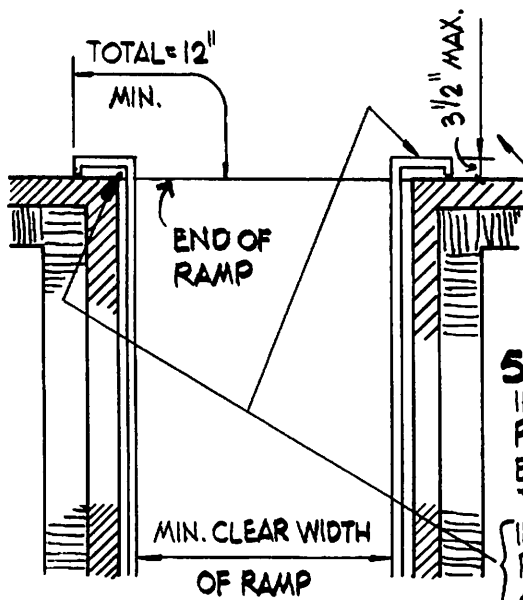
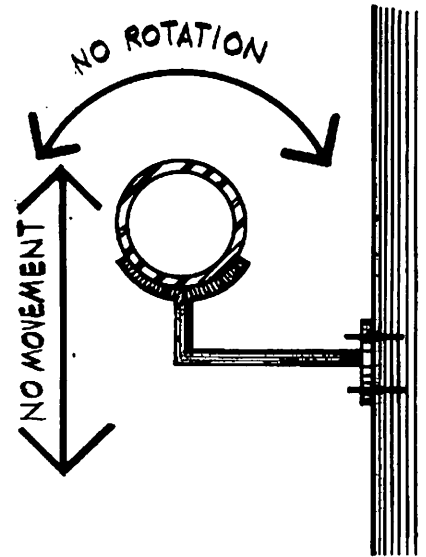
5.4.2(6)- HANDRAIL GRIPPING SURFACES SHALL BE CONTINUOUS

5.4.2- HANDRAILS

5.4.2(5)-FOR RAMPS HAVING A 90° OR 180° TURN THE INSIDE HANDRAIL SHALL BE CONTINUOUS. HORIZONTAL EXTENSIONS ARE NOT REQUIRED. (SEE THE ILLUSTRATIONS FOR 5.3.5.)

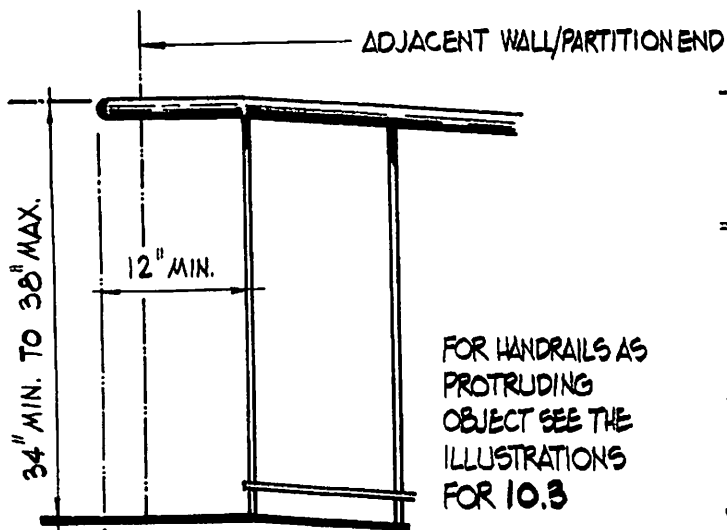


5.4.2(9)-
HANDRAILS SHALL NOT
ROTATE WITHIN THEIR
FITTINGS.



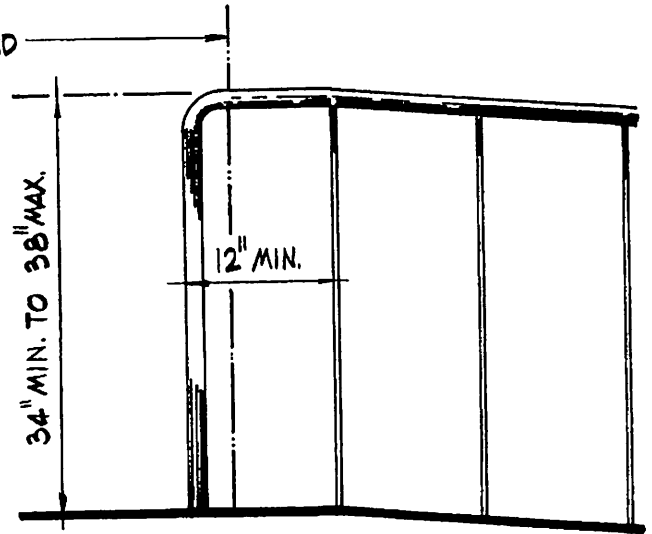
5.4.2(7)-
IF A RAMP TERMINATES AT A HALL, CORRIDOR,
PASSAGEWAY OR AISLE, THEN THE HANDRAIL
EXTENSION MAY PROTRUDE 3 1/2" MAX. INTO
THE CONNECTING ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.
{ IF THE EXTENSION WILL BE A HAZARD TO
PASSERSBY, IT MAY TURN AGAINST A COLUMN
OR A CONTINUING WALL (OR PARTITION).

5.4.2- HANDRAILS

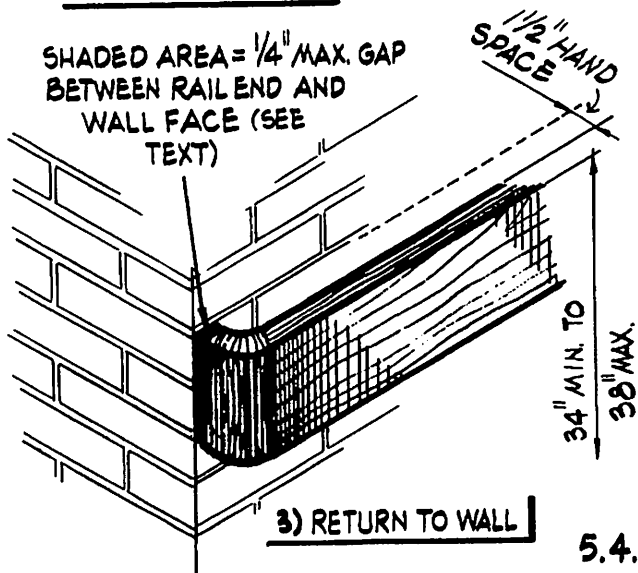


1) **ROUNDED END**

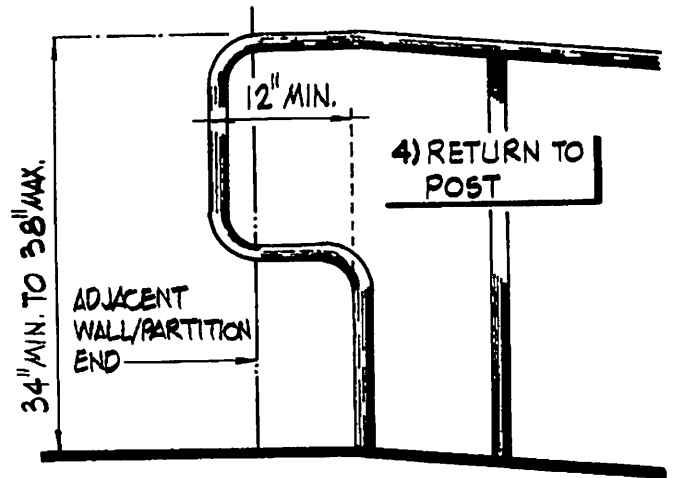
FOR HANDRAILS AS PROTRUDING OBJECT SEE THE ILLUSTRATIONS FOR 10.3



2) **RETURN TO FLOOR**

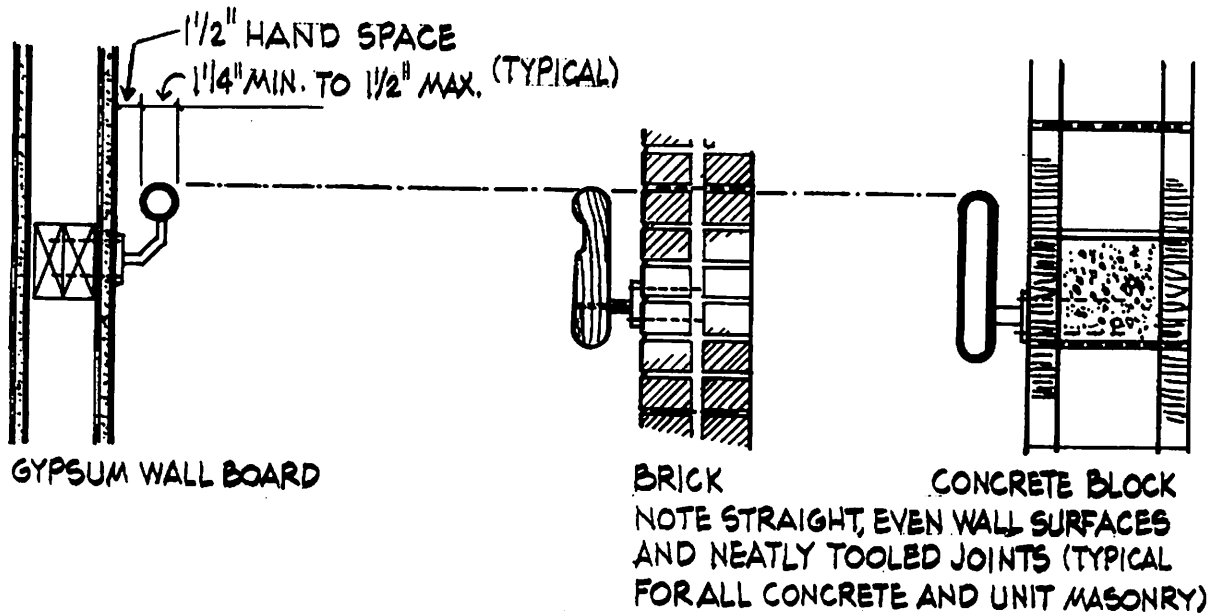


3) **RETURN TO WALL**



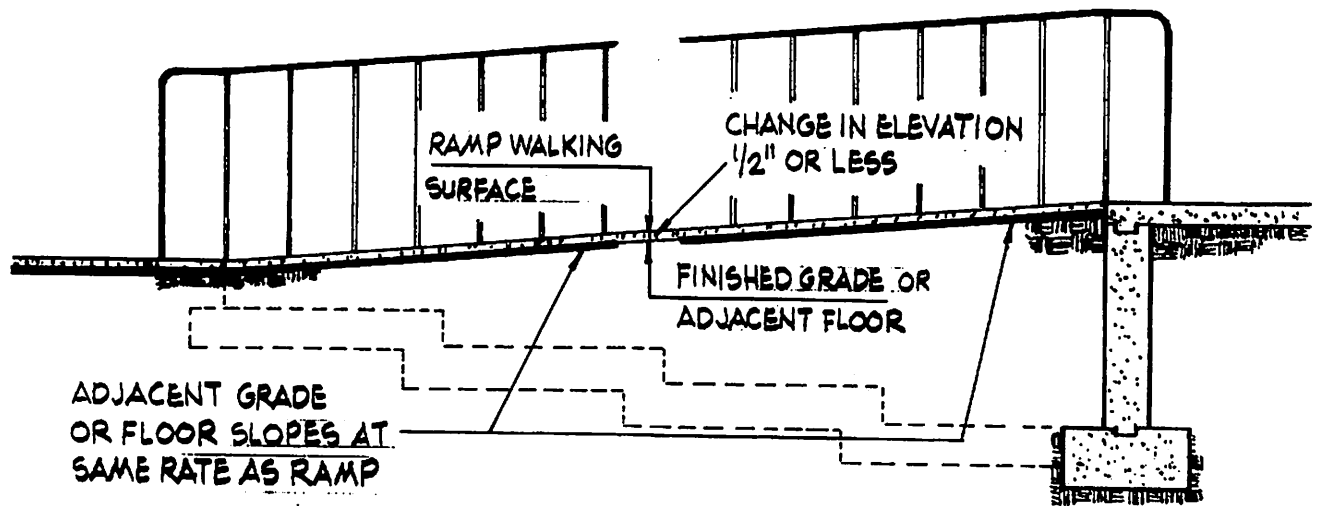
4) **RETURN TO POST**

5.4.2(8) - HANDRAIL TERMINATION

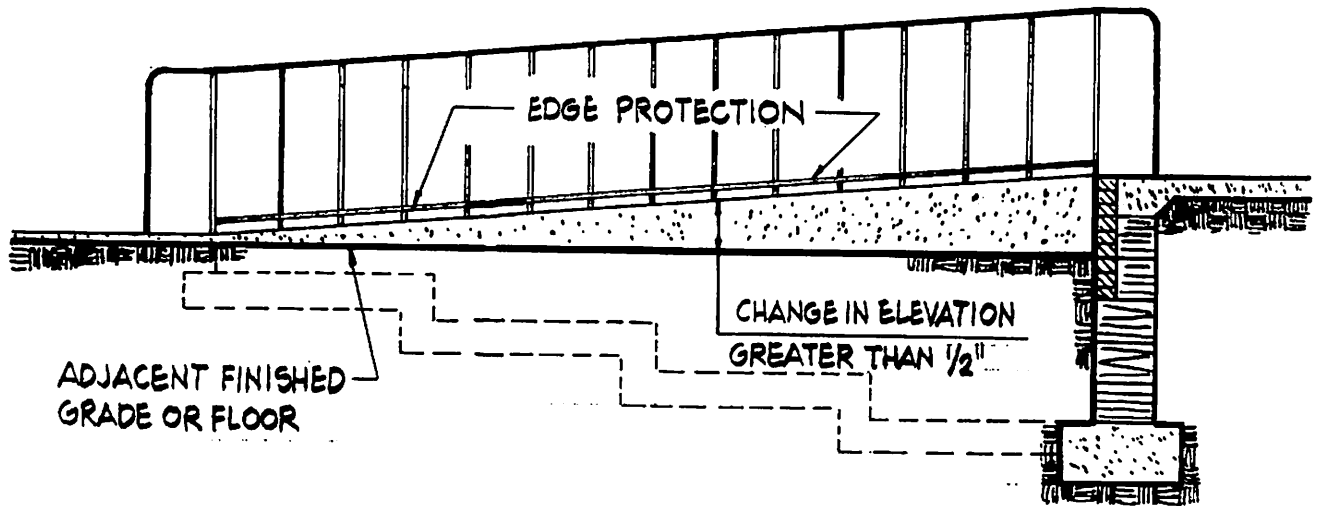


5.4.2(10)- HANDRAILS AND ADJACENT WALL SURFACES SHALL BE FREE OF ANY SHARP OR ABRASIVE ELEMENTS.

5.4.2- HANDRAILS



RAMP EDGE PROTECTION (NOT REQUIRED FOR CRITERIA SHOWN)



RAMP EDGE PROTECTION (REQUIRED FOR CRITERIA SHOWN)

5.5.1- EDGE PROTECTION DEFINED

**CHAPTER 6
ENTRANCES AND MEANS OF EGRESS**

6.1 DEFINITIONS AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

6.1.1 Public entrances are any entrances that are not service, delivery, or loading entrances. **ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(a)(i)**

6.1.2 Accessible entrances are those entrances used by the majority of people working in, or visiting, the building. **ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(a)(iii)**

6.1.3 Accessible entrances shall be connected by an accessible route from public transportation stops, accessible parking, accessible passenger loading zones (if provided), public streets and sidewalks. **Vol. I-C, 4.2(a); ADAAG 4.1.2(1), 4.14.1**

6.1.4 Accessible entrances and exits shall be connected by an accessible route to all accessible rooms, spaces, areas, and elements within the building or facility. **ADAAG 4.1.3(1), 4.3.2(3), 4.14.1**

***6.1.5** *Entrances and exits may be made accessible through the use of proper grading, walks, ramps, lifts (where such use is permitted), bridges, or similar elements of an accessible route.* **Vol. I-C, 4.2(a)(2)**

6.1.6 The requirement to provide an accessible entrance shall not be evaded by constructing a building in such a way that no story constitutes a ground floor (e.g., constructing a building whose main entrance leads only to stairs or escalators that connect with floors above or below). **FR 7/26/91 At 35419, Note 11**

6.2 PUBLIC ENTRANCES/BUILDING ACCESS

(NOTE: 6.2.1 and 6.2.2 shall be satisfied independently.) **ADAAG 4.1.3(8)**

6.2.1 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

***6.2.1.1** A minimum fifty percent (50%) of all public entrances (excluding those in 6.2.2.1 and 6.2.2.1.1) shall be accessible. A minimum of one accessible entrance shall be a ground floor entrance. (For medical care facilities see, also, 28.3.1.) *For buildings elevated due to flood plain regulations, the accessible entrance(s) shall be located at the first occupiable floor above flood plain. (See, also, 1.2.6.3.1.)* **ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(a)(1)**
Accounts For Vol. I, Chap. 37

6.2.1.2 The minimum number of accessible entrances shall be equal to the number of required exits. This Paragraph does not require an increase in the total number of entrances planned for a building or facility. (NOTE: This is required only to the extent that the number of planned public entrances is equal to, or greater than, the number of required exits. If the number of required exits exceeds the number of planned entrances, then all planned entrances shall be accessible.) **ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(a)(ii)**
FR 1/13/98 At 2004-2005

6.2.1.3 An accessible entrance shall be provided for each separate tenant in a building (e.g., individual stores in a shopping center or mall.)

**ADAAG
4.1.3(8)(a)(iii)**

6.2.1.4 One entrance may be considered as meeting more than one of the requirements of 6.2.1.1 through 6.2.1.3.

**ADAAG
4.1.3(8)(a)(iii)**

EXAMPLE 1: A bookstore has four (4) planned public entrances and two (2) required exits. Paragraph 6.2.1.1 requires 50% of all planned public entrances to be accessible: $4 \times .50 =$ minimum 2 accessible planned public entrances. The number of accessible entrances (2) equals the number of required exits (2).

EXAMPLE 2: A high school has six (6) planned public entrances and four (4) required exits. Paragraph 6.2.1.1 requires three accessible entrances ($6 \times .50 = 3$), but Paragraph 6.2.1.2 requires the number of accessible entrances to be equal to the number of required exits. Four of the six (not three [3]) planned public entrances are required to be accessible. The number of accessible entrances (4) equals the number of required exits (4).

**ADAAG
Access Survey,
Page C-1;
FR 1/13/98 At
2004-2005**

EXAMPLE 3: A hobby shop has two (2) planned public entrances and three (3) required exits. Paragraph 6.2.1.2 requires that the number of accessible entrances equal the number of required exits; however, since the number of required exits exceeds the number of planned public entrances, all of the planned public entrances are required to be accessible.

6.2.1.5 A service entrance shall not serve as the accessible entrance to a building unless it is the only entrance available to public and employees alike (e.g., factories, garages, airplane hangers, etc.).

**Vol. I-C, 4.1(b)(2);
ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(c);
4.14.2**

***6.2.1.6** *During periods of partial or restricted use (e.g., alteration, occupancy while still under construction, expansion, etc.) entrances shall be kept accessible and usable at all times.*

Vol. I-C 4.2(b)(1)

6.2.1.7 For the number of accessible entrances required for terminals, depots, and other stations used for specified public transportation, see 24.3.3. Accessible entrances for airport passenger terminals shall comply with this Chapter.

Cross-Reference

6.2.1.8 For the number of accessible entrances required for multi-family dwellings, see 30.4.2.1.

Cross-Reference

6.2.2 BUILDING ACCESS

6.2.2.1 In addition to 6.2.1, if direct access is provided for pedestrians from an enclosed parking garage to the building, then a minimum of one direct entrance from the garage to the building shall be accessible.

ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(b)(i)

6.2.2.1.1 If access to a building is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway, then one entrance to the building from each tunnel or walkway shall be accessible.

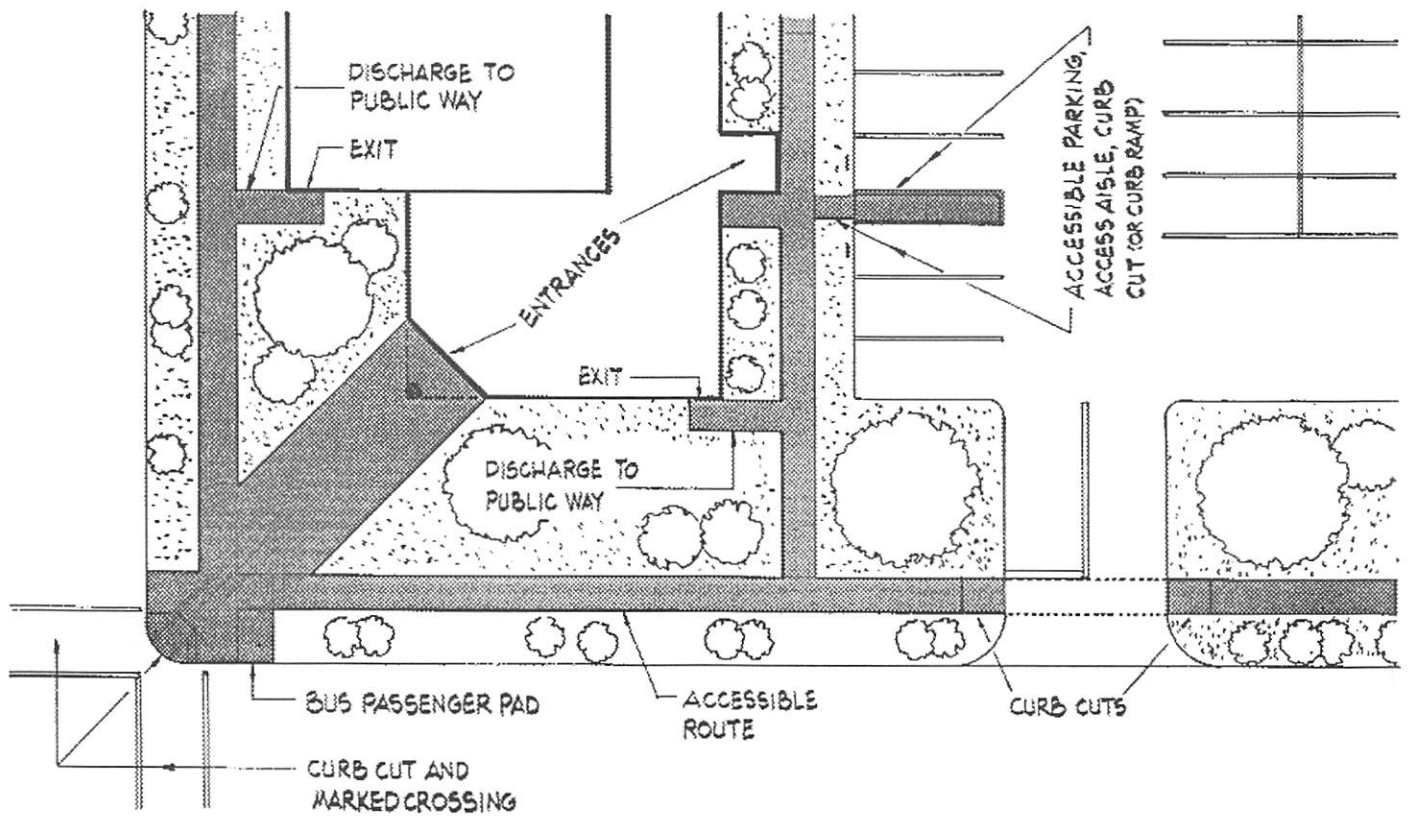
ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(b)(ii)

6.2.2.2 One entrance may be considered as complying with one or both of the requirements of 6.2.2.1 and 6.2.2.1.1.

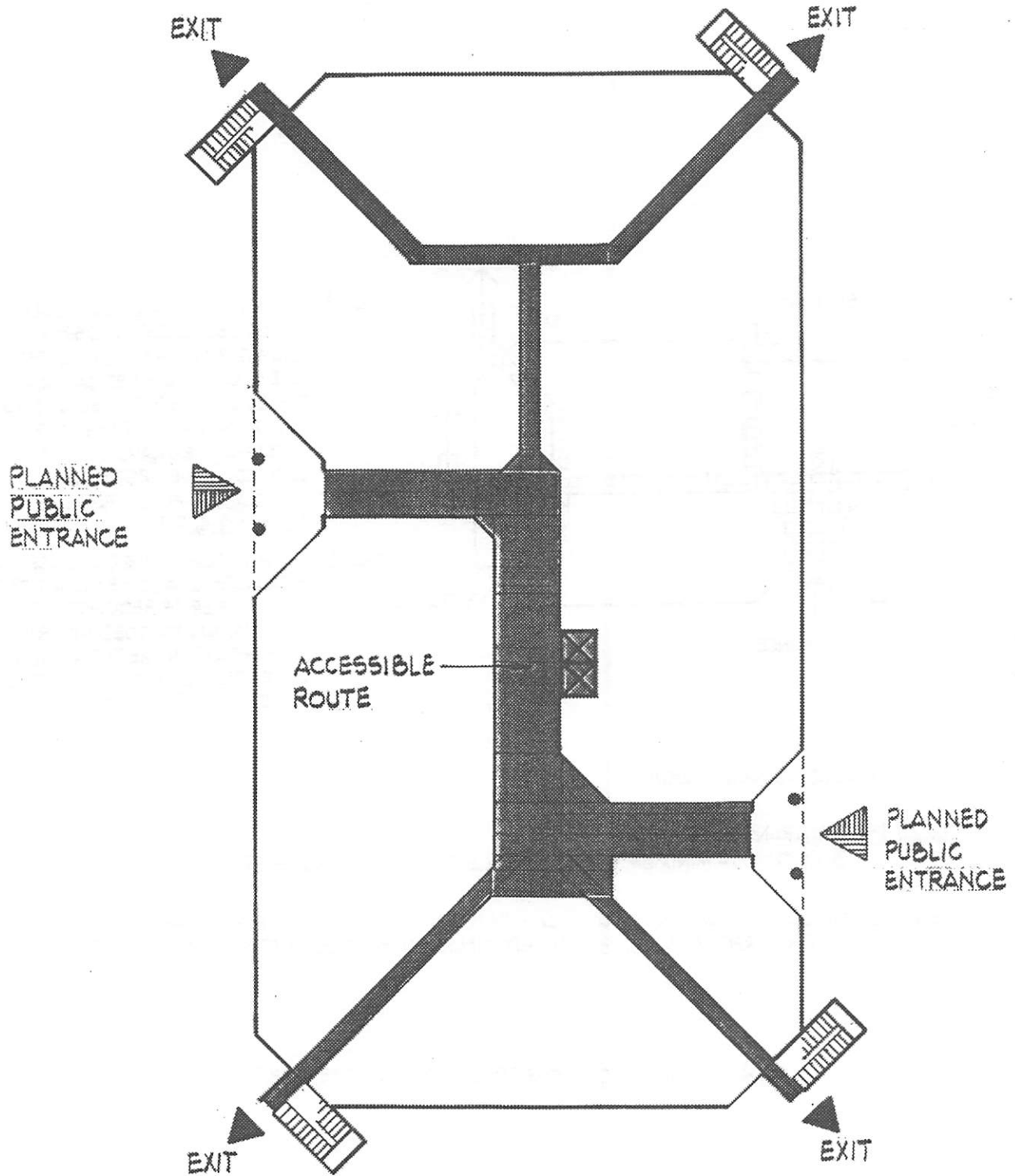
ADAAG 4.1.3(8)(b)(ii)

6.2.3 Signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to nearest accessible entrance shall be placed at or near each inaccessible entrance such that a disabled person will not be required to retrace the approach route from that inaccessible entrance. The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be used to identify each accessible entrance.

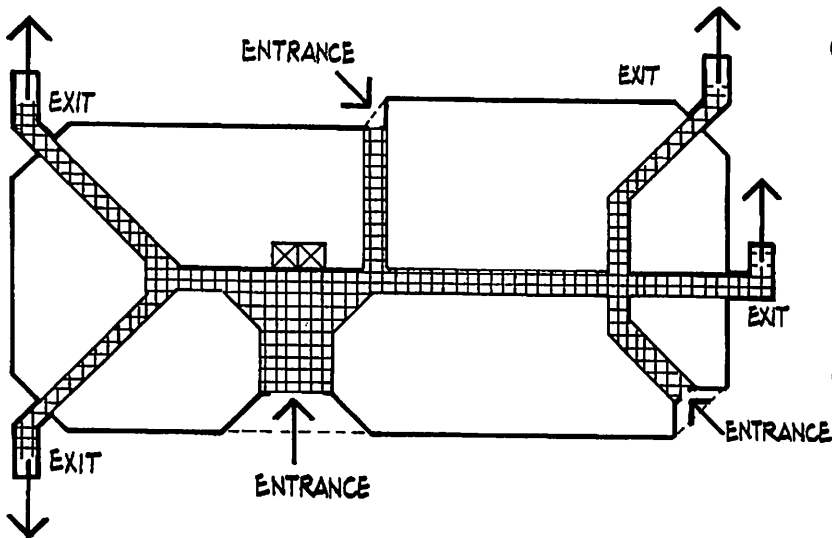
**ADAAG
4.1.3(8)(d),
4.1.2(7)(c),
4.1.6(1)(h)**



6.13- ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES SHALL BE CONNECTED BY AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE FROM PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION STOPS, ACCESSIBLE PARKING, ACCESSIBLE PASSENGER LOADING ZONES (IF PROVIDED), PUBLIC STREETS AND SIDEWALKS.



6.1.4-ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES AND EXITS SHALL BE CONNECTED BY AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO ALL ACCESSIBLE ROOMS, SPACES, AREAS, AND ELEMENTS WITHIN THE BUILDING OR FACILITY.



6.2.1.1- A MINIMUM 50% OF ALL PUBLIC ENTRANCES (EXCEPT THOSE IN 6.2.2.1 AND 6.2.2.1.1) SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE. (SEE, ALSO, 28.3.1-MEDICAL FACILITIES.) FOR BUILDINGS ELEVATED DUE TO FLOOD PLAIN REGULATIONS, THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE(S) SHALL BE LOCATED AT THE FIRST OCCUPIABLE FLOOR ABOVE FLOOD PLAIN. (SEE, ALSO, 1.2.6.3.1.)

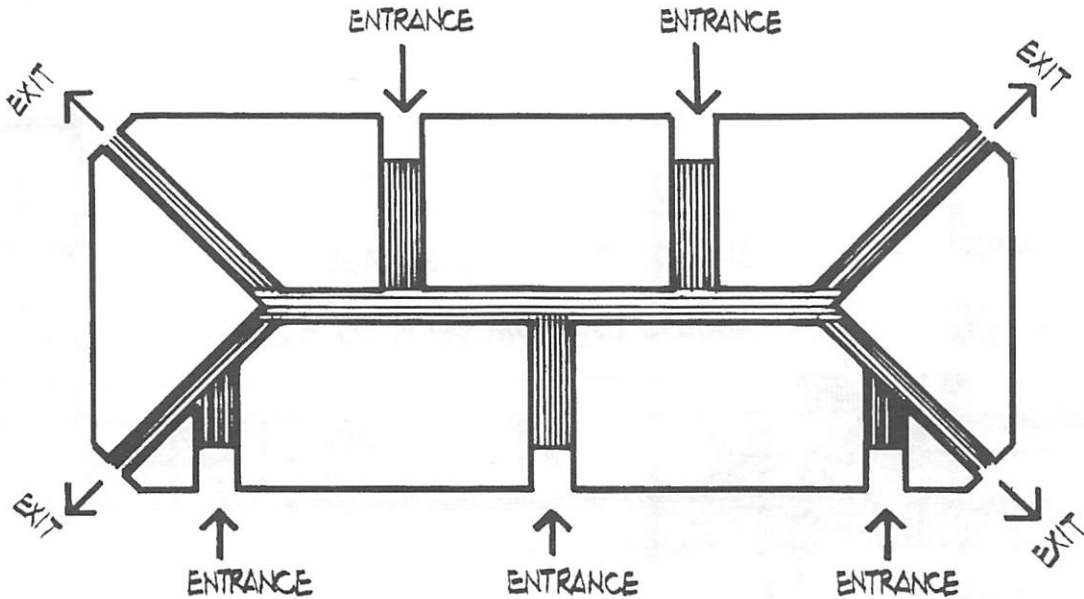
6.2.1.2- THE MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES SHALL BE EQUAL TO THE NUMBER OF REQUIRED EXITS. THIS PARAGRAPH DOES NOT REQUIRE AN INCREASE IN THE TOTAL NUMBER OF ENTRANCES PLANNED FOR A BUILDING OR FACILITY.

FOR THE BUILDING SHOWN ABOVE:

6.2.1.1- 3 ENTRANCES PROVIDED
 $3 \times .50 = 1.5 = \text{MINIMUM } 2 \text{ ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES; HOWEVER, } \dots\dots$

6.2.1.2- SINCE THE NUMBER OF PLANNED PUBLIC ENTRANCES DOES NOT EQUAL THE NUMBER OF REQUIRED EXITS, ALL 3 PLANNED PUBLIC ENTRANCES MUST BE ACCESSIBLE.

6.2.1-NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES-PART 1



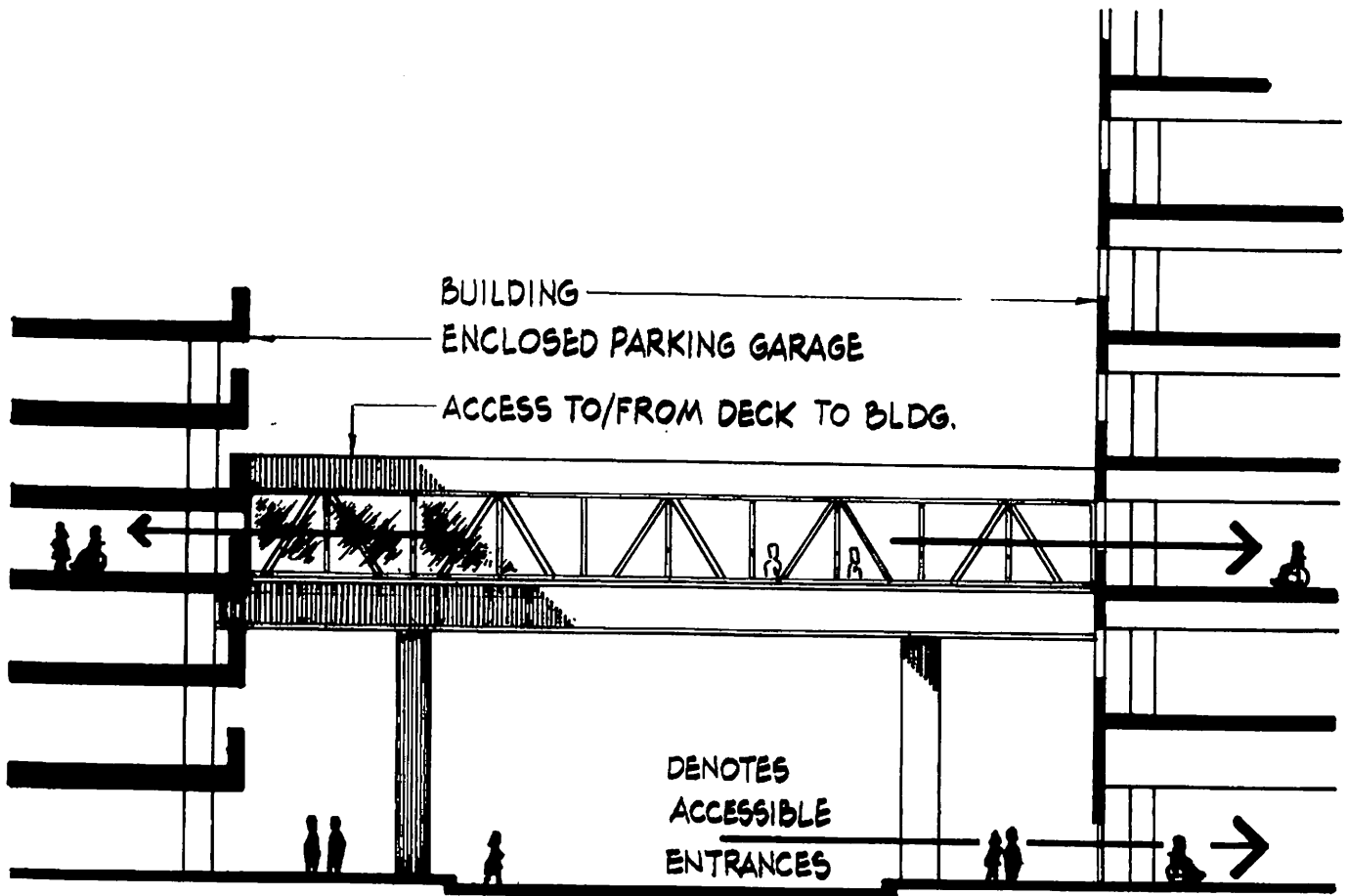
FOR THE BUILDING SHOWN ABOVE:

6.2.1.1- 5 PLANNED PUBLIC ENTRANCES
 $5 \times .50 = 2.5 = \text{MINIMUM } 3 \text{ ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES; HOWEVER,.....}$

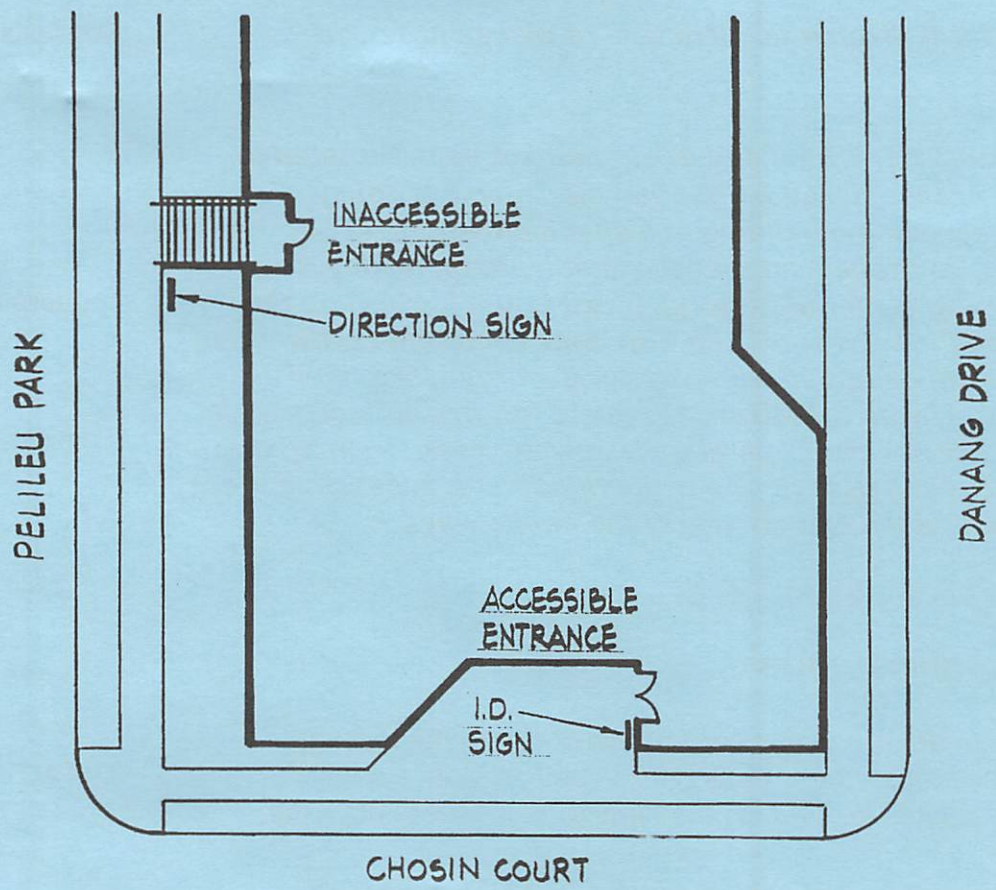
6.2.1.2- SINCE THE NUMBER OF PLANNED PUBLIC ENTRANCES IS GREATER THAN THE NUMBER OF EXITS, 4 OF THE 5 ENTRANCES MUST BE ACCESSIBLE.

THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES (4) THEN EQUALS THE NUMBER OF REQUIRED EXITS (4).

6.2.1- NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES-PART 2



6.2.2.1- IN ADDITION TO 6.2.1, IF DIRECT ACCESS IS PROVIDED FOR PEDESTRIANS FROM AN ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGE TO THE BUILDING, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE DIRECT ENTRANCE FROM THE GARAGE TO THE BUILDING SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE. (SEE, ALSO, 6.2.2.1.1 AND 6.2.2.2 - TEXT.)



ARROW IS OPTIONAL



DIRECTION SIGN (WITH OR WITHOUT ARROW) SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.2.



INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY IDENTIFICATION (I.D.) SIGN

6.2.3- DIRECTION AND IDENTIFICATION SIGNS SHALL BE PROVIDED WHEN NOT ALL ENTRANCES ARE ACCESSIBLE. (REFER TO TEXT FOR REQUIREMENTS NOT SHOWN HERE.)

6.3 ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

- * 6.3.1 *On the level of exit discharge, all means of egress provided shall be accessible.*

ADAAG 4.1.3(9)

- * (NOTE: Paragraphs 6.2.1.1, 6.2.1.2 and 6.3.1 shall not be interpreted to preclude restricted access based on internal management policy [e.g., visitors must access the building at a specified entrance] or security needs [e.g., controlled visitor access at a prison facility, or a National Guard training center or armory]. If exit doors located on the level of exit discharge are not equipped with door operating hardware on the exterior face, or are equipped with exterior security locks, they are still required to comply with 6.3 Means of Egress for: interior accessible route to the doors; interior door operating hardware; clear opening through the doorways; threshold height [if one is provided]; and accessible route from the exterior side of the exit door[s] to the public way.)

Vol. I-C
Interpretation
By Staff

6.3.2 AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE

6.3.2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

6.3.2.1.1 If an exit from an occupiable level above or below the level of exit discharge is inaccessible, then Areas of Rescue Assistance shall be provided on each such level equal to the number of inaccessible exits.

ADAAG 4.1.3(9)

- * 6.3.2.1.2 A horizontal exit meeting the requirements of *Volume I* shall satisfy the requirement for an Area of Rescue Assistance. (See, also, 6.3.2.3 through 6.3.2.6.)

ADAAG 4.1.3(9)

6.3.2.2 LOCATION AND CONSTRUCTION

6.3.2.2.1 An Area of Rescue Assistance shall be one of the following:

- * (1) A portion of a stairway landing within a smokeproof enclosure ***designed and constructed in compliance with Volume I requirements for vertical exit enclosures.***
- * (2) A portion of an exterior exit balcony located immediately adjacent to an exit stair when the balcony is ***designed and constructed in compliance with Volume I.*** Openings to the building interior that are 20 feet (6 m) or less from the Area of Rescue Assistance shall be protected with assemblies having a 3/4 hour minimum rating.
- * (3) A portion of a one-hour rated fire resistive corridor ***constructed in compliance with Volume I*** and located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure.

ADAAG 4.3.11(1)

ADAAG 4.3.11(2)

ADAAG 4.3.11(3)

- * (4) A vestibule located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure and **constructed to the same fire resistive standards required by Volume I for corridors and doors. If the corridor is not required to have rated construction, then the vestibule shall have the same rating as that required for the stair.** ADAAG 4.3.11(4)
Single Tenant Corridors: No Rating Req'd.

NOTE: For the purposes of [2], [3], and [4] “...immediately adjacent...” is defined as having direct access to an exit stairway.)

From FR 7/26/91 At 35587

- * (5) A portion of a stairway landing within an exit enclosure which is vented to the exterior and is separated from the building interior with doors having a minimum one hour fire resistance rating. ADAAG 4.3.11(5)

- * (6) An area or room which is separated from other portions of the building and completely enclosed by smoke partitions and door assemblies **complying with Volume I**. The door(s) shall have a tight-fitting smoke and draft control assembly. Direct access to an exit from within the room or area shall be provided. If the room or area leads into an exit enclosure which is required to have a fire resistance rating greater than one hour, then the construction of the room or area serving as an Area of Rescue Assistance, including the rating for the door, shall have the same fire resistance rating as that required for the exit enclosure. ADAAG 4.3.11(6)

- * (7) An elevator lobby when it is pressurized in the same manner as elevator shafts (**see Volume I, Special Provisions For High Rise Buildings**). Supervised smoke detectors located in the lobby shall activate the pressurization system. The pressurization equipment (fans and duct work) shall be separated from the remainder of the building by construction having a minimum 2-hour fire resistance rating. ADAAG 4.3.11(7)

6.3.2.3 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AND NUMBER

6.3.2.3.1 Each Area of Rescue Assistance shall provide a minimum of two, 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor spaces. Each Area of Rescue Assistance shall be composed of one group of two (2) clear floor spaces for each 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the Area of Rescue Assistance. No Area of Rescue Assistance shall encroach on any clear required exit width. ADAAG 4.3.11.2

(E.G.: A two-story building has a second floor occupant content of 620 persons. The exit capacity for the northwest exit is 200 persons; that for the southeast exit is 420 persons. In compliance with this Paragraph, the Area of Rescue Assistance for the northwest exit must accommodate one group [200/200 = 1] totaling two clear floor spaces; the Rescue Assistance Area for the southeast exit must accommodate two groups [420/200 = 2.1 = 2] totaling four clear floor spaces.)

***6.3.2.3.2** If the calculated occupant content per story *is 199 persons or less*, then each Area of Rescue Assistance shall have a minimum of one clear floor space that complies with 6.3.2.3.1. **ADAAG 4.3.11.2, Exception**

6.3.2.3.3 No door or door swing shall overlap, interfere, or obstruct access to, and use of, any Area of Rescue Assistance. **Derived From ADAAG 4.3.11.2**

***6.3.2.3.4** *Access to any clear floor space in an Area of Rescue Assistance shall not be through more than one adjoining clear floor space.* **NFPA 101, 5-2.12.3.3 (1996 Edition)**

6.3.2.4 STAIRWAY WIDTH

6.3.2.4.1 Each stairway adjacent to an Area of Rescue Assistance shall have a 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear width between the handrails. **ADAAG 4.3.11.3**

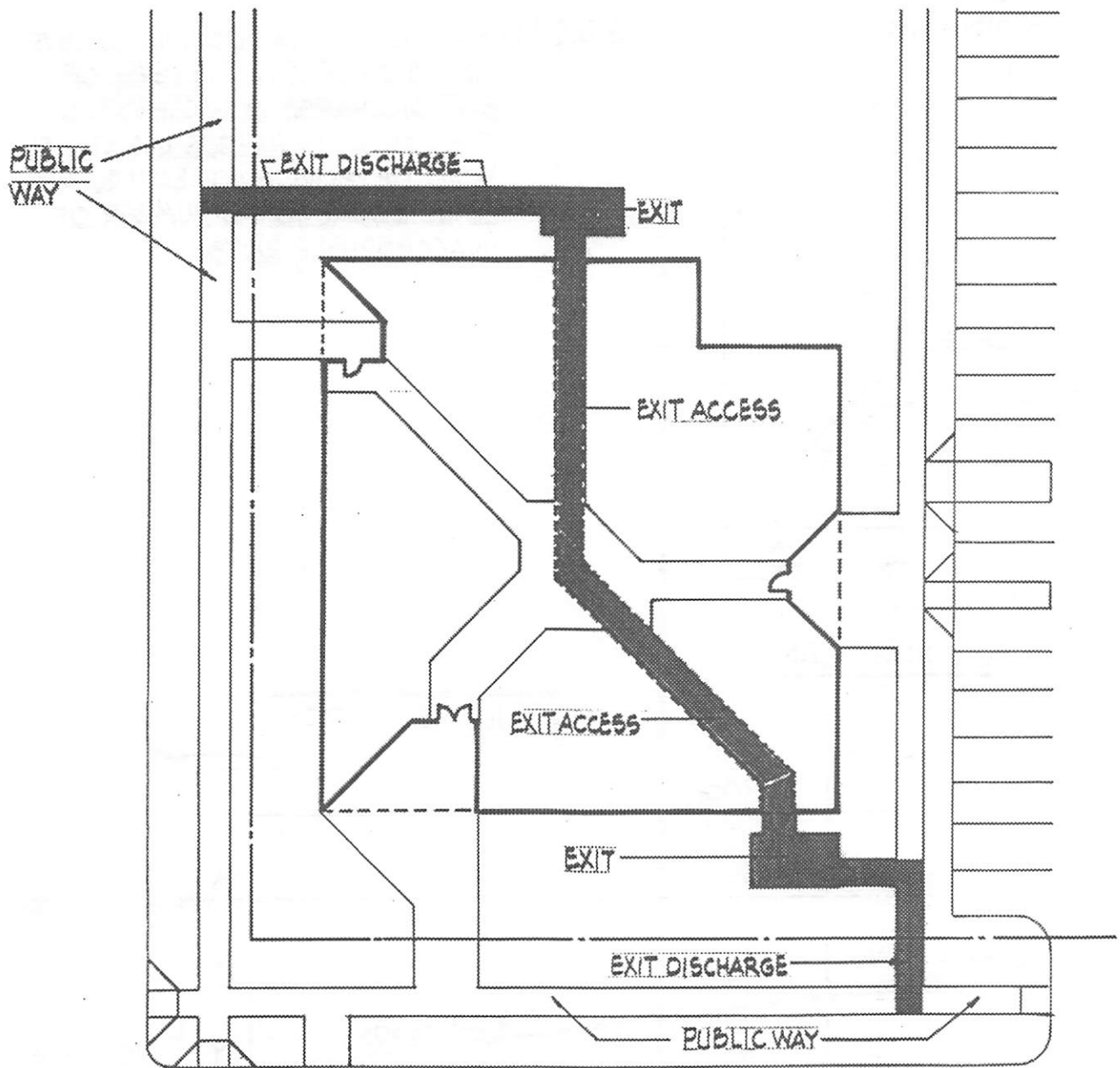
6.3.2.5 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION

6.3.2.5.1 Each Area of Rescue Assistance shall be provided with visual and audible methods of two-way communication. The communication system shall connect each Area of Rescue Assistance with either the primary building entrance (i.e., the entrance through which the majority of persons access the building) or an alternate location approved by the Code Enforcement or Fire Department Officials having jurisdiction. **ADAAG 4.3.11.4**

6.3.2.5.2 Each Area of Rescue Assistance shall have instructions posted adjacent to the two-way communication systems concerning the use of the Area of Rescue Assistance under emergency conditions. Such instructions shall be legible and comply with 18.1.2. **ADAAG 4.3.11.5**

6.3.2.5.3 All controls and operating mechanisms for the communication system shall comply with 16.1.2 and the applicable requirements of 16.2. **Cross-Reference**

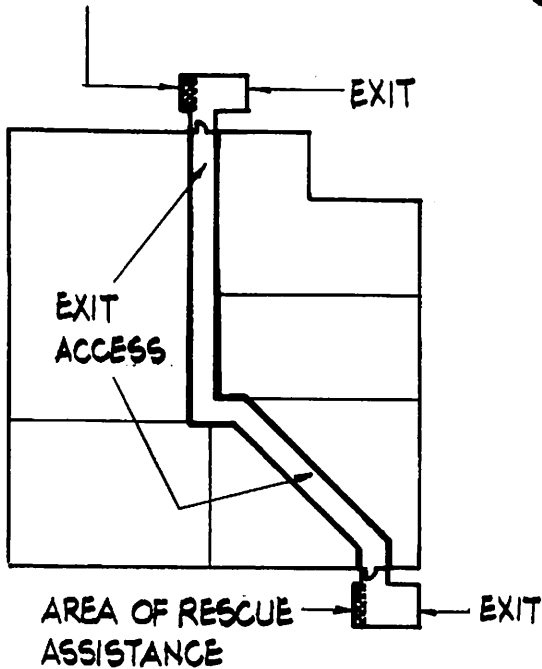
***6.3.2.5.4** *The two-way communication systems shall have an independent and separate source of power.* **Vol. I, 412.10.2(7), 1016.1.2**



6.3.1- ON THE LEVEL OF EXIT DISCHARGE ALL MEANS OF EGRESS PROVIDED SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE.

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

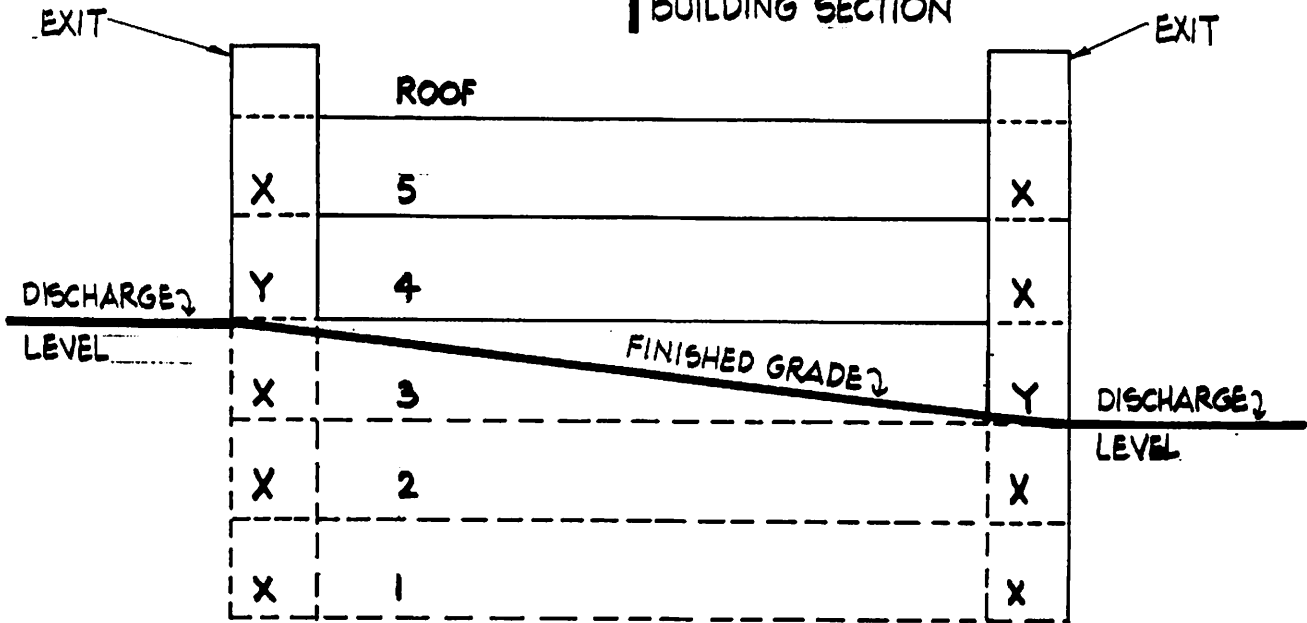
AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE



6.3.2.1.1-IF AN EXIT FROM AN OCCUPIABLE LEVEL ABOVE OR BELOW THE LEVEL OF EXIT DISCHARGE IS INACCESSIBLE, THEN AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SHALL BE PROVIDED ON EACH SUCH LEVEL EQUAL TO THE NUMBER OF INACCESSIBLE EXITS.

BUILDING PLAN

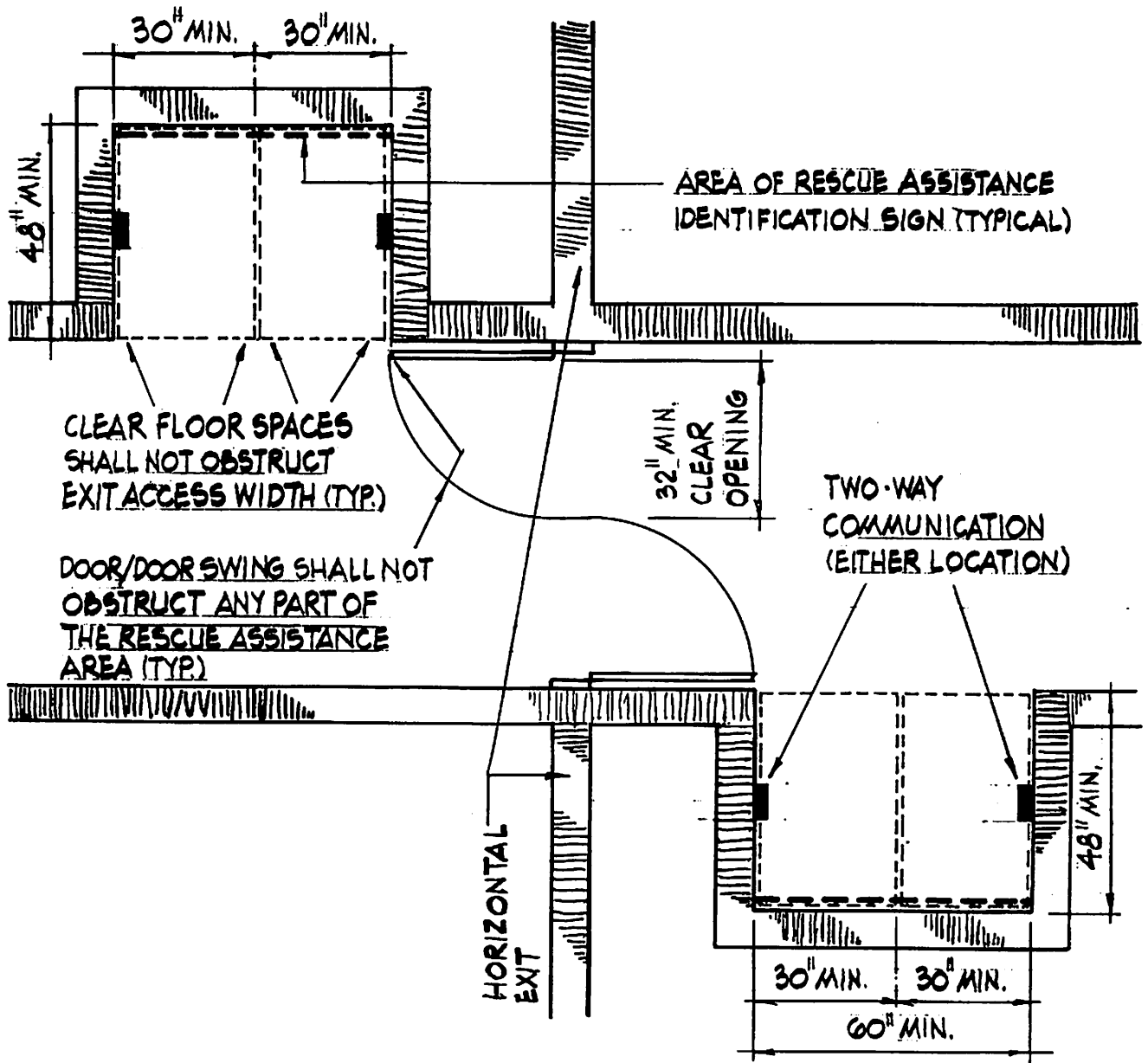
BUILDING SECTION



X = AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE REQUIRED.

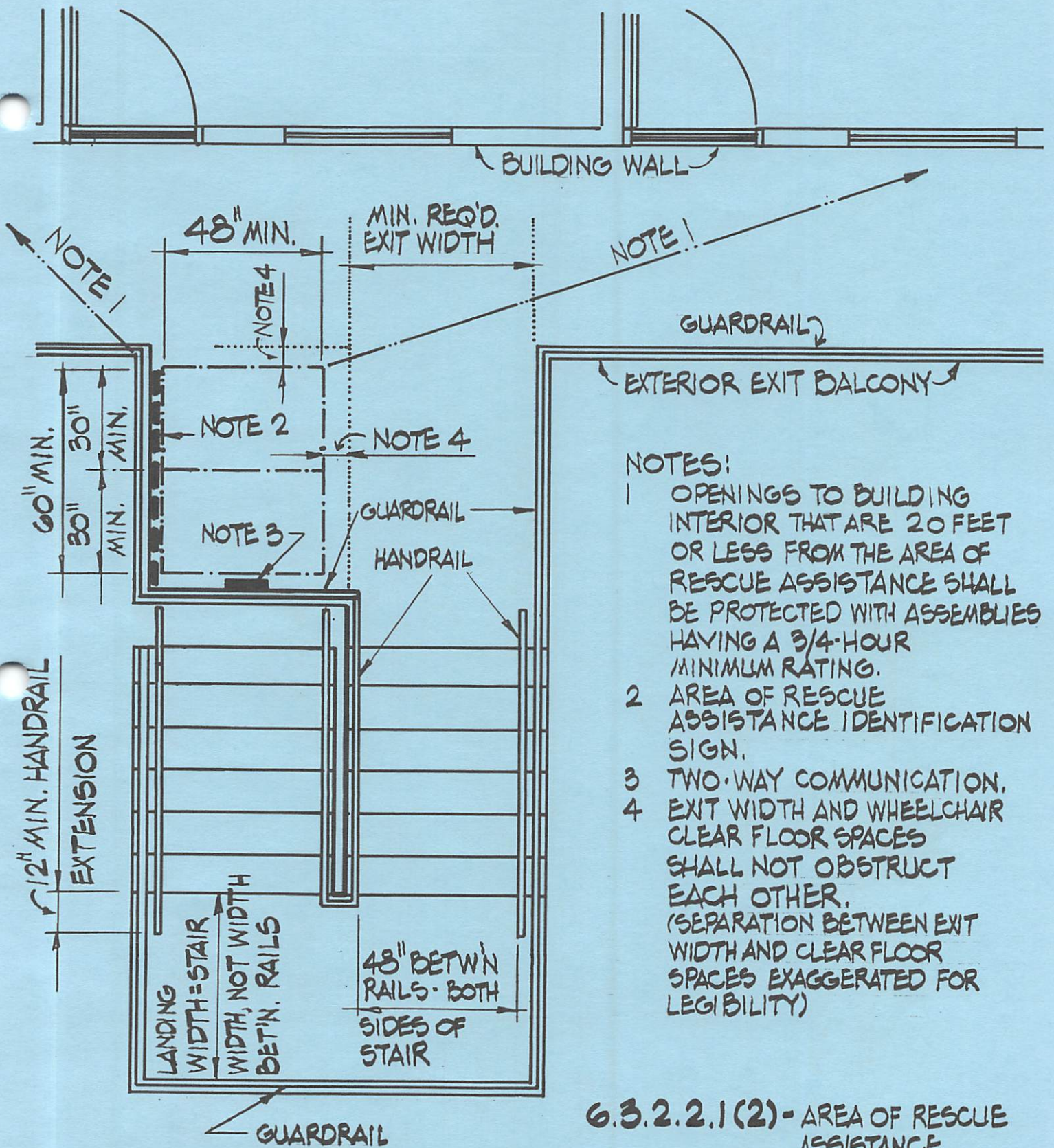
Y = AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE NOT REQUIRED.

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



6.3.2.1.2- A HORIZONTAL EXIT MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF VOLUME I SHALL SATISFY THE REQUIREMENT FOR AN AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE. (SEE, ALSO, 6.3.2.3 THROUGH 6.3.2.6.)

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



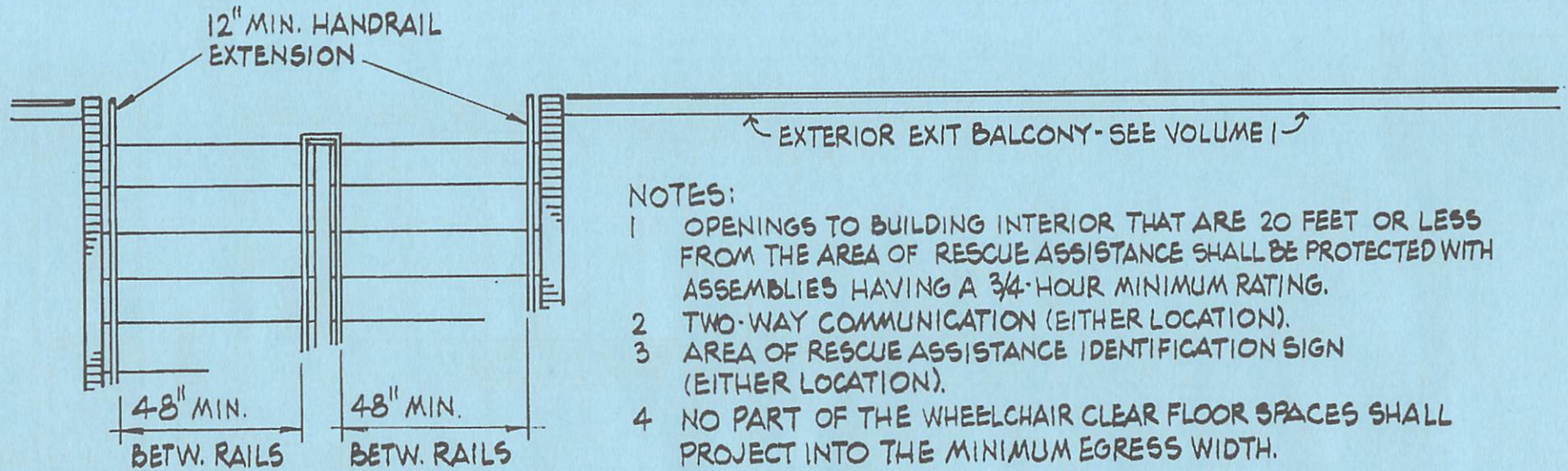
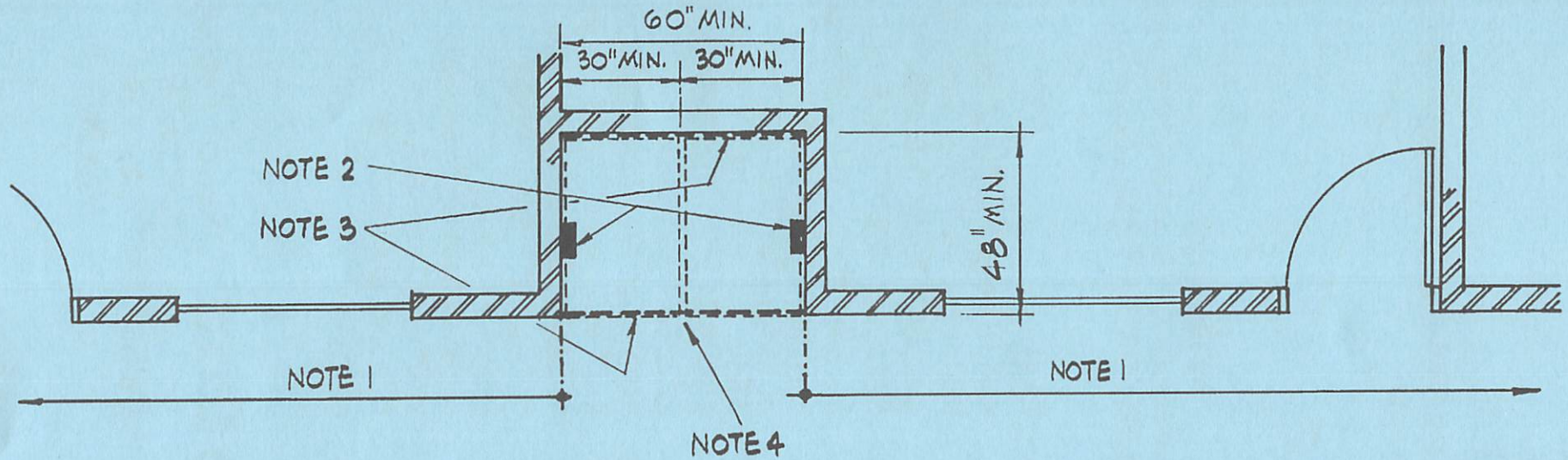
NOTES:

- 1 OPENINGS TO BUILDING INTERIOR THAT ARE 20 FEET OR LESS FROM THE AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SHALL BE PROTECTED WITH ASSEMBLIES HAVING A 3/4-HOUR MINIMUM RATING.
- 2 AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE IDENTIFICATION SIGN.
- 3 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION.
- 4 EXIT WIDTH AND WHEELCHAIR CLEAR FLOOR SPACES SHALL NOT OBSTRUCT EACH OTHER. (SEPARATION BETWEEN EXIT WIDTH AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACES EXAGGERATED FOR LEGIBILITY)

6.3.2.2.1 (2) - AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE EXTERIOR EXIT BALCONY EXAMPLE 1

STAIR ENCLOSURE AND DOOR DELETED FOR CLARITY. TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS NOT CHANGED. JUNE 2001

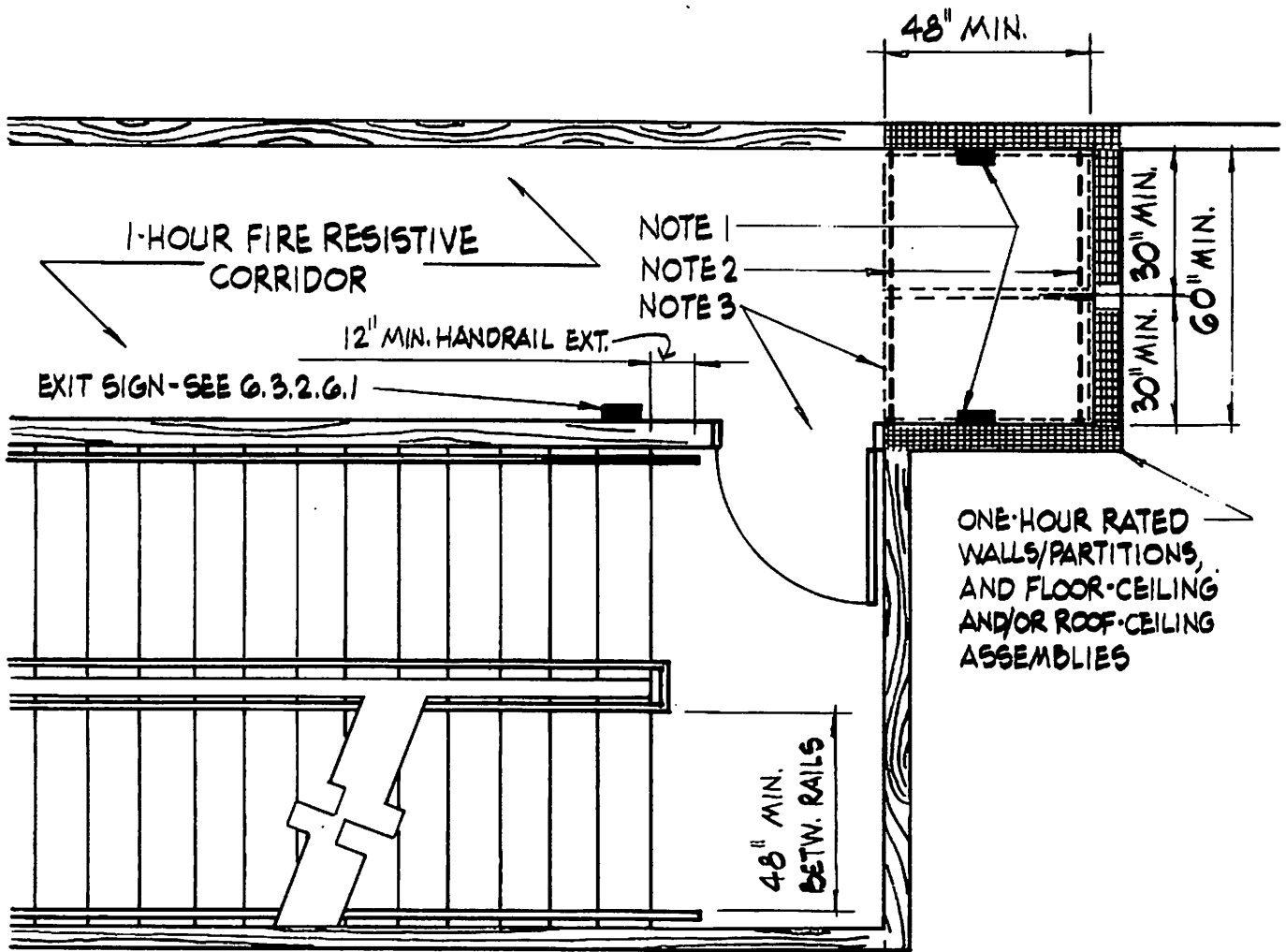
6.3 - ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



OPEN STAIR SERVING
MULTI-STORY BUILDING SHOWN

6.3.2.2.1 (2) - AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE
EXTERIOR EXIT BALCONY - EXAMPLE 2

6.3 - ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



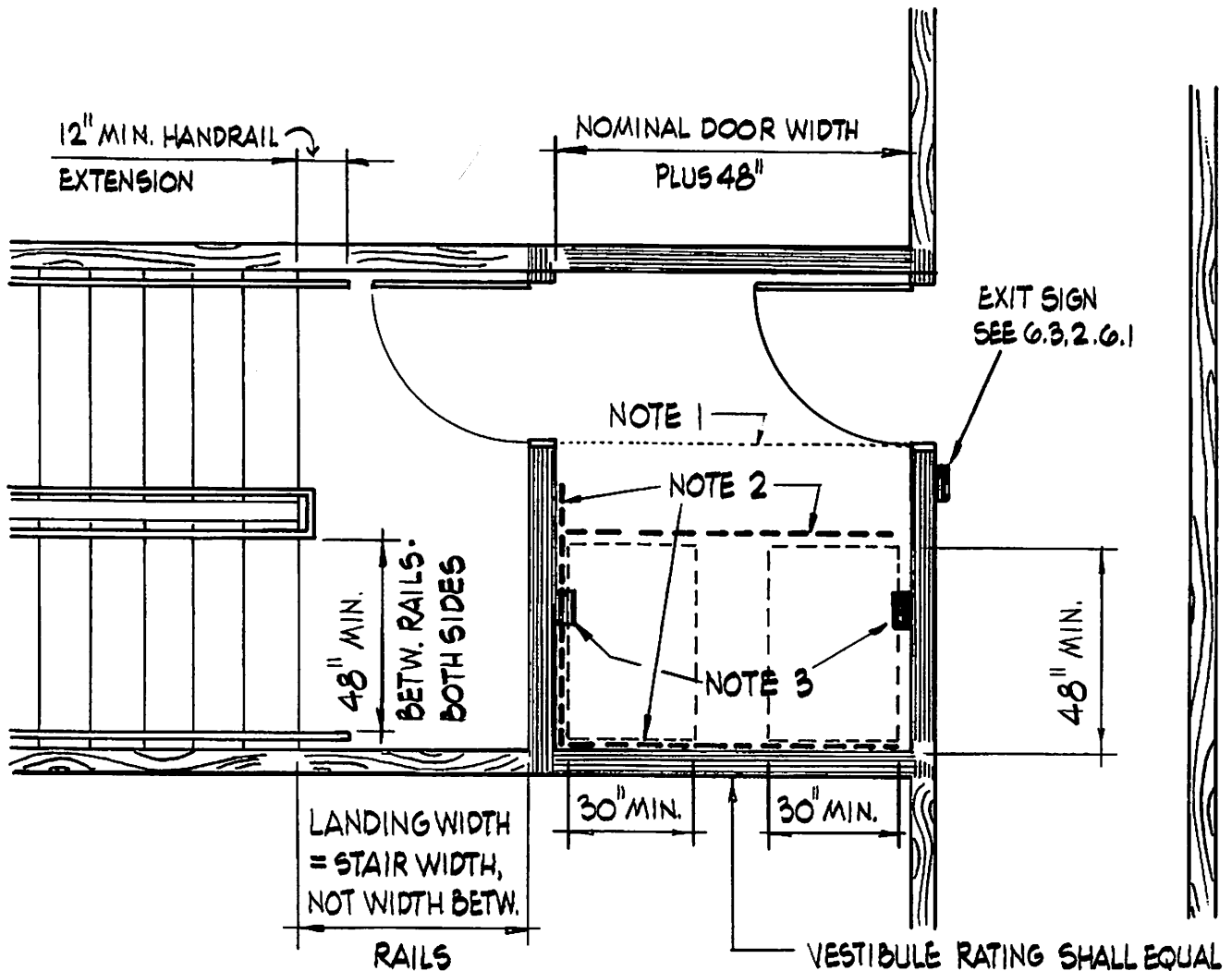
NOTES:

- 1 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION (EITHER LOCATION).
- 2 AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE IDENTIFICATION SIGN (EITHER LOCATION).
- 3 NO PART OF THE WHEELCHAIR CLEAR FLOOR SPACES SHALL PROJECT INTO THE MINIMUM EGRESS WIDTH OR DOOR CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.

LANDING WIDTH =
STAIR WIDTH, NOT
WIDTH BETW'N
RAILS

6.3.2.2.1(3)- AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE
A PORTION OF A ONE-HOUR FIRE RESISTIVE CORRIDOR CONSTRUCTED IN COMPLIANCE WITH VOLUME I. THE RESCUE ASSISTANCE AREA SHALL BE LOCATED IMMEDIATELY ADJACENT TO AN EXIT ENCLOSURE.

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



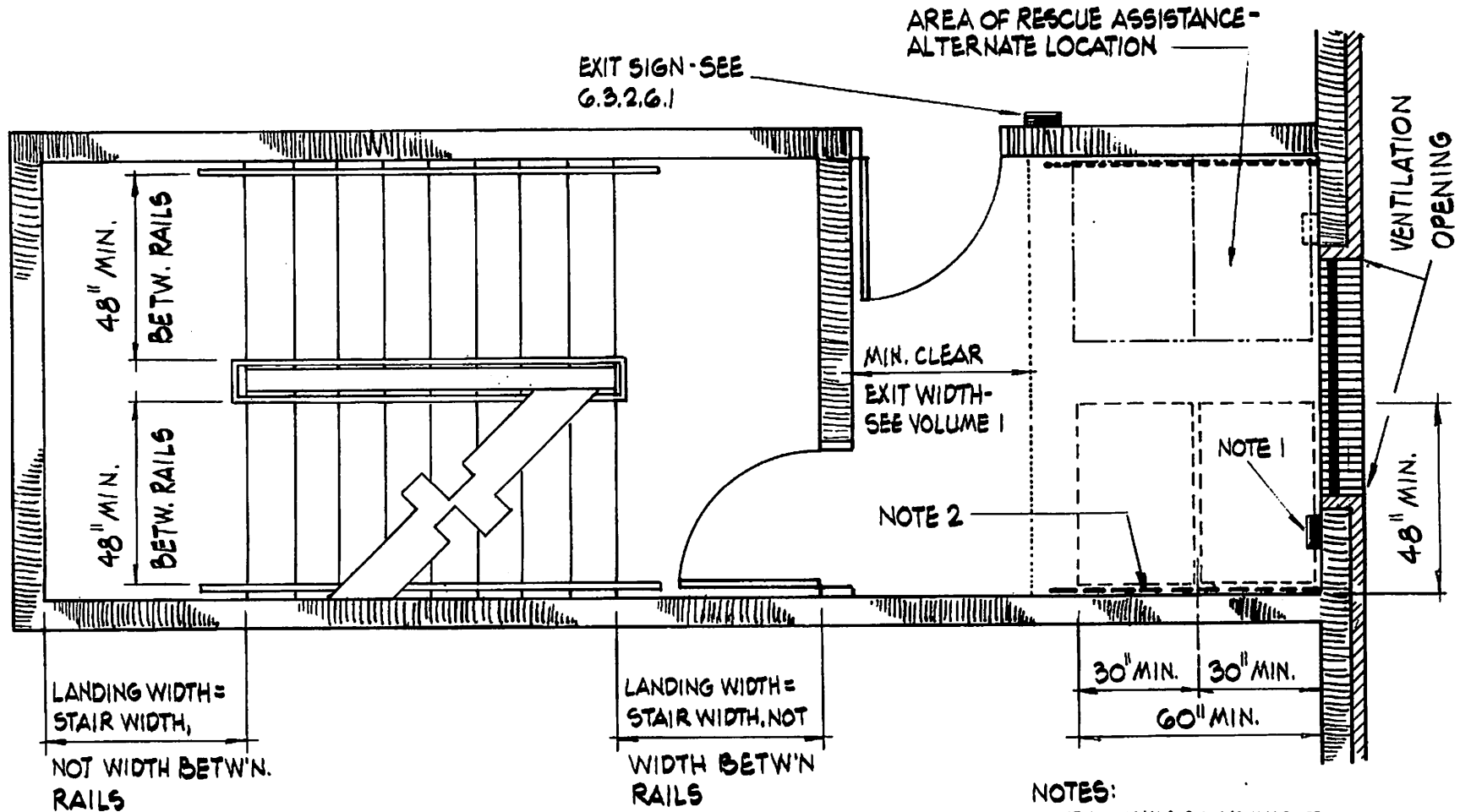
NOTES:

- 1 WHEELCHAIR CLEAR FLOOR SPACES SHALL NOT OVERLAP THE MINIMUM TRAVEL PATH TO THE EXIT.
- 2 AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE IDENTIFICATION SIGN (ANY OF 3 LOCATIONS).
- 3 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION (EITHER LOCATION).

VESTIBULE RATING SHALL EQUAL CORRIDOR RATING REQUIRED BY VOLUME I.
 IF NO RATING IS REQUIRED FOR THE CORRIDOR, THEN THE VESTIBULE SHALL HAVE THE SAME RATING AS THE STAIR.

6.3.2.2.1(4)- AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE
 A VESTIBULE LOCATED IMMEDIATELY ADJACENT TO AN EXIT ENCLOSURE.

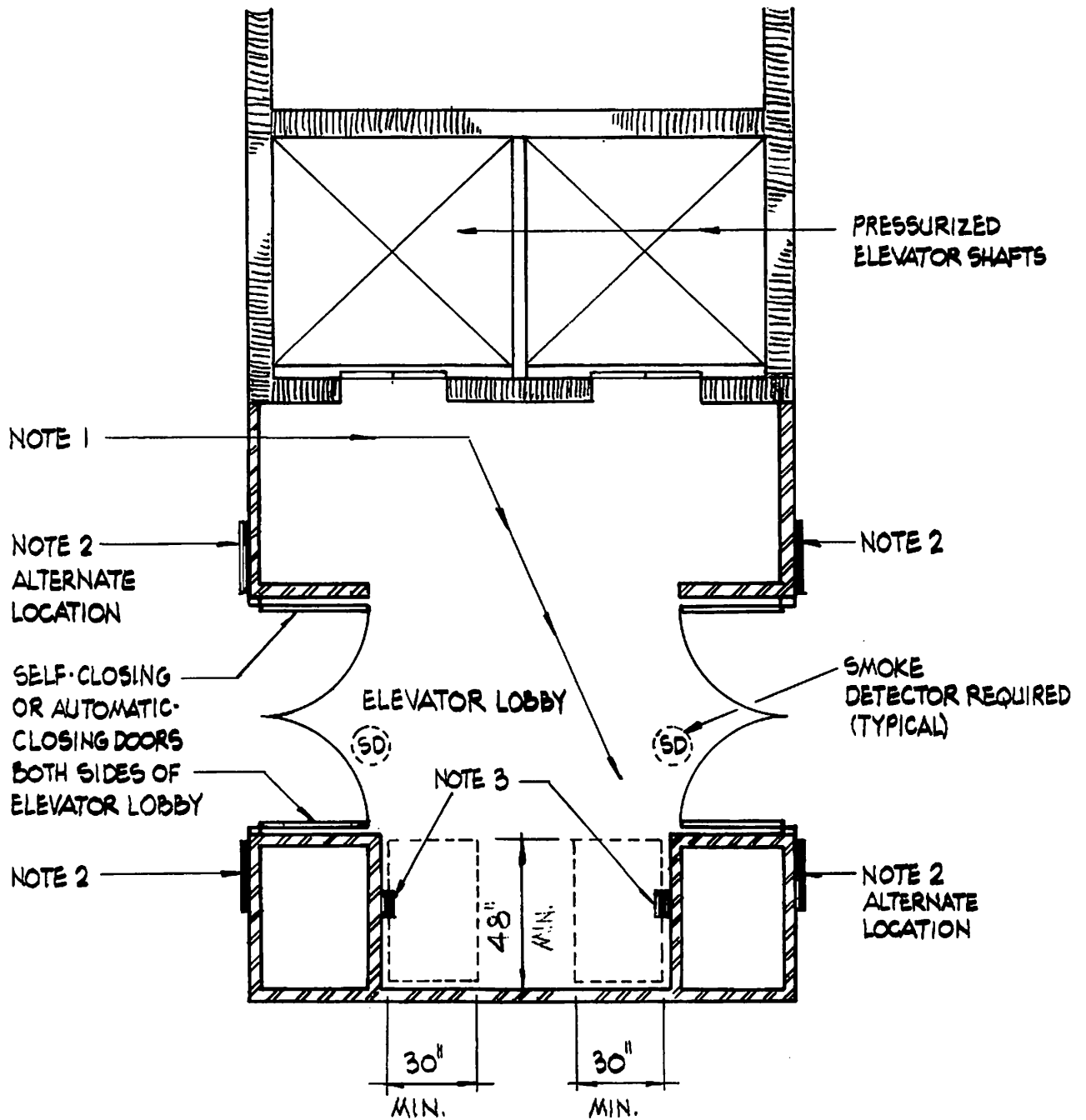
6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



- NOTES:
- 1 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION
 - 2 AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE IDENTIFICATION SIGN

6.3.2.2.1(5)- AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE
 A PORTION OF A STAIRWAY LANDING WITHIN AN EXIT ENCLOSURE WHICH IS VENTED TO THE EXTERIOR AND IS SEPARATED FROM THE BUILDING INTERIOR WITH DOORS HAVING A MINIMUM 1-HOUR FIRE RESISTANCE RATING.

6.3-ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

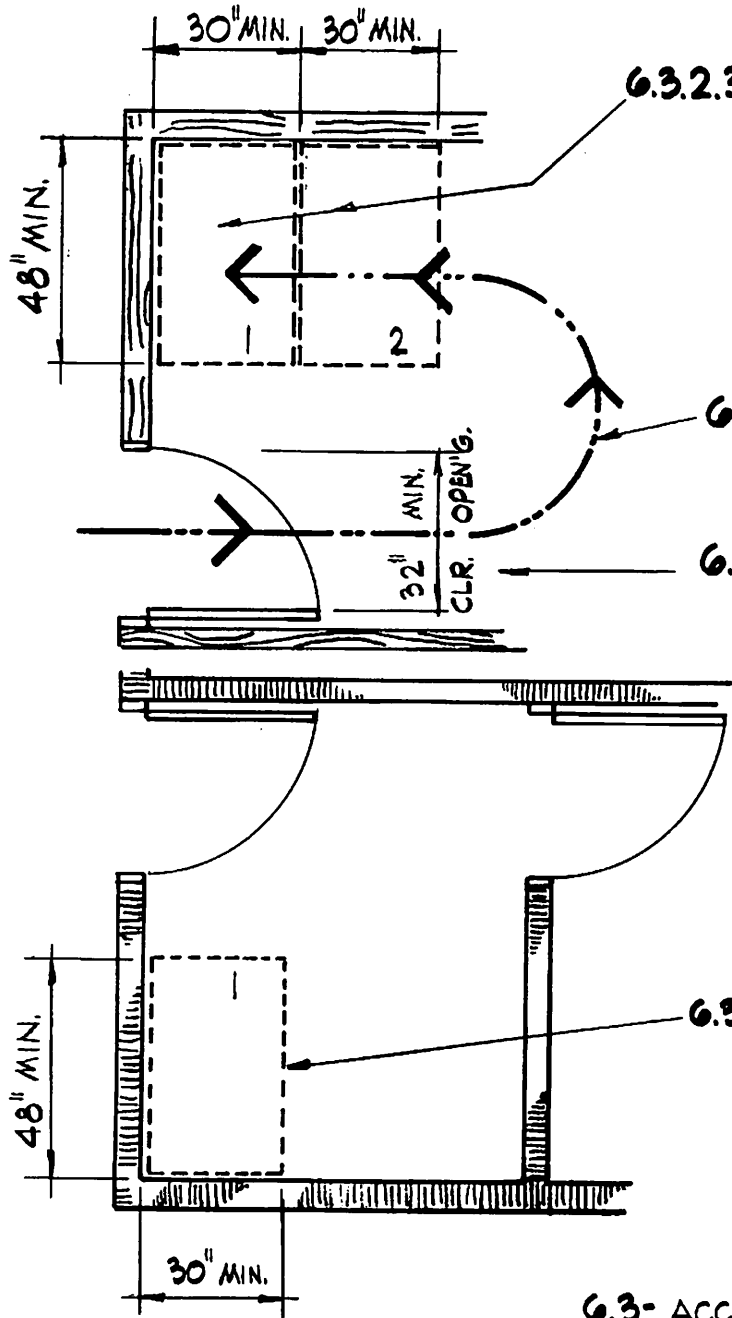


NOTES:

- 1 PRESSURIZED ELEVATOR LOBBY - FANS AND DUCTS SEPARATED FROM REMAINDER OF BUILDING BY MINIMUM 2-HOUR RATED CONSTRUCTION.
- 2 AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SIGN SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.1. MINIMUM OF 1 SIGN PER DOORWAY.
- 3 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION (EITHER LOCATION).

**6.3.2.2.1 (7)- AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE
PRESSURIZED ELEVATOR LOBBY**

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



6.3.2.3.1- EACH AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SHALL BE COMPOSED OF ONE GROUP OF 2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACES FOR EACH 200 PERSONS OF CALCULATED OCCUPANT LOAD SERVED BY THE AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE. NO AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SHALL ENCR OACH ON ANY CLEAR REQUIRED EXIT WIDTH.

6.3.2.3.4- ACCESS TO ANY CLEAR FLOOR SPACE SHALL NOT BE THROUGH MORE THAN ONE ADJOINING CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.

6.3.2.3.3- NO DOOR NOR DOOR SWING SHALL OVERLAP, INTERFERE, OR OBSTRUCT ACCESS TO, AND USE OF, ANY AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE.

6.3.2.3.2- IF THE CALCULATED OCCUPANT CONTENT PER STORY IS 199 OR LESS, THEN EACH AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM OF ONE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

6.3.2.6 IDENTIFYING SIGNAGE

- *6.3.2.6.1 Each Area of Rescue Assistance shall be identified with a sign bearing the words:

AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE

which shall be accompanied by the International Symbol of Accessibility. Such signage shall be illuminated when exit sign illumination is required *by Volume I.*

(NOTE 1: For the types of Rescue Assistance Areas identified by 6.3.2.2.1[1] through [5] the signs shall comply with 18.1.2 [Information-Direction signs]; for the types of Rescue Assistance Areas identified by 6.3.2.2.1[6] and [7] the signs shall comply with 18.1.1 [Signs Identifying Permanent Rooms And Spaces].

NOTE 2: At the exit, the "EXIT" sign designates a permanent room or space and shall comply with 18.1.1. "EXIT" signs indicating the direction to the exit shall comply with 18.1.2.)

ADAAG 4.3.11.5

Differentiating
Between Sign Types:
Access Board (Via
Telephone) 3/13/97

USDoJ Via
Access Board (Via
Telephone) 4/26/95

- *6.3.2.6.2 *Along the exit access directional signs bearing the legend:*

AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE

shall be placed to clearly indicate the direction to the Rescue Assistance Area. No point in the exit access shall be more than 100 feet (30.5 m) from the nearest visible sign. Signs shall comply with 18.1.2, display the International Symbol of Accessibility, and have a directional indicator which shall be:

- (1) *An integral part of the sign;*
- (2) *Located outside the legend and Symbol; and*
- (3) *On the same side of the sign as the indicated direction of travel.*

ADAAG
4.3.11.5,
ADAAG
4.1.3(16)(b)

100 Ft.: Vol. I,
1016.2.1

Indicator:
NFPA 101, 5-10.4.1.2

6.3.3 BUILDINGS NOT REQUIRING AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE

(NOTE: This Section applies only to Areas of Rescue Assistance and does not include the requirement for accessible Means of Egress.)

Tech. Assist.
Manual, Pg. 58
III-7.5135

6.3.3.1 Rescue Assistance Areas are not required for the following:

- (1) Buildings and facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system; ADAAG 4.1.3(9),
Exception
- (2) Group I-3 inmate housing areas including common use areas used exclusively by inmates (For inmate common use areas see 31.1.2.1); ADAAG 12.1,
Exception 1/13/98
- (3) Exterior facilities such as parking lots and open parking garages. FR 7/26/91 At 35420

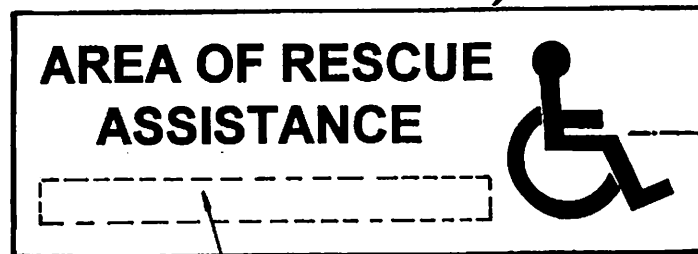
SIGN MAY BE LEFT-
OR RIGHT-HANDED

THIS SYMBOL SHALL BE USED ON ALL
AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SIGNS



6.3.2.6.1- AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SIGNS SHALL:

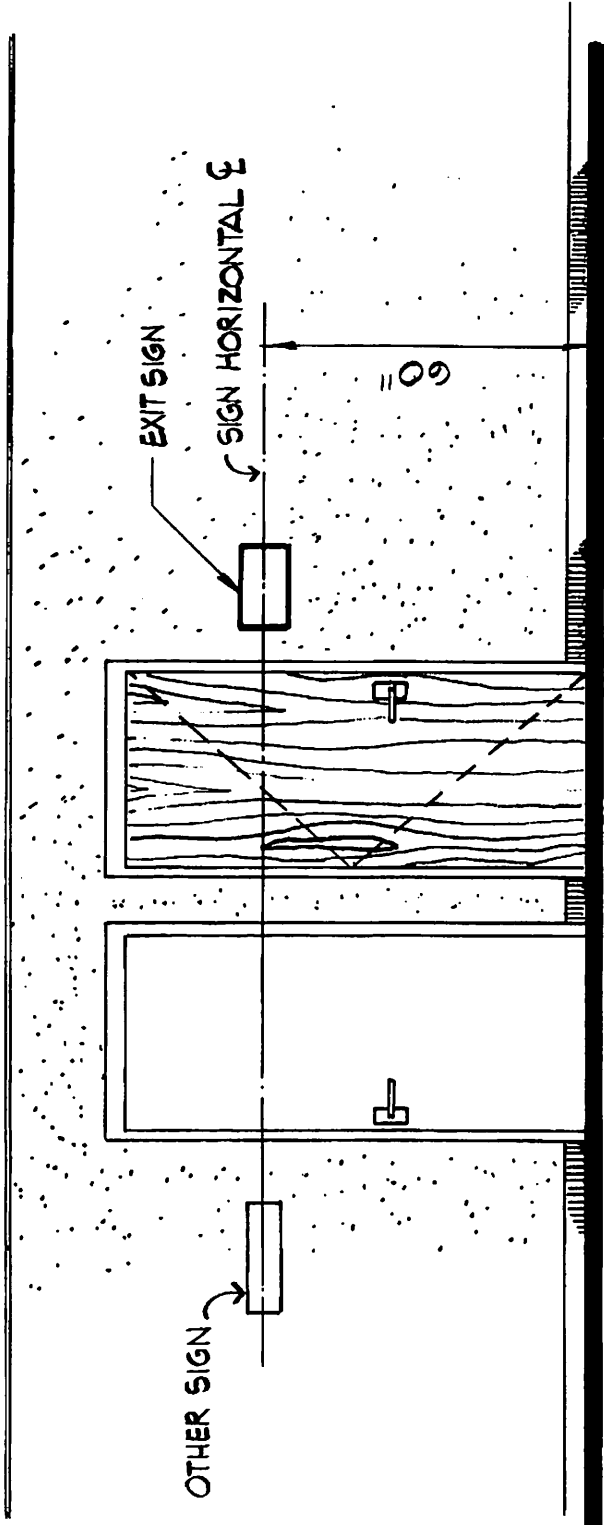
- 1 BE ILLUMINATED WHEN EXIT SIGN ILLUMINATION IS REQUIRED BY VOLUME I;
- 2 COMPLY WITH 18.1.2 FOR RESCUE ASSISTANCE AREAS 6.3.2.2.1(1) THROUGH (5);
- 3 COMPLY WITH 18.1.1 FOR RESCUE ASSISTANCE AREAS 6.3.2.2.1(6) AND (7).



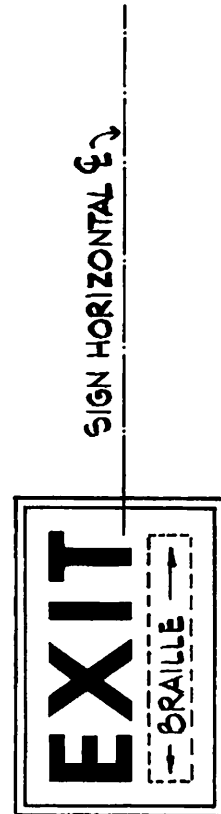
SIGN HORIZONTAL & AT 60"
ABOVE FINISHED FLOOR

BRAILLE

6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



6.3.2.6.1, NOTE 2- AT THE EXIT, THE "EXIT" SIGN DESIGNATES A PERMANENT ROOM OR SPACE AND SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.1. "EXIT" SIGNS INDICATING THE DIRECTION TO THE EXIT SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.2.



6.3- ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS



**DIRECTION INDICATOR:
SHALL BE PART OF THE SIGN;
SHALL BE LOCATED OUTSIDE
THE LEGEND AND SYMBOL;
SHALL BE LOCATED ON THE
SAME SIDE OF THE SIGN
AS THE INDICATED TRAVEL
DIRECTION.**

**6.3.2.6.2 - AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE DIRECTION
SIGNS SHALL COMPLY WITH 16.1.2.
NO POINT IN THE EXIT ACCESS SHALL BE MORE
THAN 100 FEET FROM THE NEAREST VISIBLE SIGN.**

6.3 - ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

**CHAPTER 7
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND DOOR HARDWARE**

7.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

7.1.1 Exterior and interior passage doors for buildings to which 1.2 applies shall be located along accessible routes and shall comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.1;
ADAAG 4.3.9

7.1.2 Accessible doors shall be operable by a single effort.

From Vol. I-C,
4.3.2(b)

*7.1.3 If an automatic door is provided, then it shall comply with **ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1991**. Slow opening, low-powered automatic doors shall comply with **ANSI A156.19-1991**. Such doors shall not open to back check faster than 3 seconds and shall require a 15 pound (6.8 Kg) maximum force to stop movement.

ADAAG 4.13.12

*7.1.4 If a power-assisted door is used, then the door opening force shall comply with 7.6. Door closing shall conform to **ANSI A156.19-1991**.

ADAAG 4.13.12

7.2 CLEAR PASSAGE THROUGH DOORS (DOORWAYS)

7.2.1 Exterior and interior doors shall have a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening when the door is in the fully open position. For swing doors the clear opening shall be measured from the face of the strike jamb stop to the finished face of the door in the 90 degree open position. For horizontal sliding doors the clear opening shall be measured from the locking edge of the door in the open position to the face of the latch jamb.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.2(a);
ADAAG 4.13.5,
Figures 24(c),
24(d)

7.2.1.1 Doors that do not require through passage (e.g., at a shallow closet) may have the clear opening reduced to 20 inches (510 mm) minimum.

ADAAG 4.13.5,
Exception

7.2.2 Two leaf doors may be used provided that the primary operable leaf has a 32 inches (813 mm) minimum clear opening.

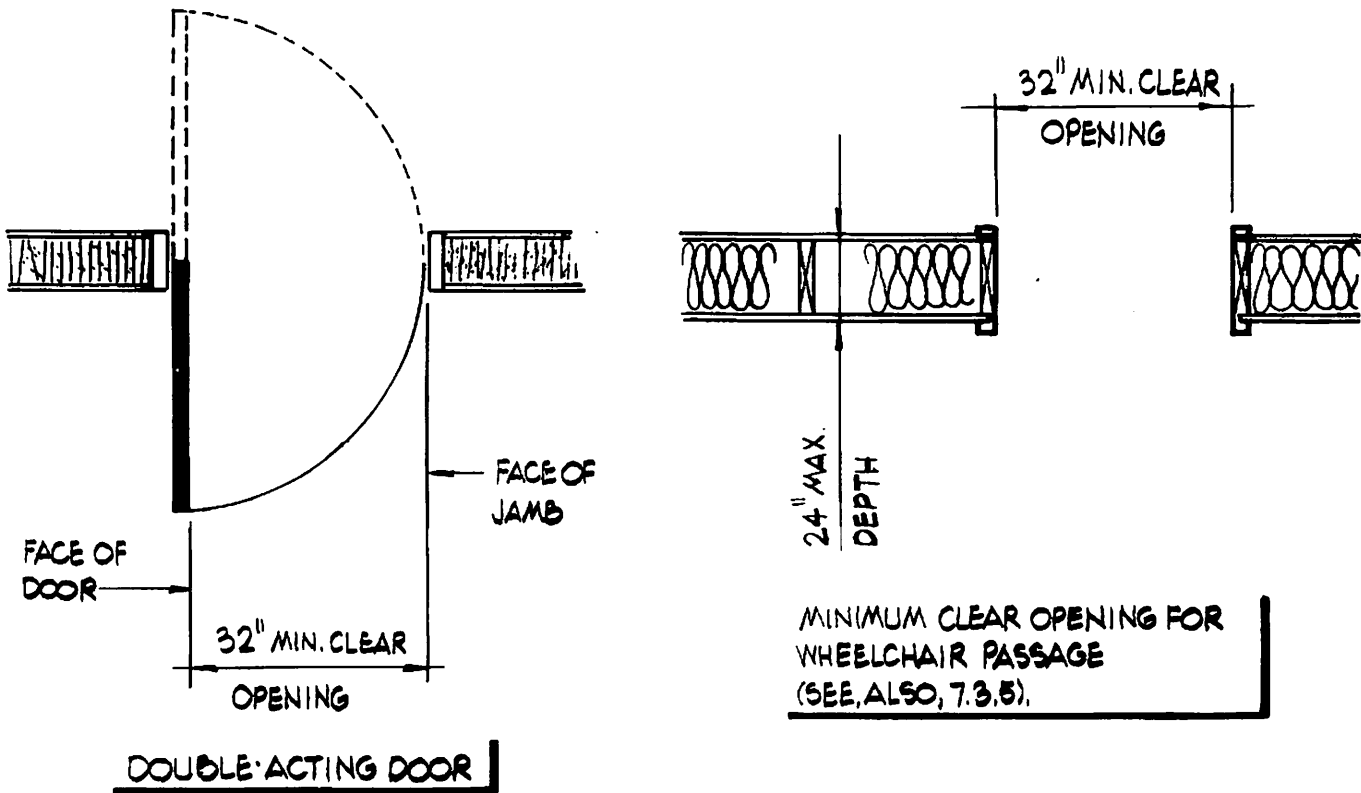
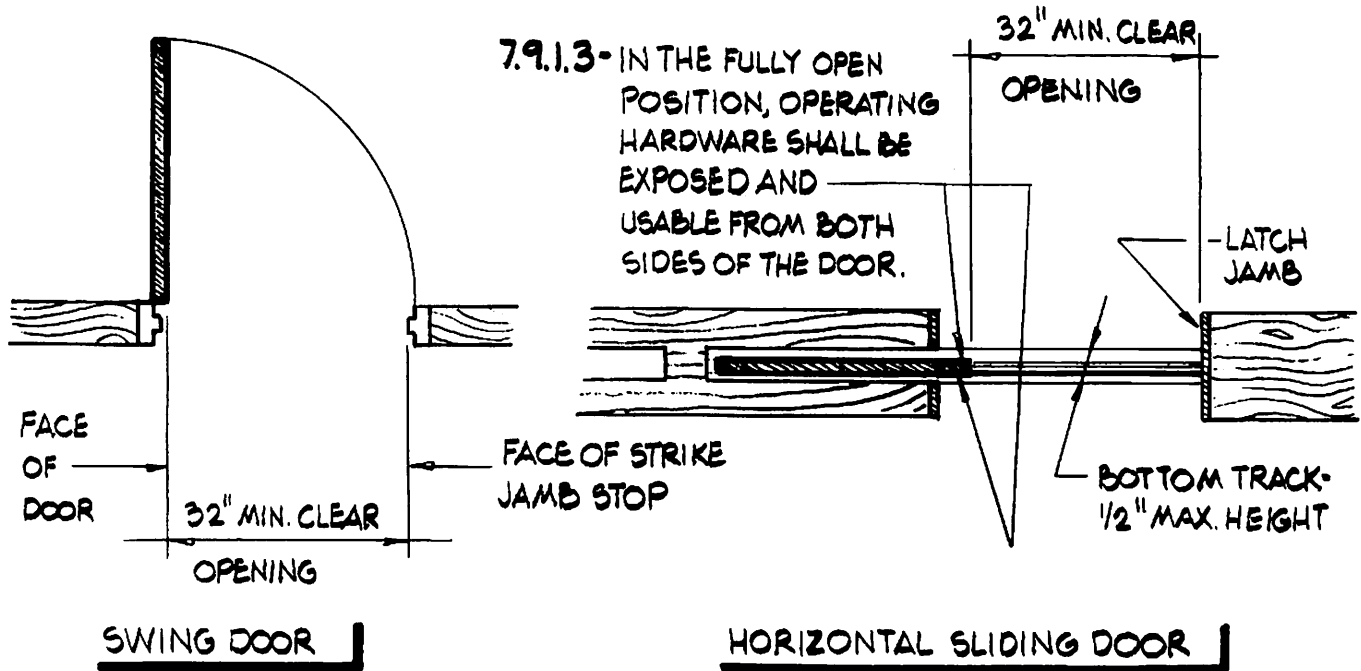
Vol. I-C. 4.3.2(b);
ADAAG 4.13.4

7.2.3 Gates, including ticket gates, shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Chapter.

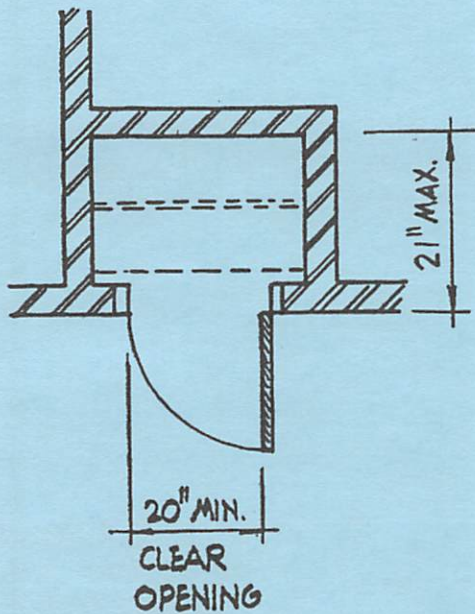
ADAAG 4.13.3

*7.2.4 If revolving doors or turnstiles are used, then an adjacent accessible door or gate **located 20 feet (6 m) maximum** from the revolving door or turnstile shall be provided.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.2(c);
ADAAG 4.13.2 Says
“....Adjacent To....”
But Gives No
Further Statement



7.2.1- EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR DOORS SHALL HAVE A 32" MINIMUM CLEAR OPENING WHEN THE DOOR IS IN THE FULLY OPEN POSITION.



← THIS DIMENSION REFERS TO REACH RANGE **NOT** CLOSET DEPTH. COMPARE THIS DIMENSION TO THE SIDE REACH DIMENSIONS SHOWN IN THE ILLUSTRATION(S) FOR 20.3.2.3.1.

Clarification Added By Council June 8, 1999

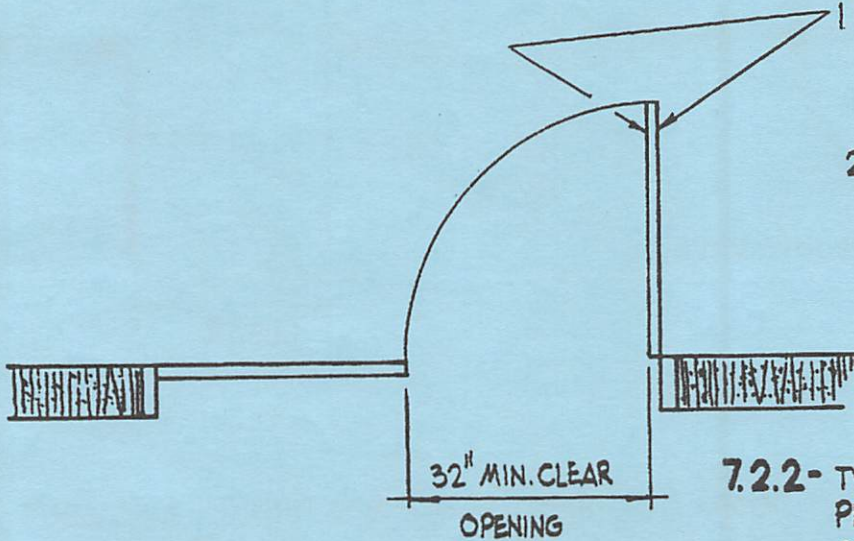
7.2.1.1- DOORS THAT DO NOT REQUIRE THROUGH PASSAGE (E.G., A SHALLOW CLOSET) MAY HAVE THE CLEAR OPENING REDUCED TO 20" MINIMUM.

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY (I.S.A.)



NOTES:

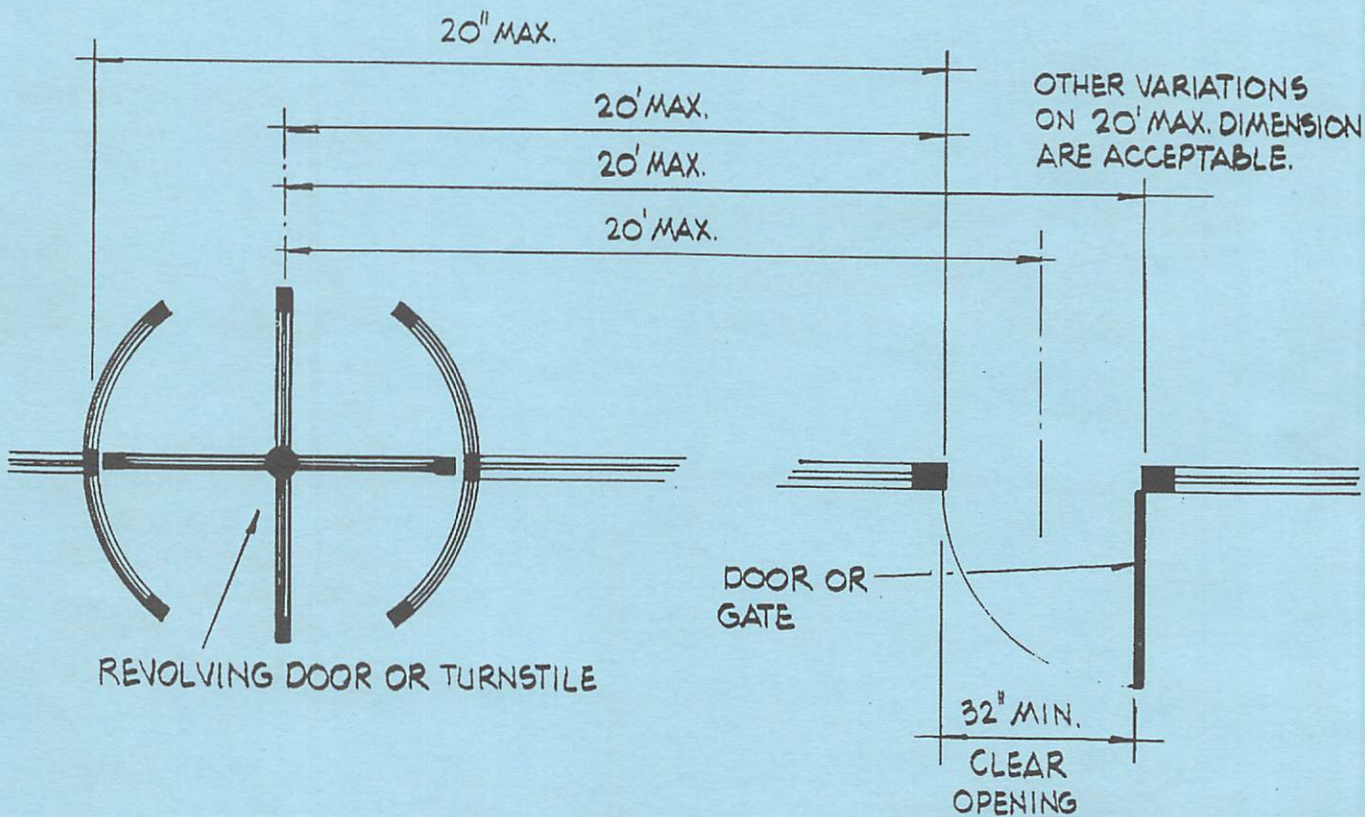
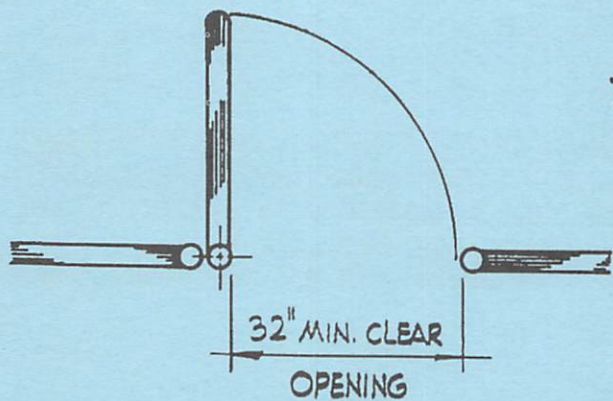
- 1 IF ONLY ONE LEAF IS ACCESSIBLE, THEN THE I.S.A. SHALL BE PROVIDED ON BOTH SIDES OF THE DOOR.
- 2 IF BOTH DOORS ARE ACCESSIBLE, THEN USE OF THE I.S.A. IS NOT REQUIRED.



7.2.2- TWO LEAF DOORS MAY BE USED PROVIDED THAT THE PRIMARY OPERABLE LEAF HAS A 32" MIN. CLEAR OPENING.

7.2- CLEAR PASSAGE THROUGH DOORS/DOORWAYS

7.2.3- GATES, INCLUDING TICKET GATES, SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS CHAPTER.



7.2.4- IF REVOLVING DOORS OR TURNSTILES ARE USED, THEN AN ADJACENT ACCESSIBLE DOOR OR GATE LOCATED 20' MAXIMUM FROM THE REVOLVING DOOR OR TURNSTILE SHALL BE PROVIDED.

7.2- CLEAR PASSAGE THROUGH DOORS/DOORWAYS

7.3 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT DOORS

7.3.1 For clear floor space on the pull or push side of doors, refer to the illustrations for this Paragraph.

ADAAG Figure 25

7.3.2 For doors in series, see 7.3.3. For right angle consecutive doors, see 7.3.6.

Cross-Reference

7.3.3 DOORS IN SERIES

7.3.3.1 The minimum space between two hinged or pivoted doors in series that swing in the same direction shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) plus the nominal width of any door swinging into the space between the doors.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.6(f);
ADAAG 4.13.7,
Figure 26

7.3.3.2 For doors that swing away from the space between them the clear floor space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum measured from the finished faces of the opposite walls or partitions.

ADAAG 4.13.7,
Fig. 26; Vol. I-C,
4.3.6(f)-42" Betw.
Doors

7.3.4 HORIZONTAL SLIDING OR FOLDING DOORS

7.3.4.1 For clear floor space at these types of doors, refer to the illustrations for this Paragraph.

ADAAG Fig. 25 (d),
25(e) And 25(f)

*7.3.5 For doorways or cased openings in walls or partitions having a through-wall thickness greater than 24 inches (610 mm) the clear opening *approach to* the door shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. (For clarification, see the illustration.)

ADAAG 4.13.5;
Figure 24(e)

*7.3.6 RIGHT ANGLE CONSECUTIVE DOORS: Refer to the illustrations for this Section.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.6(g)

7.3.7 HOSPITAL ENTRY/EXIT AND PATIENT BEDROOM ENTRY DOORS: See 28.4.1.

Cross-Reference

7.4 GLASS DOORS

*7.4.1 *If framed glass doors are used, then a minimum 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) high bottom rail, panel, or insert shall be provided. The rail, panel, or insert shall provide an adequate pushing surface for wheelchair bumpers and shall not transfer any pushing load to the glass itself.*

Vol. I-C,
4.3.4

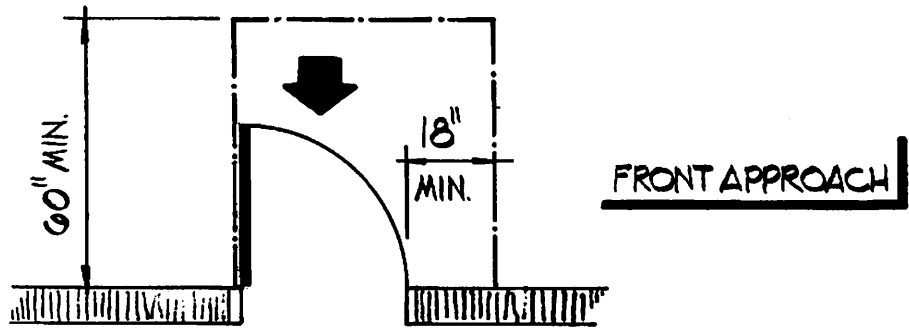
*7.4.2 *All glass doors may be used provided the glass is capable of resisting the pushing pressure of a wheelchair.*

Vol. I-C,
Page 49

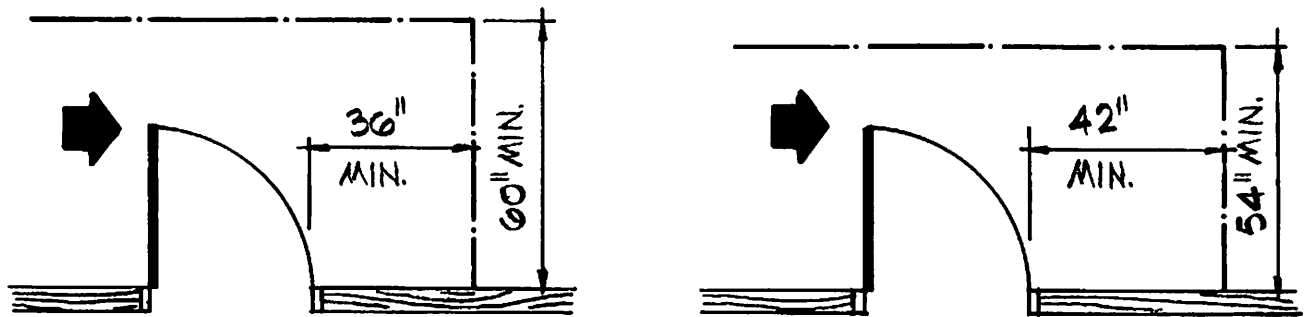
***7.5 VISION PANELS**

***7.5.1** *If vision panels are provided in corridor doors or doors opening on to corridors, then the panel lower edge shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

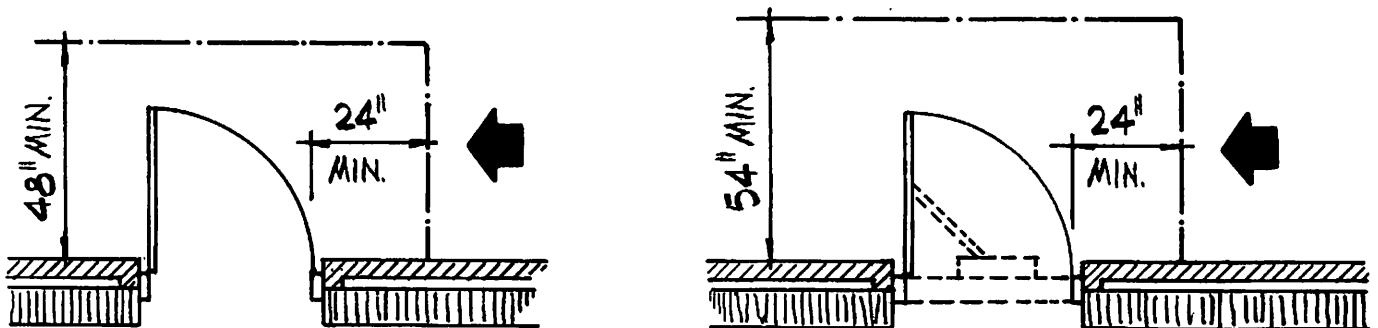
Vol. I-C,
4.3.5



DOORS IN ALCOVES SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS ILLUSTRATION



HINGE JAMB APPROACH

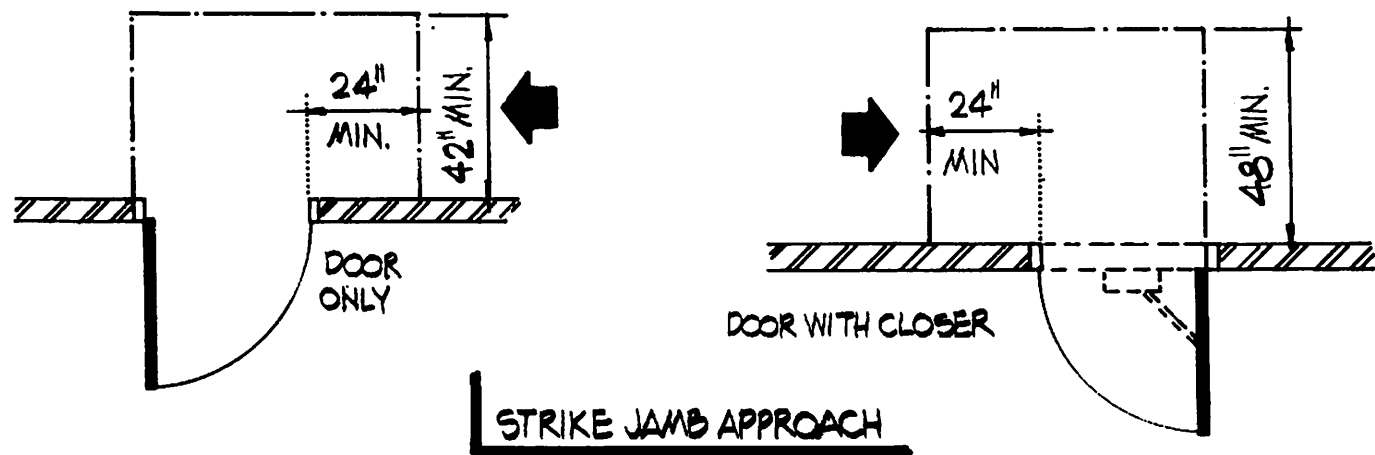
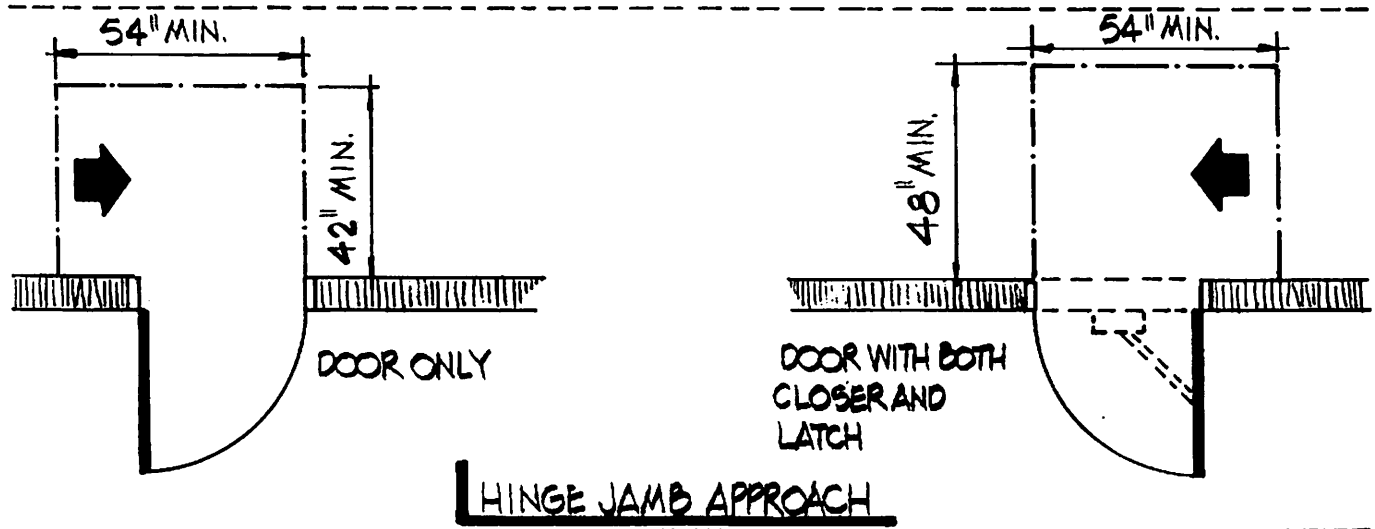
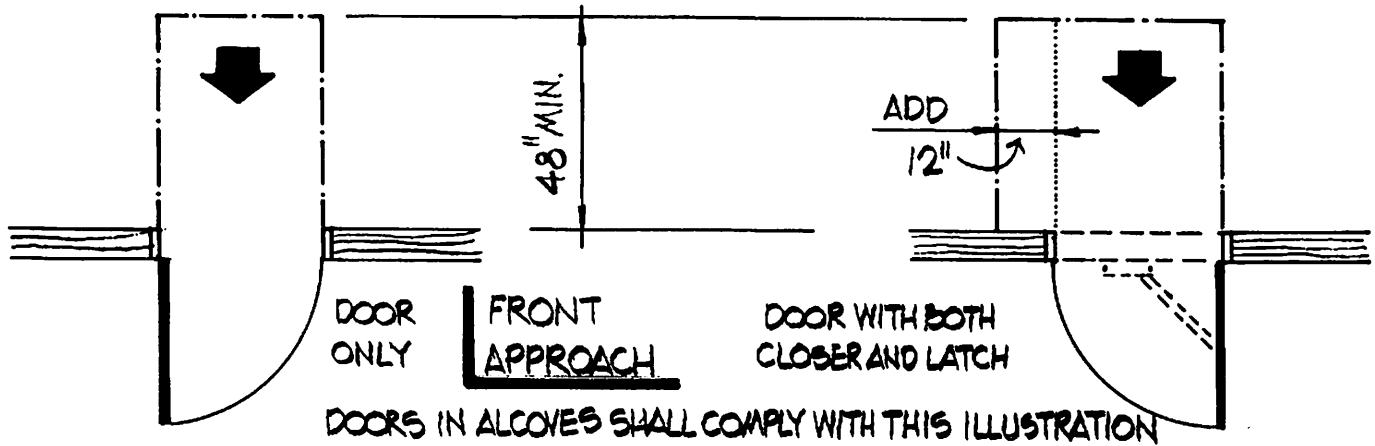


DOOR WITHOUT CLOSER

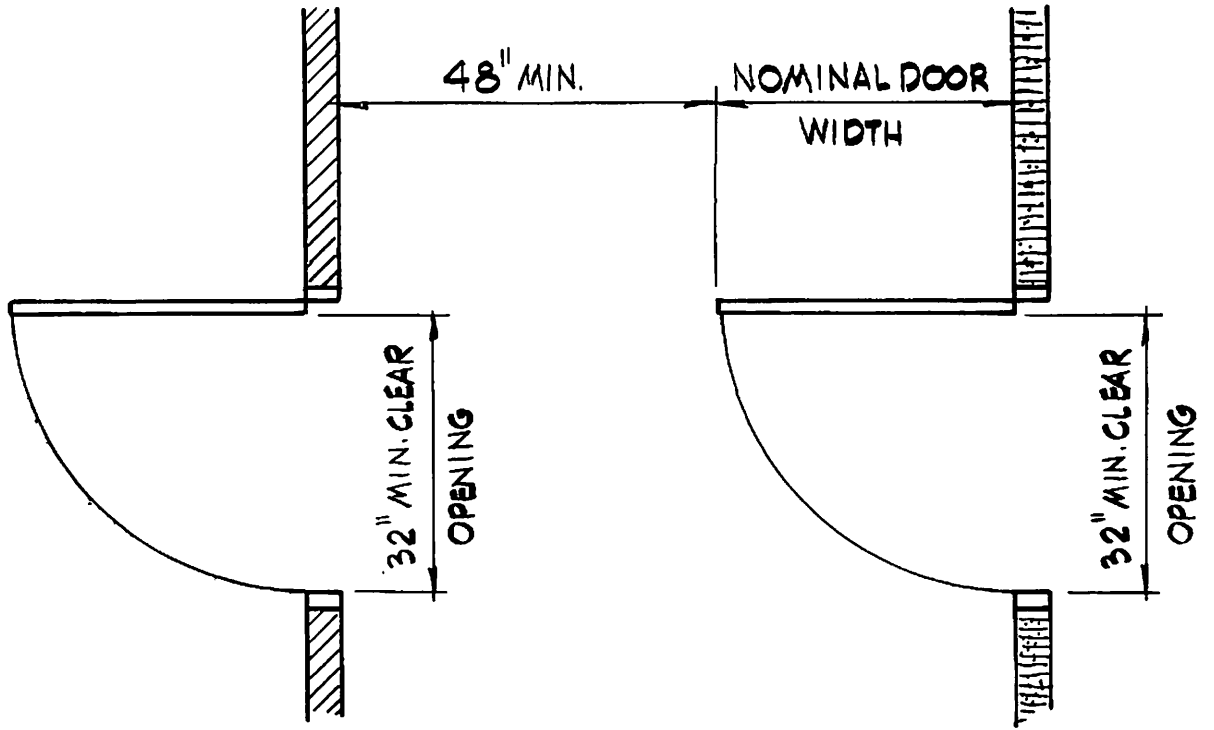
DOOR WITH CLOSER

STRIKE JAMB APPROACH

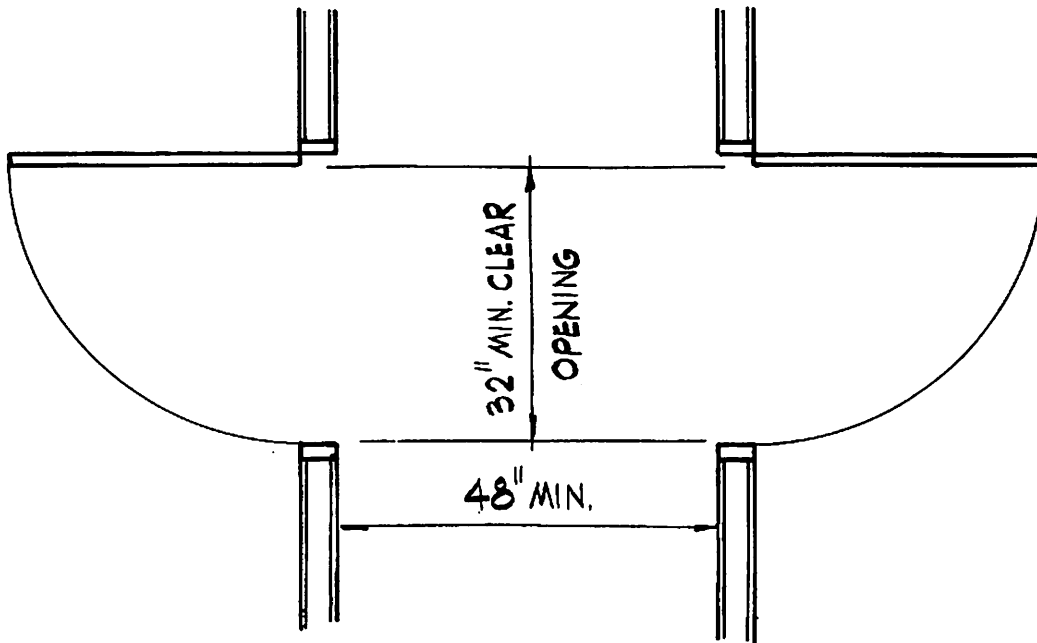
7.3.1- CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - PULL SIDE OF DOORS



7.3.1 - CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - PUSH SIDE OF DOORS

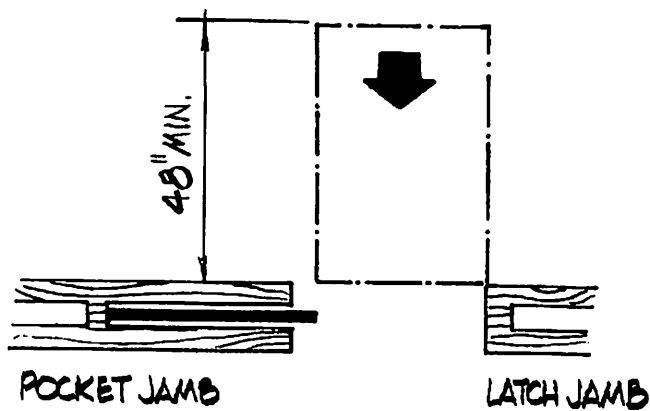


7.3.3.1- DOORS SWING IN THE SAME DIRECTION



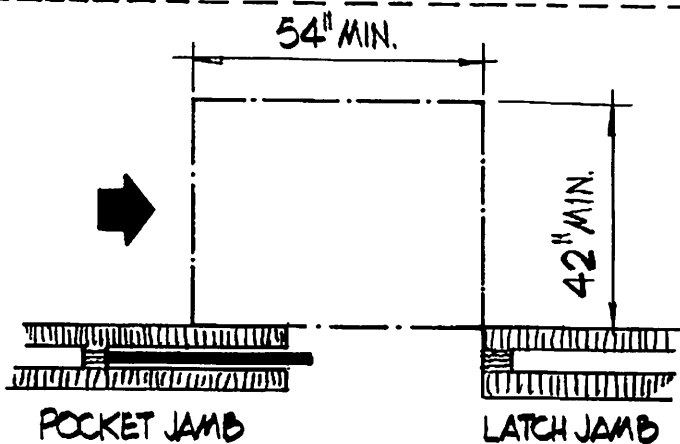
7.3.3.2- DOORS SWING AWAY FROM SPACE BETWEEN THEM

7.3.3- DOORS IN SERIES

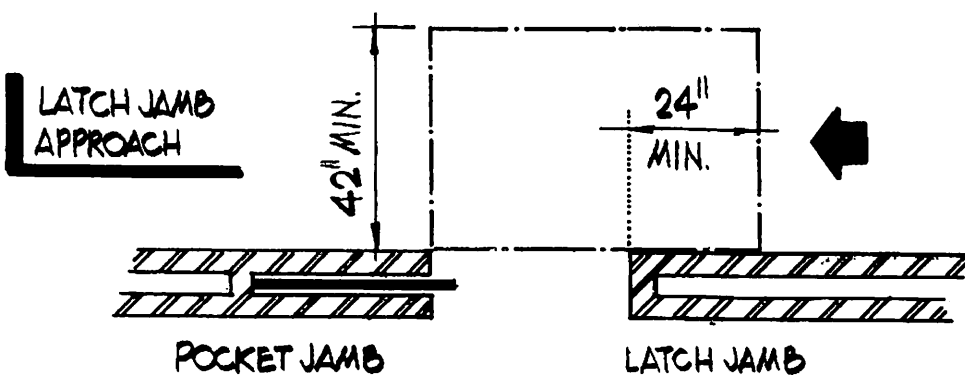


FRONT APPROACH

DOORS IN ALCOVES SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS ILLUSTRATION

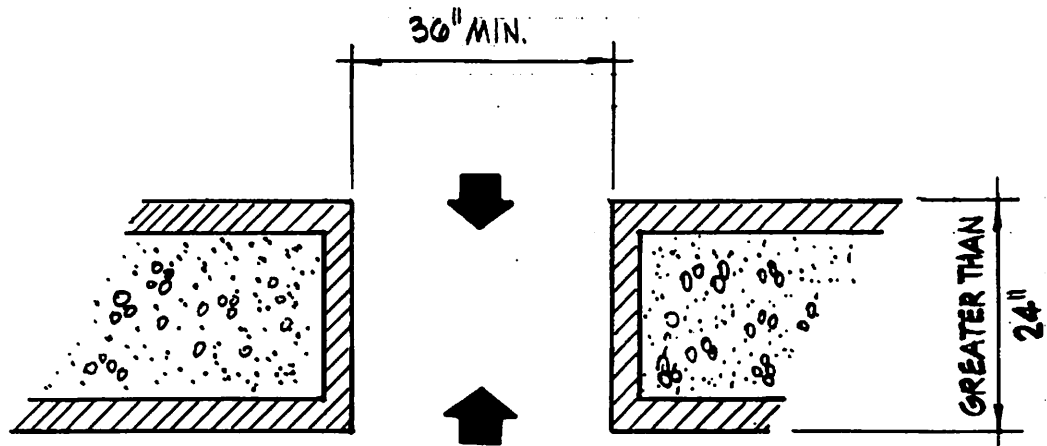


POCKET JAMB APPROACH

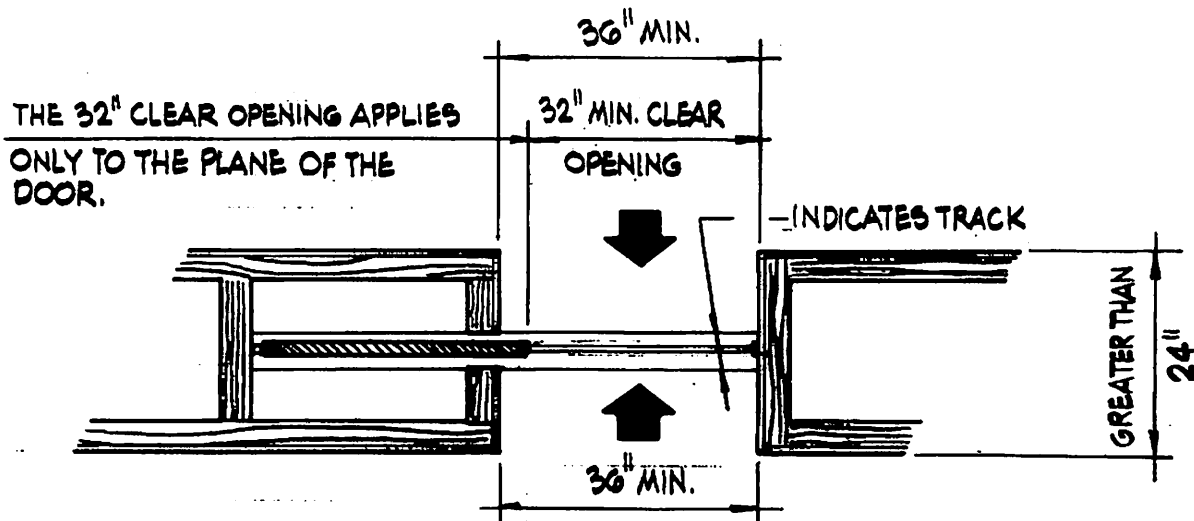


LATCH JAMB APPROACH

7.3.4 - (CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT) HORIZONTAL SLIDING OR FOLDING DOORS

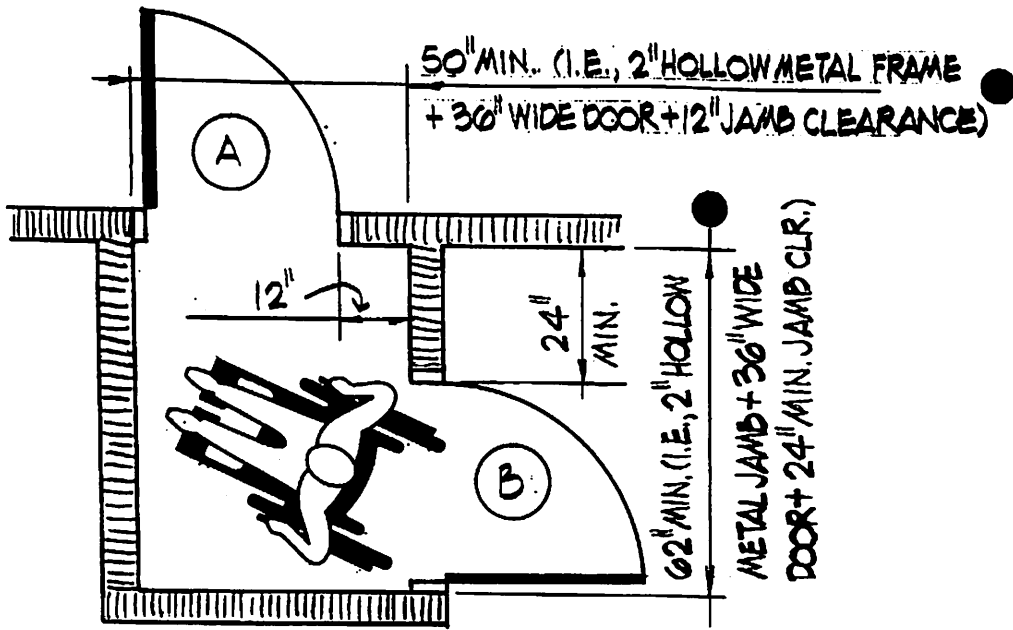


CASED OPENING

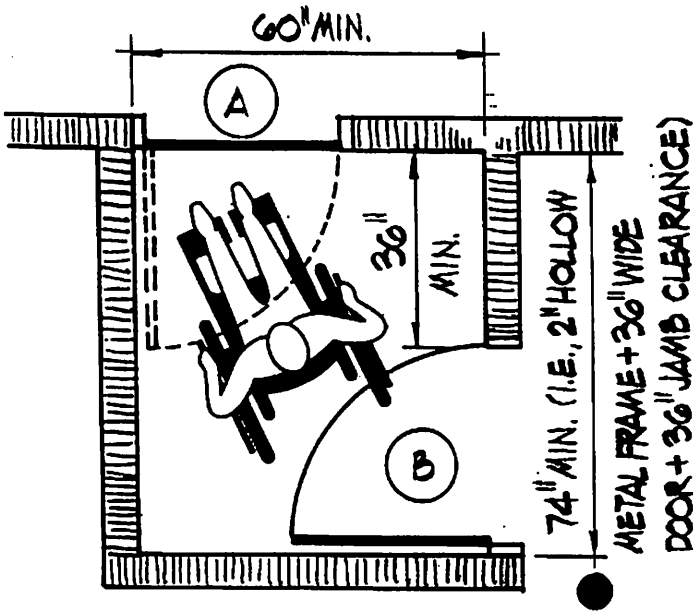


7.3.5- FOR DOORWAYS OR CASED OPENINGS IN WALLS OR PARTITIONS HAVING A THROUGH-WALL THICKNESS GREATER THAN 24" THE CLEAR OPENING APPROACH TO THE DOOR SHALL BE 36" MINIMUM. (SEE, ALSO, THE ILLUSTRATION FOR 7.2.1.)

7.3- CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT DOORS



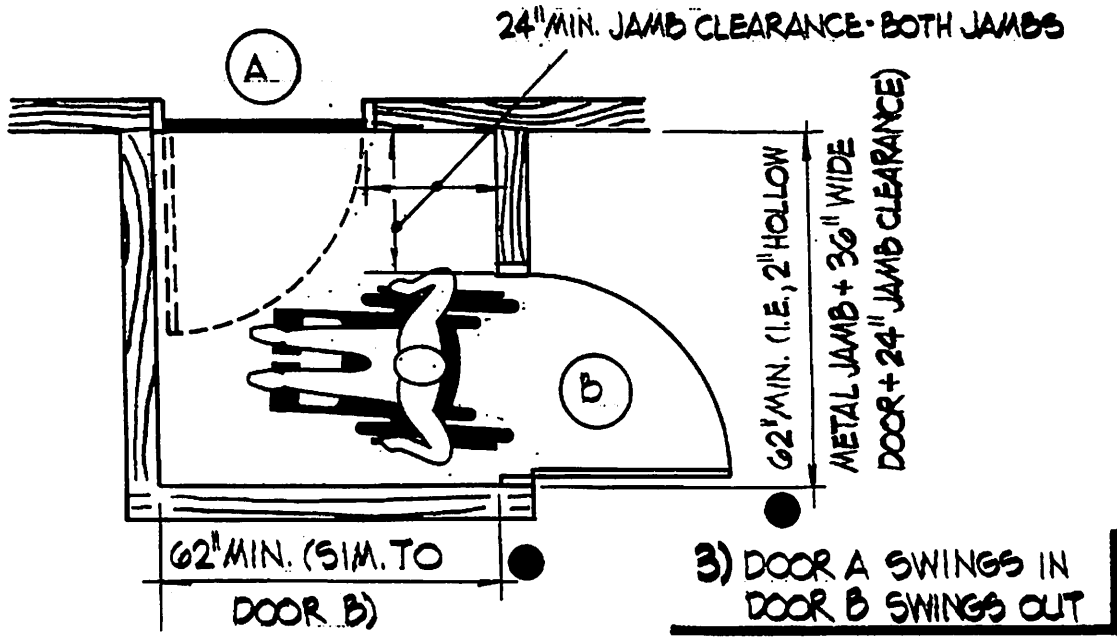
1) BOTH DOORS SWING OUT



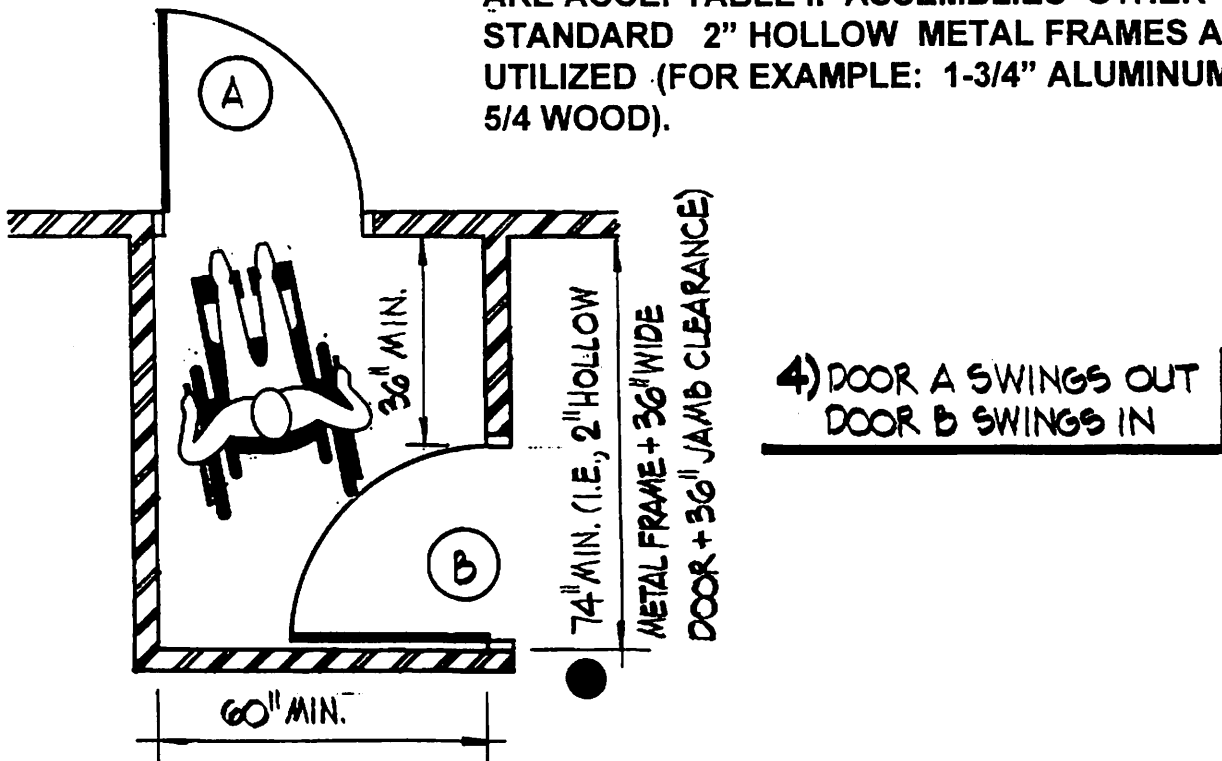
2) BOTH DOORS SWING IN

NOTE:
MINOR VARIATIONS IN OVERALL DIMENSION ARE ACCEPTABLE IF ASSEMBLIES OTHER THAN STANDARD 2" HOLLOW METAL FRAMES ARE UTILIZED (FOR EXAMPLE: 1-3/4" ALUMINUM OR 5/4 WOOD).

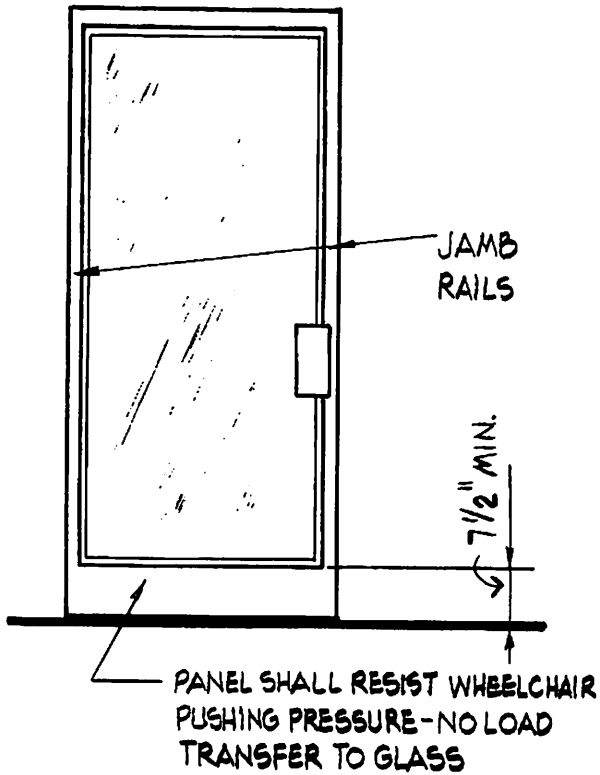
7.3.6-RIGHT ANGLE CONSECUTIVE DOORS-PART I



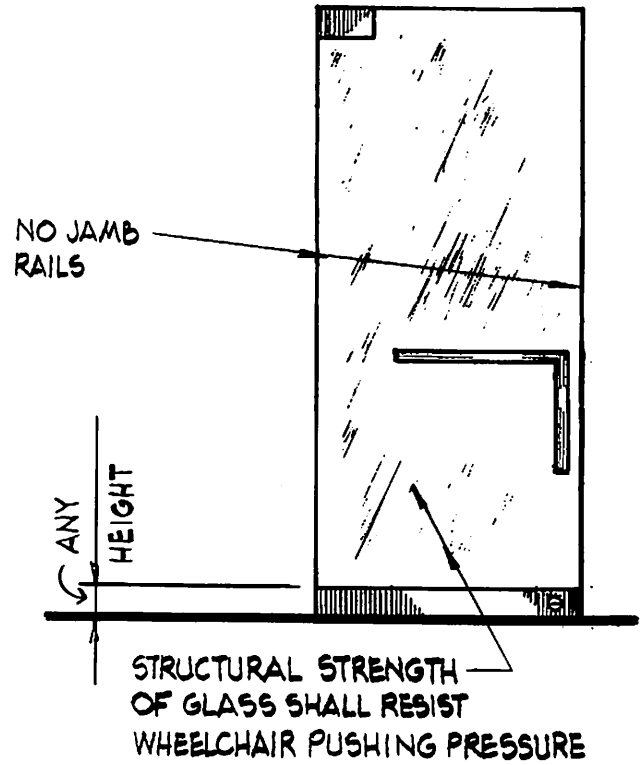
● NOTE:
MINOR VARIATIONS IN OVERALL DIMENSION ARE ACCEPTABLE IF ASSEMBLIES OTHER THAN STANDARD 2" HOLLOW METAL FRAMES ARE UTILIZED (FOR EXAMPLE: 1-3/4" ALUMINUM OR 5/4 WOOD).



7.3.6 - RIGHT ANGLE CONSECUTIVE DOORS - PART 2

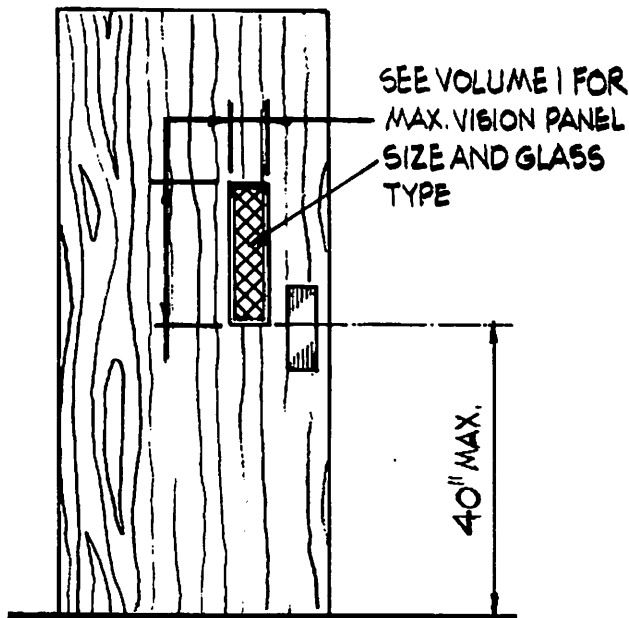


7.4.1-FRAMED GLASS DOOR



7.4.2-ALL GLASS DOOR

7.4-GLASS DOORS



7.5-VISION PANELS IN CORRIDOR DOORS OR DOORS OPENING ON TO CORRIDORS.

7.6 ACTIVATING PRESSURE

7.6.1 At all interior doors the force required to open the door shall be five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum when applied at the handle or pull

Vol. I-C, 4.3.3(a);
ADAAG 4.13.11(2b), (2c)

***7.6.2 At exterior doors or where air pressure differences require greater pressure for closers, the force required to open the doors shall be eight and one-half (8-1/2) pounds (4 Kg) maximum when applied at the handle or pull.**

Vol. I-C,
4.3.3(b)

7.6.3 The requirements of 7.6.1 or 7.6.2 do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that may hold the door in the closed position.

ADAAG 4.13.11

7.6.4 Fire doors shall have the minimum opening force allowed by the Building Code. The closing force shall be adequate to assure automatic latching.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.3(c);
ADAAG 4.13.11(1)

7.7 DOOR CLOSERS

7.7.1 For a door with a closer the sweep period of the device shall be adjusted so that from a 70 degree open position the door shall take 3 seconds minimum to move to within 3 inches (75 mm) of the strike jamb measured from the door leading edge.

ADAAG 4.13.10

7.8 DOOR THRESHOLDS

7.8.1 Thresholds shall have a 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum overall height for exterior sliding glass doors and a 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum overall height for all other types.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.8;
ADAAG 4.13.8

7.8.2 Raised thresholds and floor level changes at accessible doorways shall be beveled in compliance with 3.3.1(2) or 3.3.1(3). Beveled thresholds having a 1:12 (25 mm:305 mm) maximum slope shall require handrails only if the rise is greater than 6 inches (150 mm) or the horizontal run exceeds 72 inches (1830 mm).

ADAAG 4.13.8

7.9 DOOR HARDWARE

7.9.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

7.9.1.1 Operable hardware provided on accessible interior and exterior passage doors shall be equipped with handles, pulls, latches, locks, or other operating hardware devices having a shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, tight pinching, or any wrist-twisting motion to operate.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(a)(1);
ADAAG 4.13.9

7.9.1.2 Lever operated mechanisms, push-type mechanisms and U-shaped handles are acceptable designs for door operating hardware

Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.13.9

7.9.1.3 Horizontal sliding doors in the fully open position shall have the operating hardware fully exposed and fully usable from both sides of the doorway.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(a)(3);
ADAAG 4.13.9

*7.9.2 MOUNTING HEIGHT

7.9.2.1 Actuating mechanisms, pulls, lever handles, and other acceptable designs for operating hardware shall be located **30 inches (760 mm) minimum** to 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

ADAAG 4.13.9
[48" Max.];
Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(a)(4)
[30" To 42"];

7.10 DOORS TO HAZARDOUS AREAS

*7.10.1 *Doors that lead to areas that may prove dangerous to blind or visually impaired persons (e.g., doors leading to loading docks or platforms, boiler rooms, electrical equipment rooms, etc.) shall be made readily identifiable to the touch by a textured surface on the door handle, knob, pull or other operating hardware device in addition to the signage requirements of 18.5.*

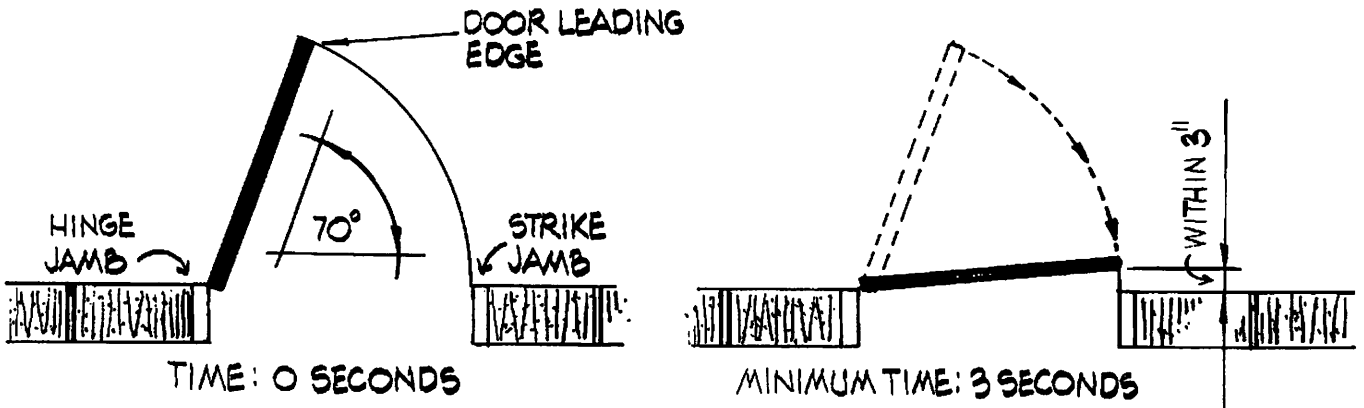
Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(c)(1)

*7.10.2 *Textured surfaces may be made by knurling, roughing, or by applying a carborundum-epoxy coated abrasive to the door operating hardware.*

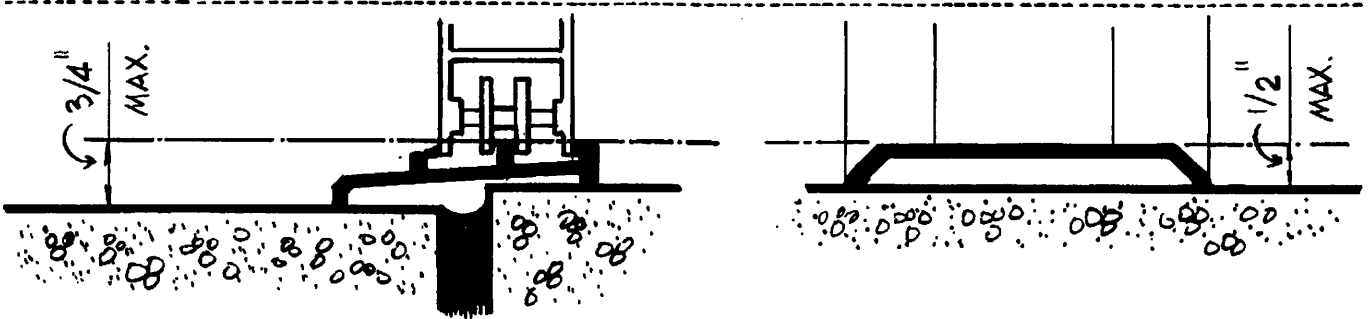
Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(c)(2)

*7.10.3 *Tactile warning surfaces shall not be provided for, nor applied to, required exit door operating hardware.*

Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(c)(3)

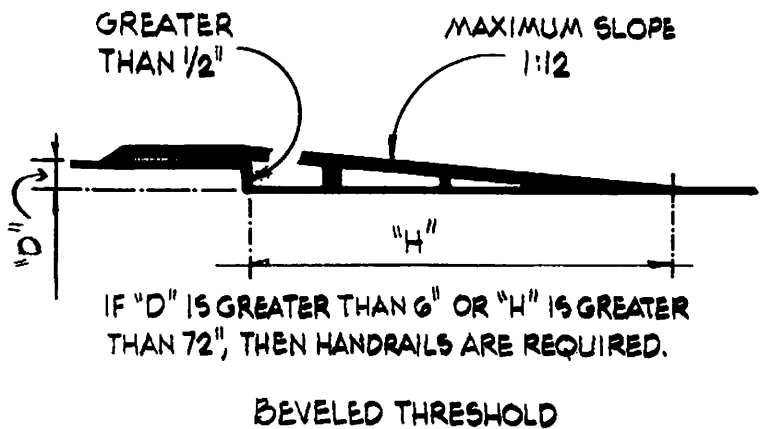
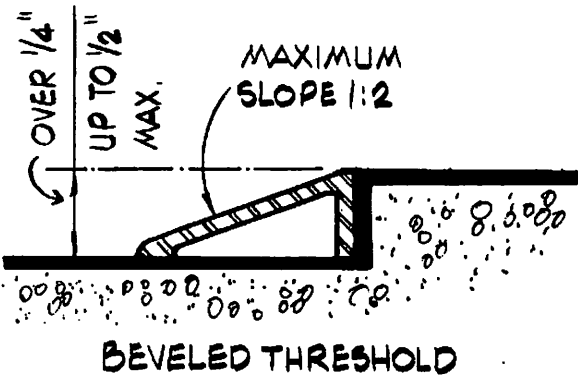


7.7.1- FOR A DOOR WITH A CLOSER THE SWEEP PERIOD OF THE DEVICE SHALL BE ADJUSTED SO THAT FROM A 70° OPEN POSITION THE DOOR SHALL TAKE 3 SECONDS MINIMUM TO MOVE TO WITHIN 3" OF THE STRIKE JAMB MEASURED AT THE DOOR LEADING EDGE.



7.8.1- EXTERIOR SLIDING GLASS DOOR ONLY.

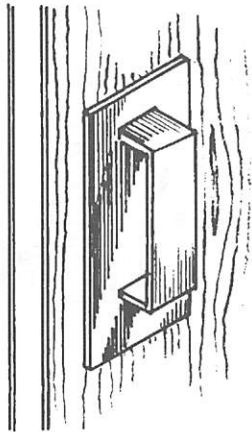
7.8.1- ALL OTHER TYPES (SEE, ALSO, 7.8.2, BELOW).



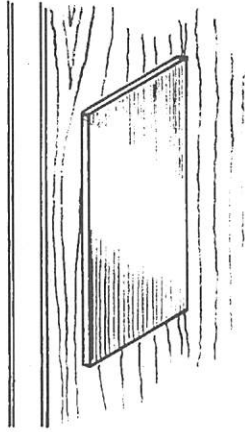
7.8.2- BEVELED THRESHOLDS

7.7- DOOR CLOSERS (TOP)

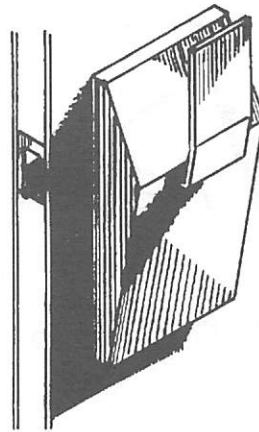
7.8- DOOR THRESHOLDS (BOTTOM)



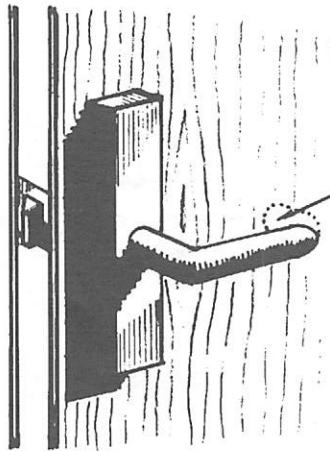
PULL HANDLE/BAR



PUSH PLATE



PUSH/PULL LATCH



LEVER

END RETURN IS OPTIONAL



STANDARD DOOR HARDWARE SHALL NOT BE USED, BUT



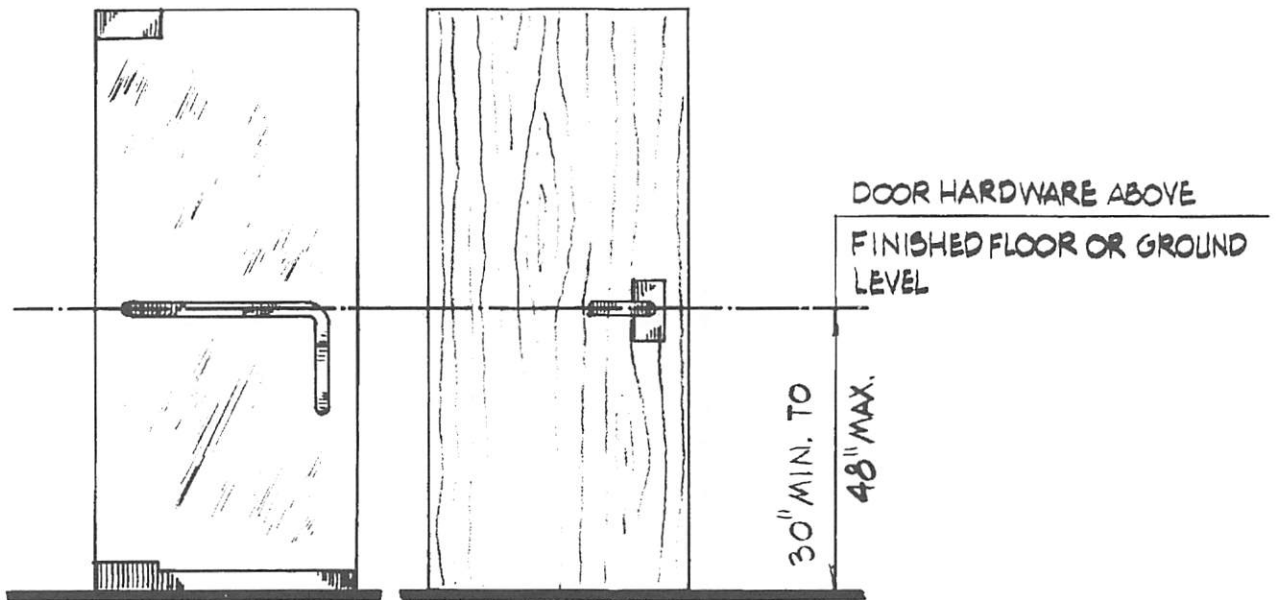
STANDARD KNOB

APPLIED LEVER ARM (METAL, HARD RUBBER, NYLON, ETC.)

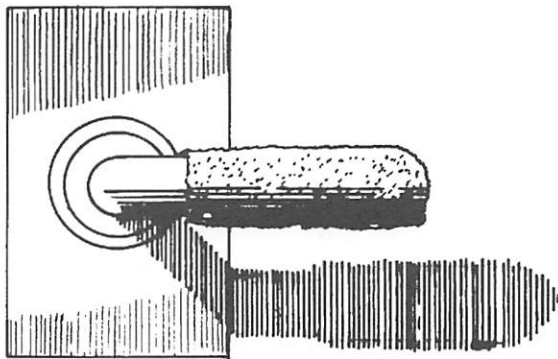
IF A LEVER-ARM ADAPTER KIT IS APPLIED, THEN A STANDARD DOOR KNOB MAY BE USED.

7.9.1.1 AND 7.9.1.2- (TYPES OF) DOOR HARDWARE

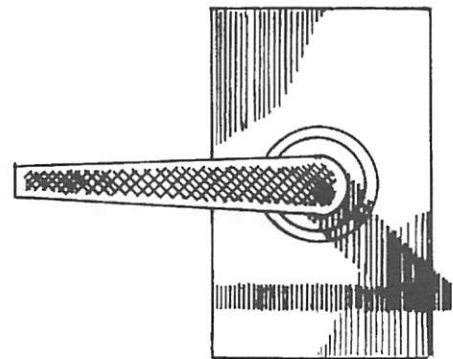
7.9- DOOR HARDWARE



7.9.2- DOOR OPERATING HARDWARE MOUNTING HEIGHT



CARBORUNDUM-EPOXY ABRASIVE COATING



KNURLING OR ROUGHING
(APPLIED TO ENTIRE GRIPPING SURFACE)

TACTILE WARNING SURFACES SHALL NOT BE PROVIDED FOR, NOR APPLIED TO, REQUIRED EXIT DOOR OPERATING HARDWARE.

7.10- DOORS TO HAZARDOUS AREAS

CHAPTER 8 STAIRS AND HANDRAILS

8.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

8.1.1 Stairs for public and common use shall comply with this Chapter.
(See, also, 1.2.11.)

From Vol. I-C,
Chap. 4.4

***8.1.2 A monumental or decorative open riser stair(s) may be used which connects levels also served by an elevator or ramp. The elevator or ramp shall be located in an accessible, visible space in proximity to the monumental stair(s). (See, also, 6.1.6.)**

Derived From:
Vol. I-C, 4.4(b)(5);
FR 7/26/91 At
35432

8.1.3 For the minimum distance between handrails when an Area of Rescue Assistance is required, see 6.3.2.4.

Cross-Reference

8.2 STAIR CONSTRUCTION

ADAAG: Need Not Comply If Elevator
Or Ramp Present And

***8.2.1 Stair treads shall have an 11 inches (280 mm) minimum depth exclusive of nosing. If a ramp or elevator is provided, then the 11 inches (280 mm) minimum tread depth shall not be required.**

ADAAG 4.9.2—11 Inches;
Vol. I-C: Comply w/o Ref.
To Elevator Or Ramp

8.2.2 Steps in stairs shall not have abrupt (i.e., squared) nosings. The radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum.

Vol. I-C, 4.4(b)(1),
Vol. I-C, 4.4(b)(2);
ADAAG 4.9.3

8.2.3 NOSINGS

***8.2.3.1 Risers may be vertical (i.e., 90 degrees to the plane of the tread) provided that the nosing extends 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the riser face. The underside of the nosing shall have a 60 degree minimum angle measured from the horizontal. Risers may be vertical for their entire height provided that a nosing is not present.**

ADAAG 4.9.3

8.2.3.2 Risers that slope for their entire height shall have nosings that project 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum forward of the tread-riser intersection.

Vol. I-C 4.4(b)(3);
ADAAG 4.9.3

***8.2.3.3 Steps or stairs having brick as the tread surface may have a 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum nosing provided that the nosings are composed of roundhouse or reverse curve (i.e., ogee) bricks. The use of standard, square edge brick to form a nosing is prohibited.**

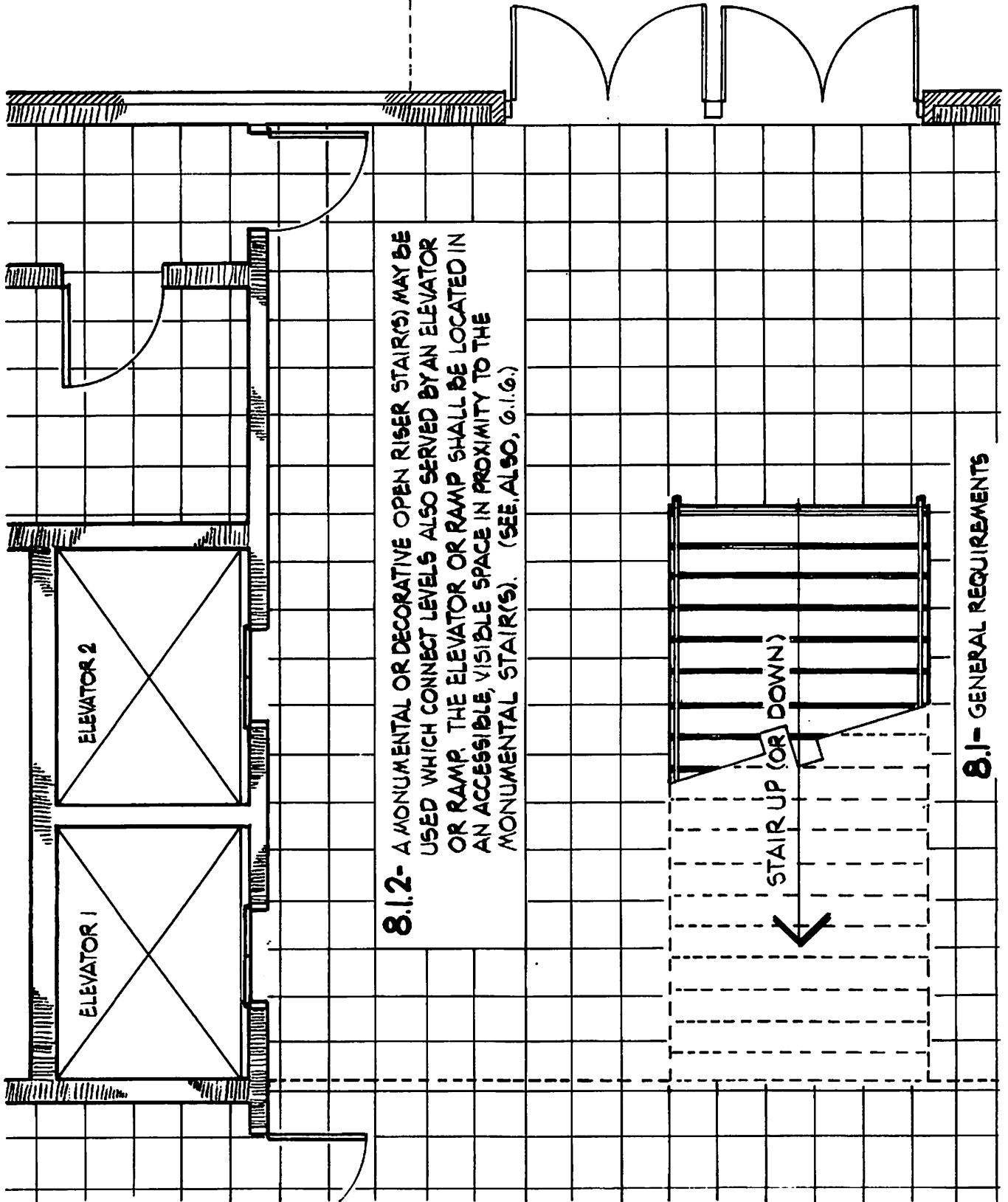
Vol. I-C, 4.4(b)(1),
Drawing Pg. 66

8.3 HANDRAILS

8.3.1 The gripping surface shall be between 1-1/4 and 1-1/2 inches (32 mm to 38 mm) width or outside diameter. The use of 1-1/4 inches to 1-1/2 inches (32 mm to 38 mm) Interior Pipe Size is acceptable.

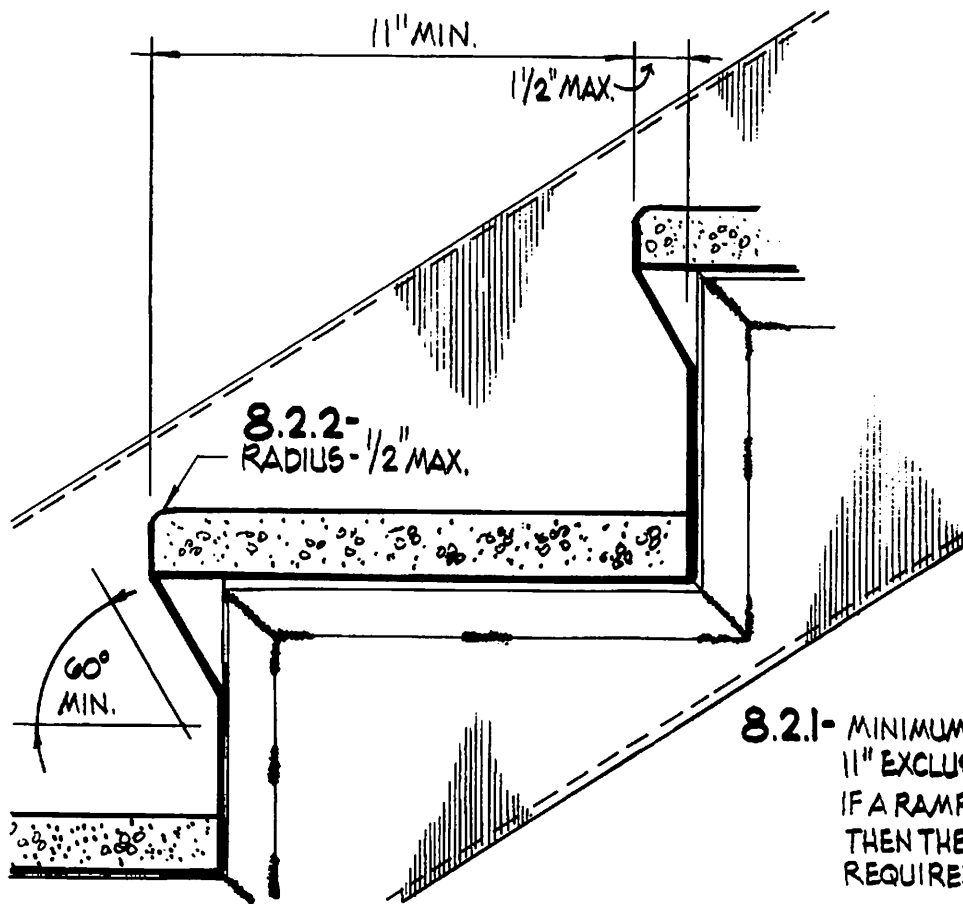
Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(a);
ADAAG 4.9.4 [4.26.2];
Access Board FAQ No. 8

8.3.2 Mounting height shall be 34 inches minimum to 38 inches maximum (865 mm to 965 mm) above the common line of the stair nosings.	ADAAG 4.9.4(5); Vol. I-C 4.4.1(b)- 30" To 34"
*8.3.3 Handrails shall be continuous on both sides of the stair. If not continuous, then they shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top riser and at least the width of one tread plus 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the bottom riser (i.e., at the bottom of the stair the handrail shall continue its slope parallel to the slope of the stair for a distance equivalent of one tread measured in a horizontal plane before the 12 inches [305 mm] horizontal extension begins). The 12 inches (305 mm) minimum extension at both the top and bottom of the stair shall be parallel to the finished floor, ground level or intermediate landing. <i>Care shall be taken that the handrail extension is not in itself a hazard.</i>	Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(c); ADAAG 4.9.4(1), 4.9.4(2) Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(d)
*8.3.4 <i>If stairs terminate at walks, halls, corridors, passageways or aisles, then the horizontal extension may protrude 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) maximum into the connecting accessible route. The 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) maximum projection shall not reduce the clear required width for accessible routes or maneuvering spaces.</i>	From Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(e)
8.3.5 The clear hand space between the rail and a wall or partition shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).	ADAAG 4.9.4(3)
8.3.6 On dogleg (90 degree turn) and switchback (180 degree turn) stairs the inside handrail shall be continuous. Horizontal extensions are not required.	Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(f); ADAAG 4.9.4(1)
8.3.7 Handrail gripping surfaces shall not be interrupted by newel posts, or other construction elements or obstructions. (See, also, the illustration for 5.4.2[6].)	Vol. I-C, 4.4.1(g); ADAAG 4.9.4(4)
8.3.8 Handrail ends shall be rounded or shall return smoothly to the floor, wall or post. (See, also, the NOTE following 5.4.2[8].)	ADAAG 4.9.4(6)
8.3.9 Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.	ADAAG 4.9.4(7)
8.3.10 Handrails and adjacent wall surfaces shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Handrail edges shall have a 1/8 inch (3 mm) minimum radius. (See, also, the NOTE following 5.4.2[10].)	ADAAG 4.26.4
8.3.11 For handrails in a recess, see 5.4.3.	Cross-Reference
8.4 OUTDOOR CONDITIONS	
*8.4.1 Exterior stairs and landings <i>may incorporate a 1/4 inch per foot (6 mm per 305 mm) maximum</i> cross slope to prevent water accumulation on the walking surfaces.	Vol. I (1991), 1106.2.8; ADAAG 4.9.6

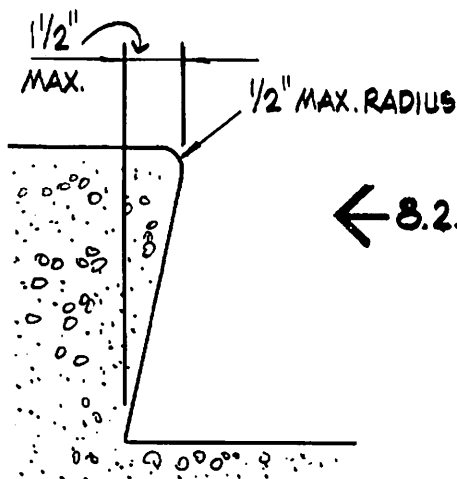
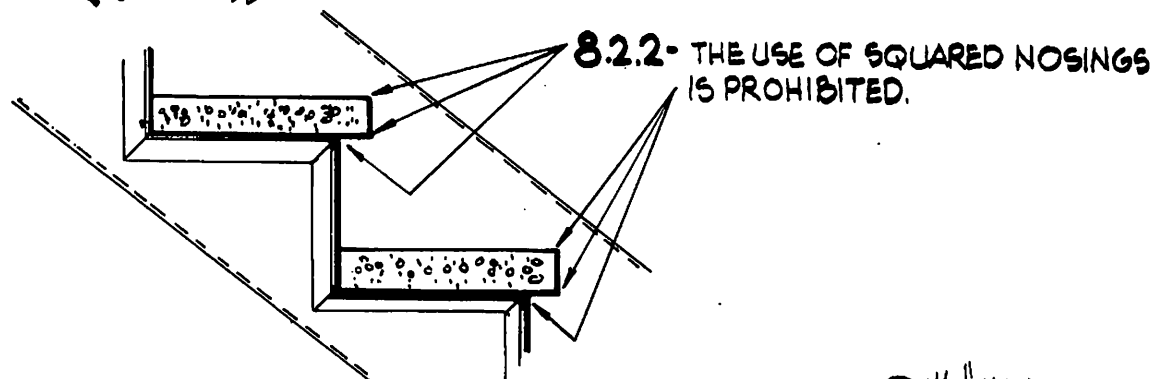


8.1.2- A MONUMENTAL OR DECORATIVE OPEN RISER STAIR(S) MAY BE USED WHICH CONNECT LEVELS ALSO SERVED BY AN ELEVATOR OR RAMP. THE ELEVATOR OR RAMP SHALL BE LOCATED IN AN ACCESSIBLE, VISIBLE SPACE IN PROXIMITY TO THE MONUMENTAL STAIR(S). (SEE ALSO, 6.1.6.)

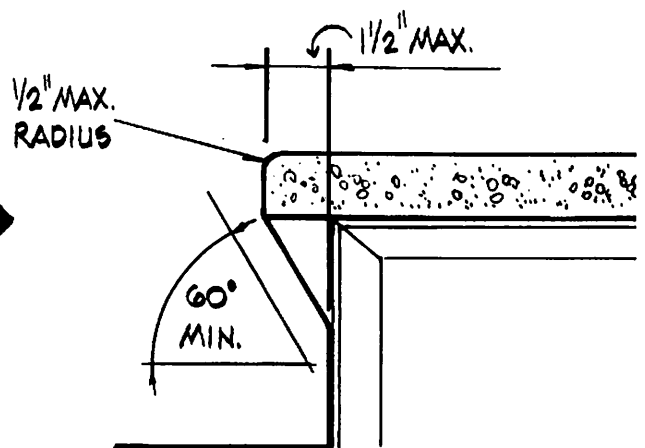
8.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



8.2.1- MINIMUM TREAD DEPTH SHALL BE 11" EXCLUSIVE OF NOSING. IF A RAMP OR ELEVATOR IS PROVIDED, THEN THE 11" TREAD DEPTH IS NOT REQUIRED.

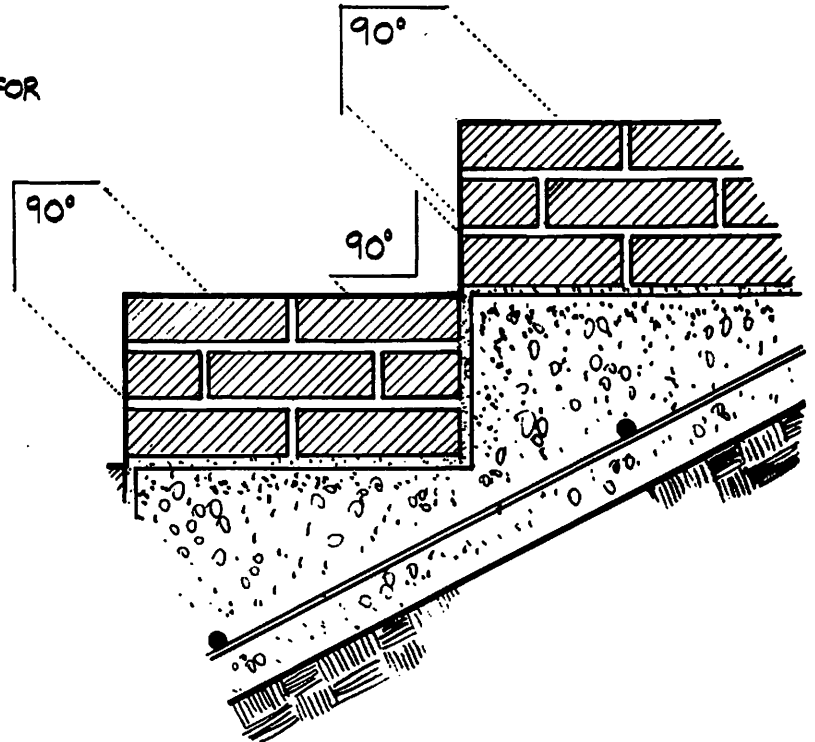


← **8.2.3- NOSINGS** →

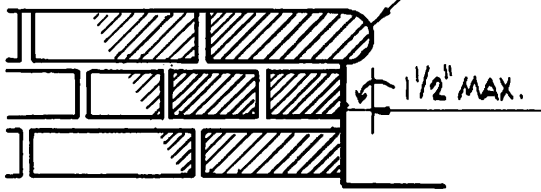


8.2- STAIR CONSTRUCTION

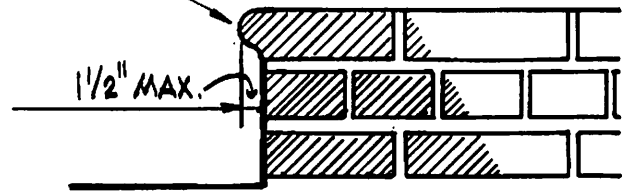
8.2.3.1- RISERS MAY BE VERTICAL FOR THEIR ENTIRE HEIGHT PROVIDED THAT A NOSING IS NOT PRESENT.



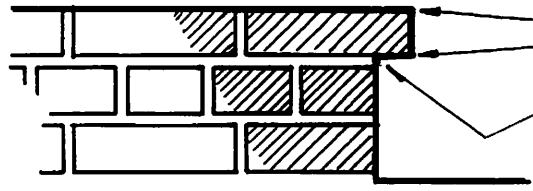
BRICK STAIRS WITH ACCEPTABLE NOSINGS



ROUNDHOUSE BRICK



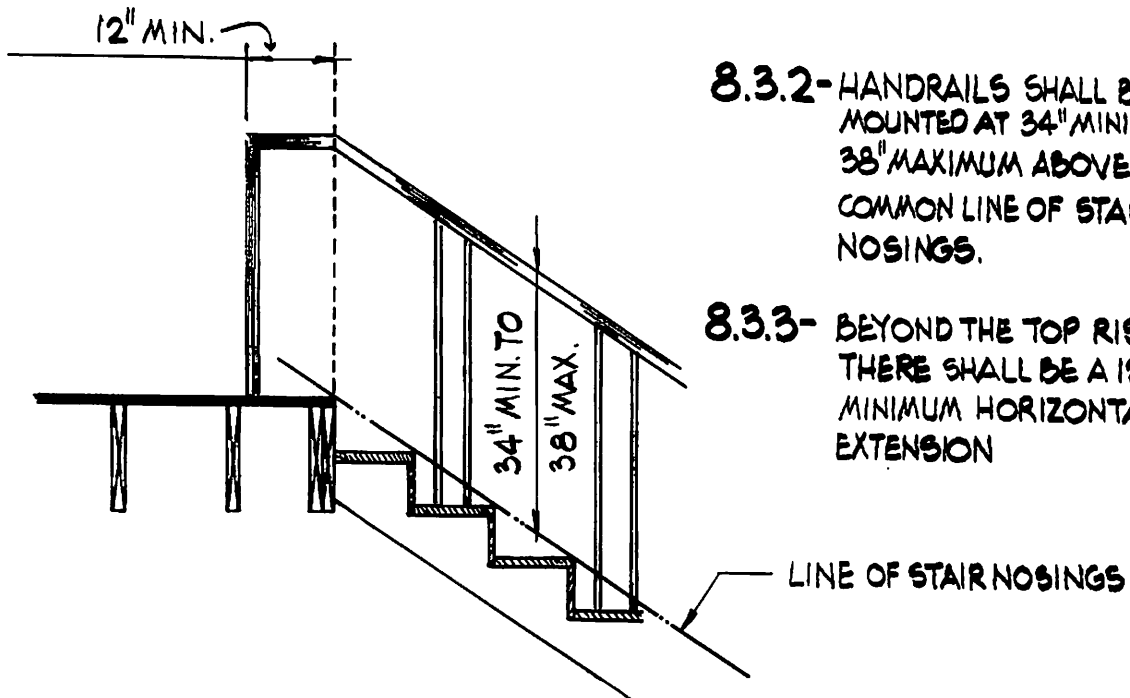
REVERSE CURVE (OGEE) BRICKS



THE USE OF STANDARD, SQUARE EDGE BRICK TO FORM A NOSING IS PROHIBITED.

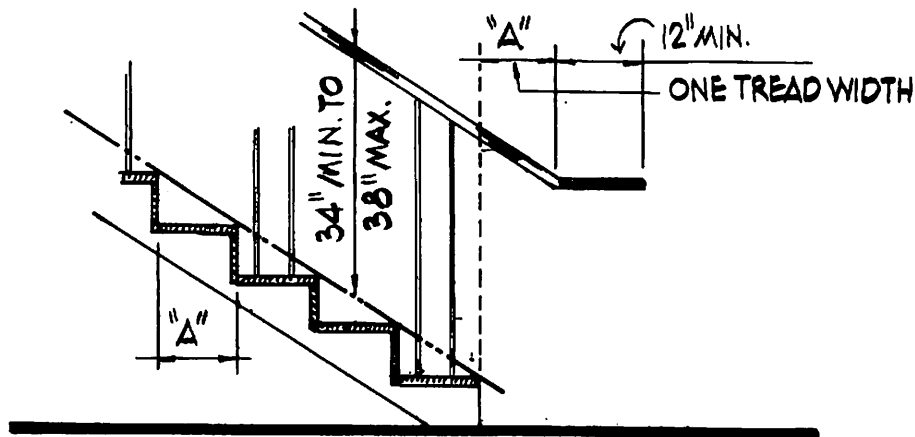
8.2.3.3-BRICK STAIRS/STEPS

8.2-STAIR CONSTRUCTION



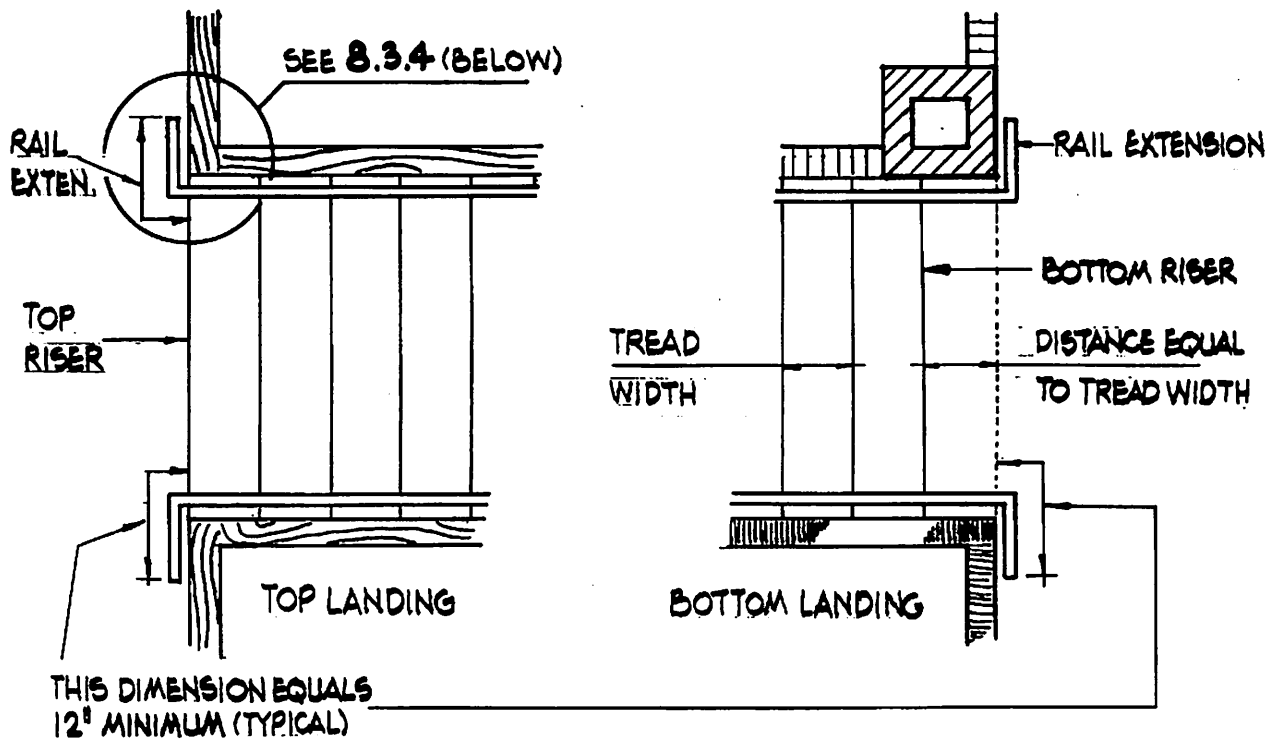
8.3.2- HANDRAILS SHALL BE MOUNTED AT 34" MINIMUM TO 38" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE COMMON LINE OF STAIR NOSINGS.

8.3.3- BEYOND THE TOP RISER THERE SHALL BE A 12" MINIMUM HORIZONTAL EXTENSION

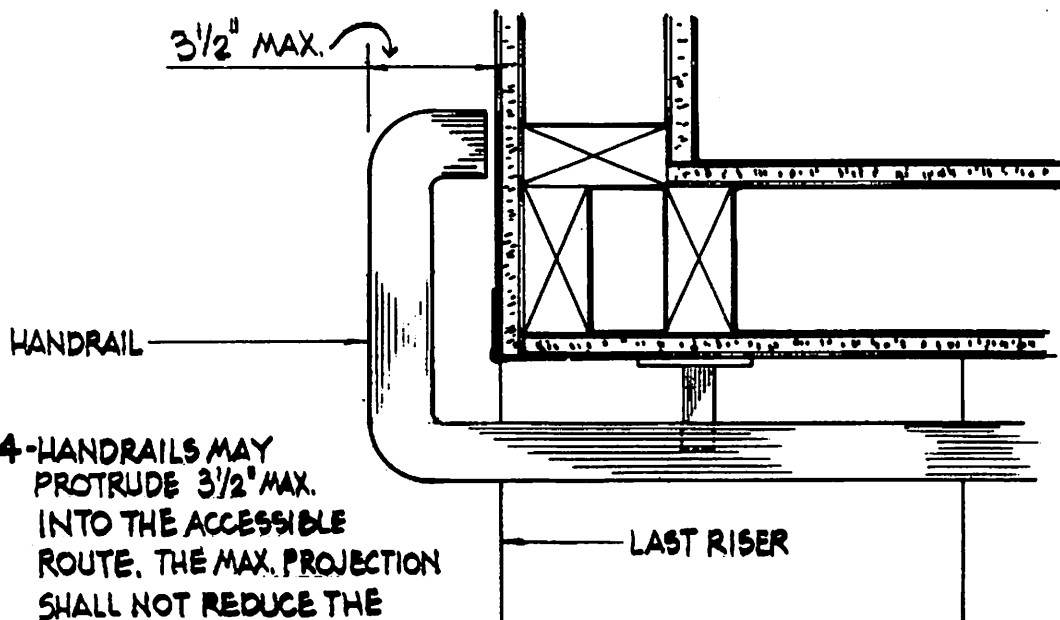


8.3.3- AT THE BOTTOM RISER THE HANDRAIL SHALL CONTINUE ITS SLOPE AT LEAST ONE TREAD WIDTH ("A" ON THE DRAWING ABOVE) BEFORE THE 12" MINIMUM HORIZONTAL EXTENSION BEGINS.

8.3- HANDRAILS

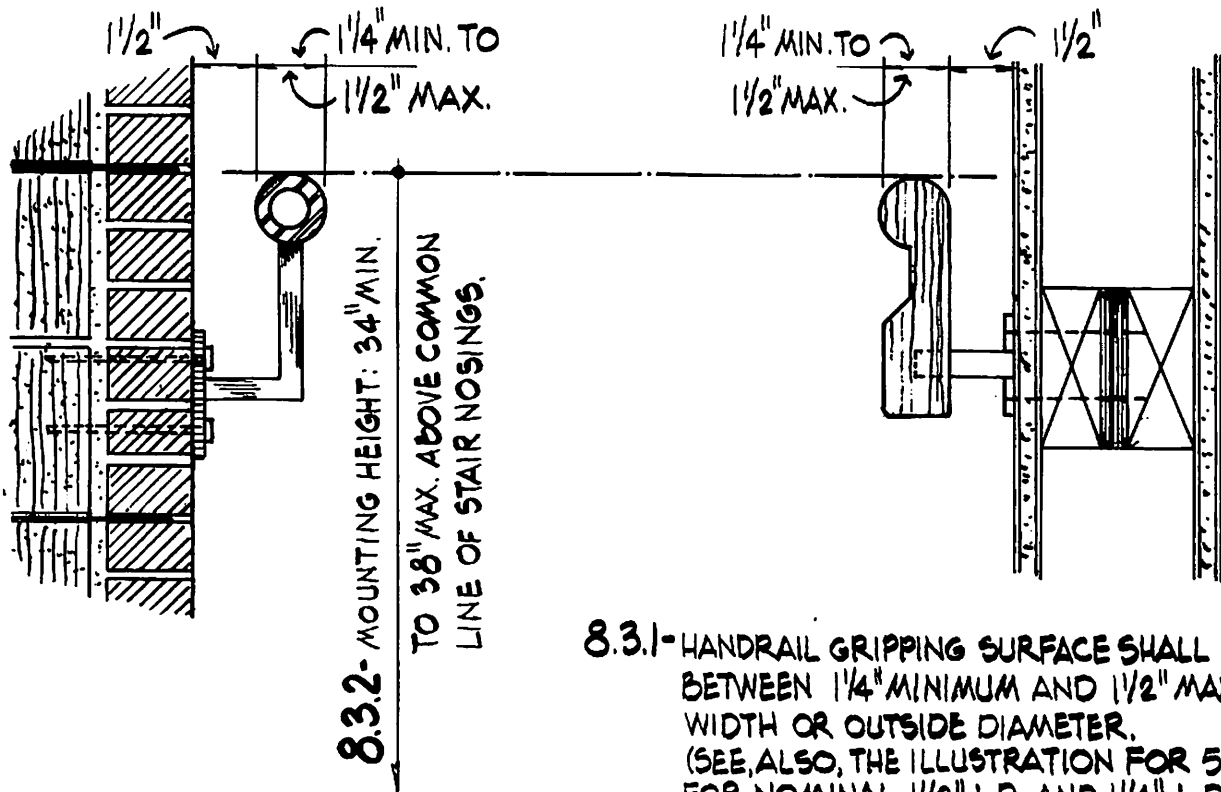


8.3.3- CARE SHALL BE TAKEN THAT THE HANDRAIL EXTENSION IS NOT IN ITSELF A HAZARD. (AN EXTENSION MAY RETURN ALONG THE FACE OF A CONTINUING WALL OR COLUMN.)



8.3.4- HANDRAILS MAY PROTRUDE 3 1/2" MAX. INTO THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. THE MAX. PROJECTION SHALL NOT REDUCE THE CLEAR REQUIRED WIDTH OF AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE OR MANEUVERING SPACE.

8.3-HANDRAILS



8.3.1- HANDRAIL GRIPPING SURFACE SHALL BE BETWEEN 1/4" MINIMUM AND 1/2" MAXIMUM WIDTH OR OUTSIDE DIAMETER. (SEE, ALSO, THE ILLUSTRATION FOR 5.4.2 FOR NOMINAL 1/2" I.D. AND 1/4" I.D. PIPE USED AS HANDRAILS.)

8.3.5- CLEAR HANDSPACE BETWEEN THE RAIL AND A WALL OR PARTITION SHALL BE 1/2 INCHES. (THIS IS AN ABSOLUTE NUMBER; IT IS NEITHER A MINIMUM NOR A MAXIMUM.)

8.3.6- ON DOGLEG (90° TURN) OR SWITCHBACK (180° TURN) STAIRS THE INSIDE HANDRAIL SHALL BE CONTINUOUS. HANDRAIL EXTENSIONS ARE NOT REQUIRED. (SEE THE ILLUSTRATIONS FOR 5.3.5 AND 5.3.6.)

8.3.7- HANDRAIL GRIPPING SURFACES SHALL NOT BE INTERRUPTED BY NEWEL POSTS, OR OTHER CONSTRUCTION ELEMENTS OR OBSTRUCTIONS. (SEE THE ILLUSTRATION FOR 5.4.2[6].)

8.3.8- HANDRAIL ENDS SHALL BE ROUNDED OR SHALL RETURN SMOOTHLY TO THE FLOOR, WALL OR POST. (SEE THE ILLUSTRATIONS FOR 5.4.2[8].)

8.3.9- HANDRAILS SHALL NOT ROTATE WITHIN THEIR FITTINGS. (SEE THE ILLUSTRATION FOR 5.4.2[9].)

8.3.10- ADJACENT WALL SURFACES AND HANDRAIL EDGES - SEE THE ILLUSTRATIONS FOR 5.4.2(10)

8.3.11- HANDRAIL LOCATED IN A RECESS - SEE THE ILLUSTRATION FOR 5.4.3.

8.3- HANDRAILS

CHAPTER 9 GROUND AND FLOOR SURFACES

9.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

9.1.1 Interior and exterior ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms, spaces, and areas shall be fixed, firm and non-slip. Interior surfaces shall include floors, ramps, stairs and the standing/wearing surface of elevator cabs. Exterior surfaces shall include walks, ramps, curb cuts, curb ramps, stairs, parking spaces and access aisles, and the standing/wearing surfaces of elevator cabs.

**ADAAG 4.1.3(3),
4.5.1**

9.1.2 Floors and ground surfaces shall be on a common level throughout. Surfaces that are not on a common level shall comply with the applicable requirements of 3.3.1.

**Vol. I-C, 4.5(a)(1);
ADAAG 4.5.2**

9.2 CARPET

9.2.1 If carpet or carpet tile is used on a ground or floor surface, then it shall be securely attached and have a firm cushion, pad, or backing. If a carpet or carpet tile is installed without a cushion or pad, then it shall be securely attached to its ground or floor surface. With or without a cushion, pad, or backing the installation shall minimize movement (i.e., "creep" and/or bunching).

ADAAG 4.5.3

9.2.2 Carpet or carpet tile may have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. The pile thickness shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum. Exposed carpet edges shall be securely fastened to the floor or ground surface and have trim along the full length of its exposed edge(s). Edge trim shall comply with the applicable requirements of 3.3.1.

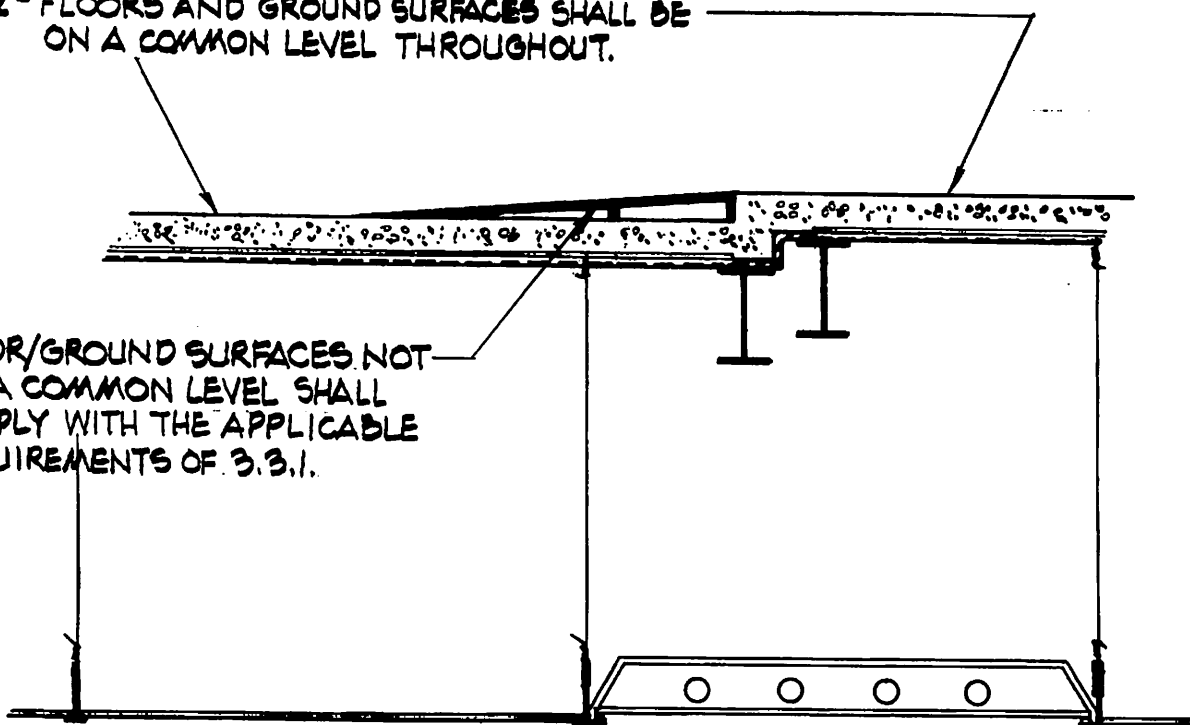
ADAAG 4.5.3

9.3 For gratings see 3.3.6.

Cross-Reference

9.1.2- FLOORS AND GROUND SURFACES SHALL BE ON A COMMON LEVEL THROUGHOUT.

FLOOR/GROUND SURFACES NOT ON A COMMON LEVEL SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 3.3.1.



LEVEL LOOP, TEXTURED LOOP, LEVEL CUT PILE, LEVEL CUT/UNCUT PILE

PILE THICKNESS - 1/2" MAXIMUM

9.2- CARPET



EXPOSED CARPET EDGES SHALL BE SECURELY FASTENED TO THE FLOOR OR GROUND SURFACE. EXPOSED EDGES SHALL HAVE TRIM ALONG THE FULL LENGTH OF THE EXPOSED EDGE. TRIM SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 3.3.1.

CARPET (WITH OR WITHOUT A CUSHION, PAD, OR BACKING) SHALL BE SECURELY ATTACHED TO ITS FLOOR OR GROUND SURFACE. CARPET INSTALLATION SHALL MINIMIZE MOVEMENT.

9.3- GRATINGS (SEE 3.3.6).

CHAPTER 9- GROUND AND FLOOR SURFACES

CHAPTER 10 PROTRUDING OBJECTS

10.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

10.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter shall apply to all objects or elements in exterior or interior rooms, spaces, or areas.

ADAAG 4.1.3(2)

10.2 CLEAR HEADROOM (SEE, ALSO, 17.3.2)

10.2.1 Walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles or other circulation spaces shall have an 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum clear headroom.

ADAAG 4.4.2

10.2.2 If the clear headroom of an area adjoining an accessible route is reduced to less than 80 inches (2030 mm), then a minimum 27 inches (685 mm) high barrier shall be installed. The leading edge of the barrier shall be aligned with the lowest part of the obstruction where it intersects the 80 inches (2030 mm) headroom. The trailing edge of the barrier shall, at a minimum, terminate at the point where the top of the barrier intersects the lowest part of the obstruction.

ADAAG 4.4.2,
Figure 8(c-1)

(NOTE: The barrier leading edge is that part immediately adjacent to the accessible route. The barrier trailing edge is that part farthest from the accessible route.)

10.3 PROTRUDING OR PROJECTING OBJECTS

*10.3.1 Objects protruding from walls (e.g., telephones, water coolers, etc.) and having the leading edge located **more than 27 inches (685 mm)** up to 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finished floor or ground level may project or protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the wall on which they are mounted or the recess in which they are located.

ADAAG 4.4.1

10.3.2 Objects protruding from a wall having the leading edge at or below 27 inches (685 mm) above the finished floor or ground level may project or protrude any distance from the wall on which they are mounted or the recess into which they are located.

ADAAG 4.4.1

10.4 FREE-STANDING OBJECTS LOCATED ON, OR BETWEEN, POSTS OR PYLONS

*10.4.1 Objects may have a 12 inches (305 mm) maximum overhang if the object leading edge is located **more than 27 (685 mm) inches** up to 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finished floor or ground level.

ADAAG 4.4.1

10.4.2 Objects with their leading edges at, or below, 27 inches (685 mm) above the finished floor or ground level may protrude any distance.

ADAAG Fig.
8(c), 8(d)

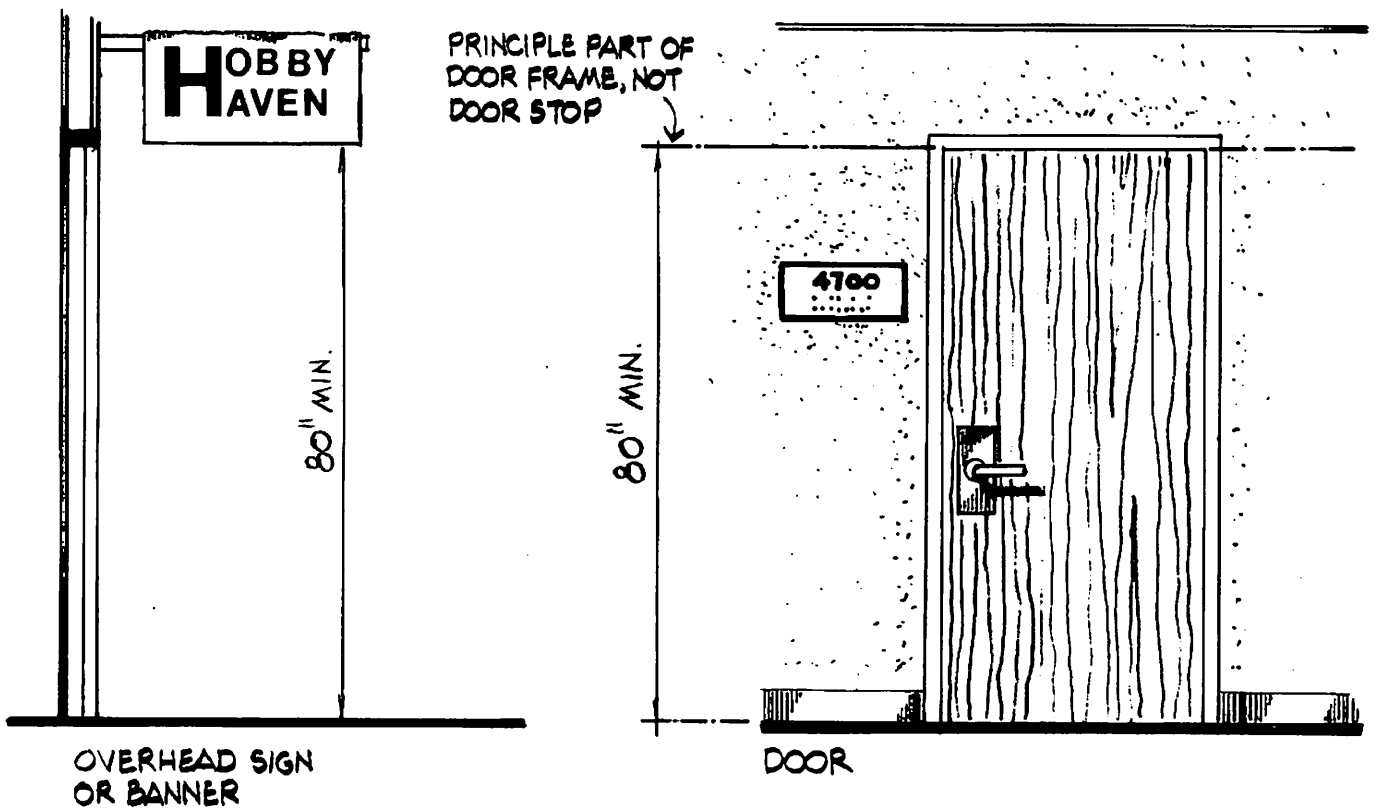
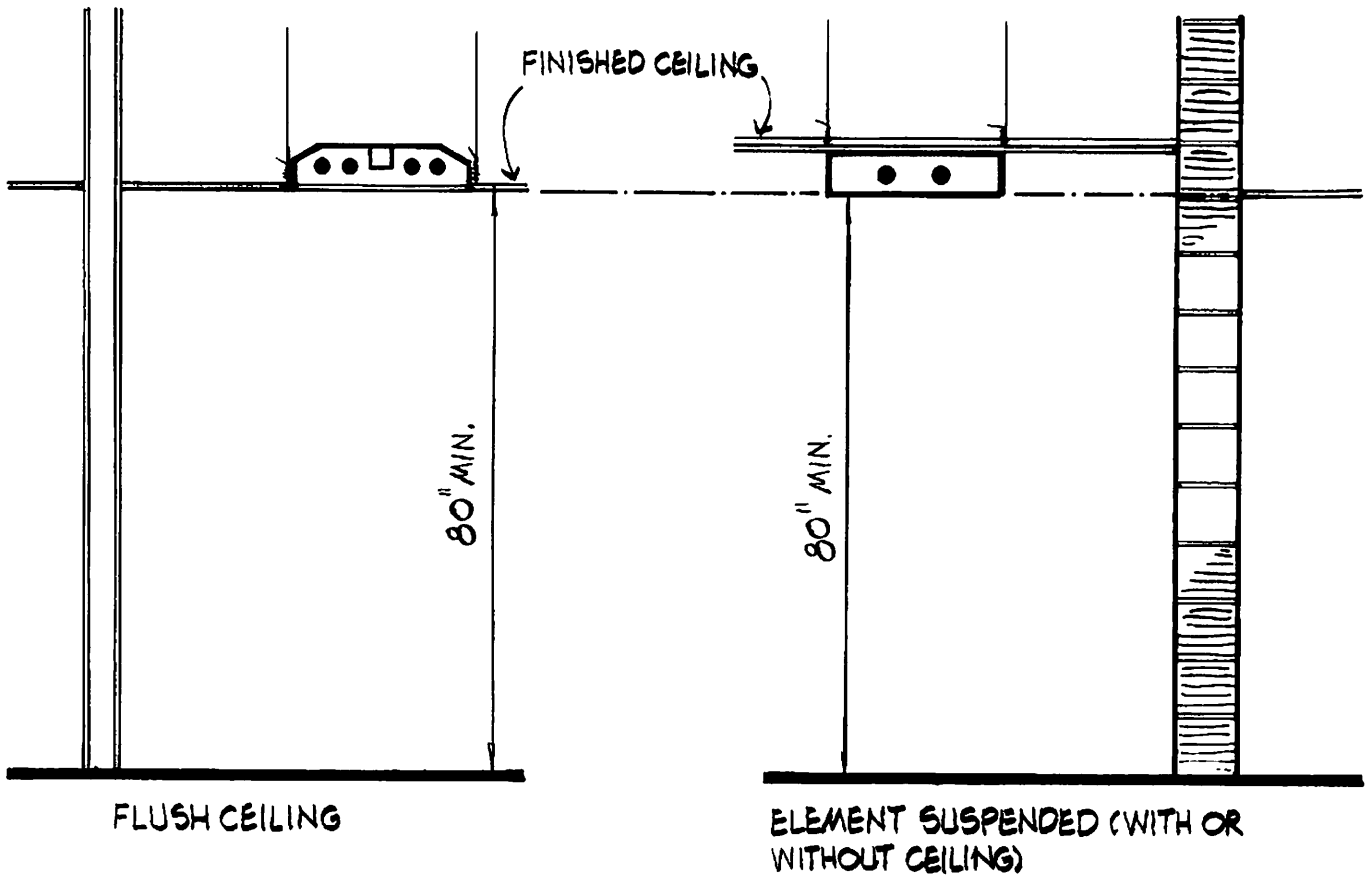
10.4.3 If a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons that are separated by a distance greater than 12 inches (305 mm), then the sign or obstruction lowest edge shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground surface.

**1992 ANSI
A117.1, 4.4.3**

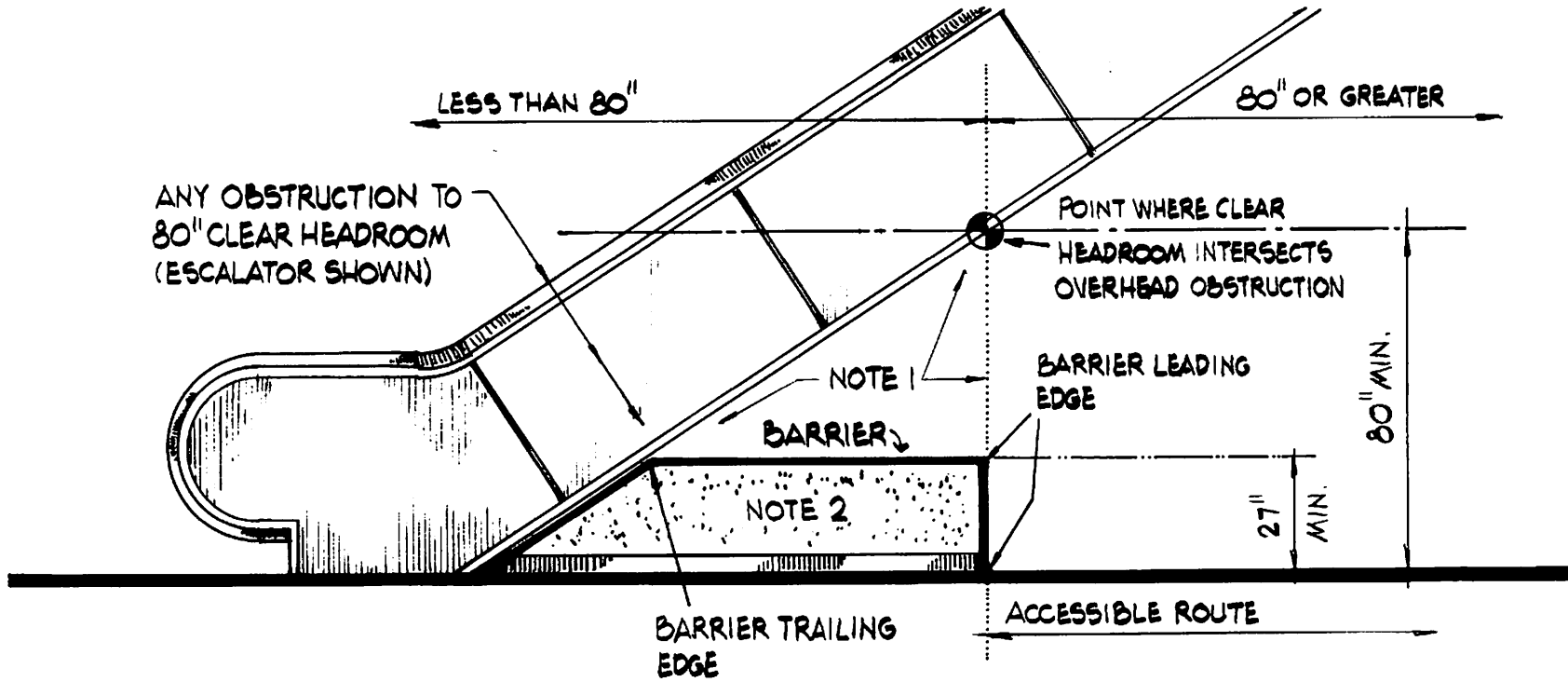
10.5 CLEAR WIDTH AND CLEAR FLOOR AREAS/SPACES

10.5.1** If a single protruding or projecting object has a width of 24 inches (610 mm) or less, ***then the minimum clear width at the point of passage may be reduced to 36 inches (915 mm) for an exterior accessible route and 32 inches (815 mm) for an interior accessible route.

ADAAG Fig. 8(e)



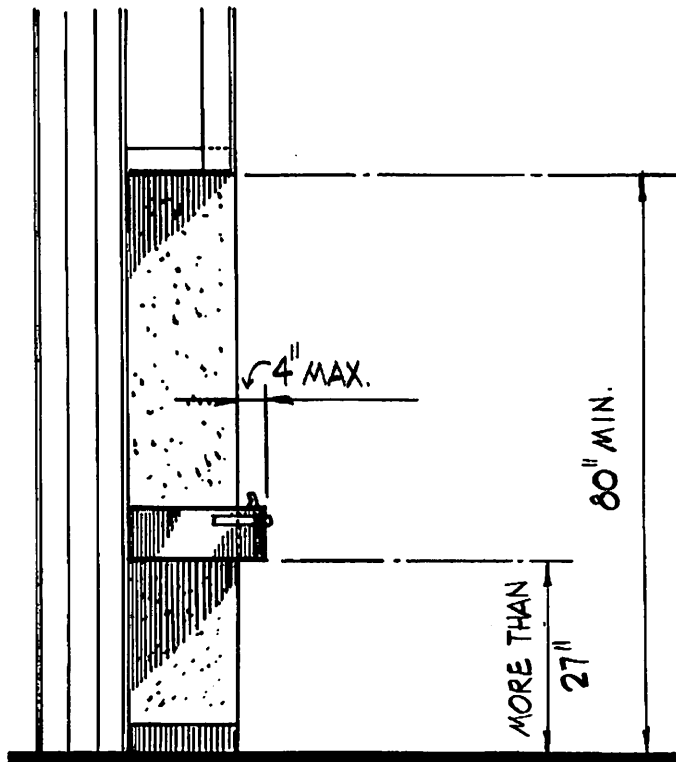
10.2.1- MINIMUM CLEAR HEADROOM- PART 1



NOTES:

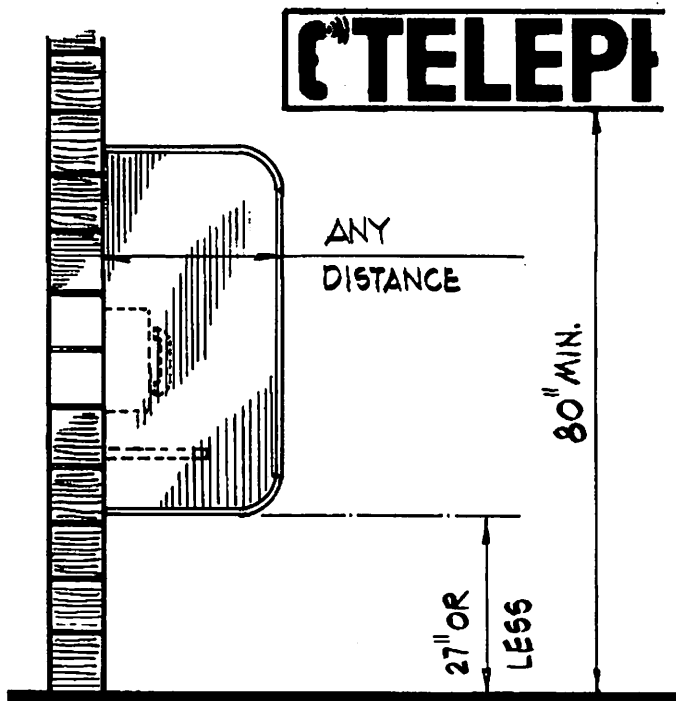
- 1 BARRIER MAY EXTEND FULL HEIGHT.
- 2 BARRIER MAY BE SOLID (GYPSUM BOARD, BRICK, WOOD, ETC.) OR OPEN (WOOD/METAL RAILS, GLASS, STAGGARED MASONRY, ETC.).
- 3 SEE VOLUME I FOR GUARDRAIL HEIGHT AND MEMBER SPACING.

10.2.2- CLEAR HEADROOM-PART 2



10.3.1- OBJECTS HAVING THEIR LEADING EDGE MORE THAN 27" UP TO 80" ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL MAY PROJECT OR PROTRUDE 4" MAXIMUM.

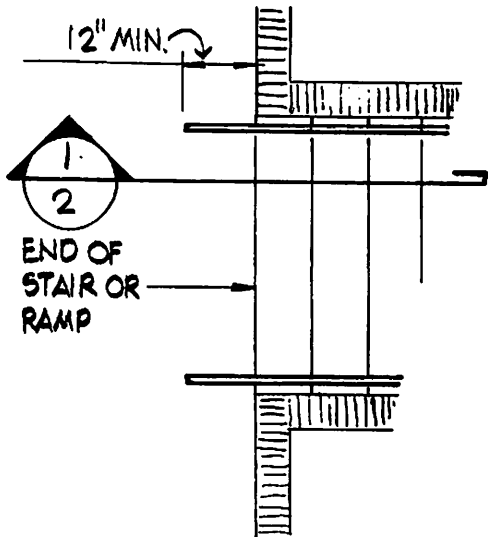
(WATERCOOLER SHOWN)



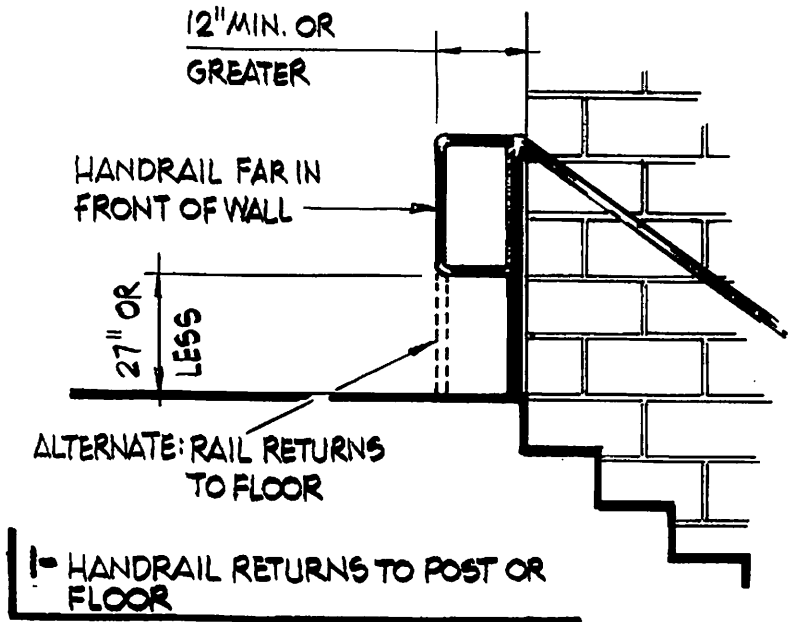
10.3.2- OBJECTS HAVING THEIR LEADING EDGES AT, OR BELOW, 27" ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL MAY PROJECT OR PROTRUDE ANY DISTANCE.

(TELEPHONE ENCLOSURE SHOWN)

10.3- PROTRUDING OR PROJECTING OBJECTS



1
2
END OF
STAIR OR
RAMP



12" MIN. OR
GREATER

HANDRAIL FAR IN
FRONT OF WALL

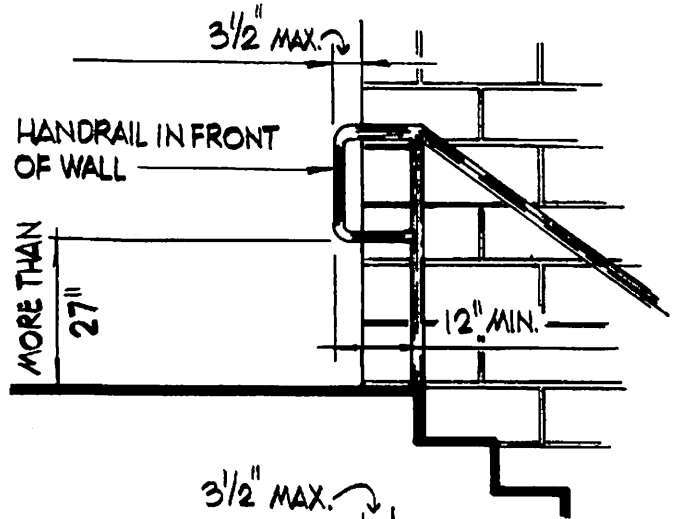
27" OR
LESS

ALTERNATE: RAIL RETURNS
TO FLOOR

1- HANDRAIL RETURNS TO POST OR
FLOOR

2- HANDRAIL RETURNS TO POST

NOTE: FOR 2 AND 3 THE
PROJECTION IS 3 1/2" MAX. SINCE THE
HANDRAIL DOES NOT RETURN
AGAINST THE WALL OR COLUMN.
FOR RETURN RAIL(S), SEE 8.3.4.

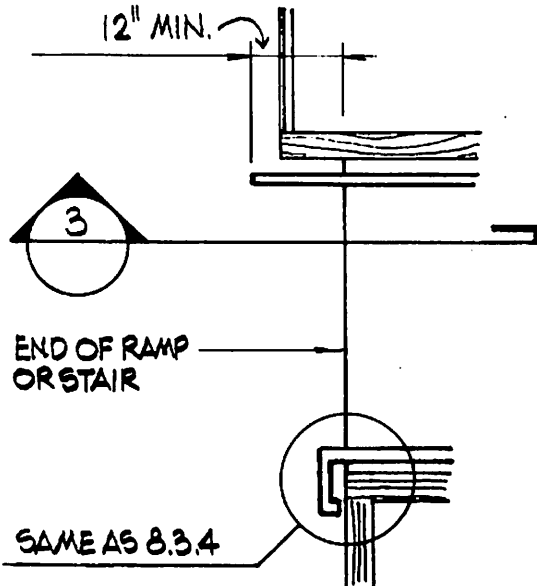


3 1/2" MAX.

HANDRAIL IN FRONT
OF WALL

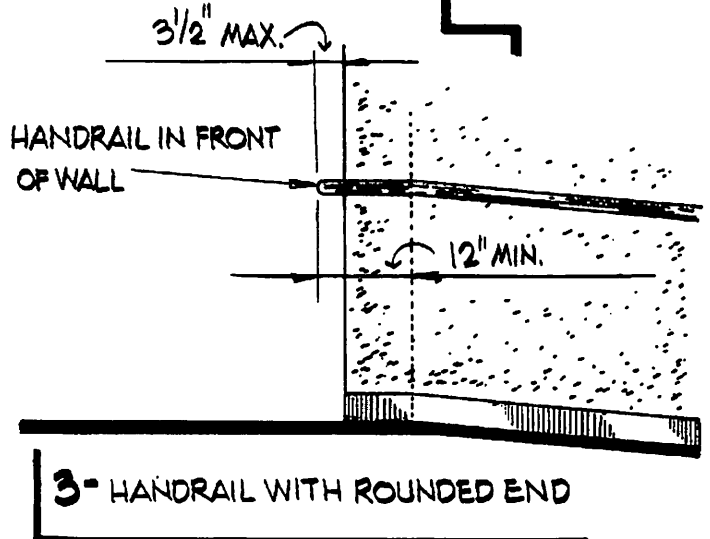
MORE THAN
27"

2



3
END OF RAMP
OR STAIR

3
SAME AS 8.3.4



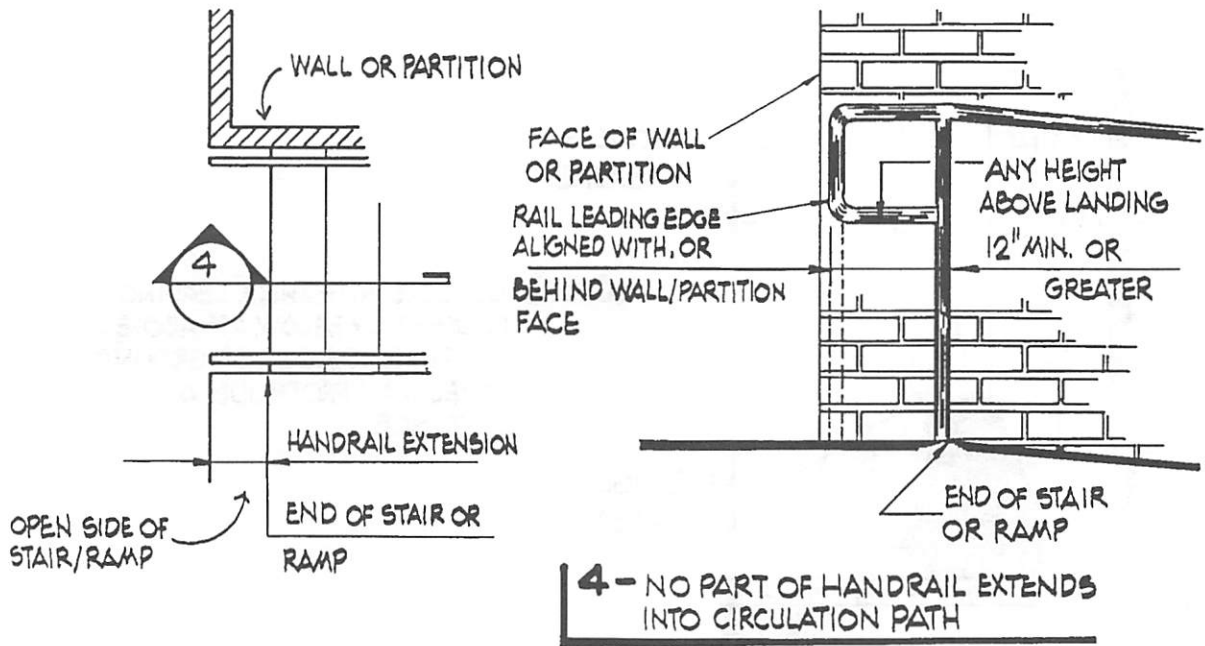
3 1/2" MAX.

HANDRAIL IN FRONT
OF WALL

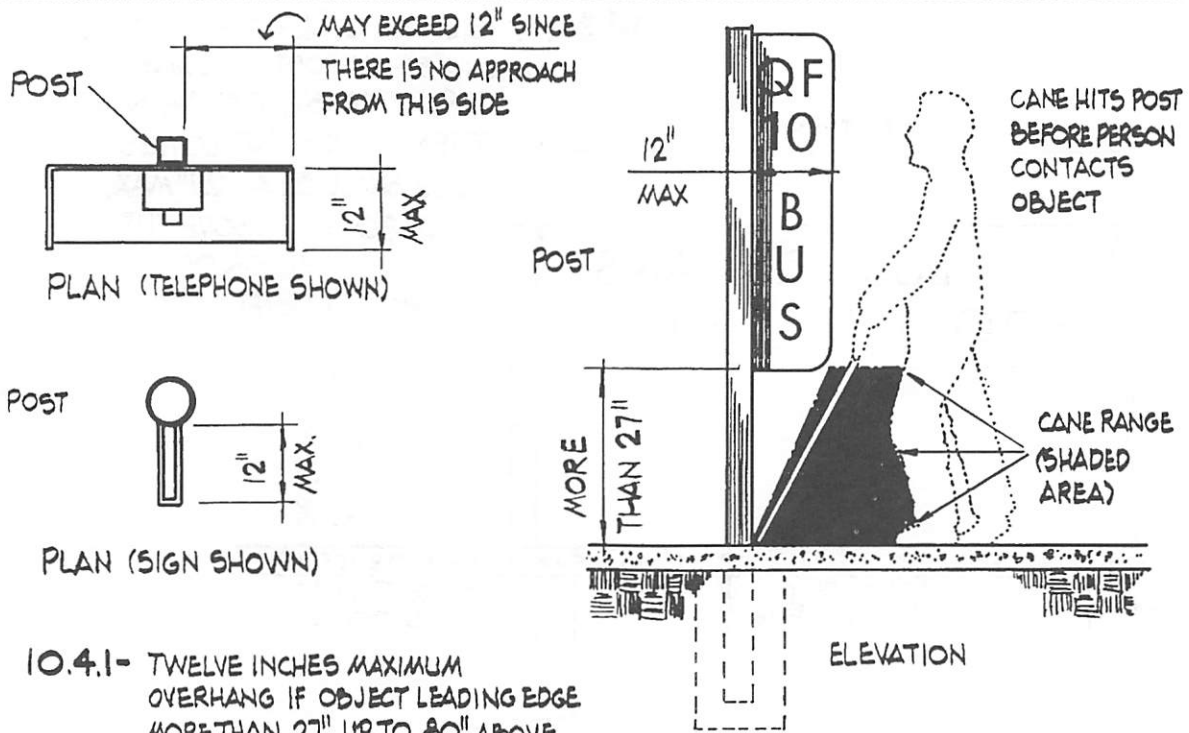
12" MIN.

3- HANDRAIL WITH ROUNDED END

10.3- (RAMP/STAIR HANDRAIL AS) PROTRUDING OR PROJECTING OBJECTS - PART I

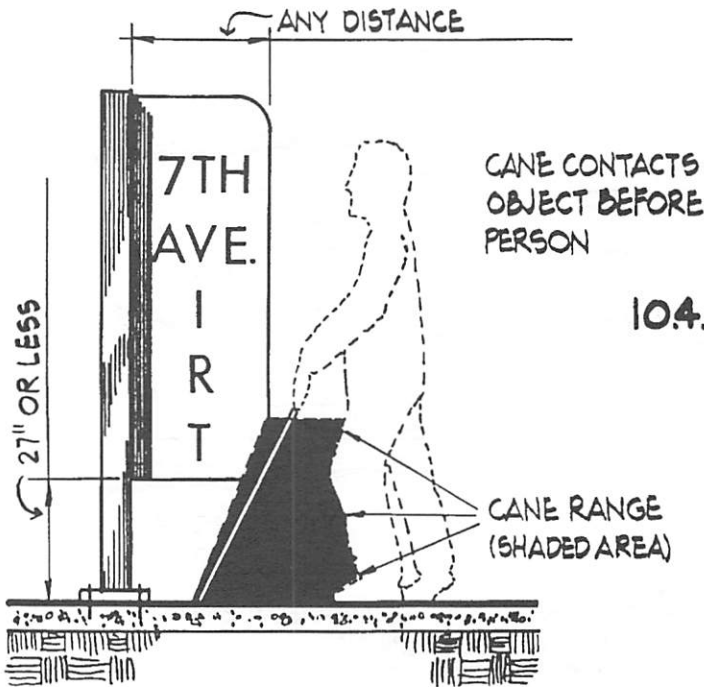


10.3- (RAMP/STAIR HANDRAILS AS) PROTRUDING OR PROJECTING OBJECTS-PART 2



10.4.1- TWELVE INCHES MAXIMUM OVERHANG IF OBJECT LEADING EDGE MORE THAN 27" UP TO 80" ABOVE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL.

10.4- FREE-STANDING OBJECTS ON/BETWEEN POSTS OR PYLONS

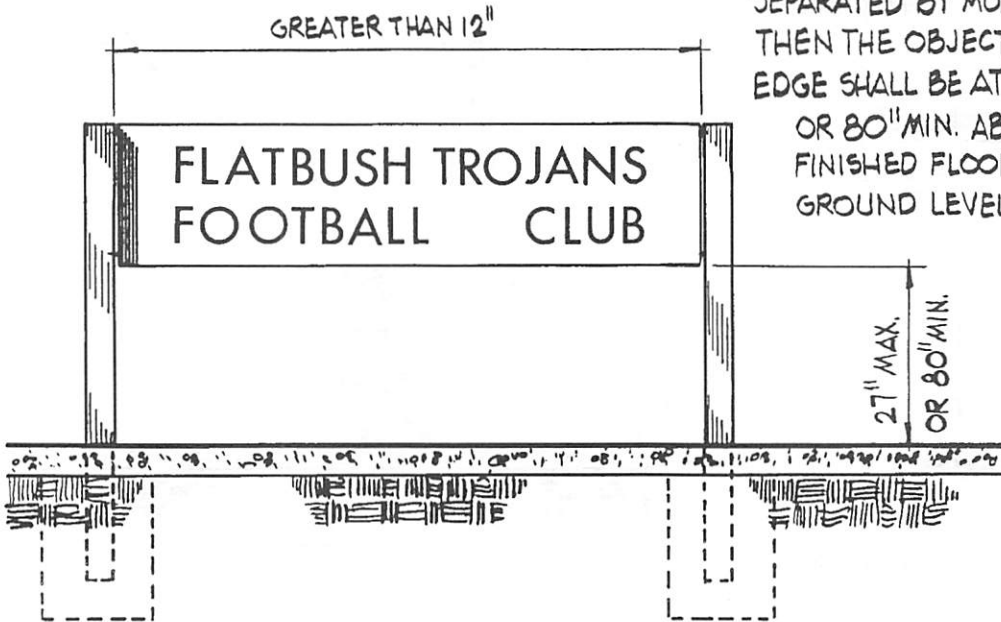


CANE CONTACTS
OBJECT BEFORE
PERSON

10.4.2- OBJECTS WITH THEIR LEADING EDGES AT, OR BELOW, 27" ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL MAY PROTRUDE ANY DISTANCE.

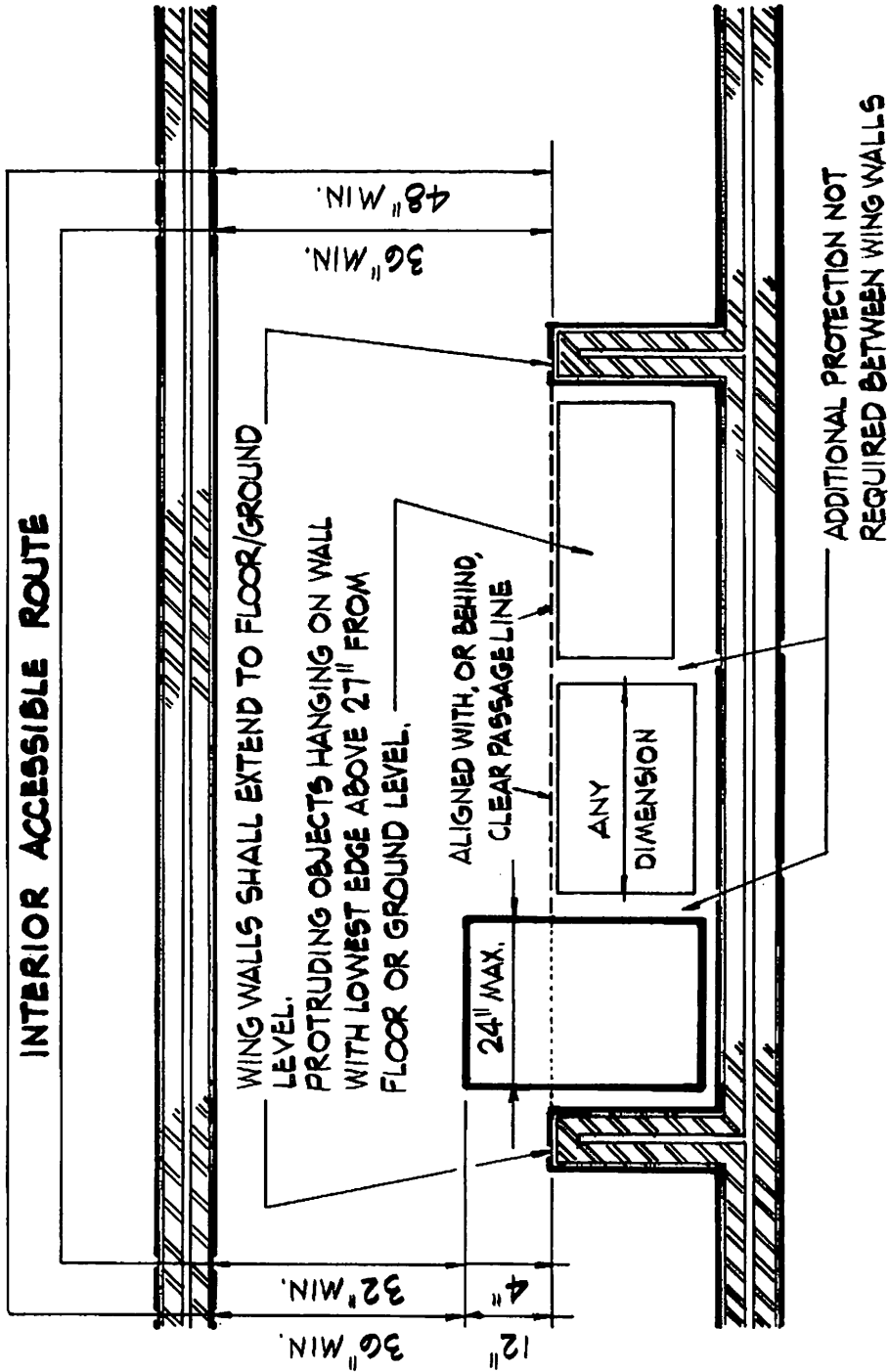
CANE RANGE
(SHADED AREA)

10.4.3- IF A SIGN OR OTHER OBSTRUCTION IS MOUNTED ON POSTS/PYLONS SEPARATED BY MORE THAN 12", THEN THE OBJECT LOWEST EDGE SHALL BE AT 27" MAX. OR 80" MIN. ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL.



10.4- FREE-STANDING OBJECTS ON/BETWEEN POSTS OR PYLONS

EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE
INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE



10.5 - CLEAR WIDTH AND CLEAR FLOOR AREAS/SPACES

**CHAPTER 11
TOILET ROOMS, PLUMBING FIXTURES,
GRAB BARS AND ACCESSORIES**

11.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

11.1.1 On every floor and at each site where toilet rooms are provided, each public and common use toilet room shall comply with this Chapter. (See, also, 1.2.11.) ADAAG 4.1.2(6),
4.1.3(11)

11.1.2 A minimum of one fixture of each type provided in each toilet room shall comply with this Chapter. (Refer to 11.4.3 when more than one watercloset in each toilet room is required to be accessible.) Vol. I-C, 4.6.1(a);
FR 7/26/91 At 35421

11.1.3 Other toilet rooms that are provided for the use of occupants of specific spaces (e.g., a private toilet room for the occupant of a private office) shall be adaptable to be accessible. ADAAG 4.1.3(11)

11.2 ACCESS TO TOILETS

11.2.1 An accessible toilet room(s) shall be located on an accessible route in every building to which 1.2 applies. Vol. I-C, 4.6.1(d)(1);
ADAAG 4.22.1

* **11.2.2** *Except for toilets located within individual leased areas, public use toilets in shopping malls, and those in schools, shall be located so that no person shall be required to travel more than 200 feet (61 m) horizontal travel distance for access.* NC Plumbing Code
Table 403.1, Footnotes
15 and 22;
403.3.1.2; 403.3.1.4

11.3 FLOOR CLEARANCES

11.3.1 Within each toilet room there shall be a clear floor area that:

(1) Is a minimum 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm); or

(2) Is a minimum 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter turning circle; or

Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(a);
ADAAG 4.22.3

(3) Is a T-shaped space (refer to the illustration for clarification).

11.3.1.1 Fixtures, controls and accessories shall be on an accessible route. The clear floor space at fixtures, controls, accessories, the accessible route itself, and the clear floor area may overlap. ADAAG 4.22.3

***11.3.1.2** *If total available floor area is limited, then a maximum 6 inches (150 mm) deep by a minimum 8-3/4 inches (220 mm) high toe space under base cabinet(s) may be allowed to supplant part of the clear floor area.*

Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(c)

(E.G.: The horizontal distance from a wall to the face of a base cabinet may be 54 inches [1370 mm] minimum if the cabinet has the required toe space. The horizontal distance between two opposite base cabinets may be 48 inches [1220 mm] minimum if both cabinets have the required toe space).

***11.3.1.3** *If total available floor area is limited, then a maximum 6 inches (150 mm) deep by a minimum 8-3/4 inches (220 mm) high toe space located under a wall-hung watercloset may be allowed to supplant part of the clear floor area. A floor mounted watercloset may be used provided that neither the base nor pedestal projects into the toe space. (I.E.: The 6 inches [150 mm] by 8-3/4 inches [220 mm] toe space shall be measured vertically from the forward edge of the fixture projected vertically to the floor.)*

Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(d)

11.3.2 ENTRY DOORS AND DOOR HARDWARE

11.3.2.1 All toilet room entry doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7.

ADAAG 4.22.2

11.3.2.2 The swing of a toilet room entry door may overlap the clear floor area by 12 inches (305 mm) maximum. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required at any fixture or accessory.

Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(b);
FAQ, Question #10;
ADAAG 4.22.2

**CHAPTER 11
TOILET ROOMS, PLUMBING FIXTURES,
GRAB BARS AND ACCESSORIES**

11.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

11.1.1 On every floor and at each site where toilet rooms are provided, each public or common use toilet room shall comply with this Chapter. (See, also, 1.2.11.)

**ADAAG 4.1.2(6),
4.1.3(11)**

11.1.2 A minimum of one fixture of each type provided in each toilet room shall comply with this Chapter. (Refer to 11.4.3 when more than one watercloset in each toilet room is required to be accessible.)

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.1(a);
FR 7/26/91 At 35421**

11.1.3 Other toilet rooms that are provided for the use of occupants of specific spaces (e.g., a private toilet room for the occupant of a private office) shall be adaptable to be accessible.

ADAAG 4.1.3(11)

11.2 ACCESS TO TOILETS

11.2.1 An accessible toilet room(s) shall be located on an accessible route in every building to which 1.2 applies.

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.1(d)(1);
ADAAG 4.22.1**

***11.2.2** *Except for toilets located within individual leased areas public use toilets in shopping malls, and those in schools, shall be located so that no person shall be required to travel more than 200 feet (61 m) horizontal travel distance for access.*

**Vol. II, 407.2.4.6,
Table 407, Note 15**

11.3 FLOOR CLEARANCES

***11.3.1** *Except for individual toilet rooms permitted by 11.8, within each toilet room there shall be a clear floor area that:*

(1) Is a minimum 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm); or

(2) Is a minimum 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter turning circle; or

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(a);
ADAAG 4.22.3**

(3) Is a T-shaped space (refer to the illustration for clarification).

11.3.1.1 Fixtures, controls and accessories shall be on an accessible route. The clear floor space at fixtures, controls, accessories, the accessible route itself, and the clear floor area may overlap.

ADAAG 4.22.3

*** 11.3.1.2** *If total available floor area is limited, then a maximum 6 inches (150 mm) deep by a minimum 8-3/4 inches (220 mm) high toe space under base cabinet(s) may be allowed to supplant part of the clear floor area.*

Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(c)

(E.G.: The horizontal distance from a wall to the face of a base cabinet may be 54 inches [1370 mm] minimum if the cabinet has the required toe space. The horizontal distance between two opposite base cabinets may be 48 inches [1220 mm] minimum if both cabinets have the required toe space).

*** 11.3.1.3** *If total available floor area is limited, then a maximum 6 inches (150 mm) deep by a minimum 8-3/4 inches (220 mm) high toe space located under a wall-hung watercloset may be allowed to supplant part of the clear floor area. A floor mounted watercloset may be used provided that neither the base nor pedestal projects into the toe space. (I.E.: The 6 inches [150 mm] by 8-3/4 inches [220 mm] toe space shall be measured vertically from the forward edge of the fixture projected vertically to the floor.)*

Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(d)

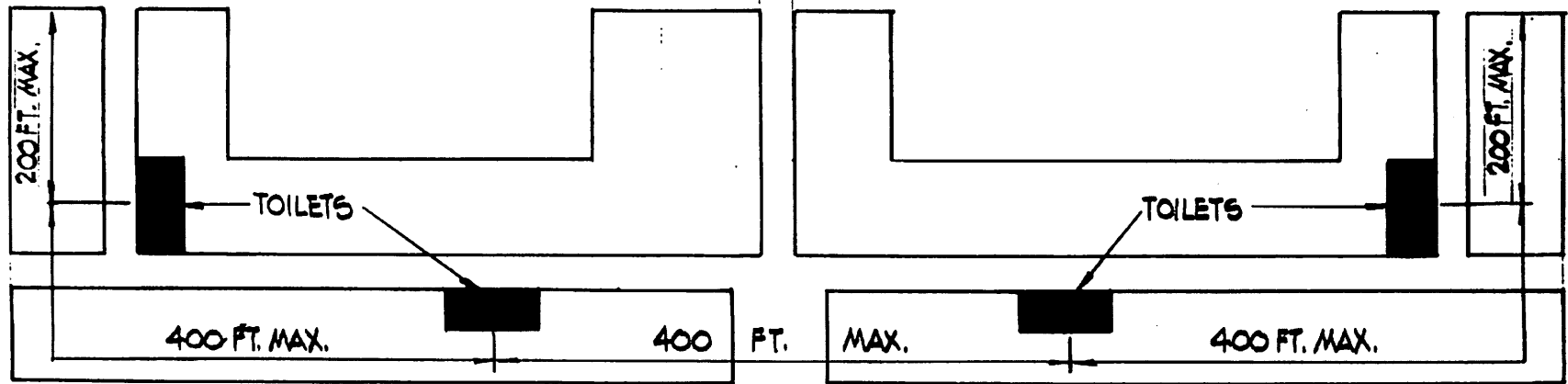
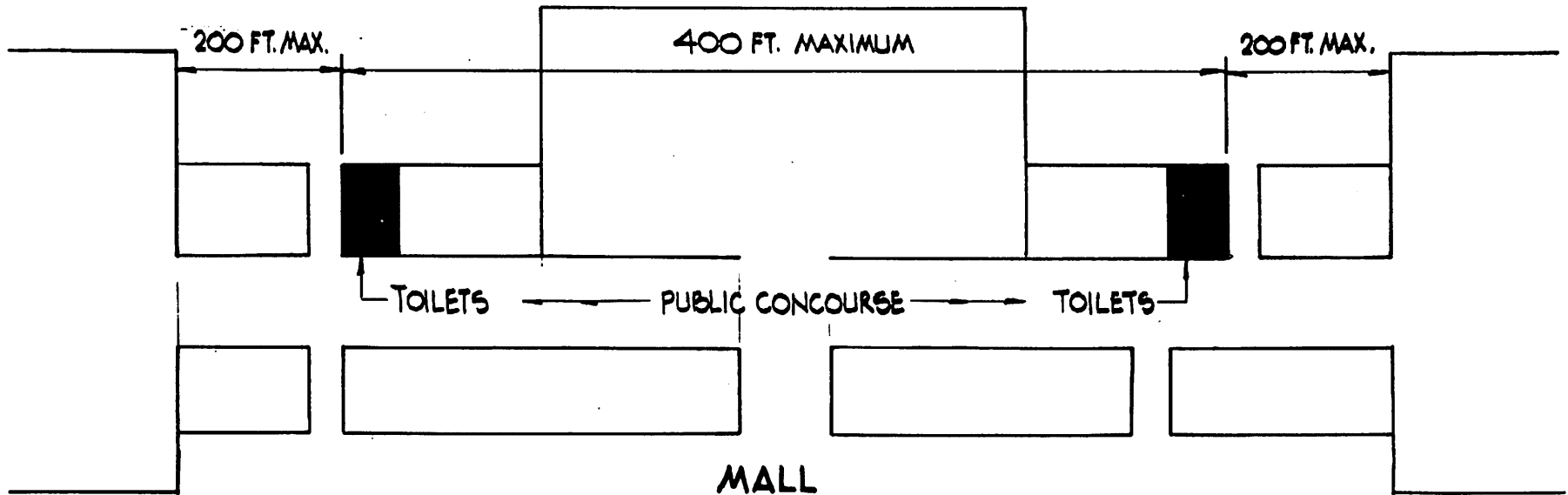
11.3.2 ENTRY DOORS AND DOOR HARDWARE

11.3.2.1 All toilet room entry doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7.

ADAAG 4.22.2

11.3.2.2 The swing of a toilet room entry door may overlap the clear floor area by 12 inches (305 mm) maximum. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required at any fixture or accessory.

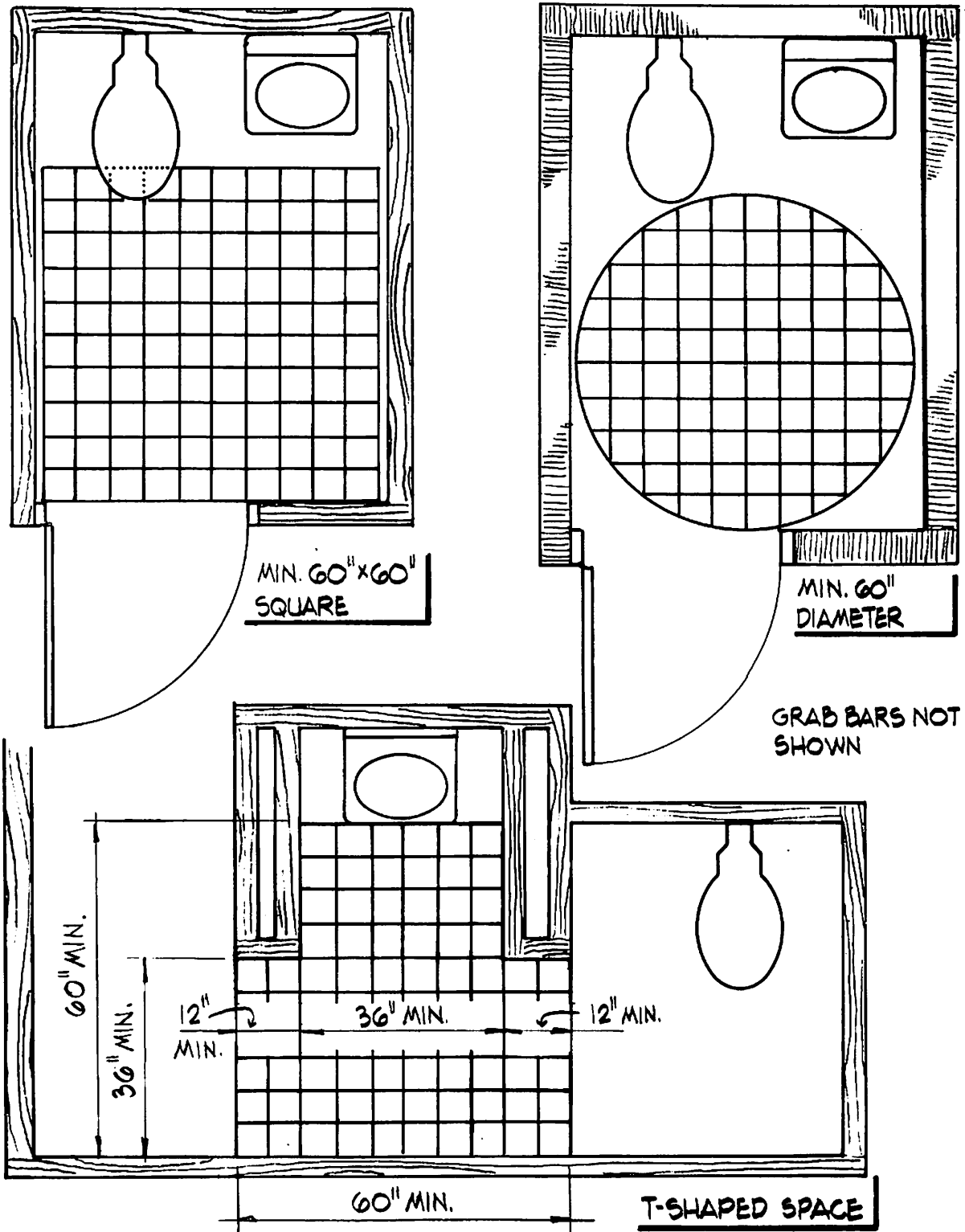
Vol. I-C, 4.6.2(b);
FAQ, Question #10;
ADAAG 4.22.2



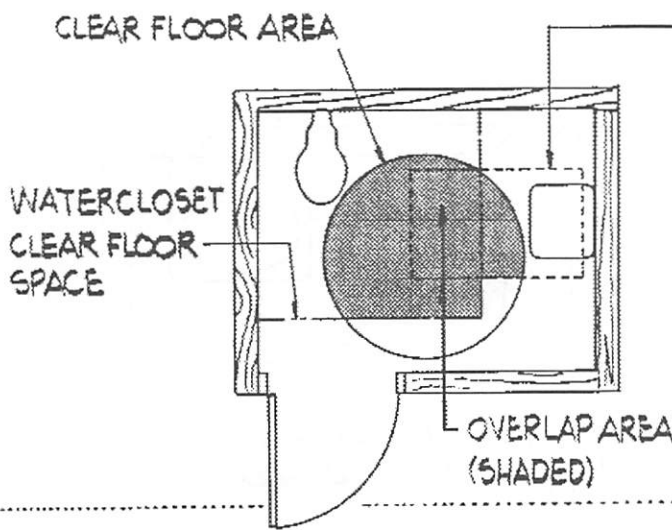
11.2.1-AN ACCESSIBLE TOILET ROOM SHALL BE LOCATED ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE IN EVERY BUILDING TO WHICH 1.2 APPLIES.

11.2.2- IN SHOPPING MALLS (EXCEPT FOR LEASED AREAS) AND SCHOOLS HORIZONTAL TRAVEL DISTANCE TO A TOILET SHALL NOT EXCEED 200 FEET.

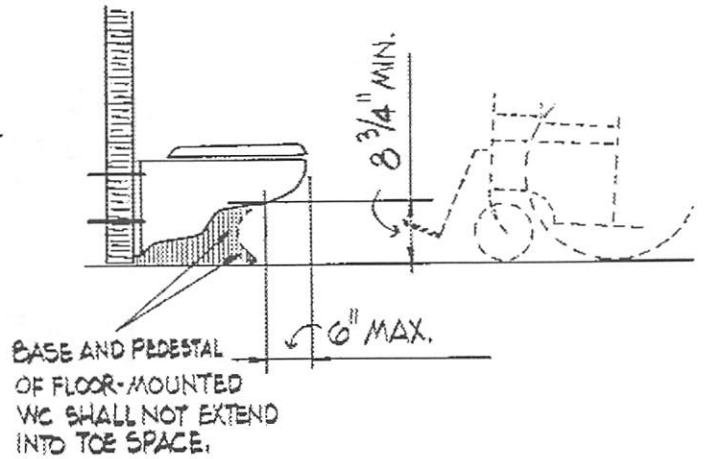
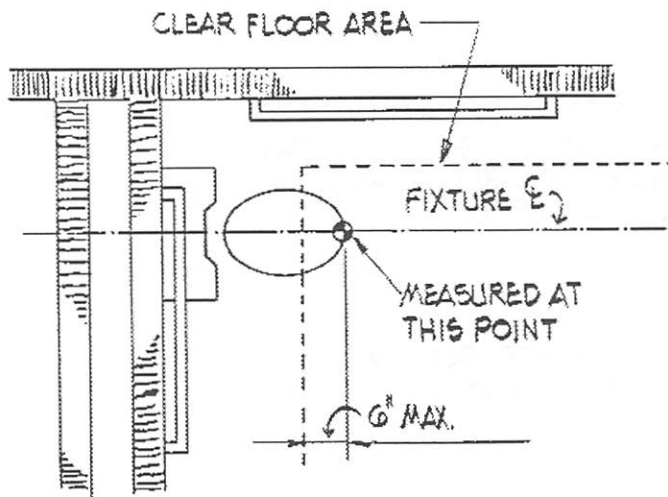
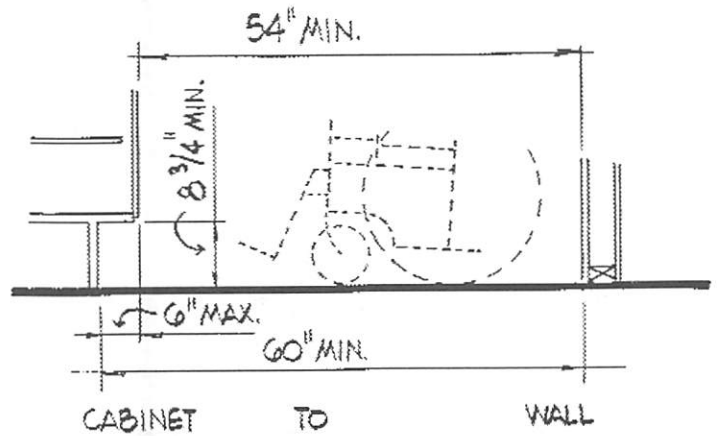
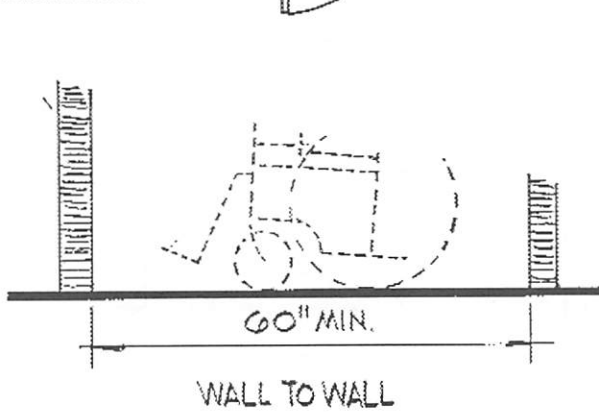
11.2- ACCESS TO TOILETS



11.3.1- TOILET ROOM CLEAR FLOOR AREAS (SEE, ALSO, 11.8).



11.3.1.1- FIXTURES, CONTROLS AND ACCESSORIES SHALL BE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT FIXTURES, CONTROLS AND ACCESSORIES, THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE ITSELF, AND THE CLEAR FLOOR AREA MAY OVERLAP.

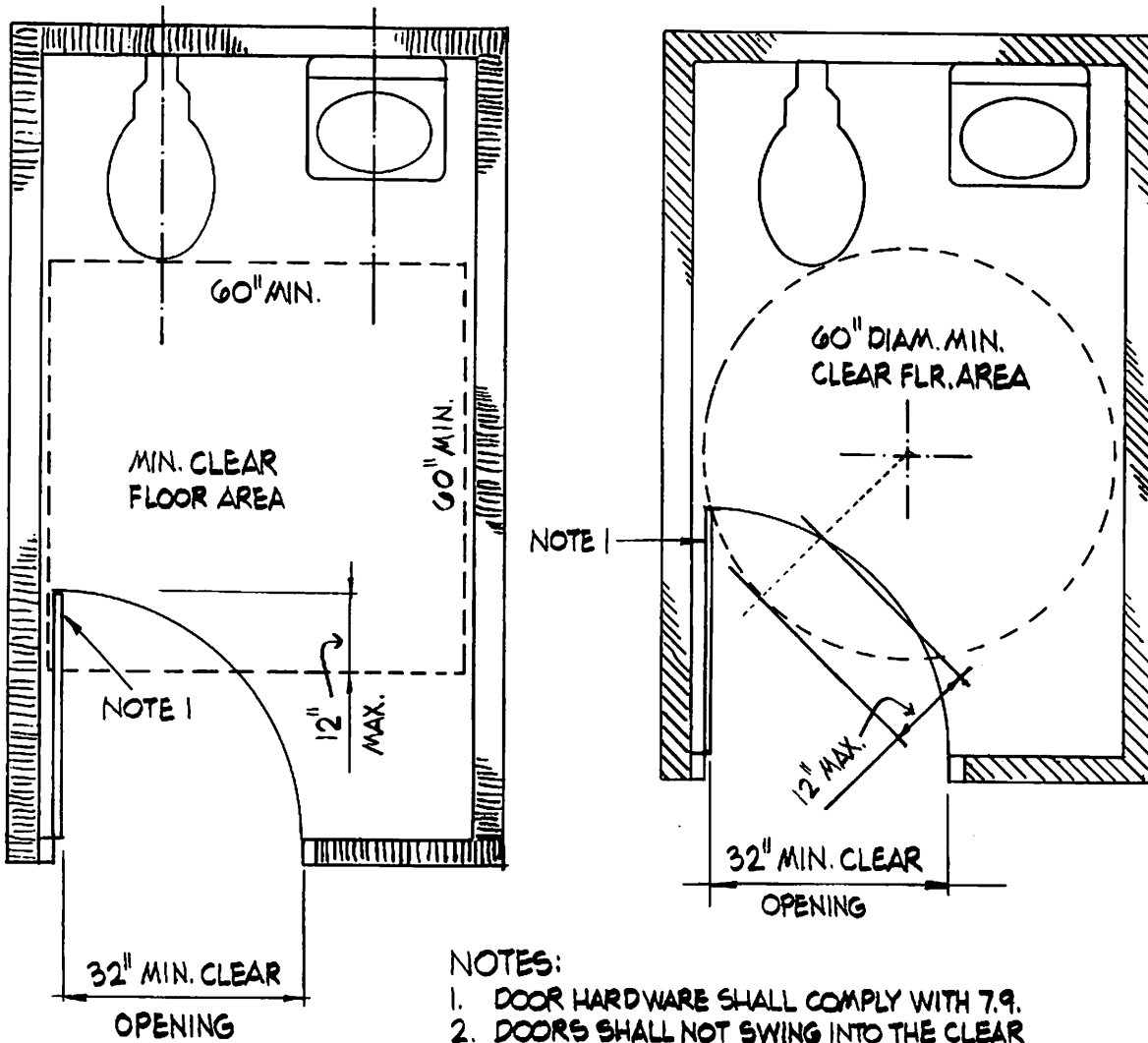


11.3.1.2- FLOOR AREA AND CABINETS (MIDDLE)

11.3.1.3- FLOOR AREA AND WATERCLOSET (BOTTOM)

11.3- FLOOR CLEARANCES

GRAB BARS NOT SHOWN



NOTES:

1. DOOR HARDWARE SHALL COMPLY WITH 7.9.
2. DOORS SHALL NOT SWING INTO THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE REQUIRED AT ANY FIXTURE OR ACCESSORY.

11.3.2.2- THE SWING OF A TOILET ROOM ENTRY DOOR MAY OVERLAP THE CLEAR FLOOR AREA BY 12" MAXIMUM.

11.3.2- ENTRY DOORS AND DOOR HARDWARE

11.4 ACCESSIBLE TOILET STALLS

(NOTE: The use of 11.4.1 or 11.4.2 in any toilet room shall not be limited by this Code. Elements in either Type of standard stall may be arranged for a left- or right-hand approach.)

*11.4.1 A *Type I standard stall* shall comply with the following:

- (1) A 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum clear width and a 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum clear depth if a wall hung watercloset is used; or, a 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum clear depth if a floor mounted fixture is used; Vol. I-C, 4.6.3(d)(1);
ADAAG Fig. 30(a)
- (2) An outswing, or horizontal sliding, door having a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening and a 4 inches (100 mm) maximum hinge jamb stile shall be located diagonally opposite the watercloset.; Vol. I-C, 4.6.3(d)(2);
ADAAG Fig. 30(a)
- (3) A clear floor space on the pull side of the door having a 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum clear aisle width for an approach towards the pull handle; or, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum for any other type of approach; Vol. I-C, 4.6.3(d)(3);
ADAAG Figure 30(a)
- (4) A grab bar on the sidewall adjacent to the watercloset having a 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum length with the horizontal centerline 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished floor. The far end of the bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the finished face of the wall behind the fixture; Vol. I-C, 4.6.5(e);
ADAAG Figures
30(a), 30(d)
- (5) A rear wall grab bar having a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum length and located 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the sidewall adjacent to the watercloset. Height above the finished floor shall be the same as the sidewall grab bar. Vol. I-C, 4.6.5(e);
ADAAG Figures
30(a), 30(c)

*11.4.2 A *Type II standard stall* shall comply with the following:

- (1) A 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum width;
- (2) An inswing, or horizontal sliding, door located at the forward end of the stall having a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening;

- (3) A 92 inches (2335 mm) minimum clear length if a wall hung watercloset is used; or, a 95 inches (2415 mm) minimum clear length if a floor mounted watercloset is used;
- (4) Sidewall and rearwall grab bars shall comply with 11.4.1(4) and 11.4.1(5).

Overall Dimension(s) Of
ADAAG Fig. 30 (a-1);
Vol. I-C, 4.6.3(e)-Similar

11.4.3 In addition to a Type I or Type II standard stall, if six or more watercloset stalls are provided in any toilet room, then a stall complying with the following shall also be provided:

ADAAG 4.22.4

- * (1) **A 36 inches (915 mm) minimum to a 42 inches maximum (1070 mm) width** and a 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum depth if a wall hung watercloset is used; or, a 69 inches (1745 mm) minimum depth if a floor mounted watercloset is used;

- (2) A self-closing outswing, or horizontal sliding, door having a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening and located at the stall front;

ADAAG 4.22.4

- (3) An approach to the door that complies with 11.4.1(3).

- (4) One grab bar having a 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum length on each side of the stall. Each grab bar shall be located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the finished face of the rear wall and both horizontal centerlines shall be 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished floor.

**ADAAG
 4.22.4**

11.4.4 Accessible toilet stall door operating hardware shall comply with 7.9.

ADAAG 4.17.5

11.4.5 For a Type I stall with less than 60 inches (1525 mm) depth, the front and a minimum of one side partition shall have a 9 inches (230 mm) high toe clearance.

ADAAG 4.17.4

11.5 GRAB BARS

11.5.1 Grab bars shall have gripping surfaces of 1-1/4 inches to 1-1/2 inches (32 mm to 38 mm) in width or outside diameter.

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.5(a);
 ADAAG 4.26.2**

11.5.2 Grab bars shall have a 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) hand clearance between the face of the bar and the finished surface of the wall or partition. For a grab bar(s) located in a recess, see 5.4.3.

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.5(b);
 ADAAG 4.26.2,
 Fig. 39(d)**

*** 11.5.3 All grab bars and their fasteners shall be capable of supporting a 250 pound (113 Kg) load applied in any direction anywhere along its length.**

Vol. I-C, 4.6.5(c)

11.5.4 Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

ADAAG 4.26.3(5)

11.5.5 Grab bars and adjacent wall surfaces shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Grab bar edges shall have a 1/8 inch (3 mm) minimum radius. (See, also, the NOTE following 5.4.2[10].)

ADAAG 4.26.4

11.6 TOILET FIXTURES

11.6.1 An accessible watercloset shall comply with the following:

- * (1) The centerline shall be 18 inches (460 mm) from the adjacent sidewall. The height to the top of the seat shall be **16-1/2 inches minimum to 19-1/2 inches maximum (420 mm to 495 mm)**. **If a contoured seat is used, then the height to the top shall be measured at the forward one-third of the seat.**

Seat Height
Vol. I-C:
16-1/2" To 19-1/2";
ADAAG:
17" To 19"
Contoured Seat
By Staff & Public
Comment-8/96

(NOTE: For the stall required by 11.4.3 the watercloset shall be centered within the enclosure);

- (2) The use of seats spring loaded to return to a vertical position shall be prohibited;

ADAAG 4.16.3

- (3) The required seat height shall be applicable for wall hung or floor mounted fixtures;

Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(a)(3)

- (4) Flush control activating mechanisms shall be placed on the wide side of waterclosets at 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Controls shall be either automatic or hand operable by a force of five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum

ADAAG 4.16.5

(NOTE: For the stall required by 11.4.3 the flush mechanism may be left- or right-handed);

- * (5) Toilet paper dispensers shall be located on the sidewall adjacent to the watercloset at 19 inches (430 mm) minimum above the finished floor and **36 inches (915 mm) maximum** from the finished wall or partition behind the watercloset. **Paper dispenser(s) located in a stall required by 11.4.3 may be placed on either sidewall. Dispenser placement shall not interfere with the clear use of any grab bar.** The use of dispensers that control delivery or that do not permit a continuous paper flow shall be prohibited.

ADAAG 4.16.6

11.6.2 Accessible lavatories shall comply with the following:

- * (1) The rim or finished counter surface shall be **34 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (865 mm to 915 mm)** above the finished floor. At the forward end of the fixture apron, skirt of a vanity, or counter, a 29 inches (735 mm) minimum knee clearance shall be provided from the apron/skirt to the finished floor (for detailed knee clearance, refer to the illustration); **Rim Height: Vol. I-C: 34" To 36"; ADAAG: 34" Max.**
- (2) The lavatory shall extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum measured from the wall or partition to the most forward edge of the fixture. **ADAAG Fig. 31 And 32**
- (3) A minimum clear floor space 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (765 mm by 1220 mm) shall be provided, oriented for a forward approach only and shall extend 19 inches (485 mm) maximum under the fixture. The clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap the accessible route leading to the fixture. **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(b)(1); ADAAG 4.19.3**
- * (4) ***Water supply and drain lines shall not encroach nor interfere with the clear required knee space;*** **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(b)(3)**
- (5) Hot water supply and drain lines shall be covered with either pipe insulation or a non-heat conducting baffle. A baffle shall not encroach nor interfere with the required minimum knee space. Toe space at the bottom of any baffle shall have a 6 inches (150 mm) maximum depth and a 9 inches (230 mm) minimum height above the finished floor. Neither the insulation, baffle, nor lavatory shall have sharp or abrasive surfaces/edges; **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(b)(4); ADAAG 4.19.4**
- * (6) Levers, blades, multi-arm handles, push buttons or electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable controls for water activation. If self-closing valves are used, then the faucet shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum. ***Faucet operation shall not require the use of a fine grasp, a tight pinching motion, or a turning/wrist-twisting motion for water activation. Manually activated faucets shall be operable by a five (5) pounds maximum force.*** **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(b)(5); ADAAG 4.19.5**

(NOTE: See, also, 11.11-Accessible Sinks).

Cross-Reference

11.6.3 Accessible urinals shall comply with the following:

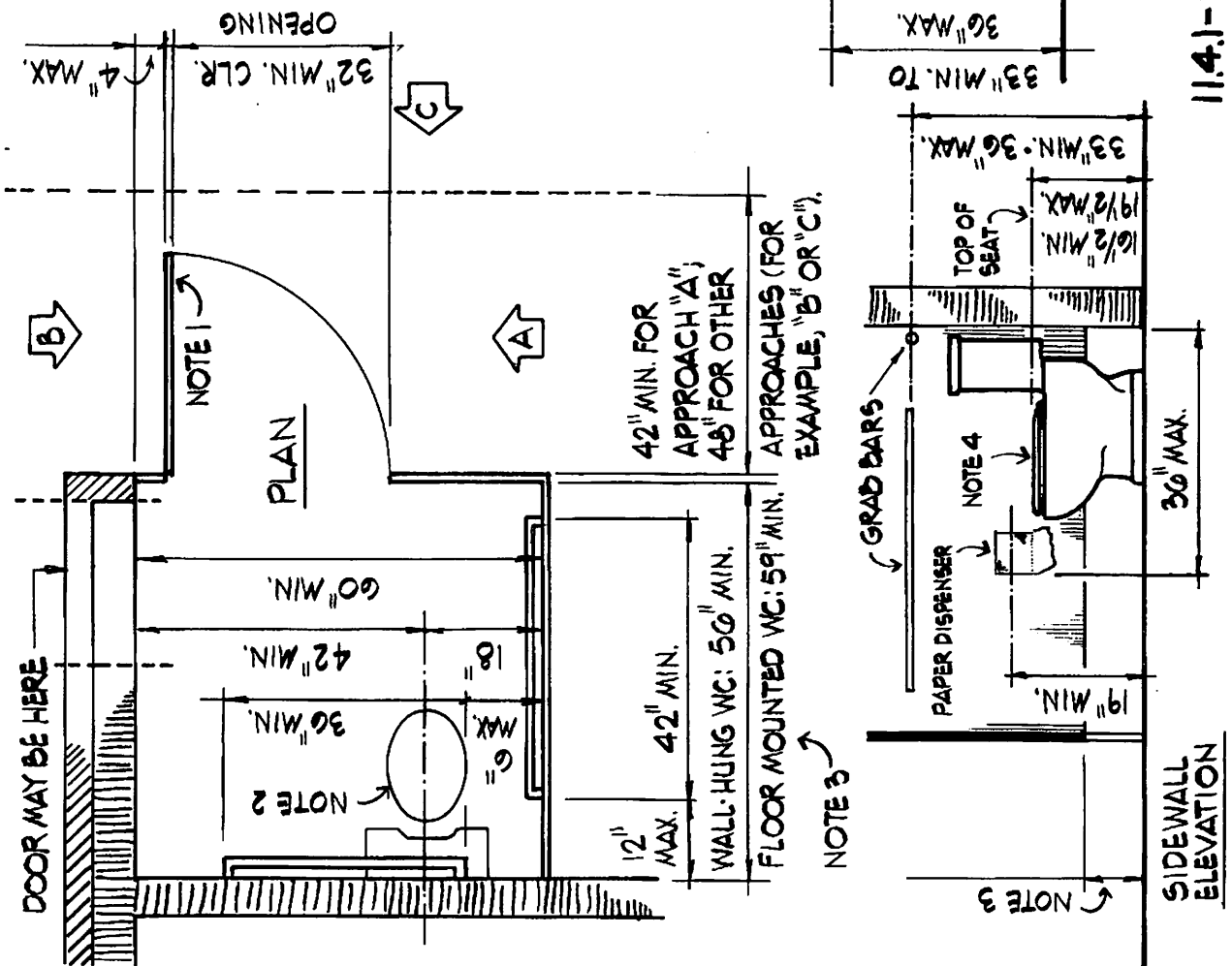
- (1) Fixtures shall be stall-type or wall-hung with the rim at 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the finished floor; **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(c)(3);
ADAAG 4.18.2**

- * (2) The elongated rim or bowl shall **project 14 inches (355 mm) minimum** from the face of the finished wall or partition behind the fixture; **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(c)(2);
ADAAG 4.18.2: Elongated
Rim Only**

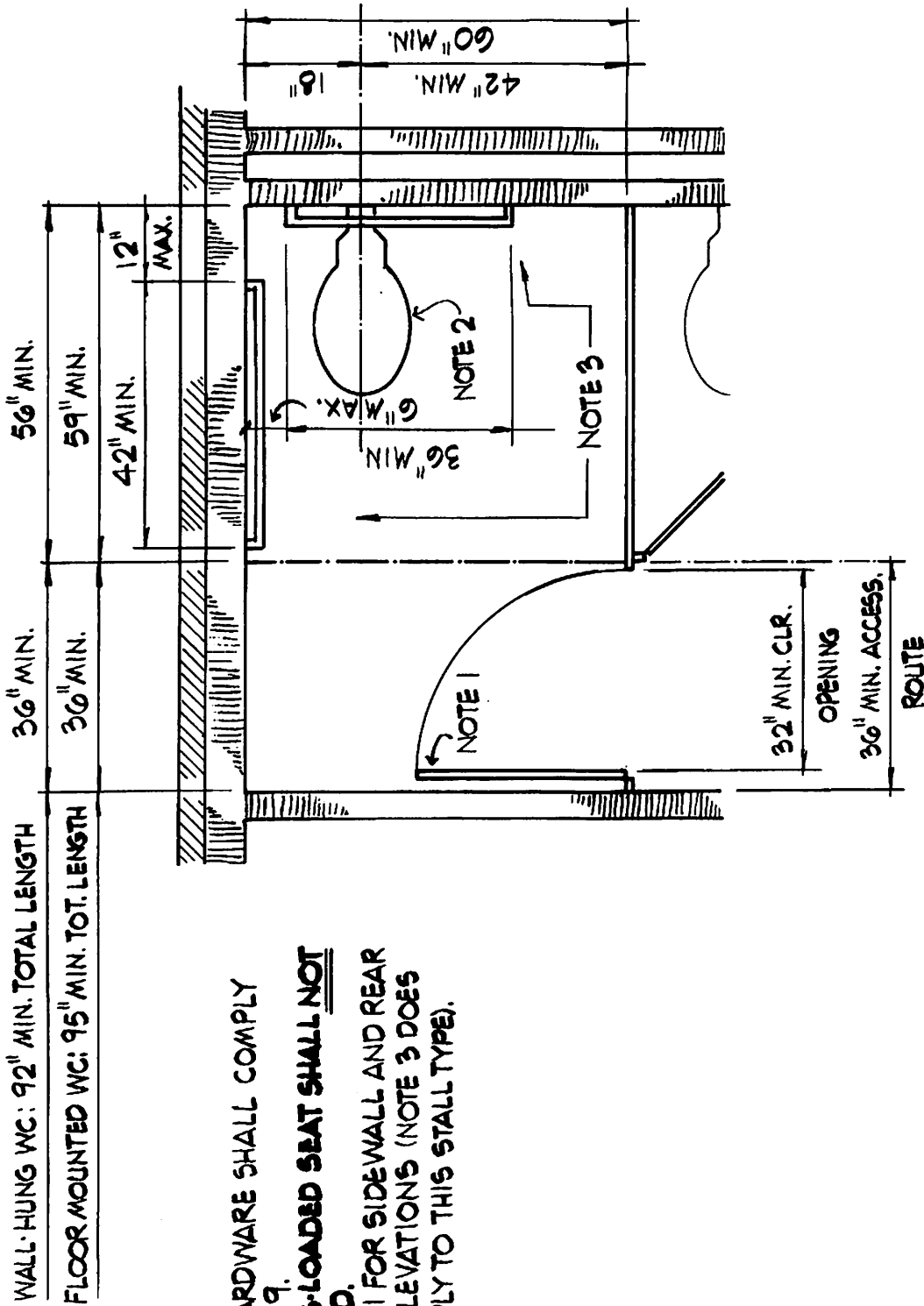
- (3) A clear floor space 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum shall be provided and oriented for a forward approach only. If privacy screens that do not project beyond the front edge of the fixture are provided, then the clear space between screens may be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum. If the screens extend beyond the front edge of the fixture rim, then the clear space between screens shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum. The clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap the accessible route leading to the fixture. **ADAAG 4.18.3;
Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(c)(1)
Similar**

- (4) Flush control activating mechanisms shall be located 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Controls shall be either automatic, or hand operable by a force of five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum. **Vol. I-C, 4.6.6(c)(4);
ADAAG 4.18.4**

- NOTES:
1. DOOR HARDWARE SHALL COMPLY WITH 7.9.
 2. THE WATERCLOSET (WC) SHALL ALWAYS BE DIAGONALLY OPPOSITE THE DOOR.
 3. IF THE MINIMUM DEPTH IS USED, THEN THE FRONT AND A MIN. OF ONE SIDE PARTITION SHALL HAVE A 9" HIGH MIN. TOE CLEARANCE.
 4. **SPRING-LOADED SEAT SHALL NOT BE USED.**
 5. FLUSH CONTROLS SHALL BE PLACED ON THE WC WIDE SIDE AT 44" MAX. ABOVE FINISHED FLOOR.



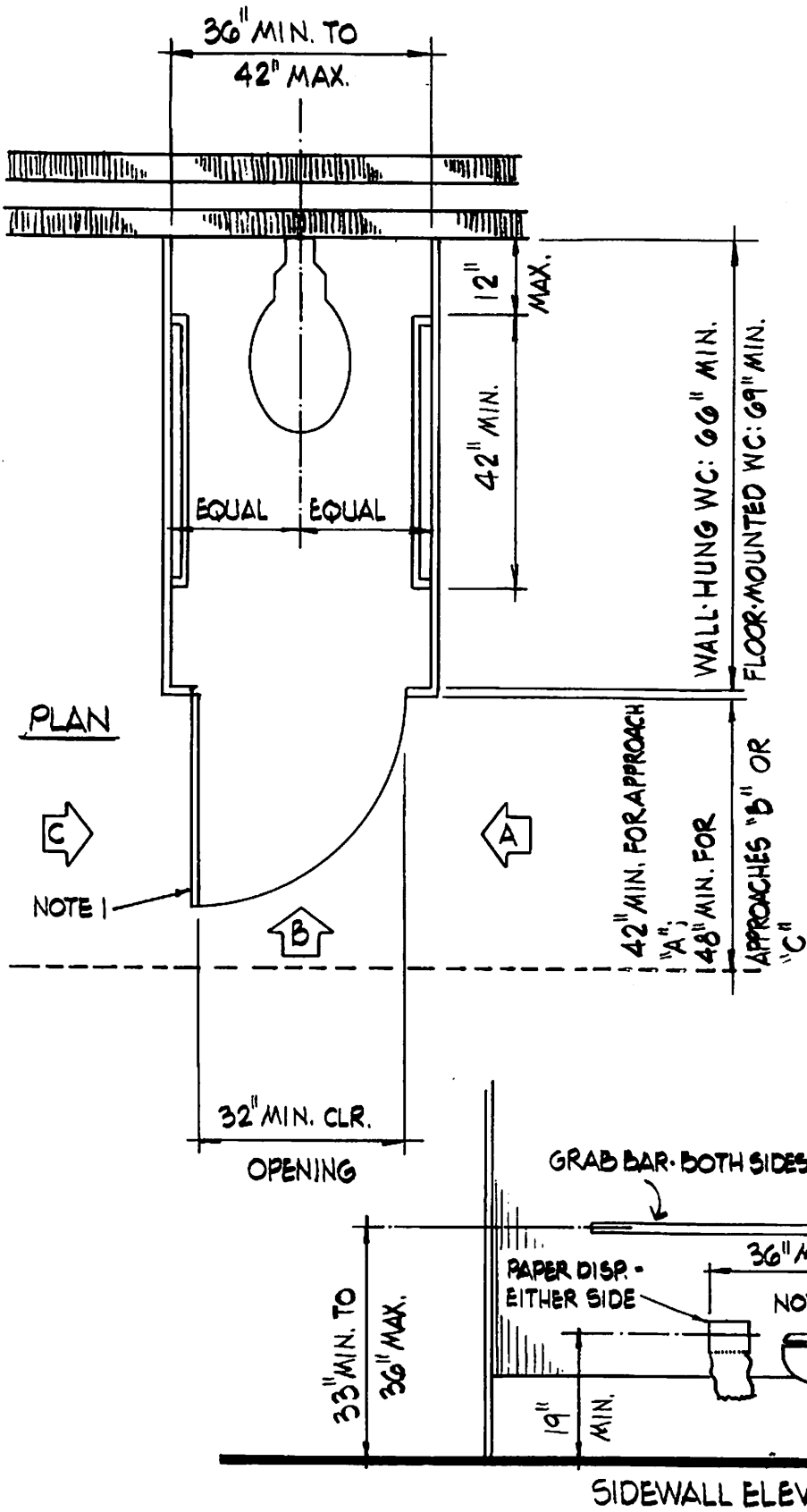
11.4.1 - TYPE I STANDARD STALL



- NOTES:
1. DOOR HARDWARE SHALL COMPLY WITH 7.9.
 2. **SPRING-LOADED SEAT SHALL NOT BE USED.**
 3. SEE 11.4.1 FOR SIDEWALL AND REAR WALL ELEVATIONS (NOTE 3 DOES NOT APPLY TO THIS STALL TYPE).

11.4.2-TYPE II STANDARD STALL

11.4-ACCESSIBLE TOILET STALLS

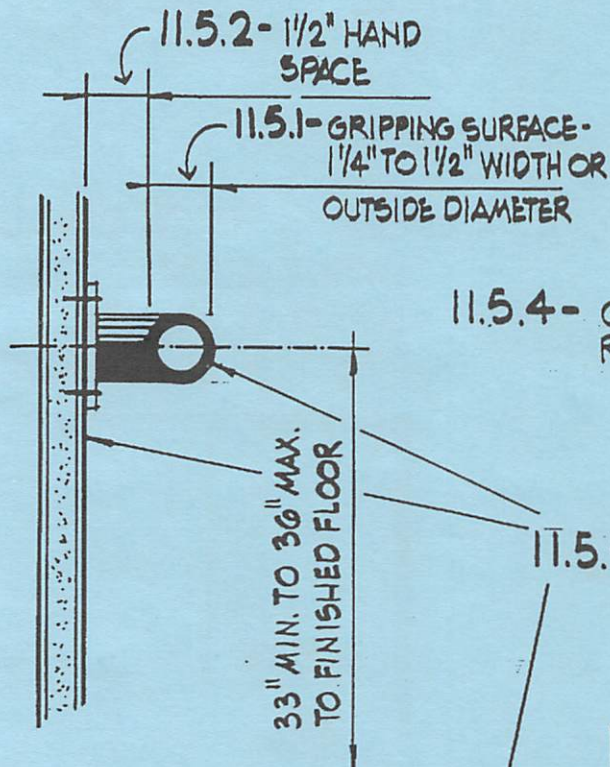


NOTES:

1. DOOR HARDWARE SHALL COMPLY WITH 7.9.
2. **SPRING-LOADED SEAT SHALL NOT BE USED.**
3. SEE TEXT WHEN THIS STALL IS REQUIRED IN NEW CONSTRUCTION.

11.4.3-ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE STALL

11.4- ACCESSIBLE TOILET STALLS

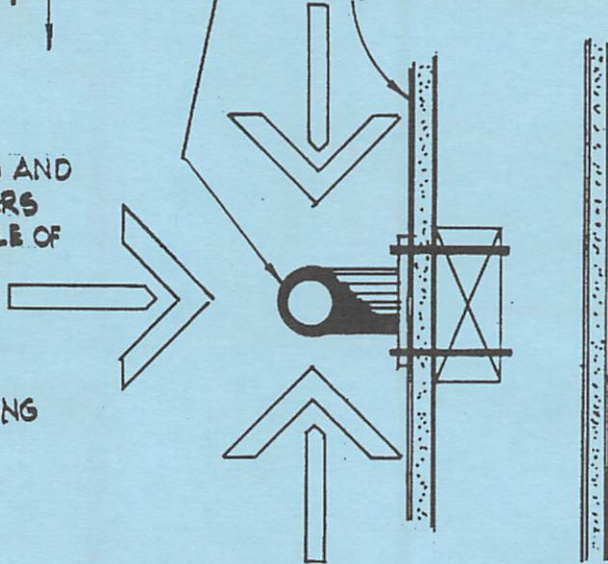


A GRAB BAR IN A RECESS - SIMILAR TO ILLUSTRATION 5.4.3.

11.5.4- GRAB BARS SHALL NOT ROTATE IN THEIR FITTINGS

11.5.5- GRAB BARS AND ADJACENT WALL SURFACES SHALL BE FREE OF ANY SHARP OR ABRASIVE ELEMENTS, GRAB BAR EDGES SHALL HAVE A 1/8" MINIMUM RADIUS.

11.5.3- ALL GRAB BARS AND THEIR FASTENERS SHALL BE CAPABLE OF SUPPORTING A 250 POUND LOAD APPLIED IN ANY DIRECTION ANYWHERE ALONG ITS LENGTH.



NOTE:
ALL GRAB BARS IN THIS CODE ARE SHOWN WITH SQUARE END RETURNS FOR DRAWING PURPOSES ONLY. IN ACTUAL PRACTICE, BAR ENDS SHALL BE ROUNDED OR HAVE A RADIUS RETURN.

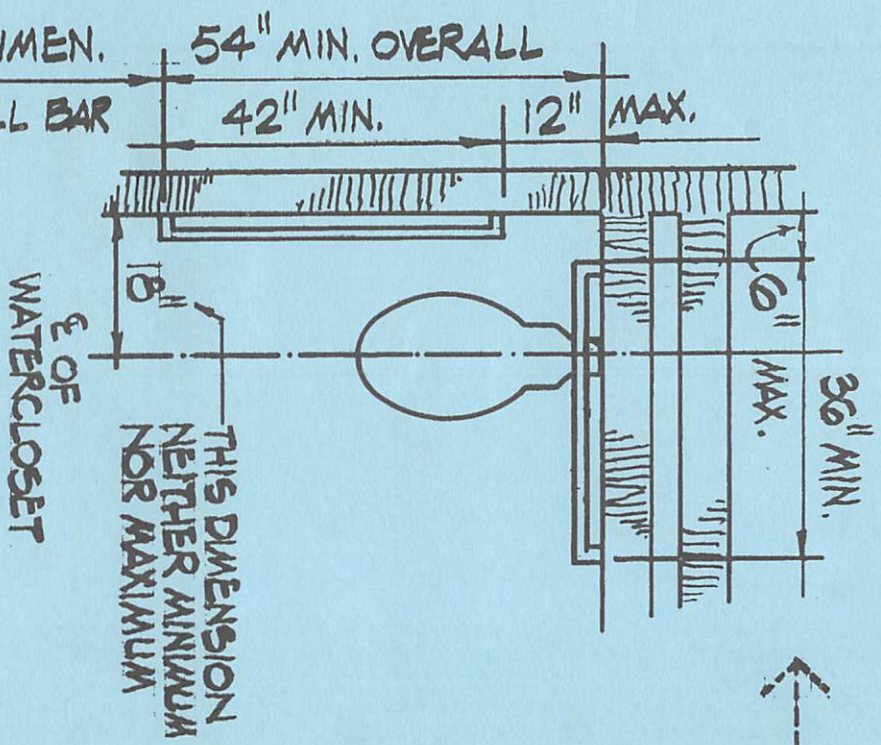
AS DRAWN



EXAMPLES OF APPROPRIATE GRAB BAR END TERMINATIONS

11.5-GRAB BARS

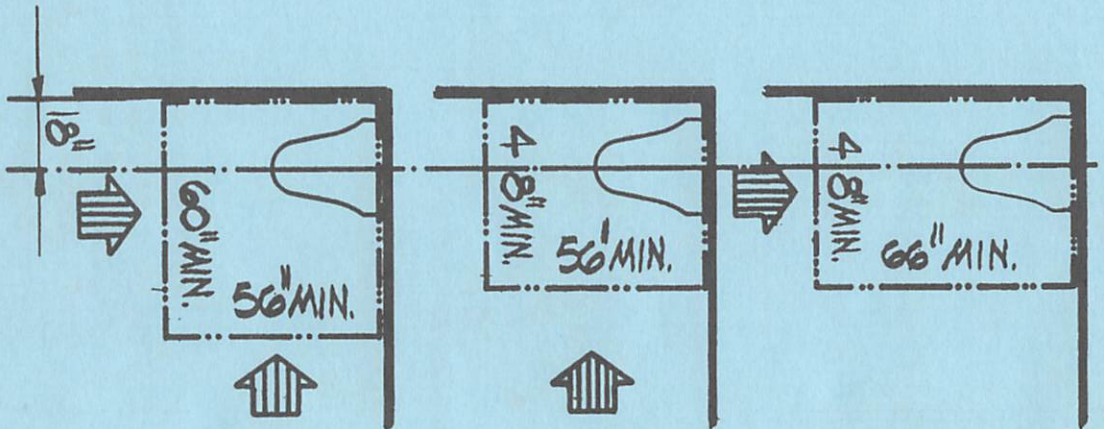
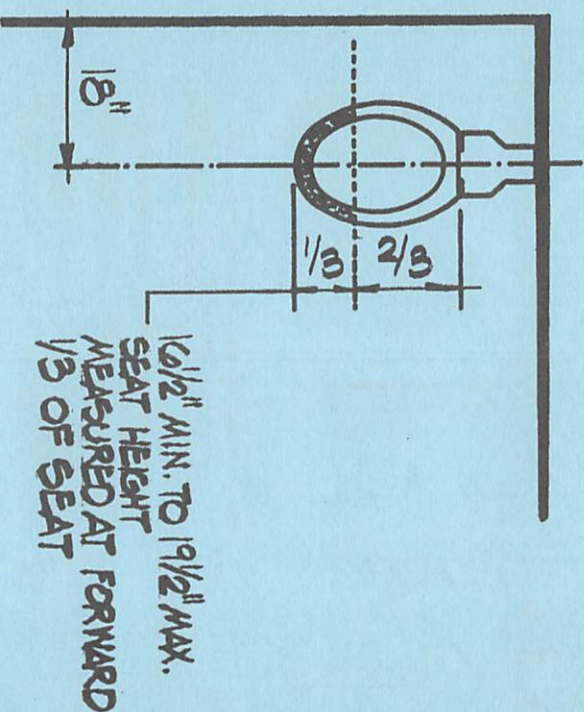
CROSS REFERENCE NOTE
 DELETED: BUILDING CODE
 COUNCIL JUNE 2001



CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT
 WATERCLOSET
 (ARROWS DENOTE
 DIRECTION OF APPROACH)

TYP. MIN. DIMEN.
 AT SIDEWALL BAR

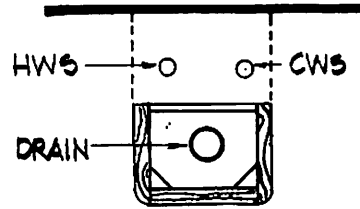
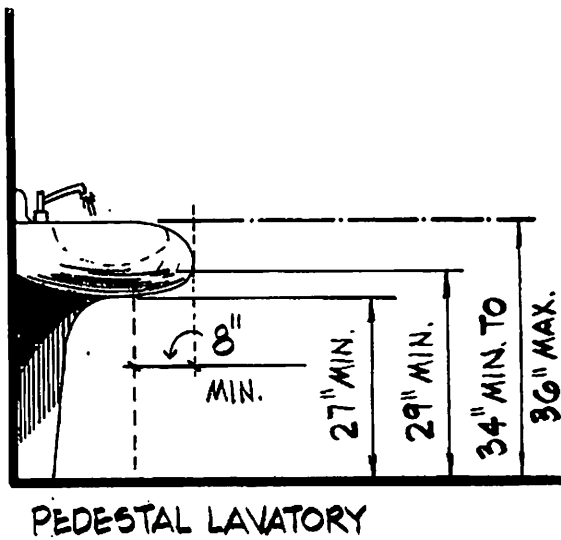
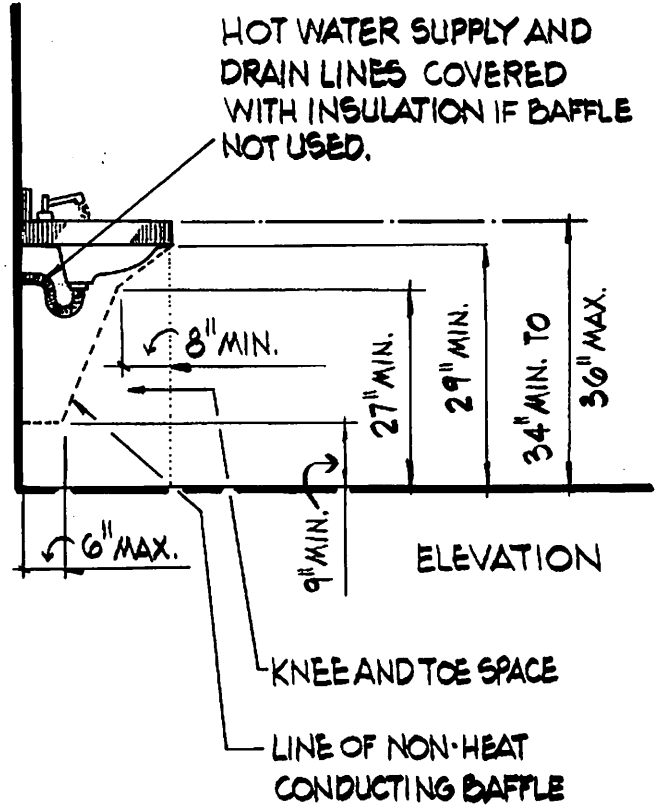
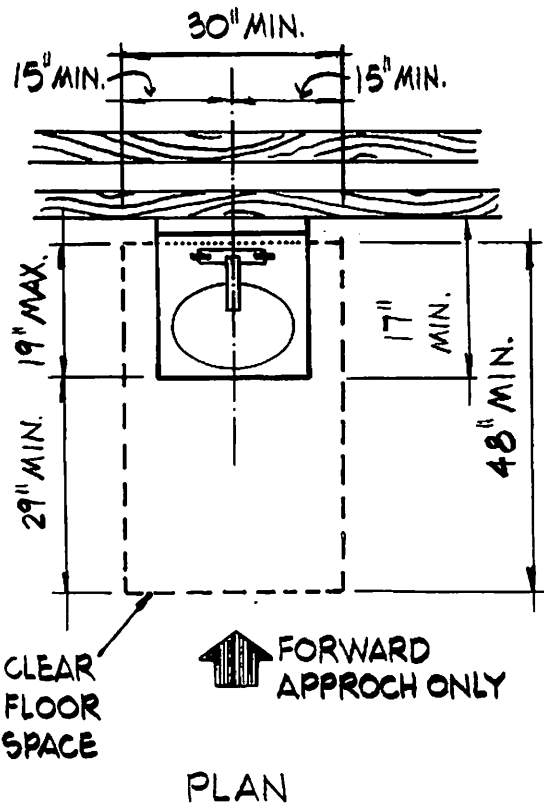
ADD OVERALL DIMENSION
 NOTE: BUILDING CODE
 COUNCIL JUNE 2001



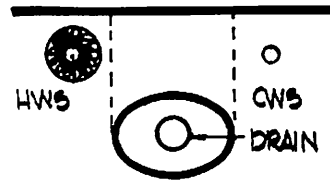
USE OF CONTOURED SEAT

11.6.1 - WATERCLOSET

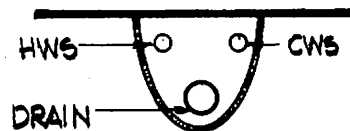
11.6 - TOILET FIXTURES



WATER SUPPLY SHIELDED-NO INSULATION REQUIRED



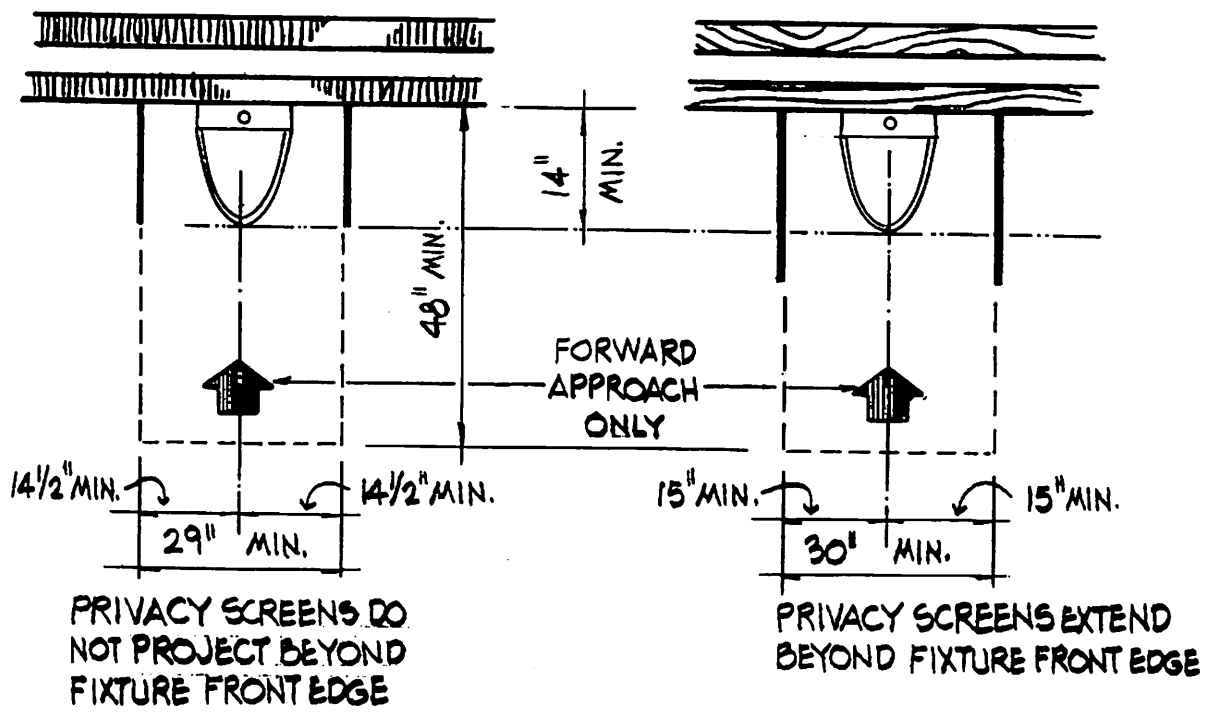
WATER SUPPLY NOT BEHIND PEDESTAL-HOT WATER SUPPLY LINE INSULATED



ALL PIPES WITHIN PEDESTAL-NO INSULATION REQUIRED

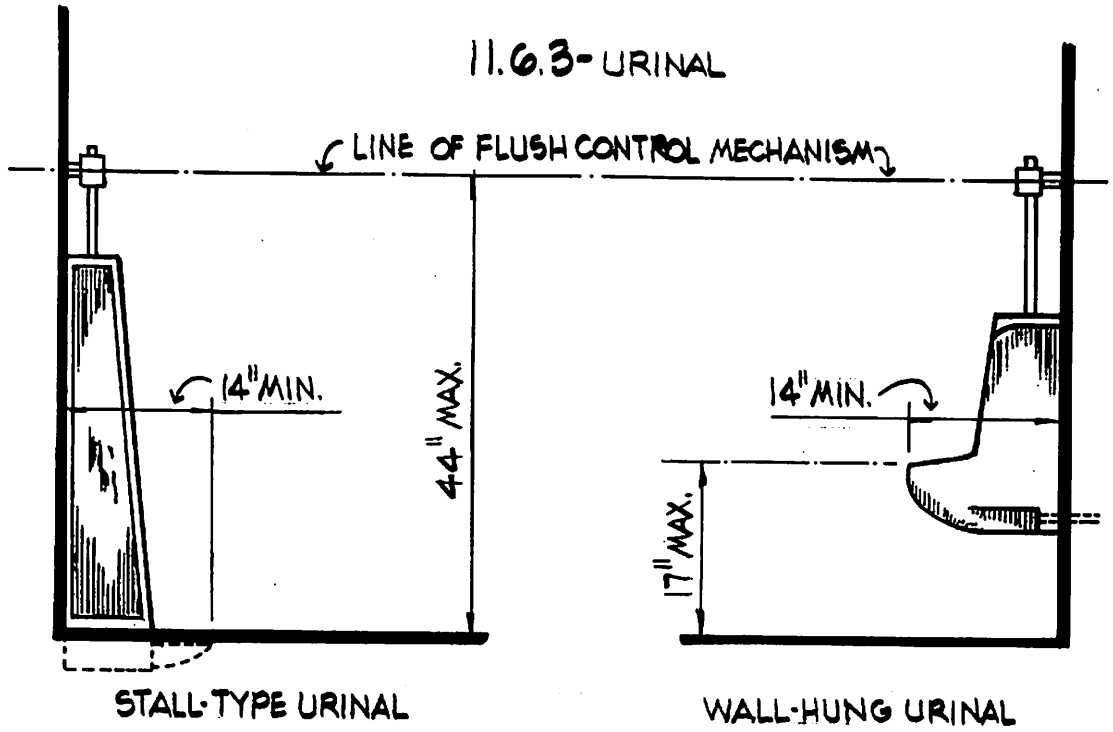
11.6.2-LAVATORY

11.6-TOILET FIXTURES



CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

11.6.3- URINAL



11.6- TOILET FIXTURES

11.7 TOILET ACCESSORIES

- * 11.7.1 If mirrors are provided at lavatories, then the mirror over the accessible lavatory shall be *placed with its bottom edge at 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum* above the finished floor. *A full length mirror may be used in place of one located over the lavatory provided that it is located within the toilet room on an accessible route and the mirror bottom edge is at 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the finished floor.*

Vol. I-C:
Bottom Of Mirror;
ADAAG: Bottom Of
Reflecting Surface;
Full Length Mirror:
Vol. I-C, 4.6.7(a)(1)

- * 11.7.2 *If shelves are provided at lavatories, then the shelf over the accessible lavatory shall have its top surface at 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the finished floor. If shelves are placed in a location other than over the lavatories, then a minimum of one accessible shelf installed at the prescribed height shall be located within the toilet room on an accessible route.*

Vol. I-C, 4.6.7(a)(2)

11.7.3 Towel bars, dispensers, disposals, etc. shall comply with the following:

- * (1) If toilet room accessories are provided, then a minimum of one of each type shall be located on an accessible route with the highest control, operating mechanism, and/or dispensing/disposal slot *at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum* above the finished floor. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable by a 5 pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum force.

Vol. I-C, 4.6.7(b);
ADAAG 4.22.7

- (2) Waste receptacles shall comply with the applicable requirements of 10.3 through 10.5. Waste receptacles shall not be permitted to obstruct the clear floor area, the clear floor space at fixtures and accessories, nor access to those elements.

- (3) If medicine cabinets are provided, then a minimum of one shall be located with a usable shelf at 44 inches

ADAAG 4.23.9

11.7.4 DIAPER CHANGING TABLES

N.C. House Bill 1108;
Council Vote 3/10/92;
Not In ADAAG

* 11.7.4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

11.7.4.1.1 If diaper changing tables are provided, then such accessory shall be located in each men's and women's toilet room/restroom where changing tables are to be installed. A minimum of one diaper changing table, or one section of a continuous changing table, in each toilet room shall comply with this Section.

Scope

(NOTE: If diaper changing tables are installed within men's and women's toilet rooms in buildings and facilities required to have a unisex/disabled restroom [see 11.9.1], then accessible diaper changing tables shall also be provided within the unisex toilet room.)

11.7.4.2 LOCATION, CHANGING TABLE SIZE, AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

Accessible
Elements On
Access. Route

* 11.7.4.2.1 *Diaper changing tables shall be located on an accessible route.*

* 11.7.4.2.2 *Changing table placement shall comply with all of the following:*

(1) *No changing table shall be placed within any watercloset stall;*

(2) *Changing tables shall be located clear of any path leading to watercloset stalls;*

(3) *No part of a changing table and its clear floor space shall overhang or overlap the clear floor area required by 11.3.1;*

Safety And
Clear Access

(4) *No water supply or drain lines shall be placed under any changing table.*

* 11.7.4.2.3 *A built-in changing table shall have a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum length and a depth of 20 inches (510 mm) minimum to 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The finished top surface shall be 34 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (865 mm to 915 mm) above the finished floor.*

From
ADAAG 4.2.5
And Figure 5(b)

* 11.7.4.2.4 *Accessible diaper changing tables shall have a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space oriented for a forward approach only. The required clear floor space shall extend 19 inches (485 mm) maximum under the changing table measured from the table forward edge. Clear knee space shall be 27 inches (685 mm) minimum from the finished floor to the lowest point of the table underside.*

From:
Vol. I-C, 7.2(b);
ADAAG 4.32.3

11.7.4.3 PREFABRICATED/PREMOLDED CHANGING TABLES

* 11.7.4.3.2 *A prefabricated or premolded changing table/station may be used provided that all of the following conditions are satisfied:*

(1) *Placement of the unit complies with 11.7.4.2.1 and 11.7.4.2.2;*

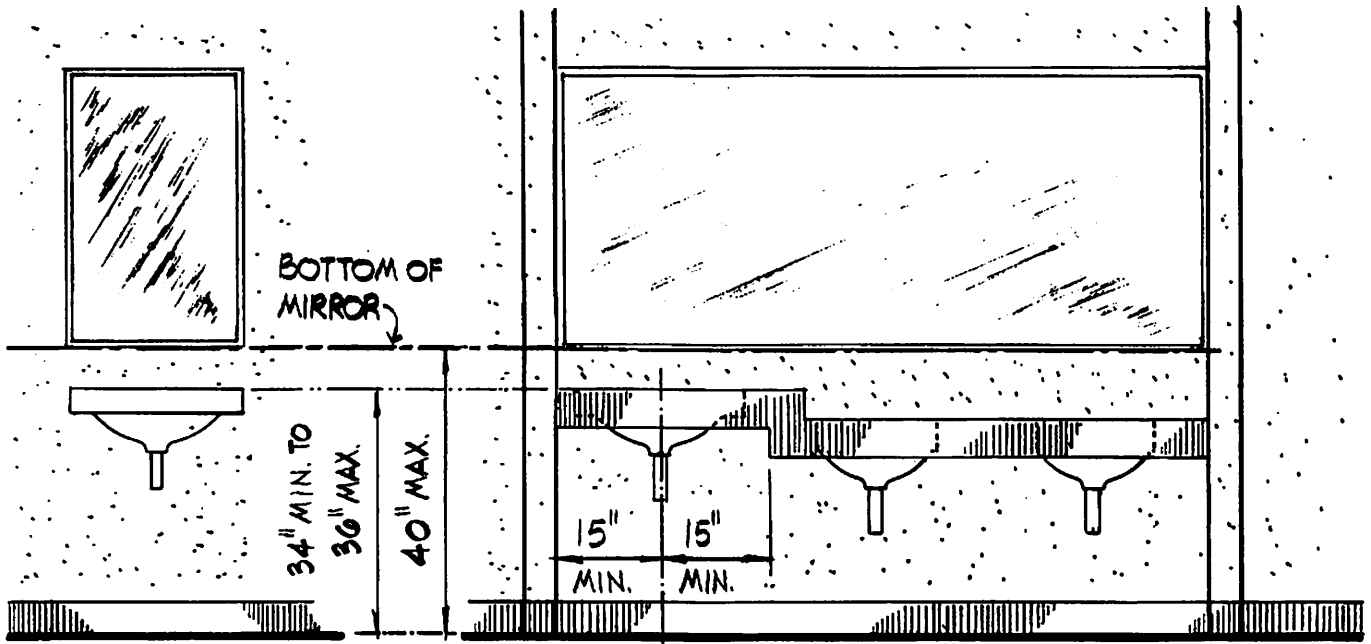
(2) *The pull handle or strap is 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor. The use of a narrow finger/hand slot as a pull handle shall be prohibited;*

(3) *Clear floor space/knee clearance complies with 11.7.4.2.4; and*

(4) *The top of the bed in the horizontal position shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

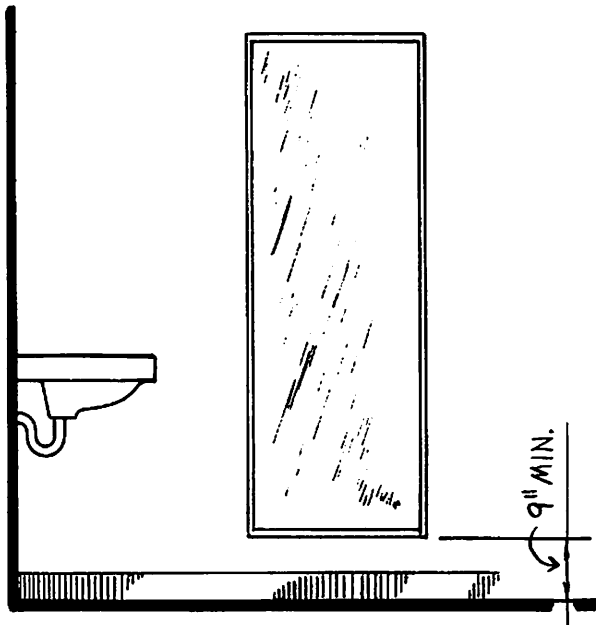
Derived From:
Vol. I-C, ADAAG,
And Product
Catalogs

11.7.4.4 Deleted



INDIVIDUAL MIRROR

CONTINUOUS MIRROR

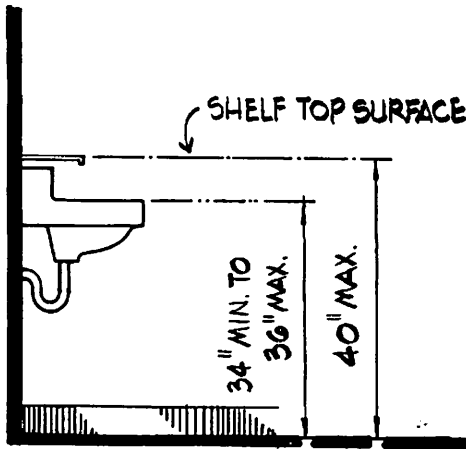


A FULL LENGTH MIRROR MAY BE USED IN PLACE OF ONE LOCATED OVER A LAVATORY PROVIDED:

1. IT IS LOCATED WITHIN THE TOILET ROOM ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE; AND
2. THE BOTTOM EDGE IS 9" MIN. ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR.

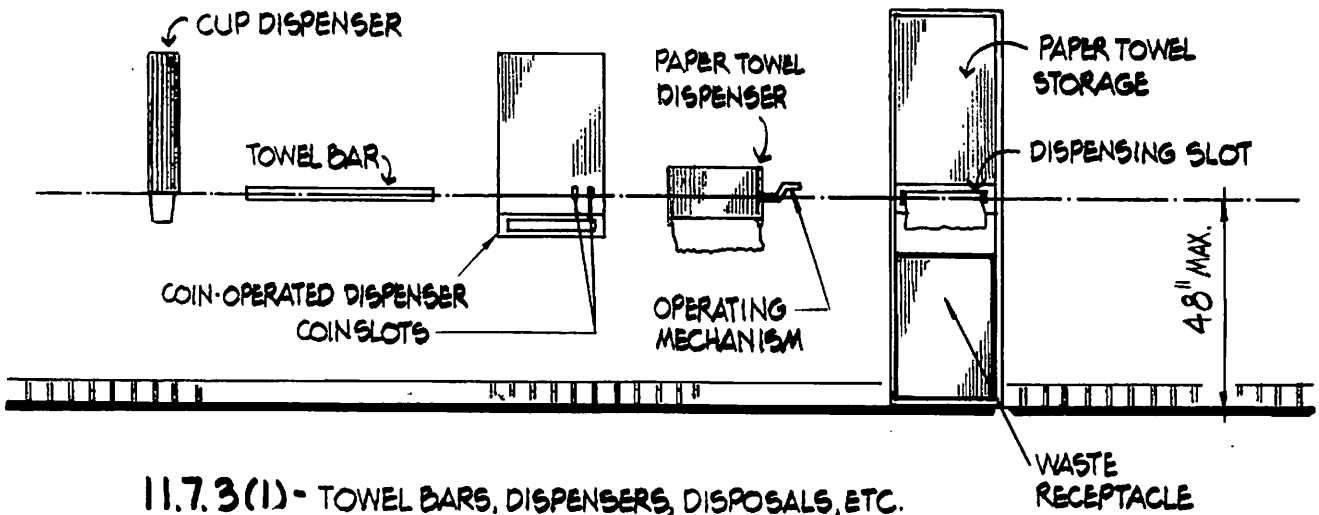
11.7.1- MIRRORS

11.7- TOILET ACCESSORIES

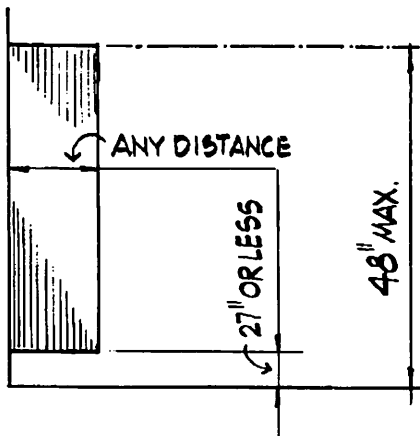


IF SHELVES ARE PLACED IN A LOCATION OTHER THAN OVER THE LAVATORIES, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE ACCESSIBLE SHELF AT THE HEIGHT SHOWN SHALL BE LOCATED WITHIN THE TOILET ROOM ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.

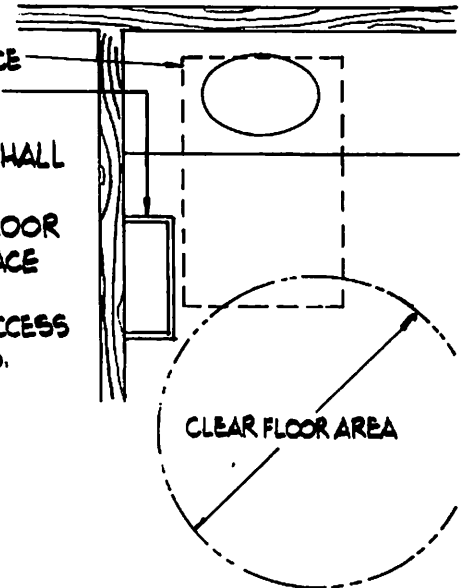
11.7.2- SHELVES



11.7.3(1)- TOWEL BARS, DISPENSERS, DISPOSALS, ETC.

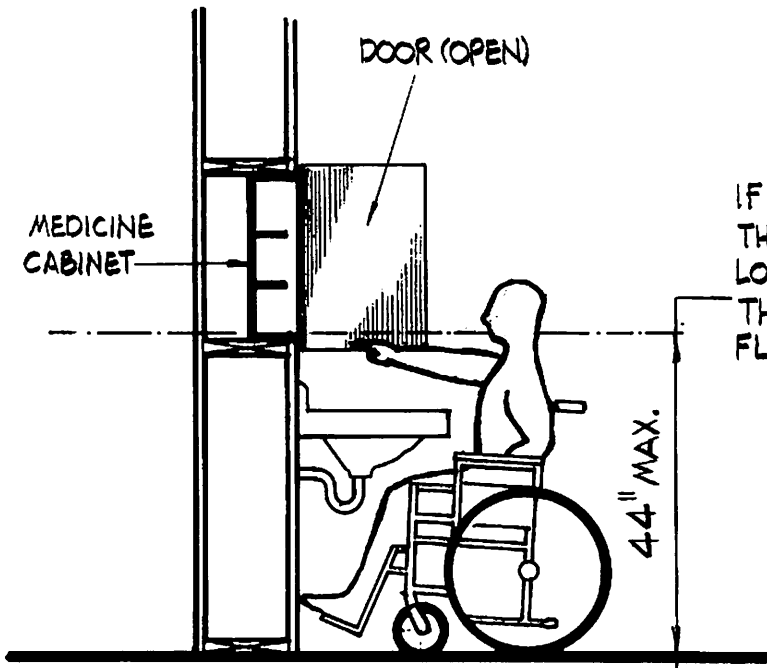


WASTE RECEPTACLES SHALL NOT BE PERMITTED TO OBSTRUCT THE CLEAR FLOOR AREA, CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT FIXTURES AND ACCESSORIES, NOR ACCESS TO THOSE ELEMENTS.



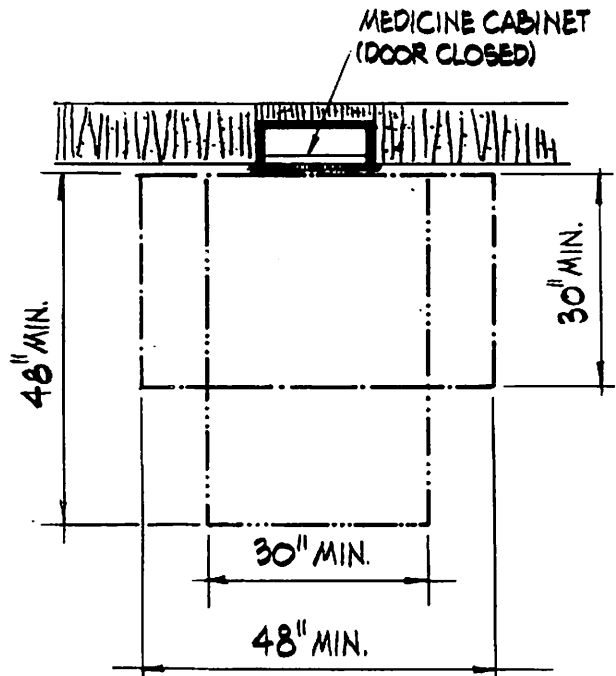
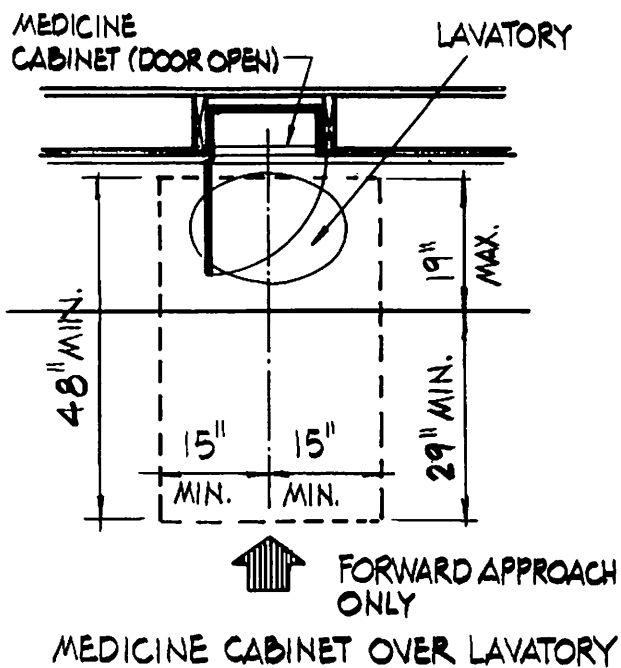
11.7.3(2)- WASTE RECEPTACLES

11.7- TOILET ACCESSORIES



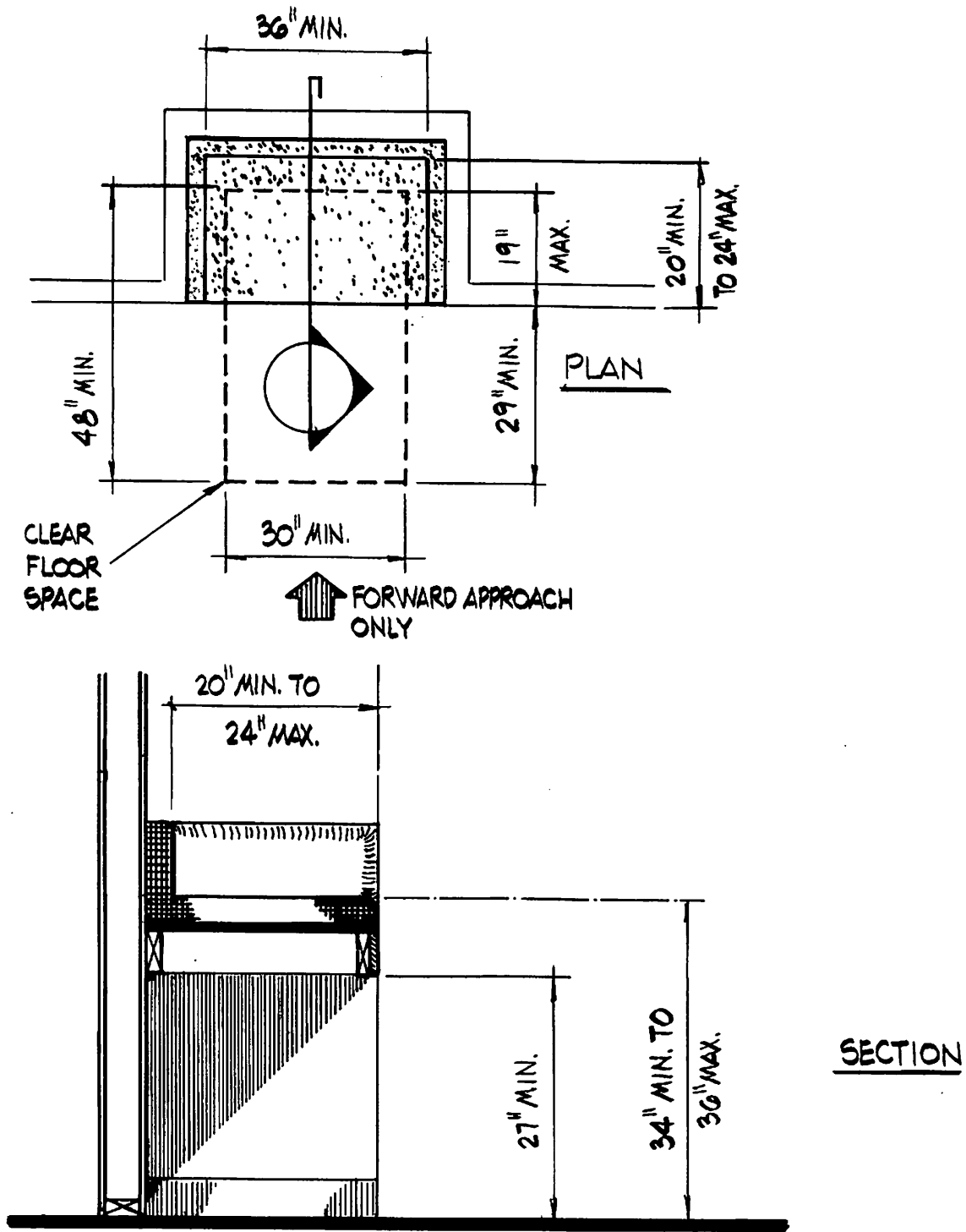
IF MEDICINE CABINETS ARE PROVIDED, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE SHALL BE LOCATED WITH A USABLE SHELF AT THIS HEIGHT ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR.

11.7.3(3)- MEDICINE CABINETS



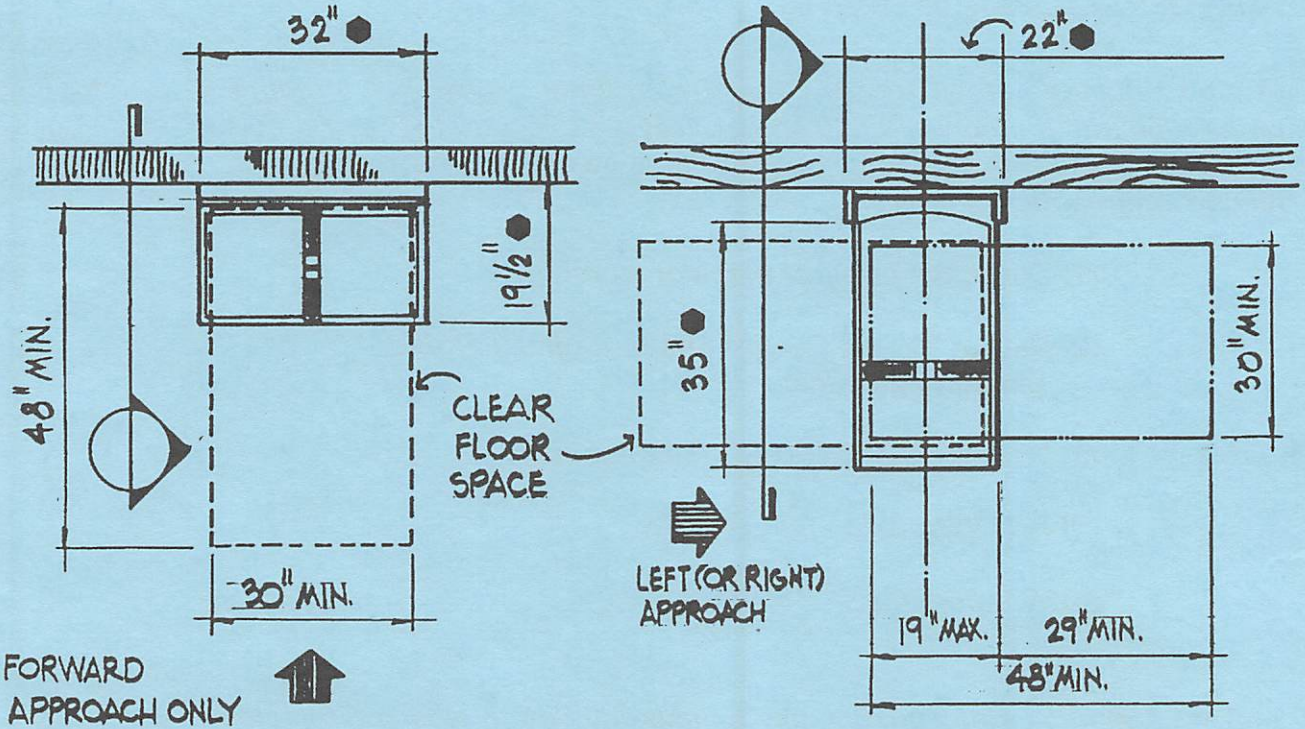
IF NO ELEMENTS ARE LOCATED BENEATH A MEDICINE CABINET, THEN EITHER A FORWARD OR SIDE APPROACH MAY BE USED. THE 44" MAX. HEIGHT TO ONE SHELF SHALL APPLY.

11.7- TOILET ACCESSORIES

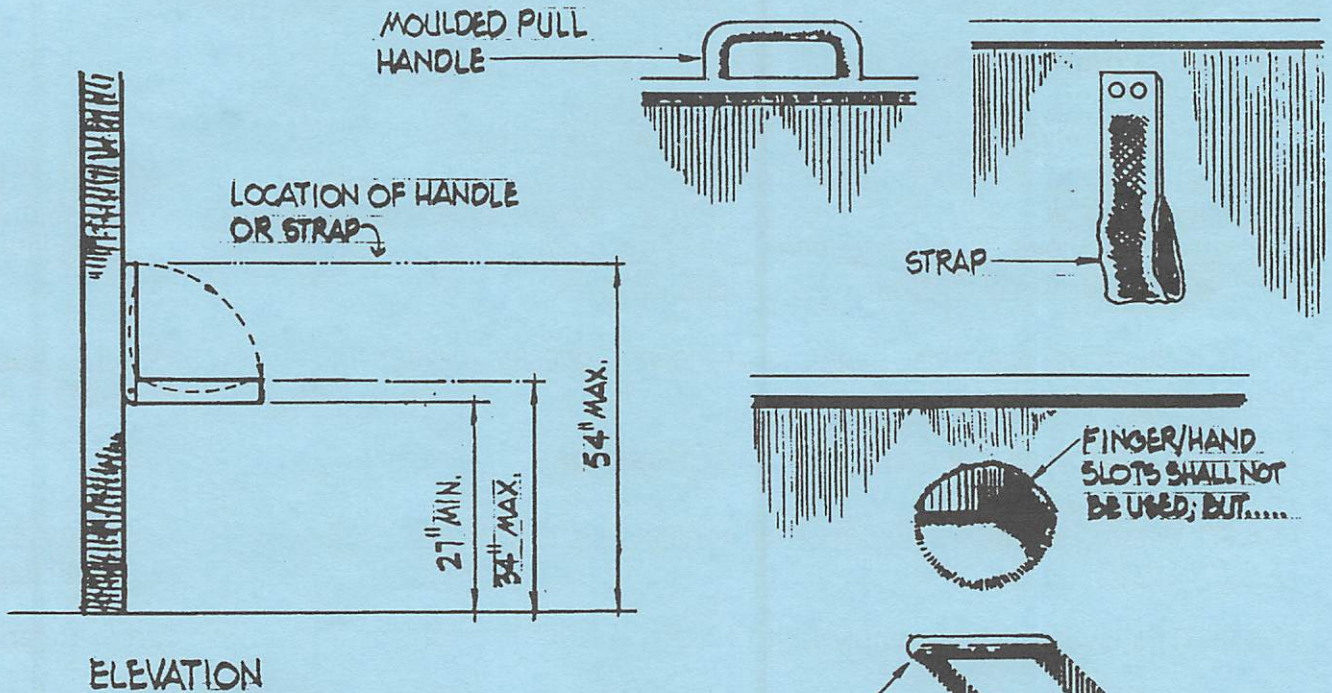


11.7.4.2.3 AND 11.7.4.2.4- FIELD-BUILT DIAPER CHANGING TABLE

11.7.4- DIAPER CHANGING TABLES



● AVERAGE DIMENSIONS. ACTUAL DIMENSIONS MAY VARY WITH SPECIFIED UNIT.



11.7.4.3- PREFABRICATED/PREMOLDED CHANGING TABLES

IF A PULL HANDLE (OR STRAP) IS APPLIED, THEN THIS UNIT MAY BE USED.

11.8 INDIVIDUAL ACCESSIBLE TOILETS

* 11.8.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

* 11.8.1.1 When the gross area of a building or tenant space in a building of the type noted below is 2,500 square feet (232.25 square meters) and less, one toilet room with lockable door may be used by both male and female occupants:

NC Plumbing
Code, Table
403.4, Note 4

- (1) Churches or other place of worship;
- (2) Barber Shops, Beauty Shops, Coin Operated Laundries, Offices;
- (3) Foundries and Heavy Manufacturing;
- (4) Retail Stores;
- (5) Warehouses.

* 11.8.1.2 A single unisex facility may be used by both males and females when the classroom area served is 1,200 square feet (112 square meters) or less and is either used for kindergarten through 2 or is a modular classroom used for any grade level. Unisex facilities may be provided for teacher/staff if their total occupant load within 200 feet (61 m) is 15 or less.

NC Plumbing
Code 403.3.2.1

11.8.2 ACCESSIBLE TOILET ROOM SIZES

11.8.2.1 The toilet room shall have an internal clear floor area in compliance with 11.3.1 and clear floor spaces at each fixture. (For fixture clear floor space see: 11.6.1-Watercloset; 11.6.2-Lavatory.) Fixture clear floor spaces may overlap or be independent of each other. (For clarification, refer to the illustrations for this Section.)

Vol. I-C, 11.3.1;
ADAAG 4.22.3
And Figure 3

11.8.2.2 The toilet room entry door may swing in or out. An inswing door shall comply with 11.3.2.2.

Vol. I-C, 11.3.2.2;
FAQ, Question #10

11.8.3 FIXTURES, GRAB BARS, AND ACCESSORIES

11.8.3.1 Watercloset and grab bars shall comply with 11.6.1, 11.4.1(4), 11.4.1(5) and 11.5.

ADAAG 4.1.6,
4.17 And Fig. 28

11.8.3.2 The lavatory shall comply with 11.6.2.

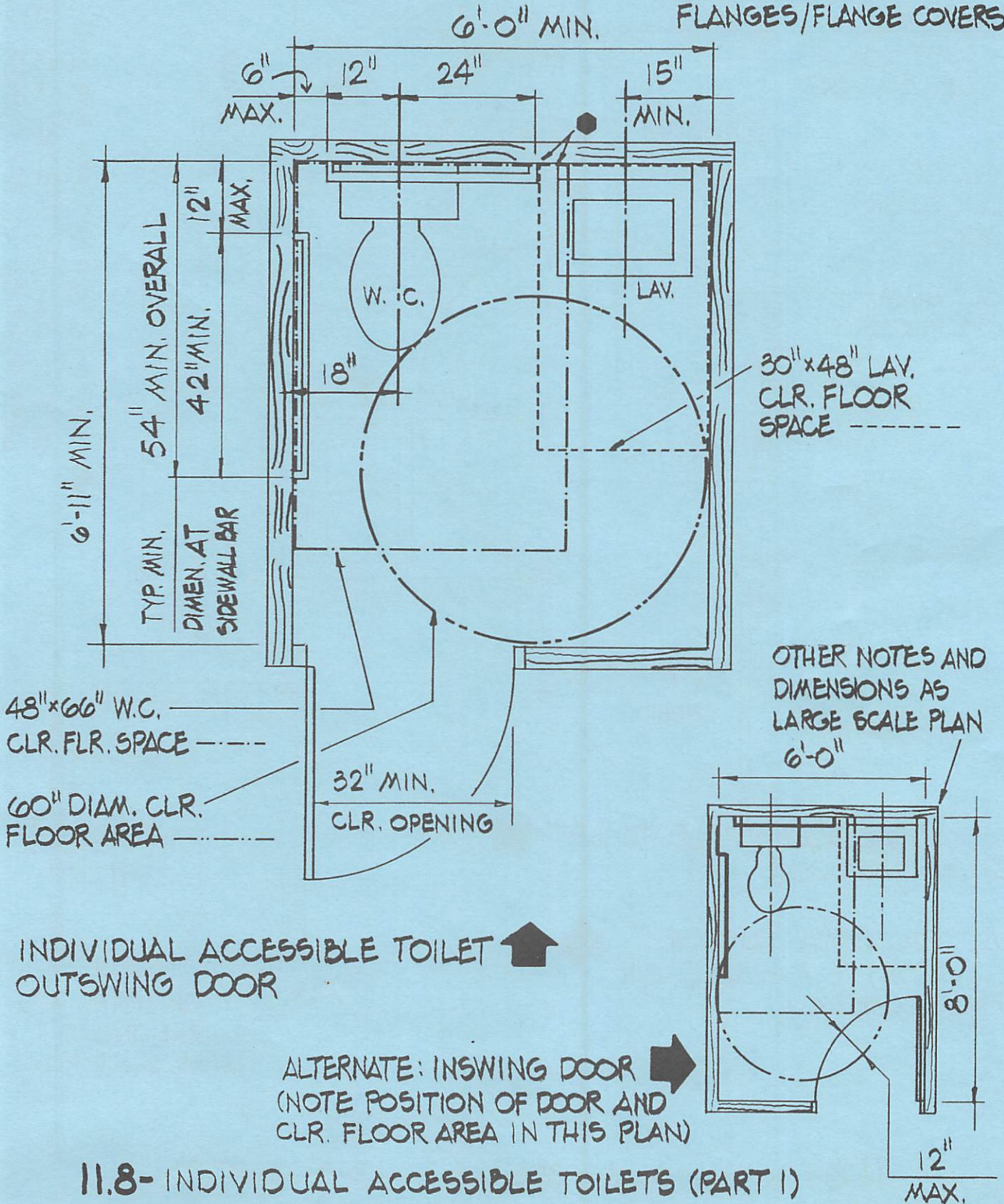
Cross-Reference

11.8.3.3 Toilet accessories shall comply with 11.7.

Cross-Reference

NEW ILLUSTRATION TO REPLACE ORIGINAL: BLDG CODE COUNCIL
 JUNE 2001 (DWG. DATE - 13 NOV 2001)

● DENOTES 3/2"-4" GAP BETWEEN BAR AND LAV. BACK SPLASH TO ACCOMMODATE BAR FLANGES/FLANGE COVERS



11.9 UNISEX/DISABLED RESTROOMS

* 11.9.1 *In addition to the number of fixtures required by the Plumbing Code, one unisex restroom having a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum clear internal floor area and fixtures usable by persons with disabilities shall be provided in the following areas:*

NC Legislature;
Council Vote 9/15/92

(1) Restroom facilities at highway rest areas;

(2) Shopping malls and exhibitions facilities having 300,000 square feet (27,870 square meters) or more of gross area;

Plumbing Code 403.2.3

(3) Auditoriums, stadiums, and coliseums having a capacity of 20,000 or more seats; and

(4) Airport terminals having 20 or more loading gates.

(NOTE: For buildings with an elevator the unisex restroom may be located on any level. In buildings without an elevator, the unisex restroom shall be located on the first level accessible from finished grade. Signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the unisex restroom shall be provided at all other toilet rooms or areas. Signage identifying the unisex restroom shall comply with 18.1.1.)

11.9.2 Waterclosets shall comply with 11.6.1.

Cross-Reference

11.9.3 Lavatories shall comply with 11.6.2.

Cross-Reference

11.9.4 Grab bars shall comply with 11.5. Sidewall and rear wall bar lengths and mounting height shall comply with 11.4.1(4) and 11.4.1(5), respectively.

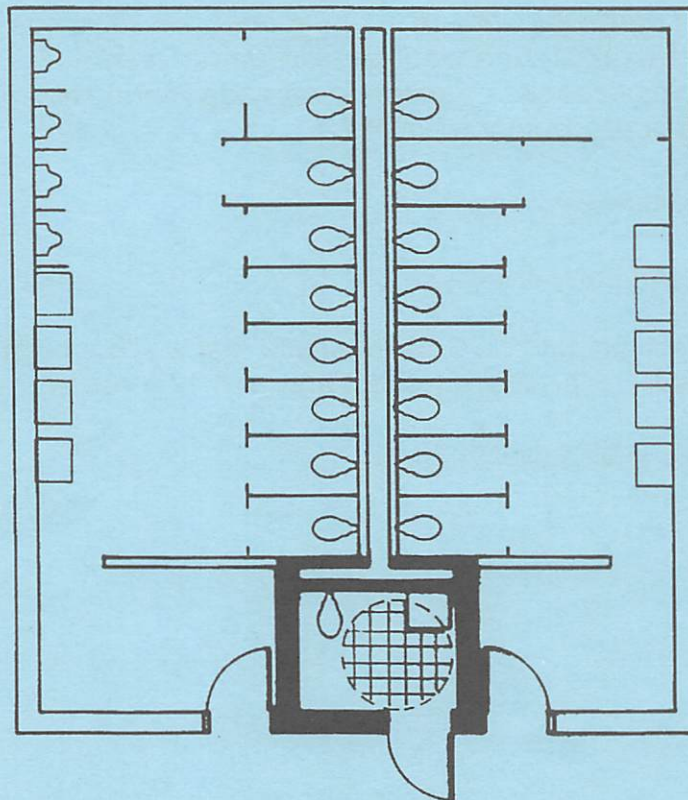
Cross-Reference

11.9.5 Toilet accessories shall comply with 11.7.

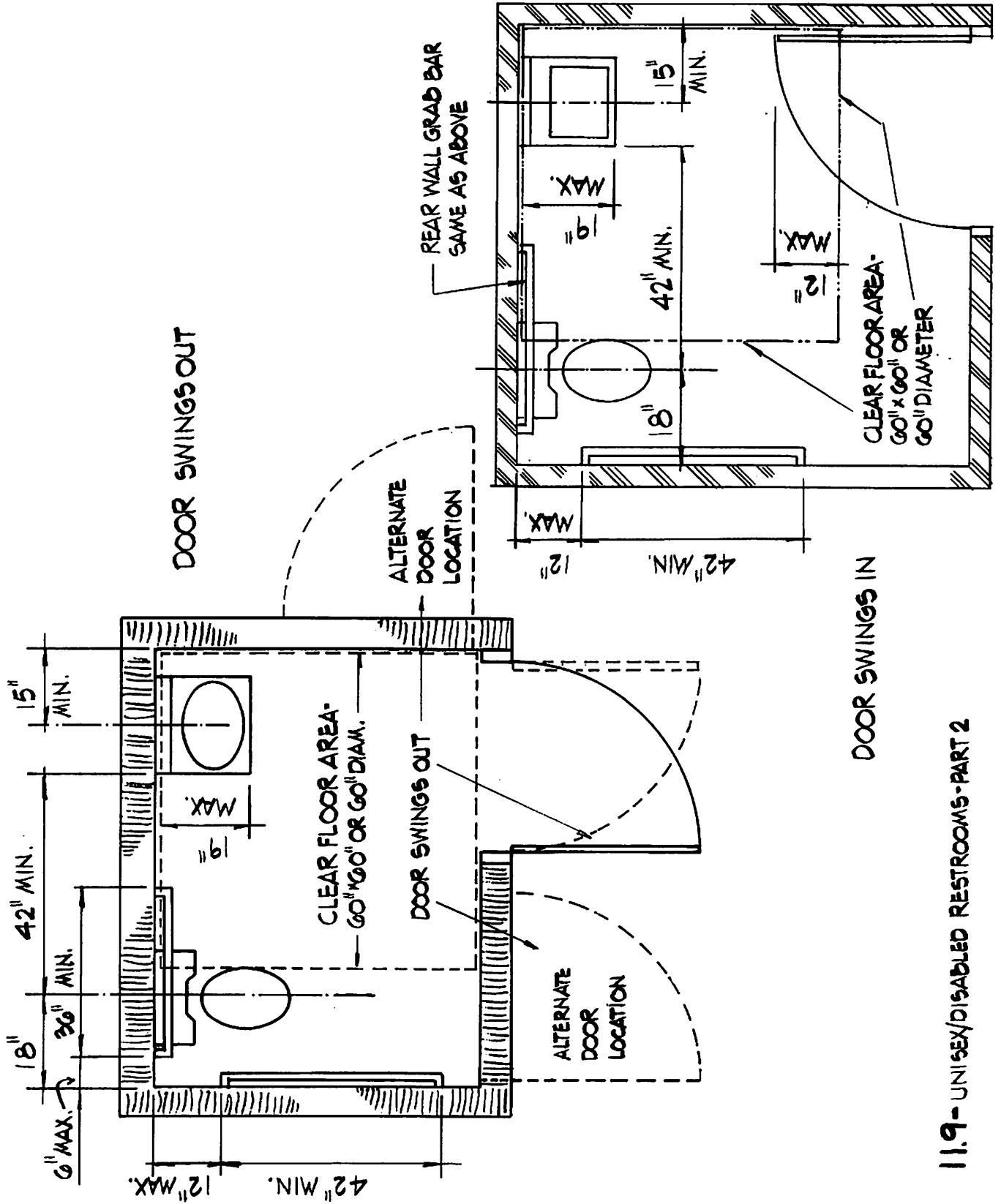
Cross-Reference

11.9.1- IN ADDITION TO THE NUMBER OF FIXTURES REQUIRED BY VOLUME II (THE PLUMBING CODE), ONE UNISEX RESTROOM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN THE FOLLOWING AREAS:

1. RESTROOM FACILITIES AT HIGHWAY REST AREAS;
2. SHOPPING MALLS AND EXHIBITION FACILITIES HAVING 300,000 S.F. OR MORE OF GROSS AREA;
3. AUDITORIUMS, STADIUMS, AND COLISEUMS HAVING 20,000 OR MORE SEATS; AND
4. AIRPORT TERMINALS HAVING 20 OR MORE GATES.
(SEE, ALSO, THE TEXT FOR THE NOTE AT THE END OF THIS PARAGRAPH.)



11.9- UNISEX/DISABLED RESTROOMS-PART I



11.9 - UNISEX/DISABLED RESTROOMS - PART 2

11.10 PORTABLE TOILETS OR BATHING UNITS

11.10.1 If single user portable toilets or bathing units are clustered at a single location, then five percent (5%), or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), of the toilet or bathing units shall comply with this Chapter and/or Chapter 12 at each cluster whenever typical inaccessible units are provided. The accessible unit(s) shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility placed in a readily visible location.

ADAAG 4.1.2(6)

11.10.2 Access to the accessible unit(s) shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapters 3, 4 or 5.

Cross-Reference

11.11 ACCESSIBLE SINKS

*** (NOTE: A lavatory [11.6.2] is a fixed bowl or basin with running water and a drain and is used in toilet rooms for washing the face and hands. A sink is a basin with running water and a drain used in a kitchen, pantry, or employee lunch room for washing elements used in food preparation or cleaning utensils.)**

11.11.1 If sinks are provided, then a minimum of one such sink in each public or common use location shall comply with this Section.

ADAAG 4.24.1

11.11.2 For additional requirements pertaining to sinks within covered multi-family dwellings, see 30.5.4.3.

Cross-Reference

11.11.3 Accessible sinks shall comply with the following:

*** (1) *The height of the rim or finished counter surface shall comply with 11.6.2(1);***

Cross-Reference

*** (2) Knee clearance at the forward end of the sink apron shall be *29 inches (735 mm) minimum* from the underside of the apron to the finished floor;**

**ADAAG 4.24.3 = 27" Min.
Vol. I-C: 29" Min. (Lav's);**

(3) Clear floor space shall comply with 11.6.2(3);

ADAAG 4.24.5

(4) The sink shall extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum from the wall or partition to the most forward edge of the fixture. Bowl depth shall be 6-1/2 inches (165 mm) maximum.

ADAAG Fig. 32;

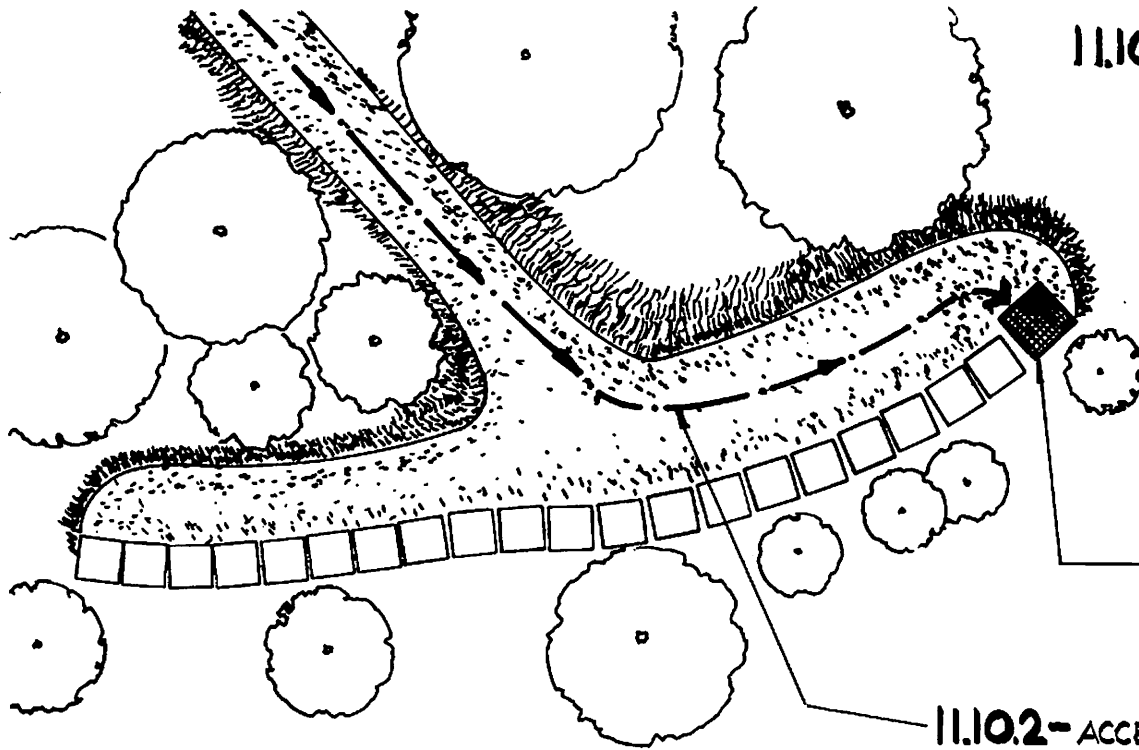
ADAAG 4.24.4

(5) Hot water supply and drain lines shall be protected in compliance with 11.6.2(5).

ADAAG 4.24.6

(6) Faucets shall comply with 11.6.2(6).

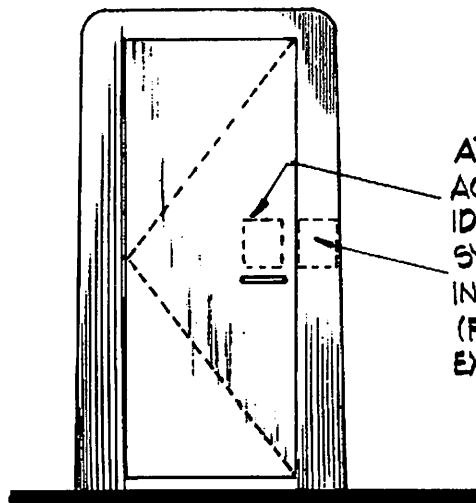
ADAAG 4.24.7



11.10.1- IF SINGLE USER PORTABLE TOILETS OR BATHING UNITS ARE CLUSTERED AT A SINGLE LOCATION, THEN 5%, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER), OF THE TOILET OR BATHING UNITS SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS CHAPTER AND/OR CHAPTER 12 AT EACH CLUSTER WHENEVER TYPICAL INACCESSIBLE UNITS ARE PROVIDED.

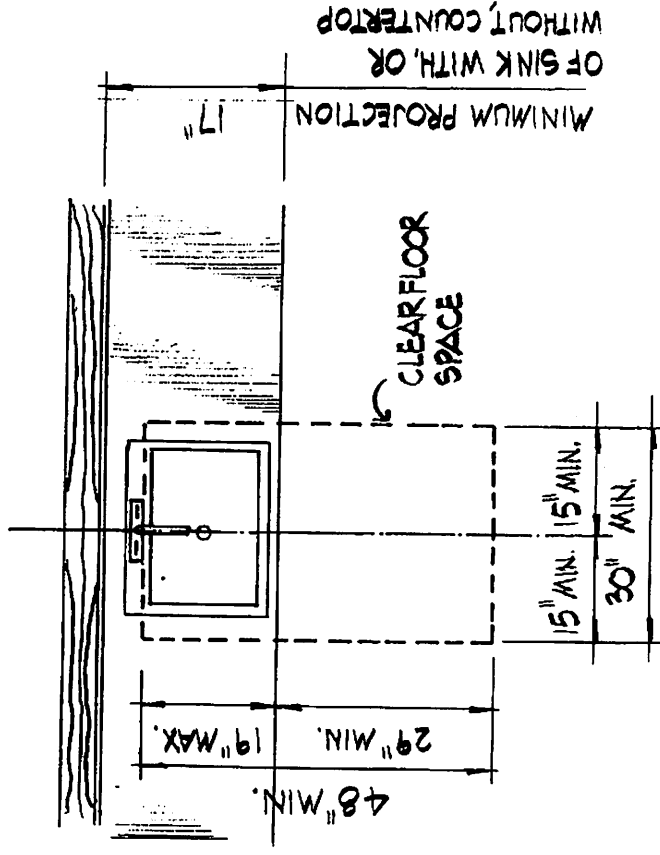
EXAMPLE: 21 UNITS IN THIS CLUSTER;
 $.05 \times 21 = 1.05$
 MINIMUM 1 ACCESSIBLE UNIT

11.10.2- ACCESS TO THE ACCESSIBLE UNIT(S) SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF CHAPTERS 3, 4, OR 5.



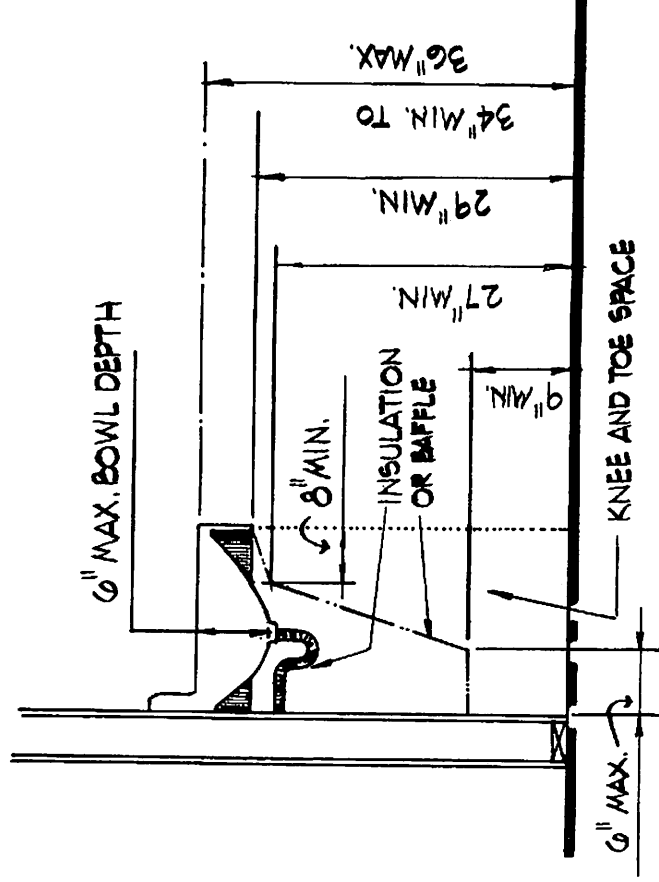
AT EITHER PLACE:
 ACCESSIBLE UNITS SHALL BE IDENTIFIED BY THE INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY PLACED IN A READILY VISIBLE LOCATION.
 (FOR THE SYMBOL SEE, FOR EXAMPLE, 4.11.5.)

11.10- PORTABLE TOILETS OR BATHING UNITS



FORWARD APPROACH ONLY

11.11.3-ACCESSIBLE SINKS
 (SEE ALSO, 11.11.1 AND 11.11.2.)



11.11- ACCESSIBLE SINKS

**CHAPTER 12
BATHROOMS, BATHING FACILITIES AND
SHOWER ROOMS**

12.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

12.1.1 On every floor and each site where showers or bathtubs are provided, each public or common use bathing facility shall have a minimum of one shower stall or one bathtub that complies with this Chapter. (See, also, 1.2.11.) **ADAAG 4.1.3(11);
4.1.2(6);
"Min. Of One" 4.23.8**

12.1.1.1 For roll-in showers in transient lodging, see 29.4.7.2 and 29.4.7.3. **ADAAG 4.21.2**

12.1.2 Other bathing facilities that are provided for the use of occupants of specific spaces (e.g., a private shower room for the occupant of a private office) shall be adaptable to be accessible. **ADAAG 4.1.3(11)**

12.1.3 All bathing room entry doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7. The swing of the entry door may overlap the clear floor area by 12 inches (305 mm) maximum but shall not overlap the clear floor space required at any fixture or accessory. **ADAAG 4.23.2;
FAQ, Question 10**

***12.1.3.1** *Doors may be used only with the types of roll-in showers specified in 12.3.2 or 29.4.7.3 and shall comply with Chapter 7. The door may be either a swing, horizontal sliding, or folding type. If a swing door is used, then it shall swing out.* **Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(a)(3)**

***12.1.3.2** *If the door to the shower room has translucent or transparent glazing, then the glazing shall be fiberglass, tempered glass or polycarbonate sheet. Glazed doors shall comply with 7.4.1 or 7.4.2, as applicable.* **Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(a)(4)**

12.1.4 Grab bars shall comply with 11.5. **Cross-Reference**

***12.1.5** *Shower enclosures, regardless of size or type, shall have a non-slip finished floor surface. The use of applied, self-adhesive strips shall be prohibited.* **Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(a)(5)**

12.1.6 Transfer-type showers (12.2) may have a maximum 1/2 inch (13 mm) high curb or threshold for water retention. Roll-in showers (12.3 and 29.4.7.3) shall not have a curb or threshold. **ADAAG 4.21.7;
Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(a)(6)-Sim.**

12.1.7 Shower enclosures and the configuration of the stall/room itself shall not obstruct the use of any grab bars, shower controls, shower accessories, nor transfer on, or off, the seat. **ADAAG 4.21.8**

12.1.8 Accessible bathing facilities shall be on an accessible route. All accessible bath/shower rooms shall have a clear floor area that complies with 11.3.1. The clear floor space in front of each accessible fixture, the accessible route to that fixture, and the clear floor area may overlap.

ADAAG 4.23.1;
ADAAG 4.23.3

***12.1.9 Pre-fabricated or pre-manufactured shower/bathtub enclosures may be used provided they conform to the requirements of this Code or it is certified in writing that they comply with one or more of the following: the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines-1991; The Uniform Federal Accessibility Standard-1988; or A.N.S.I. A117.1-1992.**

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(a)(8)

12.1.10 Medicine cabinets (if provided) shall comply with 11.7.3(3).

ADAAG 4.23.9

12.2 TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER (36 INCHES BY 36 INCHES [915 MM BY 915 MM])

12.2.1 The clear floor space outside the shower enclosure shall be a minimum 36 inches wide by 48 inches long (915 mm by 1220 mm) with the long dimension parallel to the open face of the fixture.

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(b)(2);
ADAAG Fig. 35(a)

12.2.2 The seat shall be located opposite the control wall and shall comply with the following:

(1) It shall extend the full depth of the stall and have a 23 inches (580 mm) maximum projection located at the far end of the seat (refer to the illustration for all relevant dimensions). Seats shall have rounded corners (the use of 90 degree, or sharp corners, is not permitted);

*** (2) The top of the seat shall be 17 inches minimum to 19 inches maximum (430 mm to 485 mm) above the finished bathroom floor and shall be capable of supporting a 250 pound (113 Kg) minimum load;**

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(b)(4);
ADAAG 4.21.3,
Fig. 36

*** (3) The seat may be either built-up, applied, or molded into the shower wall.**

***12.2.3 Controls and soap tray shall be located opposite the seat at 38 inches minimum to 48 inches maximum (965 mm to 1220 mm) above the finished bathroom floor. The water control shall be lever operated only and shall not require a force greater than five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) for operation.**

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(a)(6),
4.6.8(a)(7);
ADAAG 4.21.5

12.2.4 A continuous grab bar shall be attached to the control wall and shall return 18 inches (460 mm) along the back wall. The horizontal centerline shall be 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished bathroom floor.

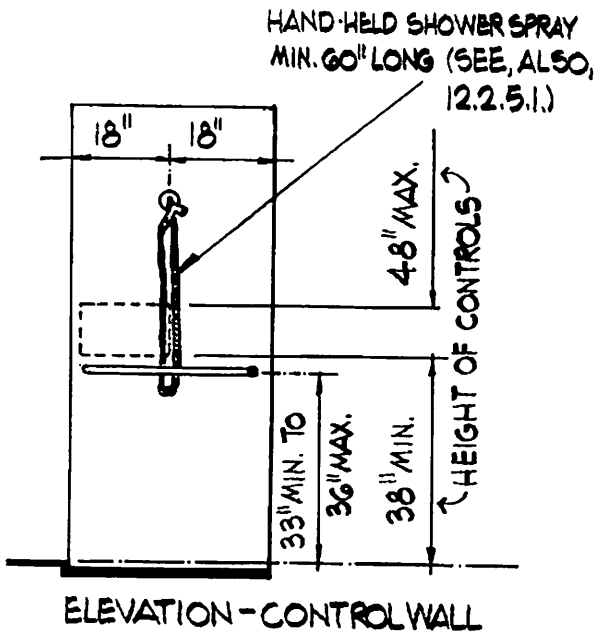
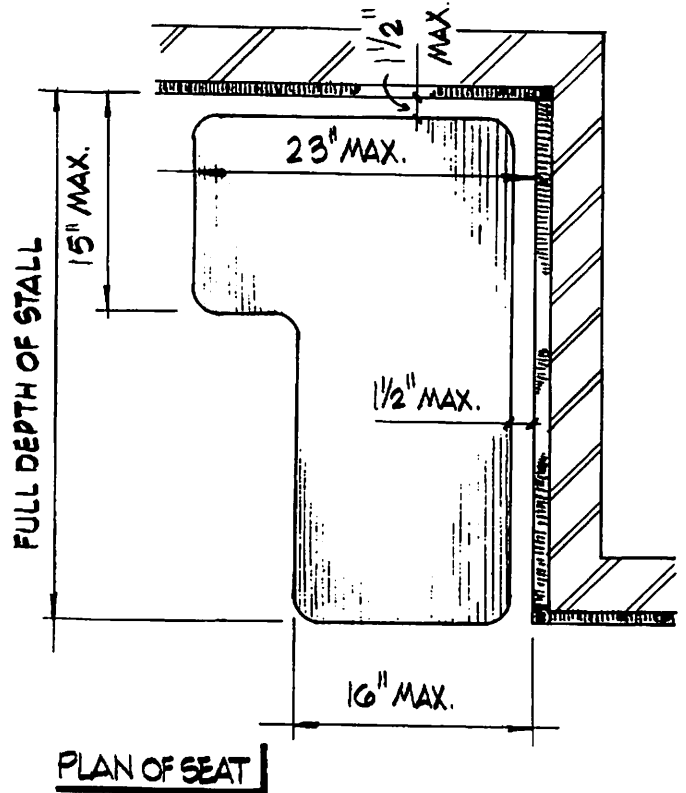
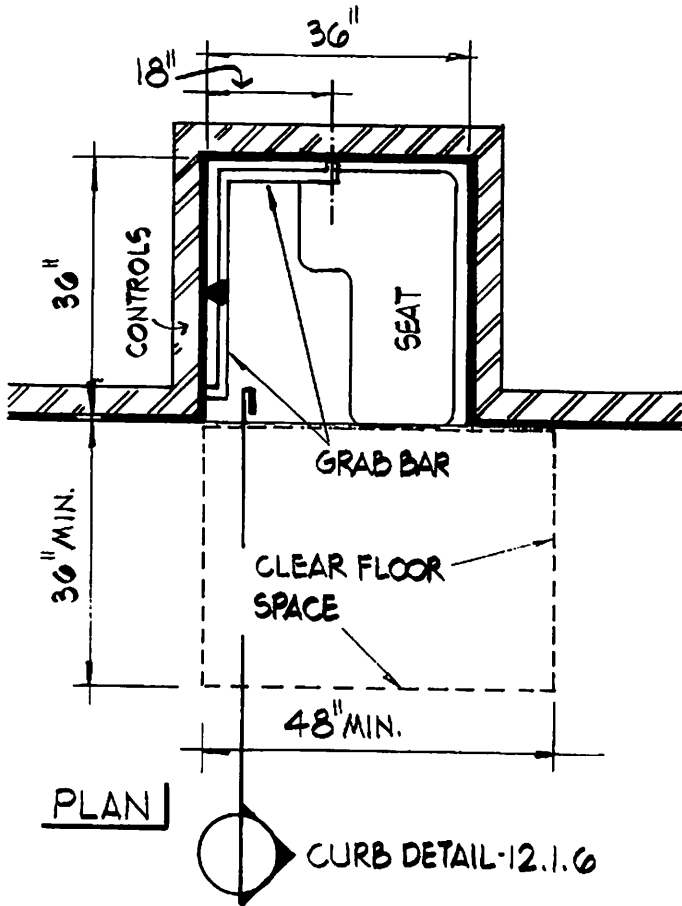
Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(b)(8);
ADAAG Fig.
35(a), 37(a)

12.2.5 A flexible, hand-held shower spray having a 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum length shall be provided. The spray unit shall serve as a fixed shower head and a hand-held shower. The spray unit shall be located on the centerline of the control wall.

**Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(b)(10);
ADAAG 4.21.6,
Fig. 37(a)**

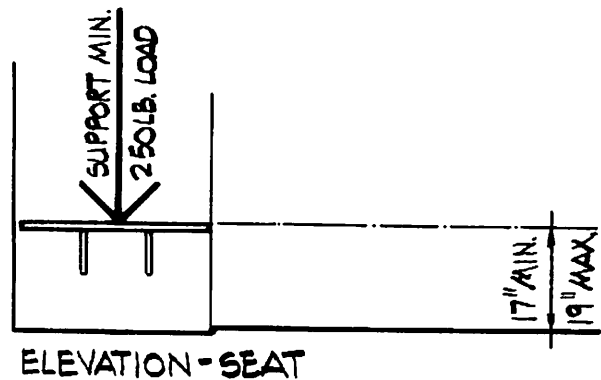
12.2.5.1 In areas subject to vandalism, the flexible, hand-held shower spray may be deleted. In lieu of the spray unit, a fixed shower head shall be installed at 48 inches (1220 mm) above the finished bathroom floor.

**Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(b)(11);
ADAAG 4.21.6,
Exception**



12.2-TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER 36"x36"

12.1.6-TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWERS (12.2) MAY HAVE A 1/2" MAX. HIGH CURB OR THRESHOLD FOR WATER RETENTION. ROLL-IN SHOWERS (12.3 AND 29.4.7.3) SHALL **NOT** HAVE A CURB OR THRESHOLD.



12.3 ROLL-IN SHOWERS

12.3.1 ROLL-IN TYPE SHOWER (MINIMUM 30 INCHES BY 60 INCHES [760 MM BY 1525 MM])

12.3.1.1 One long side shall be open to serve as the access side

Vol. I-C, Page 116;
ADAAG Figure 35(b)

12.3.1.2 The clear floor space in front of the shower shall be a minimum of 36 inches wide by 60 inches long (915 mm to 1525 mm) with the long dimension parallel to the long dimension of the shower.

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(c)(2);
ADAAG Fig. 35(b)

12.3.1.3 Shower controls and the hand-held shower spray shall comply with 12.2.3 and 12.2.5. Controls and spray unit shall be located:

- (1) On the back (long) wall adjacent to either the left or right rear corner; or
- (2) On either short (side) wall.

ADAAG Fig. 37(b);
FR 7/26/91 At 35435

If located on the back (long) wall, then the shower spray shall be located 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the nearest corner. The controls shall be placed between the shower spray location and the corner.

12.3.1.4 In areas subject to vandalism, compliance with 12.2.5.1 shall be deemed acceptable.

Vol. I-C, 4.6.8(c)(5);
ADAAG 4.21.6,
Exception

*12.3.1.5 A continuous grab bar shall be installed on the three enclosed sides of the fixture with the horizontal centerline 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished bathroom floor. ***In place of a continuous grab bar, three individual bars may be used provided that their nominal lengths equal the length of their respective walls and the mounting height is the same as required for a continuous bar.***

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(c)(4);
ADAAG Fig. 35(b),
37(b)

12.3.1.6 If a seat is provided, then it shall comply with all of the following:

- (1) Conform to the requirements of 12.2.2(1) and 12.2.2(2);
- (2) Be located a short wall;
- (3) Be capable of folding flat against its supporting wall; and

ADAAG 4.21.3

- * (4) Have the side (short) wall grab bar above the seat deleted and the back (long) wall grab bar terminate in line with the forward edge of the seat. ***In lieu of two individual bars, a continuous bar may be used provided that the lengths of the legs equals the nominal length of the respective walls.***

(NOTE: Since a roll-in shower is not permitted to have a curb or threshold, part of the clear floor space within the shower may contribute to the clear floor area required within the room. [See the illustrations for clarification.]

From ADAAG
Fig. A7

12.3.1.6.1 The shower spray and controls shall be located adjacent to the seat. The location on the back (long) wall shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the corner adjacent to the seat.

ADAAG
4.21.3

12.3.1.7 If a 29 inches (735 mm) minimum knee clearance is provided, then a lavatory, vanity, or countertop may overlap the clear floor space in front of the shower. The width of the clear opening under a vanity or countertop shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

ADAAG Fig. 35(b)

12.3.2 ROLL-IN SHOWER (MINIMUM 60 INCHES BY 60 INCHES [1525 MM BY 1525 MM], OR 60 INCHES (1525 MM) DIAMETER, CLEAR FLOOR AREA)

* **12.3.2.1** *For a swing door the clear floor space at the pull side shall comply with 7.3. For a horizontal sliding or folding door the clear floor space at shower exterior shall comply with 7.3.4.1. If a curtain is used, then the clear floor area outside the shower entry shall be 36 inches by 60 inches (915 mm by 1525 mm) minimum.*

ADAAG Fig. 25

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(d)(2)

* **12.3.2.2** *The controls, soap tray, and hand-held shower spray may be located on any wall in compliance with 12.2.3 and 12.2.5. In areas subject to vandalism, compliance with 12.2.5.1 shall be acceptable.*

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(d)(3)

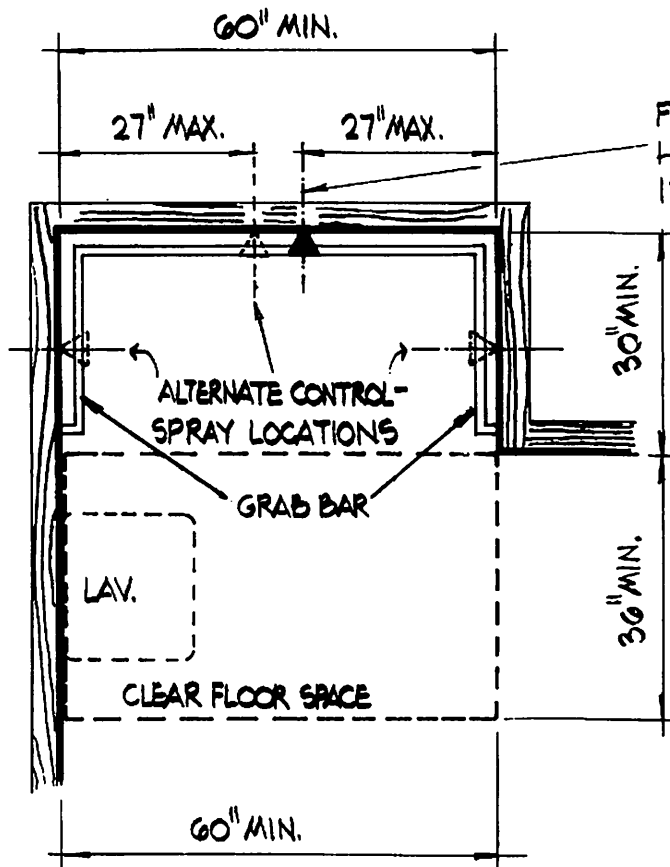
* **12.3.2.3** *A continuous grab bar shall be provided at 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished bathroom floor. In lieu of a continuous grab bar, individual bars may be used provided their individual lengths equal the nominal length of their respective walls.*

Vol. I-C,
4.6.8(d)(4)

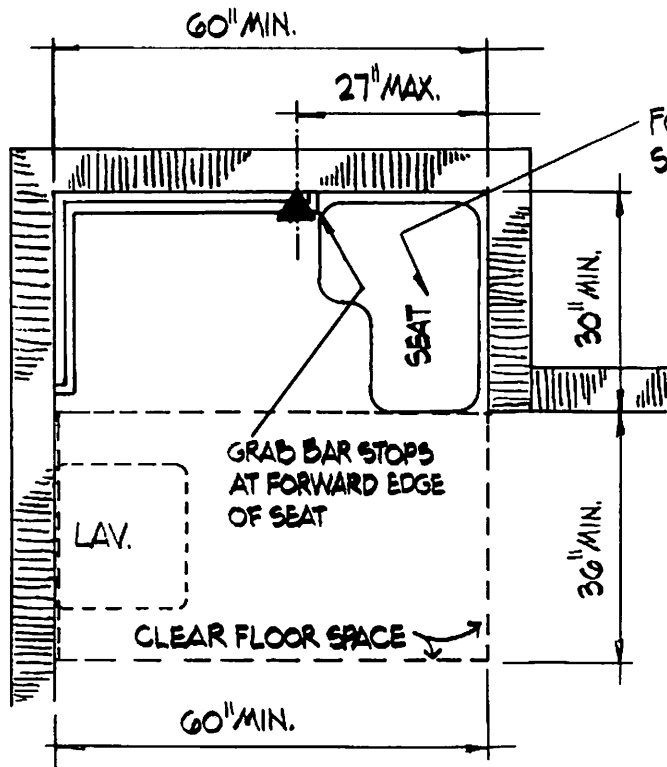
* **12.3.2.4** *If a seat is provided, then it shall be a folding type and comply with 12.2.2(1) and 12.2.2(2). The controls and soap tray shall comply with 12.2.3; the hand-held shower spray shall comply with 12.2.5 (see, also, 12.2.5.1). All components shall be located within 24 inches (610 mm) of either the left or right side of the seat. The grab bar above the seat shall be deleted for a distance equal to the seat width to allow the shower wall to serve as a seat back.*

Sim. To
ADAAG 4.21.3

ADAAG 4.2
(Reach Range)

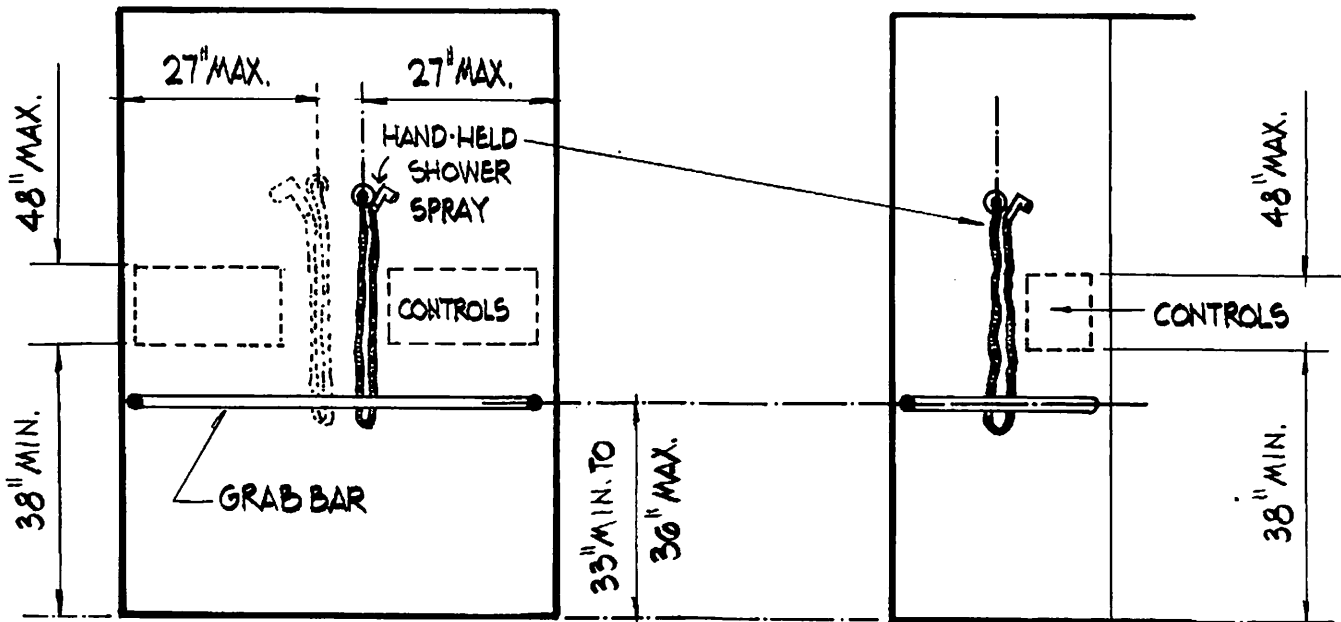


12.3.1- 30" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER WITHOUT SEAT
(FIXTURE MAY BE LEFT- OR RIGHT-HANDED)



12.3.1- 30" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER WITH SEAT
(FIXTURE MAY BE LEFT- OR RIGHT-HANDED)

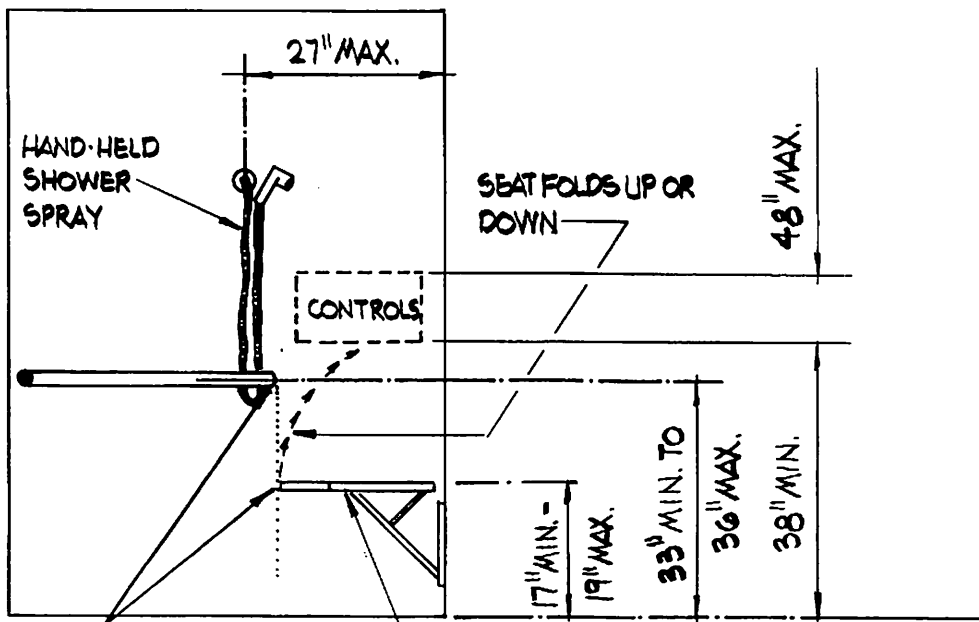
12.3- ROLL-IN SHOWERS-PART I



BACK (LONG) WALL ELEVATION

SIDE (SHORT) WALL ELEVATION

12.3.1- 30" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER WITHOUT SEAT

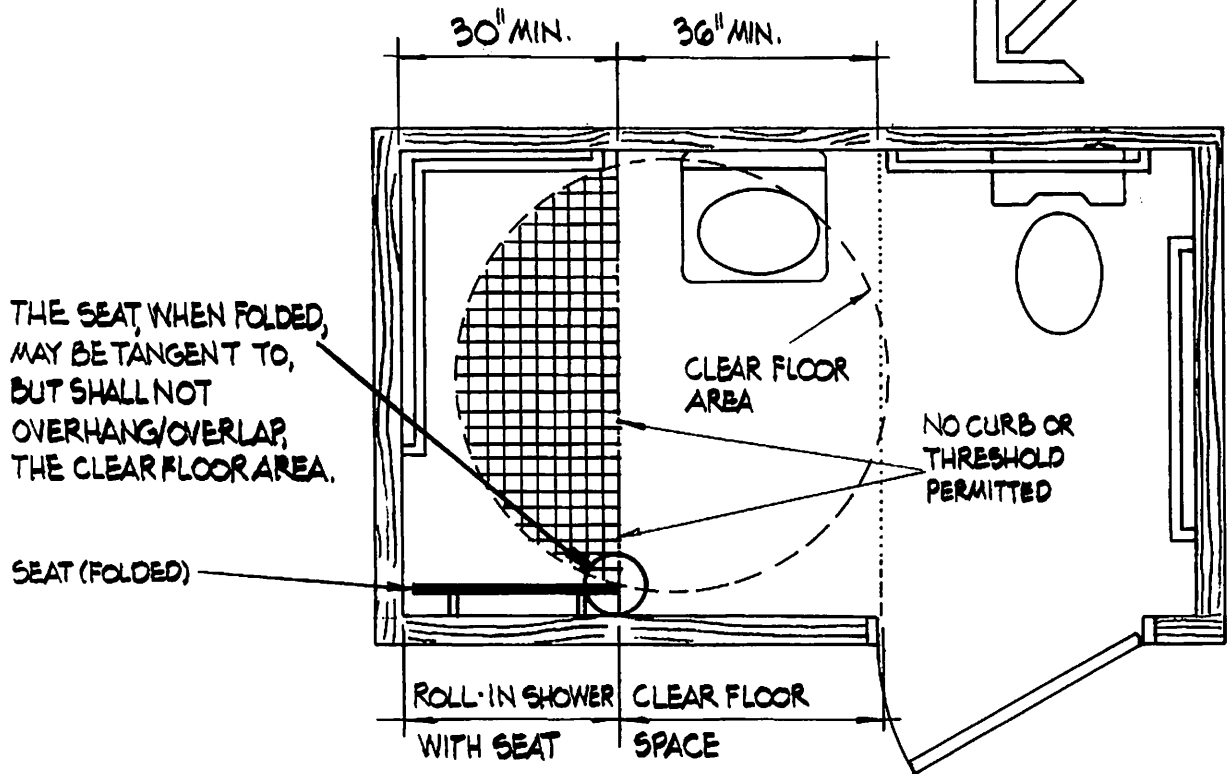
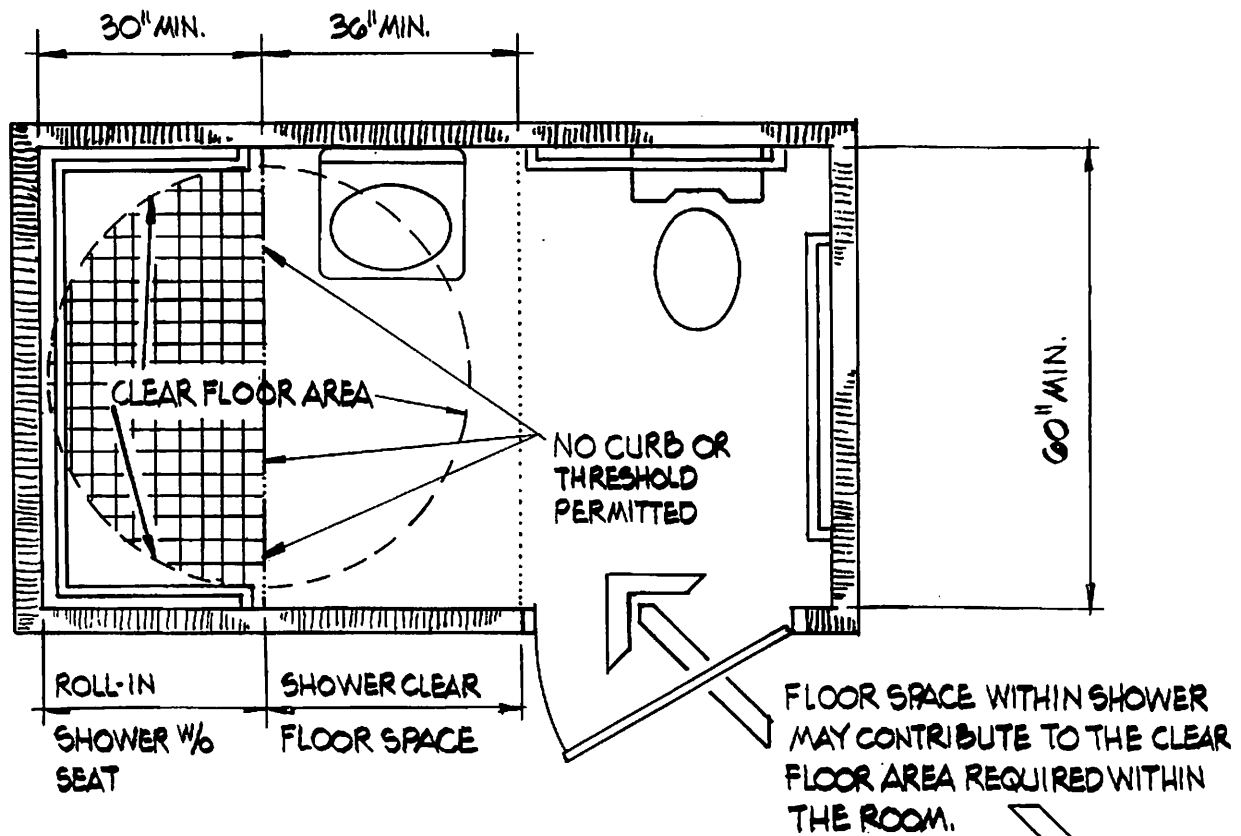


GRAB BAR TERMINATES IN LINE WITH SEAT FORWARD EDGE

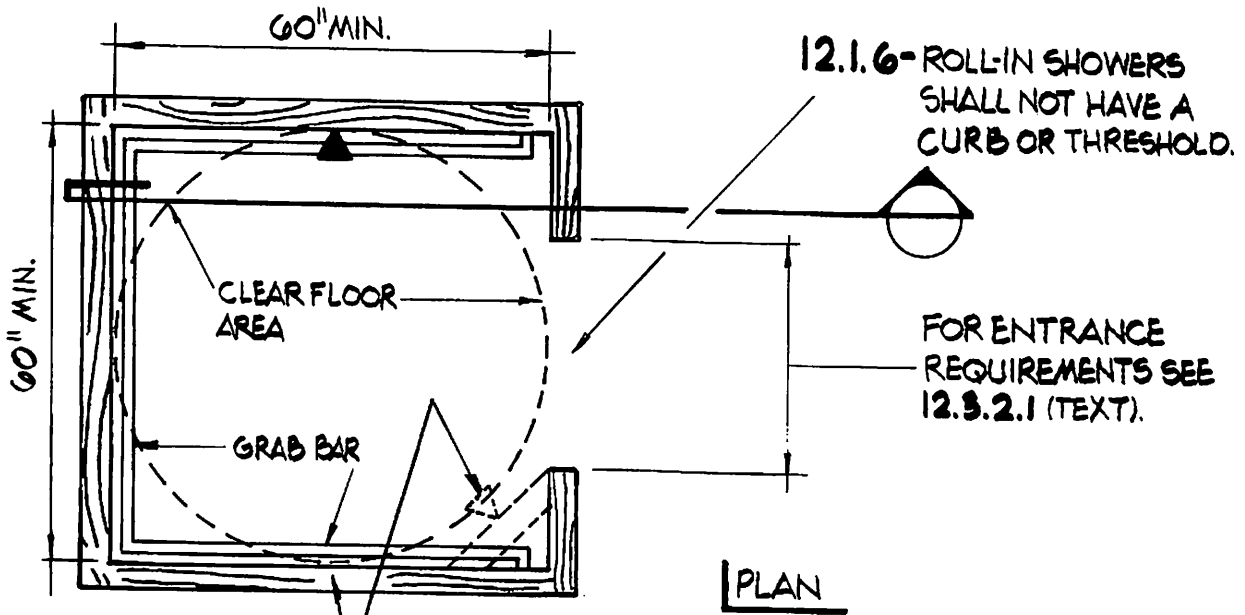
SEAT - SEE 12.3.1.6 (TEXT)

12.3.1- 30" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER WITH SEAT

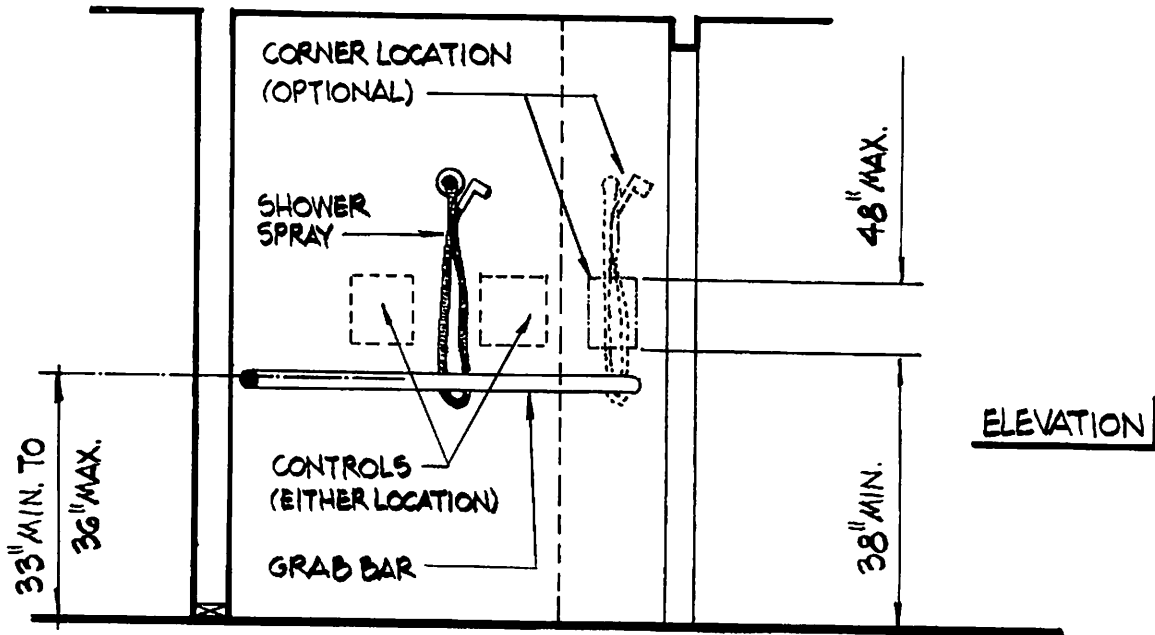
12.3- ROLL-IN SHOWERS - PART 2



12.3- ROLL-IN SHOWERS-PART 3

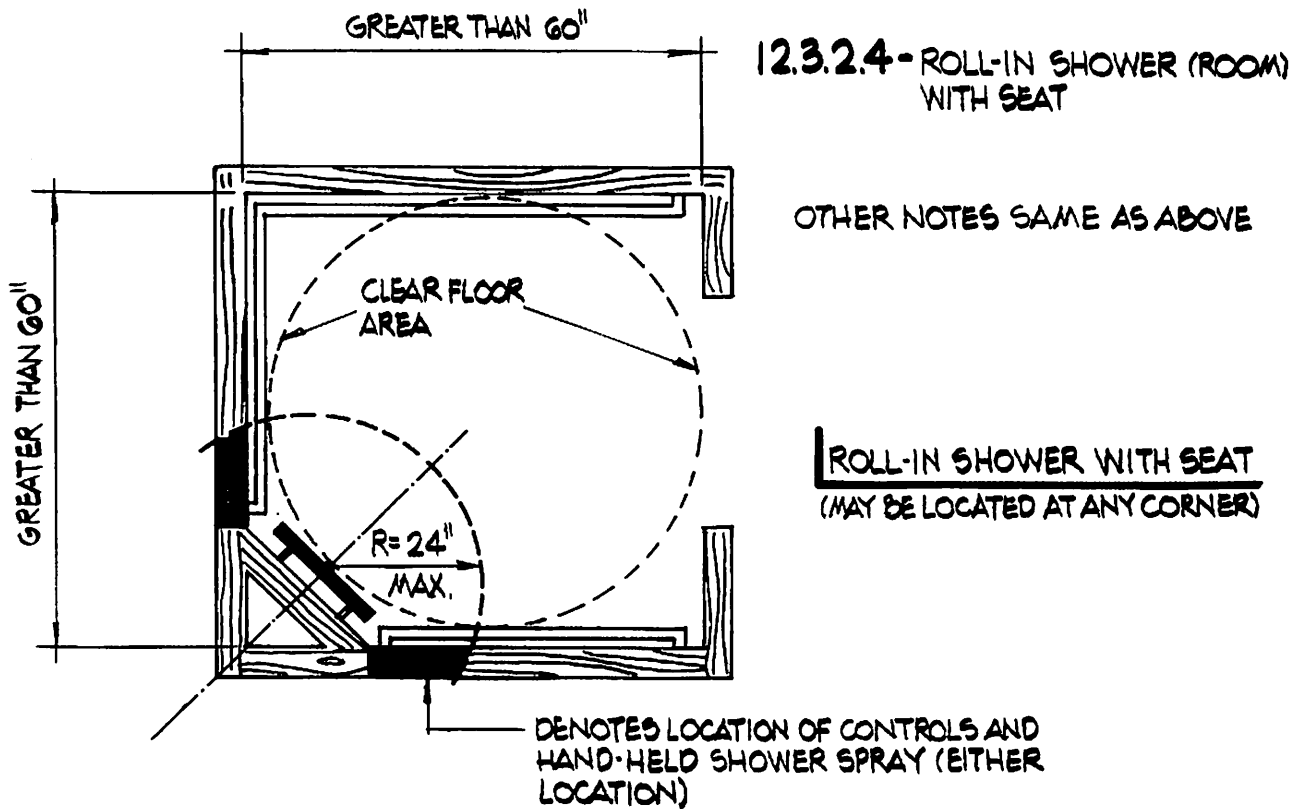
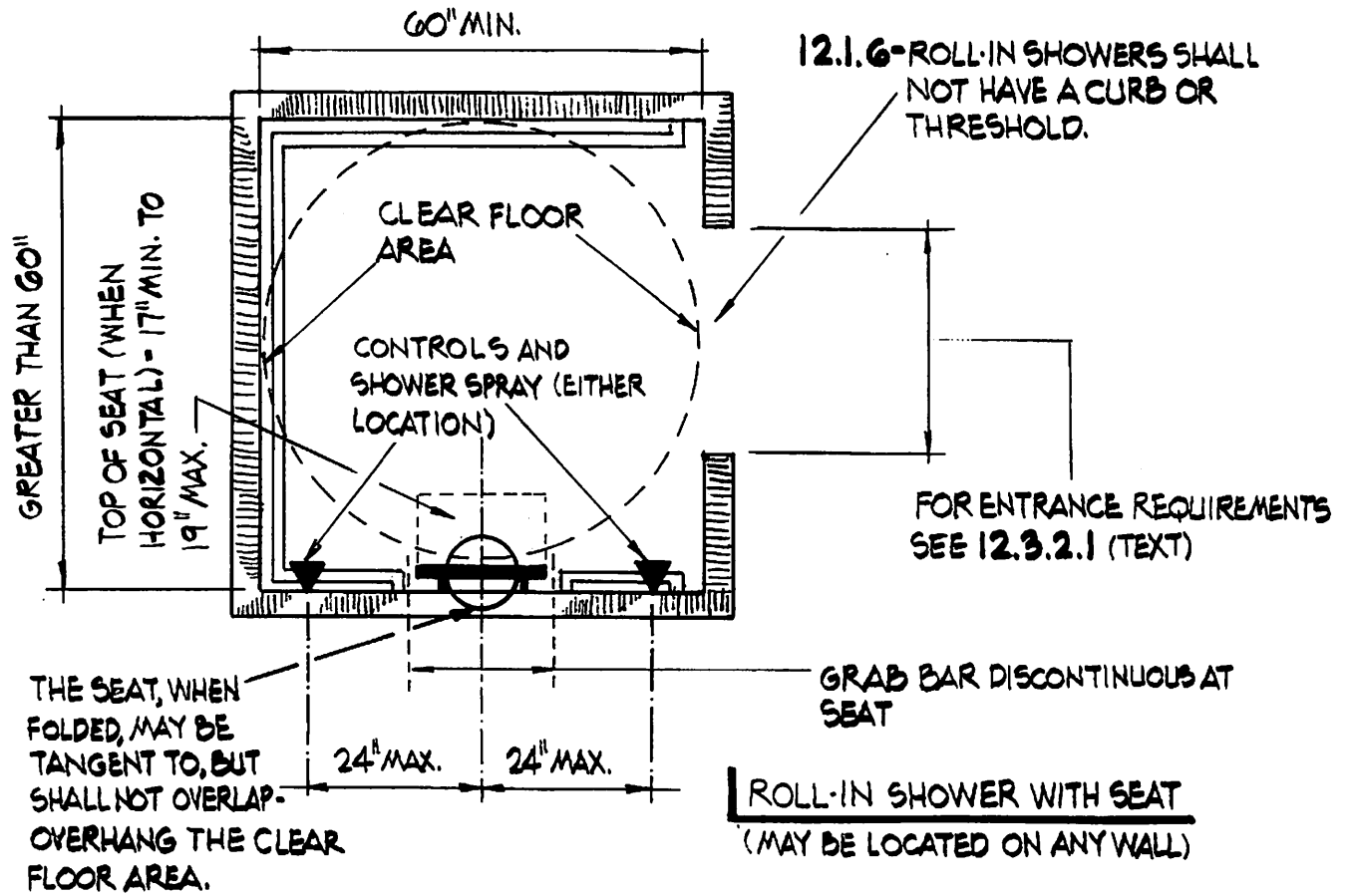


CONTROLS AND HAND-HELD SHOWER MAY BE LOCATED ON ANY WALL OR ANY CORNER AT THE HEIGHT SHOWN BELOW.



12.3.2-ROLL-IN SHOWER (ROOM)-WITHOUT SEAT

12.3-ROLL-IN SHOWERS



12.3-ROLL-IN SHOWERS

12.4 ACCESSIBLE BATHTUBS

12.4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- 12.4.1.1 Accessible bathtubs may have either an in-tub seat, or a built-in or built-up seat at the head of the tub Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.20.3
- *12.4.1.2 Enclosures of any type shall not have tracks mounted on the tub rim and shall not obstruct the use of controls nor transfer in to, or out of, the bathtub. *If horizontal sliding doors are used, then a minimum 30 inches (765 mm) wide clear opening shall be provided.* Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(a)(3);
ADAAG 4.20.7
- *12.4.1.3 *If enclosure doors have translucent or transparent glazing, then the glazing shall comply with 12.1.3.2.* Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(a)(4)
- 12.4.1.4 Grab bars shall comply with 11.5. Cross-Reference
- *12.4.1.5 An in-tub seat or a minimum 15 inches (380 mm) wide built-in or built-up seat shall be *capable of supporting a 250 pound (113 Kg) minimum load and shall be constructed of materials that will not rot or corrode when repeatedly exposed to water. In-tub seats shall be mounted securely and shall not slip or slide during use.* ADAAG Fig. 33(b);
Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(c)(1)
- 12.4.1.6 Water control shall be lever operated and located towards the open side of the tub below the grab bar and above the tub rim. Controls shall be operable by a five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum force. A flexible, hand-held shower spray shall be provided which shall comply with 12.2.5. (See, also, 12.2.5.1.) Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(c)(2);
ADAAG: 4.20.5
4.20.6
Fig. 34
- 12.4.2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE: BATHTUB WITH AN IN-TUB SEAT**
(NOTE: For 12.4.2.1 through 12.4.3.2 the long dimension of the clear floor space is always parallel to the tub length.)
- 12.4.2.1 For a side approach the clear floor space shall be 30 inches wide by 60 inches long (760 mm by 1525 mm) minimum. Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(b)(1);
ADAAG Fig. 33(a)
- 12.4.2.2 For a front approach the clear floor space shall be 48 inches deep by 60 inches wide (1220 mm by 1525 mm) minimum. Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(b)(1);
ADAAG Fig. 33(a)
- 12.4.3 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE: BATHTUB WITH A BUILT-IN OR BUILT-UP SEAT**
- 12.4.3.1 For a side approach the clear floor space shall be 30 inches wide by 75 inches long (760 mm by 1905 mm) minimum. Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(b)(2);
ADAAG Fig. 33(b)
- *12.4.3.2 *For a front approach the clear floor space shall be 48 inches deep by 75 inches wide (1220 mm by 1905 mm) minimum.* Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(b)(2)

12.4.4 For any type of bathtub and for any type of approach, the clear floor space adjacent to the tub may overlap the minimum clear required floor area and the accessible route to the tub.

ADAAG 4.23.3

12.4.5 LAVATORIES, VANITIES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

12.4.5.1 If a 29 inches (735 mm) minimum knee clearance is provided, then a lavatory, vanity, or countertop may overlap the clear floor space at the bathtub. The minimum width of the clear opening under a vanity or countertop shall equal the minimum width of the clear floor space (i.e., either 30 inches [760 mm] or 48 inches [1220 mm], as applicable).

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(b)(3),
4.6.9(b)(4);
ADAAG Fig.
33(a) And 33(b)**

12.4.6 GRAB BARS-LOCATIONS AND MOUNTING HEIGHTS

12.4.6.1 Control End Wall: One grab bar having a 24 inches (610 mm) minimum length with its forward end near the open end of the bathtub enclosure. The horizontal centerline shall 33 inches minimum to 36 inches (840 mm to 915 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(c)(3)(A);
ADAAG Fig.
34(a), 34(b)**

12.4.6.2 Wall Parallel To The Bathtub Length:

(1) For a built-in or built-up seat there shall be two (2) parallel grab bars each having a 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum length with one end of each bar 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the end wall opposite the controls.

**Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(c)(3)(B);
ADAAG Fig.
34(b)**

(2) For an in-tub seat there shall be two (2) parallel grab bars each having a 24 inches (610 mm) minimum length with one end of each bar 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the end wall opposite the controls.

**Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(c)(3)(B);
ADAAG Fig.
34(a)**

(3) For both 12.4.6.2(1) and 12.4.6.2(2), the lower bar shall have its horizontal centerline 9 inches above the flood rim of the tub. The upper grab bar shall have its horizontal centerline 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished bathroom floor.

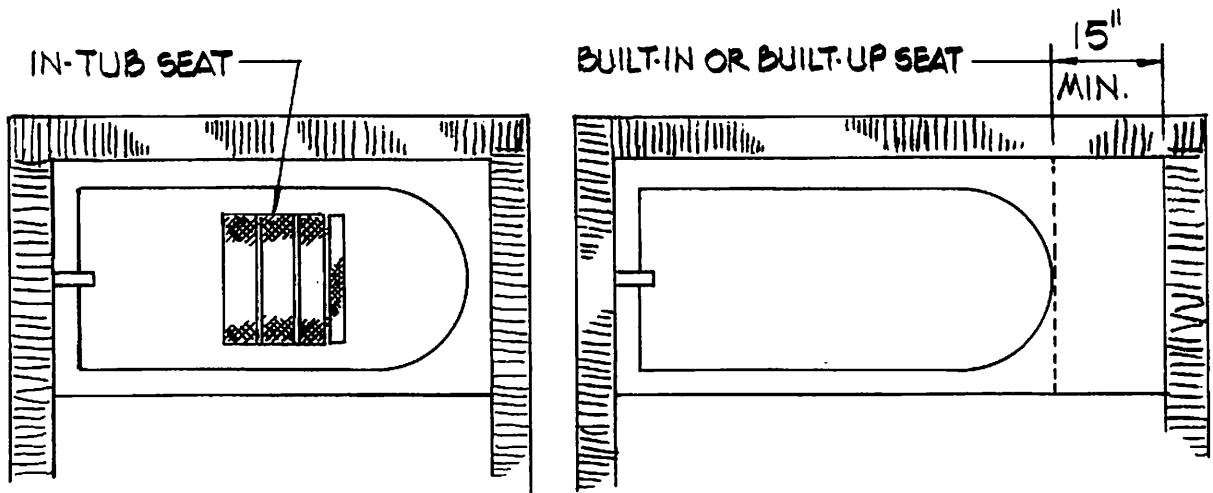
**Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(c)(3)(B);
ADAAG Fig.
34(a), 34(b)**

12.4.6.3 End Wall Opposite The Control Wall:

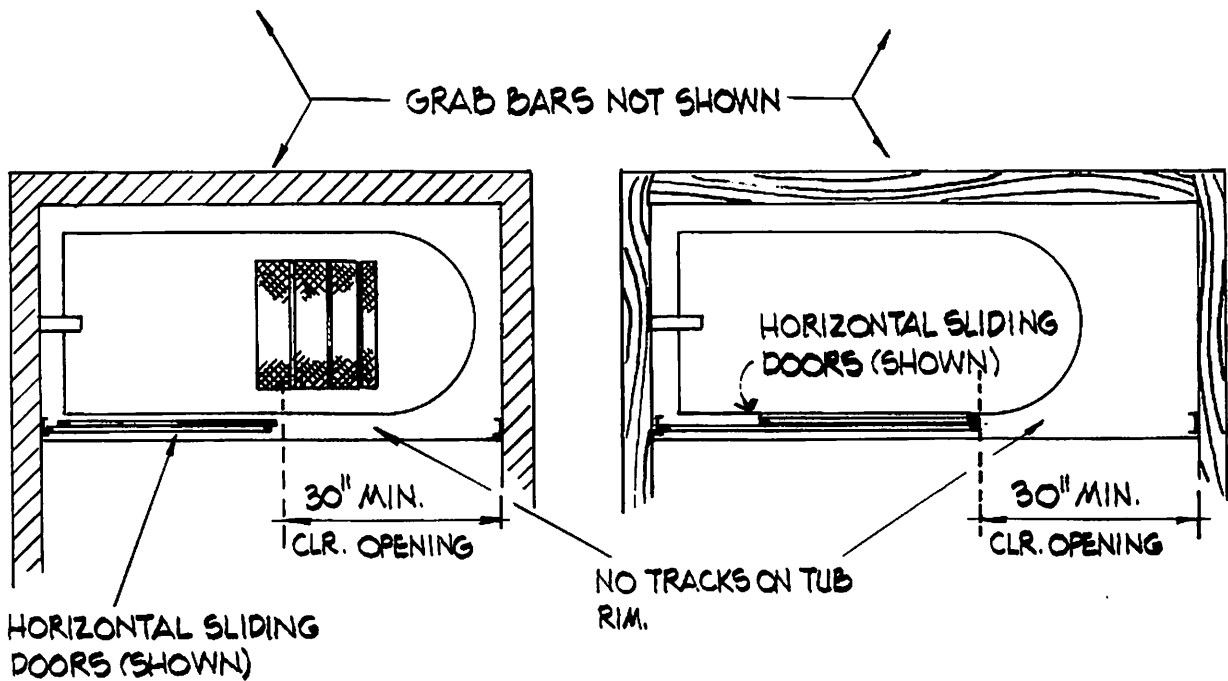
- (1) For a built-in or built-up seat no handrail shall be required.
- (2) For an in-tub seat one grab bar having a 12 inches (305 mm) minimum length with its forward end near the open end of the bathtub enclosure. The horizontal centerline shall be 33 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (840 mm to 915 mm) above the finished bathroom floor.

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.9(c)(3)(C);
ADAAG Figure 34(b)**

**Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(c)(3)(C);
ADAAG
Fig. 34(a)**

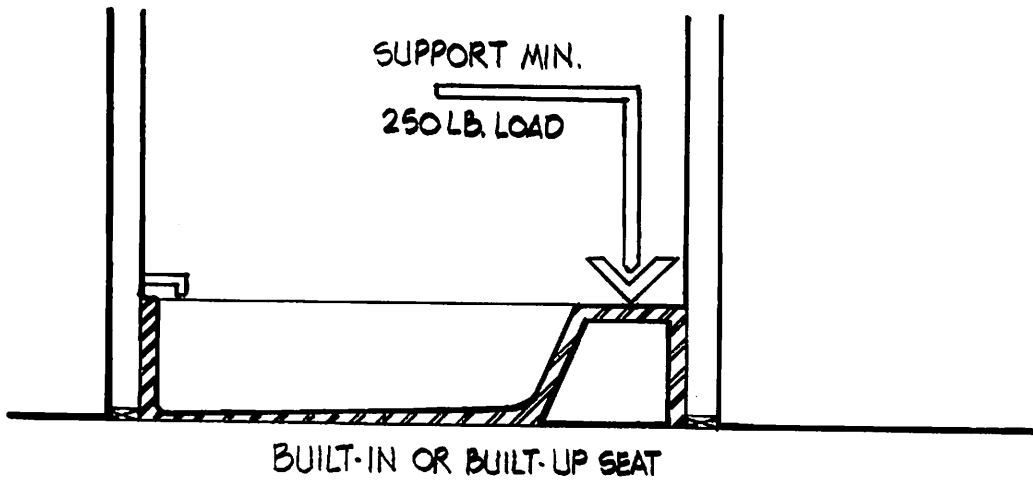


12.4.1.1- ACCESSIBLE BATHTUBS MAY HAVE EITHER AN IN-TUB SEAT OR A BUILT-IN OR BUILT-UP SEAT AT THE HEAD OF THE TUB.



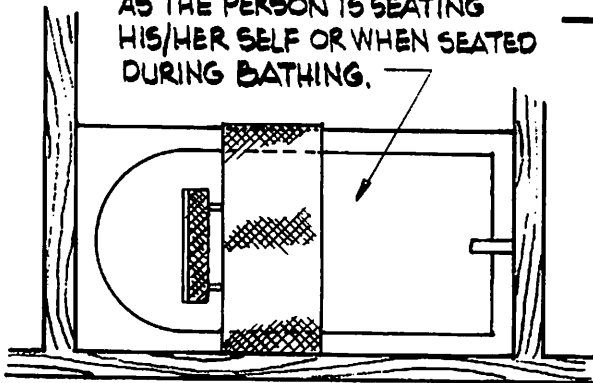
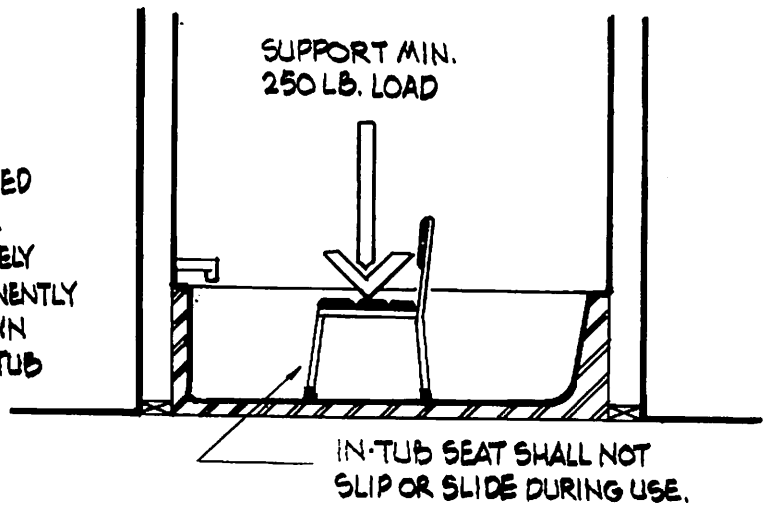
12.4.1.2- IN ADDITION TO THE ABOVE ENCLOSURES OF ANY TYPE SHALL NOT OBSTRUCT THE USE OF CONTROLS NOR TRANSFER IN TO, OR OUT OF THE BATHTUB.

12.4-ACCESSIBLE BATHTUBS



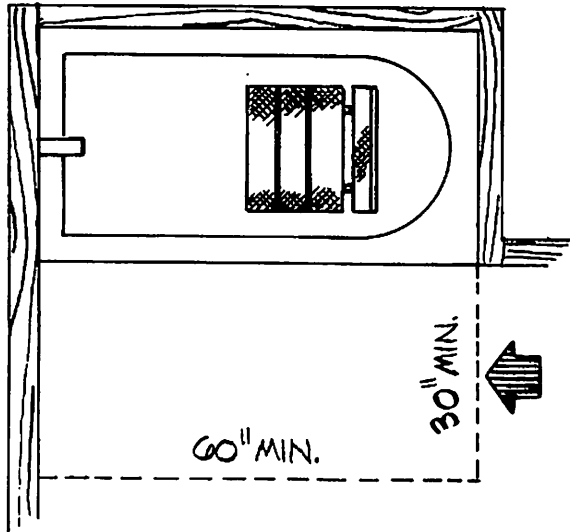
12.4.15- IN ADDITION TO THE NOTES ABOVE AND BELOW, SEATS SHALL BE CONSTRUCTED OF MATERIALS THAT WILL NOT ROT OR CORRODE WHEN REPEATEDLY EXPOSED TO WATER.

IN-TUB SEATS SHALL BE MOUNTED SECURELY AND SHALL NOT SLIP OR SLIDE DURING USE. (NOTE: SECURELY MOUNTED DOES NOT MEAN PERMANENTLY INSTALLED. BUT, THE SEAT SHOWN BELOW SHALL NOT FALL INTO THE TUB AS THE PERSON IS SEATING HIS/HER SELF OR WHEN SEATED DURING BATHING.

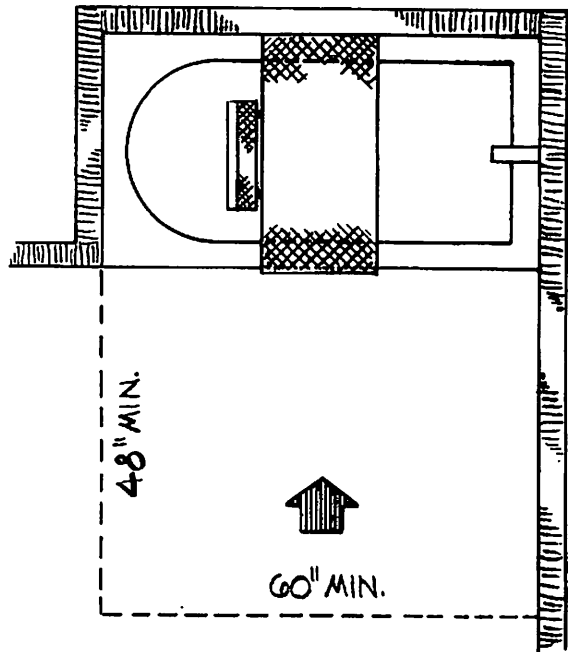


12.4-ACCESSIBLE BATHTUBS

12.4.2.1-SIDE APPROACH

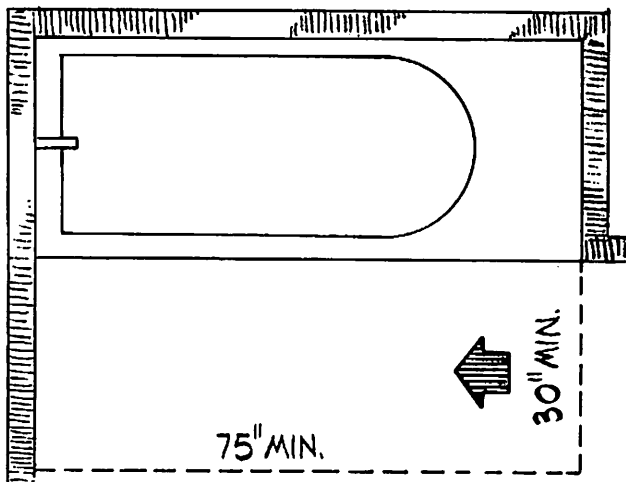


12.4.2.2-FRONT APPROACH

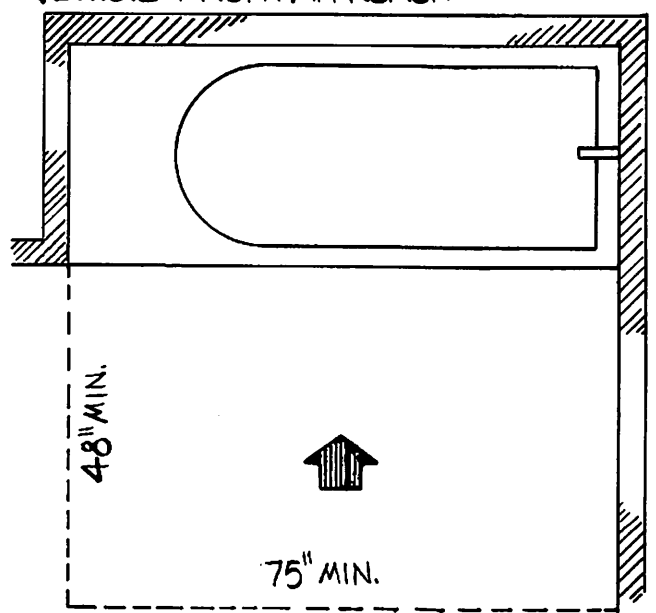


12.4.2-BATHTUB WITH IN-TUB SEAT

12.4.3.1-SIDE APPROACH

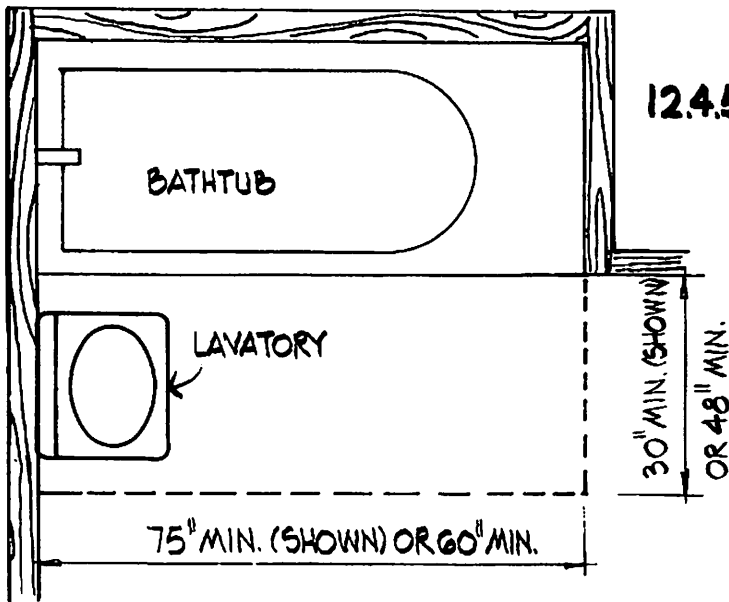


12.4.3.2-FRONT APPROACH

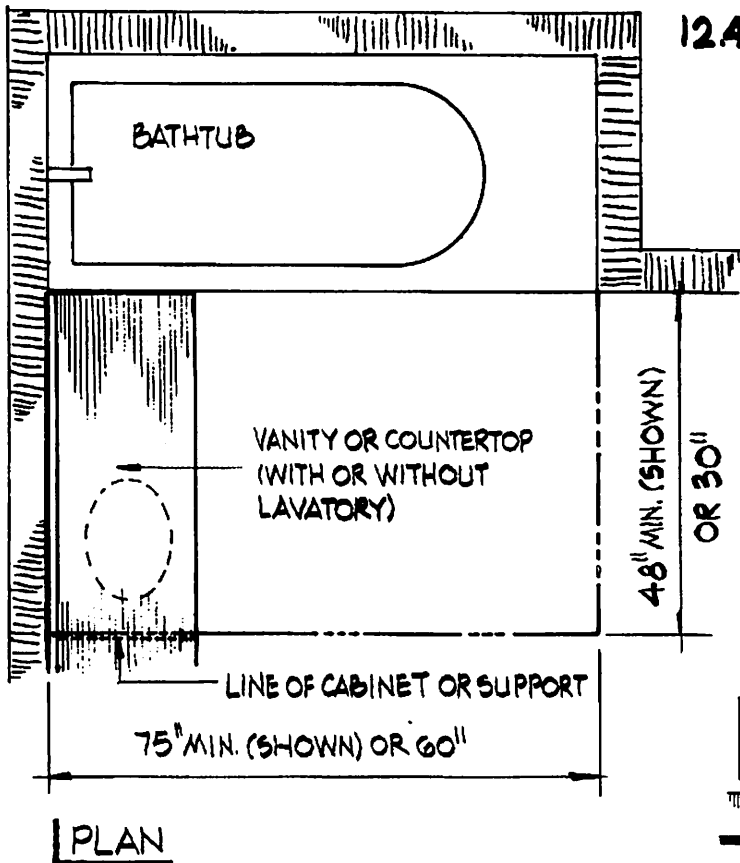


12.4.3-BATHTUB WITH BUILT-IN OR BUILT-UP SEAT

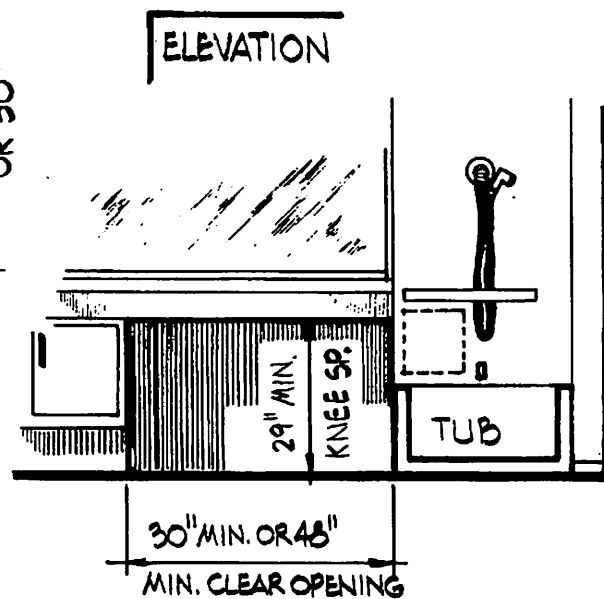
12.4.2 AND 12.4.3-CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT ACCESSIBLE BATHTUB



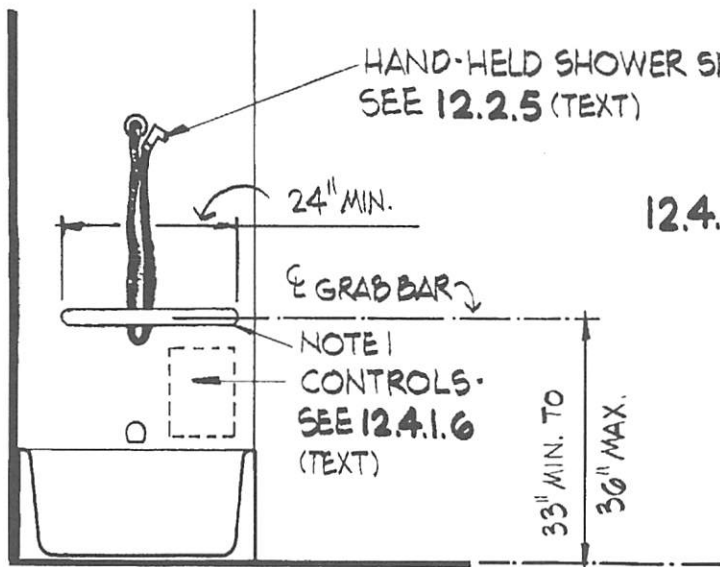
12.4.5.1- A LAVATORY MAY OVERLAP THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE IF A 29" MINIMUM KNEE CLEARANCE IS PROVIDED. (SEE 11.6.2-TOP RIGHT ILLUSTRATION.)



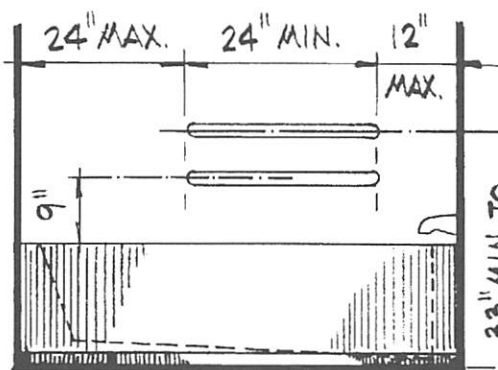
12.4.5.1- A VANITY OR COUNTERTOP MAY OVERLAP THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE IF A 29" MIN. KNEE CLEARANCE IS PROVIDED (SIMILAR TO 11.6.2-TOP RIGHT ILLUSTRATION).



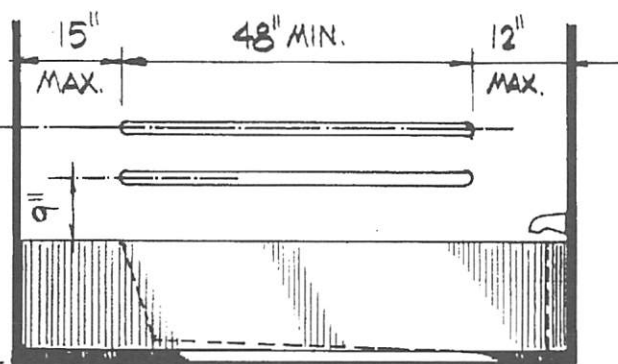
12.4.5- LAVATORIES, VANITIES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE



12.4.6.1- CONTROL END WALL ELEVATION
(NOTE 1: FORWARD END OF GRAB BAR LOCATED NEAR OPEN END OF BATHTUB ENCLOSURE.)

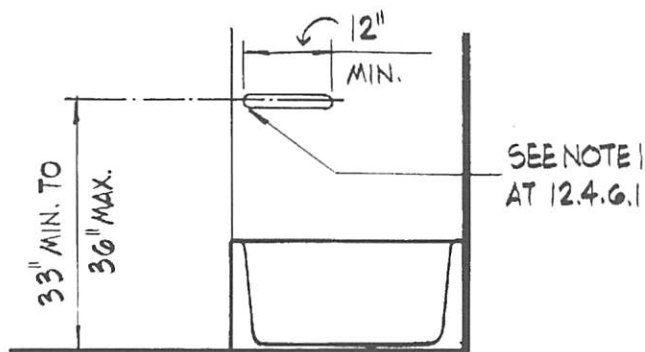


BATHTUB WITH IN-TUB SEAT
(SEAT NOT SHOWN)



BATHTUB WITH BUILT-IN OR BUILT-UP SEAT

12.4.6.2- BATHTUB LONG WALL ELEVATIONS



BATHTUB WITH IN-TUB SEAT
(SEAT NOT SHOWN)

BATHTUB WITH BUILT-IN OR BUILT-UP SEAT:
GRAB BAR NOT REQUIRED

12.4.6.3- END WALL ELEVATION

12.4.6- (BATHTUB) GRAB BARS-LOCATIONS AND MOUNTING HEIGHTS

**CHAPTER 13
DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATERCOOLERS**

13.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

13.1.1 If drinking fountains or watercoolers are provided, then fixtures required to be accessible shall be located on an accessible route. Vol. I-C,
4.7(a)(1)

13.1.2 Accessible drinking fountains or watercoolers shall have up-front or side mounted controls in the form of touch pads, touch bars, push buttons or similar methods for water activation. Controls shall be operable by a five (5) pound (2.3 Kg) maximum force. The use of any methods or devices that require a tight grasp, tight pinching or any wrist-twisting motion for water activation shall be prohibited. Vol. I-C,
4.7(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.15.4

13.1.3 Spouts shall be located at the front of the fixture. If the drinking fountain or water cooler has a round or oval bowl, then the spout shall be positioned so that the flow of water is within 3 inches (75 mm) of the front edge of the unit. Water streams shall be parallel or nearly parallel to the front of the drinking fountain or watercooler and shall rise 4 inches (100 mm) minimum. ADAAG 4.15.3;
Vol. I-C,
4.7(a)(2)-Similar

13.1.4 Spouts shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level measured from the spout outlet. Vol. I-C, 4.7(b)(1);
ADAAG 4.15.2

13.1.5** If the number of drinking fountains or watercoolers provided per floor is greater than one, then fifty percent (50%) of the fixtures on that floor shall be accessible. ***The accessible fixtures shall be distributed throughout each floor and shall not be concentrated in one location. ADAAG
4.1.3(10)(b)

13.1.5.1 If the number of drinking fountains or watercoolers provided per floor is an odd number, then the number required to be accessible may be calculated by first rounding down to the next even number before multiplying by fifty percent (50%). FR 7/26/91
At 35421

13.1.6 If only one drinking fountain or watercooler is provided per floor, then there shall be one fixture accessible to wheelchair users and one fixture accessible to persons who have difficulty bending or stooping. **(NOTE: This requirement can be satisfied by: the use of a "high/low" fixture; or, by providing one fixture accessible to wheelchair users and one fixture of standard height accessible to persons who have difficulty bending or stooping.)** ADAAG
4.1.3(10)(a);

13.2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AND CLEARANCES

13.2.1 Clear floor space shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long minimum (760 mm by 1220 mm) with the long dimension parallel to the direction of approach.

Vol. I-C, 4.7(c)(2)(A),
4.7(c)(3)(A);
ADAAG 4.15.5(1), 4.15.5(2),
Fig. 27(b), 27(c), 27(d)

13.2.2 For cantilevered, wall mounted, or pedestal fixtures the clear floor space shall be oriented for a forward approach only. Such fixtures may be located in a recess provided it has a 30 inches (760 mm) minimum clear width and a 24 inches maximum (610 mm) depth. Partially recessed fixtures may project or protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the recess forward face. (For floor mounted fixtures, see 13.2.5.)

Vol. I-C, 4.7(c)(2);
ADAAG 4.15.5(1)

4" = ADAAG 4.4.1

13.2.3 Cantilevered fixtures (i.e., those with no motor/compressor housing below) and pedestal fixtures shall have a 27 inches (685 mm) minimum knee space from the bottom of the unit to the finished floor or ground level. The clear floor space shall extend 17 inches minimum to 19 inches maximum (430 mm to 485 mm) under the unit measured from the forward edge of the fixture.

Vol. I-C, 4.7(b)(2);

ADAAG 4.15.5(1)

13.2.4 Wall mounted fixtures (i.e., those with a motor/compressor housing below) shall comply with 13.2.3 for minimum knee clearance and floor space extension under the unit. The upper, forward part of the housing shall be inset 8 inches (205 mm) minimum from the front of the unit. The lower part of the motor/compressor housing shall be 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground level and shall project 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the finished wall or partition.

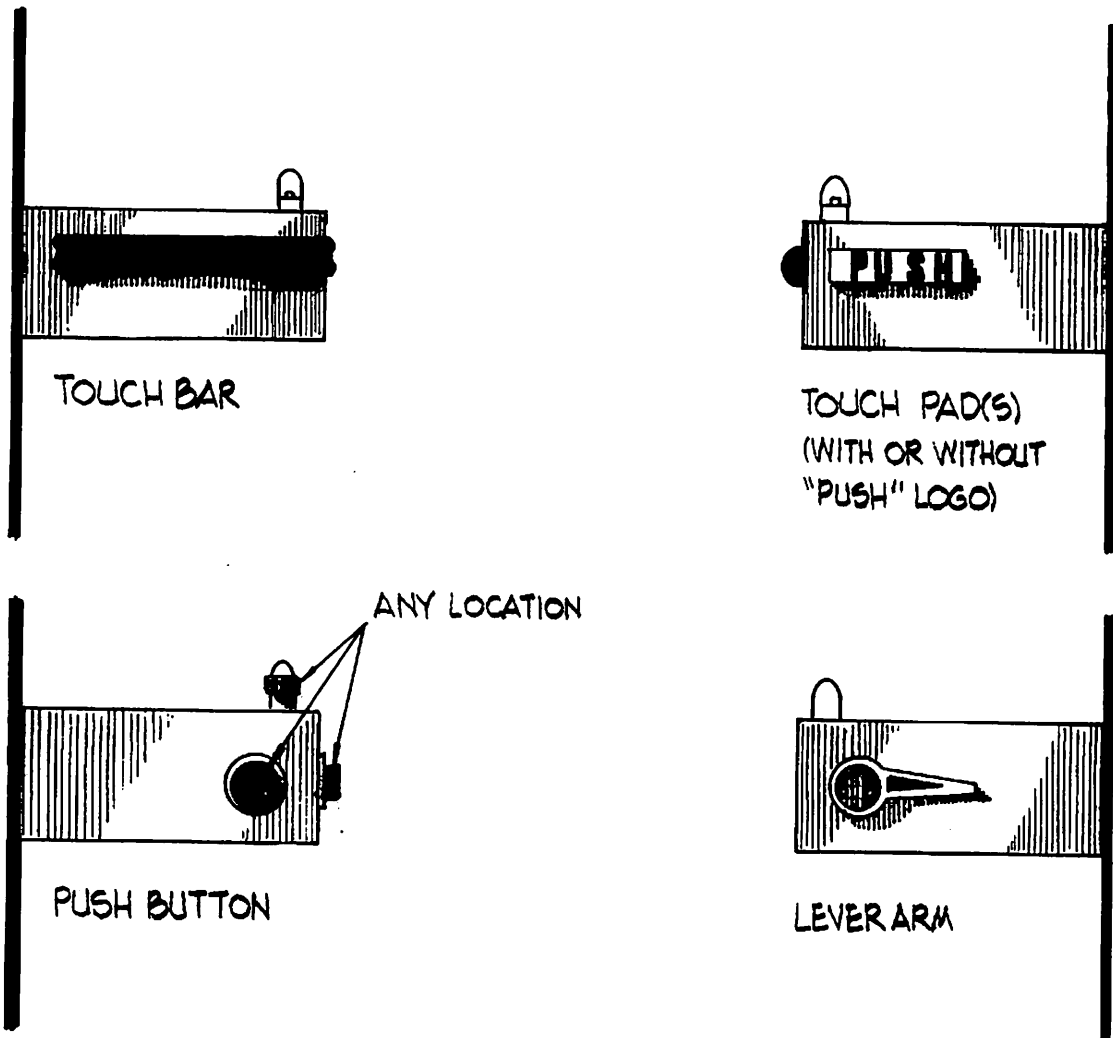
Vol. I-C,
4.7(c)(1)(B);
ADAAG Fig.
27(a), 27(b)

13.2.5 Floor mounted fixtures (i.e., one having no knee and toe space below the basin) may be used provided that the clear floor space is oriented for a side (i.e., parallel) approach. If mounted against a wall, then the unit shall not obstruct the clear width of an accessible route nor the clear floor space. If fully recessed, then the recess depth shall not exceed the fixture depth. A partially recessed fixture may project or protrude any distance from the recess forward face.

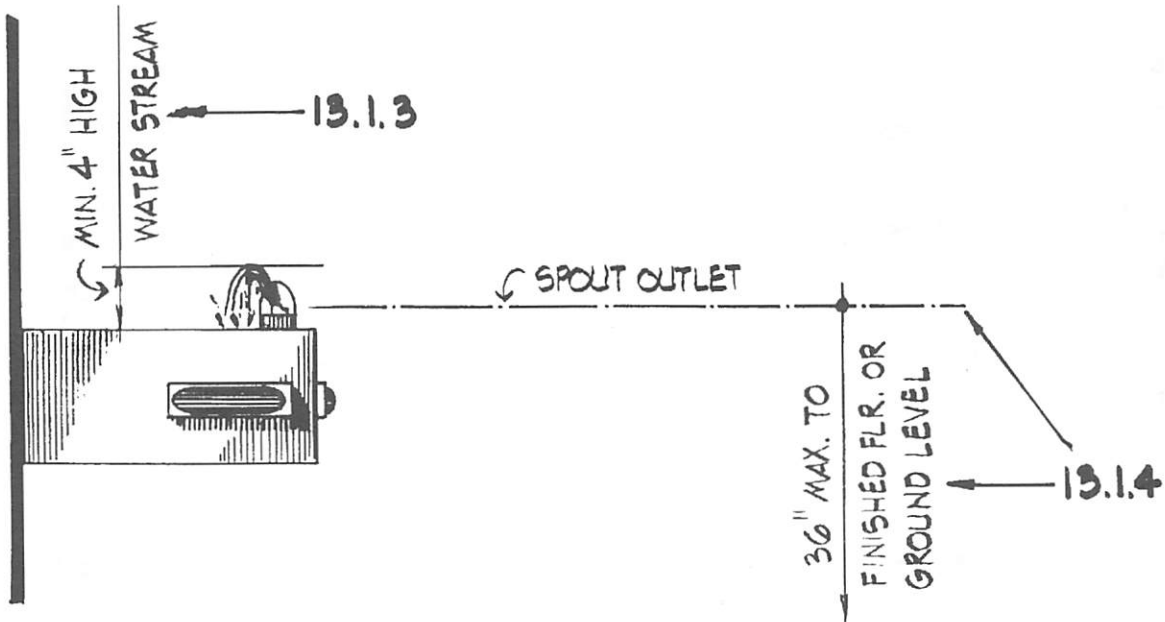
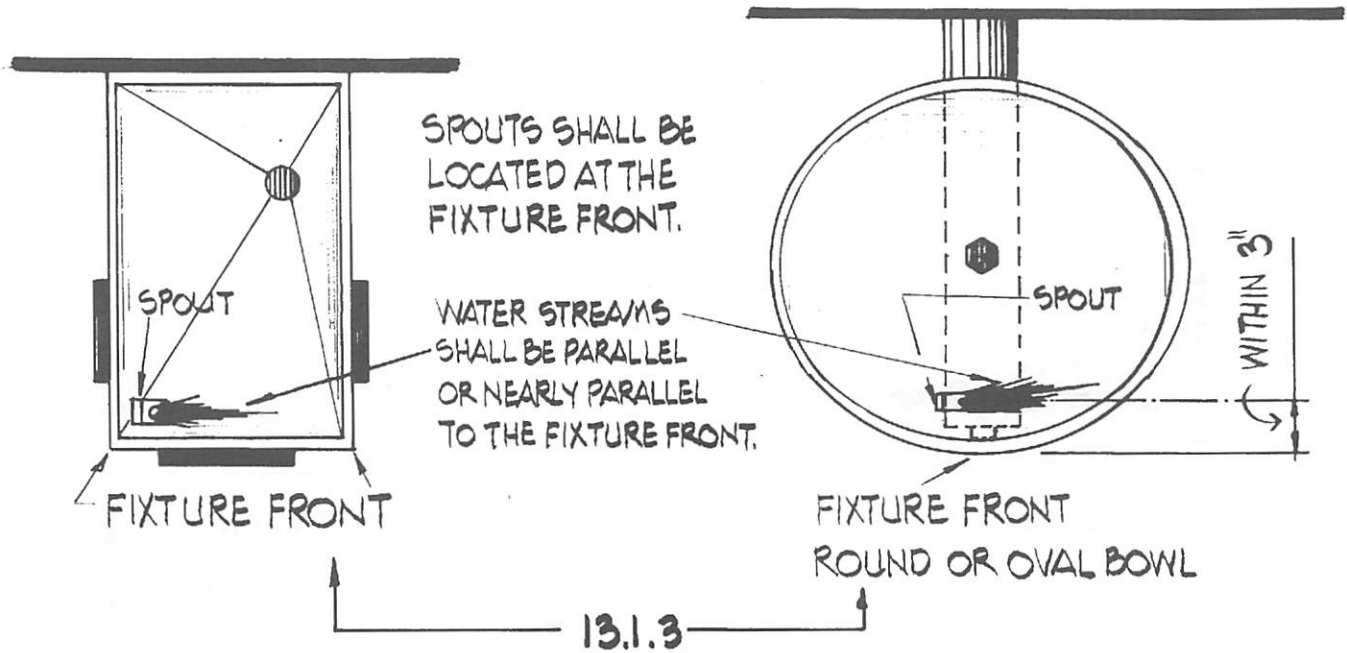
Vol. I-C, 4.7(d)

ADAAG Fig. 27(c)

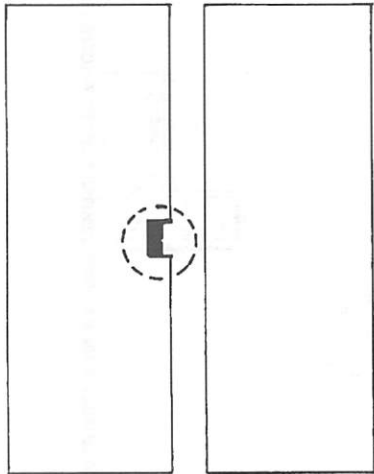
Recessed:
Fully- ADAAG Fig. 27(d);
Partially- ADAAG 4.4.1



13.1.2- ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF UPFRONT OR SIDE MOUNTED METHODS FOR WATER ACTIVATION.

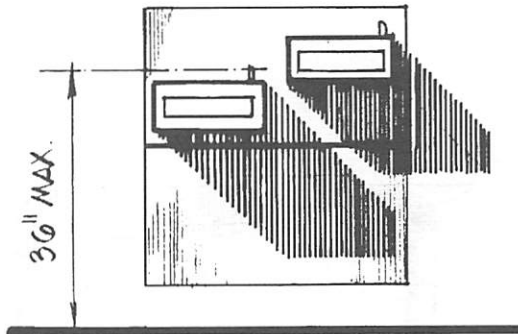


13.1.3 AND 13.1.4- SPOUT LOCATION AND WATER STREAM

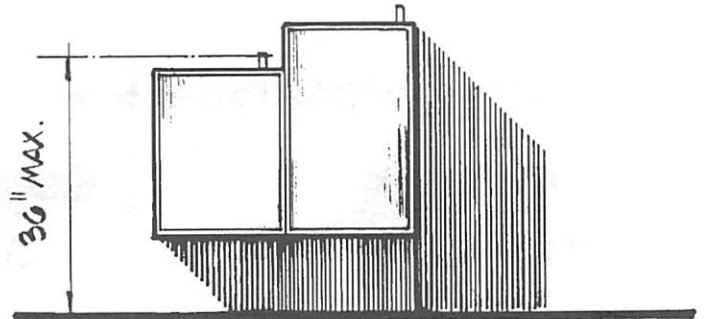


13.1.6- IF ONLY ONE DRINKING FOUNTAIN OR WATERCOOLER IS PROVIDED PER FLOOR, THEN: ONE FIXTURE ACCESSIBLE TO WHEELCHAIR USERS; AND ONE FIXTURE ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WHO HAVE DIFFICULTY BENDING OR STOOPING SHALL BE PROVIDED.

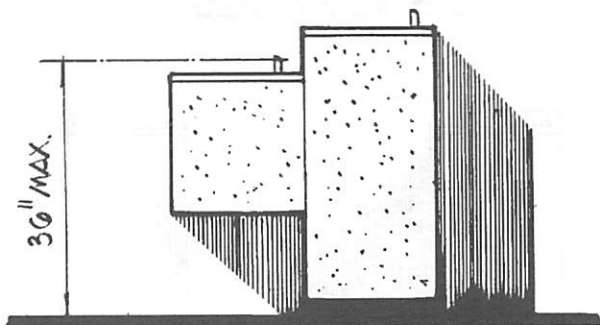
EXAMPLES OF COMPLIANCE WITH 13.1.6:



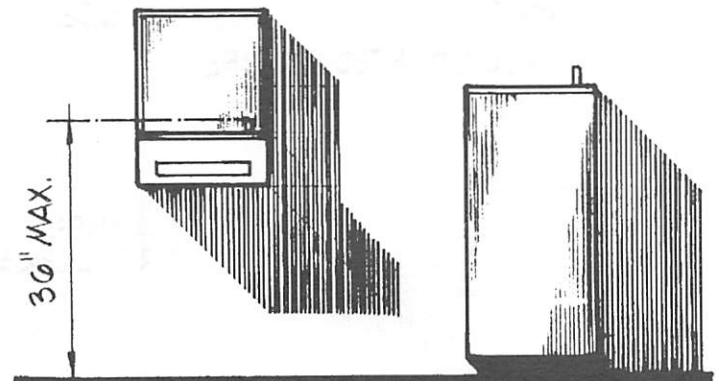
1) TWO-IN-ONE FIXTURE



2) TWO JOINED UNITS

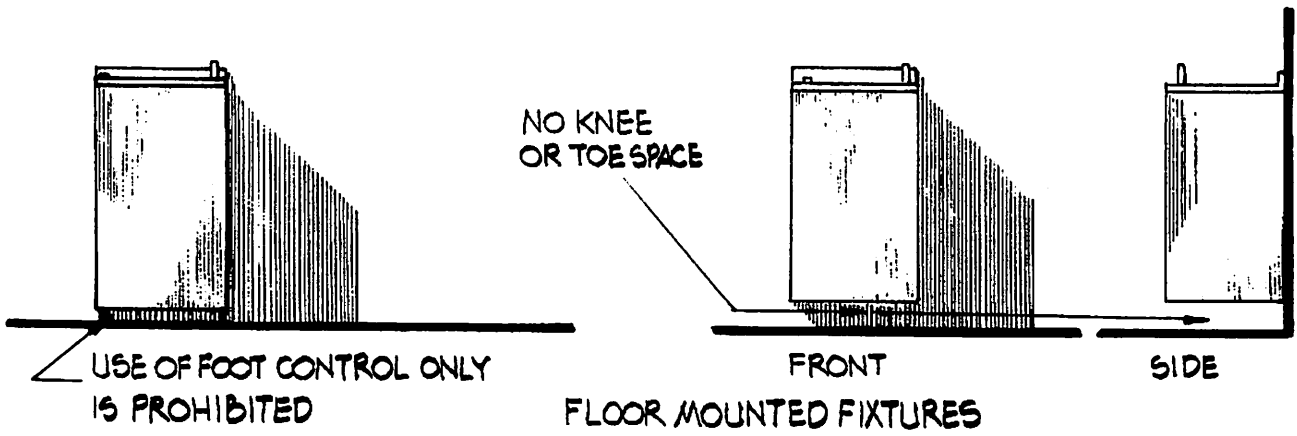
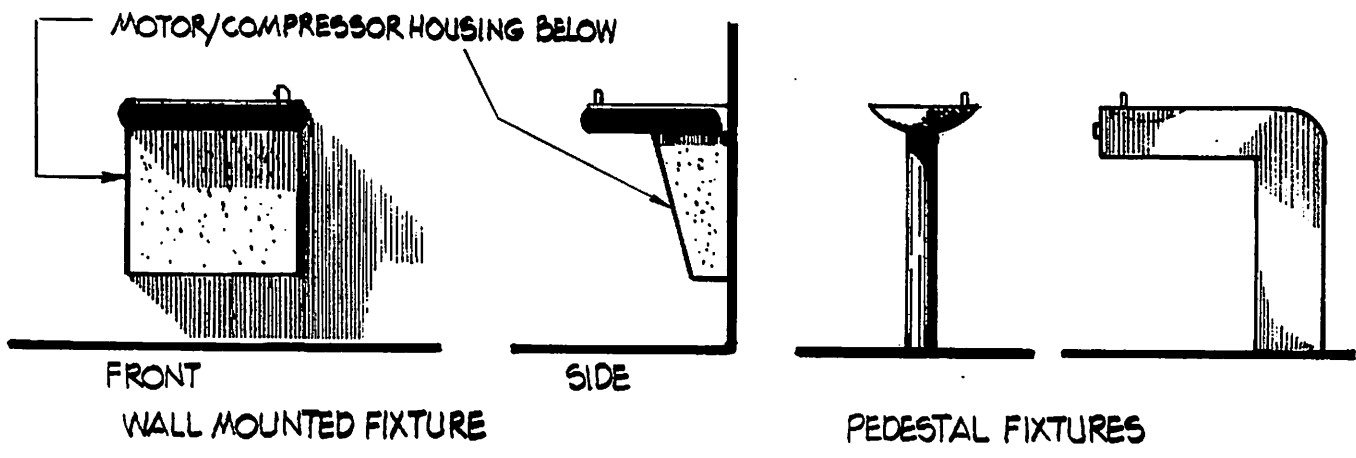
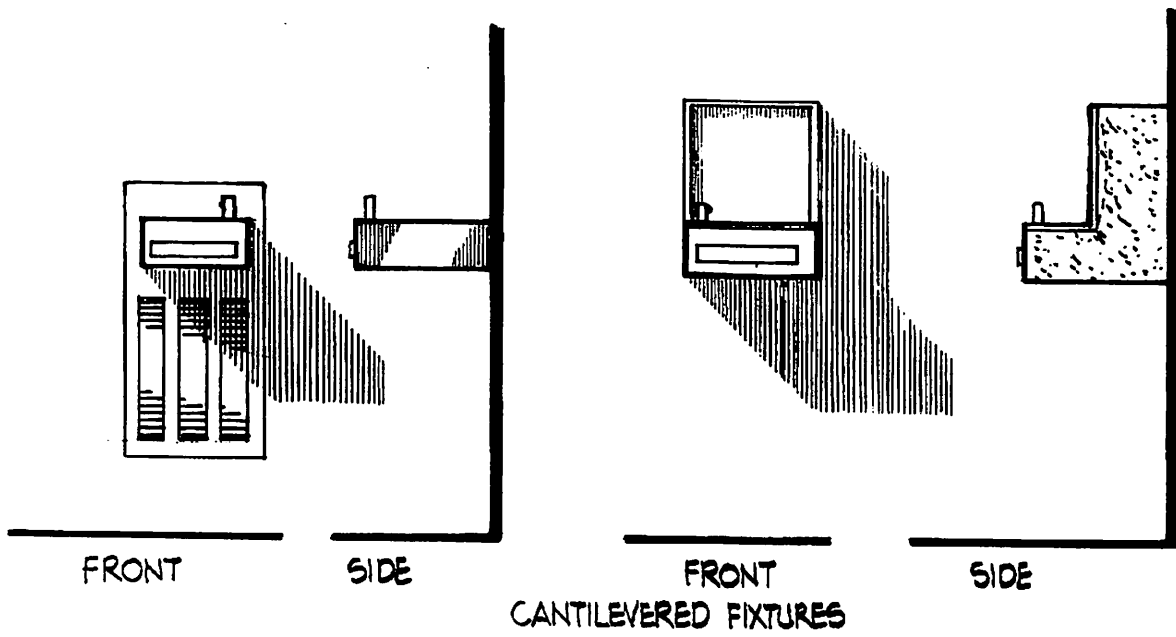


3) JOINED COMPACT AND FLOOR UNITS



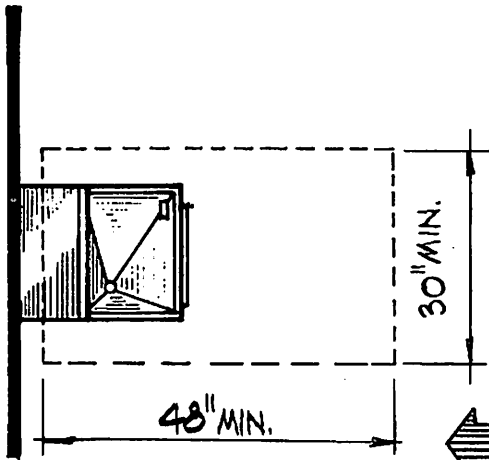
4) NON-RECESSED AND FLOOR FIXTURES

13.1.6- NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE FIXTURES

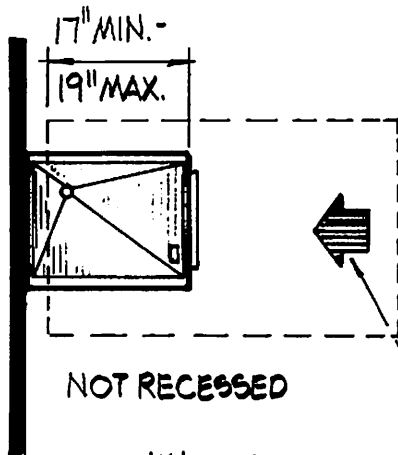


13.2- FOUNTAIN/WATERCOOLER IDENTIFICATION

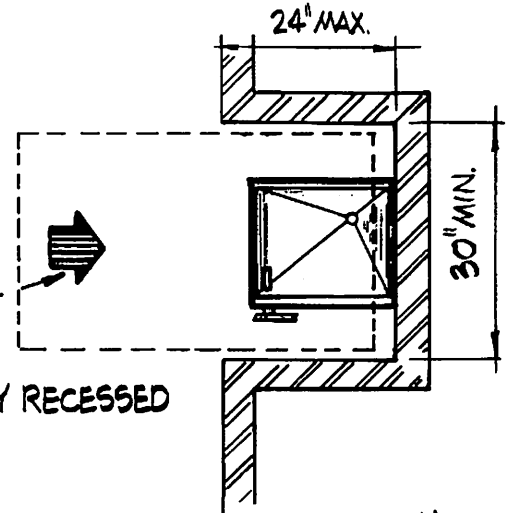
13.2.1-MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.



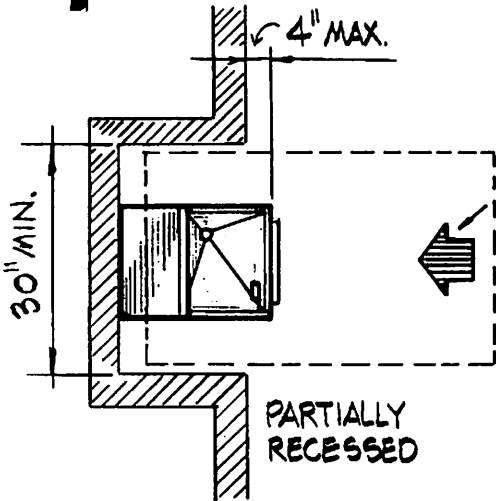
DIRECTION OF APPROACH IS ALWAYS PARALLEL TO THE 48" DIMENSION.



NOT RECESSED



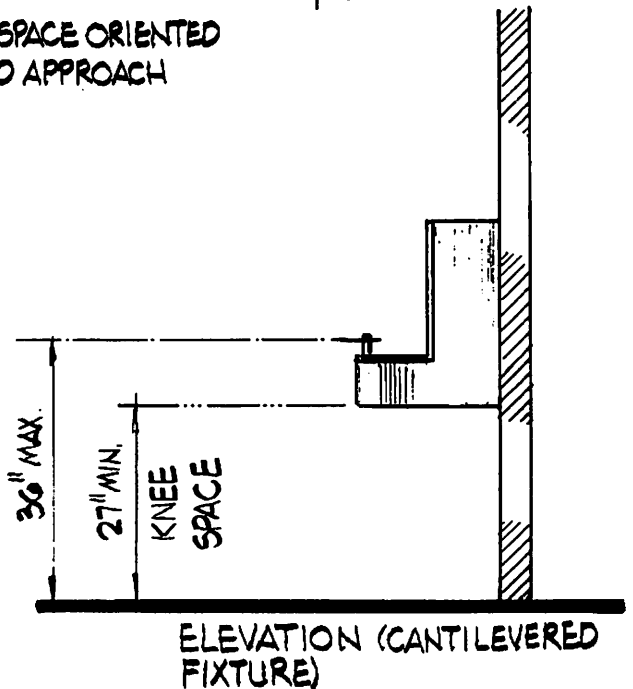
FULLY RECESSED



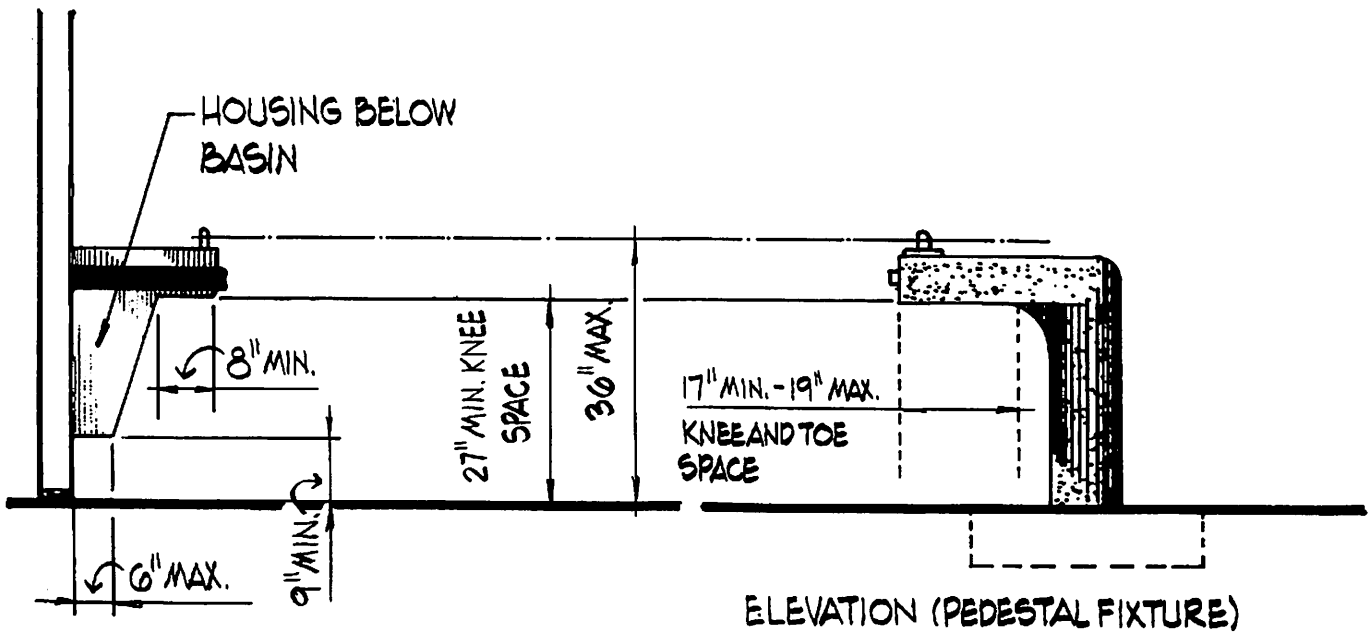
PARTIALLY RECESSED

CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ORIENTED FOR FORWARD APPROACH ONLY.

13.2.2 AND 13.2.3- CANTILEVERED, WALL MOUNTED, OR PEDESTAL FIXTURES



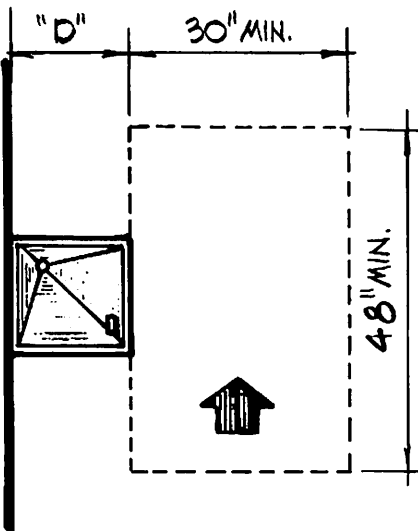
13.2- CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AND CLEARANCES



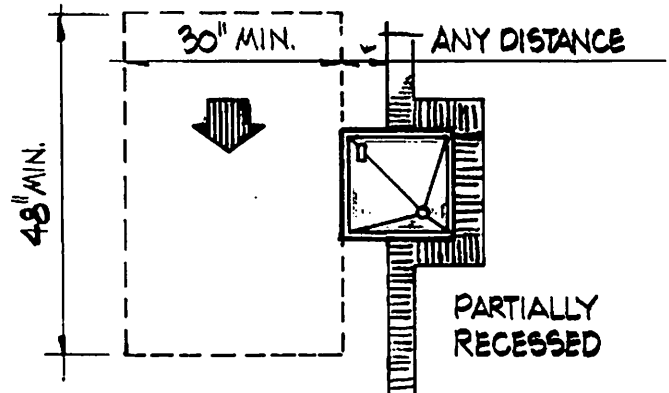
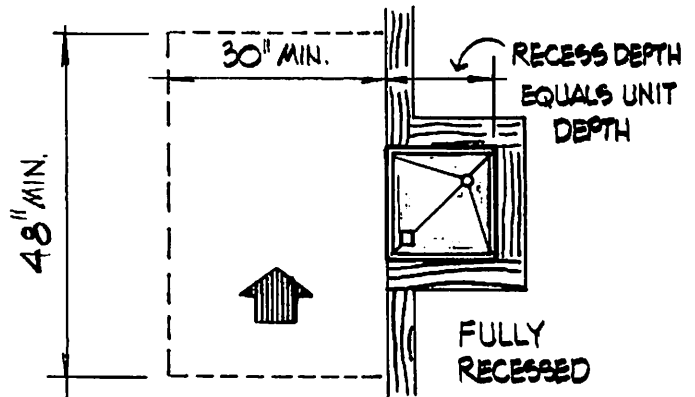
ELEVATION (WALL-MOUNTED FIXTURE)

ELEVATION (PEDESTAL FIXTURE)

13.2.4- KNEE/TOE SPACE FOR WALL MOUNTED FIXTURE



CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT FLOOR MOUNTED FIXTURE ORIENTED FOR SIDE APPROACH ONLY. UNIT DEPTH ("D") SHALL NOT OBSTRUCT THE CLEAR WIDTH OF AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE NOR THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.



13.2.5- FLOOR MOUNTED FIXTURE

CHAPTER 14 TELEPHONES

14.1 ACCESSIBLE (VOLUME CONTROL) TELEPHONES

14.1.1 If public pay telephones, public closed circuit telephones, or other public telephones are provided, then accessible telephones complying with 14.1.2 through 14.2.6.3 shall be provided in compliance with the following:

**ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(a)**

<u>NUMBER OF EACH TYPE OF TELEPHONE PROVIDED ON EACH FLOOR</u>	<u>MINIMUM NUMBER OF TELEPHONES REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH 14.1 AND 14.2 (1)</u>
1 or more single unit	1 per floor
1 bank (2)	1 per floor
2 or more banks (2)	1 per bank. The accessible unit may be installed as a single unit in proximity to the bank (either in a readily visible location or, its location shall be indicated by signage complying with 14.2.5.2). A minimum of one public telephone per floor shall comply with 14.2.3 for forward approach and one public telephone per bank shall comply with 14.2.4 for parallel (i.e., side) approach. (3)

**ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(a)**

**FR 9/8/92
At 41013**

(1) Additional public telephones may be installed at any height. Unless otherwise required, accessible telephones may use either a forward or parallel (i.e., side) approach.

(2) A bank consists of two or more adjacent public telephones, often installed as a unit.

**ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(a)**

(3) For exterior installations only, if dial tone first service is available, then a side reach accessible telephone may be installed instead of the required forward reach accessible unit (i.e., one telephone in proximity to each bank shall comply with this Chapter).

14.1.2 All telephones required to be accessible and complying with 14.1.4, 14.1.5, and the applicable requirements of 14.2 shall be equipped with a volume control.

**ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(b)**

14.1.3 In addition to 14.1.1, twenty five percent (25%), or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), of all other public telephones provided throughout the building or facility shall be equipped with volume control and shall be distributed among all types of public telephones, including closed circuit telephones. (See, also, 14.2.5.2.)

**ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(b)**

14.1.4 Telephones shall have push button controls where service for such equipment is available.

**Vol. I-C, 4.8(a)(6);
ADAAG 4.31.6**

14.1.5 All telephone installations shall comply with Chapter 10.

ADAAG 4.31.4

14.1.6 Accessible public telephones and text telephones shall be located on an accessible route.

**Vol. I-C, 4.8(a)(4);
ADAAG 4.1.3(1)**

14.1.7 Text telephones shall be provided as required by 14.3.1.1 and counted separately from the number of accessible telephones required by 14.1.1 and 14.1.3.

**Derived From
FR 7/26/91
At 35424**

(NOTE: A text telephone is often referred to as a Telecommunications Device for the Deaf, or TDD.)

14.1.8 For telephones installed in transient lodging guest rooms/sleeping accommodations, see 29.5.2 and 29.5.5. For telephones installed in covered multi-family dwellings, see 30.5.5.

Cross-Reference

14.2 ACCESS TO VOLUME CONTROL AND TEXT TELEPHONES

14.2.1 Clear floor space at accessible and text telephones shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum. Regardless of the direction of approach, the long dimension of the clear floor space shall always be parallel to the direction of travel.

**Vol. I-C,
4.8.1(a);
ADAAG
4.31.2**

14.2.2 No base, post, enclosure, fixed seat, etc., shall hinder, impede or obstruct the approach to, or clear floor space at, accessible and text telephones.

**Vol. I-C, 4.8(b)(1);
ADAAG 4.31.2**

14.2.3 FORWARD APPROACH

14.2.3.1 The clear space between enclosure walls shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum. The ends of the enclosure walls may project 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the front face of the telephone unit.

**Vol. I-C,
Pg. 142 (Top);
ADAAG
Fig. 44(b)**

14.2.3.2 If a shelf is provided below the telephone unit, then it shall project 20 inches (510 mm) maximum measured from the face of the unit.

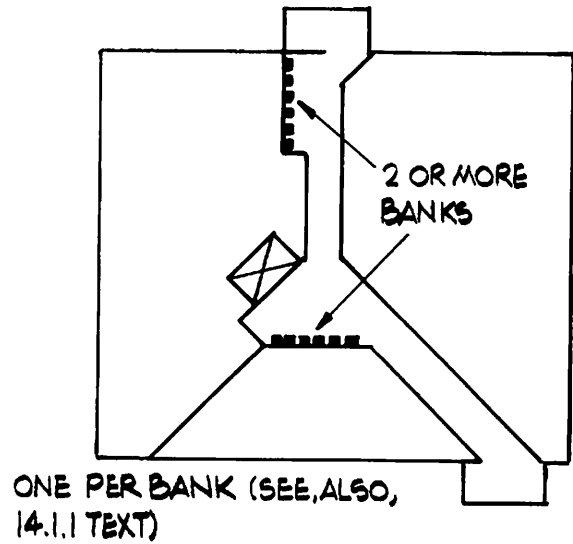
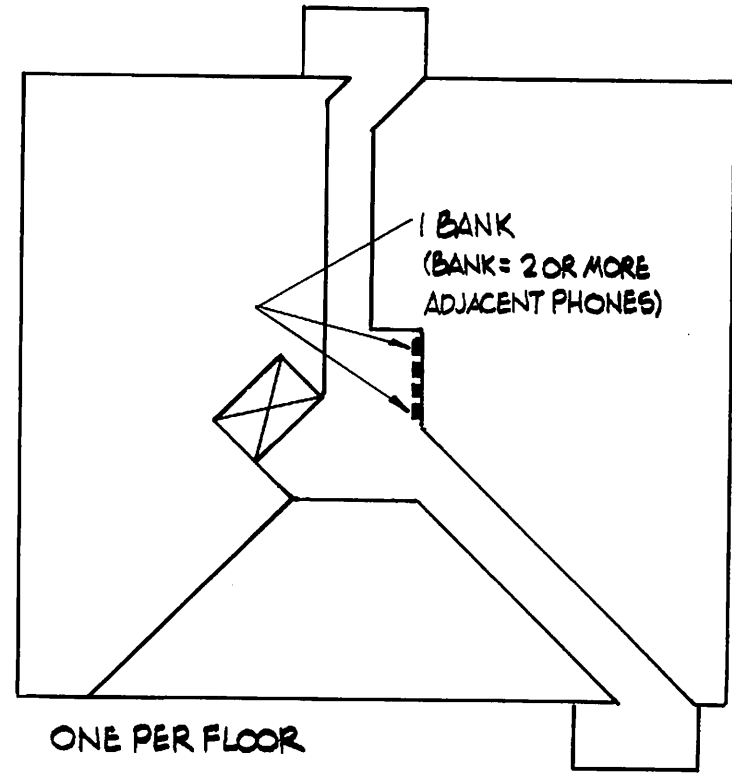
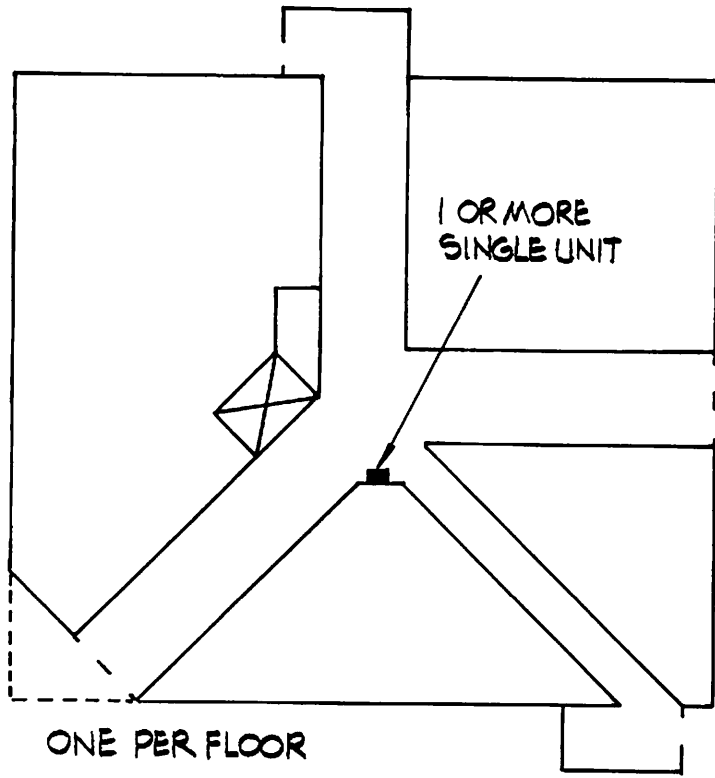
**Vol. I-C, Pg. 142 (Top);
ADAAG Fig. 44(b)**

14.2.3.3 The highest operable part of the telephone shall be located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 142 (Bot.);
ADAAG Figure 44(b)**

14.2.3.4 If the width between the inside faces of the enclosure walls is 36 inches (915 mm) or greater, then the enclosure walls may project more than 24 inches (610 mm) measured from the face of the unit. If a shelf is provided, then it shall comply with 14.2.3.2.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 142 (Top);
ADAAG Figure 44(b)**



14.1.- IF PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES, PUBLIC CLOSED CIRCUIT TELEPHONES, OR OTHER PUBLIC TELEPHONES ARE PROVIDED, THEN ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES COMPLYING WITH 14.1.2 THROUGH 14.2.6.3 SHALL BE PROVIDED AS INDICATED.

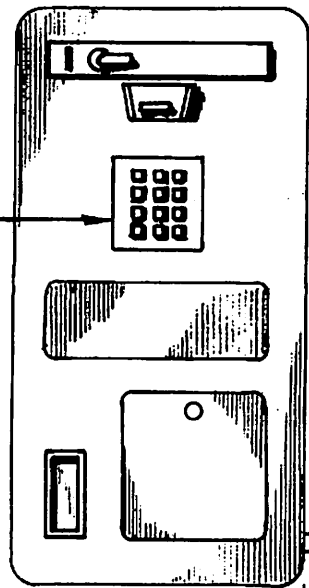
14.1.- (NUMBER OF) ACCESSIBLE [VOLUME CONTROL] TELEPHONES (SEE, ALSO, 14.1.3.)

14.1.2- ALL TELEPHONES REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE AND COMPLYING WITH 14.1.4, 14.1.5, AND THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 14.2 SHALL BE EQUIPPED WITH A VOLUME CONTROL.

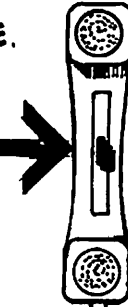
14.1.7- TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD) SHALL BE PROVIDED AS REQUIRED BY 14.3.1.1 AND COUNTED SEPARATELY FROM THE ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES REQUIRED BY 14.1.1 AND 14.1.3.

14.1.8- OTHER TELEPHONE INSTALLATIONS:
TRANSIENT LODGING
GUEST ROOMS — 29.5.2 AND 29.5.5
COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS — 30.5.5

14.1.4- PUSH BUTTON CONTROLS (IF SUCH SERVICE IS AVAILABLE).

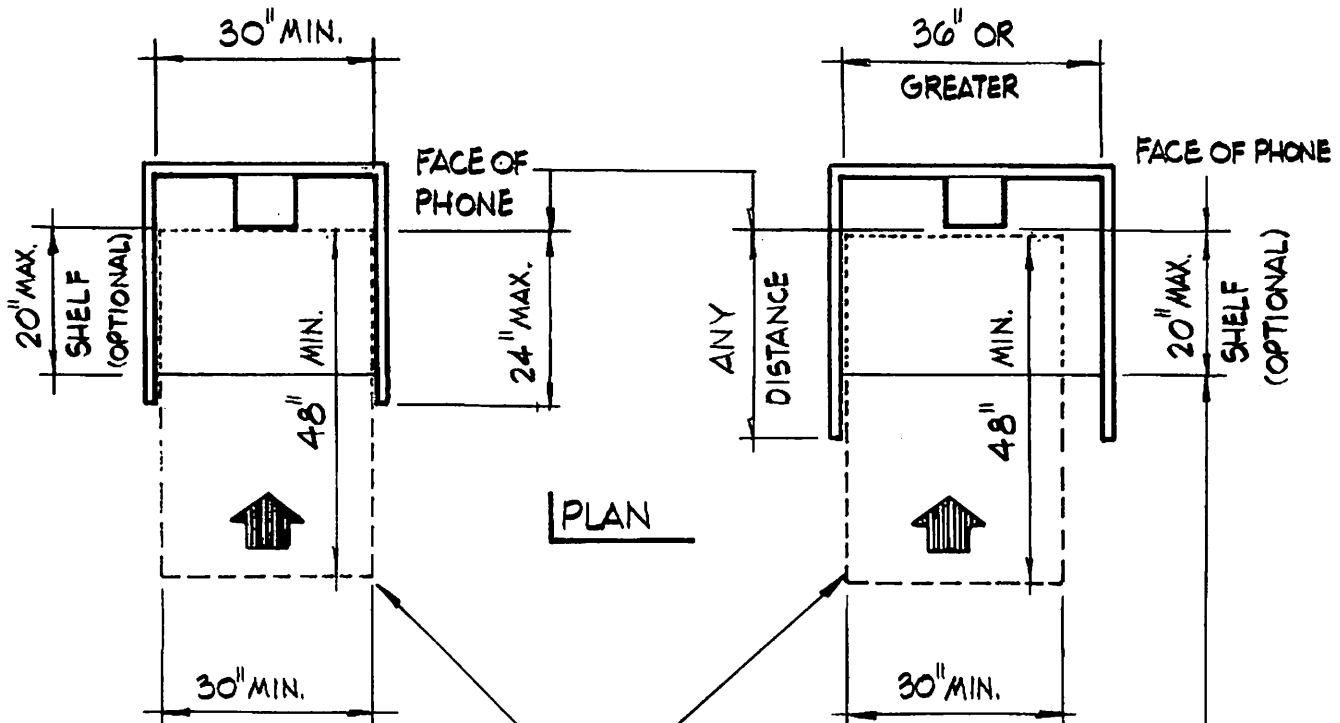


14.2.5.1- TELEPHONES SHALL BE HEARING AID COMPATIBLE. VOLUME CONTROLS SHALL BE CAPABLE OF OF 12 DBA MIN. TO 18 DBA MAX. ABOVE NORMAL. IF AUTOMATIC RESET IS PROVIDED, THEN 18 DBA MAY BE EXCEEDED.



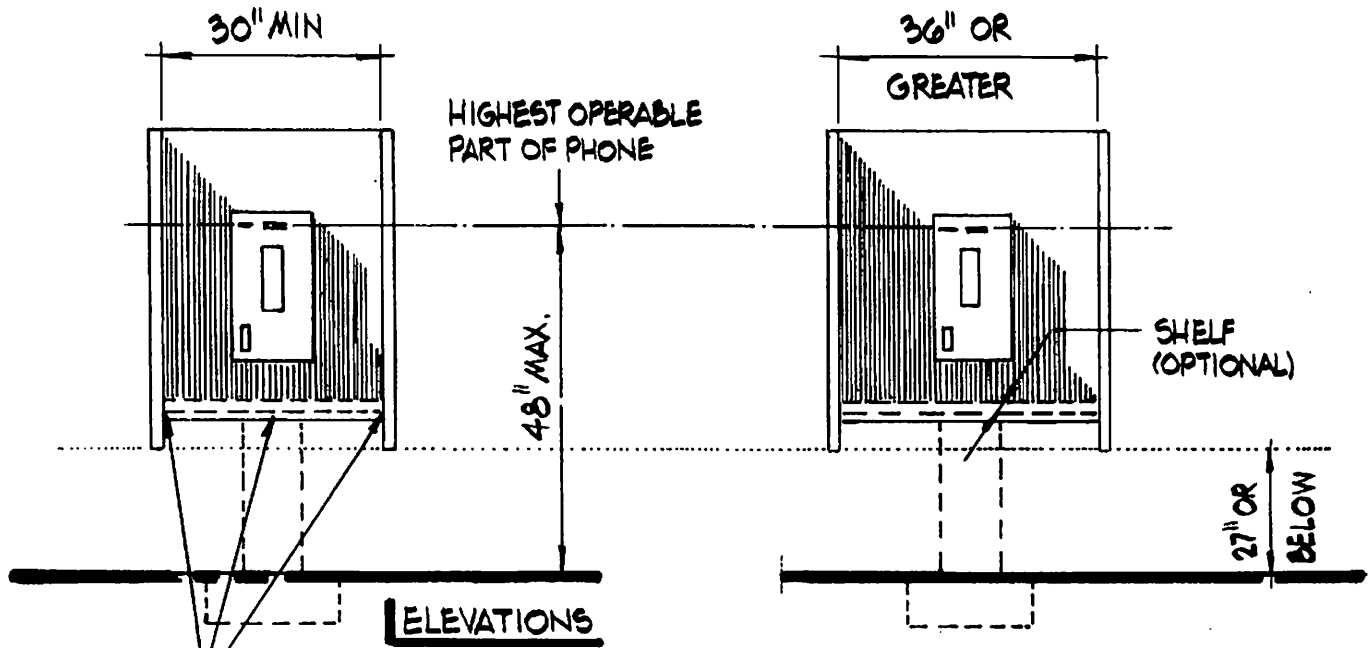
14.2.5.3- 29" MINIMUM CORD LENGTH

14.1 AND 14.2.5- ACCESSIBLE (VOLUME CONTROL) TELEPHONES



14.2.1- CLEAR FLOOR SPACE REQUIRED AT ACCESSIBLE (VOLUME CONTROL) AND TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD). DIRECTION OF APPROACH ALWAYS PARALLEL TO 48" DIMENSION.

14.2.3.2- SHELF (OPTIONAL)



NO PHONE BOOKS THIS AREA, THIS APPLICATION.

14.2.3- ACCESS TO TELEPHONES: FORWARD APPROACH

14.2.4 PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH

14.2.4.1 For a side approach the space between enclosure walls may be any dimension.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 141 (Top);
ADAAG Fig. 44(a)**

14.2.4.2 The forward edge of the enclosure walls and the forward edge of the shelf (if provided) may project 10 inches (255 mm) maximum measured from the face of the telephone unit.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 141 (Top);
ADAAG Fig. 44(a)**

14.2.4.3 The highest operable part of the telephone shall be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 141 (Bot.);
ADAAG Fig. 44(a)**

14.2.5 HEARING AID COMPATIBLE TELEPHONES, VOLUME CONTROLS, SIGNAGE AND CORD LENGTH

14.2.5.1 Telephones shall be hearing aid compatible. Volume controls shall be capable of 12dbA minimum to 18dbA maximum above normal. If an automatic reset is provided, then 18dbA may be exceeded.

**ADAAG 4.31.5(1),
4.31.5(2)**

14.2.5.2 Telephones with volume control shall be identified by a sign containing a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves. Such sign shall comply with 18.1.4.

ADAAG 4.30.7(2)

14.2.5.3 Handset connecting cords shall be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.

**Vol. I-C, 4.8(a)(8);
ADAAG 4.31.8**

14.2.6 TELEPHONE BOOKS (IF PROVIDED)

14.2.6.1 FORWARD REACH

14.2.6.1.1 For enclosures where a shelf is not present, the book(s) shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

**ADAAG 4.31.7,
4.2.5,
Fig. 5(a)**

14.2.6.1.2 If a shelf is present, then the book(s) shall be located from the shelf to 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

**ADAAG 4.31.7,
4.2.5,
Fig. 5(b)**

14.2.6.2 SIDE REACH

14.2.6.2.1 For enclosures where a shelf is not present, the book(s) shall be located 9 inches (230 mm) minimum to 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

**ADAAG 4.31.7,
4.2.6,
Fig. 6(b)**

14.2.6.2.2 If a shelf is present, then the book(s) shall be located from the shelf to 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

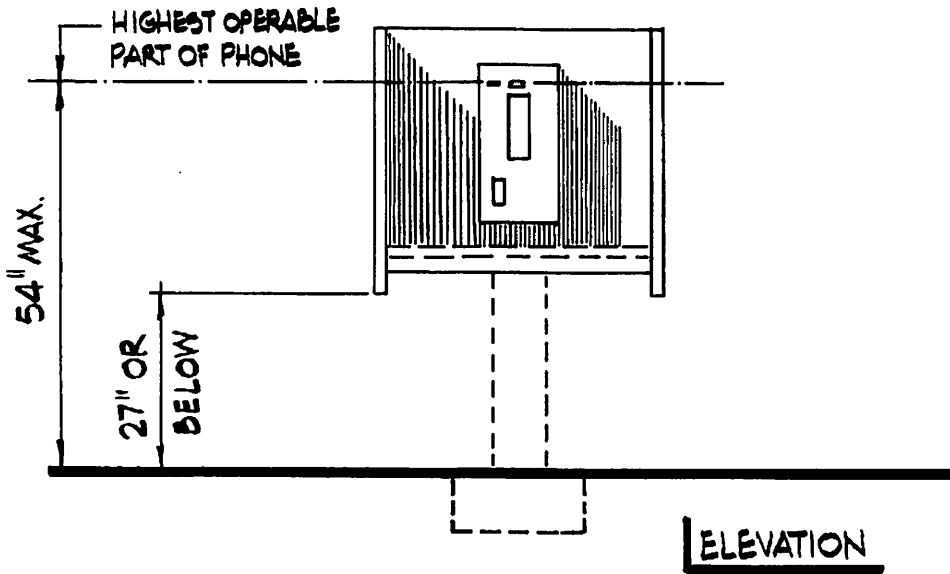
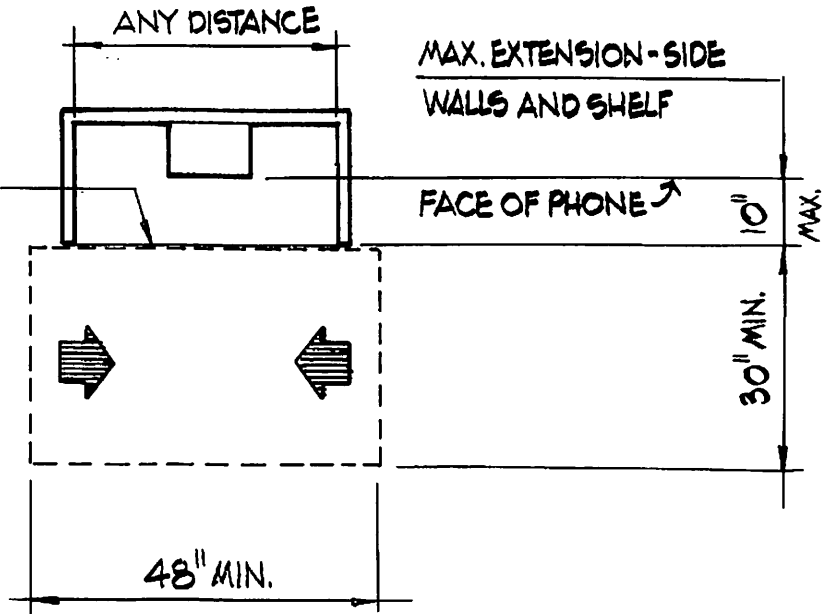
**ADAAG 4.31.7,
4.2.6,
Fig. 6(b)**

14.2.6.3 The location of the telephone book(s) shall not hinder, impede, nor obstruct access to, nor use of, accessible and text telephones.

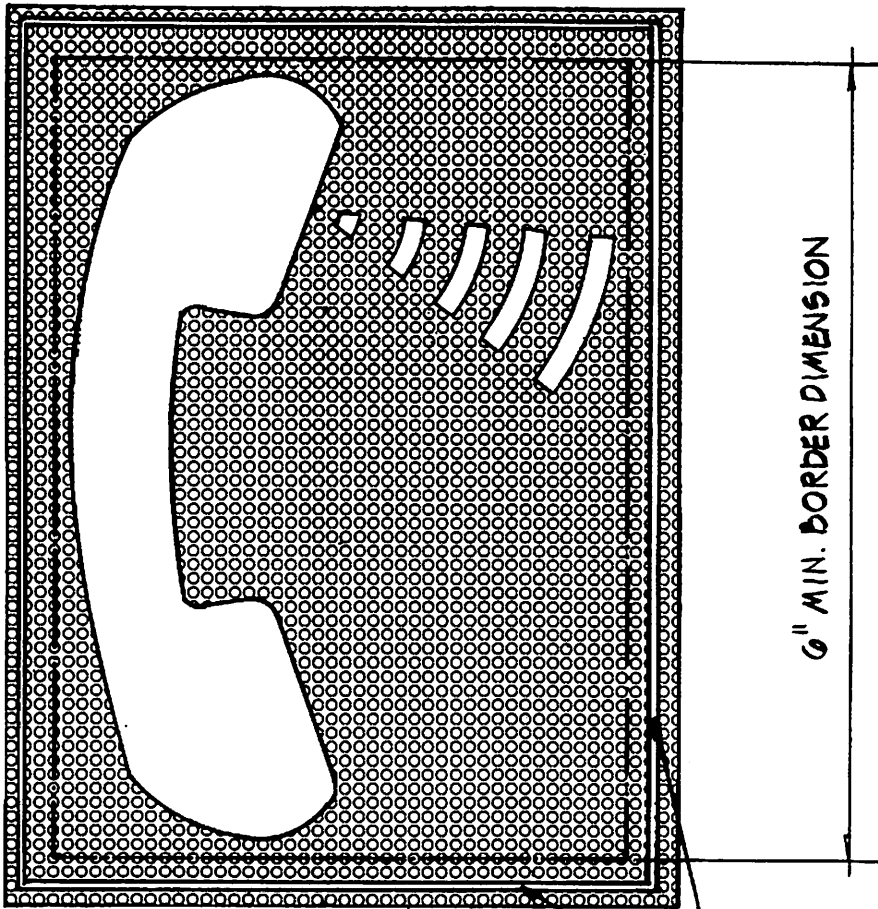
**Vol. I-C, 4.8(b);
ADAAG 4.31.2**

14.2.4.2 - SHELF (OPTIONAL)

PLAN



14.2.4 - ACCESS TO TELEPHONES: PARALLEL (SIDE) APPROACH



NOTES:

1. USE OF A BORDER IS OPTIONAL.
2. CORNERS MAY BE SQUARE, RADIUS, 45°, ETC.
3. SIGN SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.4 (LIGHT-ON-DARK OR DARK-ON-LIGHT).
4. IMAGE MAY BE PLACED VERTICALLY (AS SHOWN) OR AT AN ANGLE. IMAGE IS COMPOSED OF TELEPHONE HANDSET AND RADIATING SOUND WAVES.
5. BORDER DIMENSION IS THE UNOBSTRUCTED FIELD WHEREIN THE PICTOGRAM (I.E., THE IMAGE) IS LOCATED, NOT THE PICTOGRAM HEIGHT.

14.2.5.2-ACCESSIBLE (VOLUME CONTROL) TELEPHONE IDENTIFICATION SIGN

14.3 TEXT TELEPHONES (TELECOMMUNICATIONS DEVICE FOR THE DEAF, OR TDD)

14.3.1 BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES REQUIRING TEXT TELEPHONES

14.3.1.1 A TDD shall be provided at the following locations or within the following building types:

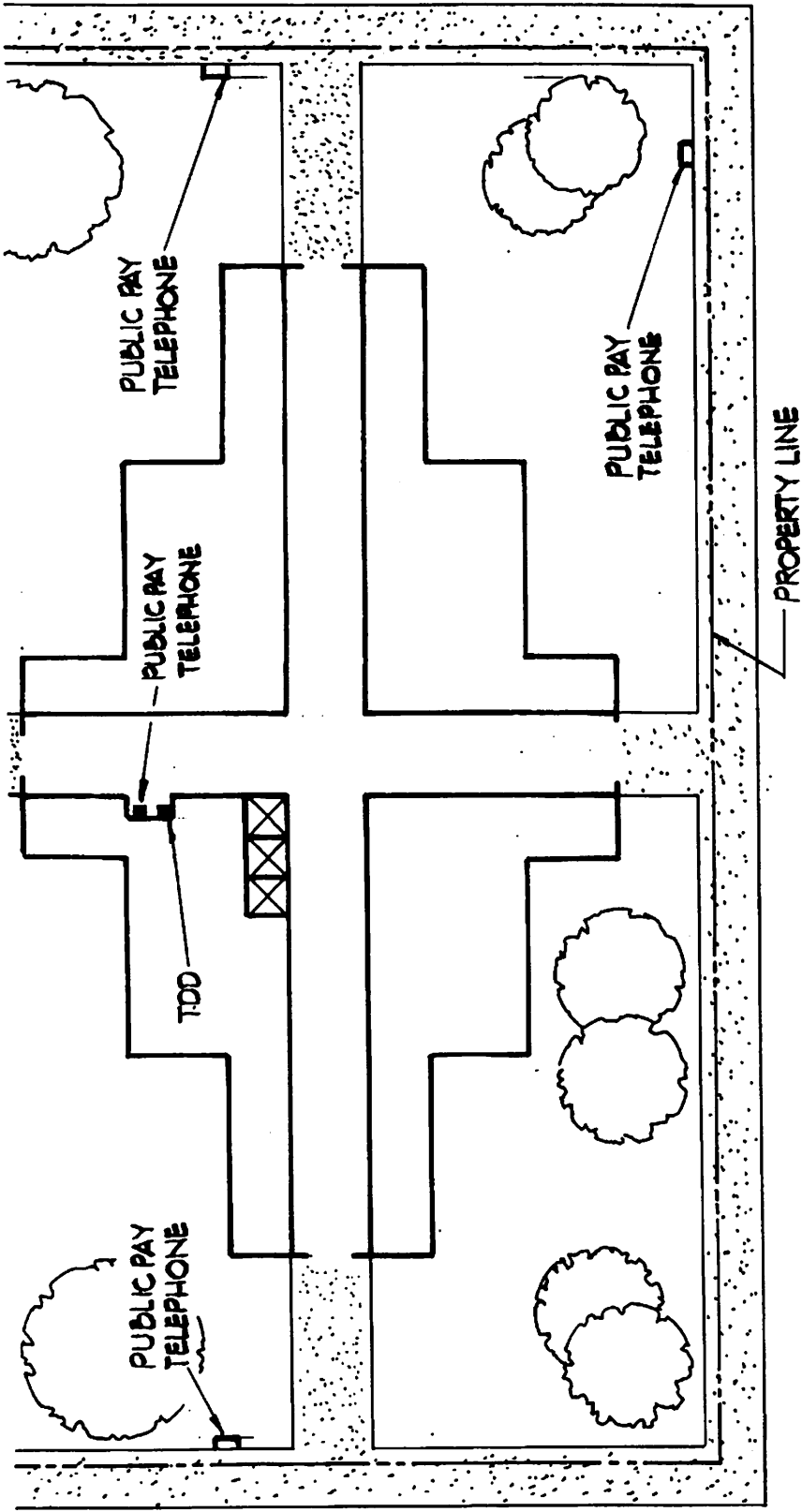
- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| (1) | ■ For a privately-owned facility, if the total number of interior and exterior public pay telephones at a site is four (4) or more with a minimum of one in an interior location, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided within the building or facility | ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(c)(i):
Title III |
| | ■ For a publicly-owned facility, if an interior public pay telephone is provided in an area subject to public use, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided within the building in an area subject to public use. | ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(c)(i)
1/13/98;
Title II |
| (2) | ■ If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a privately-owned Arena, Convention Center, Shopping Mall, Hotel With a Convention Center, or Stadium, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided within the building or facility | ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(c)(ii);
Title III |
| | ■ If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a publicly-owned Arena, Convention Center, or Stadium, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided on each floor level having an interior public pay telephone. | ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(c)(ii)
1/13/98;
Title II |
| (3) | If a public pay telephone is located in, or adjacent to, a | |
| | 1. Hospital Emergency Room, | |
| | 2. Hospital Recovery Room, or | ADAAG |
| | 3. Hospital Waiting Room, | 4.1.3(17)(c)(iii) |
| | then a minimum of one TDD shall be provided at each such location. | |

(NOTE: For transit facilities such as bus and rail terminals, depots, etc., the requirements for text telephones shall be satisfied by compliance with 24.3.12.4. For airport passenger terminals, the requirements for text telephones shall be satisfied by compliance with 24.4.5.)

Cross-Reference

14.3.1.2 If a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three (3) or more public pay telephones, then a minimum of one (1) public pay telephone in each such bank shall be equipped with a shelf and TDD connection outlet in compliance with 14.3.2.2.

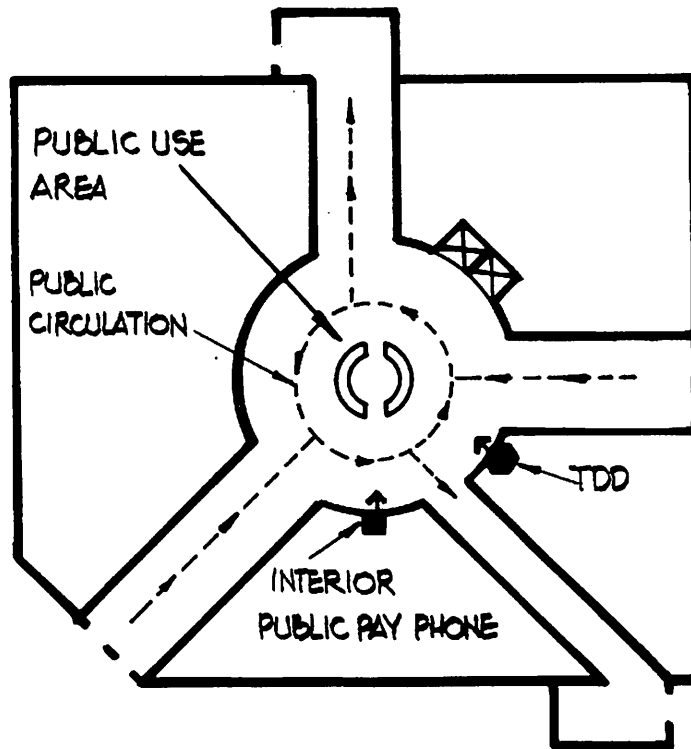
ADAAG
4.1.3(17)(d)



14.3.1.1(1)---PRIVATELY-OWNED FACILITIES:
 IF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES AT A SITE IS 4 OR MORE WITH A MINIMUM OF ONE AT AN INTERIOR LOCATION, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD SHALL BE PROVIDED WITHIN THE BUILDING OR FACILITY.

EXAMPLE: 3 EXTERIOR PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES AND ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE = TOTAL OF 4 PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES.
 A MINIMUM OF ONE TDD IS REQUIRED TO BE PROVIDED.

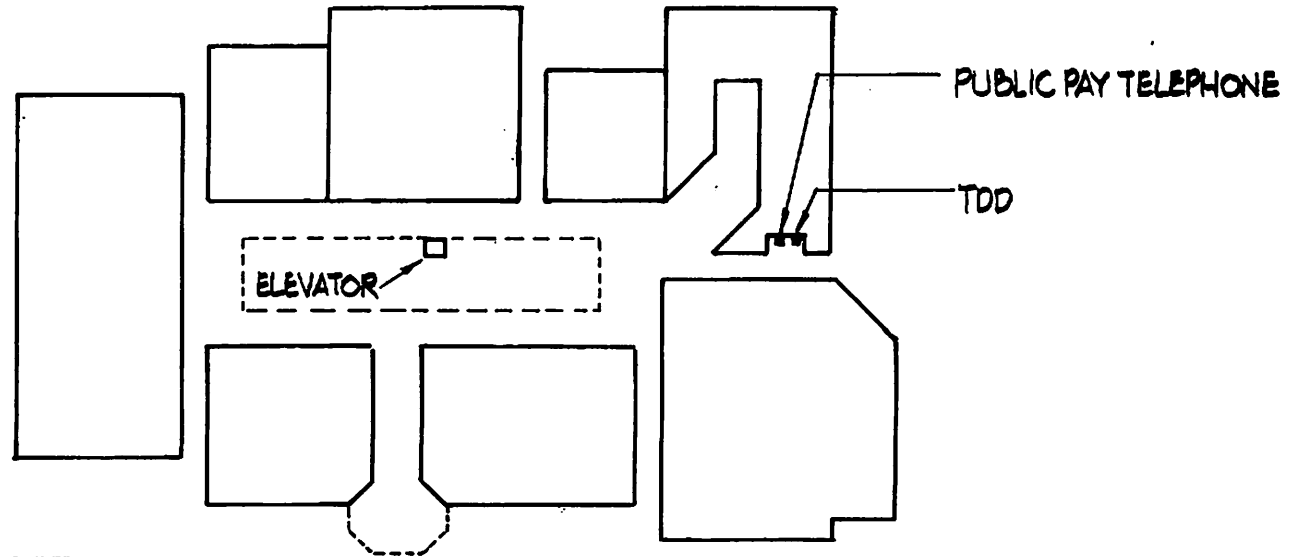
14.3.1---BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES REQUIRING TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)



14.3.1.1(1)---PUBLICLY-OWNED FACILITIES:

IF AN INTERIOR PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE IS PROVIDED IN AN AREA SUBJECT TO PUBLIC USE, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD SHALL BE PROVIDED WITHIN THE BUILDING IN AN AREA SUBJECT TO PUBLIC USE.

14.3.1---BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES REQUIRING TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

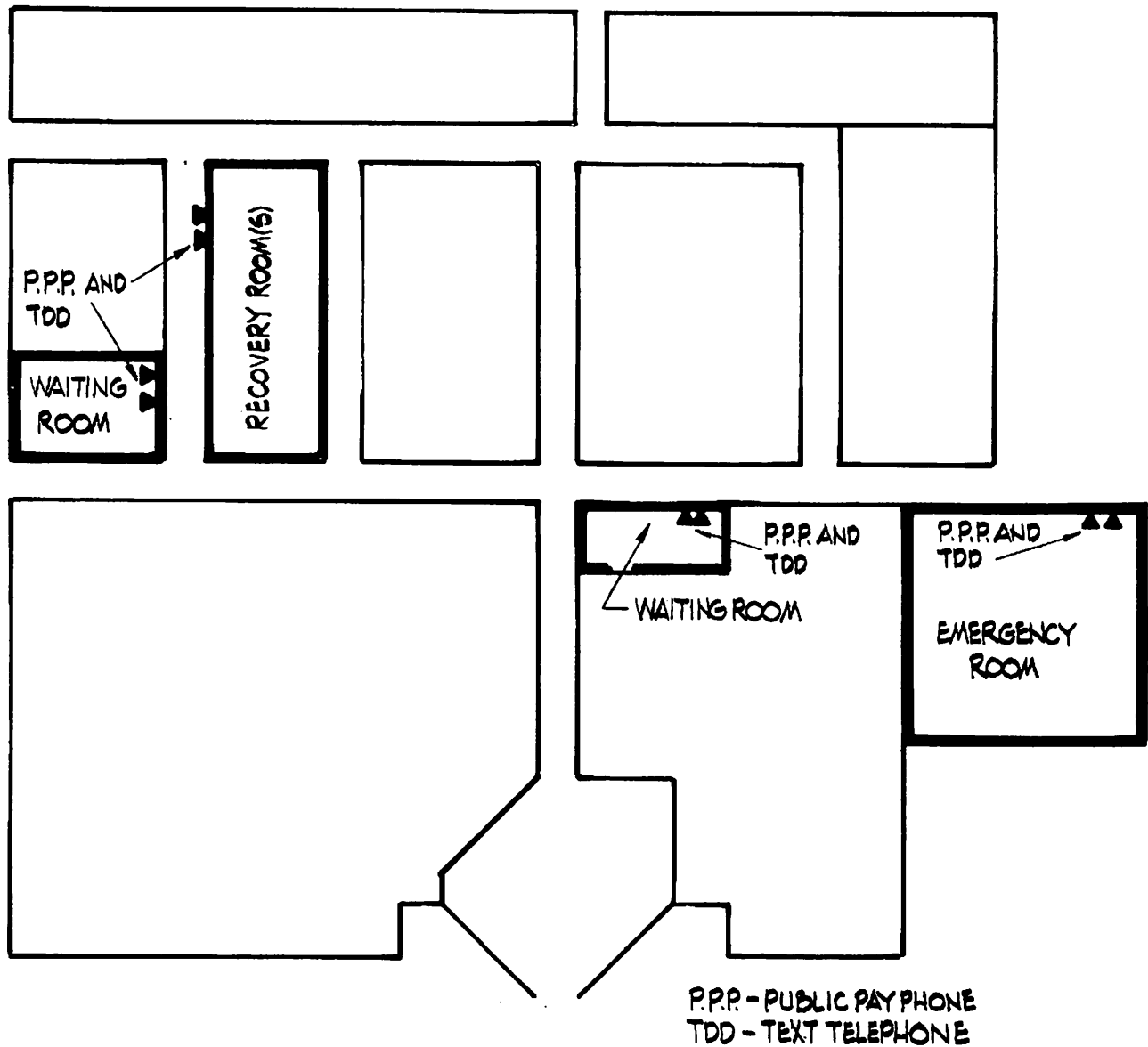


14.3.1.1(2)---

IF AN INTERIOR PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE IS PROVIDED IN ANY OF THE FOLLOWING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD SHALL BE PROVIDED AS INDICATED BELOW:

<u>PRIVATELY-OWNED FACILITY TYPE</u>	<u>NUMBER OF TDD's AND LOCATION</u>
ARENA	MINIMUM ONE PER BUILDING/FACILITY
CONVENTION CENTER	
SHOPPING MALL	
HOTEL WITH CONVENTION CENTER	
STADIUM	
<u>PUBLICLY-OWNED FACILITY TYPE</u>	<u>NUMBER OF TDD's AND LOCATION</u>
ARENA	MINIMUM ONE ON EACH FLOOR
CONVENTION CENTER	LEVEL HAVING AN INTERIOR
STADIUM	PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE

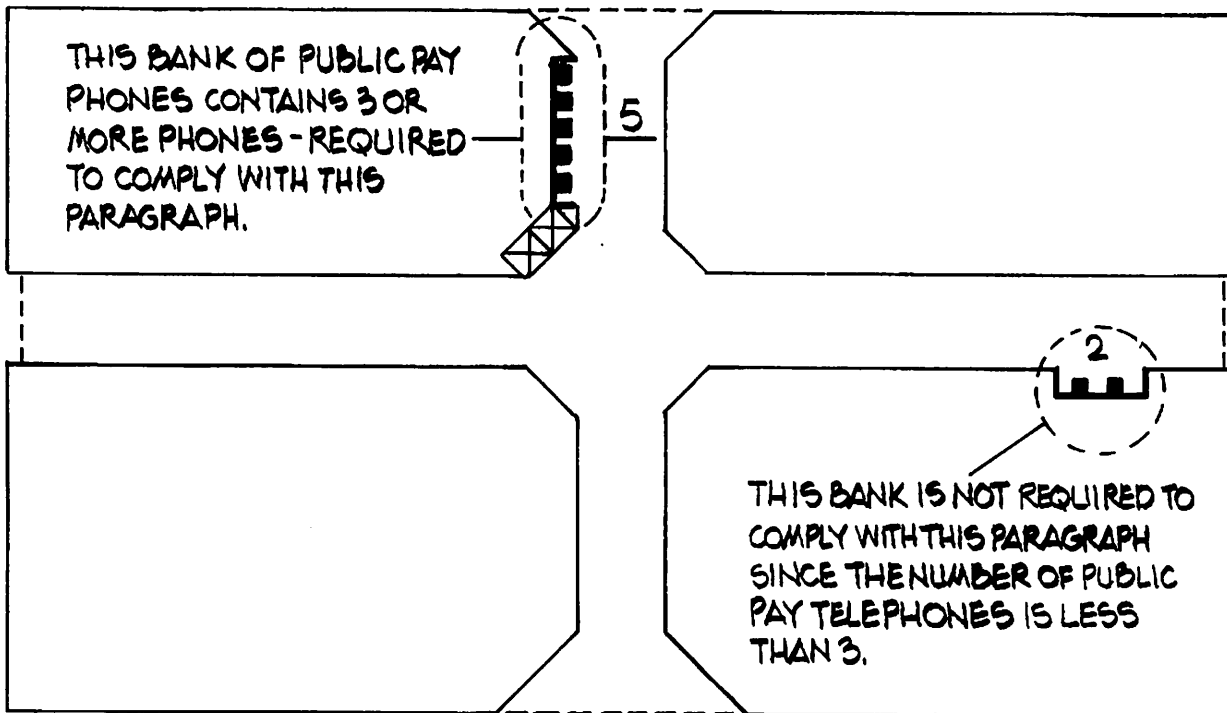
14.3.1---BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES REQUIRING TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)



14.3.1.1 (3) - IF A PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE IS LOCATED IN, OR ADJACENT TO, A HOSPITAL: EMERGENCY ROOM; RECOVERY ROOM; OR WAITING ROOM, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE TDD SHALL BE PROVIDED AT EACH SUCH LOCATION.

(NOTE: SEE 24.3.12.4 FOR TRANSIT FACILITIES [BUS/RAIL TERMINALS, DEPOTS, ETC.]; SEE 24.4.5 FOR AIRPORT PASSENGER TERMINALS.)

14.3.1 - BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES REQUIRING TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)



14.3.1.2- IF A BANK OF TELEPHONES IN THE INTERIOR OF A BUILDING CONSISTS OF 3 OR MORE PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE IN EACH SUCH BANK SHALL BE EQUIPPED WITH A SHELF AND TDD (TEXT TELEPHONE) CONNECTION OUTLET IN COMPLIANCE WITH 14.3.2.2.

14.3.1-BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES REQUIRING TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

14.3.2 APPLICATION

14.3.2.1 A TDD used with a pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. If an acoustic coupler is used, then the telephone handset cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the TDD and the telephone receiver.

ADAAG 4.31.9(1)

14.3.2.2 Pay telephones designed to accommodate a portable TDD shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a TDD and shall have a 6 inches (150 mm) minimum vertical clearance in the area where the TDD is to be placed.

ADAAG 4.31.9(2)

14.3.2.3 *The clear floor space required at TDD enclosures and at telephones designed for use with a portable TDD shall be oriented for a forward approach only.

Goes To How
TDD Used

14.3.3 SIGNAGE

14.3.3.1 If a building or facility has a public TDD, then directional signage incorporating the International TDD Symbol and complying with 18.1.4 shall be placed adjacent to all banks of telephones which do not contain a TDD.

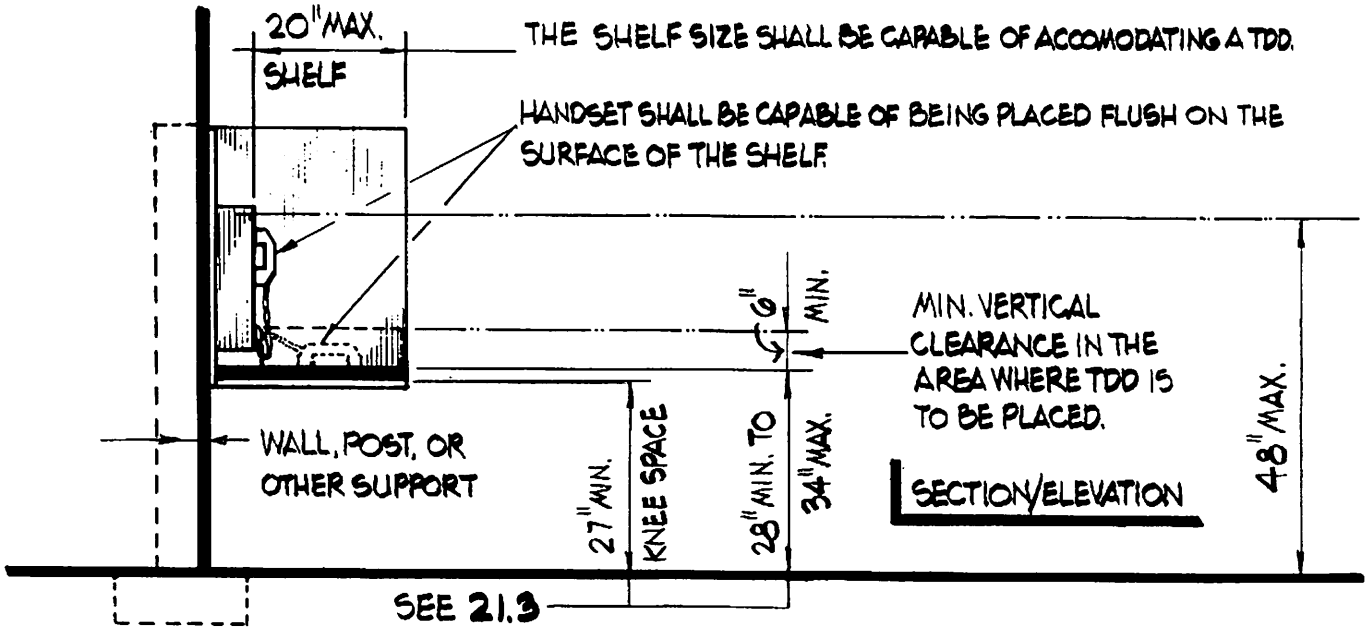
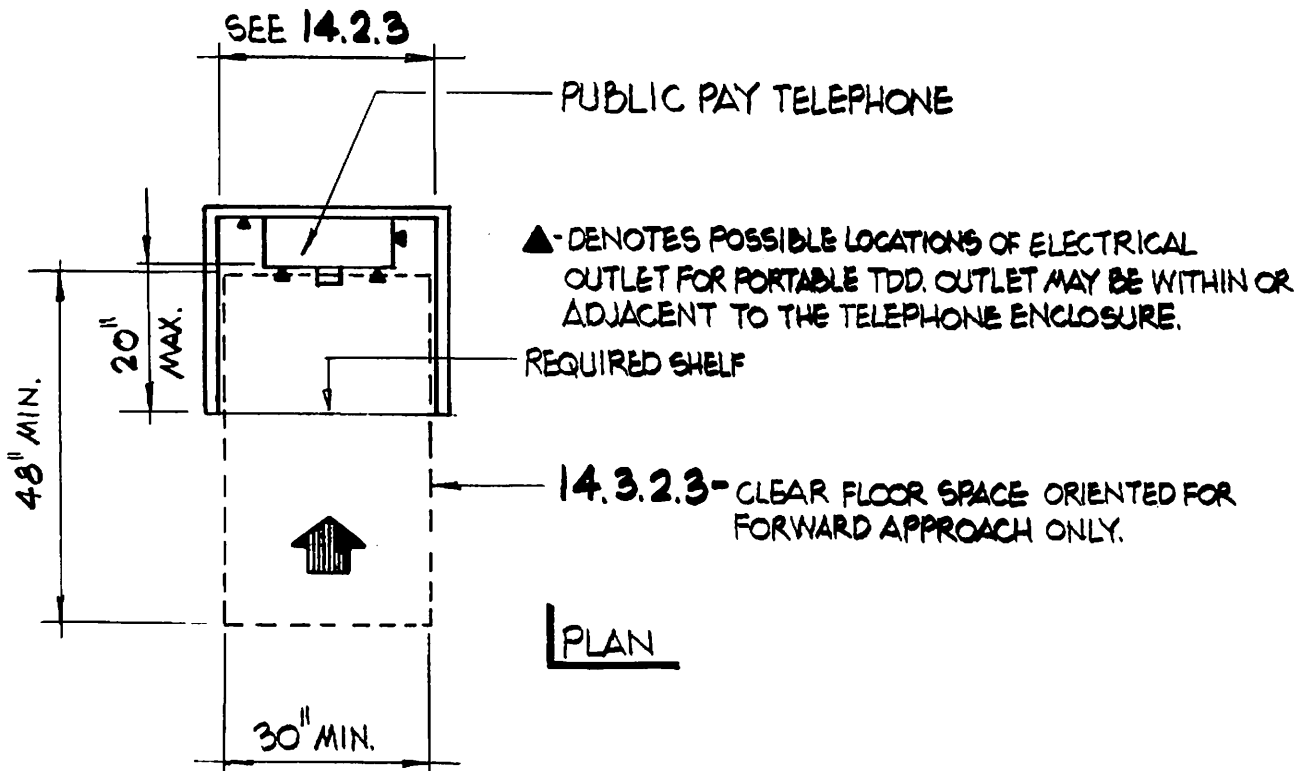
ADAAG 4.30.7(3)

14.3.3.2 A TDD shall be identified by the International TDD Symbol which shall comply with 18.1.4 and the sign shall be displayed in a visible location clearly indicating which public telephone contains the TDD or TDD outlet.

ADAAG 4.30.7(3)

***14.3.3.3 If a building or facility has no banks of public pay telephones, then directional signage shall be provided at the building or facility entrance (e.g., in a building directory) *clearly indicating the location of nearest available text telephone.* Such signage shall comply with 18.1.2.**

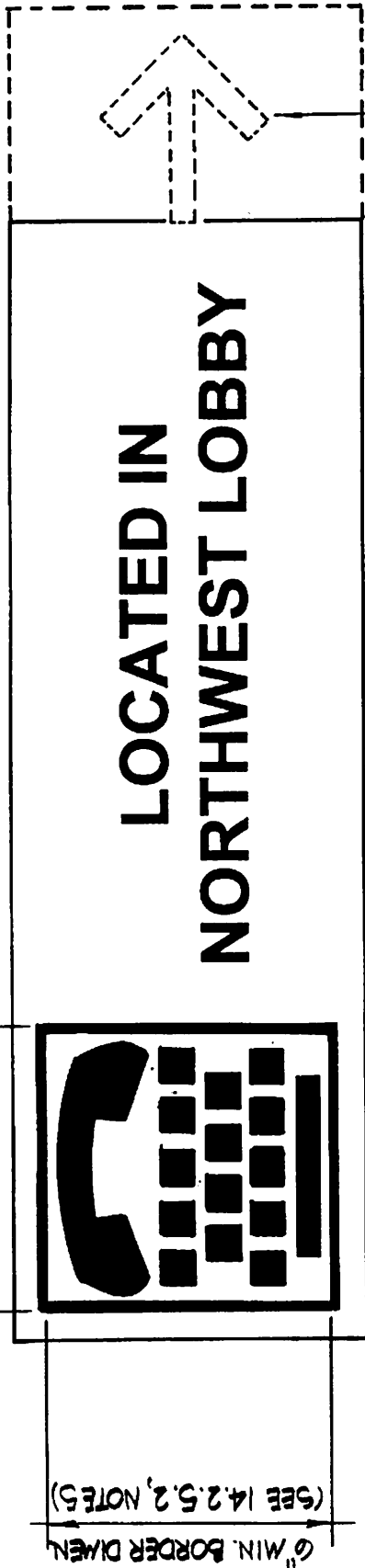
ADAAG 4.30.7(3)



14.3.2.2 - PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES DESIGNED TO ACCOMODATE A PORTABLE TDD
 (NOTE: FOR OTHER TDD REQUIREMENTS, SEE 14.3.2.1 [TEXT].)

14.3.2 - (TDD) APPLICATION

USE OF THE INTERNATIONAL TDD SYMBOL IS REQUIRED REGARDLESS OF SIGN COMPOSITION (BORDER IS OPTIONAL)



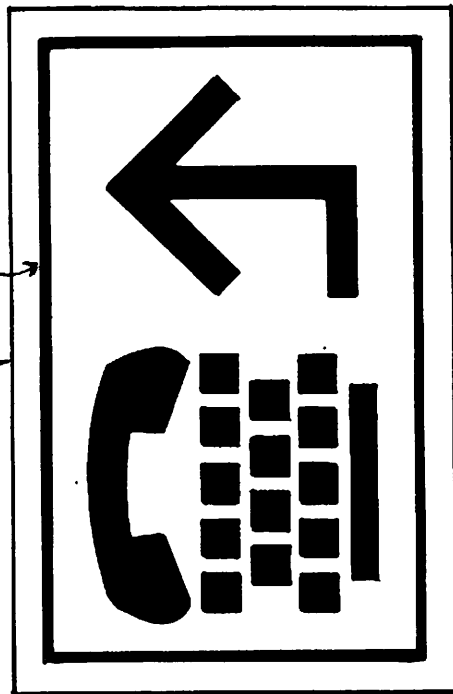
6" MIN. BORDER DIMEN (SEE 14.2.5.2, NOTE 5)

SIGN SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.2

EXAMPLE 1 - SIGN WITH TDD SYMBOL AND DIRECTIONAL MESSAGE

USE OF ARROW IS OPTIONAL

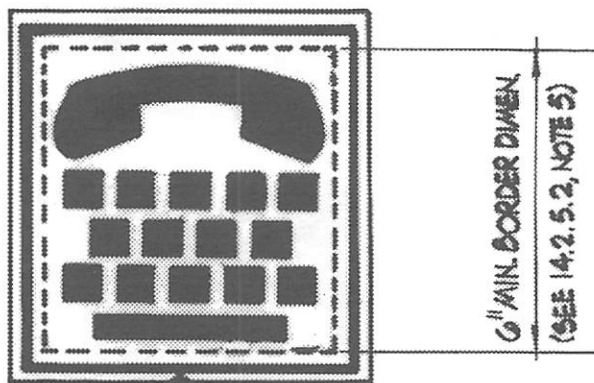
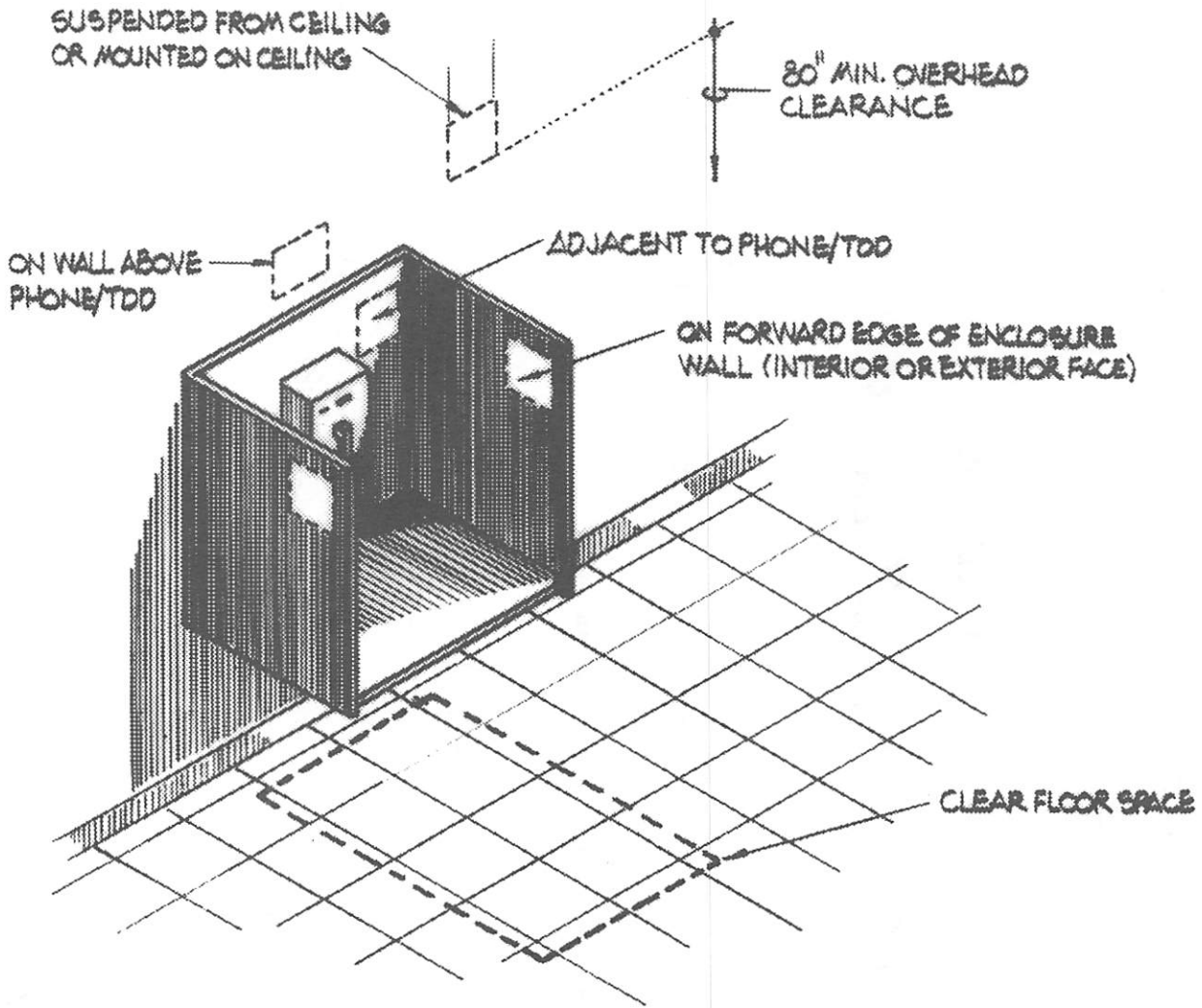
OPTIONAL BORDER



EXAMPLE 2 - SIGN WITH TDD SYMBOL AND DIRECTIONAL ARROW

14.3.3.1- IF A BUILDING OR FACILITY HAS A PUBLIC TDD, THEN DIRECTIONAL SIGNAGE INCORPORATING THE INTERNATIONAL TDD SYMBOL AND COMPLYING WITH 18.1.2 SHALL BE PLACED ADJACENT TO BANKS OF TELEPHONES WHICH DO NOT CONTAIN A TDD.

14.3.3- SIGNAGE



BORDER IS OPTIONAL

INTERNATIONAL TDD SYMBOL

14.3.3.2- A TDD SHALL BE IDENTIFIED BY THE INTERNATIONAL TDD SYMBOL WHICH SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.4 AND THE SIGN SHALL BE DISPLAYED IN A VISIBLE LOCATION CLEARLY INDICATING WHICH PUBLIC TELEPHONE CONTAINS THE TDD OR TDD OUTLET.

14.3.3- SIGNAGE

EXAMPLE 1

BORDER IS OPTIONAL

**TEXT TELEPHONE (TDD) LOCATED
AT 124 SOUTH HOUSTON STREET**

14.3.3.3- IF A BUILDING OR FACILITY HAS NO BANKS OF PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES, THEN DIRECTIONAL SIGNAGE SHALL BE PROVIDED AT THE BUILDING OR FACILITY ENTRANCE (E.G., IN A BUILDING DIRECTORY) CLEARLY INDICATING THE LOCATION OF THE NEAREST AVAILABLE TEXT TELEPHONE (TDD). SUCH SIGNAGE SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.2.

**THIS BUILDING HAS NO PUBLIC TELEPHONES;
FOR NEAREST TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD) GO TO
2511 NEWKIRK AVENUE OR 106 BEACH 57 STREET**

EXAMPLE 2

BORDER IS OPTIONAL

14.3.3- SIGNAGE

**CHAPTER 15
ELEVATORS AND PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS**

15.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Vol. I-C, 4.9.2(b);

15.1.1 If an elevator is provided, then it shall be a passenger elevator and shall comply with this Chapter. The elevator shall serve each story or level, including mezzanines.

**ADAAG 4.1.3(5);
FR 7/26/91
At 35418**

15.1.2 If more than one passenger elevator is provided, then all passenger elevators shall meet the requirements of this Chapter.

**Vol. I-C, 4.9, Preface;
ADAAG 4.1.3(5)**

15.1.3 An accessible elevator shall be located on an accessible route on all levels used by building employees and the general public.

**Vol. I-C, 4.9.2(a);
ADAAG 4.10.1**

***15.1.4** *Freight elevators shall not be considered as meeting the requirements of this Chapter. If the only elevator provided is used to serve both freight and passengers, then it shall meet the requirements for passenger elevators.*

**Vol. I-C,
4.9.2(b)**

15.1.5 A passenger elevator that provides service from a garage to only one level or story of a building is not required to serve other stories or levels within that building.

**ADAAG 4.1.3(5),
Exception 1**

(NOTE: This does not apply to multi-family dwellings; see 30.4.1.5.5.)

Cross-Reference

15.1.6 A minimum five (5) foot-candles (53.8 lux) illumination level shall be provided at the car controls, platform, car threshold, and landing sill.

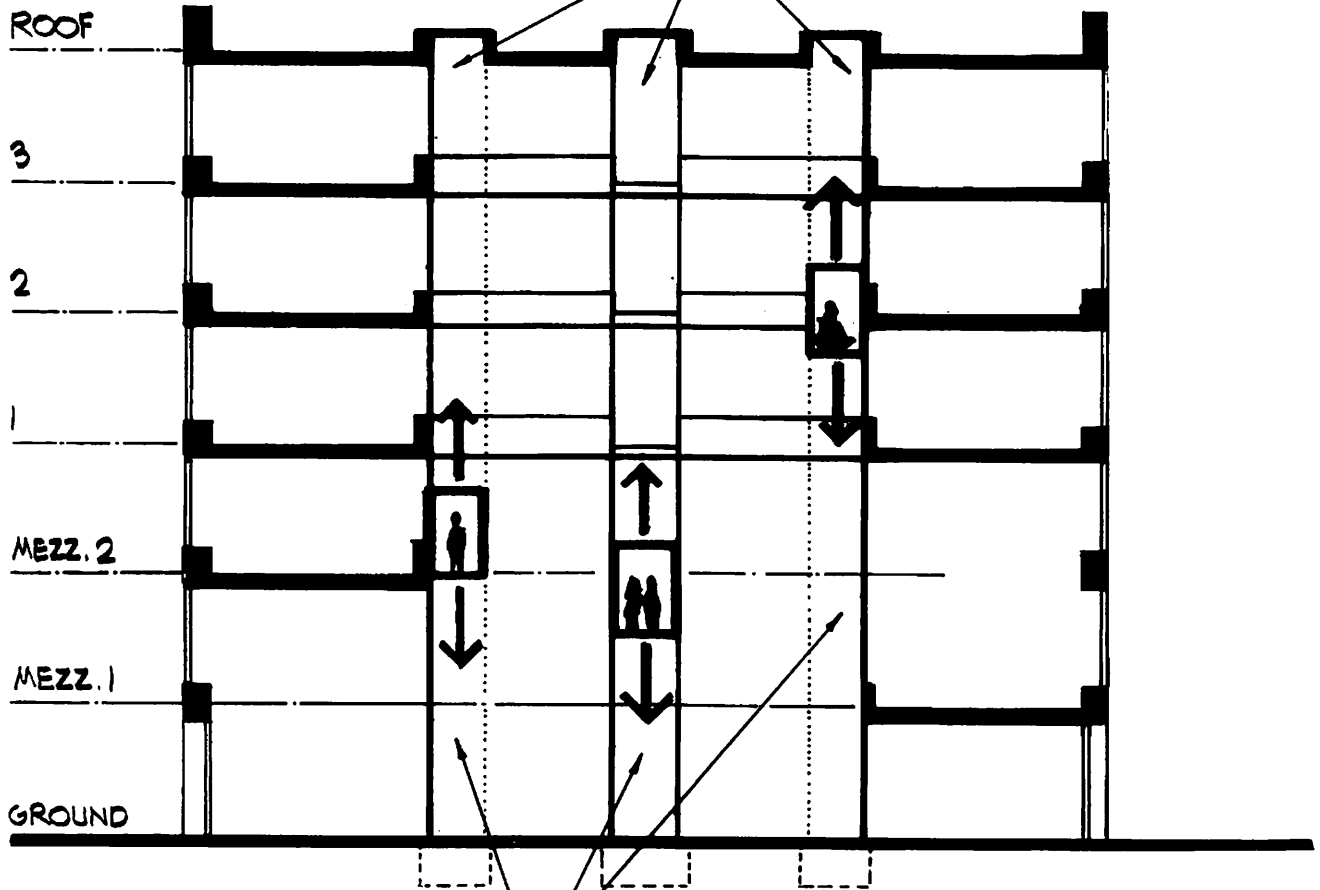
ADAAG 4.10.11

15.1.7 Ramps complying with Chapter 5 may be used in lieu of an elevator.

**Vol. I-C, 4.9, Preface;
ADAAG 4.1.3(5)3,
Title III Tech Assist.
Manual, Page 58,
Exception 3**

15.1.1- IF AN ELEVATOR IS PROVIDED, THEN IT SHALL BE A PASSENGER ELEVATOR AND SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS CHAPTER. THE ELEVATOR SHALL SERVE EACH STORY OR LEVEL, INCLUDING MEZZANINES.

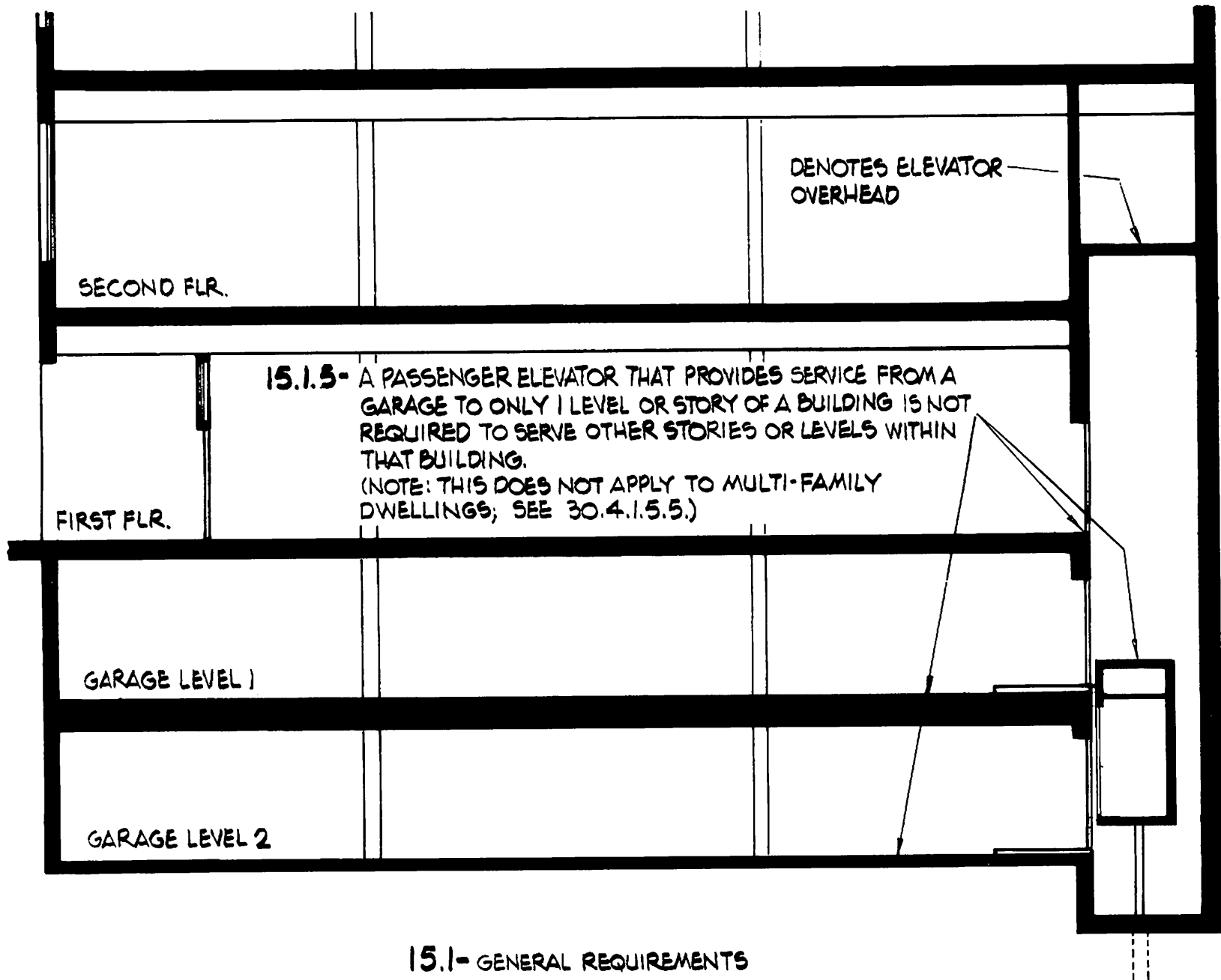
(SEE, ALSO, 15.1.4-TEXT.)



15.1.2- IF MORE THAN 1 PASSENGER ELEVATOR IS PROVIDED, THEN ALL PASSENGER ELEVATORS SHALL MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS CHAPTER.

15.1.3- AN ACCESSIBLE ELEVATOR SHALL BE LOCATED ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE ON ALL LEVELS USED BY BUILDING EMPLOYEES AND THE GENERAL PUBLIC.

15.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



15.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

15.2 BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS

15.2.1 All buildings of State, County or Municipal government, or any government agencies, two (2) stories or more in height. (See, also, 31.4.2.2.)

**USDoJ 35.151(c);
FR 7/26/91 At 35710**

15.2.1.1 An elevator is not required in publicly-owned facilities such as, but not limited to, drawbridge towers, boat traffic towers, lock and dam control stations, and train dispatching towers provided they meet all of the following conditions:

- (1) A two (2) story maximum height;
- (2) A 500 gross square feet (46.5 square meters) maximum area for the story above or below the accessible ground floor;
- (3) A five (5) person maximum occupant content on the story above or below the accessible ground floor;
- (4) Not open to the general public.

**ADAAG 4.1.3(5),
Exception 1(b)
1/13/98**

15.2.1.2 Elevators in air traffic control towers are not required to serve the cab of the tower and the floor immediately below the cab. (NOTE: An elevator serving the tower cab will obstruct the necessary 360 degree clear view. This Paragraph also applies to the floor immediately below the cab since the elevator overhead machinery and clearance will project into the tower cab. While elevator access to the cab and possibly the floor immediately below is not required, air traffic control towers shall be designed to be adaptable under this Paragraph so that an accessible means of vertical access [e.g., a platform wheelchair lift] can be installed at a later date. If the overall tower height will permit the use of a hydraulic elevator and the elevator overhead clearance does not project into the tower cab, then the floor immediately below the cab shall be served by the elevator.)

**ADAAG
4.1.3(5),
Exception 5
1/13/98**

**FR 1/13/98 At
2004**

15.2.2 Publicly owned schools, colleges, and university buildings two (2) or more stories in height.

**Title II,
FR 7/26/91 At 35710**

15.2.3 Publicly owned dormitories two (2) or more stories in height.

**Title II,
FR 7/26/91 At 35710**

15.2.4 The professional office of a health care provider (e.g., doctor, dentist, physical therapist, psychiatrist, etc.) two (2) or more stories in height.

Title III, 303(b)

(NOTE: The professional office of a health care provider is the location where a person or entity regulated by the State of North Carolina to provide professional services related to the physical and mental health of an individual makes such services available to the public. In a two-story building that houses health care providers only on the ground floor, an elevator is not required unless the second floor, or designated parts thereof, is designed or intended for use by a health care provider.)

**USDoJ
36.401(d)(1)(i);
FR 7/26/91 At
35579**

<p>*15.2.5 All shopping centers and shopping malls two (2) or more stories in height. (NOTE: For mixed occupancies, if a Group M classification applies to five or more individual spaces, then an elevator shall be required. In a two-story building that houses sales or rental establishments only on the ground floor, an elevator is not required unless the second floor, or designated parts thereof, are designed or intended for use by a sales or rental establishment.)</p>	<p>Title III, 303(b) USDoJ 36.401(d)(1)(ii); FR 7/26/91 At 35579; Vol. I, 310; Table 704.1</p>
<p>15.2.6 A terminal, depot or other station used in specified public transportation that is two (2) or more stories in height. (See, also, 24.3.4.)</p>	<p>ADAAG 10.1</p>
<p>15.2.7 All airport passenger terminals two (2) or more stories in height.</p>	<p>ADAAG 10.1</p>
<p>(NOTE: For 15.2.1 through 15.2.7, the gross floor area per story shall not be a factor in determining the presence of an elevator. In addition, for 15.2.6 and 15.2.7, any area housing passenger services [such as, but not limited to: boarding; debarking; loading and unloading; baggage check-in and baggage claim, dining facilities, etc.] which are open to the public shall be on an accessible route from an accessible entrance.)</p>	<p>USDoJ 36.401(d)(2)(ii)</p>
<p>*15.2.8 All privately-owned buildings three (3) or more stories in height having an area of 3,000 gross square feet (280 square meters) or more per story. (NOTE 1: If a privately-owned building or facility has three or more stories at any point, then an elevator is required if the gross area of any one story is equal to, or greater than, 3,000 gross square feet [280 square meters] per story. NOTE 2: If a privately-owned building or facility is either less than three stories or has less than 3,000 gross square feet per story, then an elevator is not required. In order to be exempt, a building or facility need not qualify on both counts. For example: a five story building having 2,800 gross square feet [260 square meters] per story is not required to have an elevator; or, a two story building having 20,000 gross square feet [1,858 square meters] per story is likewise exempt.)</p>	<p>Title III, 303(b) FR 7/26/91 At 35578 FR 7/26/91 At 35578</p>
<p>15.2.9 For privately-owned covered multi-family dwellings, see 30.4.1.5.1 through 30.4.1.5.3.</p>	<p>Cross-Reference</p>

15.2.10 ACCESSIBILITY MAINTAINED

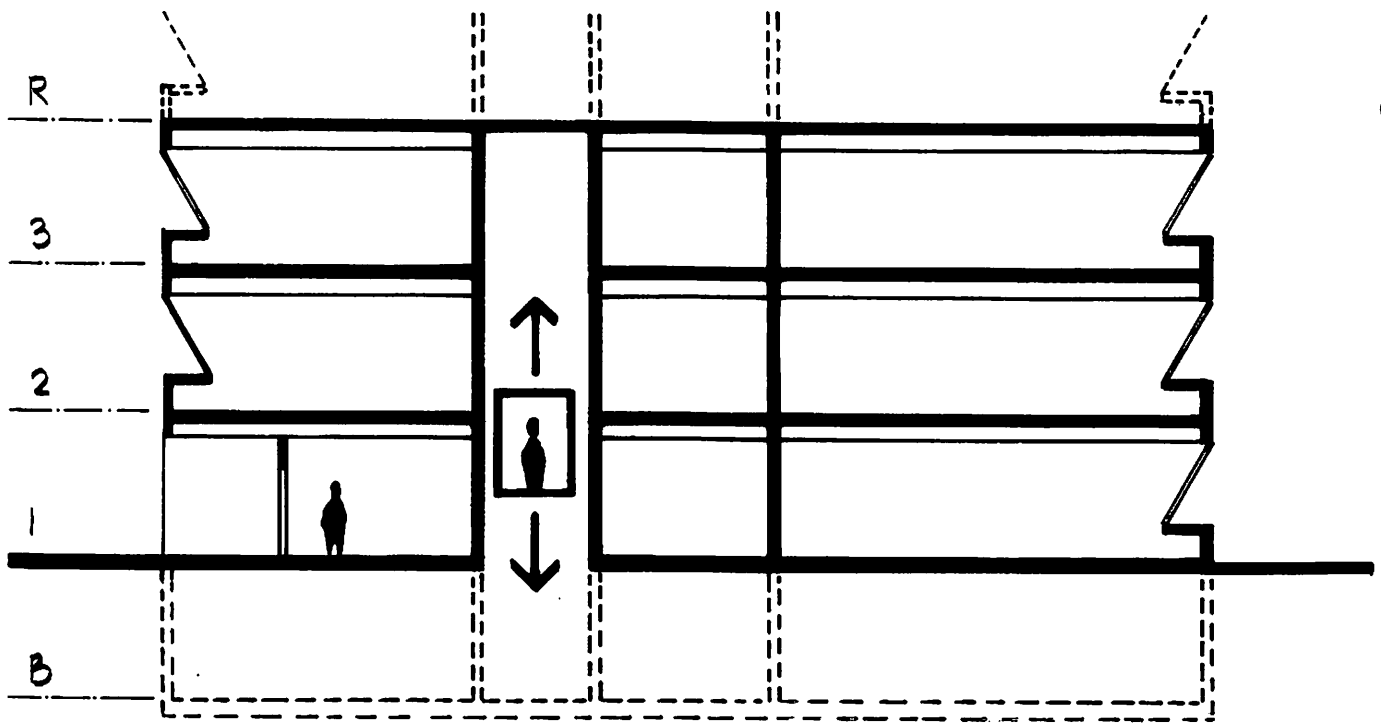
15.2.10.1 In buildings and facilities not required to have an elevator, the floors above and below the accessible ground floor shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code except for elevator service. (NOTE: If a building or facility is not required to have an elevator, then it is not necessary to provide another accessible means of vertical access [e.g., a ramp or a lift] between each story or level. The fact that an elevator is not required is an exemption from the requirement to have an accessible route to a floor[s] not served by an elevator. Any stair[s] connecting floors or levels above or below the accessible entry level shall comply with Chapter 8.)

**ADAAG
4.1.3(5)**

**FR 7/26/91 At
35418
FR 7/26/91 At
35580**

15.2.10.2 If toilet and/or bathing facilities are provided on a level not served by an elevator, then accessible toilet and/or bathing facilities shall be provided on the accessible ground floor.

**ADAAG
4.1.3(5)**



15.2.1- ALL BUILDINGS OF STATE, COUNTY OR MUNICIPAL GOVERNMENT, OR ANY GOVERNMENT AGENCIES, 2 STORIES OR MORE IN HEIGHT. (SEE, ALSO, 15.2.1.1 AND 31.4.2.2 [TEXT].)

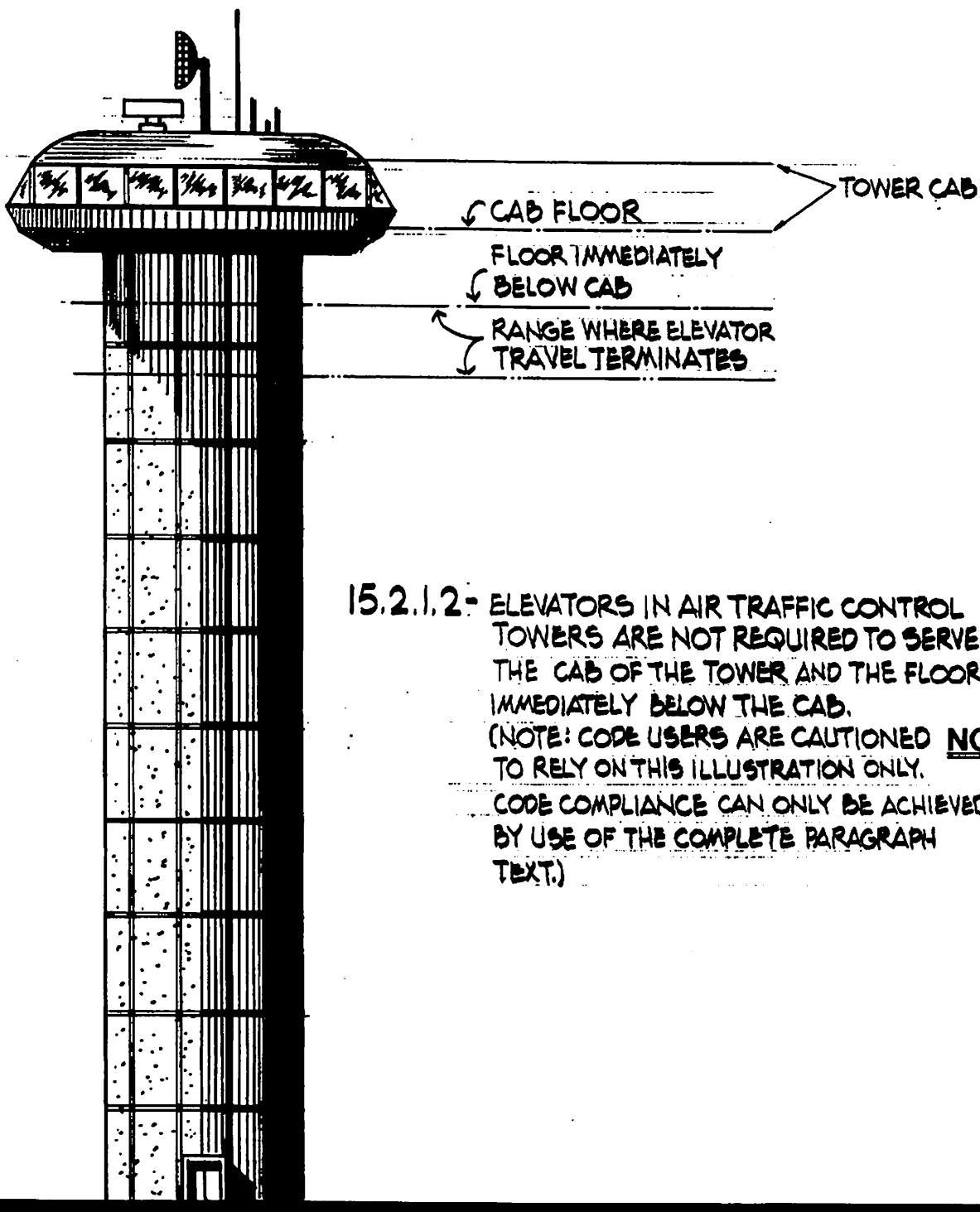
15.2.2- PUBLICLY OWNED SCHOOLS, COLLEGES, AND UNIVERSITY BUILDINGS 2 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT.

15.2.3- PUBLICLY OWNED DORMITORIES 2 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT.

15.2.6- A TERMINAL, DEPOT OR OTHER STATION USED IN SPECIFIED PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION THAT IS 2 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT. (SEE, ALSO, 24.3.4.)

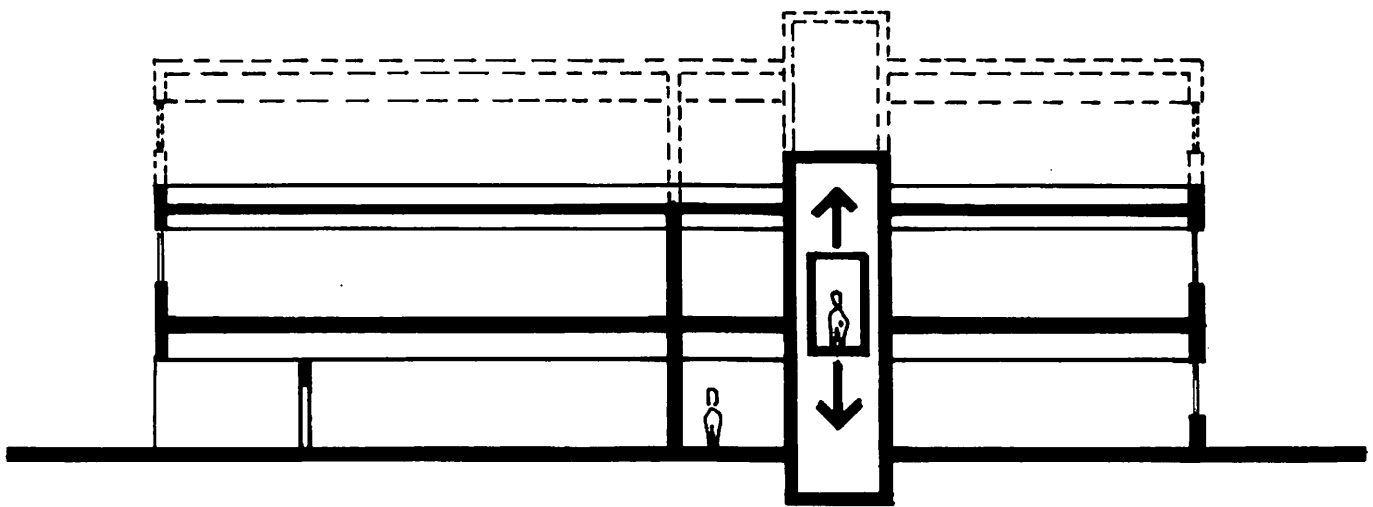
15.2.7- ALL AIRPORT PASSENGER TERMINALS 2 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT.

15.2- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS



15.2.1.2- ELEVATORS IN AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL
 TOWERS ARE NOT REQUIRED TO SERVE
 THE CAB OF THE TOWER AND THE FLOOR
 IMMEDIATELY BELOW THE CAB.
 (NOTE: CODE USERS ARE CAUTIONED NOT
 TO RELY ON THIS ILLUSTRATION ONLY.
 CODE COMPLIANCE CAN ONLY BE ACHIEVED
 BY USE OF THE COMPLETE PARAGRAPH
 TEXT.)

15.2- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS

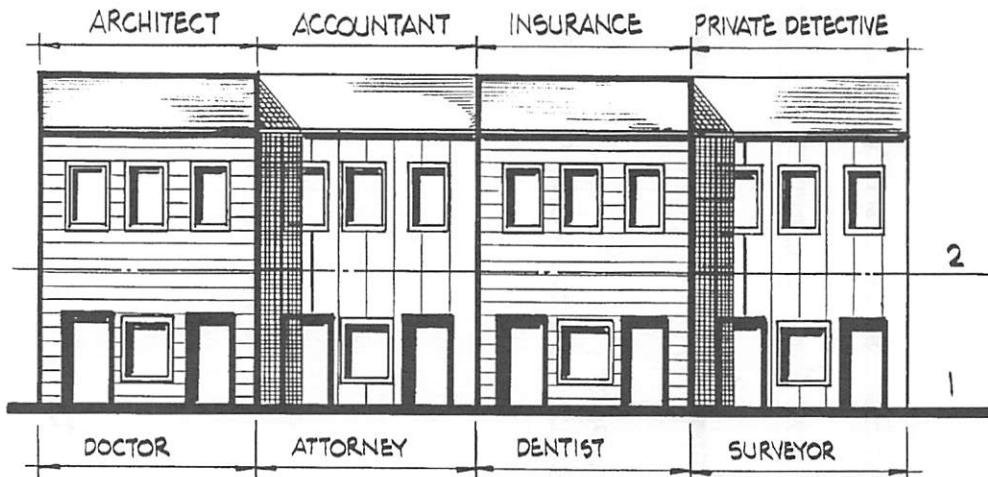


15.2.4 - PROFESSIONAL OFFICE OF HEALTH CARE PROVIDER - PART 1

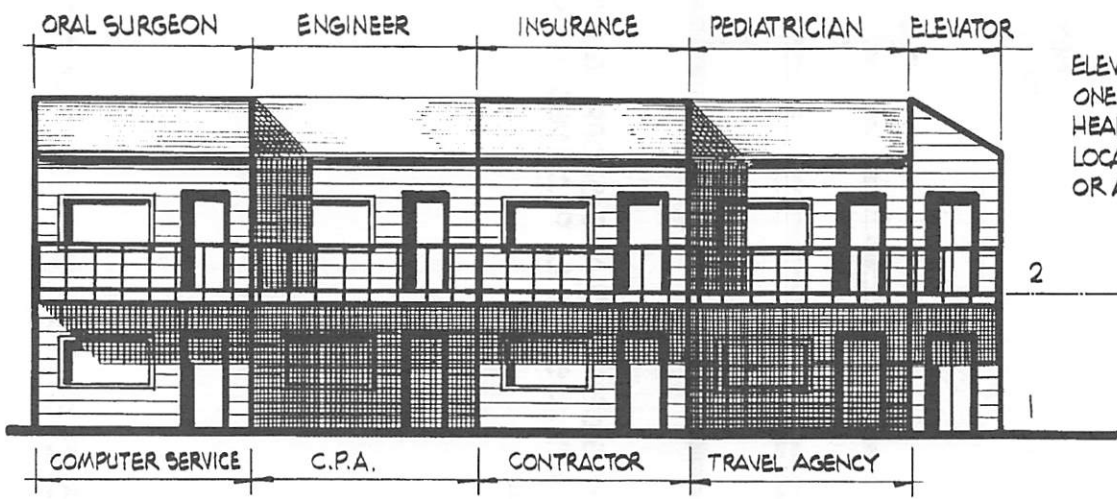
AN ELEVATOR SHALL BE PROVIDED IN ANY BUILDING 2 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT. (SEE, ALSO, PART 2.)

(A HEALTH CARE PROVIDER IS AN ENTITY PROVIDING PHYSICAL AND MENTAL HEALTH SERVICES TO THE PUBLIC. FOR EXAMPLE, DOCTOR, DENTIST, PHYSICAL THERAPIST, PSYCHIATRIST, PERIODONTIST, ETC.)

15.2 - BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS

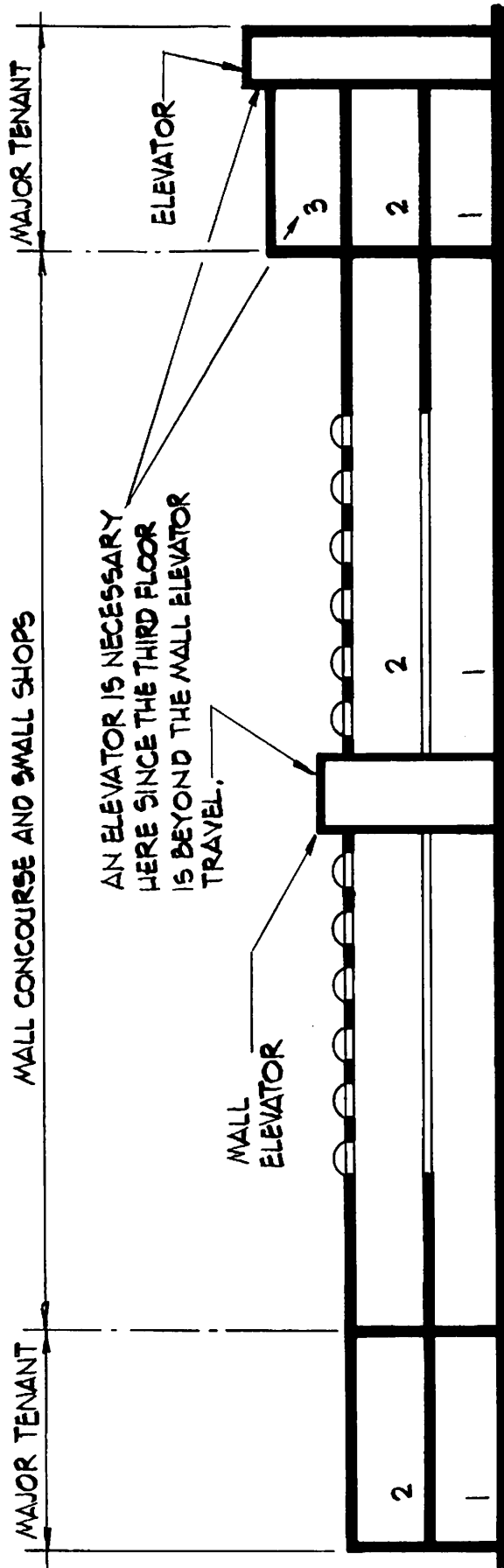


ELEVATOR NOT REQUIRED - A PROFESSIONAL HEALTH CARE PROVIDER(S) IS LOCATED ON FIRST FLOOR (I.E., STREET-LEVEL ENTRY) ONLY.



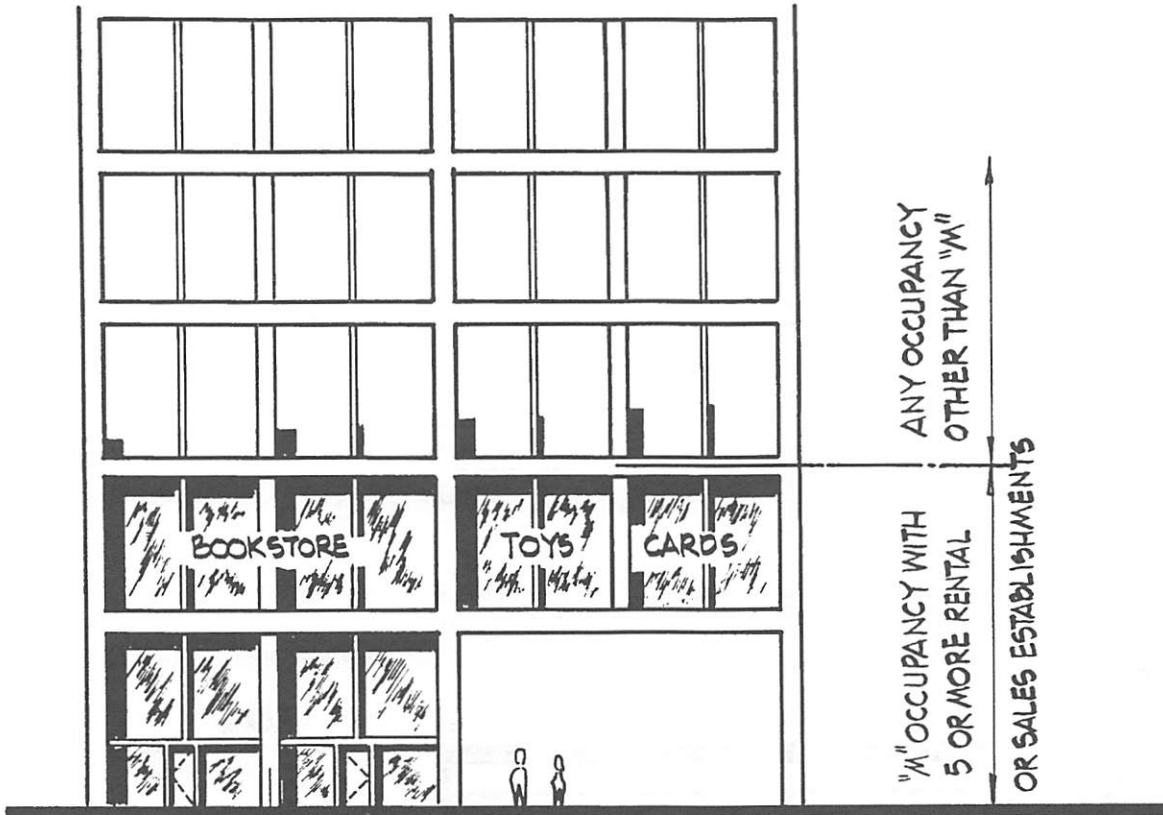
ELEVATOR REQUIRED - ONE OR MORE PROFESSIONAL HEALTH CARE PROVIDERS LOCATED ON SECOND FLOOR OR ABOVE.

15.2- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS (15.2.4- PROFESSIONAL OFFICE OF HEALTH CARE PROVIDER - PART 2)



15.2.5 - SHOPPING CENTERS AND SHOPPING MALLS - PART 1
AN ELEVATOR SHALL BE PROVIDED IN ANY BUILDING 2 OR MORE STORIES
IN HEIGHT.

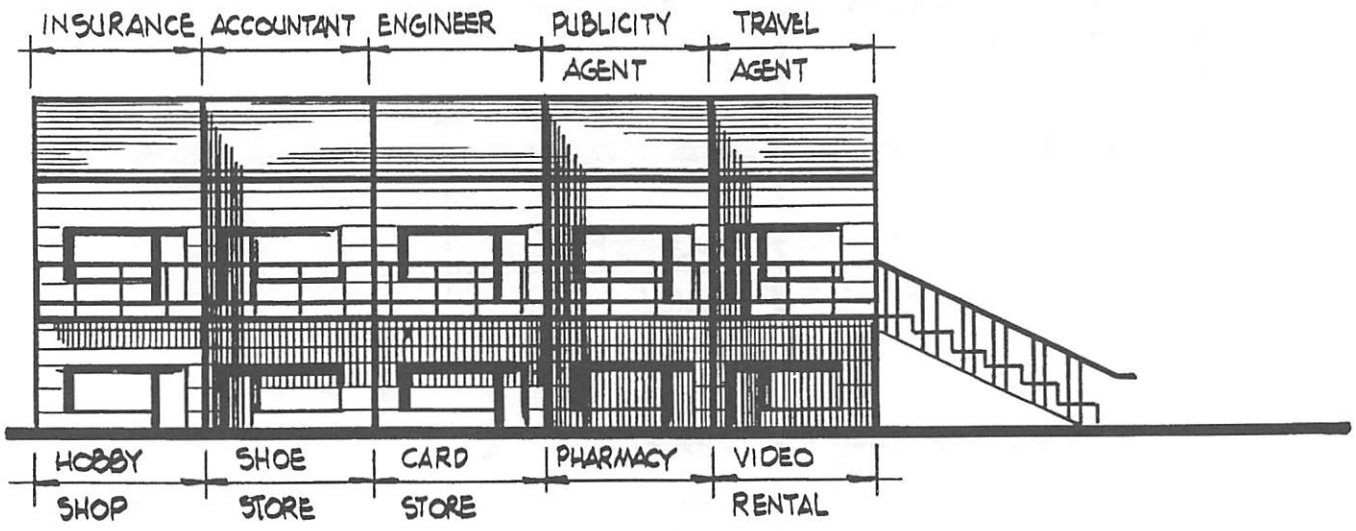
15.2 - BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS



HOBBY
SHOP

ART
SUPPLIES

15.2.5- SHOPPING CENTERS AND SHOPPING MALLS- PART 2
IN A MIXED OCCUPANCY, IF AN "M-MERCANTILE"
CLASSIFICATION APPLIES TO 5 OR MORE TENANT
SPACES, THEN AN ELEVATOR SHALL BE REQUIRED.



HOBBY
SHOP

SHOE
STORE

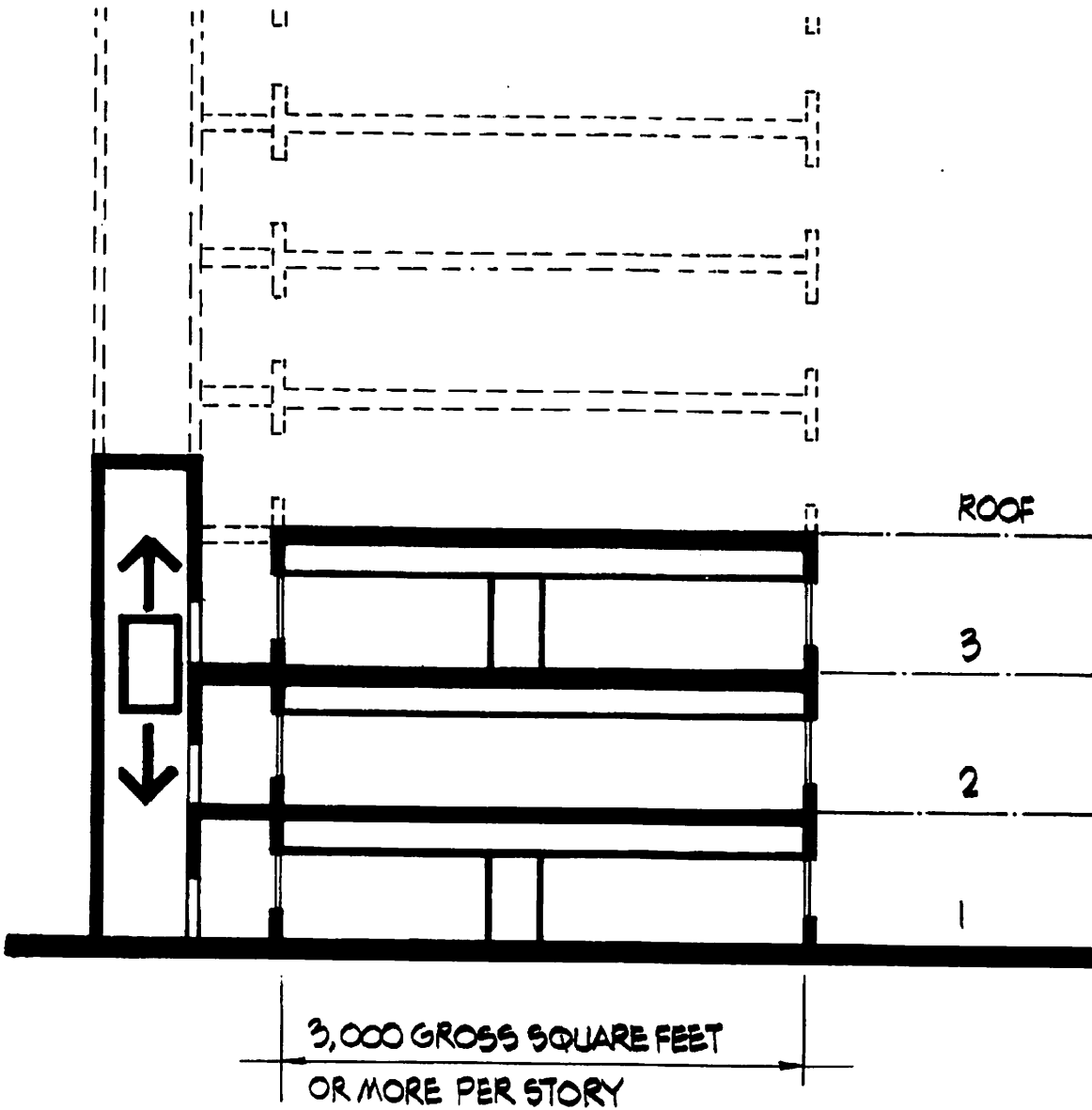
CARD
STORE

PHARMACY

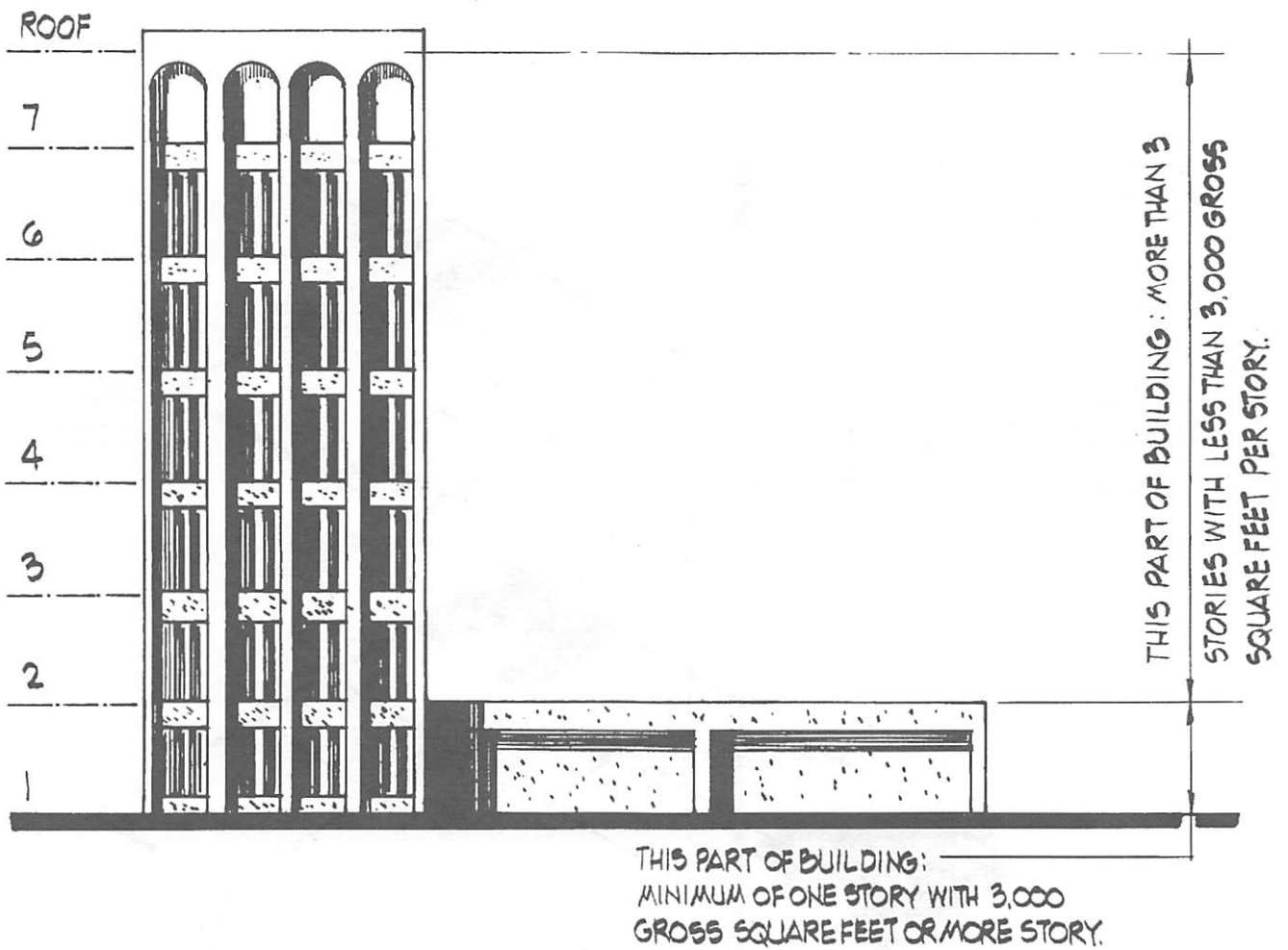
VIDEO
RENTAL

15.2.5- SHOPPING CENTERS AND SHOPPING MALLS- PART 3
ELEVATOR **NOT** REQUIRED- ALL RENTAL OR SALES ESTABLISHMENTS
(ALL "M" OCCUPANCIES) LOCATED ON FIRST FLOOR (I.E., STREET-LEVEL ENTRY) ONLY.

15.2- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS



15.2.8- PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDINGS
 ALL PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDINGS 3 OR MORE STORIES IN
 HEIGHT HAVING AN AREA OF 3,000 GROSS SQUARE FEET
 OR MORE PER STORY.



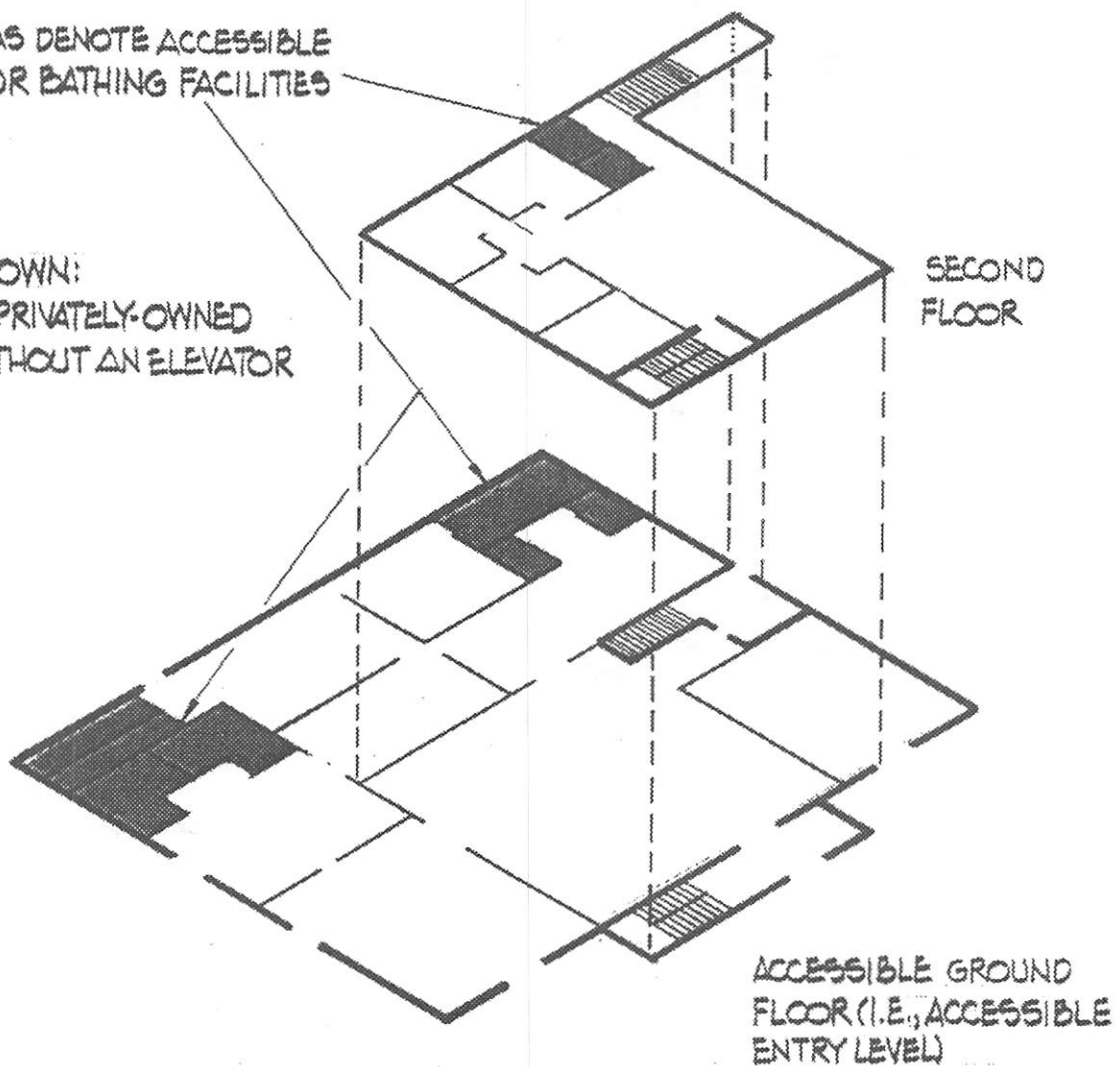
ELEVATOR IS REQUIRED

15.2.8, NOTE 1 - IF A PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDING OR FACILITY HAS 3 OR MORE STORIES AT ANY POINT, THEN AN ELEVATOR IS REQUIRED IF THE GROSS AREA OF ANY ONE STORY IS EQUAL TO, OR GREATER THAN, 3,000 SQUARE FEET PER STORY.

15.2- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS

SHADED AREAS DENOTE ACCESSIBLE
TOILET AND/OR BATHING FACILITIES

EXAMPLE SHOWN:
TWO-STORY, PRIVATELY-OWNED
BUILDING WITHOUT AN ELEVATOR



15.2.10.1- IN BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES NOT REQUIRED TO HAVE AN ELEVATOR, THE FLOORS ABOVE AND BELOW THE ACCESSIBLE GROUND FLOOR (I.E., THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRY LEVEL) SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS CODE EXCEPT FOR ELEVATOR SERVICE. (SEE, ALSO, THE NOTE IN THE TEXT.)

15.2.10.2- IF TOILET AND/OR BATHING FACILITIES ARE PROVIDED ON A LEVEL NOT SERVED BY BY AN ELEVATOR, THEN ACCESSIBLE TOILET AND/OR BATHING FACILITIES SHALL BE PROVIDED ON THE ACCESSIBLE GROUND FLOOR.

15.2.10- ACCESSIBILITY MAINTAINED

15.3 AUTOMATIC OPERATION

15.3.1 Elevator operation shall be automatic with each car equipped with a self-leveling device that will automatically bring the car to the floor landings with a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions. Self-leveling shall be automatic and independent of the elevator operating mechanism and shall correct for over-travel and under-travel.

Vol. I-C,
4.9.2(e);
ADAAG
4.10.2

15.4 ELEVATOR CAB DIMENSIONS

15.4.1 Cabs with center opening doors shall have an 80 inches minimum width and a 51 inches minimum depth (2030 mm by 1295 mm). The depth of the cab from the inside face of the cab doors to the wall opposite shall be 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum.

ADAAG
4.10.9,
Fig. 22(a)

15.4.2 Cabs with side-slide doors shall have a 68 inches minimum width and a 51 inches minimum depth (1730 mm by 1295 mm). The depth of the cab from the inside face of the cab door(s) to the wall opposite shall be 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum.

ADAAG
4.10.9,
Fig. 22(b)

15.4.3 Regardless of the door position, the clear opening shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

ADAAG
Fig. 22

15.4.4 A 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) maximum gap shall be permitted between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing.

ADAAG
4.10.9

15.5 HALL CALL BUTTONS, HALL LANTERNS AND ENTRANCE MARKINGS

15.5.1 HALL CALL BUTTONS

*15.5.1.1 The common horizontal centerline shall be *a nominal 42 inches* (1065 mm) above finished floor or ground level.
(NOTE: As used herein the “...nominal 42 inches...” height is to permit permit alignment with horizontal architectural features [e.g., masonry coursing, concrete formwork lines, stone facing joints, etc.]. If adjusted up, then no button shall be higher than 48 inches [1220 mm] above the floor level. If adjusted down, then no button shall be lower than than 36 inches [915 mm] above the floor level.)

Vol. I-C,
4.9.6(a)(1);
ADAAG 4.10.3

36" To 48":
ADAAG 4.2.5,
4.2.6
(Reach Range)

15.5.1.2 The button designating the “UP” direction shall always be on top. Buttons may be either raised or flush.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.6(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.10.3

15.5.1.3 Directional buttons, exclusive of border, shall be a minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) in the smallest dimension.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.6(a)(3);
ADAAG 4.10.3

15.5.1.4 Visual indication shall be provided to show each call registered and extinguished when the call has been answered.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.6(a)(4);
ADAAG 4.10.3

15.5.1.5 Objects mounted beneath the call buttons may project 4 inches (100 mm) maximum into the elevator lobby.

ADAAG
4.10.3

15.5.2 HALL LANTERNS

***15.5.2.1** Each hoistway entrance shall be provided with its own visual and audible signals to indicate which car is answering the call *and its direction of travel.*

ADAAG 4.10.4;
Vol. I-C,
4.9.6(b)(1)

15.5.2.2 Lanterns shall be mounted adjacent to the jamb of the hoistway with the common centerline at 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum above the finished floor. Signals shall be visible from the vicinity of the hall call buttons. The use of in-car lanterns visible from the vicinity of the hall call buttons and complying with this Section shall be acceptable.

ADAAG 4.10.4(1);
Vol. I-C,
4.6.9(b)(2),
4.6.9(b)(4)-Sim.;
ADAAG 4.10.4(3)

15.5.2.3 The visual signal shall be a minimum 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) in the smallest dimension and the accompanying audible signal shall sound once for the "UP" direction and twice for the "DOWN" direction. Verbal annunciators clearly stating "UP" or "DOWN" may be used in lieu of audible signals.

Vol. I-C,
4.9.6(b)(3);
ADAAG
4.10.4(2),
4.10.4

15.5.3 ENTRANCE MARKINGS

15.5.3.1 Floor designations shall be provided on both jambs of each hoistway entrance.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.6(c)(1);
ADAAG 4.10.5

15.5.3.2 Designations shall be mounted with their centerline at 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor or ground level.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.6(c)(2);
ADAAG 4.10.5

15.5.3.3 Standard alphabet characters and Arabic numerals shall be upper case characters 2 inches (50 mm) in height and shall project 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) minimum from their background. Letters and numerals may be either plain block characters without serif, or simple serif only. Grade 2 Braille shall accompany the letters and numerals. The use of applied plates is acceptable provided they are permanently attached to the hoistway jambs.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.6(c)(3);
ADAAG 4.10.5;
Serif : ADAAG
4.30.4

15.6 DOOR PROTECTIVE AND RE-OPENING DEVICE

15.6.1 Elevator doors shall open and close automatically and be provided with a door re-opening device which shall function to stop and re-open both the car and hoistway doors automatically in the event that any door is obstructed while closing.

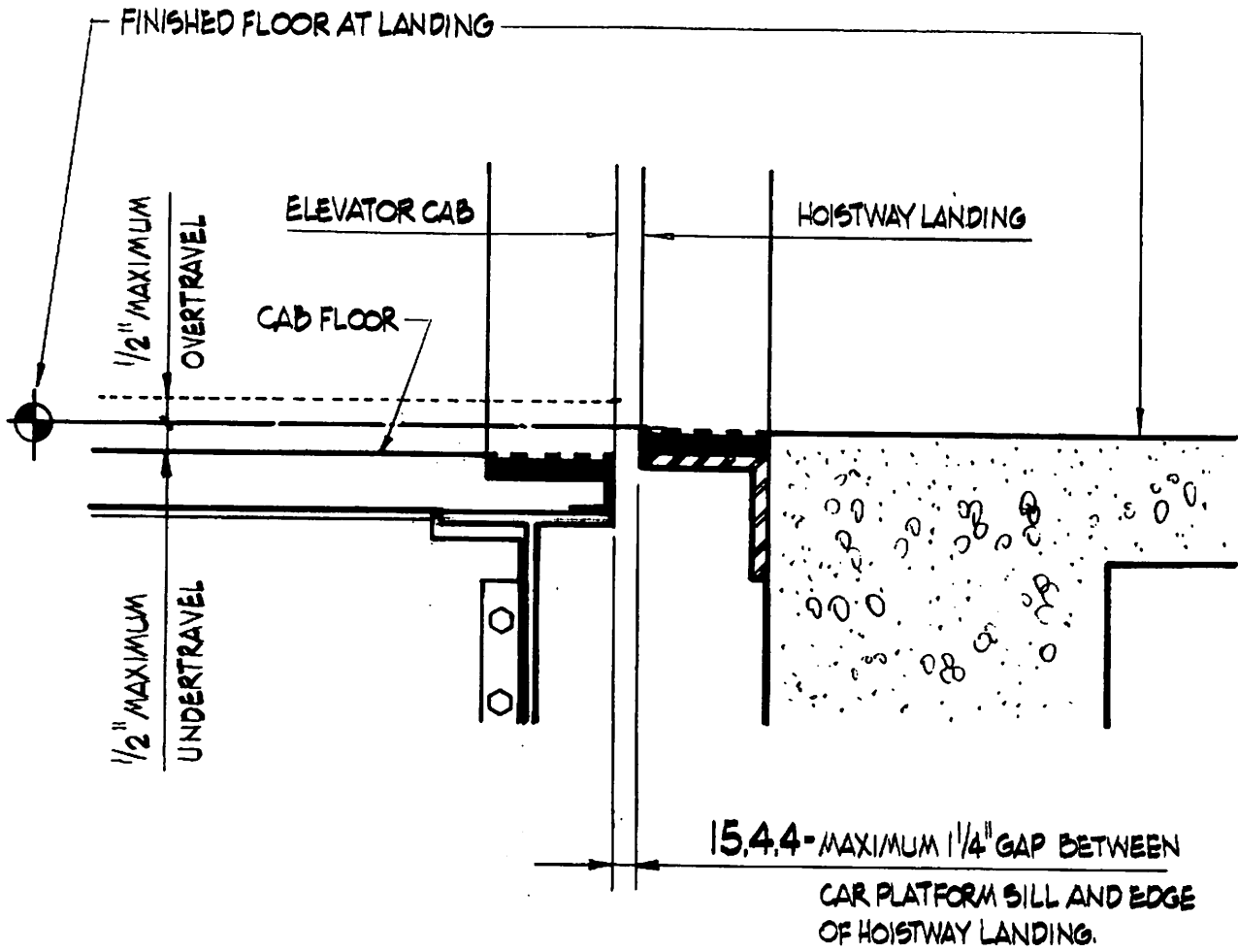
Vol. I-C, 4.9.7(a);
ADAAG 4.10.6

15.6.2 The re-opening device shall be capable of sensing an object or person in the path of a closing door that is between 5 inches (125 mm) and 29 inches (735 mm) above the finished floor or ground level. The re-opening device shall not require physical contact before the doors reverse their direction of travel.

**Vol. I-C,
4.9.7(b),
4.9.7(c);
ADAAG 4.10.6**

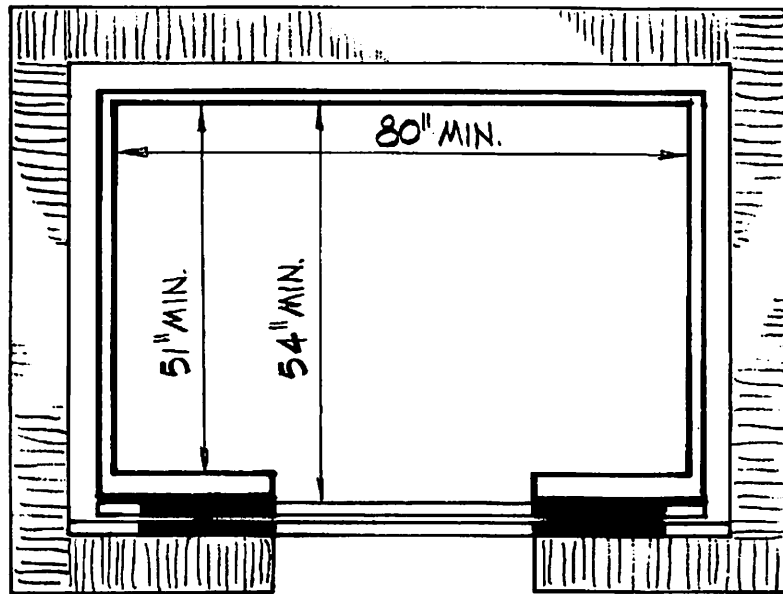
15.6.3 Door re-opening devices shall remain effective for 20 seconds minimum.

**Vol. I-C, 4.9.7(d);
ADAAG 4.10.6**



15.3.1-ELEVATOR CAB AUTOMATIC SELF-LEVELING DEVICE

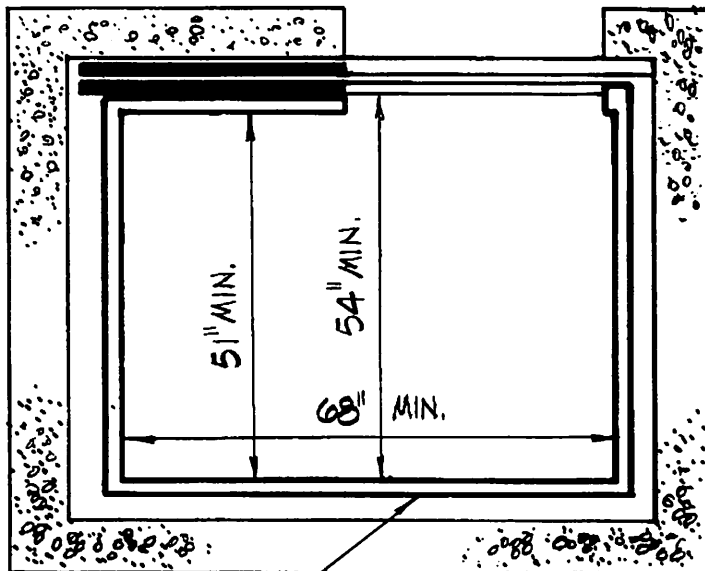
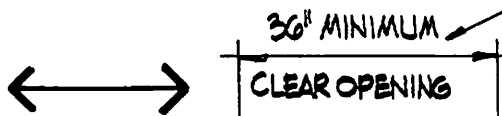
15.3-AUTOMATIC OPERATION



15.4.1-
MINIMUM DIMENSIONS OF CAB WITH CENTER OPENING DOORS.



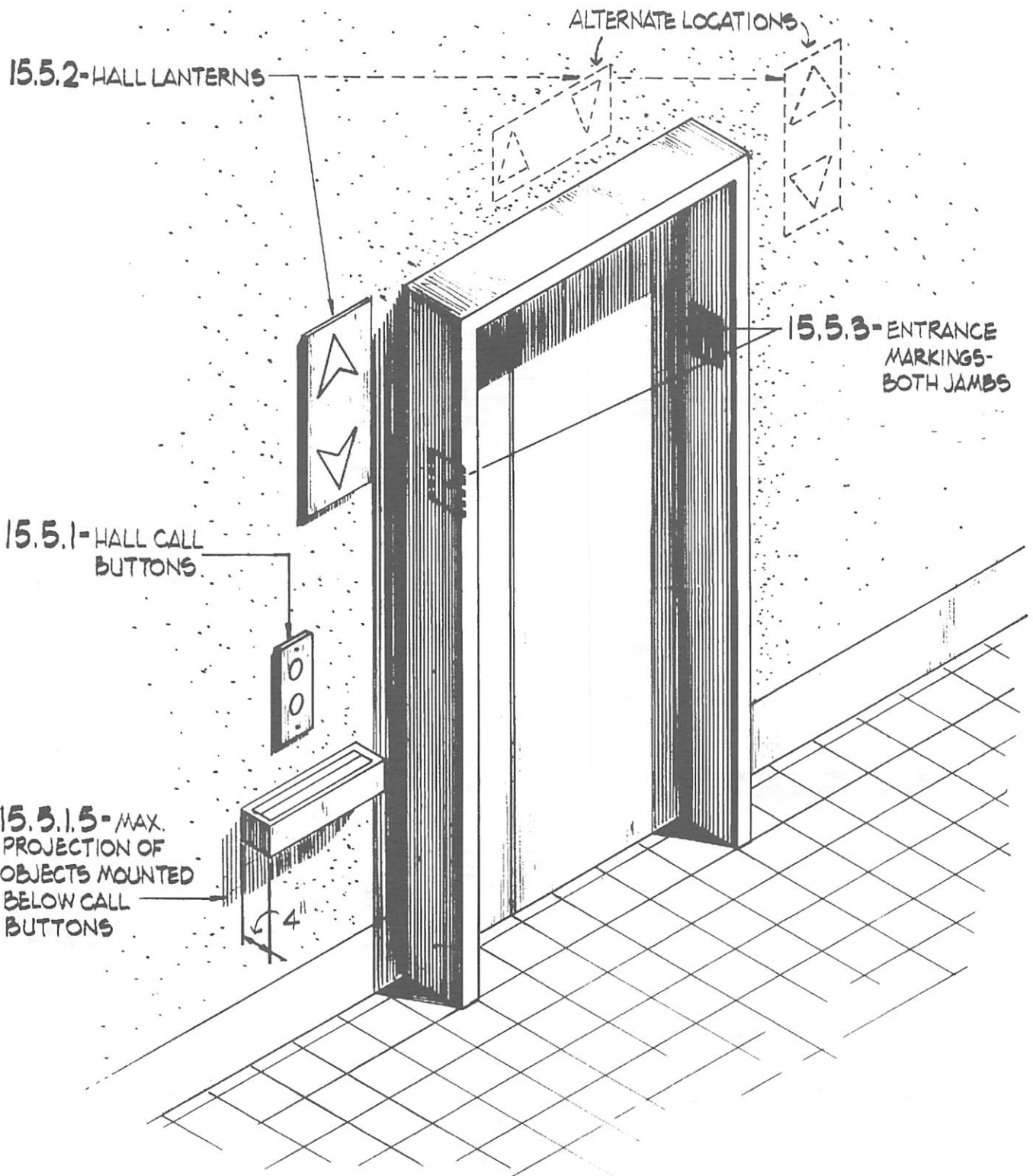
15.4.3- MINIMUM CLEAR OPENING AT DOORS.



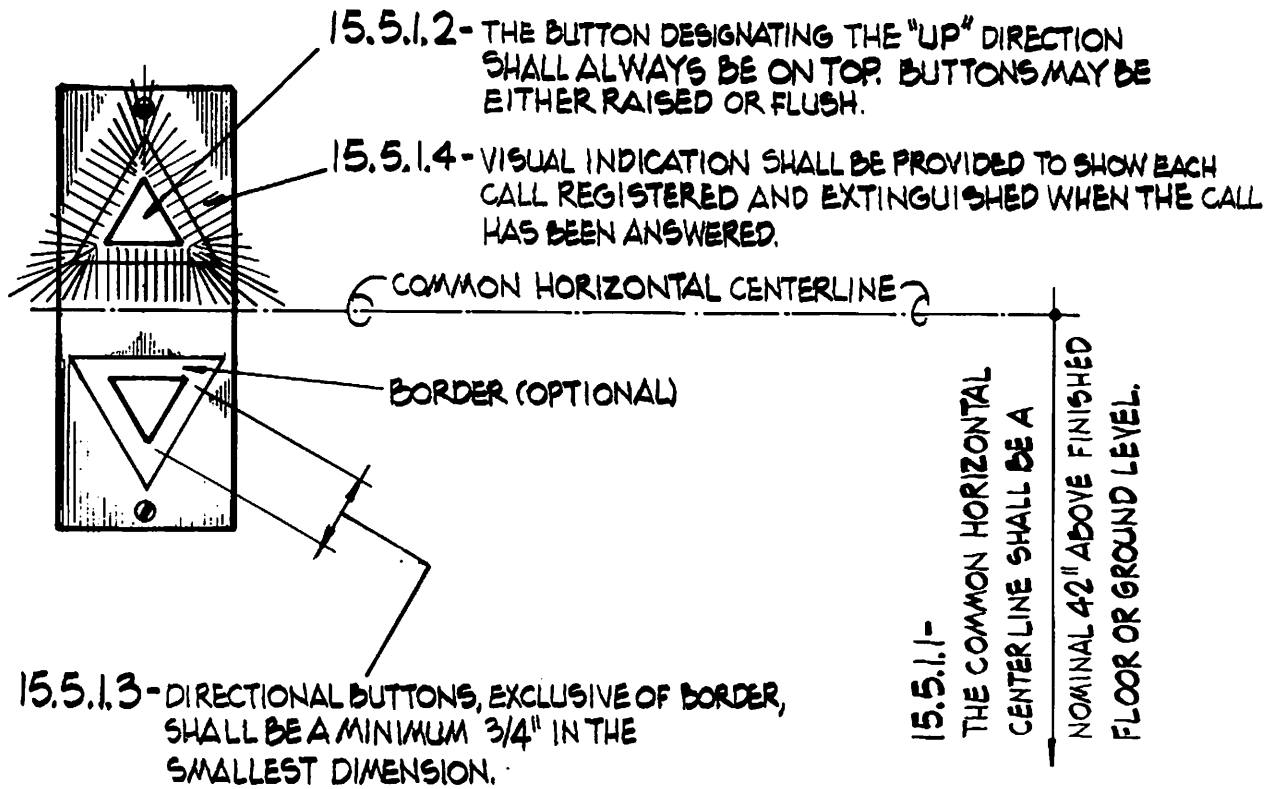
15.4.2-
MINIMUM DIMENSIONS OF CAB WITH SIDE SLIDE DOORS.

ELEVATOR MAY BE LEFT- OR RIGHT-HANDED

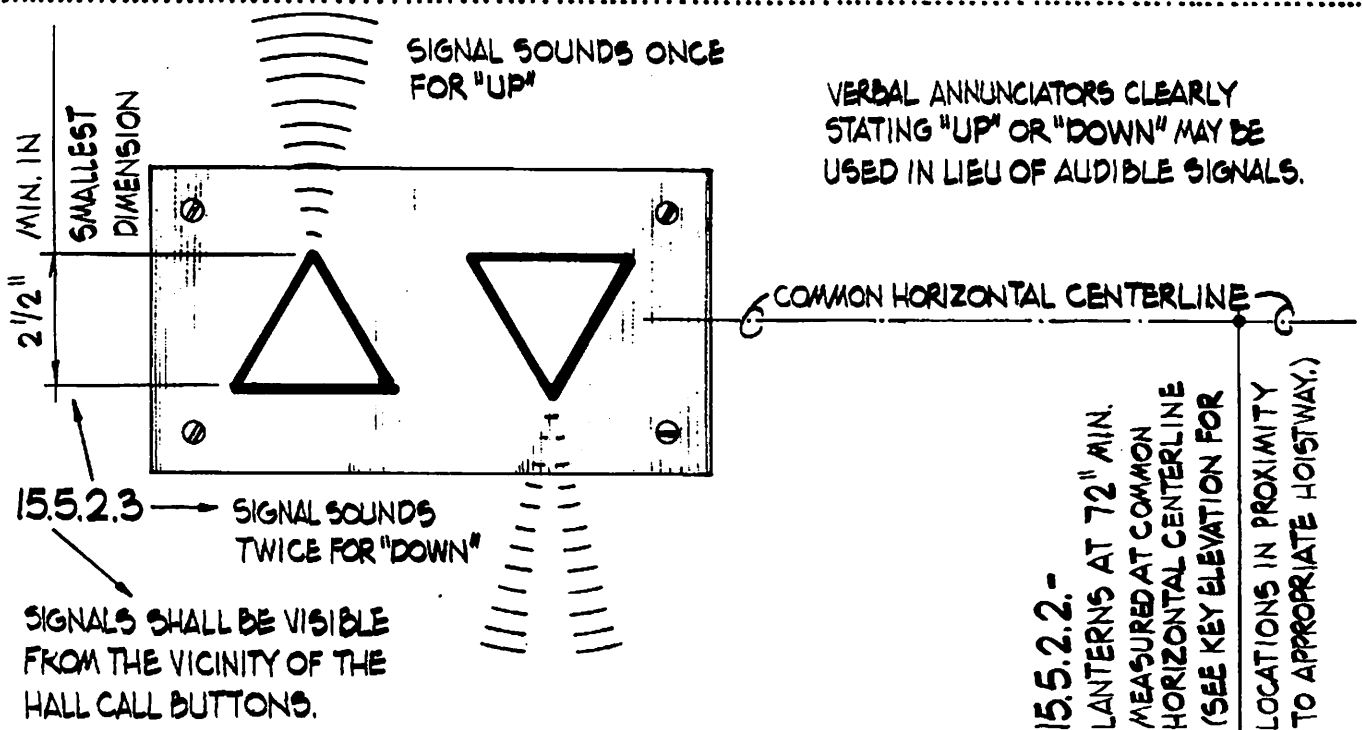
15.4- ELEVATOR CAB DIMENSIONS



15.5-(KEY ELEVATION FOR) HALL CALL BUTTONS, HALL LANTERNS, AND ENTRANCE MARKINGS



15.5.1- HALL CALL BUTTONS



15.5.2- HALL LANTERNS (OR IN-CAR LANTERNS)

15.5- HALL CALL BUTTONS, HALL LANTERNS, AND ENTRANCE MARKINGS

15.7 DOOR SIGNAL AND TIMING FOR HALL CALLS/DOOR DELAY FOR CAR CALLS

15.7.1 The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:

$$T = \frac{D}{1.5 \text{ Feet/Second}} = \frac{D}{455 \text{ mm/Second}}$$

ADAAG
4.10.7

Where: T = Total time in seconds, and

D = Distance (in feet or millimeters) from a point in the elevator lobby or corridor 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to its hoistway door centerline.

15.7.2 For elevators with in-car lanterns, "T" (from the equation above) shall begin when the lantern is visible from the vicinity of the hall call buttons and an audible signal is sounded.

ADAAG
4.10.7

15.7.3 The acceptable notification time shall be five (5) seconds minimum.

ADAAG 4.10.7

15.7.4 Elevator doors shall remain fully open in response to a car call for 3 seconds minimum.

ADAAG 4.10.8

15.8 ELEVATOR LOBBY AND CAR FLOOR SURFACES

15.8.1 Car floor surfaces shall comply with Chapter 9.

ADAAG 4.10.10

15.9 ELEVATOR CAB CONTROLS

15.9.1 For cars having center opening doors, the controls shall be located on either front wall. For cars having side slide doors, the controls shall be located on either the side wall or front wall adjacent to the door.

ADAAG 4.10.12(4),
Fig. 23(c), 23(d)

15.9.2 All floor buttons shall be located above the finished car floor 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a front approach or 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum for a parallel (i.e., side) approach.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.5(a);
ADAAG
4.10.12(3)

15.9.3 Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel with their horizontal centerlines 35 inches (890 mm) minimum above the cab finished floor.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.5(b);
ADAAG
4.10.12(3)

15.9.4 Control buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension. Buttons may be either raised or flush.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.5(c);
ADAAG 4.10.12(1)

*15.9.5 Control buttons shall be designated by standard alphabet letters, Arabic numerals, or standard symbols as required in *ANSI/ASME A17.1-1996* and located to the left of the corresponding control button.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.5(d);
ADAAG
4.10.12(2)

15.9.5.1 Letters, numerals, and symbols shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum to 2 inches (50 mm) maximum in height and shall project 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) minimum from their background. Letters and numerals may be plain block letters without serif or simple serif only. Grade 2 Braille shall accompany the letters and numerals.

Vol. I-C, 4.9.5(e);
ADAAG 4.10.12(2),
Fig. 23(a)

15.9.5.2 The main entry floor call button shall be designated by a raised star located to the left of the floor designation.

Vol. I-C, Pg. 155;
ADAAG 4.10.12(2)

15.9.5.3 The letters, numerals, and symbols and their backgrounds shall have an eggshell (semi-matte), matte (flat) or other non-glare finish. Characters and symbols shall contrast with the background on which they are mounted by the use of either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

Vol. I-C,
4.9.5(f);
ADAAG
4.10.12(2),
4.30.5

15.9.5.4 The use of applied plates having raised designations is acceptable provided they are permanently attached to the control panel.

ADAAG
4.10.12(2)

15.9.5.5 Floor buttons shall be provided with visual indicators to show when each call is registered. The visual indication shall be extinguished when each call is answered.

ADAAG
4.10.12(2)

15.9.6 CAR POSITION INDICATORS

15.9.6.1 A visual car position indicator shall be provided over the car control panel or over the car door. Indicators shall light up and an audible signal shall sound as the car passes by or stops at each floor. Numerals or letters shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum in height.

Vol. I-C,
4.9.5(g);
ADAAG
4.10.13

15.9.6.2 The audible signal shall be 20 decibels minimum with a 1,500 Hz. maximum frequency. An automatic verbal announcement of the floor number or position (e.g., "two" or "mezzanine") at which a car stops or passes may be substituted for the audible signal.

Vol. I-C,
4.9.5(g);
ADAAG
4.10.13

15.10 EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS

***15.10.1** If provided, then two-way systems between the elevator and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with **ANSI/ASME A17.1-1996**. The emergency inter-communication shall not require voice communication. The system shall provide both audio and visual indication concerning the status of the rescue effort. System identification shall be by a raised symbol and lettering complying with 18.1.2 located adjacent to the device.

ADAAG
4.10.14

FR 7/26/91 At
35433

15.10.2 If the system utilizes a telephone handset, then the cord length shall be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum measured from panel to handset. The handset shall be equipped with volume control and shall be identified with a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves (see 14.2.5.2).

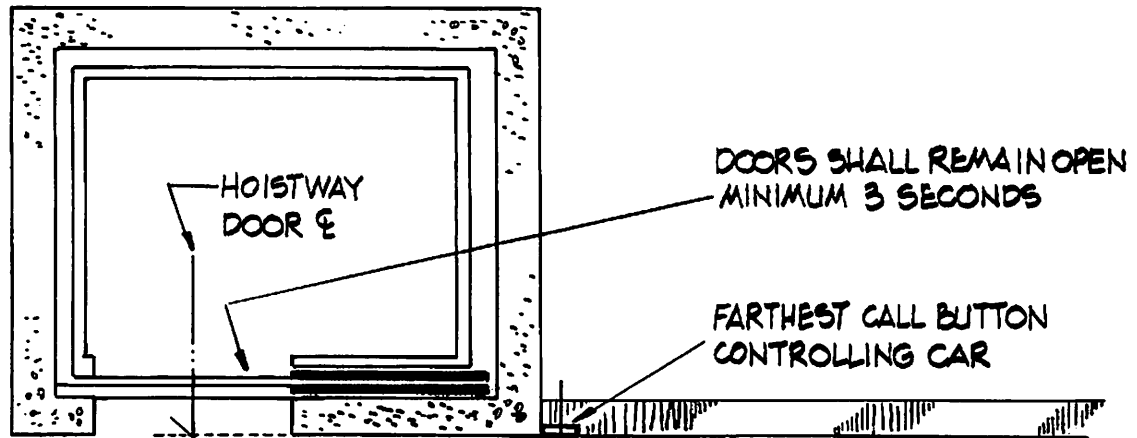
ADAAG 4.10.14,
4.31.5,
4.30.7(2)

15.10.3 If located in a closed compartment, then the compartment door hardware shall be operable by a five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum force.

**ADAAG
4.10.14**

15.10.4 The highest operable part of the emergency communication system shall be located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished cab floor.

**ADAAG
4.10.14**



DOORS SHALL REMAIN OPEN
MINIMUM 3 SECONDS

FARTHEST CALL BUTTON
CONTROLLING CAR

60"

"D"

EXAMPLE: IF "D" = 10'-0", THEN

$$T = \frac{10.5 \text{ FT}}{1.5 \text{ FT/SEC.}}$$

T = 7 SECONDS MIN. TIME CAR HAS
ANSWERED CALL UNTIL DOORS
START TO CLOSE.

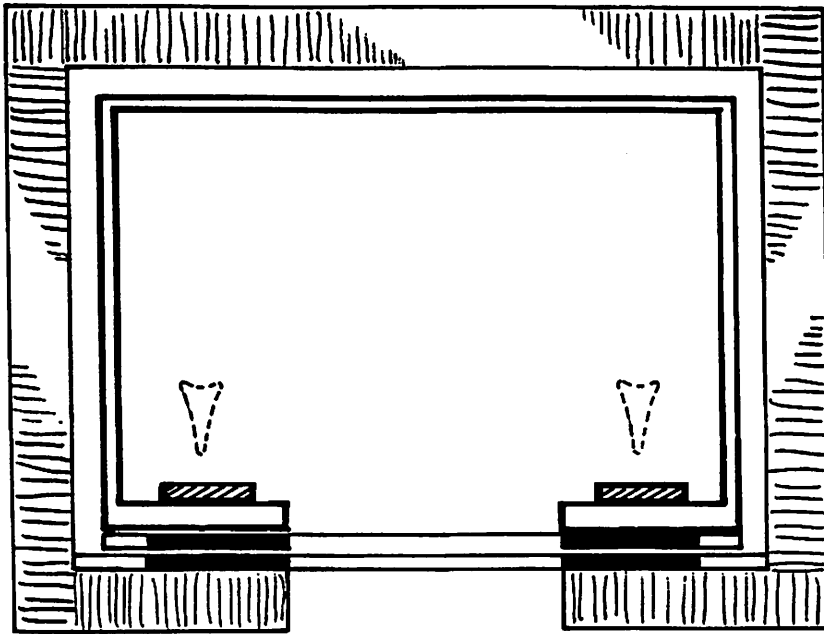
T = TOTAL TIME IN SECONDS.
D = DISTANCE FROM DOOR & TO POINT 60" IN FRONT OF FARTHEST CALL BUTTON CONTROLLING CAR.

FORMULA FOR NOTIFICATION TIME:

$$T = \frac{D}{1.5 \text{ FEET/SECOND}}$$

NOTIFICATION TIME = MINIMUM 5 SECS.

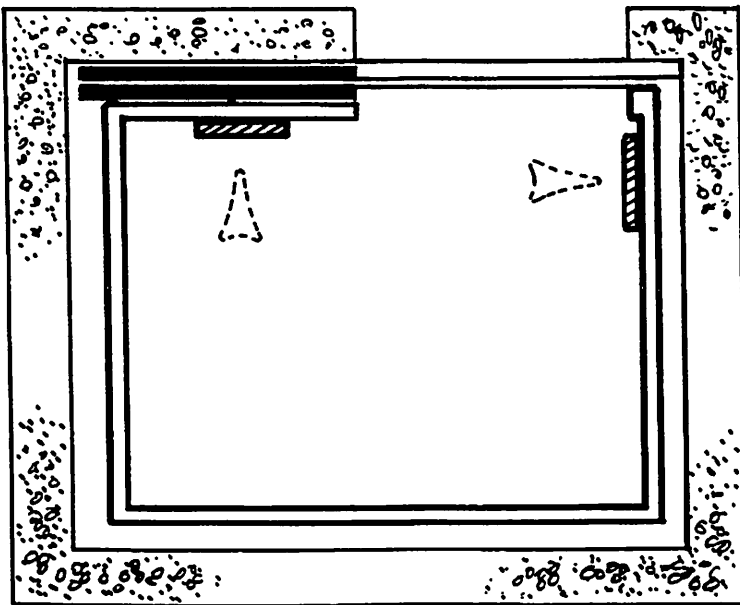
15.7- DOOR SIGNAL/TIMING FOR HALL CALL/DOOR DELAY FOR CAR CALLS



CAB CONTROLS-EITHER
FRONT PANEL.

CENTER-OPENING DOORS

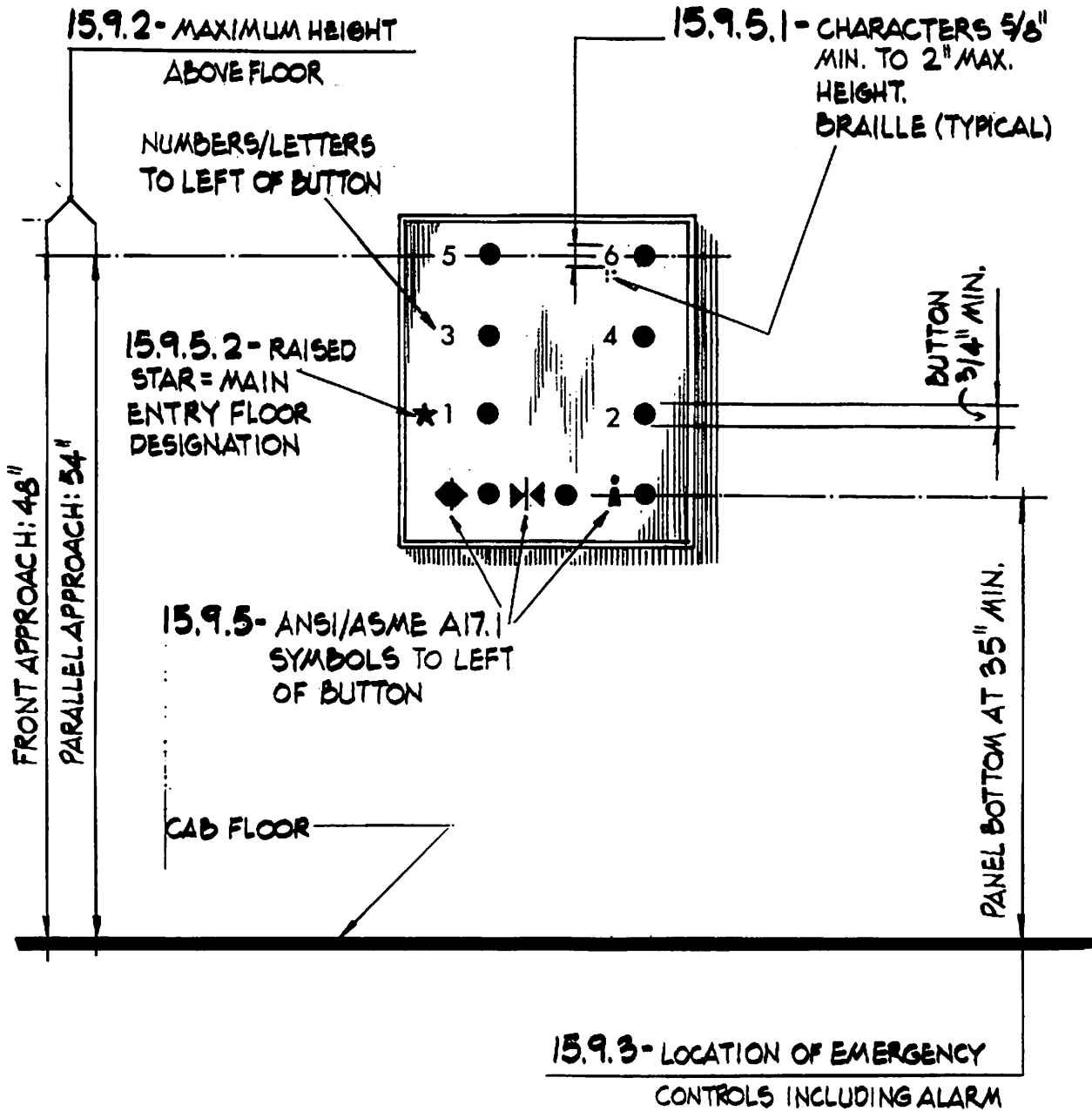
15.9.1- CONTROL PANEL LOCATION



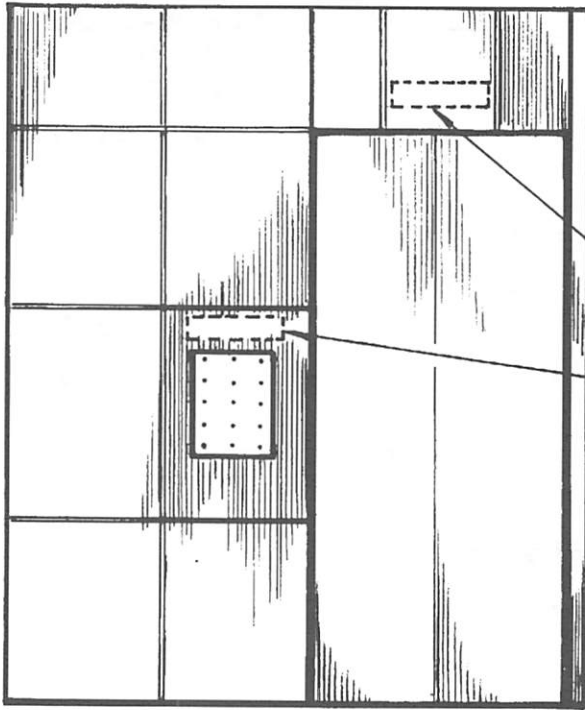
CAB CONTROLS- SIDE WALL
OR FRONT WALL ADJACENT
TO DOOR.

SIDE SLIDE DOORS

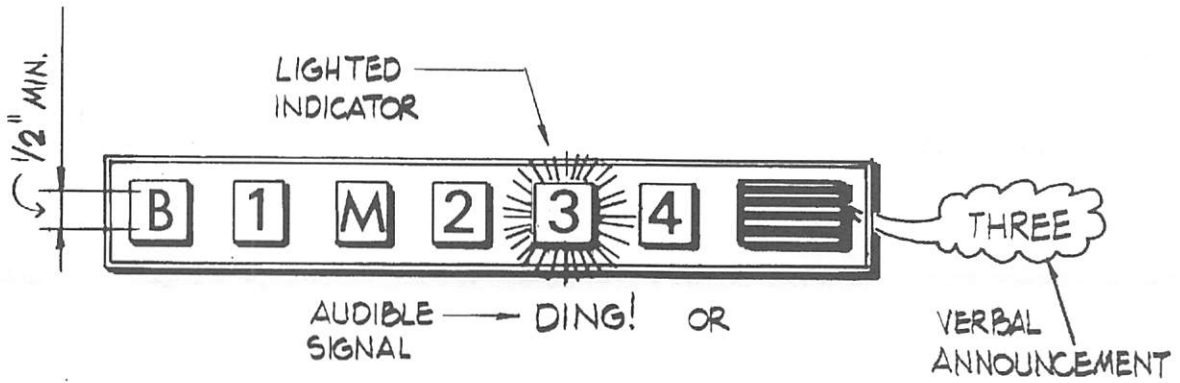
15.9- ELEVATOR CAB CONTROLS- PART I



15.9 - ELEVATOR CAB CONTROLS - PART 2



15.9.6.1- VISUAL CAR POSITION INDICATOR - OVER CAR DOOR OR CAR CONTROL PANEL. INDICATORS SHALL LIGHT UP AND AN AUDIBLE SIGNAL SHALL SOUND AS THE CAR PASSES BY OR STOPS AT EACH FLOOR.



15.9.6.2- INDICATOR (NOT LIMITED TO THIS CONFIGURATION)

15.9.6- CAR POSITION INDICATORS

15.11 PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS

15.11.1 USE OF LIFTS

15.11.1.1 Buildings and facilities may utilize a lift for the following applications only:

- | | | |
|-------|---|-------------------------------------|
| (1) | To provide an accessible route to a performing area in an assembly occupancy. | ADAAG
4.1.3(5)(4)(a) |
| (2) | To comply with the wheelchair line-of-sight viewing position and dispersion requirements of 22.2. | ADAAG
4.1.3(5)(4)(b) |
| (3) | To provide access to incidental occupiable spaces and rooms which are not open to the general public and which house five (5) or fewer persons (e.g., sound or lighting control rooms, projections booths, equipment controls rooms, etc.). | ADAAG
4.1.3(5)(4)(c) |
| (4) | To provide access to raised judges' benches, clerks' stations, speakers' platforms, jury boxes, and witness stands, or to depressed areas such as the courtroom well. | ADAAG
4.1.3(5)(4)(e),
1/13/98 |
| * (5) | <i>To provide access to the first occupiable level of a building elevated due to flood plain regulations and not required to have an elevator. (See, also, 1.2.6.3.1.)</i> | Vol. I,
Chapter 37 |

15.11.1.2 A person shall be able to approach, enter, operate, and exit from a platform lift in an unassisted manner.

ADAAG
4.11.3

15.11.2 CLEARANCES, DIMENSIONS AND SAFETY FEATURES

15.11.2.1 Platform wheelchair lifts shall be located on an accessible route. Lift operation shall be controlled by a key.

N.C. Dept. of Labor,
Elevator Division

***15.11.2.2** *If the accessible route allows for a straight-on approach, then the clear floor space at the bottom landing shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (915 mm by 1220 mm) minimum. For any other type of approach the bottom landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm), or a 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter, minimum clear floor area.*

Derived From:
ADAAG 4.2.3,
Fig.3(a), 4(a)

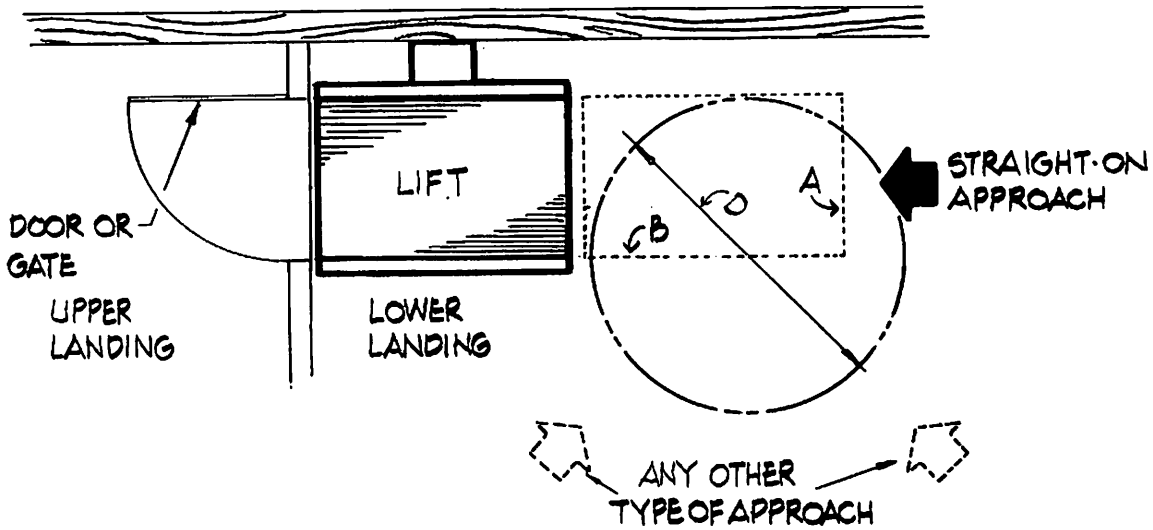
15.11.2.3 At the top landing the clear floor space at the pull side of the safety door/gate shall comply with 7.3.1.

Cross-Reference

15.11.2.4 All operating mechanisms shall be activated by a five (5) pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum force.

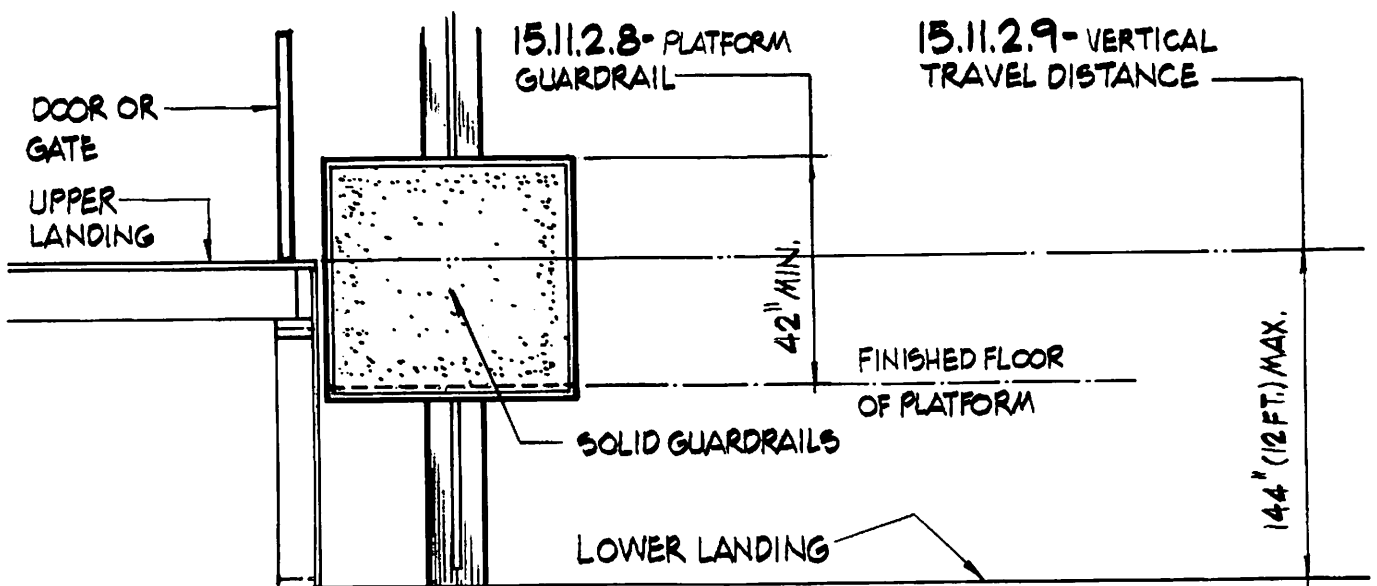
Vol. I-C, 4.10(a)(3);
ADAAG 4.27.4

- *15.11.2.5** *The clear platform for a wheelchair lift shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum.* Vol. I-C, 4.9.4(a)
- *15.11.2.6** *A lift platform shall have an 18 square feet (1.67 square meters) maximum clear floor area.* Vol. I-C, 4.9.4(b)
- *15.11.2.7** *Lift platforms shall have a non-slip finished floor.* Vol. I-C, 4.9.4(d)
- *15.11.2.8** *Platforms shall have solid guardrails having a 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum height.* Vol. I-C, 4.9.4(e)
- *15.11.2.9** *The vertical travel distance for a vertical platform wheelchair lift shall be twelve (12) feet (3.6 m) maximum.* Vol. I-C, 4.9.4(c)



APPROACH	BOTTOM LANDING SIZE	NOTES
STRAIGHT ON	A=30" MIN., B=48" MIN.	
ANY OTHER	D=60" MIN. DIAMETER	MAY ALSO USE MIN. 60" x 60"

15.11.2.2- CLEAR SPACE AT BOTTOM LANDING



15.11- PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS

**CHAPTER 16
CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS
AND
AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINES**

16.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

16.1.1 Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes, or part of accessible elements (e.g., a light switch, dispenser control, or Automatic Teller Machine) shall comply with this Chapter.

**Vol. I-C,
4.10(a)(1);
ADAAG
4.1.3(13)**

16.1.2 Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable by a 5 pounds (2.3 Kg) maximum force. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require the use of a fine grasp, tight pinching motion, or a turning, wrist-twisting motion for activation.

**Vol. I-C,
4.10(a)(3);
ADAAG
4.27.4**

16.1.3 A 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space shall allow for either a forward or parallel (i.e., side) approach. The long dimension shall always be parallel to the direction of approach.

**Vol. I-C, 4.10(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.27.2;
FR 7/15/93 At 38205,
Footnote 4**

16.2 MOUNTING HEIGHTS

16.2.1 FORWARD REACH

16.2.1.1 For an unobstructed forward reach, controls and operating mechanisms shall be located between 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

**Vol. I-C, 4.10(b);
ADAAG 4.2.5,
Figure 5(a)**

16.2.1.2 For a forward reach over an obstruction the maximum height of any control or operating mechanism above the finished floor or ground level shall be:

- (1) 48 inches (1220 mm) if the depth of the obstruction is less than 20 inches (510 mm); or
- (2) 44 inches (1120 mm) if the depth of the obstruction is 20 inches (510 mm) to 25 inches (635 mm).

**ADAAG 4.2.5,
Fig. 5(b)**

16.2.1.3 For either (1) or (2) above, the clear floor space shall extend under the obstruction for a distance equal to, or greater than, the depth of the obstruction. Knee clearance from the finished floor or ground level shall be 27 inches (685 mm) minimum.

**ADAAG
Fig. 5(b)**

16.2.2 PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) REACH

16.2.2.1 For an unobstructed 10 inches (255 mm) maximum side reach, controls and operating mechanisms shall be located 9 inches (230 mm) minimum to 54 inches maximum (1370 mm) above the finished floor or ground level.

Vol. I-C, 4.10(b);
ADAAG 4.2.6,
Figure 6(b)

16.2.2.2 For a side reach over an obstruction, the obstruction shall have a 34 inches (865 mm) maximum height and a 24 inches (610 mm) maximum depth. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be located 46 inches (1170 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

ADAAG
4.2.6,
Fig. 6(c)

16.2.3 Electrical and communications system receptacles mounted on, or built in to, walls or partitions shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground level.

Vol. I-C, 4.10(c);
ADAAG 4.27.3

16.3 EXCEPTIONS

*** 16.3.1** Special equipment not intended for regular or frequent use by building occupants (*e.g., overhead operating room lights, x-ray scanners, etc.*).

ADAAG 4.27.3, Exception;
Access Board (Via
Telephone)-5/12/98

16.3.2 Electrical and communications system receptacles not subject to regular or frequent use by building occupants (*e.g., receptacles for: wall mounted clocks; refrigerators; microwave ovens located in hotel rooms or lunch/break rooms; etc.*).

ADAAG 4.27.3,
Exception;
FR 7/26/91 At
35436

16.4 AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES (ATM)

16.4.1 If ATM's are provided, then each machine shall comply with the requirements of this Section. If two or more machines are provided at a single location, then only one machine is required to be accessible. (**E.G.:** If two ATM's are located at opposite ends of a shopping mall, then both are required to be accessible. If the two machines are adjacent to each other, then only one is required to be accessible.)

ADAAG
4.1.3(20)

FR/ 7/26/91 At
35426

16.4.2 Each accessible ATM shall be located on an accessible route.

ADAAG 4.34.1

16.4.3 For the purposes of an ATM, the word "controls" shall mean the the various controls used to operate an ATM, including card readers, keypads, video display screen function keys, deposit slots, cash and receipt dispensers, and statement printers.

FR 7/15/93 At
38205

16.4.4 Controls for user activation shall comply with 16.1.2.

ADAAG 4.34.4 [FR 7/15/93]

16.4.5 Each accessible ATM shall have a clear floor space in compliance with 16.1.3.

ADAAG 4.34.2
[FR 7/15/93]

16.4.6 MOUNTING HEIGHTS

16.4.6.1 FORWARD APPROACH ONLY

16.4.6.1.1 The maximum height of all controls shall be located above the finished floor or ground level in compliance with the following:

- (1) 48 inches (1220 mm) if the machine is recessed less than 20 inches (510 mm); or
- (2) 44 inches (1120 mm) if the machine is recessed 20 inches (510 mm) to 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.

ADAAG 4.34.3(1)
[FR 7/15/93]

For both (1) and (2) above, the recess depth of the unit shall be measured from the face of the unit surround, or the face of the machine if no surround is provided. (See, also, 16.2.1.3.)

16.4.6.2 PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH ONLY

16.4.6.2.1 For the purposes of this Section, the term “reach depth” shall be defined as the horizontal distance from the farthest protrusion of the ATM or its surround projected in a vertical plane perpendicular to the 48 inches (1220 mm) edge of the clear floor space. (Refer to the illustration for clarification.)

ADAAG
4.34.3(2)
[FR 7/15/93]

16.4.6.2.2 If the reach depth is 10 inches (255 mm) maximum, then the highest operable part of all controls shall be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

ADAAG
4.34.3(2)(a)
[FR 7/15/93]

16.4.6.2.3 If the reach depth is greater than 10 inches (255 mm) to 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, then the highest operable part of all controls above finished floor or ground level shall comply with the following table:

<u>D* = REACH DEPTH IN INCHES</u>	<u>H* = MAXIMUM HEIGHT ABOVE FINISHED FLOOR/GROUND LEVEL IN INCHES</u>
10 (255 mm) . . . . .	.54 (1370 mm)
11 (280 mm) . . . . .	.53-1/2 (1360 mm)
12 (305 mm) . . . . .	.53 (1345 mm)
13 (330 mm) . . . . .	.52-1/2 (1335 mm)
14 (355 mm) . . . . .	.51-1/2 (1310 mm)
15 (380 mm) . . . . .	.51 (1295 mm)
16 (405 mm) . . . . .	.50-1/2 (1285 mm)
17 (430 mm) . . . . .	.50 (1270 mm)
18 (455 mm) . . . . .	.49-1/2 (1255 mm)
19 (485 mm) . . . . .	.49 (1245 mm)
20 (510 mm) . . . . .	.48-1/2 (1230 mm)
21 (535 mm) . . . . .	.47-1/2 (1205 mm)
22 (560 mm) . . . . .	.47 (1195 mm)
23 (585 mm) . . . . .	.46-1/2 (1180 mm)
24 (610 mm) . . . . .	.46 (1170 mm)

(*Refer to the illustrations for "D" and "H" locations.)

**ADAAG
4.34.2(2)(b)
[FR 7/15/93]**

16.4.6.3 If both a forward and parallel (i.e., side) approach are possible, then the highest operable part of all controls shall comply with either 16.4.6.1 or 16.4.6.2.

**ADAAG
4.34.3(3)
[FR 7/15/93]**

16.4.7 INSTRUCTIONS

16.4.7.1 Instructions and all information for ATM use shall be made accessible to, and independently usable by, persons with vision impairments.

**ADAAG
4.34.5
[FR 7/15/93]**

(NOTE: This Paragraph shall be interpreted as a general performance specification. While not stated specifically, Braille and large print type, when used in conjunction with keypads having tactile markings, do serve as one method of accommodating persons with vision impairments. Other methods for complying with this Paragraph may be used.)

**FR 7/26/91 At
5441**

16.4.8 BINS

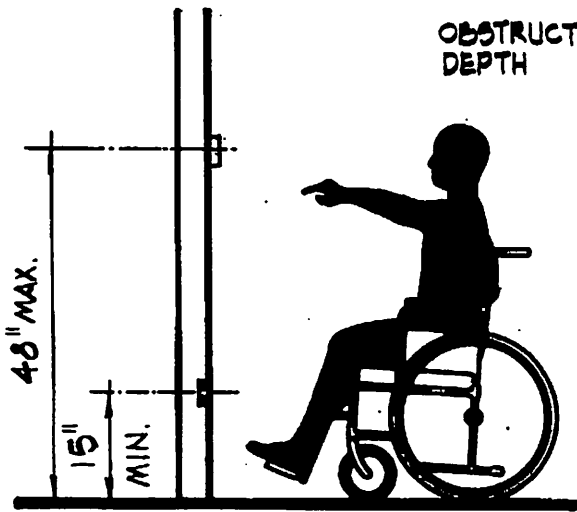
16.4.8.1 If bins are provided for envelopes, deposit tickets, waste paper, or other purposes, then a minimum of one of each type shall comply with 16.4.6.1, 16.4.6.2, or 16.4.6.3.

**ADAAG
4.34.3(4)
[FR 7/15/93]**

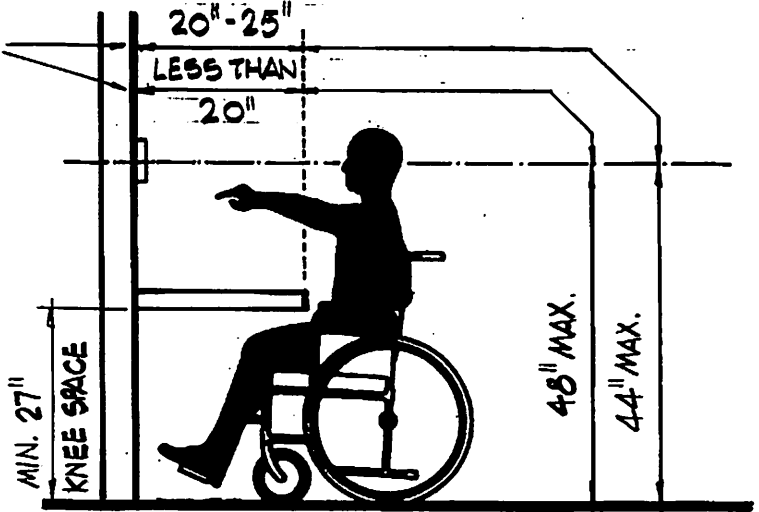
16.4.9 DRIVE-UP ATM

***16.4.9.1** *A drive-up-only ATM shall be required to comply only with 16.4.1 through 16.4.4, and 16.4.7.*

**ADAAG
4.1.3(20)
[FR 7/15/93]**

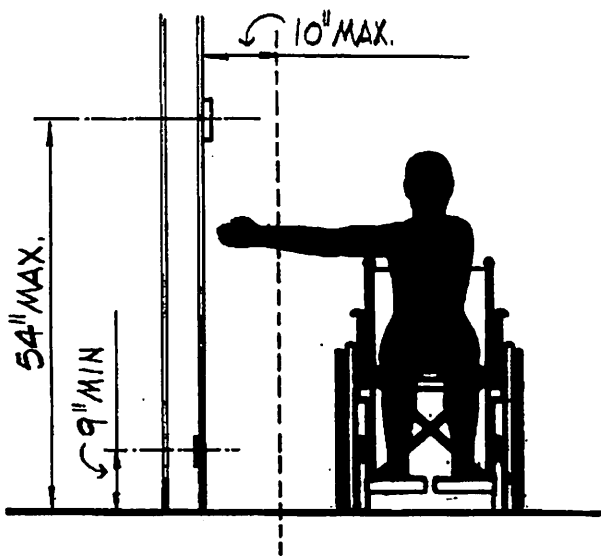


16.2.1.1-UNOBSTRUCTED

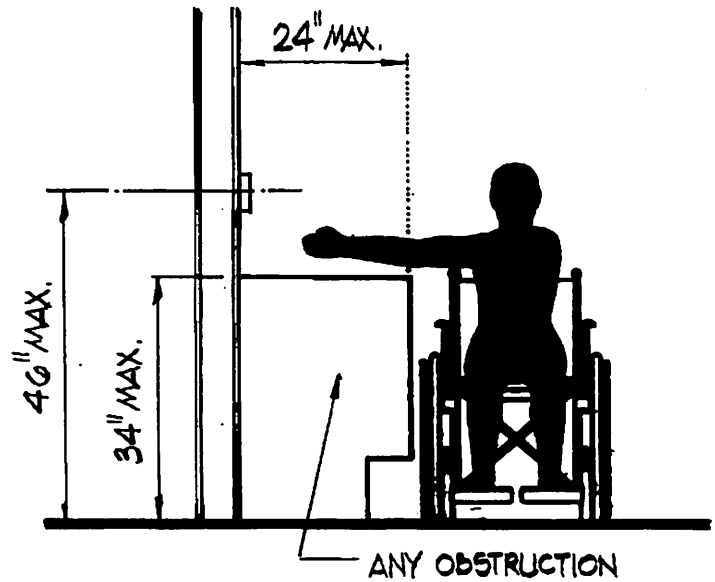


16.2.1.2-OBSTRUCTED

16.2.1- FORWARD REACH



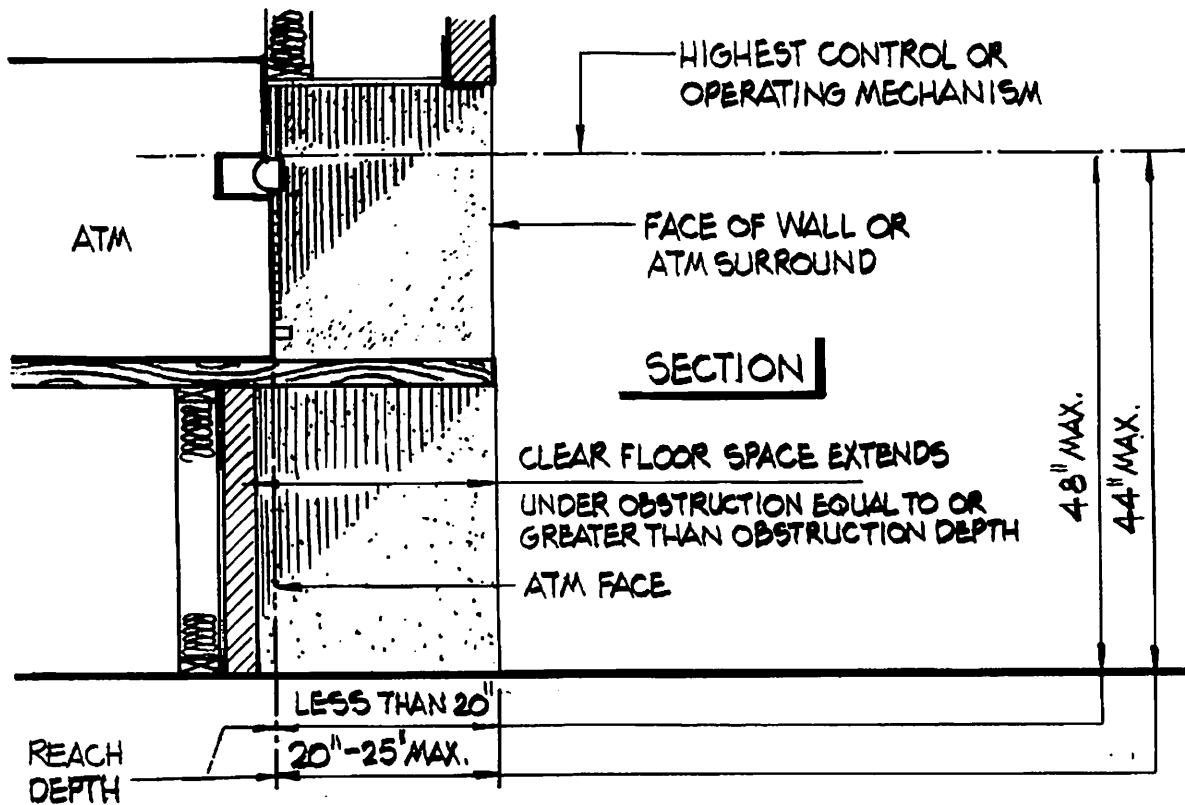
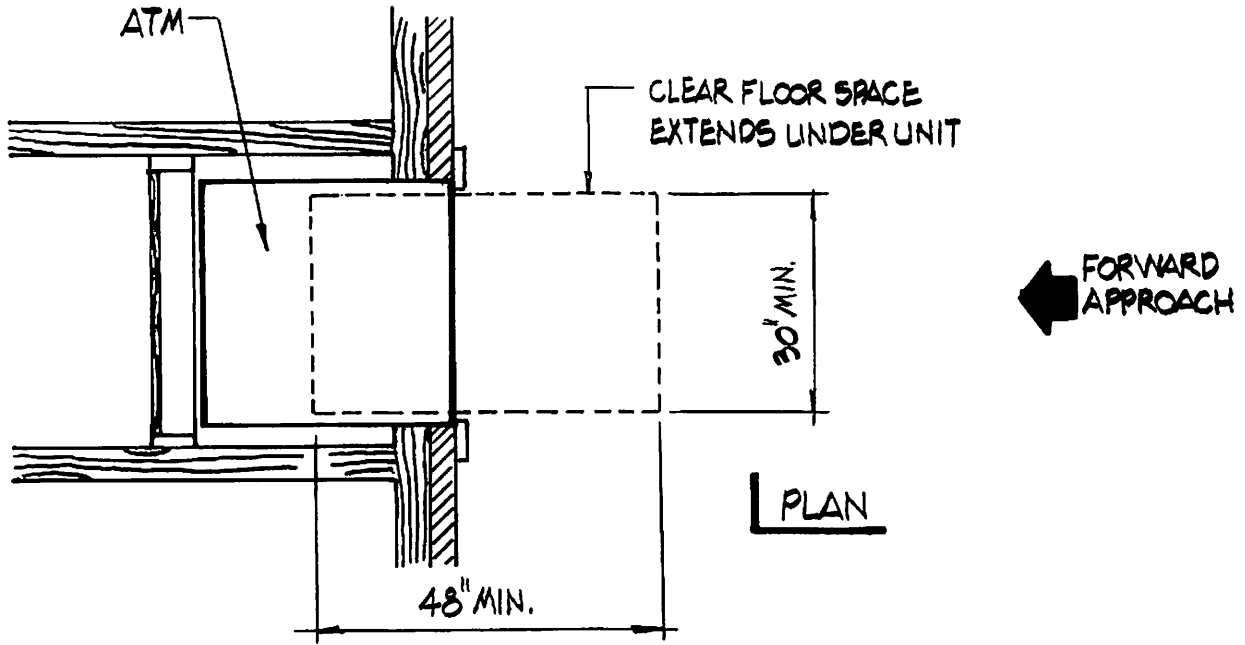
16.2.2.1-UNOBSTRUCTED



16.2.2.2-OBSTRUCTED

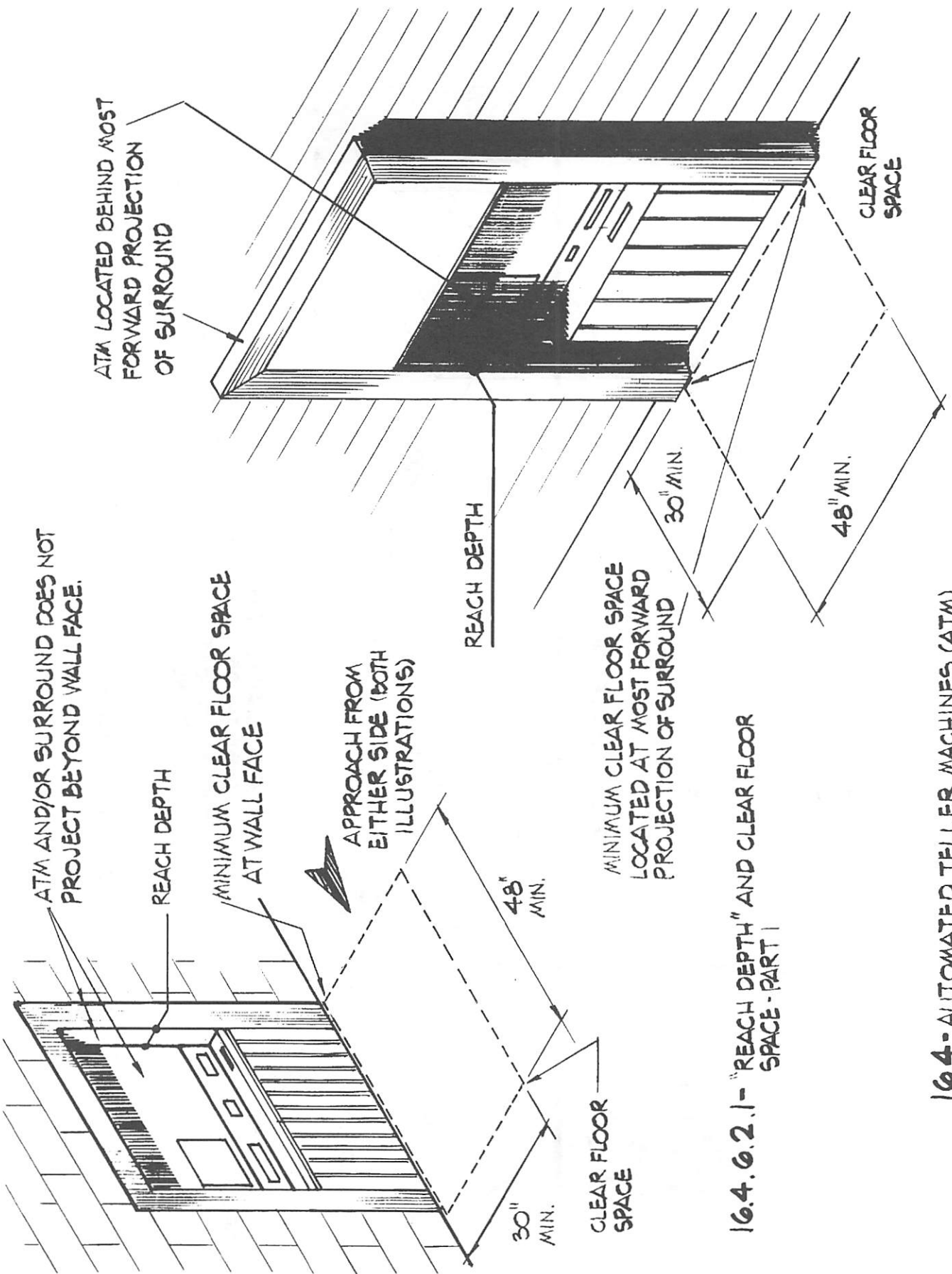
16.2.2- PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) REACH

16.2- MOUNTING HEIGHTS



16.4.6.1 - FORWARD APPROACH TO ATM

16.4 - AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES (ATM)



ATM AND/OR SURROUND DOES NOT PROJECT BEYOND WALL FACE.

ATM LOCATED BEHIND MOST FORWARD PROJECTION OF SURROUND

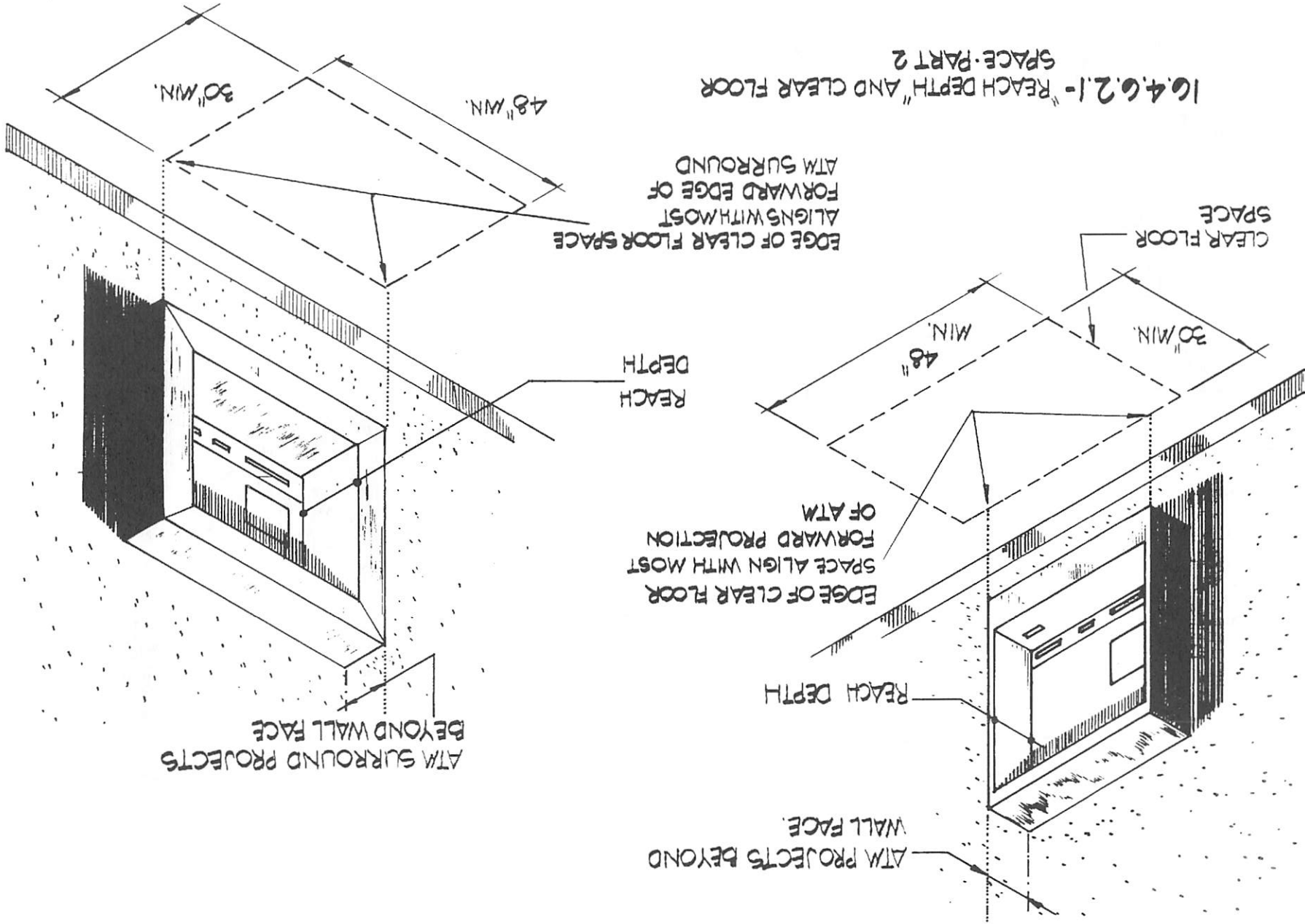
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

16.4.6.2.1 - "REACH DEPTH" AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - PART 1

16.4 - AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES (ATM)

16.4-AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES (A.T.M.)

16.4.6.2.1-"REACH DEPTH" AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE-PART 2



ATM SURROUND PROJECTS BEYOND WALL FACE

REACH DEPTH

EDGE OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE
ALIGNS WITH MOST
FORWARD EDGE OF
ATM SURROUND

30" MIN.

48" MIN.

EDGE OF CLEAR FLOOR
SPACE ALIGN WITH MOST
FORWARD PROJECTION
OF ATM

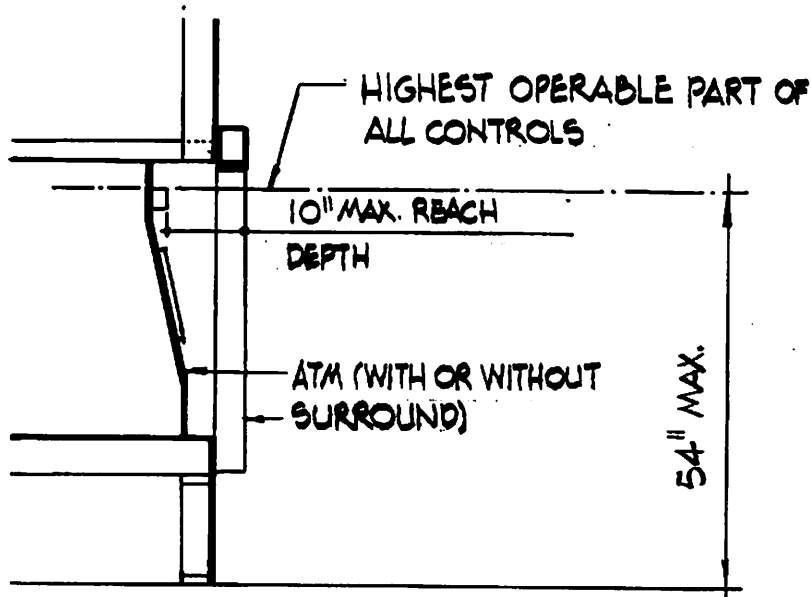
REACH DEPTH

ATM PROJECTS BEYOND
WALL FACE

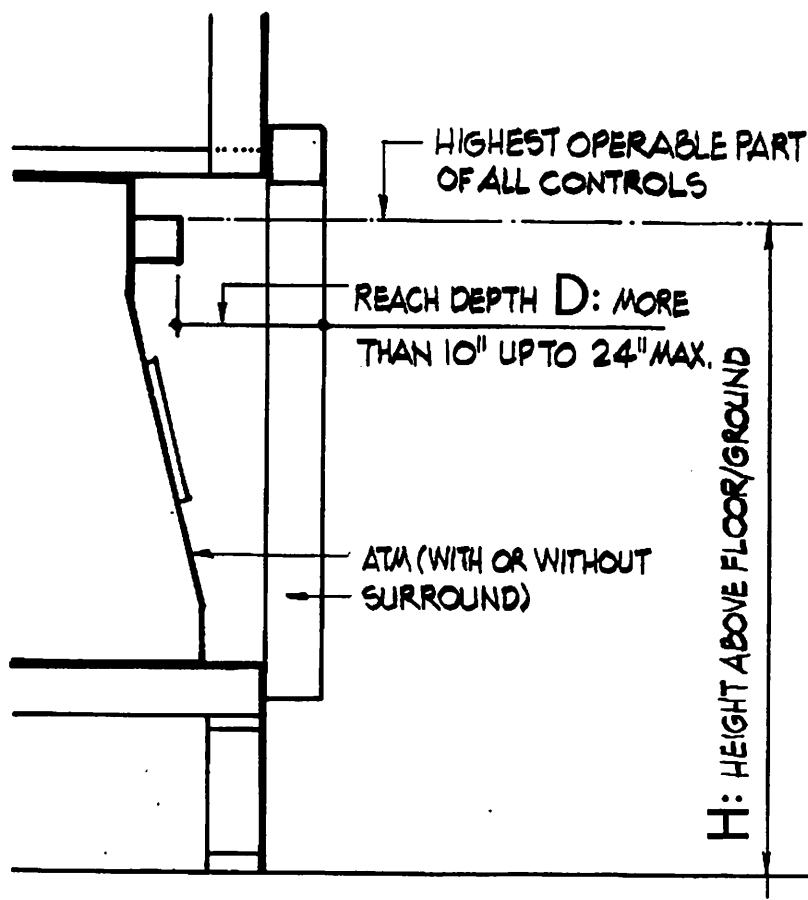
30" MIN.

48" MIN.

CLEAR FLOOR
SPACE



16.4.6.2.2-
 IF THE REACH DEPTH IS 10" MAXIMUM, THEN THE HIGHEST OPERABLE PART OF ALL CONTROLS SHALL BE 54" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL.



FOR A REACH DEPTH GREATER THAN 10" UP TO 24" MAXIMUM, THE HEIGHT TO THE HIGHEST OPERABLE CONTROL SHALL COMPLY WITH THE TABLE IN 16.4.6.2.3.

16.4 - AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES (A.T.M.)

CHAPTER 17 ALARMS

17.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

*17.1.1 If *alarm indicating appliances* are provided, then audible and visual appliances complying with this Chapter shall be installed. **ADAAG 4.1.3(14)**

17.1.2 Visual alarm indicating appliances shall be provided in each of the following areas: restrooms (i.e., toilet rooms or bathing facilities); general usage areas (e.g., meeting rooms, conference rooms); hallways; corridors; lobbies; and any other area for common use. **ADAAG 4.28.1**

(NOTE: As used in this Chapter the term "...common use..." shall include: classrooms; cafeterias; filing and photocopy rooms; employee break rooms; dressing, examination, and treatment rooms; and similar spaces that are not used solely as employee work areas.) **Access Board Bulletin # 2, Pg. 3 (July, 1994)**

17.1.3 Alarm indicating appliances in medical care facilities may be modified to suit standard health care alarm design practice. **ADAAG 4.1.3(14)**

(NOTE: A medical care facility may alter or modify the application of alarm indicating devices where it is usually not desirable to install alarms [e.g., patient rooms, surgical suites, recovery rooms, etc.]. Non medical areas of a facility [e.g., main lobby, cafeteria, public and/or common use toilet rooms] are required to comply with this Chapter.) **Access Board Bulletin #2, Pg. 7 (July, 1994)**

17.1.4 In transient lodging (Chapter 29) all non-sleeping areas within the scope of 17.1.2 shall comply with this Chapter. Sleeping rooms accessible to persons with mobility impairments (29.4.2) and those required to accommodate persons with hearing impairments (29.5.1) shall comply with 29.5.3. For multi-family dwellings [Chapter 30], see 17.4. **Derived From: ADAAG 4.1.3(14) FR 7/26/91 At 35437**

17.1.5 If combination audible/visual appliances are installed, then the appliance location shall comply with 17.3.2. **NFPA 6-3.7.1**

17.2 AUDIBLE INDICATING APPLIANCES

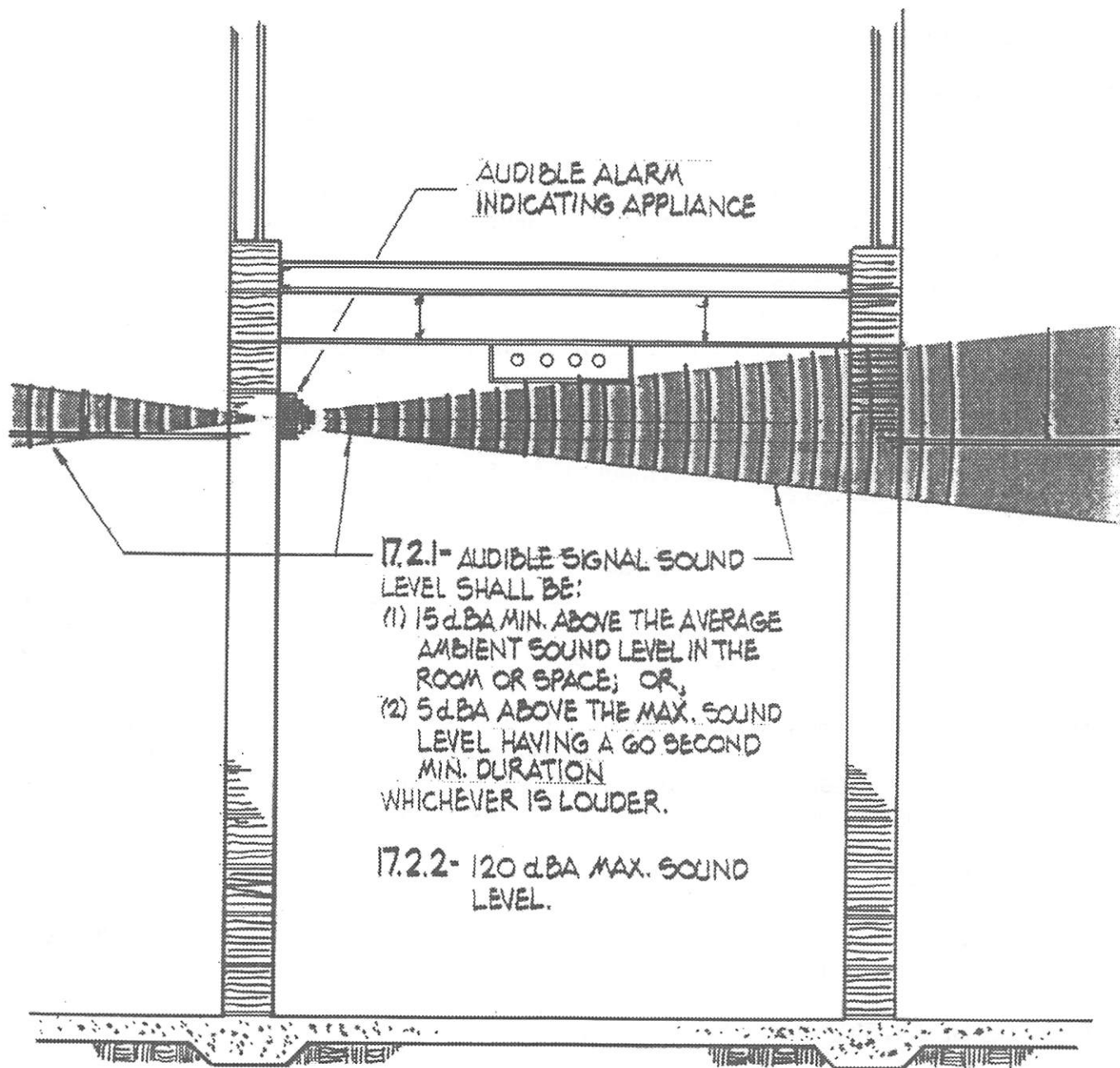
17.2.1 Audible signal sound level shall be:

- (1) 15 dBA minimum above the average ambient sound level in the room or space; or
- (2) 5 dBA above any maximum sound level having a 60 second minimum duration

**Vol. I, 905.1.4;
NFPA 72, 6-3.1.2;
ADAAG 4.28.2**

whichever is louder.

17.2.2 Sound levels for alarm signals shall not exceed 120 dbA. **ADAAG 4.28.2**



17.2- AUDIBLE INDICATING APPLIANCES

17.3 VISUAL INDICATING APPLIANCES

17.3.1 Visual appliance signals shall have the following minimum photometric features:

- (1) The color shall be clear or nominal white; ADAAG 4.28.3(2); NFPA 72, 6-4.2.2
- (2) A maximum pulse duration shall be two-tenths (0.2) of one second with a maximum duty cycle of forty percent (40%). The pulse duration is defined as the time interval between initial and final points of ten percent (10%) of maximum signal; ADAAG 4.28.1(3); NFPA 72, 6-4.2.1
- * (3) *Light intensity shall be 1,000 candela (cd) maximum;* NFPA 72, 6-4.2.2
- * (4) *The flash rate shall not exceed two flashes per second (2 Hz) nor be less than one flash every second (1 Hz) throughout the listed voltage range of the appliance.* NFPA 72, 6-4.2

*17.3.2 MOUNTING LOCATION

17.3.2.1 *The bottom of wall mounted appliances shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum to 96 inches (2400 mm) maximum above the finished floor.* NFPA 72, 6.4.4

* 17.3.2.2 *Ceiling mounted appliances shall be installed in compliance with NFPA 72.* Cross-Reference

17.3.3 SPACE ALLOCATION AND INTENSITY

NFPA 72, 6-4.4.1.1

17.3.3.1 Spacing between appliances shall be 100 feet (30 m) maximum.

17.3.3.2 NON-SLEEPING ROOMS

* 17.3.3.2.1 *Rooms having a 20 feet by 20 feet (6 m by 6 m) maximum size and a 10 feet (3 m) maximum ceiling height shall be provided with a minimum of one visual signal appliance having a minimum 15 (cd) candela rating. Rooms having a size and/or a ceiling height other than referenced herein or rooms having a configuration that is not square shall comply with NFPA 72 for number of appliances and appliance candela rating.* NFPA 72, Table 6.4.4.1(b)

Cross-Reference

17.3.3.3 CORRIDORS

* 17.3.3.3.1 *Corridor visual signal appliances shall have a 15 candela (cd) minimum rating.* NFPA 72, 6-4.4.2.1

* 17.3.3.3.2 Corridors having a 20 feet maximum width shall comply with the following:

<u>CORRIDOR LENGTH IN FEET (METERS)</u>	<u>MINIMUM NUMBER OF 15-cd VISUAL APPLIANCES</u>
Up To 130 (39.6 m).....	1
31 (9.4 m) To 130 (39.6 m).....	2
131 (40 m) To 230 (70.1 m).....	3
231 (70.4 m) To 330 (100.6 m).....	4
331 (100.9 m) To 430 (131 m).....	5
431 (131.4 m) To 530 (161.5 m).....	6

NFPA 72,
Table 6-4.4.2

* 17.3.3.3.3 For corridors having a width greater than 20 feet (6 m) the number of visual signal appliances and their individual candela (cd) rating comply with NFPA 72.

Cross-Reference

* 17.3.3.3.4 Appliances shall be located 15 feet (4.5 m) maximum from the corridor end. For the purposes of this sub-Section if there is an interruption of the concentrated viewing path (e.g., fire door, change in elevation, or other obstructions), then each such interruption shall constitute a separate corridor.

NFPA 72, 6-4.4.2.2

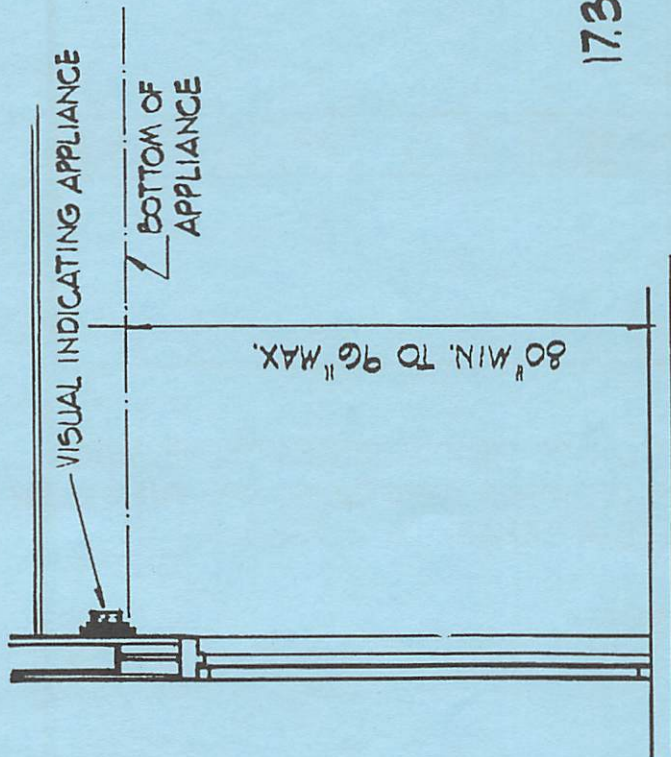
17.4 EXEMPTION

* 17.4.1 Visual alarm indicating appliances are not required within covered multi-family dwelling units. This exemption is not applicable to other types of alarm indicating appliances required by other parts of the Code within dwelling units, nor is it applicable for rooms, spaces, areas, or separate buildings subject to public and common use (e.g., corridors, rental office, community room, club house, etc.).

Privately-Owned
Dwelling Units Not In
ADA Jurisdiction;
Publicly-Owned
Dwelling Units:
Guidelines Not Yet
Published

LEGEND FOR MARGIN ANNOTATION

NFPA 72....National Fire Protection Association
National Fire Alarm Code, Chapter 6 (July, 1996)

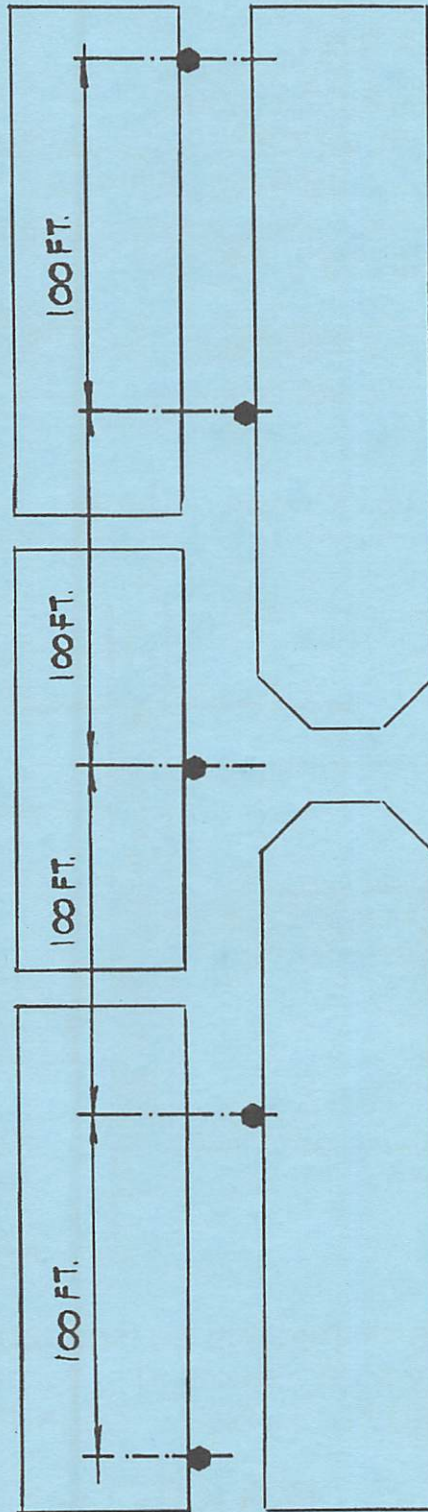


17.3.2.1- WALL MOUNTED APPLIANCE



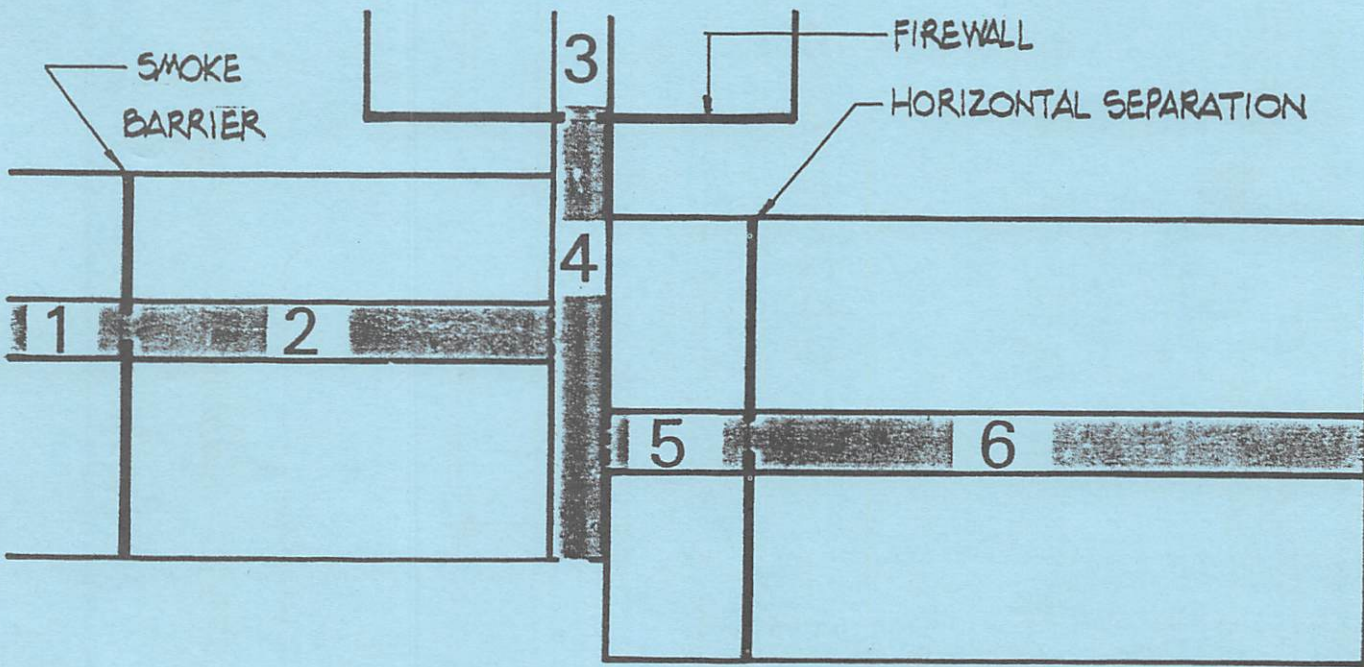
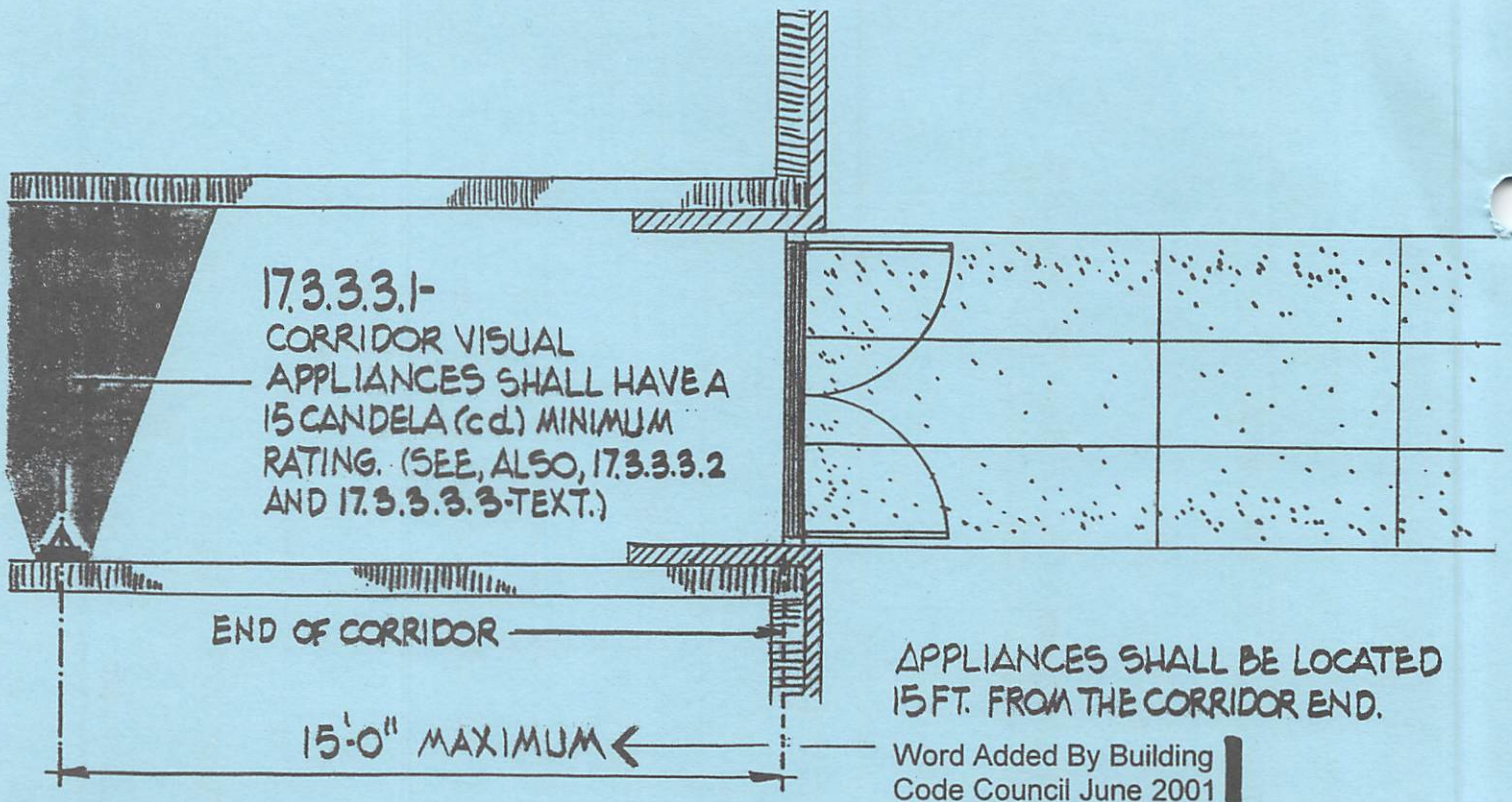
17.3.2.2- CEILING MOUNTED APPLIANCE SHALL BE INSTALLED IN COMPLIANCE WITH NFPA 72.

17.3.2- MOUNTING LOCATION



17.3.3.1- MAXIMUM SPACING BETWEEN VISUAL APPLIANCES

17.3- VISUAL INDICATING APPLIANCES



IN CORRIDORS, IF THERE IS AN INTERRUPTION OF THE CONCENTRATED VIEWING PATH (E.G., FIRE DOOR, CHANGE IN ELEVATION, OR OTHER OBSTRUCTIONS), THEN EACH SUCH INTERRUPTION SHALL CONSTITUTE A SEPARATE CORRIDOR.

17.3.3.3- CORRIDORS

17.3- VISUAL INDICATING APPLIANCES

CHAPTER 18 SIGNAGE

18.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

18.1.1 Exterior and interior signs which designate permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 18.1.4, 18.3.1, 18.3.2, 18.3.4 (if applicable), and the applicable requirements of 18.4.

**ADAAG 4.1.2(7),
4.1.3(16)(a)**

***18.1.1.1** *Safety devices designed and intended for public use (e.g., fire alarm pull stations, manual mechanisms activating emergency signaling devices, fire extinguishers, etc.) shall be identified with signage complying with 18.1.4 and 18.2.1.*

**Vol. I-C,
4.11(b)(1)**

18.1.2 Exterior and interior signs which provide direction to, or information about, functional spaces of a building shall comply with 18.1.4 and 18.2.1. If such signage is suspended or projected overhead, then it shall comply with 18.1.4 and 18.2.2. (For overhead clearance see, also, 10.2.1.)

**ADAAG
4.1.2(7),
4.1.3(16)(b)**

18.1.3 The following elements and spaces of accessible buildings shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility:

- (1) Accessible passenger loading zones (see 4.11.5).
- (2) Accessible entrances when not all entrances are accessible. Inaccessible entrances shall have signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the nearest accessible entrance. (See 6.2.3 and 38.1.5).
- (3) Accessible toilet and bathing facilities when not all are accessible (see 39.1.1 and 51.4.5.3).

**ADAAG
4.1.2(7)(b),
4.1.2(7)(c),
4.1.2(7)(d)**

18.1.4 All signs shall have letters, numerals, characters and the background on which they are located in an eggshell (semi-matte), matte (flat), or other non-glare finish only. Characters and symbols shall contrast with the background on which they are mounted either by having light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

**Vol. I-C, 4.11(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.30.5**

18.1.5 See 14.2.5.2 and 14.3.3 for signage requirements for accessible (volume control) and text (TDD) telephones.

Cross-Reference

18.1.6 See 22.4.3 for Assistive Listening System (A.L.S.) signage requirements.

Cross-Reference

18.2 CHARACTER PROPORTION AND CHARACTER HEIGHT

18.2.1 Letters and numbers on signs shall have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1. Stroke-width-to-height ratio shall be between 1:5 and 1:10.

ADAAG
4.30.2

18.2.2 For exterior and interior signs that are projected or suspended overhead the characters and numbers shall be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. Character proportion shall comply with 18.2.1 and the height shall be 3 inches (75 mm) minimum measured using a capital letter "X". Lower case characters may be used (i.e., the sign message is not restricted to capital letters only).

ADAAG
4.30.3;
FR 7/26/91 At
35417, 35422

18.3 RAISED AND BRAILLE LETTERS AND NUMERALS, PICTORIAL SYMBOLS

*18.3.1 Letters and numbers shall be raised 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) from the background on which they are mounted and shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum to 2 inches (50 mm) maximum in height. **Letters shall be capital letters only. Letters and numerals shall have sharply defined edges** and may be either sans serif or simple serif.

Vol. I-C,
4.11(b)(3);
ADAAG
4.30.4

18.3.2 Alphabetic/numeric signage shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille.

ADAAG 4.30.4

*18.3.3 **Signs identifying toilets shall use the words "MEN" and "WOMEN", or "MEN'S TOILET" and "WOMEN'S TOILET" only. Male and female caricatures (i.e., pictograms) shall also be provided.**

Vol. I-C,
4.11(b)(4)

18.3.4 If pictograms are provided, then they shall be accompanied by the equivalent verbal description placed directly below the pictogram. The pictogram border dimension (the unobstructed field within which it is located) shall be 6 inches (150 mm) minimum.

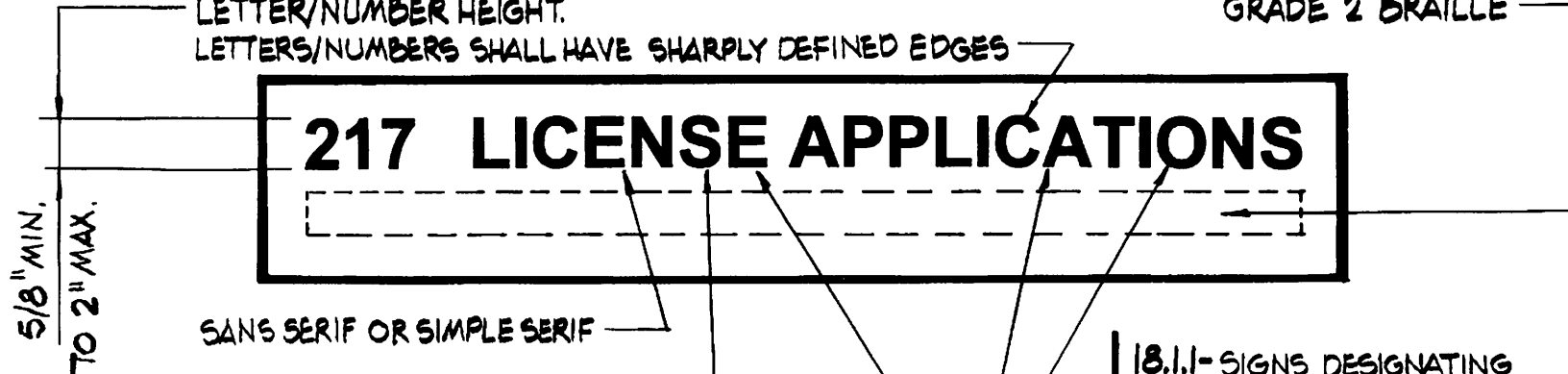
ADAAG
4.30.4

(NOTE: If a Standard Symbol is utilized in addition to any room or space identification, then the Symbol itself does not have to be raised nor accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Standard Symbols such as the International: Symbol of Accessibility, TDD Symbol, Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss are Standard Symbols. Other Standard Symbols [e.g., Biological or Radiation Hazard] are included in this definition.)

ADAAG Access
Survey, Pg. 19-2

18.3.1- LETTERS SHALL BE CAPITAL LETTERS ONLY.
LETTERS/NUMBERS SHALL PROJECT 1/32"
FROM THE BACKGROUND ON WHICH THEY MOUNTED.
LETTER/NUMBER HEIGHT.
LETTERS/NUMBERS SHALL HAVE SHARPLY DEFINED EDGES

18.3.2- ALPHABETIC/NUMERIC
SIGNAGE SHALL BE
ACCOMPANIED BY
GRADE 2 BRAILLE



SANS SERIF OR SIMPLE SERIF

18.1.1- SIGNS DESIGNATING
PERMANENT ROOMS AND SPACES

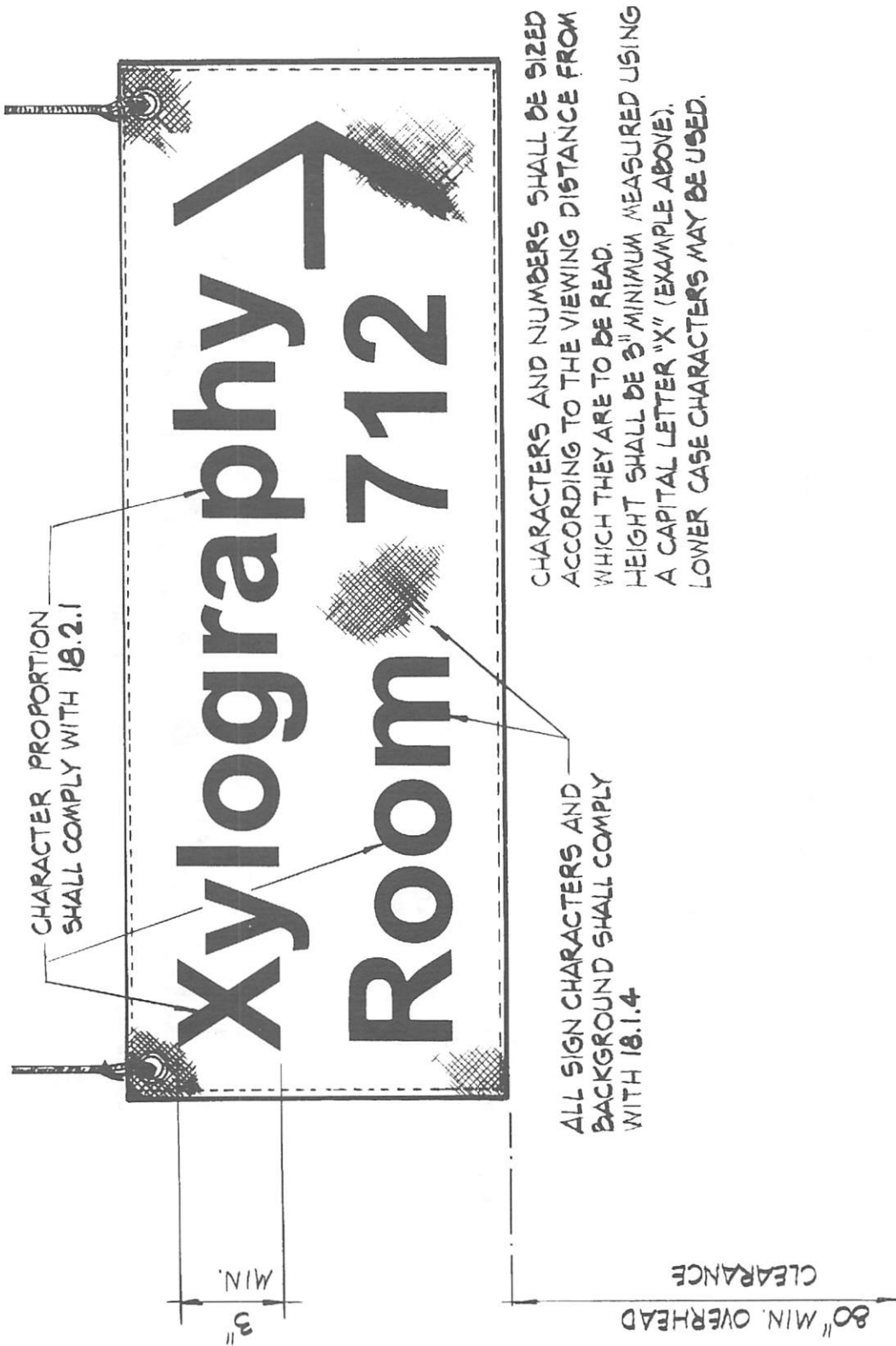
18.1.4- ALL SIGNS SHALL HAVE LETTERS, NUMERALS
AND CHARACTERS IN AN EGGSHELL, MATTE,
OR OTHER NON-GLARE FINISH ONLY. CHARACTERS
SHALL CONTRAST WITH THEIR BACKGROUND
(DARK-ON-LIGHT OR LIGHT-ON-DARK).

FOR CHARACTER PROPORTION
SEE 18.2.1 (TEXT)



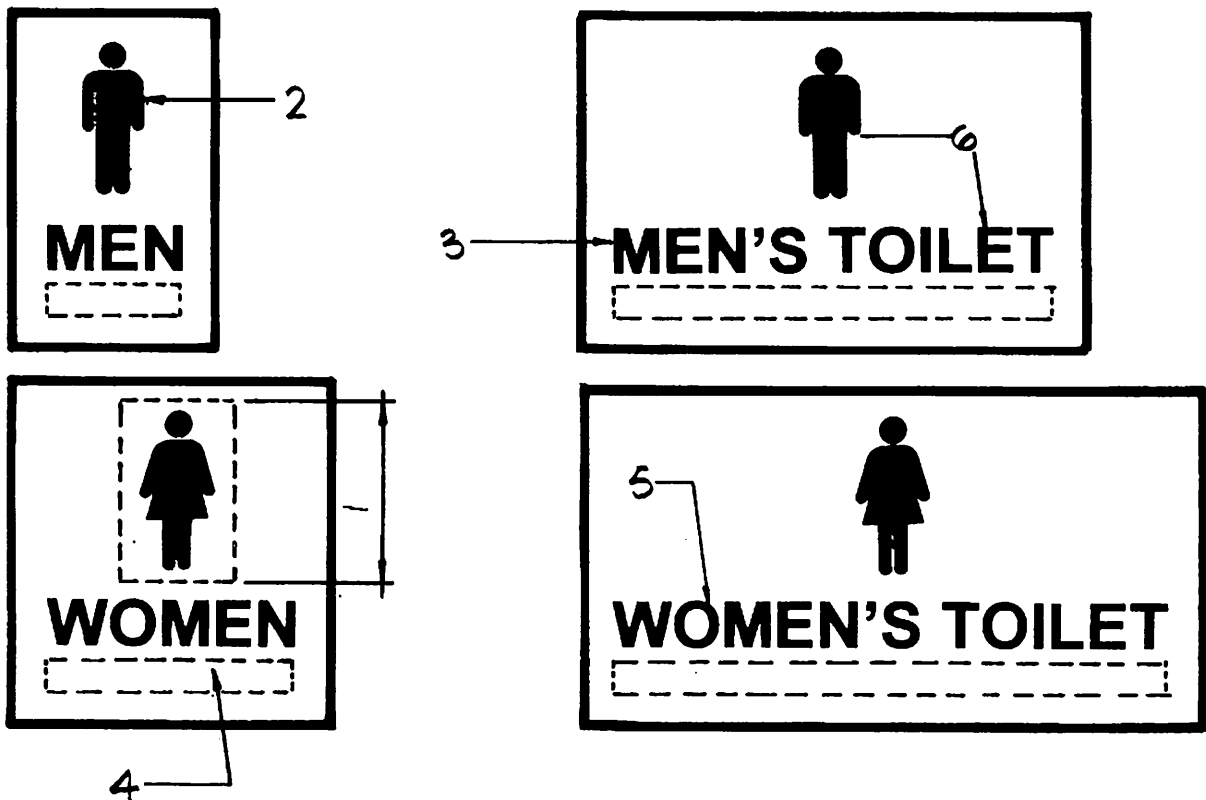
18.1.2- DIRECTION OR INFORMATION SIGNS

18.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



CHARACTERS AND NUMBERS SHALL BE SIZED ACCORDING TO THE VIEWING DISTANCE FROM WHICH THEY ARE TO BE READ. HEIGHT SHALL BE 3" MINIMUM MEASURED USING A CAPITAL LETTER "X" (EXAMPLE ABOVE). LOWER CASE CHARACTERS MAY BE USED.

18.2.2- EXTERIOR/INTERIOR SIGNS PROJECTED OR SUSPENDED OVERHEAD



NOTES (TYPICAL FOR ALL SIGNS):

1. 6" MIN. BORDER DIMENSION - MALE/FEMALE FIGURES.
2. USE OF MALE/FEMALE CARICATURES IS REQUIRED.
3. RAISED LETTERS/NUMBERS - SEE 18.3.1 (TEXT).
4. BRAILLE - SEE 18.3.2 (TEXT).
5. CHARACTER PROPORTION - SEE 18.2.1 (TEXT).
6. COLOR CONTRAST - SEE 18.1.4 (TEXT).

SIGNS ARE LIMITED ONLY TO EXAMPLES SHOWN

FOR CHILDREN'S FACILITIES (CHAPTER 32)
 "BOYS/BOY'S TOILET" AND "GIRLS/GIRL'S TOILET"
 MAY BE USED IN PLACE OF THE ADULT NOMENCLATURE.

18.3.3- TOILET ROOM IDENTIFICATION SIGNS



6" MIN.
BORDER
DIMENSION

GRADE 2
BRAILLE

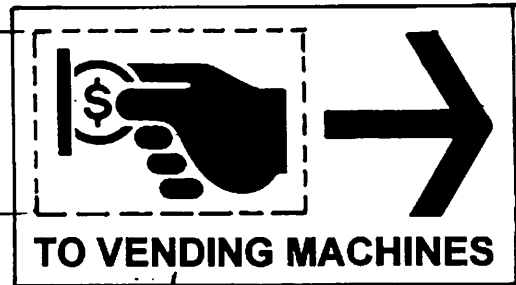


WRITTEN
DESCRIPTION BELOW
PICTOGRAM

EXAMPLES OF SIGNS WITH PICTOGRAMS IDENTIFYING PERMANENT ROOMS AND SPACES. SIGN COMPLIES WITH 18.1.1.



6" MINIMUM
BORDER
DIMENSION



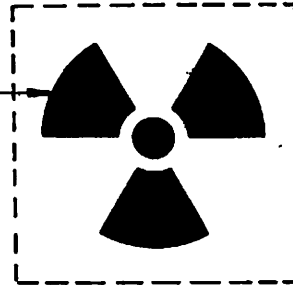
WRITTEN DESCRIPTION
BELOW PICTOGRAM

EXAMPLES OF SIGNS WITH PICTOGRAMS INDICATING DIRECTION TO, OR INFORMATION ABOUT, FUNCTIONAL SPACES. SIGN COMPLIES WITH 18.1.2.

IF A STANDARD SYMBOL IS UTILIZED IN ADDITION TO ANY ROOM OR SPACE IDENTIFICATION, THEN THE SYMBOL ITSELF DOES NOT HAVE TO BE RAISED NOR ACCOMPANIED BY GRADE 2 BRAILLE. EXAMPLE OF STANDARD SYMBOLS: TDD (SEE CHAPTER 14); ACCESS FOR



HEARING LOSS (SEE CHAPTER 22). EXAMPLES OF OTHER STANDARD SYMBOLS: RADIATION HAZARD BIOLOGICAL HAZARD



6" MINIMUM
BORDER
DIMENSION

18.3.4 - PICTOGRAMS

18.4 MOUNTING LOCATION AND HEIGHT

18.4.1 Signs designating permanent rooms and spaces shall be located on the wall or partition adjacent to the strike jamb/latch side of the door.

Vol. I-C, 4.11(c)(2);
ADAAG 4.30.6

*18.4.1.1 If no wall space is available adjacent to the strike jamb/latch side of the door, then the sign(s) shall be placed on the nearest adjacent wall or partition. For double (two-leaf) doors ***the sign shall be placed on the wall or partition adjacent to the primary operable leaf.***

ADAAG
4.30.6

*18.4.1.2 ***If the adjacent wall/partition space cannot accommodate the physical size of the sign, then it shall be centered on the door face at the height specified by 18.4.3.***

(NOTE: This Paragraph can only be used in manifestly extreme circumstances if the design of particular room, space, or area will not permit compliance with 18.4.1 or 18.4.1.1. This Paragraph shall not be utilized for the placement of all signage throughout a building or facility nor is it to be interpreted as such.)

Derived From
Vol. I-C,
4.11(c)(3)
And Pg. 165

18.4.2 Except for 18.4.1.2, the mounting location shall be such that a person can approach to within 3 inches (75 mm) of the sign without encountering any protruding objects or having to stand within the swing of a door.

ADAAG
4.30.6

18.4.3 The sign horizontal centerline shall be at 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor or ground level.

ADAAG
4.30.6

*18.4.3.1 ***Signs identifying safety devices intended for public use shall have the horizontal centerline at the same height as the operating mechanism (see 16.2.1 or 16.2.2, as applicable). Signs may be located either to the left or right of the device. If the device is located within a cabinet, then the sign shall be located on the wall or partition adjacent to the door operating handle or pull.***

Derived From:
Vol. I-C,
4.11(b)(1);
ADAAG
4.30 And 4.27

*18.5 HAZARDOUS AREAS

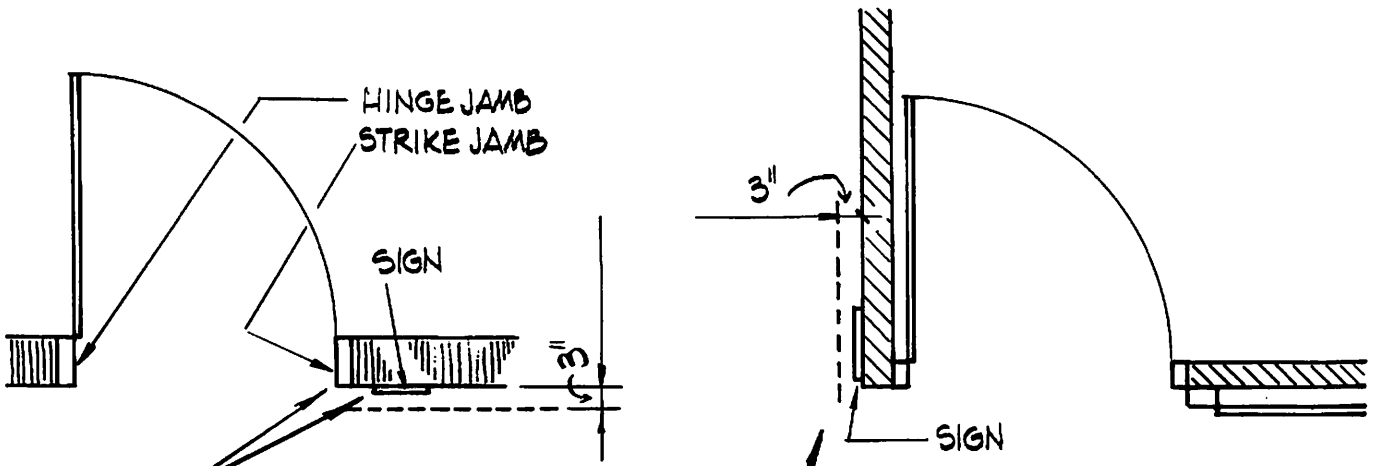
18.5.1 ***Hazardous areas of a building (e.g., a loading dock, boiler room, electrical equipment room, etc.) shall have signs complying with this Chapter in addition to the requirements of 7.10.***

Vol. I-C, 4.11(d)(1);
4.11(d)(2)

18.6 EXEMPTION

18.6.1 Building directories, menus, and all other signs which are temporary (e.g., temporary information about rooms or spaces such as the name of the current occupant of the room).

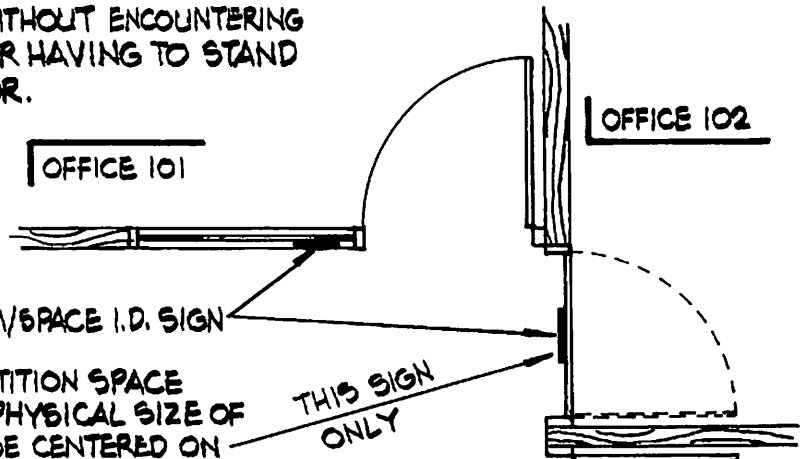
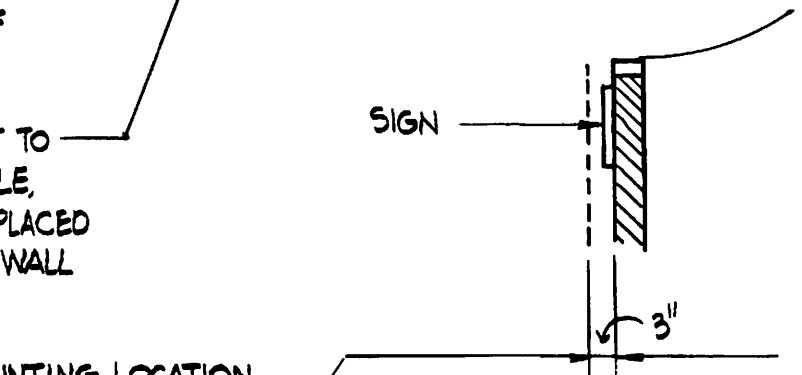
ADAAG 4.1.3(16);
FR 7/26/91 At 35423



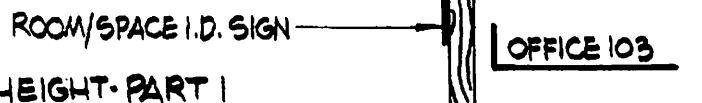
18.4.1- SIGNS DESIGNATING PERMANENT ROOMS AND SPACES SHALL BE LOCATED ADJACENT TO THE STRIKE JAMB/LATCH SIDE OF THE DOOR.

18.4.1.1- IF NO WALL SPACE ADJACENT TO THE STRIKE JAMB IS AVAILABLE, THEN THE SIGN(S) SHALL BE PLACED ON THE NEAREST ADJACENT WALL OR PARTITION.

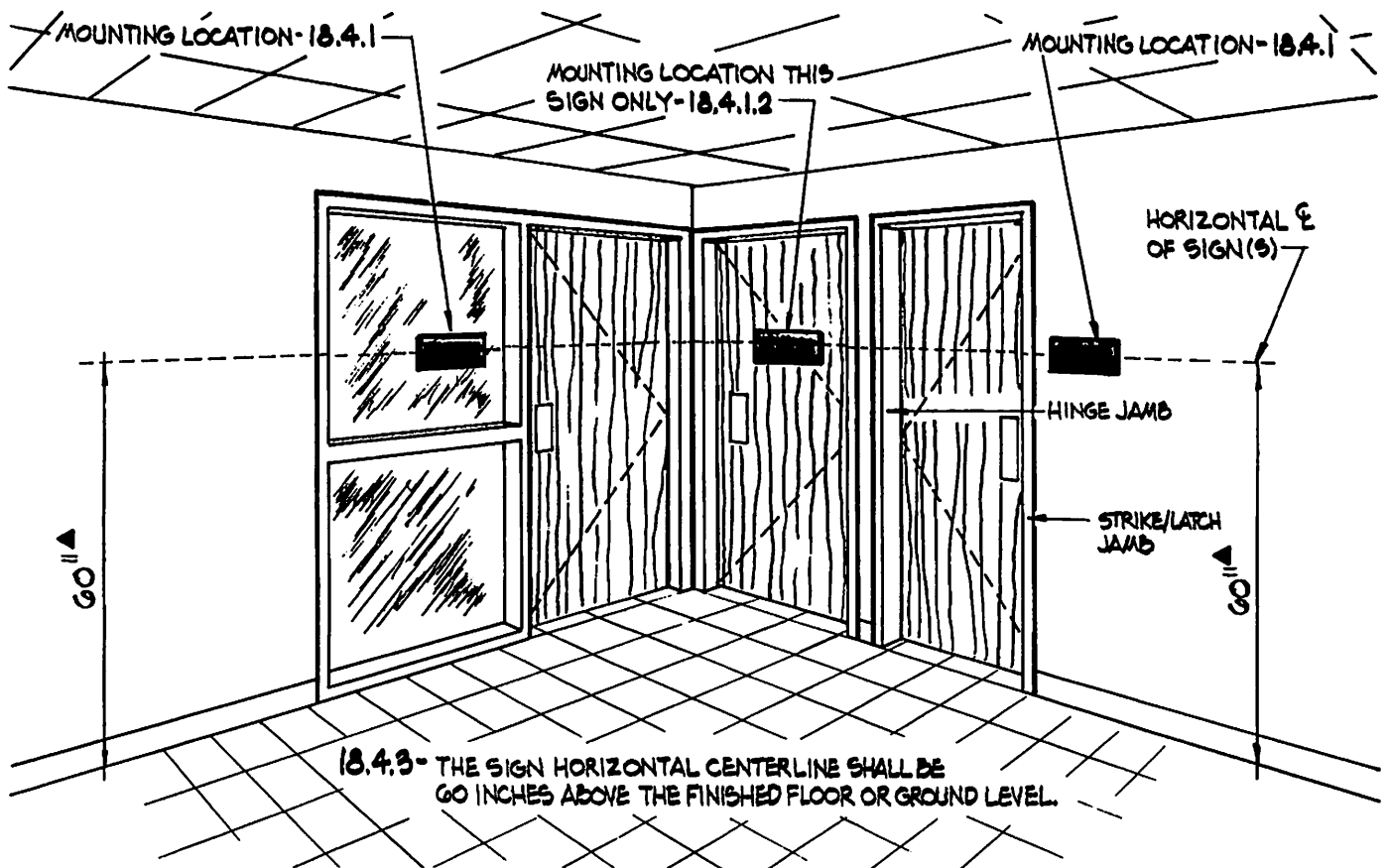
18.4.2- EXCEPT FOR 18.4.1.2, THE MOUNTING LOCATION SHALL BE SUCH THAT A PERSON CAN APPROACH TO WITHIN 3" OF THE SIGN WITHOUT ENCOUNTERING ANY PROTRUDING OBJECTS OR HAVING TO STAND WITHIN THE SWING OF A DOOR.



18.4.1.2- IF THE ADJACENT WALL/PARTITION SPACE CANNOT ACCOMMODATE THE PHYSICAL SIZE OF THE SIGN, THEN IT SHALL BE CENTERED ON THE DOOR FACE AT THE HEIGHT SPECIFIED BY 18.4.3. (SEE, ALSO, THE TEXT NOTE FOLLOWING THIS PARAGRAPH.)



18.4 - MOUNTING LOCATION AND HEIGHT - PART I



18.4.3- THE SIGN HORIZONTAL CENTERLINE SHALL BE 60 INCHES ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL.

▲ NOTE THAT THE 60" MOUNTING HEIGHT IS NEITHER A MINIMUM NOR A MAXIMUM DIMENSION.

18.4- MOUNTING LOCATION AND HEIGHT- PART 2

CHAPTER 19 DETECTABLE WARNINGS

(NOTE: IN THE APRIL 12, 1994 FEDERAL REGISTER [PAGES 17442-17447] THE U.S. ARCHITECTURAL AND TRANSPORTATION BARRIERS COMPLIANCE BOARD, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION, AND U.S. DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE TEMPORARILY SUSPENDED THE USE OF DETECTABLE WARNINGS AT CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS, REFLECTING POOLS, AND HAZARDOUS VEHICULAR AREAS PENDING FURTHER RESEARCH. THE SUSPENSION WAS TO HAVE REMAINED IN EFFECT UNTIL JULY 26, 1996; THE ACCESS BOARD SUBSEQUENTLY ANNOUNCED [OCTOBER 19, 1995] THAT THE SUSPENSION IS EXTENDED FOR TWO ADDITIONAL YEARS [I.E., UNTIL 1998]. THE ACCESS BOARD, IN THE NOVEMBER 23, 1998 FEDERAL REGISTER [PAGE 64836] EXTENDED THE SUSPENSION TO JULY 26, 2001, WHEN IT IS EXPECTED THAT THE RULEMAKING TO REVISE AND UPDATE ADAAG AND THE STANDARDS FOR ACCESSIBLE DESIGN WILL BE COMPLETED. THIS CHAPTER IS TEMPORARILY SUSPENDED PENDING FINAL ACTION BY THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT. IT IS RETAINED FOR EDITORIAL PURPOSES ONLY. **THIS SUSPENSION IS NOT APPLICABLE FOR DETECTABLE WARNINGS REQUIRED AT RAIL SYSTEM PLATFORM EDGES [SEE 24.3.9].**)

19.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS (Reserved.)

19.2 DETECTABLE WARNING CHARACTERISTICS

19.2.1 Warning surfaces shall consist of raised, truncated domes having the following nominal sizes and spacing:

(1) Dome diameter---0.9 inch (23 mm);

ADAAG 4.29.2

(2) Dome height---0.2 inch (5 mm);

(3) Center-to-center spacing---2.35 inches (60 mm).

19.2.2 Visual contrast with adjoining surfaces shall be provided and may be either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

ADAAG 4.29.2

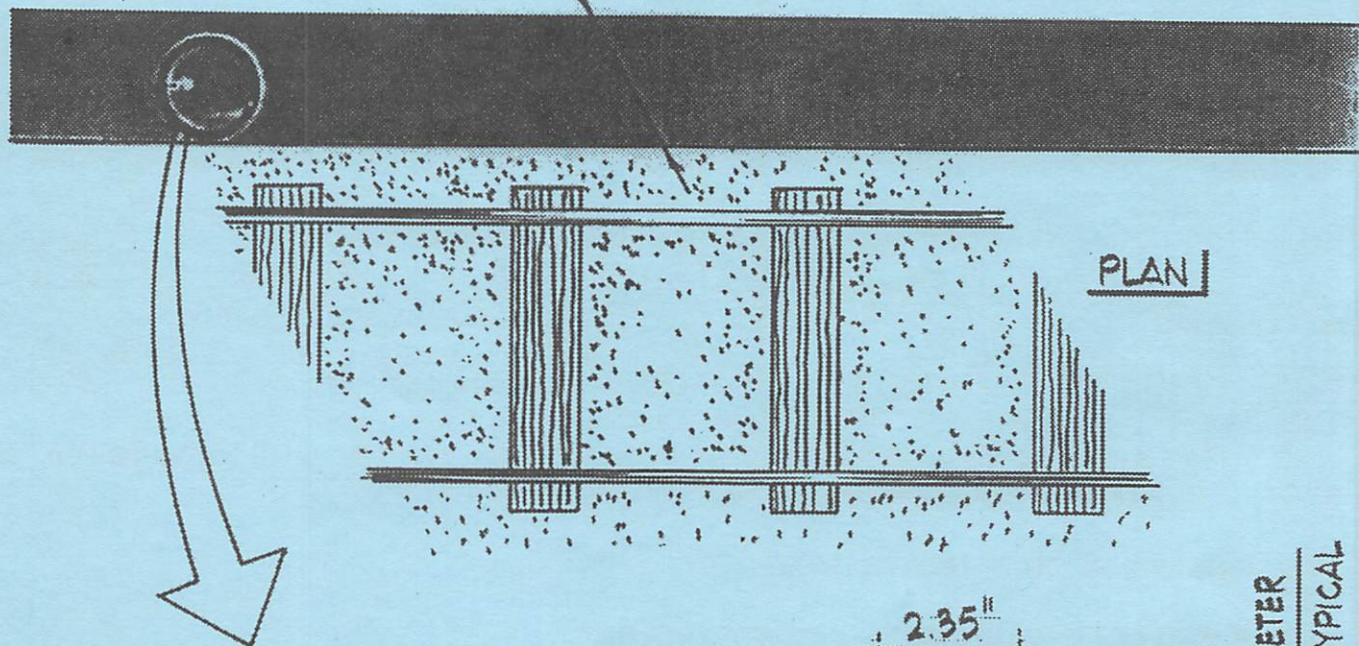
(NOTE: The color must be an integral part of the detectable warning surface, not surface applied like paint.)

ADAAG 4.29.2;
ADAAG Access
Survey, Pg.21-1

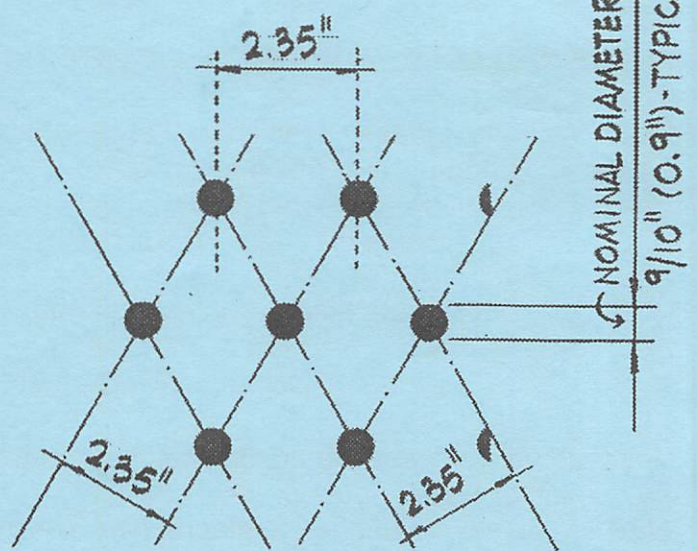
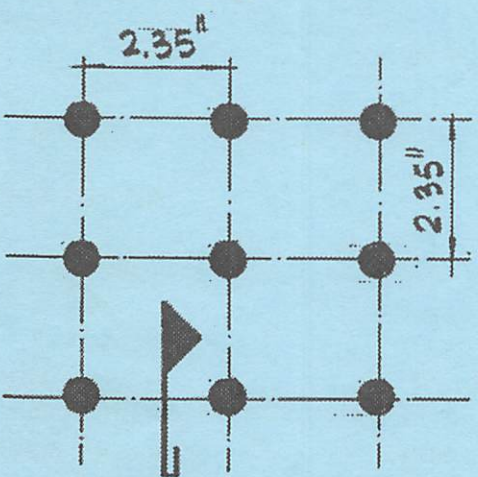
19.2.3 Detectable warnings used on interior surfaces shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces either by a change in resiliency or by materials that, when contacted by a cane, produce a different sound.

ADAAG 4.29.2

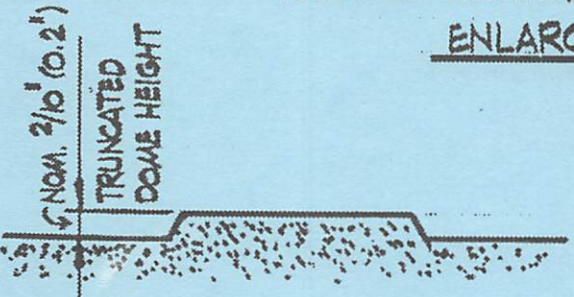
DETECTABLE WARNING



PLAN



NOMINAL SPACING/DIAMETER OF DOMES (EITHER PLAN)
ENLARGED PLAN



DOMES SECTION

VISUAL CONTRAST WITH ADJOINING SURFACES SHALL BE PROVIDED BY EITHER LIGHT-ON-DARK; OR DARK-ON-LIGHT.

19.2- DETECTABLE WARNING

CHAPTER 20 STORAGE

20.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

20.1.1 If fixed or built-in storage facilities (e.g., cabinets, shelves, closets, drawers, etc.) are provided in accessible spaces, then a minimum of one of each type of storage shall comply with this Chapter. **ADAAG 4.1.3(12)(a)**

20.1.2 Storage facilities not required to be accessible may be located outside the clearances and dimensions required by this Chapter provided that the inaccessible storage facilities do not obstruct or hinder access to, nor use of, accessible storage. **ADAAG 4.1.3(12)(a)**

20.1.3 See 7.2.1.1 for doors opening on to shallow closets. **Cross-Reference**

20.1.4 For accessible storage facilities in kitchens, kitchenettes, wet bars, etc. located in transient lodging guest rooms, see 29.4.5.2. **Cross-Reference**

20.1.5 See 30.5.4.2 for kitchen wall/base cabinets within covered multi-family dwellings. **Cross-Reference**

20.2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

20.2.1 For either a forward or a parallel (i.e., a side) approach the clear floor space at any accessible storage facility shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum. The long dimension shall always be parallel to the direction of approach. **ADAAG 4.25.2**

20.3 REACH RANGES

20.3.1 FORWARD REACH

20.3.1.1 For an unobstructed forward reach, see 16.2.1.1. **ADAAG 4.25.3, Figure 5(a)**

20.3.1.2 For a forward reach over an obstruction, see 16.2.1.2. **ADAAG 4.25.3, Figure 5(b)**
(NOTE: For 20.3.1.1 and 20.3.1.2 see, also, 16.2.1.3.)

20.3.2 PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH

20.3.2.1 For an unobstructed side reach, see 16.2.2.1. **ADAAG 4.25.3, Figure 6(b)**

20.3.2.2 For a side reach over an obstruction, see 16.2.2.2 **ADAAG 4.25.3, Figure 6(c)**

20.3.2.3 Clothes rods or storage shelves accessed by a parallel (i.e., side) reach and located in open areas (i.e., not in closets or located in a shallow recess) shall be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor. **ADAAG 4.25.3**

20.3.2.3.1 For a person in a wheelchair using a parallel (i.e., side) approach where the reach is greater than 10 inches (255 mm) up to 21 inches (535 mm) maximum, the height to a shelf or clothes hanger rod shall be:

(1) 9 inches (380 mm) minimum to 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for shelves; and

**ADAAG 4.25.3,
Figure 38(a)**

(2) 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a clothes hanger rod in a closet.

**ADAAG 4.25.3,
Figure 38(b)**

20.4 HARDWARE

20.4.1 Door and drawer hardware for accessible storage shall comply with the requirements of 7.9.1.1, 7.9.1.2 and 16.1.2. The use of finger slots, knobs of any size, recessed or flush pull rings, or similar hardware is prohibited.

**ADAAG
4.25.4**

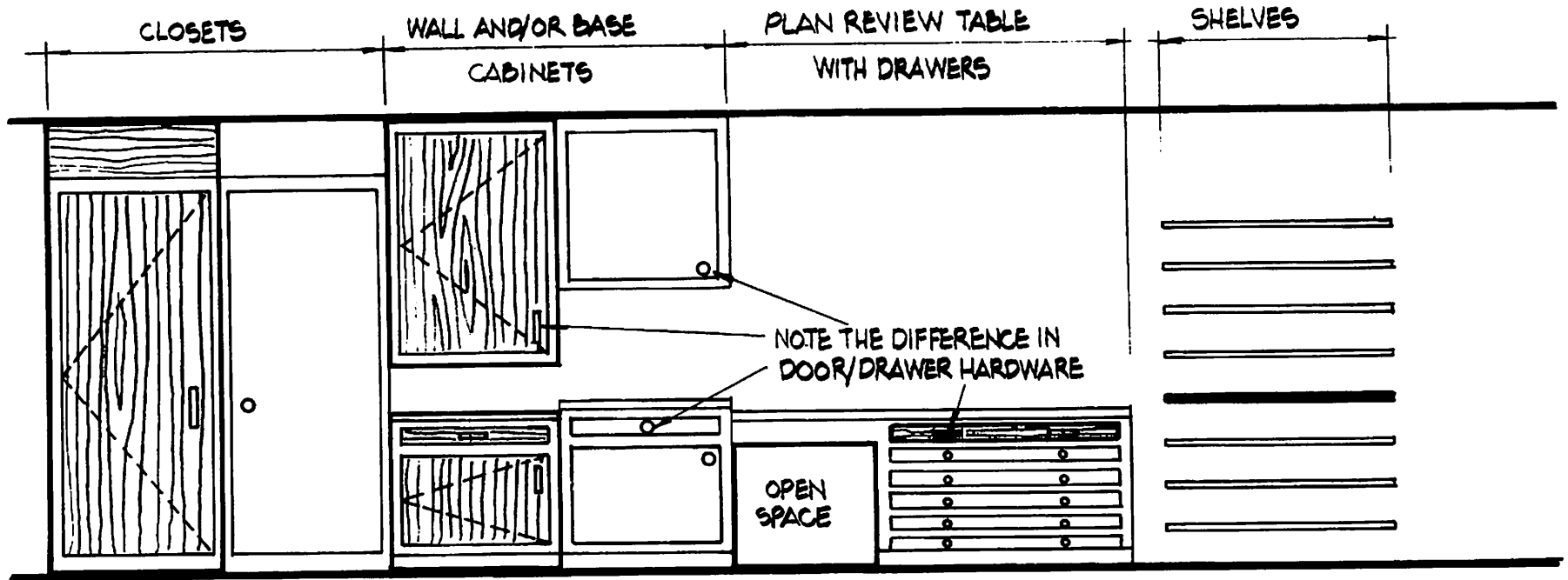
20.4.2 The use of touch latches shall be acceptable.

ADAAG 4.25.4

20.5 EXEMPTION

20.5.1 Shelves or display units that allow customer self-service shall be located on an accessible route. The requirements for forward or parallel (i.e., side) reach are not applicable.

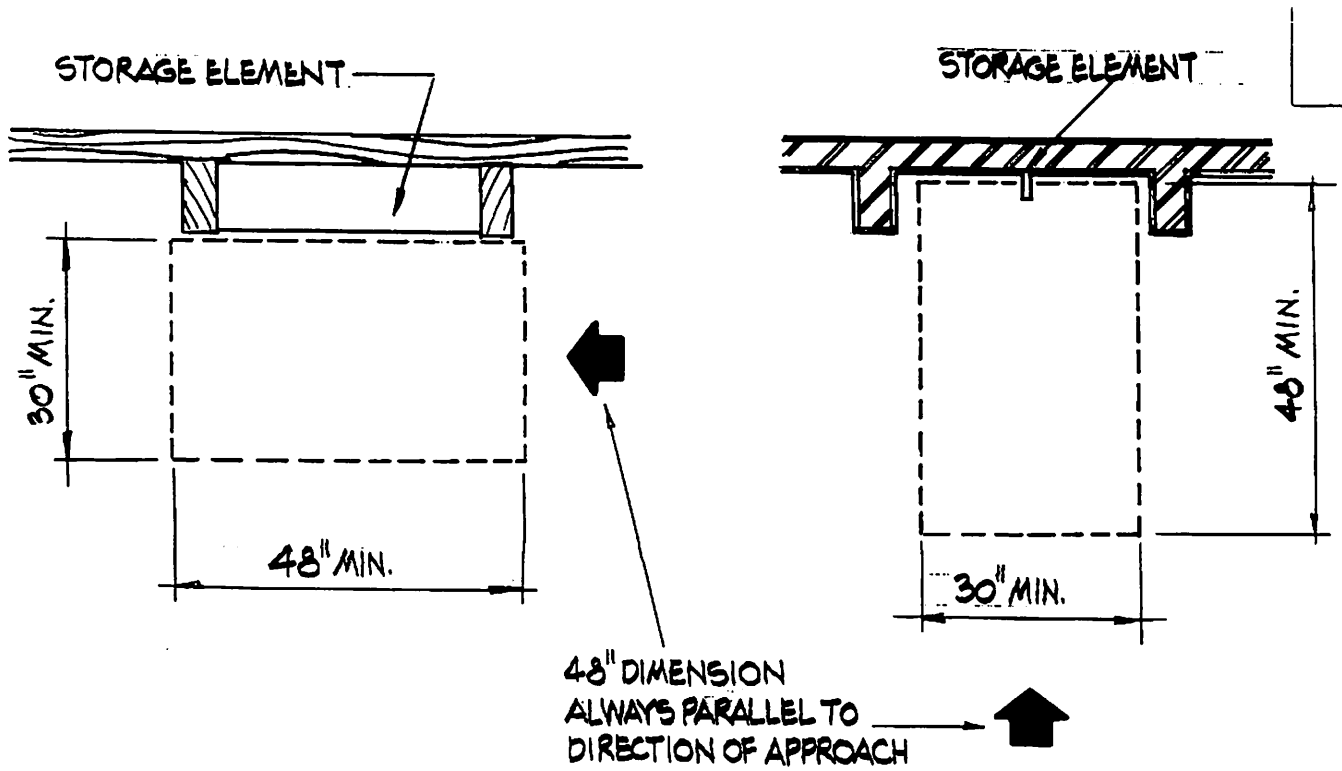
**ADAAG
4.1.3(12)(b)**



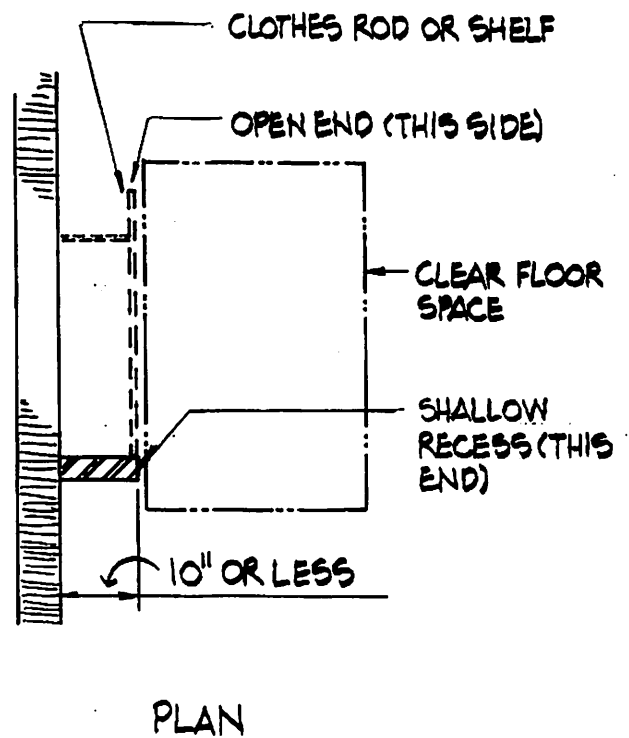
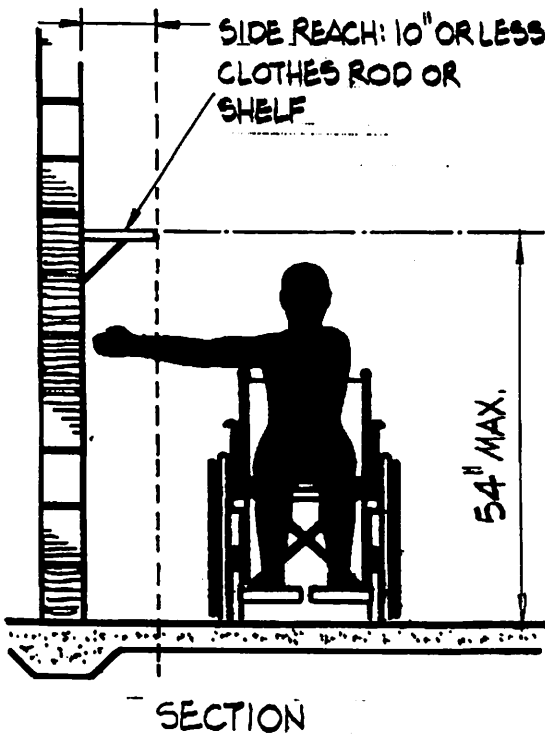
20.1.1- IF FIXED OR BUILT-IN STORAGE FACILITIES (E.G., CABINETS, SHELVES, CLOSETS, DRAWERS, ETC.) ARE PROVIDED IN ACCESSIBLE SPACES, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE OF EACH TYPE OF STORAGE SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS CHAPTER.

SEE, ALSO, 20.1.2 THROUGH 20.1.5 IN THE TEXT.

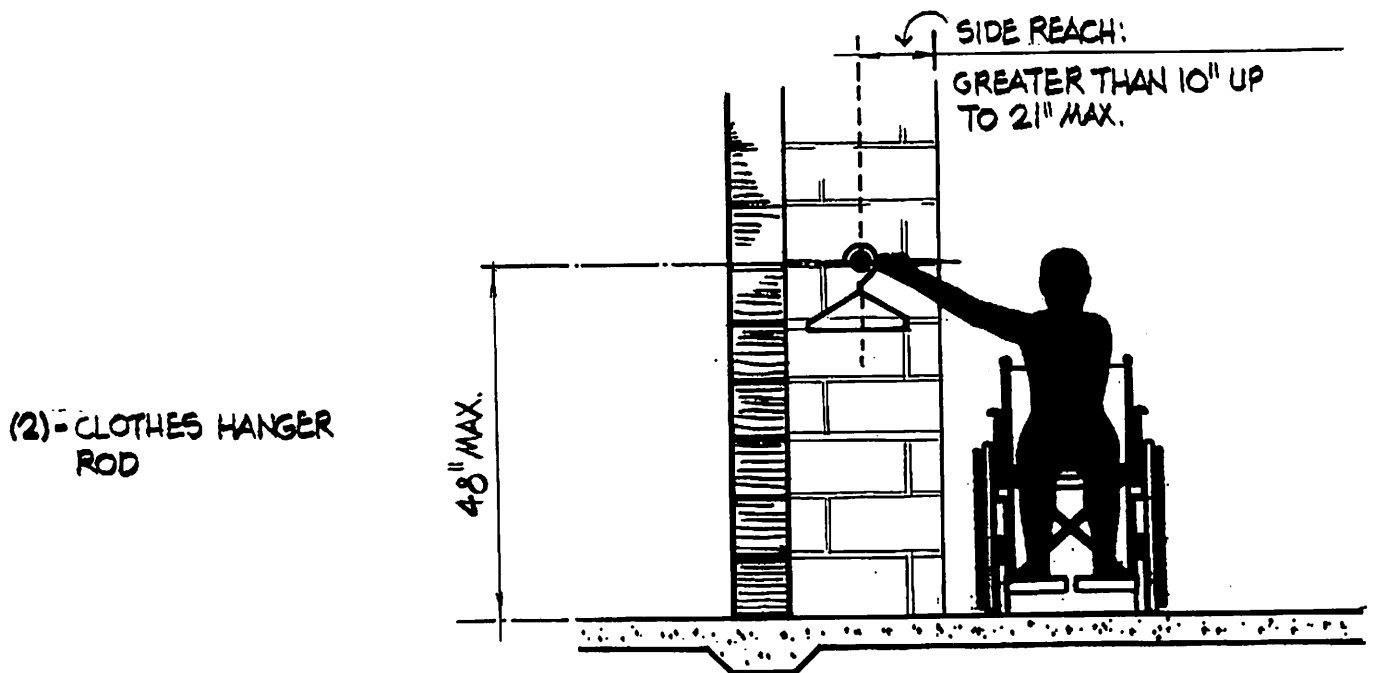
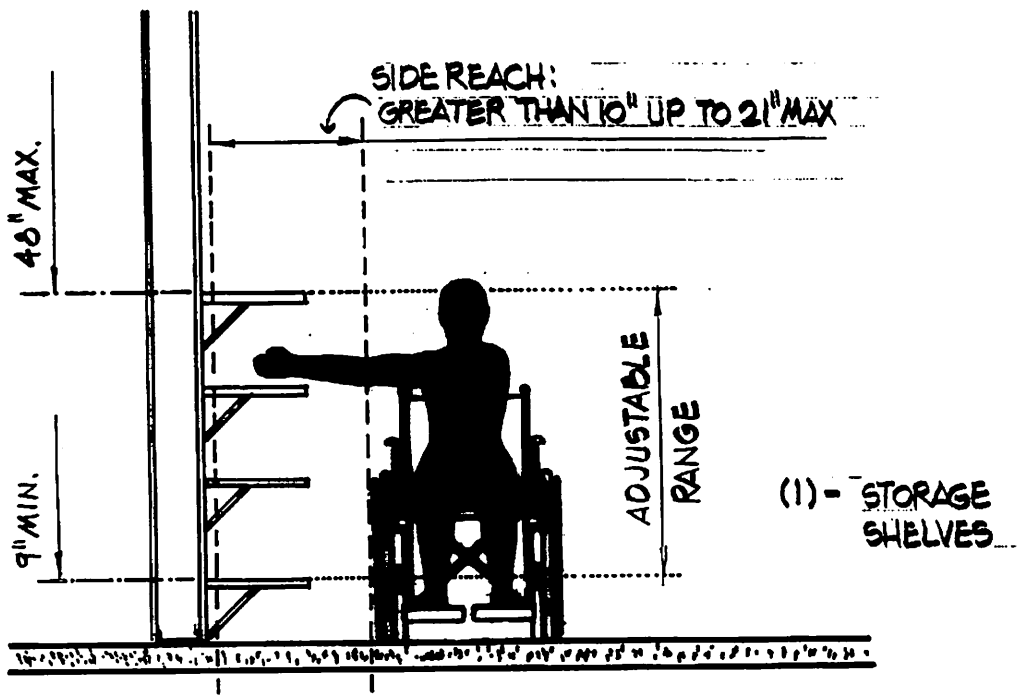
20.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



20.2- CLEAR FLOOR SPACE



20.3.2.3- PARALLEL (SIDE) REACH TO CLOTHES ROD OR STORAGE SHELVES NOT IN CLOSETS, OR LOCATED IN OPEN AREAS (E.G., SHALLOW RECESS).



20.3.2.3.1 - HEIGHT OF SHELVING OR CLOTHES HANGER ROD IF SIDE REACH IS MORE THAN 10" UP TO 21" MAX.

**CHAPTER 21
FIXED OR BUILT-IN SEATING AND TABLES**

21.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

21.1.1 If fixed or built-in seating, or tables (e.g., lecture hall desks, student laboratory stations, seating in a hotel lobby, etc.) are provided in accessible public or common use areas in buildings to which 1.2 applies, then five percent (5%), or a minimum of one, (whichever is the greater number) of the seating areas or tables shall comply with this Chapter.

**ADAAG 4.1.3(18);
Vol. I-C, 7.1(a)-
Similar**

21.1.2 An accessible route leading to and through such fixed or built-in seating areas or tables shall be provided.

ADAAG 4.1.3(18)

21.1.3 See Chapter 22 for assembly seating.

Cross-Reference

21.1.4 For library facilities see 25.1.2.

Cross-Reference

21.2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

21.2.1 At fixed tables or counters the clear floor space shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum. Nineteen (19) inches (485 mm) maximum of this floor space shall extend under the table or counter with the remaining 29 inches (735 mm) extending into the area behind the fixed station. The clear floor space may overlap the accessible route.

**Vol. I-C, 7.2(b);
ADAAG 4.32.2**

21.2.2 If seating areas are provided (such as are found in alcoves, lounges, lobbies, reception areas, waiting rooms, etc.), then seating space for persons using wheelchairs shall comply with the following:

- (1) For seating abreast the clear floor space shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum.
- (2) For right angle or face-to-face seating the clear floor space shall be 42 inches wide by 48 inches long (1067 mm by 1220 mm) minimum.

**Vol. I-C, 7.2(g)(1),
7.2(g)(2);
ADAAG Figure 45**

***21.2.2.1** *For either (1) or (2) above, no part of the clear floor space shall extend into, or be part of, any corridor, aisle, hallway, or any other pedestrian pathway.*

Vol. I-C, 7.2(g)(3)

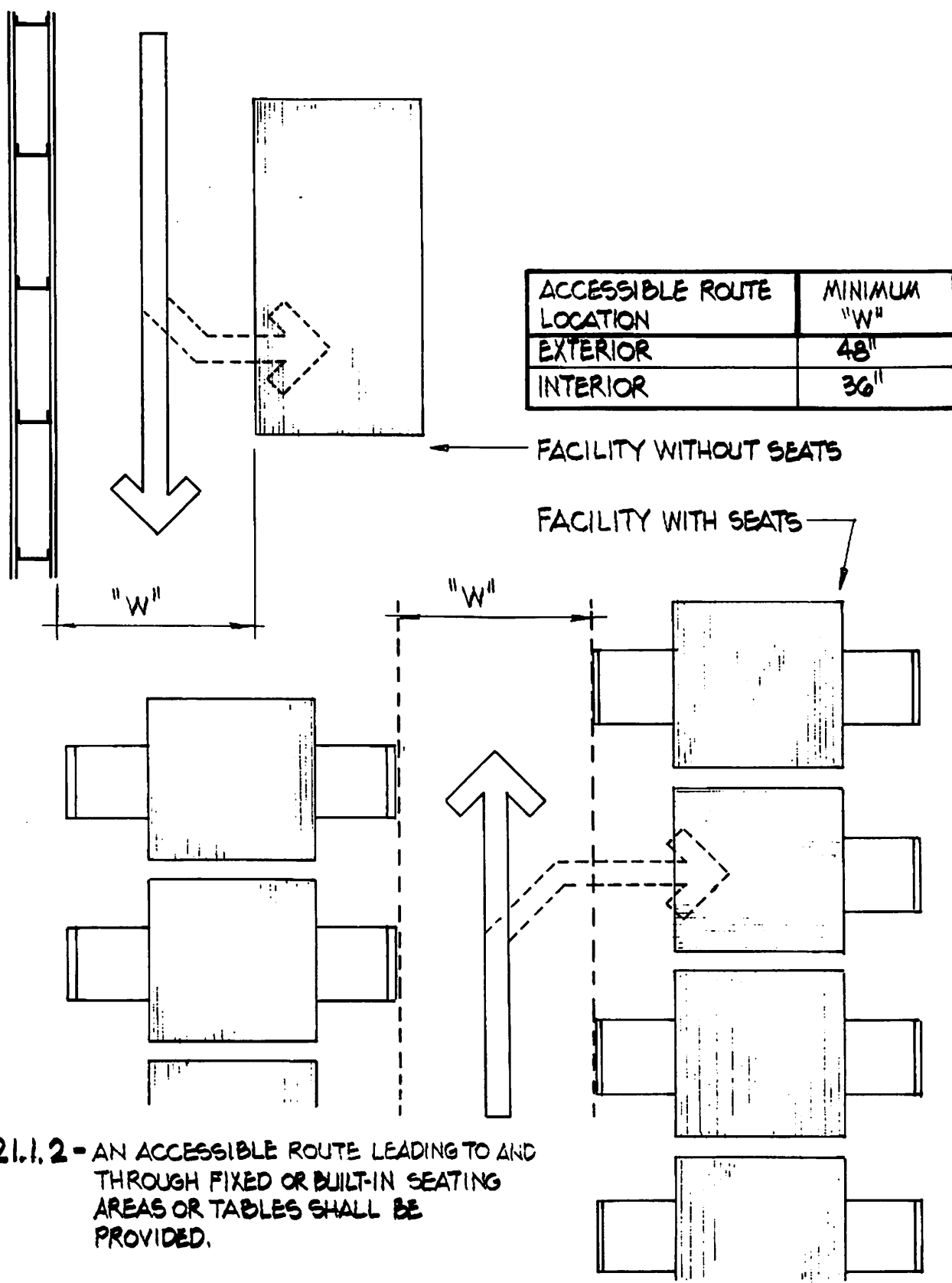
21.3 CLEARANCES AND HEIGHT OF TABLES, COUNTERS, ETC.

21.3.1 Knee space shall comply with 21.2.1 and clear height shall be 27 inches (685 mm) minimum.

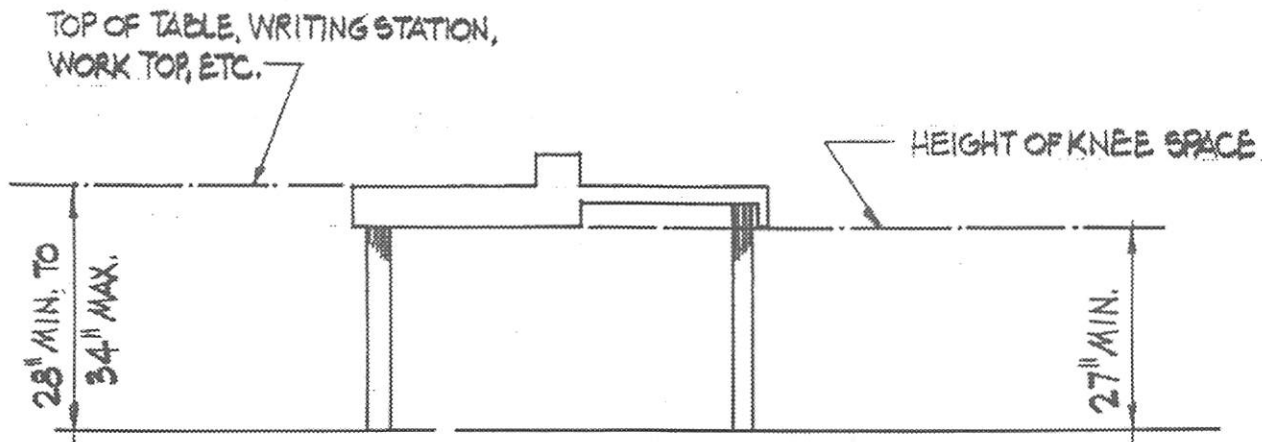
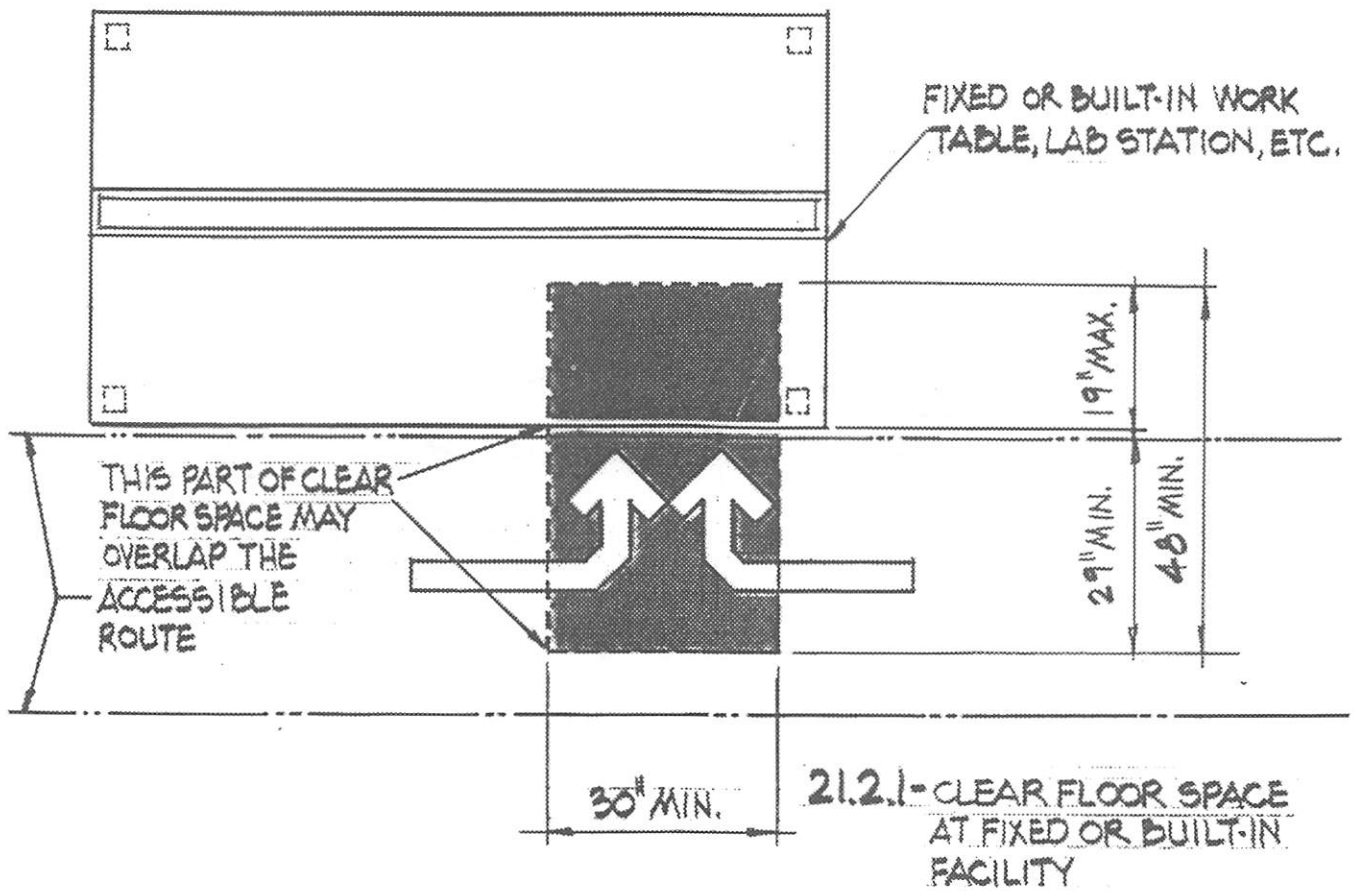
**Vol. I-C, 7.2(a);
ADAAG 4.32.3**

21.3.2 The top of accessible tables, writing stations, etc. shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum to 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.

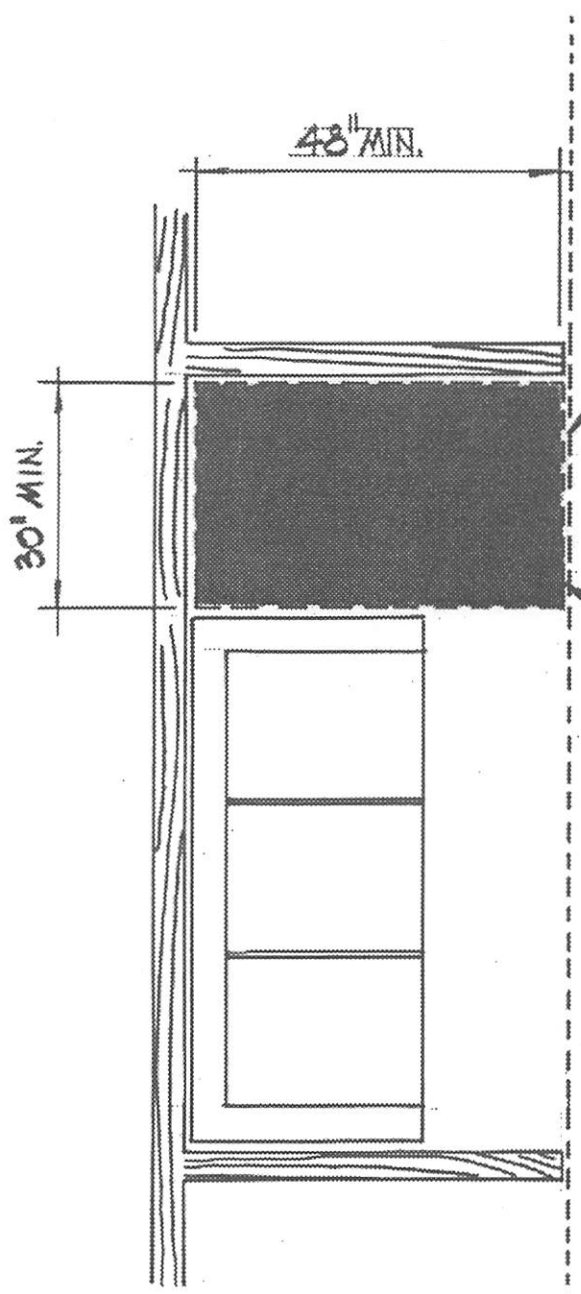
**Vol. I-C, 7.2(c);
ADAAG 4.32.4**



21.1.2 - AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE LEADING TO AND THROUGH FIXED OR BUILT-IN SEATING AREAS OR TABLES SHALL BE PROVIDED.

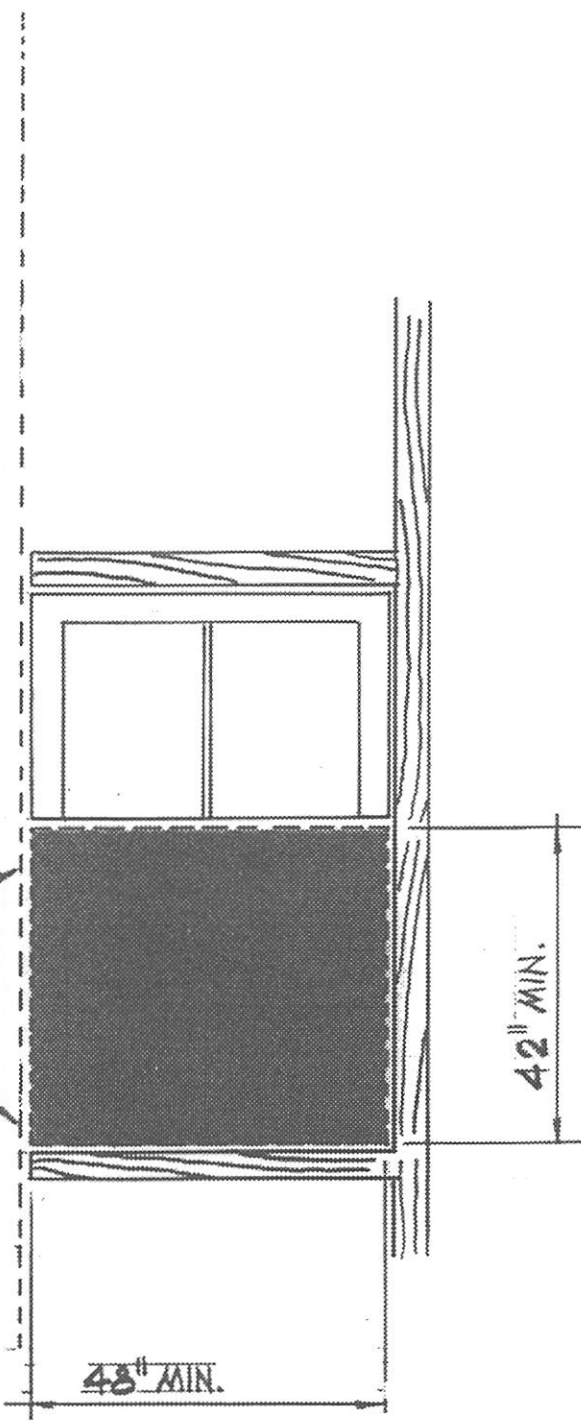


21.3- CLEARANCES AND HEIGHT OF TABLES, COUNTER, ETC.



21.2.2(1) - SEATING ABREAST

21.2.2.1 - NO PART OF THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE SHALL EXTEND INTO, OR BE PART OF, ANY CORRIDOR, AISLE, HALLWAY, OR ANY OTHER PEDESTRIAN PATHWAY.



21.2.2(2) - SEATING AT RIGHT ANGLES OR FACE-TO-FACE

21.2 - CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

**CHAPTER 22
ASSEMBLY SEATING**

22.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

22.1.1 In places of assembly with fixed seating, accessible seating for persons in wheelchairs shall be provided in compliance with the following table:

TOTAL SEATING CAPACITY IN ASSEMBLY AREAS	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED WHEELCHAIR SEATING LOCATIONS	
4 to 25	1	
26 to 50	2	ADAAG
51 to 300	4	4.1.3(19)(a)
301 to 500	6	
501 or more	6 plus 1 additional space for each total seating capacity increase of 100	

***22.1.1.1** *Spaces designated for use by persons in wheelchairs shall not be located directly on the sloping or stepped parts of the floor area but shall be on level areas or platforms having dimensions as specified in 22.3.* Floor surfaces at accessible seating locations shall comply with Chapter 9. *Wheelchair seating spaces shall not reduce the required aisle width.*

**Vol. I-C,
6.1(f);
ADAAG
4.33.4**

22.1.1.2 A minimum of one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating space.

**ADAAG
4.33.3**

22.1.2 In addition to 22.1.1, one percent (1%) of the total number of fixed seats, or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), shall be aisle seats having either:

- (1) No aisle-side armrest; or
- (2) A removable aisle-side armrest; or
- (3) A folding aisle-side armrest.

**ADAAG
4.1.3(19)(a)**

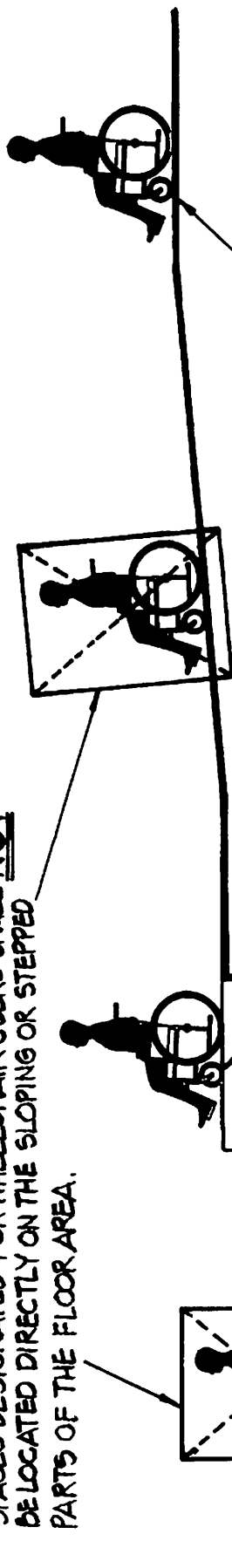
***The width of such seats shall not be less than that available to the general public.** Seating locations required by this Paragraph are not required to comply with 22.1.1.1.

**Vol. I-C, 6.2(b);
ADAAG
4.1.3(19)(a)**

22.1.2.1 Each seat required by 22.1.2 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility permanently attached to the aisle-side of the seat back or the aisle-side seat support. The sign shall comply with 18.1.4. In darkened Places of Assembly (e.g., movie theaters, playhouses, concert halls, etc.) the sign shall be reflective.

**ADAAG
4.1.3(19)(a)*
(* ADAAG Says Only
Sign Or Marker; I.S.A.
Is Logical Choice);
Reflective = ADAAG
A4.1.3(19)(a)**

SPACES DESIGNATED FOR WHEELCHAIR USERS SHALL NOT BE LOCATED DIRECTLY ON THE SLOPING OR STEPPED PARTS OF THE FLOOR AREA.



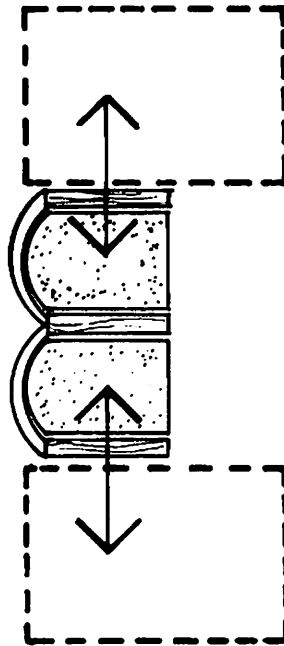
22.1.1.1-

SEATING AREAS FOR WHEELCHAIR USERS SHALL BE ON LEVEL AREAS OR PLATFORMS HAVING DIMENSIONS AS SPECIFIED IN 22.3.

FLOOR SURFACES AT ACCESSIBLE SEATING LOCATIONS SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 9. WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES SHALL NOT REDUCE THE REQUIRED AISLE WIDTH.

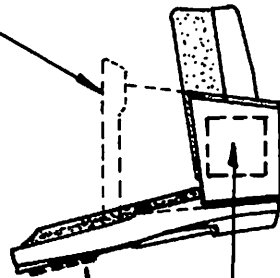
LEVEL PLATFORM BUILT ON TOP OF, OR AS PART OF, SLOPED OR STEPPED SEATING AREA.

22.1.2- IN ADDITION TO 22.1.1, 1% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF FIXED SEATS, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE, SHALL BE AISLE SEATS HAVING: NO AISLE-SIDE ARMREST; A REMOVABLE AISLE-SIDE ARMREST; OR A FOLDING ARMREST.



22.1.1.2- A MINIMUM OF ONE COMPANION FIXED SEAT SHALL BE PROVIDED NEXT TO EACH WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACE.

22.1.2.1- EACH SEAT REQUIRED BY 22.1.2 SHALL BE IDENTIFIED BY THE INT'L. SYMBOL OF ACCESS. (SEE TEXT FOR COMPLETE REQUIREMENT.)



22.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

***22.1.2** Signage complying with 18.1.2 shall be posted at the ticket office notifying patrons of the availability of such aisle seating. *In facilities not having a ticket office the sign shall be placed adjacent to, or if wall space is limited, immediately below, the room identification sign.* ADAAG 4.1.3(19)(a)

***22.1.3** *If tickets are sold on the basis of an established seat count (e.g., movie theaters, playhouses, concert halls, baseball stadiums, etc.) and if wheelchair accessible seating spaces have not been sold on the date of the performance or event, then such spaces can be occupied by removable seating provided that when removed, the seat mounting device (e.g., sleeves, pedestals, plates, etc.) leaves the finished floor level and even, with no protrusions or depressions that will present a hazard to blind or visually impaired persons, wheelchair users, or persons using mobility aids such as crutches, canes, walkers, etc.* Vol. I-C, 6.1(e); ADAAG 4.33.3, Similar

22.1.4 All accessible seating shall have access by an accessible route to areas (e.g., stages, arena floors, dressing and locker rooms, etc.) used by performers, entertainers, athletes, etc. Vol. I-C, 6.1(g); ADAAG 4.33.5

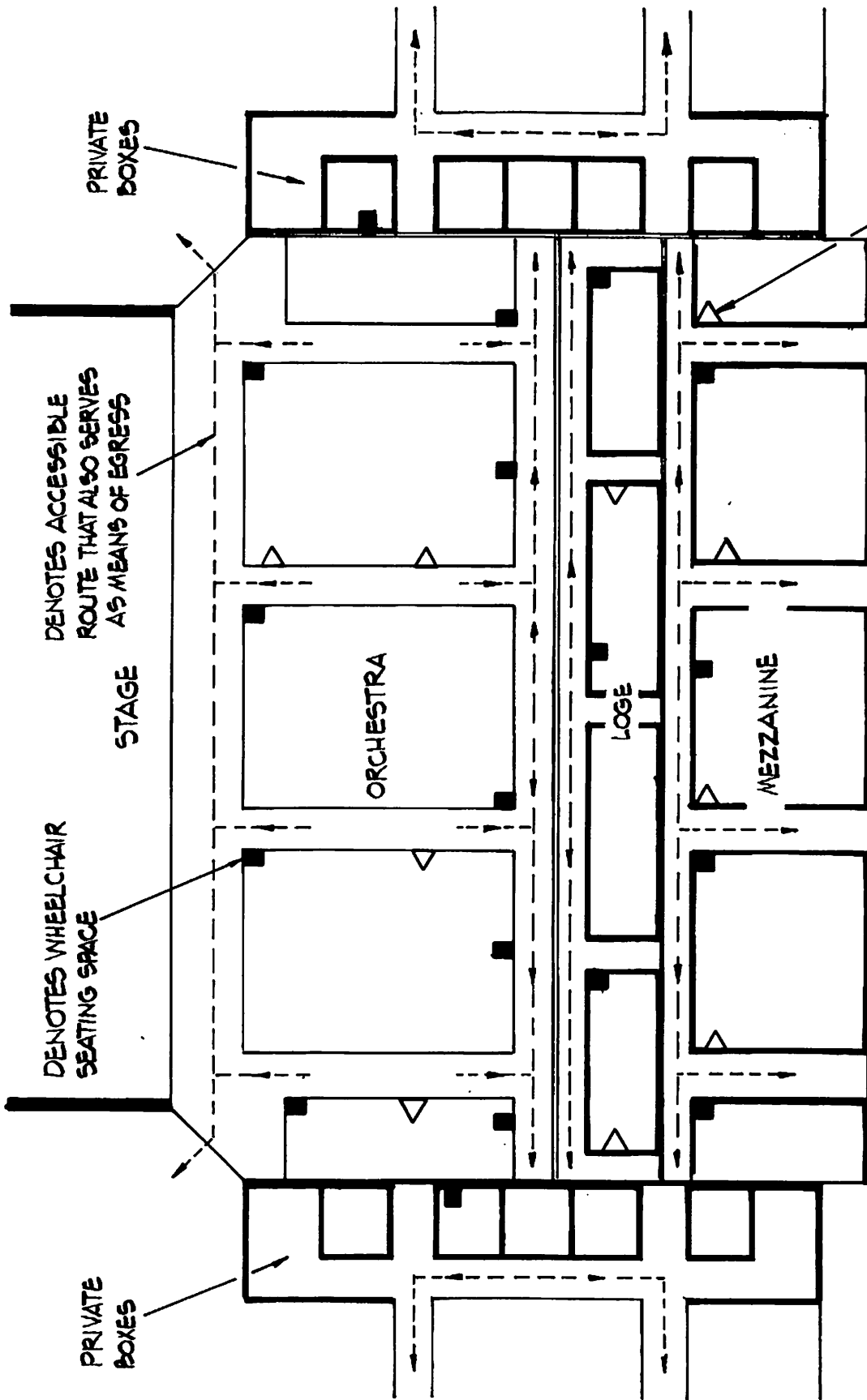
***22.1.5** *If seating for members of the press (i.e., radio, television and print [newspapers, magazines, etc.]) is provided, then the total number of press seats/spaces shall be counted separately from that provided for the general audience. Accessible seating for members of the press shall be equal to one percent (1%) of the total press seats, or a minimum of three (i.e., one for each type of coverage—radio, television and print media), whichever is the greater number. Clear floor dimensions at accessible press seating shall comply with the applicable requirements of 22.3.* Vol. I-C, 6.1(h)

22.2 PLACEMENT AND LOCATION OF WHEELCHAIR SEATING

22.2.1 Seating areas for persons in wheelchairs shall be an integral part of any fixed seating plan and shall adjoin an accessible route that also serves as a Means of Egress. Seating spaces for persons with disabilities shall be located so as to provide wheelchair users lines of sight and a choice of admission prices comparable to those available to the general public. Vol. I-C, 6.1(d); ADAAG 4.33.3

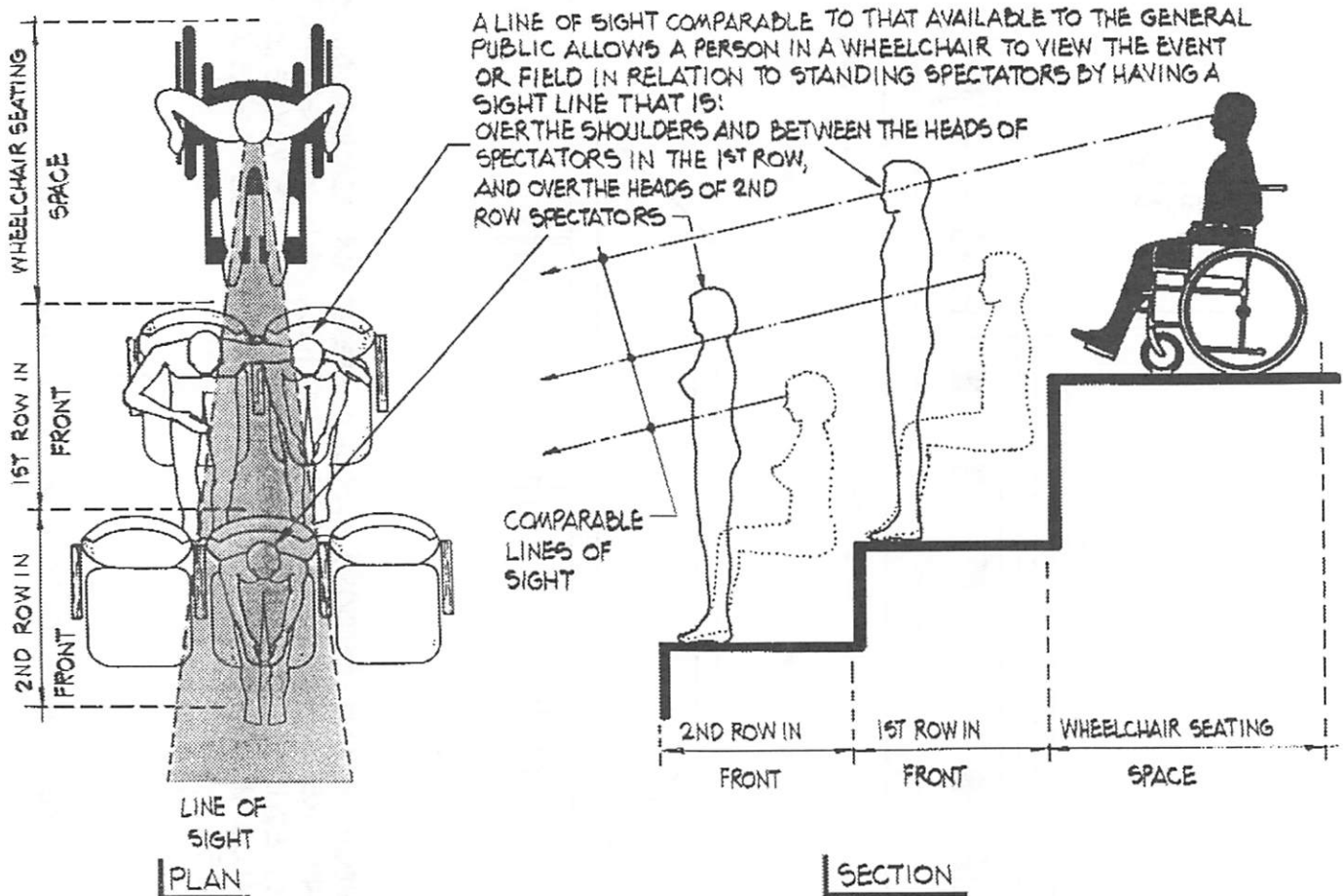
***22.2.2** If the total seating capacity exceeds 300, then wheelchair seating spaces shall be provided in more than one location (*i.e., seating for persons using wheelchairs shall be dispersed throughout the seating area and distributed amongst the several seating choices. See the illustration for 22.2.1-Part I.*) ADAAG 4.33.3

22.2.2.1 Accessible viewing positions may be clustered for bleachers, balconies and other areas having sight lines that require slopes greater than five percent (5% = 1:20). Equivalent accessible viewing positions may be located on levels adjoining an accessible route that also serves as a Means of Egress. ADAAG 4.33.3, Exception



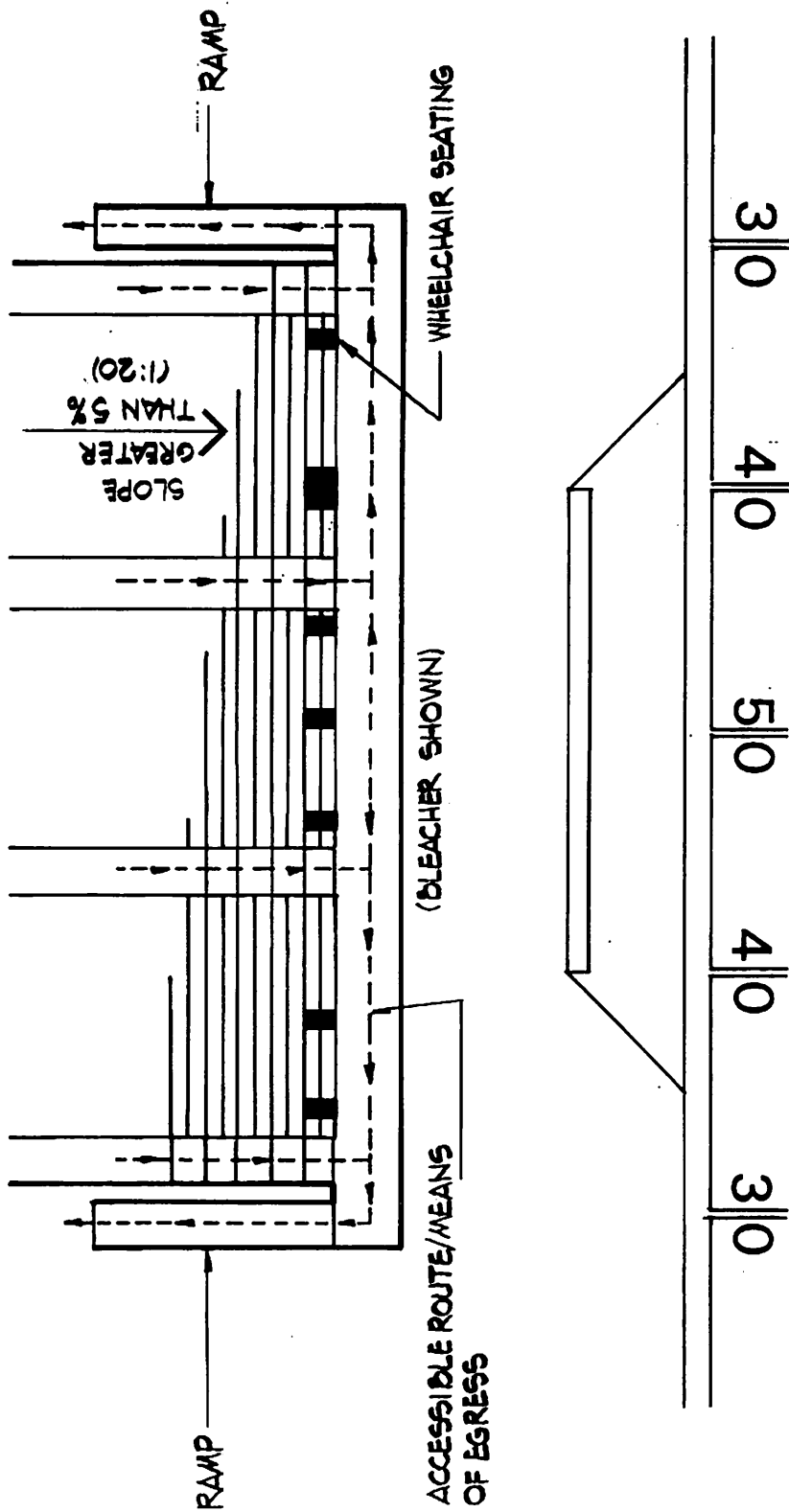
22.2.1- PART 1

SEATING AREAS FOR PERSONS IN WHEELCHAIRS SHALL BE AN INTEGRAL PART OF ANY FIXED SEATING PLAN AND SHALL ADJOIN AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE THAT ALSO SERVES AS A MEANS OF EGRESS. SEATING SPACES SHALL BE SO LOCATED TO PROVIDE A CHOICE OF ADMISSION PRICES. (FOR LINE OF SIGHT SEE 22.2.1-PART 2.)



APPLICATION EXAMPLE: FOOTBALL, HOCKEY, BASEBALL, SOCCER, ROCK CONCERTS

22.2.1-PART 2: COMPARABLE LINES OF SIGHT



22.2.2.1- ACCESSIBLE VIEWING POSITIONS MAY BE CLUSTERED FOR BLEACHERS, BALCONIES AND OTHER AREAS HAVING SIGHT LINES THAT REQUIRE SLOPES GREATER THAN 5% (1:20). EQUIVALENT ACCESSIBLE VIEWING POSITIONS MAY BE LOCATED ON LEVELS ADJOINING AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE THAT ALSO SERVES AS A MEANS OF EGRESS.

22.2- PLACEMENT AND LOCATION OF WHEELCHAIR SEATING

22.3 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

22.3.1 Each wheelchair seating space shall be provided with the minimum clear floor or ground space as specified below:

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| (1) FRONT OR REAR APPROACH | .33 inches wide by
48 inches long (840 mm
by 1220 mm); or | Vol. I-C,
6.2(a);
ADAAG
Fig. 46 |
| (2) SIDE APPROACH | .33 inches wide by
60 inches long (840 mm
by 1525 mm). | |

***22.3.2** *If wheelchair seating is placed in the rear row of fixed seats, then the rear wall behind such seating shall be located 18 inches (460 mm) minimum from the back of the fixed seats.* Vol. I-C, 6.2(c)

22.4 ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS (A.L.S.)

22.4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

22.4.1.1 This Section shall apply where audible communications are integral to the use of the room or space (e.g., lecture halls, public meeting rooms, concert halls, playhouses, movie theaters, baseball stadiums, etc.). If such rooms or spaces: **Baseball Stadiums: FR 7/26/91 At 35425**

- | | |
|---|--------------|
| (1) Accommodate fifty (50) or more persons, or have an audio amplification systems; and | ADAAG |
| (2) Have fixed seating, | 4.1.3(19)(b) |

then a permanently installed A.L.S. shall be required.

22.4.1.2 Other assembly areas (outside the criteria of 22.4.1.1) shall have either:

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (1) A permanently installed A.L.S.; or | |
| (2) An adequate number of electrical outlets or other supplementary wiring necessary to support a portable Assistive Listening System (see 22.4.1.4.1). | ADAAG
4.1.3(19)(b) |

***22.4.1.3** *No part of an A.L.S. shall constitute a hazard to the user or the general public via bare wires, cables or wires strung across aisles, unshielded jacks, open plugs, etc.* Vol. I-C, 6.3(b)

22.4.1.4 NUMBER OF RECEIVERS

22.4.1.4.1 The minimum number of receivers shall be equal to four percent (4%) of the total number of seats, or a minimum of two (whichever is the greater number).

ADAAG
4.1.3(19)(b)

22.4.2 LOCATION WHEN SERVING INDIVIDUAL FIXED SEATS

22.4.2.1 If the A.L.S. serves individual fixed seats, then such seats shall be located within 50 feet (15 m) of the stage or playing area and shall provide the occupant a complete view of the stage or playing area.

Vol. I-C,
6.3(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.33.6

22.4.3 IDENTIFICATION

*22.4.3.1 Written signage complying with 18.1.2 and incorporating the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss shall be posted at the ticket office notifying patrons of the availability of an A.L.S.

ADAAG
4.30.7(4)

In facilities not having a ticket office the sign shall be located adjacent to, or if wall space is limited immediately below, the room identification sign.

(NOTE: Examples of the written message may be

INFRARED
ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM
AVAILABLE
PLEASE ASK

FM
ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM
AVAILABLE
PLEASE ASK

AUDIO LOOP IN USE
TURN T-SWITCH FOR
BETTER HEARING
OR ASK FOR ASSISTANCE

ADAAG
A4.30.7

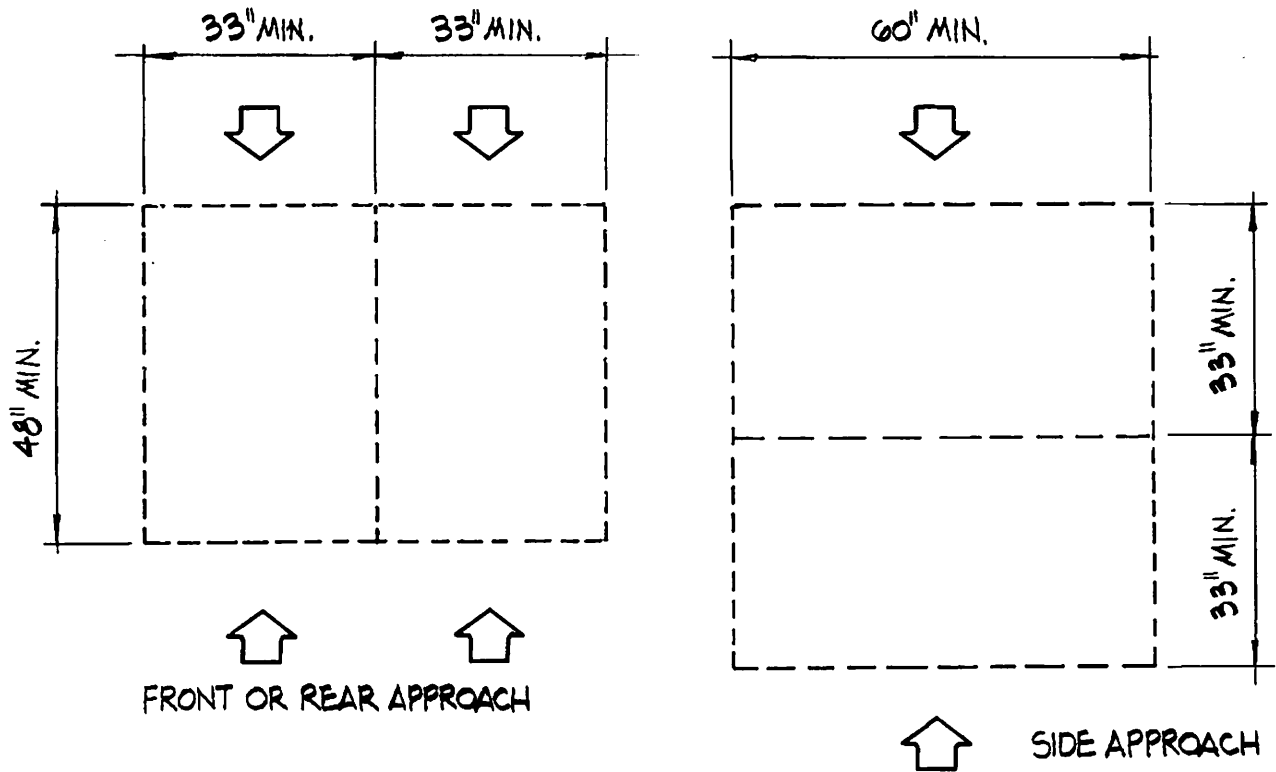
The written message shall not be limited to the examples listed above, but shall clearly convey that an A.L.S. is available and indicate the type of system being used.)

22.4.4 TYPES OF LISTENING SYSTEMS

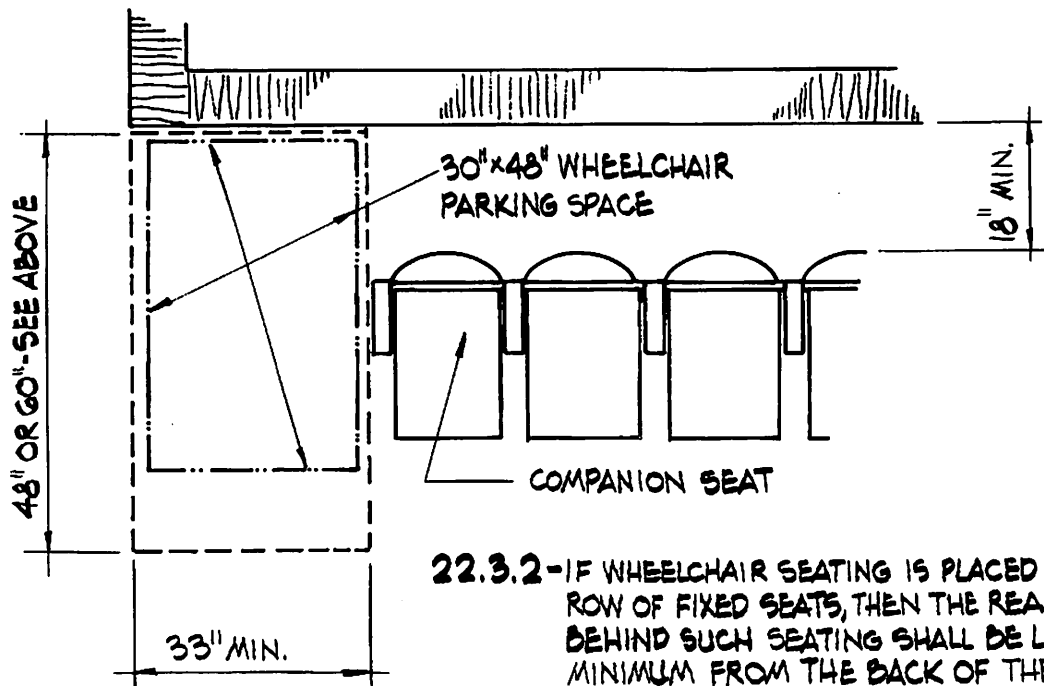
22.4.4.1 Assistive Listening Systems are intended to augment standard public address and audio systems by providing signals which can be received directly by persons with special receivers or their own hearing aids and which eliminate or filter background noise. The type of A.L.S. appropriate for a particular setting depends on the characteristics of the setting, the nature of the program, and the intended audience.

Magnetic induction loops, infra-red, and radio frequency systems are types of A.L.S. which are appropriate for various applications.

ADAAG
4.33.7;
Vol. I-C,
6.3(b)-Similar



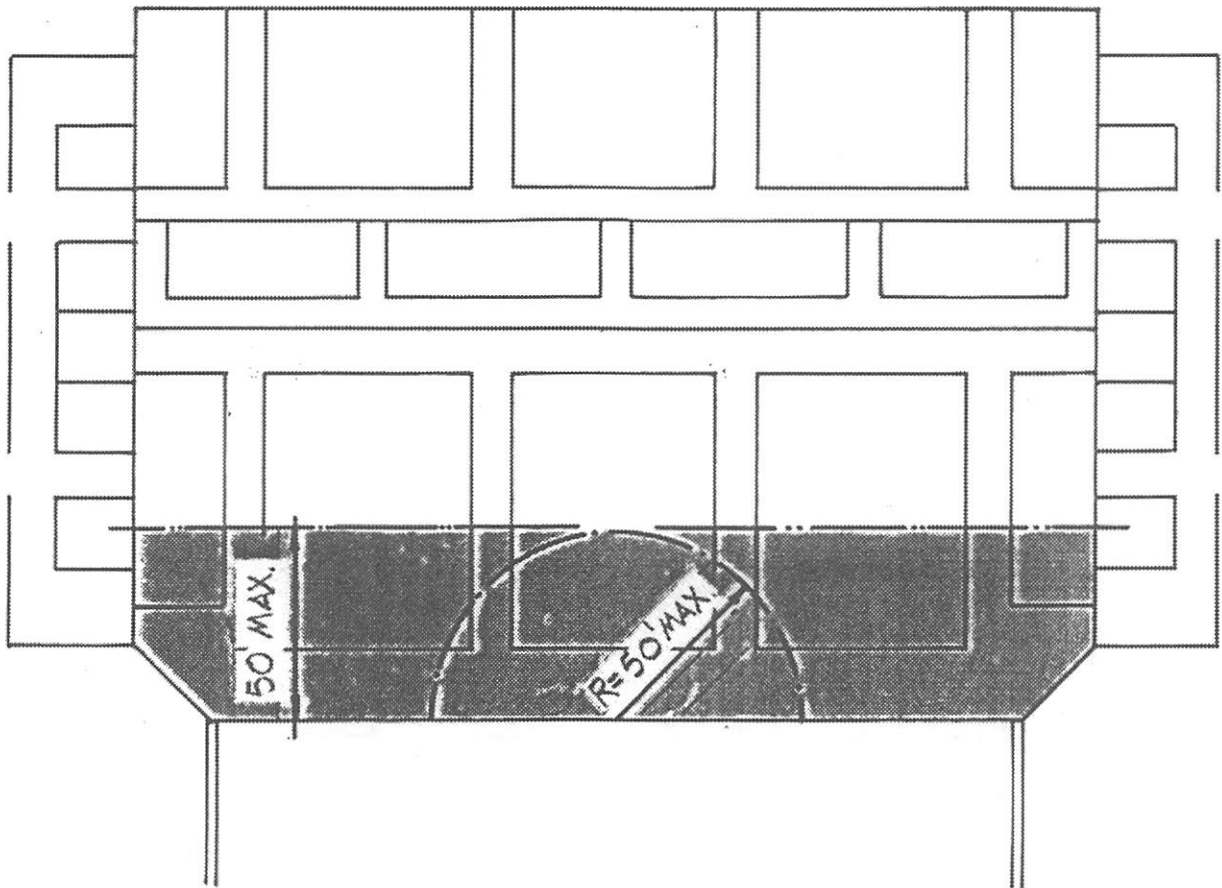
22.3.1- WHEELCHAIR SEATING CLEAR FLOOR SPACE



22.3.2- IF WHEELCHAIR SEATING IS PLACED IN THE REAR ROW OF FIXED SEATS, THEN THE REAR WALL BEHIND SUCH SEATING SHALL BE LOCATED 18" MINIMUM FROM THE BACK OF THE FIXED SEATS.

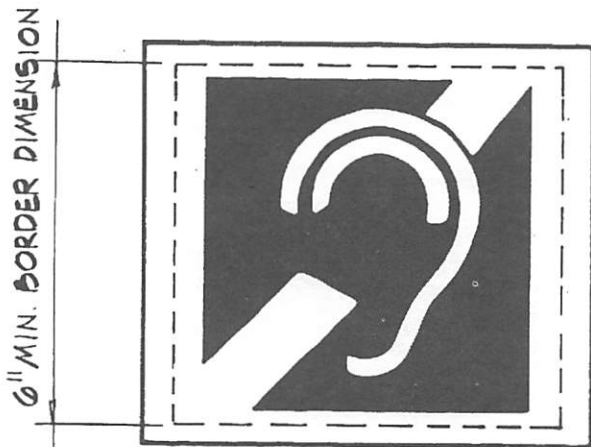
22.3- CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

22.4.1.4.1 - THE MINIMUM NUMBER OF RECEIVERS SHALL BE EQUAL TO 4% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS, OR A MINIMUM OF TWO (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER).



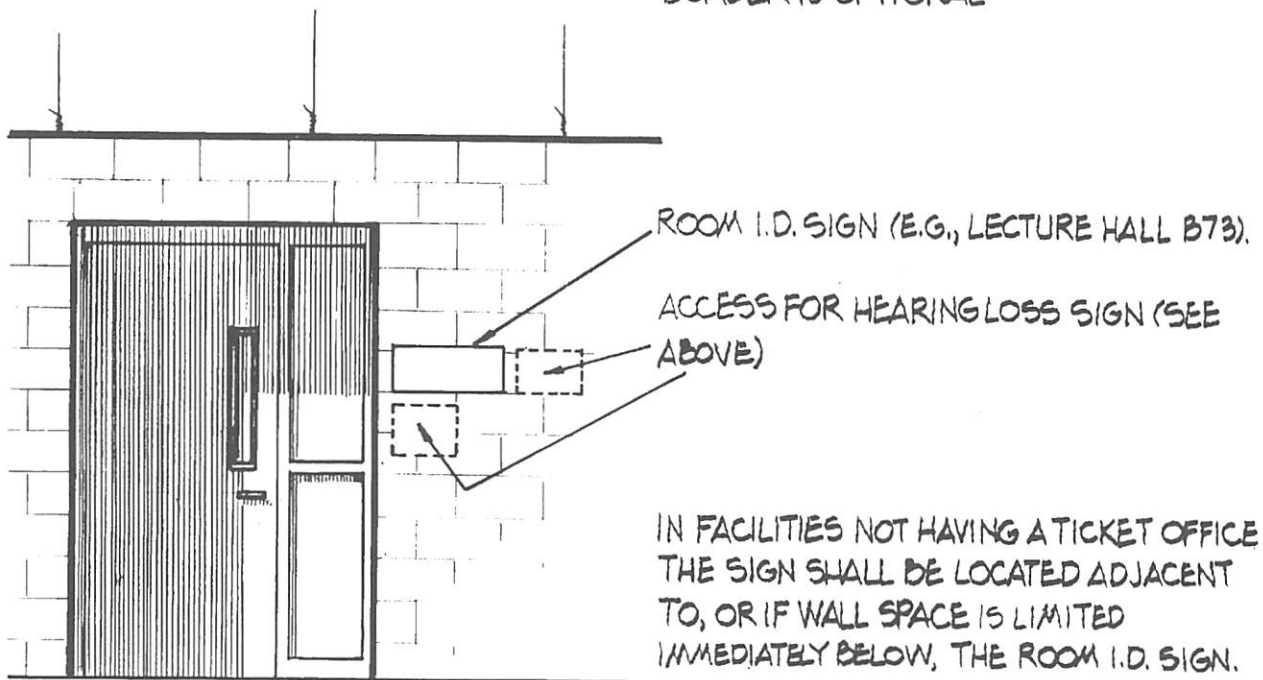
22.4.2.1 - IF THE ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM SERVES INDIVIDUAL FIXED SEATS, THEN SUCH SEATS SHALL BE LOCATED WITHIN 50' OF THE STAGE OR PLAYING AREA AND SHALL PROVIDE THE OCCUPANT A COMPLETE VIEW OF THE STAGE OR PLAYING AREA.

22.4 - ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS



22.4.3.1-
 WRITTEN SIGNAGE COMPLYING WITH 18.1.2 AND INCORPORATING THE INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESS FOR HEARING LOSS (SHOWN AT LEFT) SHALL BE POSTED AT THE TICKET OFFICE NOTIFYING PATRONS OF THE AVAILABILITY OF AN ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM. (NOTE THAT THIS IS A STANDARD SYMBOL [SEE 18.3.4]; THE WRITTEN MESSAGE IDENTIFIES THE TYPE OF SYSTEM, NOT THE SYMBOL ITSELF.)

BORDER IS OPTIONAL



ROOM I.D. SIGN (E.G., LECTURE HALL B73).

ACCESS FOR HEARING LOSS SIGN (SEE ABOVE)

IN FACILITIES NOT HAVING A TICKET OFFICE THE SIGN SHALL BE LOCATED ADJACENT TO, OR IF WALL SPACE IS LIMITED IMMEDIATELY BELOW, THE ROOM I.D. SIGN.

22.4.3- IDENTIFICATION

22.4- ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

**CHAPTER 23
RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS**

23.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

23.1.1 All restaurants, cafeterias, and other food service establishments shall comply with this Chapter and the applicable requirements of this Code. Deleted:
ADAAG 5.1

23.1.2 If fixed tables are provided, then five percent (5%), or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), of the fixed tables shall be accessible. See 21.2.1 and 21.3 for access to, and seating at, the accessible table(s). ADAAG 5.1

23.1.3 If dining counters are provided where only food/drink consumption occurs, then five percent (5%), or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), of the counter spaces shall be accessible. See 21.2.1 and 21.3 for access to, and seating at, the accessible counter space(s). ADAAG 5.1
(Consumption Only)

23.1.4 Counters where food/drink is served and consumed shall comply with 23.2. (Service And
Consumption)

23.1.4.1 If counter are provided where service only occurs (i.e., consumption does not occur at the same counter or bar where service occurs), then the service counter shall comply with 26.2.1. The counter where consumption occurs shall comply with 23.1.3. ADAAG 5.2 [7.2(1)]
(Service Only);
FR 7/26/91 At 35443

23.1.5 Accessible fixed tables or counter spaces shall be distributed throughout the space or facility. ADAAG 5.1

23.2 COUNTER AND BARS WHERE FOOD/DRINK IS SERVED AND CONSUMED

23.2.1 If food and/or drink is served and consumed by customers either seated on stools or standing at a counter/bar whose top is greater than 34 inches (865 mm) above the finished floor, then a minimum 60 inches (1525 mm) long section of the main counter or bar shall have a 28 inches (710 mm) minimum to 34 inches (865 mm) maximum height to the finished top. Clear floor space, knee clearance, and approach shall comply with 21.2.1 and 21.3.1. ADAAG 5.2
And 4.32

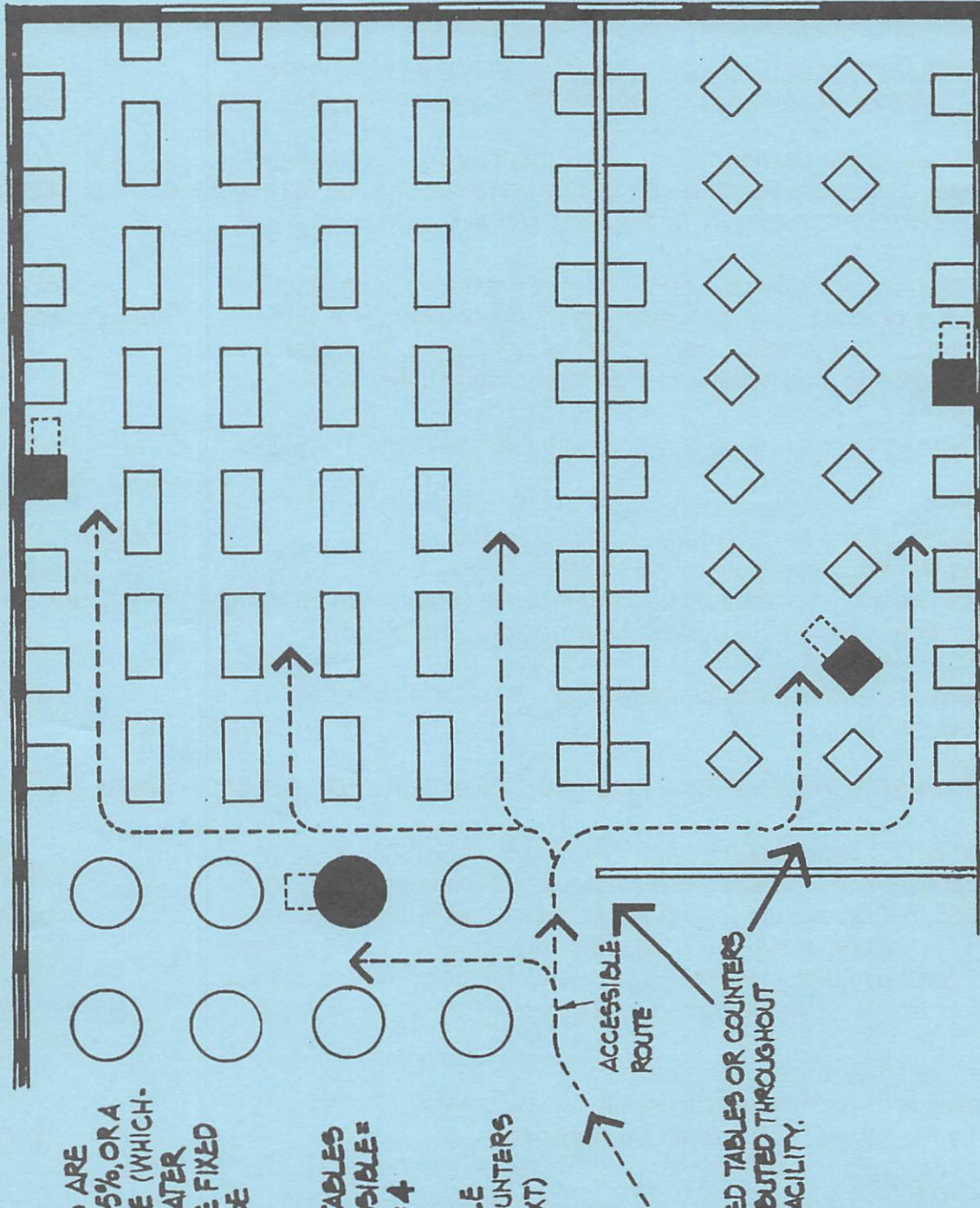
23.2.1.1 If service is available at accessible tables located within the same area as the counter or bar, then the accessible counter/bar requirements of 23.2.1 are not mandatory. The accessible table(s) shall comply with 23.1.2. ADAAG 5.2

23.1.2-
 IF FIXED TABLES ARE PROVIDED, THEN 5%, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER), OF THE FIXED TABLES SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE.

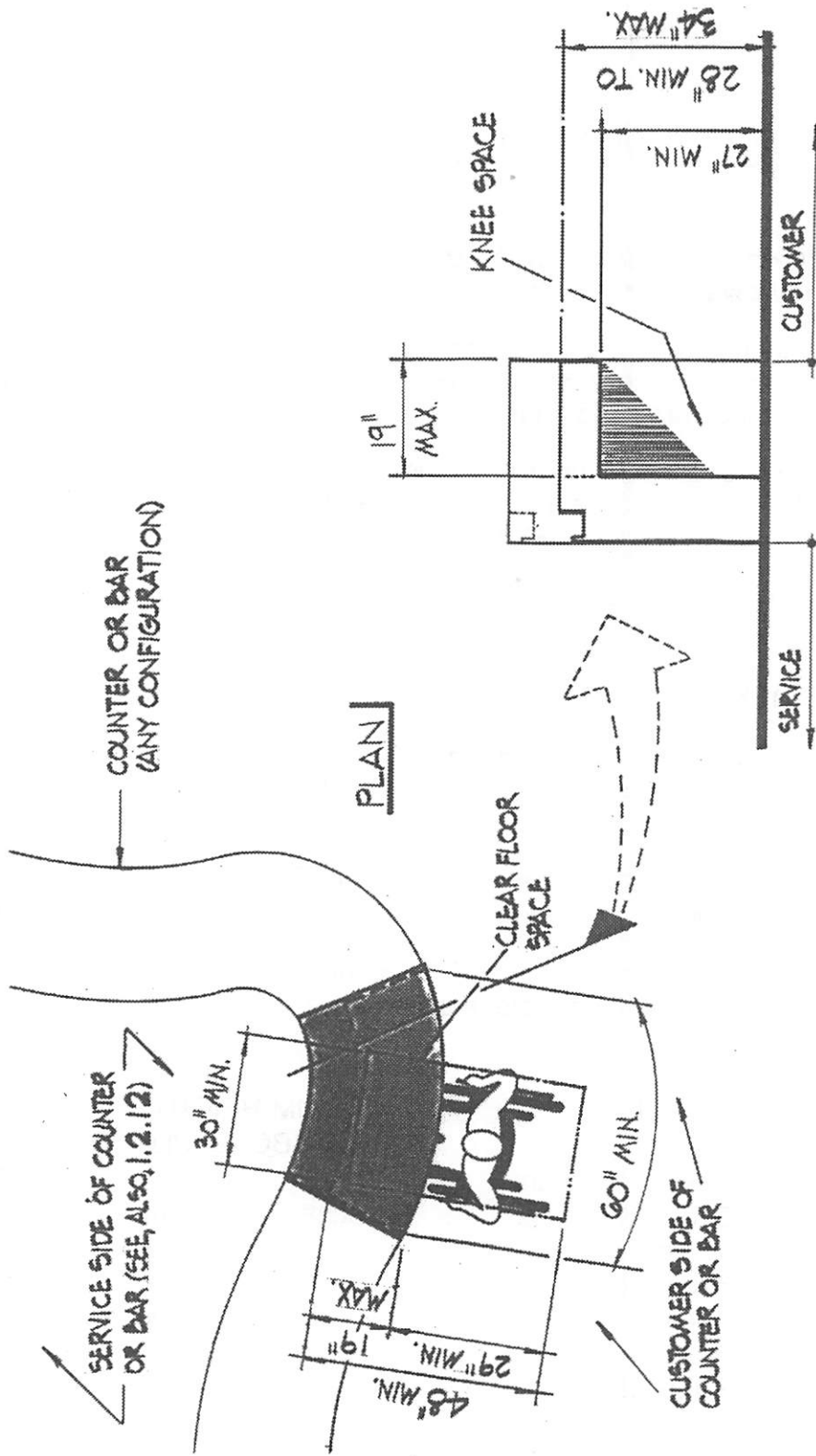
**EXAMPLE: 85 TABLES
 MIN. NO. ACCESSIBLE =
 $85 \times .05 = 4.25 = 4$**

FOR ACCESSIBLE SEATING AT COUNTERS SEE 23.1.3 (TEXT)

23.1.5-
 ACCESSIBLE FIXED TABLES OR COUNTERS SHALL BE DISTRIBUTED THROUGHOUT THE SPACE OR FACILITY.



23.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



23.2.1 - ACCESSIBLE SPACE AT COUNTER OR BAR WHERE FOOD/DRINK IS SERVED AND CONSUMED

23.2.1.1 - IF SERVICE IS AVAILABLE AT ACCESSIBLE TABLES LOCATED WITHIN THE SAME AREA AS THE COUNTER OR BAR, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH 23.2.1 IS NOT MANDATORY. THE ACCESSIBLE TABLE(S) SHALL COMPLY WITH 23.1.2.

23.2.2 - COUNTERS AND BARS WHERE FOOD/DRINK IS SERVED AND CONSUMED

23.3 DINING AREAS

***23.3.1** All dining areas shall be accessible. If raised or depressed floor areas in *beverage bars*, loggias, and dining areas, and outdoor seating areas are provided, then all such raised, depressed and outdoor areas shall be accessible Vol. I-C, 4.5(b)(1)-
Beverage Bars;
ADAAG
5.4

***23.3.2** If an elevator is not provided, then an accessible means of vertical access to a mezzanine is not required provided that all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- *1)** *The mezzanine complies with the definition and maximum allowable area in Volume I;* and ADAAG 5.4(1)
- (2) The services and decor provided within the dining area located on the accessible (i.e., main) level are the same as those provided on the mezzanine; and ADAAG 5.4(2)
- (3) The accessible seating/dining accommodations located within the main area are not restricted to use solely by persons with disabilities. ADAAG 5.4(3)

23.3.2.1 If an elevator is provided, then use of 23.3.2 shall be prohibited (see 15.1.1). Cross-Reference

23.4 FOOD SERVICE LINES

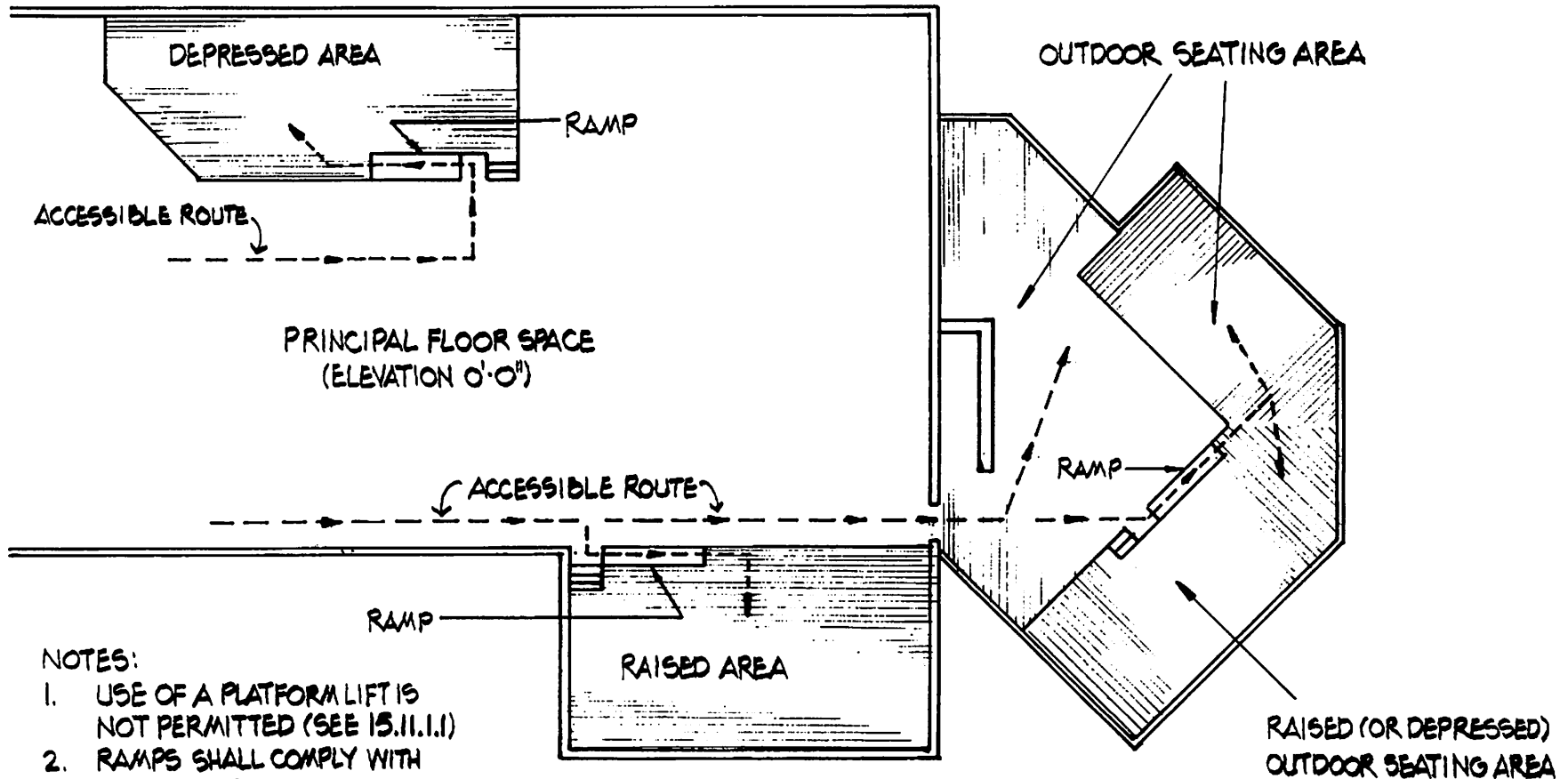
23.4.1 Food service lines shall have a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum clear width between the most forward part of the tray slide and the inside surface of the control rail/guardrail. Vol. I-C, 7.2(h);
ADAAG 5.5

23.4.2 The top of the tray slide shall be located 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Vol. I-C, 7.2(h);
ADAAG 5.5

23.4.3 If self-service shelves are provided, then fifty percent (50%) minimum of each shelf type shall be accessible in compliance with the following table: ADAAG 5.5

<u>TYPE OF REACH</u>	<u>DEPTH OF TRAY SLIDE</u>	<u>MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF SHELF ABOVE FLOOR</u>	
Parallel (i.e., Side)	10 inches maximum (255 mm) . . . . .	.54 inches (1320 mm)	ADAAG 4.2.6, Fig. 6(b)
	More than 10 inches (255 mm) to 24 inches (610 mm) maximum46 inches (1170 mm)		Fig. 6(c)
Forward	Less than 20 inches (510 mm) . . . . .	.48 inches (1220 mm)	ADAAG 4.2.5, Fig. 5(b)
	20 inches (510 mm) to 25 inches (635 mm)		
	maximum . . . . .	.44 inches (1120 mm)	

(NOTE: With respect to forward reach see, also, 16.2.1.3.)

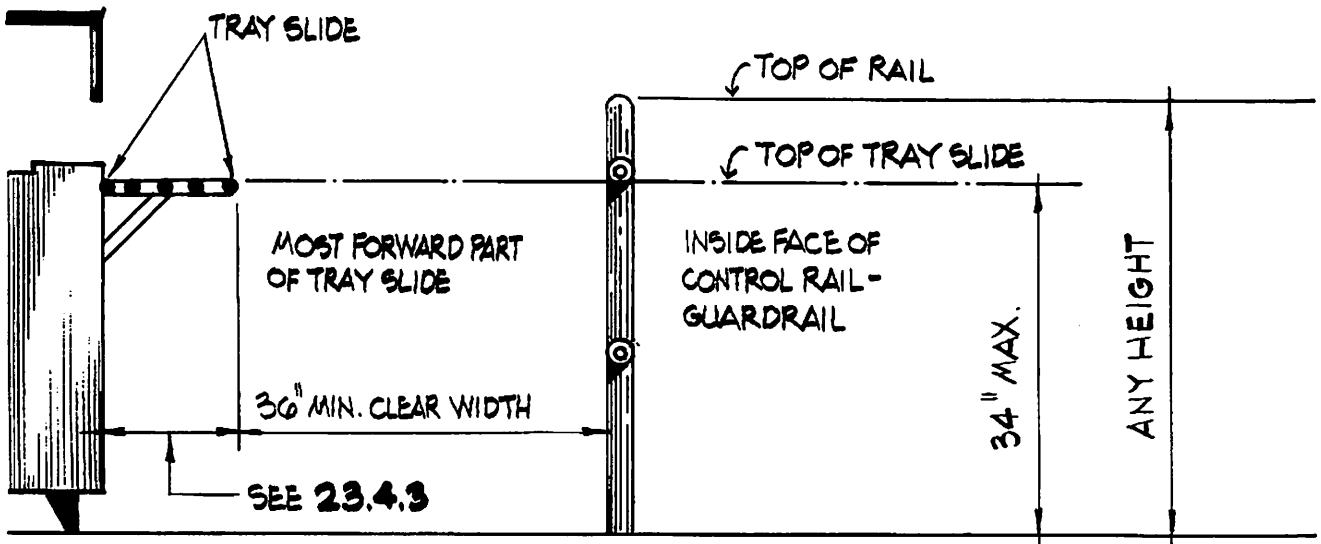


NOTES:

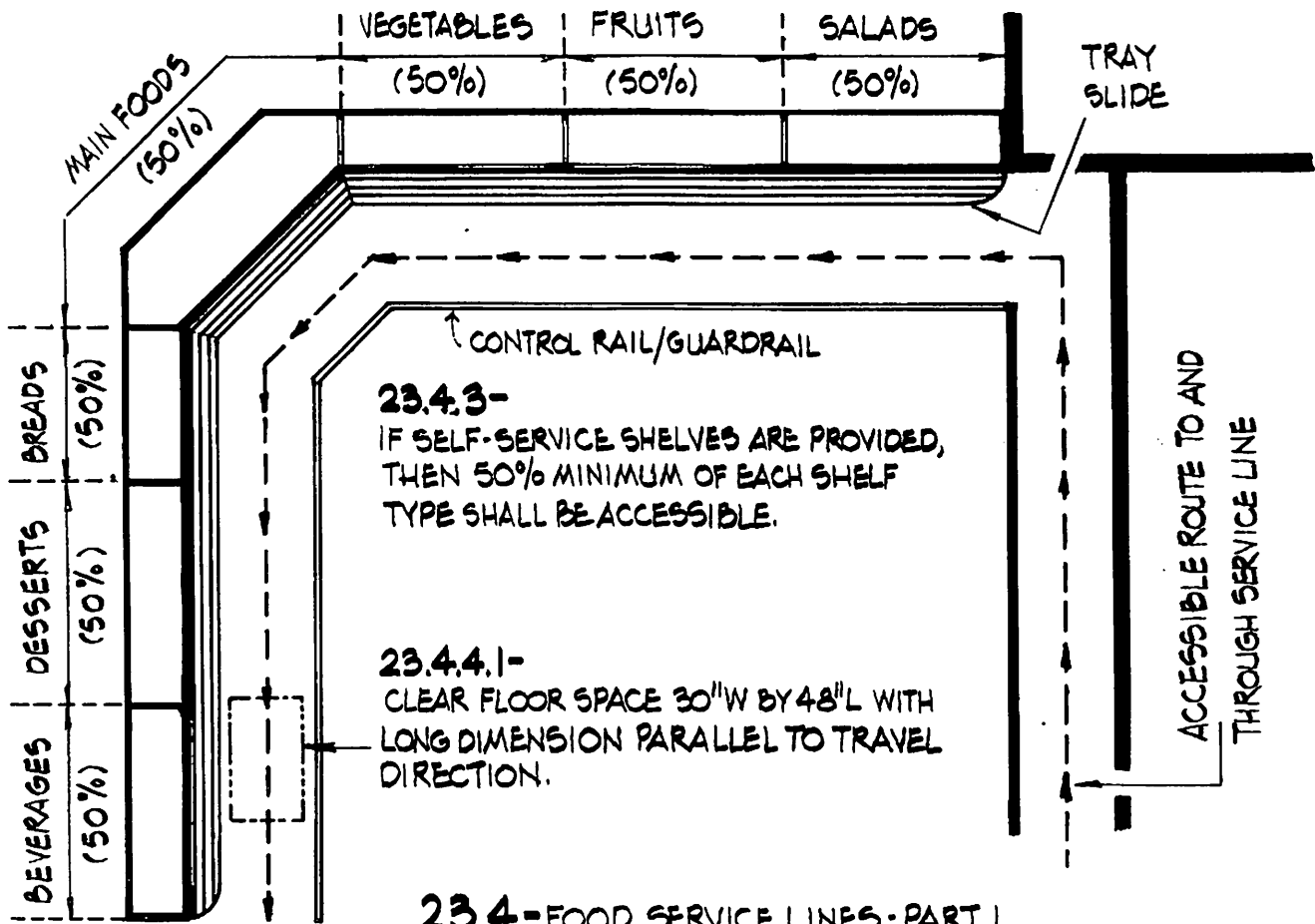
1. USE OF A PLATFORM LIFT IS NOT PERMITTED (SEE 15.11.1.1)
2. RAMPS SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 5; STAIRS SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 8.

23.3.1- IF RAISED OR DEPRESSED FLOOR AREAS IN BEVERAGE BARS, LOGGIAS, AND DINING AREAS, AND OUTDOOR SEATING AREAS ARE PROVIDED, THEN ALL SUCH RAISED, DEPRESSED AND OUTDOOR AREAS SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE.

23.3- DINING AREAS

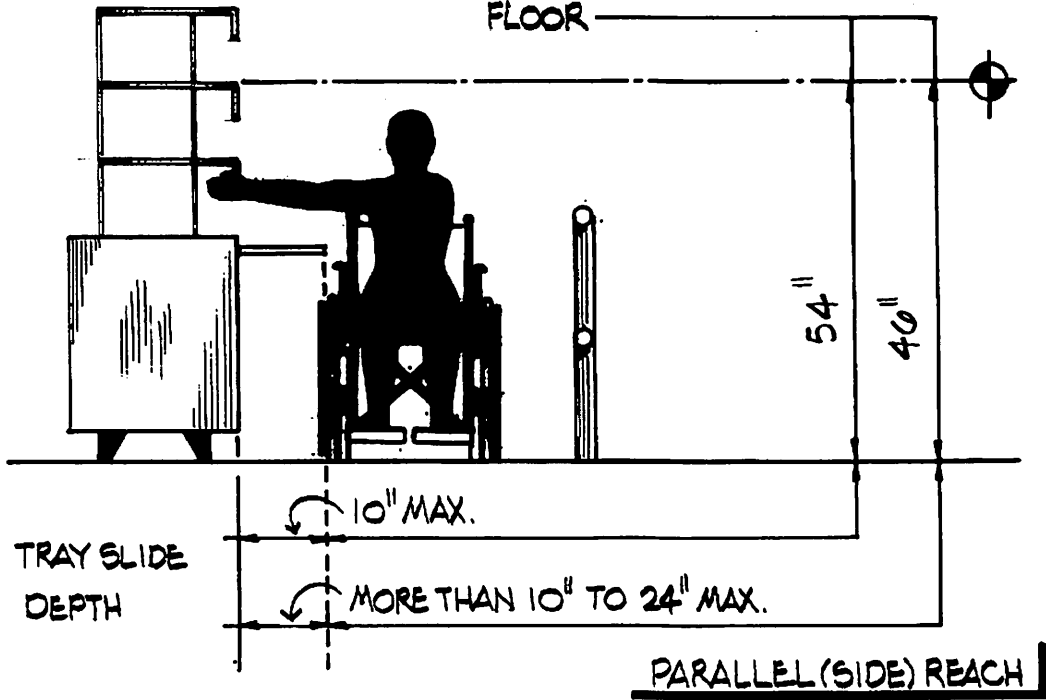


23.4.1- MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH; AND
23.4.2- MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF TRAY SLIDE



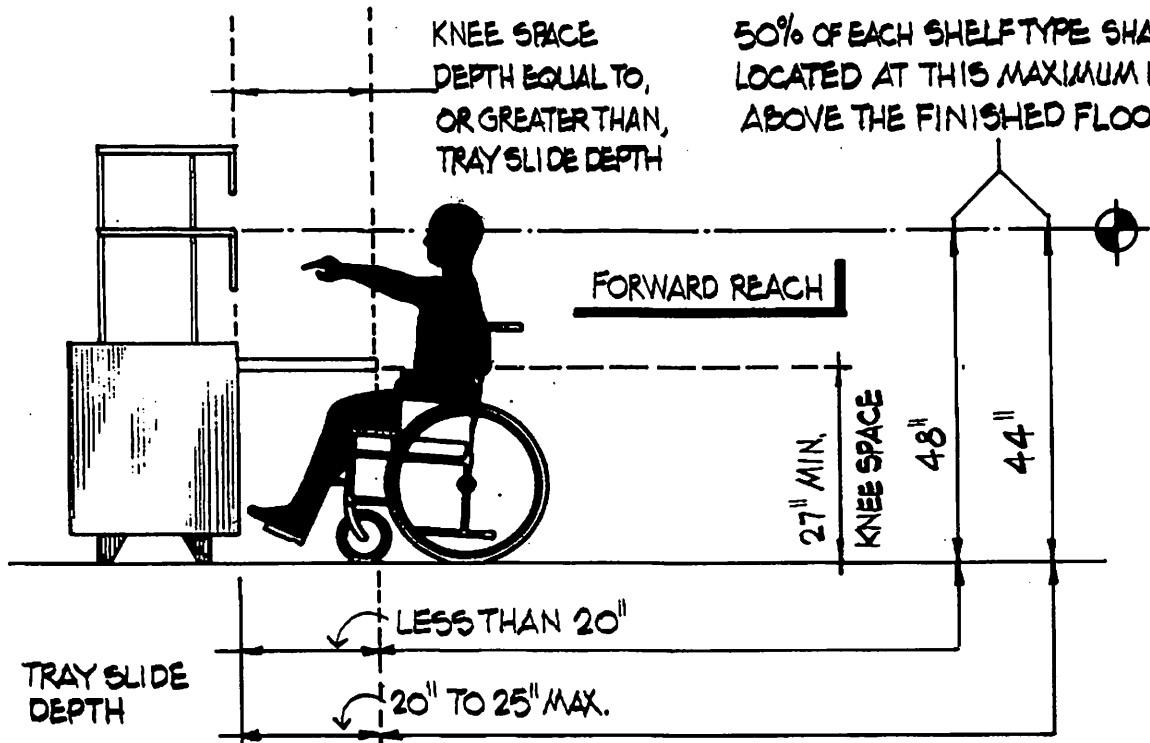
23.4-FOOD SERVICE LINES - PART 1

50% OF EACH SHELF TYPE SHALL BE LOCATED AT THIS MAXIMUM HEIGHT ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR



KNEE SPACE DEPTH EQUAL TO, OR GREATER THAN, TRAY SLIDE DEPTH

50% OF EACH SHELF TYPE SHALL BE LOCATED AT THIS MAXIMUM HEIGHT ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR



23.4 - FOOD SERVICE LINES - PART 2

23.4.4 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

23.4.4.1 Clear floor space shall be 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum. The long dimension shall always be parallel to the direction of travel.

Vol. I-C, 7.2(b);
ADAAG 4.2.4.1

23.5 TABLEWARE, CONDIMENT AREAS, AND OTHER DISPENSERS

23.5.1 If tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverage dispensers, vending machines and other dispensers are provided for customer self-service, then such items and/or equipment shall be located on an accessible route within the parallel (i.e., side) reach or forward reach ranges specified in 23.4.3.

ADAAG 5.6,
Figure 54

23.6 VENDING MACHINES

23.6.1 Vending machines shall be located on an accessible route. Access shall not be obstructed by other vending machines or by surrounding or adjacent building elements. The clear floor space at any vending machine shall comply with 23.4.4.

ADAAG 5.8;
FR 7/26/91 At
35443

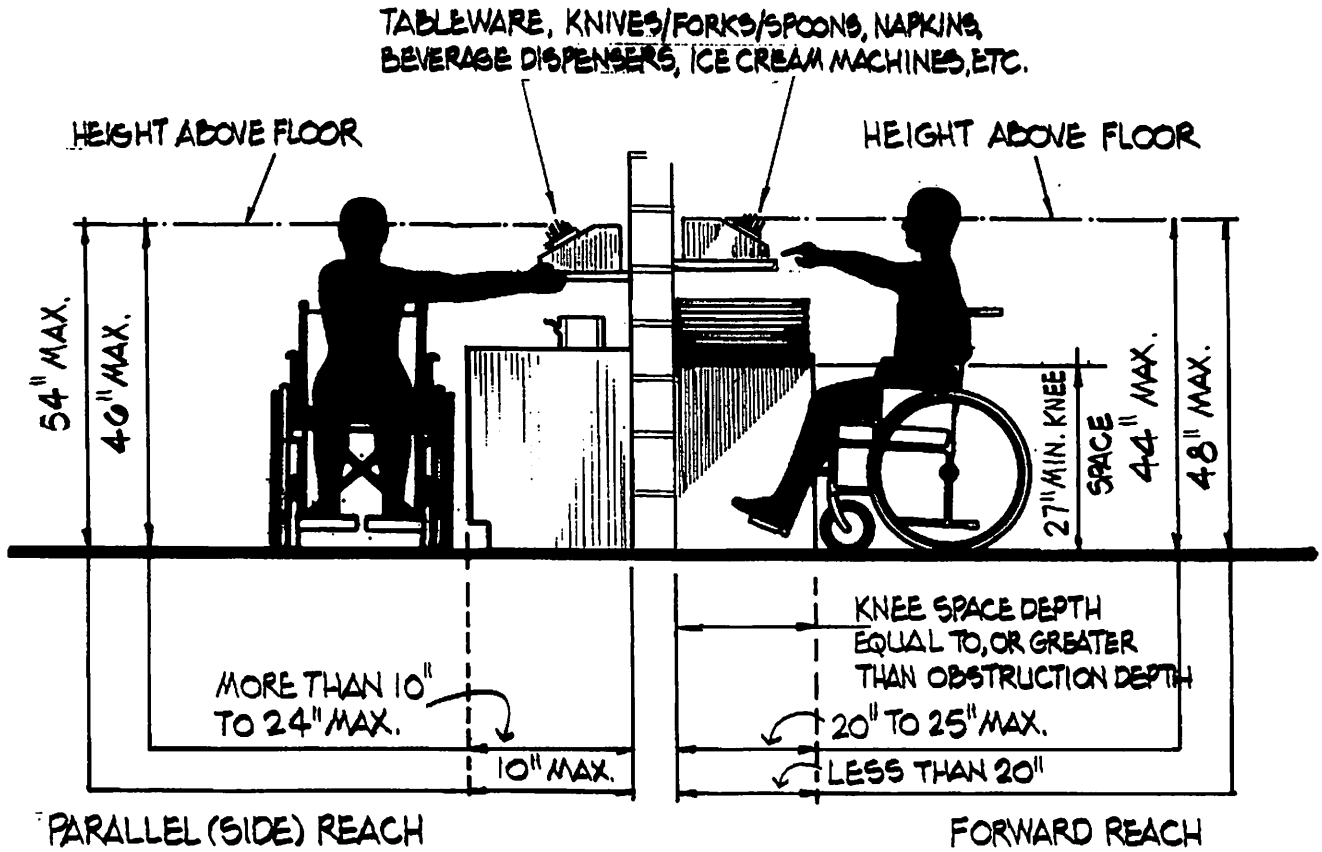
23.7 RAISED PLATFORMS

***23.7.1** In banquet rooms or spaces where a head table or speaker's lectern is located on a raised platform, the platform shall be accessible by means of a ramp [see Chapter 5] or platform wheelchair lift [see 15.11]. Open edges of a raised platform shall be protected by the placement of tables or by *a minimum 2 inches [50 mm] high curb.*

ADAAG 5.7

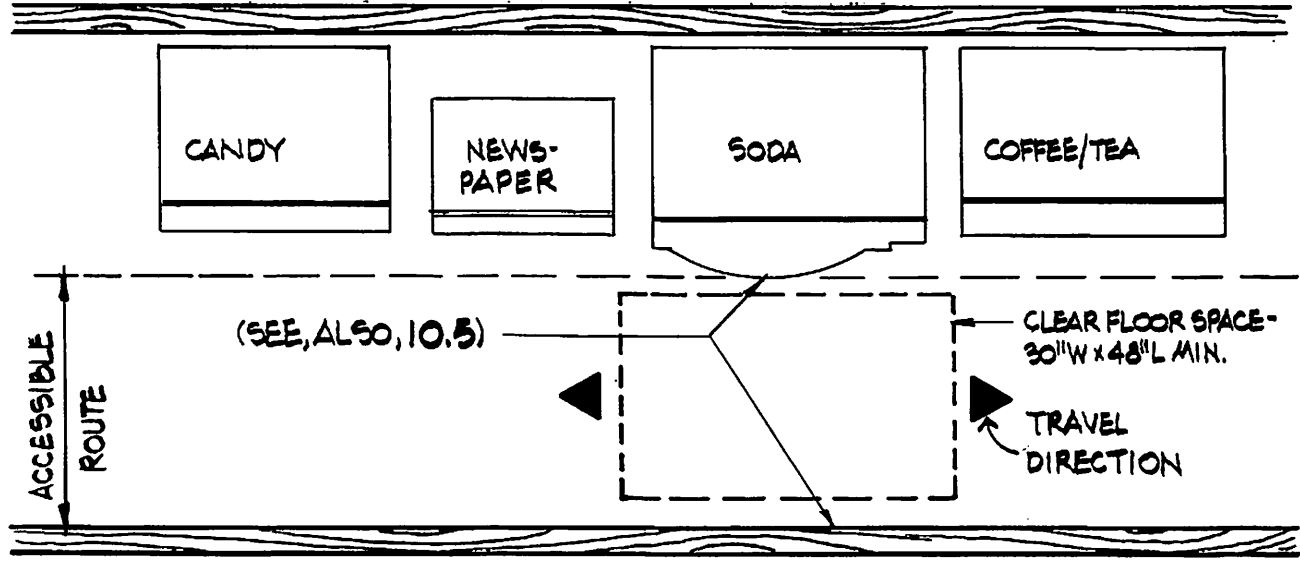
(NOTE: If such facilities are permanently built-in, then it shall be the responsibility of the Code Enforcement Official to ensure compliance with this Paragraph. However, installation of this type facility is usually temporary and is provided by the building owner or program operator after final inspection; in such cases, Federal law places responsibility for compliance with this Paragraph and 1.2.10 on the building owner and/or program operator.)

Defines
C.E.O.
Responsibilities



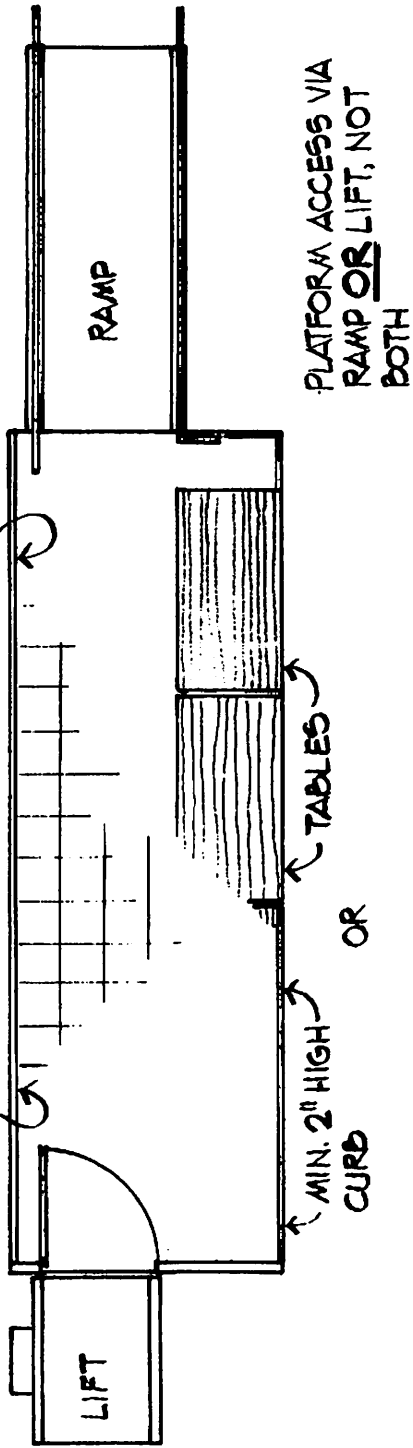
23.5 - HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR: SELF-SERVICE TABLEWARE, CONDIMENT AREAS, AND OTHER DISPENSERS

NOTE: This Code regulates the accessible route to and through, and the clear floor space at, vending machines. It does **NOT** regulate the machines themselves.



23.6 - VENDING MACHINES

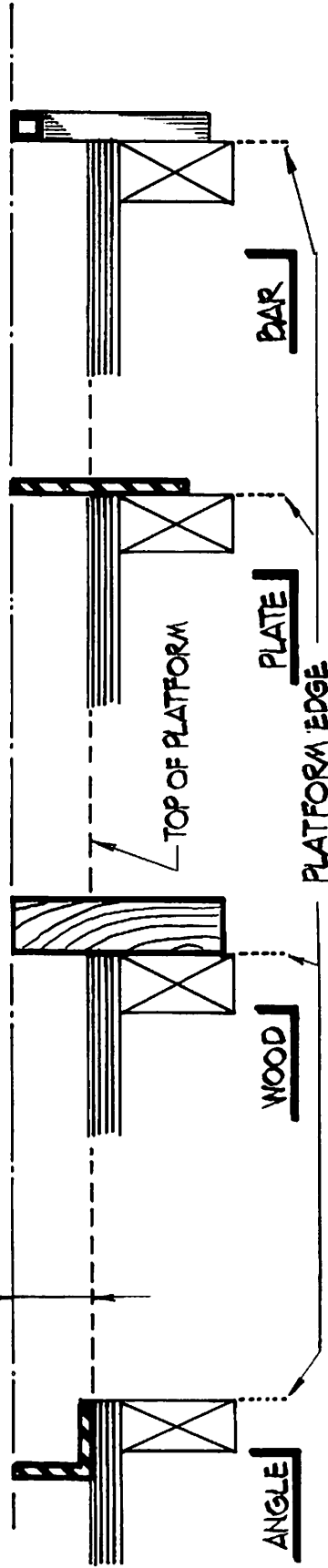
MIN. 2" HIGH CURB (OR TABLES) REQUIRED HERE IF RAISED PLATFORM NOT DIRECTLY AGAINST WALL, PARTITION OR OTHER CONTINUOUS, SOLID BARRIER



PLATFORM ACCESS VIA RAMP OR LIFT, NOT BOTH

MIN. 2" HIGH (TYPICAL)

EXAMPLES OF CURB



23.7- ACCESS ON TO, AND EDGE PROTECTION FOR, RAISED PLATFORMS (SEE, ALSO, THE NOTE FOLLOWING THE TEXT OF THIS PARAGRAPH)

CHAPTER 24 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES

24.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- *24.1.1 Every station, terminal, airport passenger terminal, bus stop and bus stop pad or other transportation facilities *located within the site boundaries of a building or facility* shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code. Derived From
ADAAG 10.1

24.2 BUS STOPS AND TERMINALS, PASSENGER PADS AND SHELTERS, ROUTE SIGNAGE

- 24.2.1 Bus stops shall be located at sites such that the minimum clear spaces required by 24.2.2 (and 24.2.3, if applicable) are provided. ADAAG
10.2.2(1)

24.2.2 PASSENGER PADS

- *24.2.2.1 Passenger pads constructed at bus stops, bus bays or areas where a lift or ramp is deployed shall have surfaces that are fixed, firm and non-slip. *Surfaces that become soft when exposed to heat, sun light, water, etc. shall not be used. Pads shall not be constructed of materials that are subject to deterioration from repeated exposure to pedestrian traffic and/or bus lifts.* ADAAG 10.2.1(1);
Sim.To Vol. I-C,
4.1(a)(2)

- 24.2.2.2 Pads shall have a 96 inches minimum clear length by a 60 inches minimum clear width (2440 mm by 1525 mm). This area shall be clear of utility poles, fire hydrants, sign posts, street furniture, and other similar obstacles. ADAAG 10.2.1(1);
FR 9/6/91 At 45501

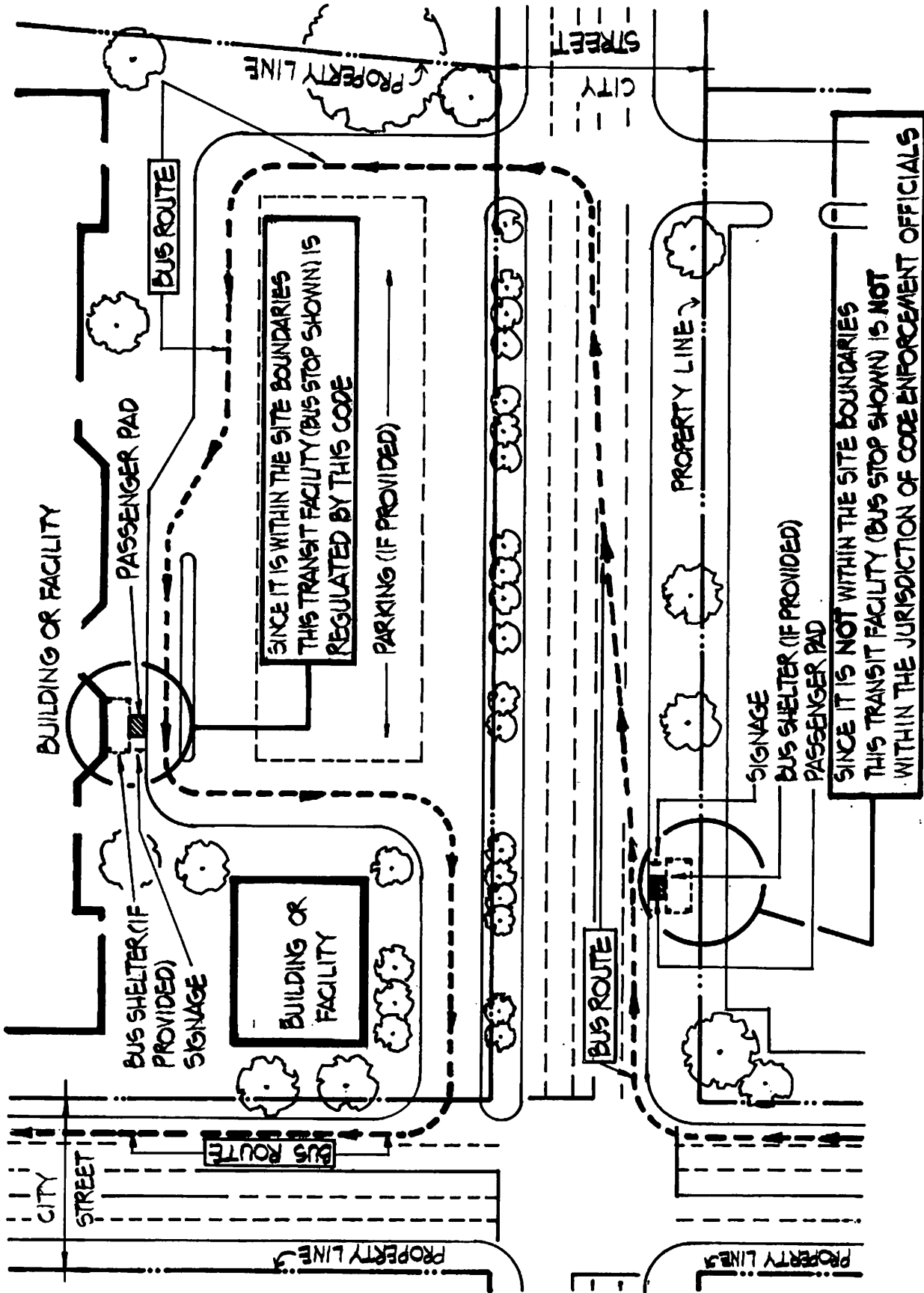
(NOTE: The dimensions are referenced to the face of the curb or edge of a vehicular way: 96 inches [2440 mm] is perpendicular to the vehicle roadway; 60 inches [1525 mm] is parallel to the roadway.) ADAAG 10.2.1(1)

- *24.2.2.3 The slope of the pad parallel to the roadway shall be the same as the longitudinal slope of the roadway itself. Pads may incorporate a maximum *1/4 inch per foot (6 mm per 305 mm)* cross slope for drainage. ADAAG
10.2.1(1)

- 24.2.2.4 If compliance with 24.2.2.2 is not possible due to site or legal constraints, then the pad dimensions shall be the maximum allowed by such constraints. ADAAG
10.2.1(1)

(NOTE: This Paragraph shall not be interpreted to mean that a passenger pad may be deleted. The clear dimensions of the pad may be less than 96 inches by 60 inches [2440 mm by 1525 mm] only if site or legal constraints dictate a reduction in the minimum size.) FR 9/6/91 At
45502

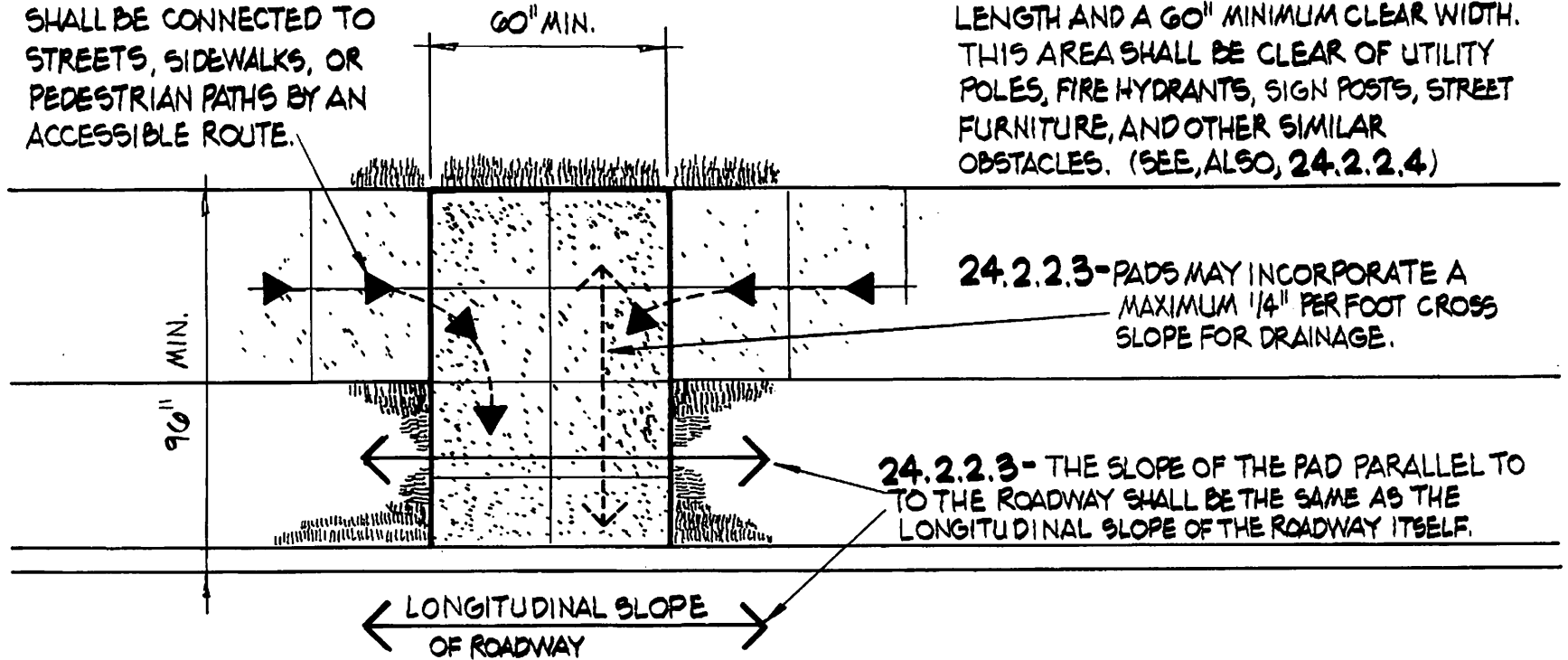
- 24.2.2.5 Passenger pads and shelters shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths by an accessible route. ADAAG 10.2.1(1),
10.2.1(2)



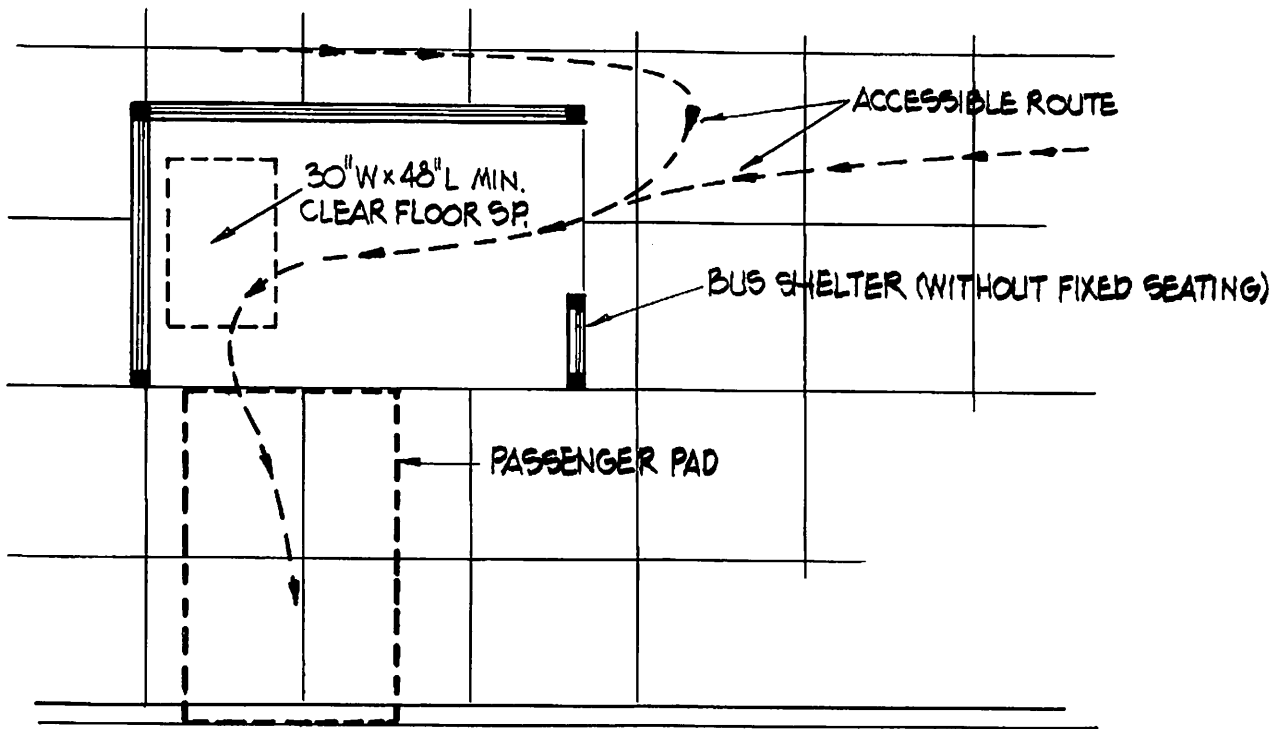
24.1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

24.2.2.5 - PASSENGER PADS SHALL BE CONNECTED TO STREETS, SIDEWALKS, OR PEDESTRIAN PATHS BY AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.

24.2.2.2 - PADS SHALL HAVE A 96" MINIMUM CLEAR LENGTH AND A 60" MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH. THIS AREA SHALL BE CLEAR OF UTILITY POLES, FIRE HYDRANTS, SIGN POSTS, STREET FURNITURE, AND OTHER SIMILAR OBSTACLES. (SEE, ALSO, 24.2.2.4)

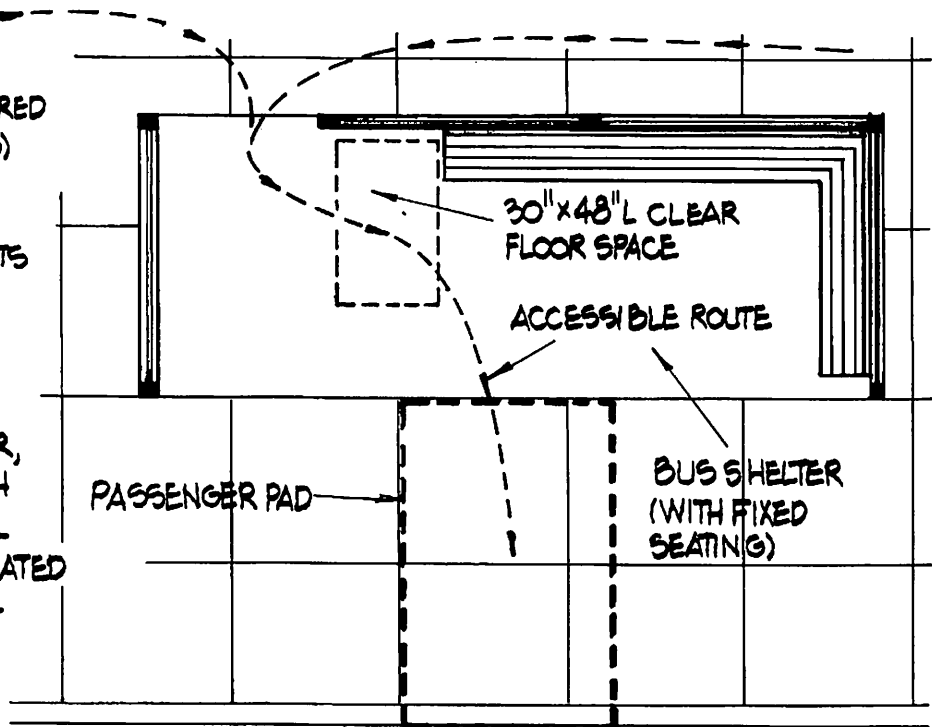


24.2.2 - PASSENGER PADS



NOTES:

1. COMPLIANCE IS REQUIRED ONLY IF A SHELTER(S) IS PROVIDED.
2. ARRANGEMENT OF ACCESSIBLE ELEMENTS IS NOT LIMITED TO THAT SHOWN HERE.
3. IF ALL PERSONS ARE LOCATED WHOLLY WITHIN THE SHELTER, THEN PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES SHALL ALSO BE ACCOMMODATED ENTIRELY WITHIN THE SHELTER.



24.2.3 - BUS SHELTERS

24.2.3 BUS SHELTERS

24.2.3.1 If passenger shelters are provided, then the accessible route leading to the shelter shall permit a disabled person to approach and enter the structure, gain access to the clear floor space, and to approach and use the passenger pad required by 24.2.2.

ADAAG
10.2.1(2)

24.2.3.2 A minimum of one 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space shall be provided entirely within the shelter perimeter.

ADAAG
10.2.1(2)

24.2.4 BUS ROUTE IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

*24.2.4.1 If bus route identification signs are provided *within the site boundaries of a building or facility*, then such signs shall comply with 18.1.4, 18.2.1, and 18.2.2 (if applicable).

Similar To
ADAAG
10.2.1(3)

24.2.4.1.1 If legitimate local, state, or federal regulations or ordinances limit the physical size of a route identification sign, then such signs shall comply with 18.1.4, and the requirements of 18.2.1 and 18.2.2 (if applicable) may be adjusted to accommodate the allowable physical size of the sign.

ADAAG
10.2.1(3);
FR 9/6/91 At
45502

24.2.4.2 Bus schedules, timetables, and route maps posted at a bus stop or bus bay are not required to comply with this Section.

ADAAG 10.2.1(3),
Exception

24.3 PASSENGER TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS

24.3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

24.3.1.1 Facilities and stations for rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, inter-city bus, inter-city rail, high-speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems (e.g., automated guideway transit, monorails, etc.) shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Section.

ADAAG
10.3.1

*24.3.1.2 DEFINITIONS

*24.3.1.2.1 AUTOMATED GUIDEWAY TRANSIT (AGT, OR "PEOPLE MOVERS")

A fixed-guideway transit system which operates with automated (driverless) single vehicles or multi-car trains. Service may be on a fixed schedule or in response to a passenger-activated call button.

All Definitions:
FR 9/6/91, Part IV,
Subpart A, ¶37.3

*24.3.1.2.2 COMMUTER RAIL TRANSPORTATION

A short-haul rail passenger service operating in metropolitan or suburban areas, whether within or across the geographical boundaries of a state, usually characterized by reduced fare, multiple ride, and commutation tickets and by morning and evening peak period operations. This term does not include light rail or rapid rail transportation.

***24.3.1.2.3 HIGH SPEED RAIL**

Rail service having the characteristics of intercity rail which operates primarily on a dedicated guideway or track generally not used, for the most part, by freight including, but not limited to, trains on welded rail, magnetically levitated (MagLev) vehicles on a special guideway, or other advanced technology vehicles, designed to travel at speeds in excess of those possible on other types of railroads.

***24.3.1.2.4 INTERCITY RAIL TRANSPORTATION**

Rail transportation provided by the National Railroad Passenger Corporation (Amtrak).

***24.3.1.2.5 LIGHT RAIL**

A streetcar-type vehicle operated on city streets, semi-exclusive rights of way, or exclusive rights of way. Service may be provided by step-entry vehicles or by level boarding.

***24.3.1.2.6 RAPID RAIL**

A subway-type transit vehicle railway operated on exclusive private rights of way with high level platform stations. Rapid rail also may operate on elevated or at-grade level track separated from other traffic.

24.3.2 CIRCULATION PATH

***24.3.2.1** *The circulation path leading to, into, and through the facility shall coincide with the path used by the general public and shall lead to all areas necessary for use of the transportation system.*

Derived From
ADAAG 10.3.1(1) &
FR 9/6/91 At 45504

24.3.2.3 TRACK CROSSING

24.3.2.3.1 If it is necessary to cross a track (or tracks) in order to arrive at a boarding platform, then the route finished surface shall be level and aligned with the tops of all rails.

ADAAG
10.3.1(13)

24.3.2.3.2 The finished surface shall be tight against the outer vertical face of all rails. The inner vertical faces of the rails may be separated from the route surface by a 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) maximum gap to permit passage of train car wheel flanges.

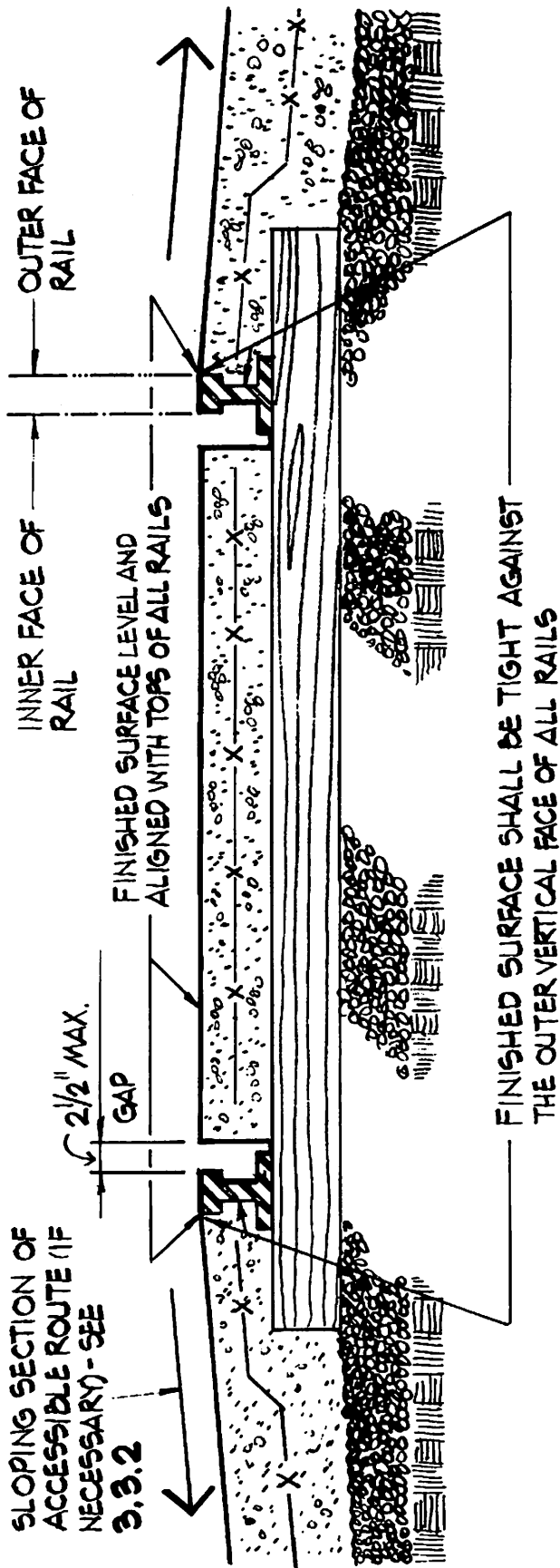
ADAAG
10.3.1(13)

24.3.2.3.3 If the gap cannot be held to 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) or less, then an above-grade or below-grade accessible route shall be provided.

ADAAG
10.3.1(13)

24.3.2.3.4 Each track crossing shall have a detectable warning in compliance with 19.2

ADAAG 10.3.1(13) [Temporarily
Suspended-FR 4/12/94; See
Chapter 19]



24.3.2.3.3 - IF THE GAP CANNOT BE HELD TO 2 1/2" OR LESS THEN AN ABOVE-GRADE OR BELOW-GRADE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE SHALL BE PROVIDED.

24.3.2.3 - TRACK CROSSING

24.3.3 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

24.3.3.1 In place of compliance with 6.2, a minimum of one entrance to each station shall be accessible. If different entrances to a station serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, then a minimum of one entrance serving each group or route shall be accessible and shall coincide with the entrances used by the general public.

ADAAG
10.3.1(2)

EXAMPLE 1: If a rail station has two entrances each serving a different bus route and no accessible connecting route between them, then both entrances are required to be accessible.

FR 9/6/91 At
45506

EXAMPLE 2: If all bus routes serve one entrance of a multi-entrance station, then only that entrance is required to be accessible.

FR 9/6/91 At
45506

24.3.3.1.1 Signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the location of the accessible entrance shall be placed at or near each inaccessible entrance such that a disabled person will not be required to retrace the approach route from the inaccessible entrance(s). The accessible entrance shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3(2).

From
ADAAG 4.1.2(7)(c)
And 4.1.6(1)(h)

24.3.4 ELEVATORS

24.3.4.1 Elevators shall be equipped with transparent panels or glazing which provide an unobstructed view in to, and out of, the car.

ADAAG
10.3.1(17)

24.3.4.2 An elevator cab having a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum clear floor area (or a 60 inches [1525 mm] diameter circle) may be substituted for the clear floor area requirements of 15.4.1 or 15.4.2.

ADAAG
10.3.1(17),
Exception

24.3.5 ESCALATORS

***24.3.5.1** If escalators are provided in *either above-grade or below-grade* stations, then the clear inside width shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.
(NOTE: The 32 inches [815 mm] clear width is to facilitate emergency egress only and does not mean that an escalator can be used as part of accessible route.)

ADAAG 10.3.1(16);
FR 9/6/91 At 45513
(ADAAG Mentions "Below Grade" But Not "Above Grade"
[E.G., Urban/Suburban
Commuter Rail Stations])

24.3.5.2 At the top and bottom of each escalator run a minimum of two (2) immediately adjacent treads shall be level beyond the comb plate before risers begin to form.

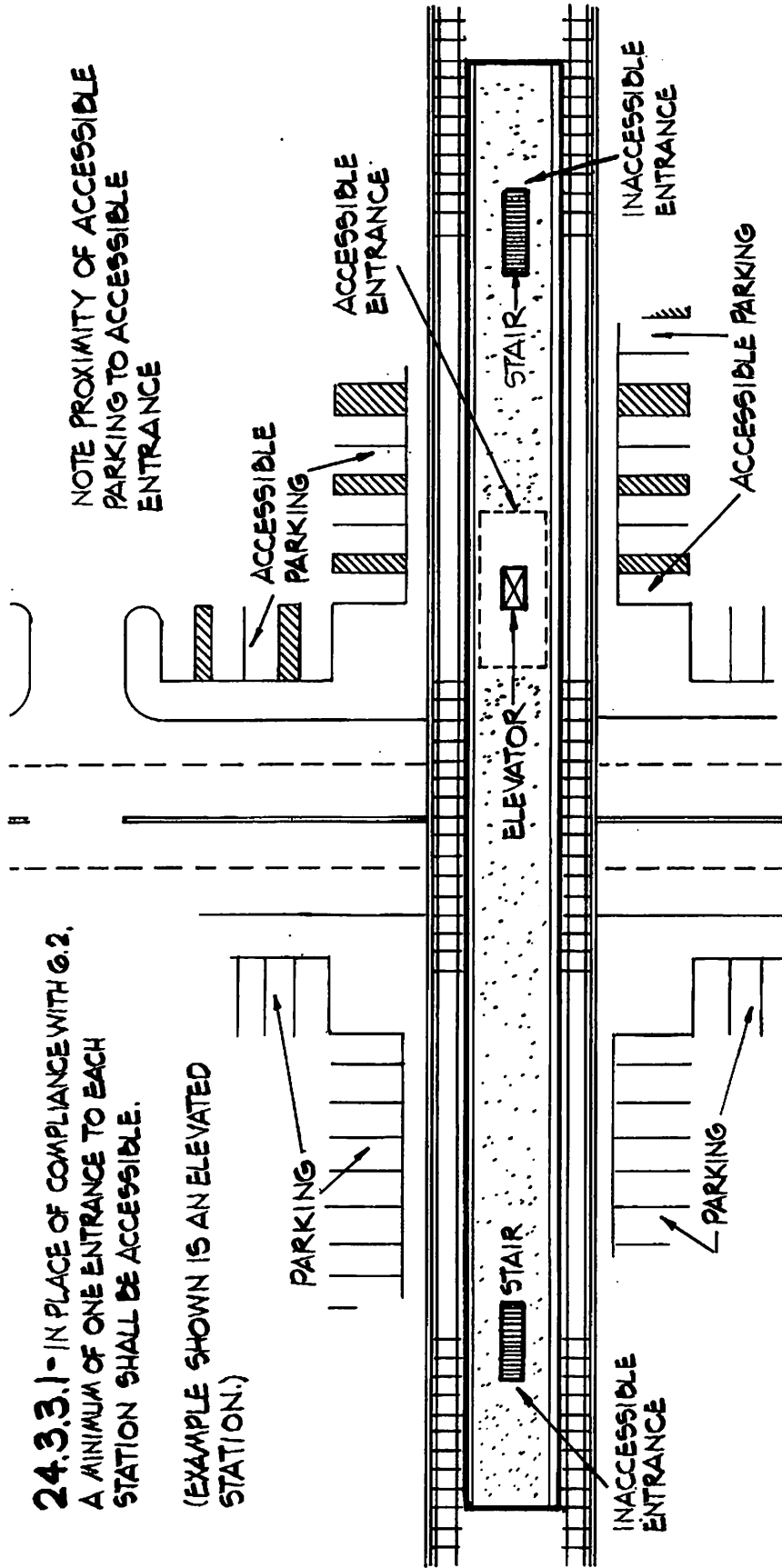
ADAAG
10.3.1(16)

24.3.5.3 Every tread shall be marked at the nose by a minimum 2 inches (50 mm) deep color strip that extends the full width of the tread. The color strip shall contrast with the main part of the tread and shall be of a material that is at least as slip resistant as the remainder of the tread. Tread markings shall be visible from both the ascending and descending directions.

ADAAG
10.3.1(16)

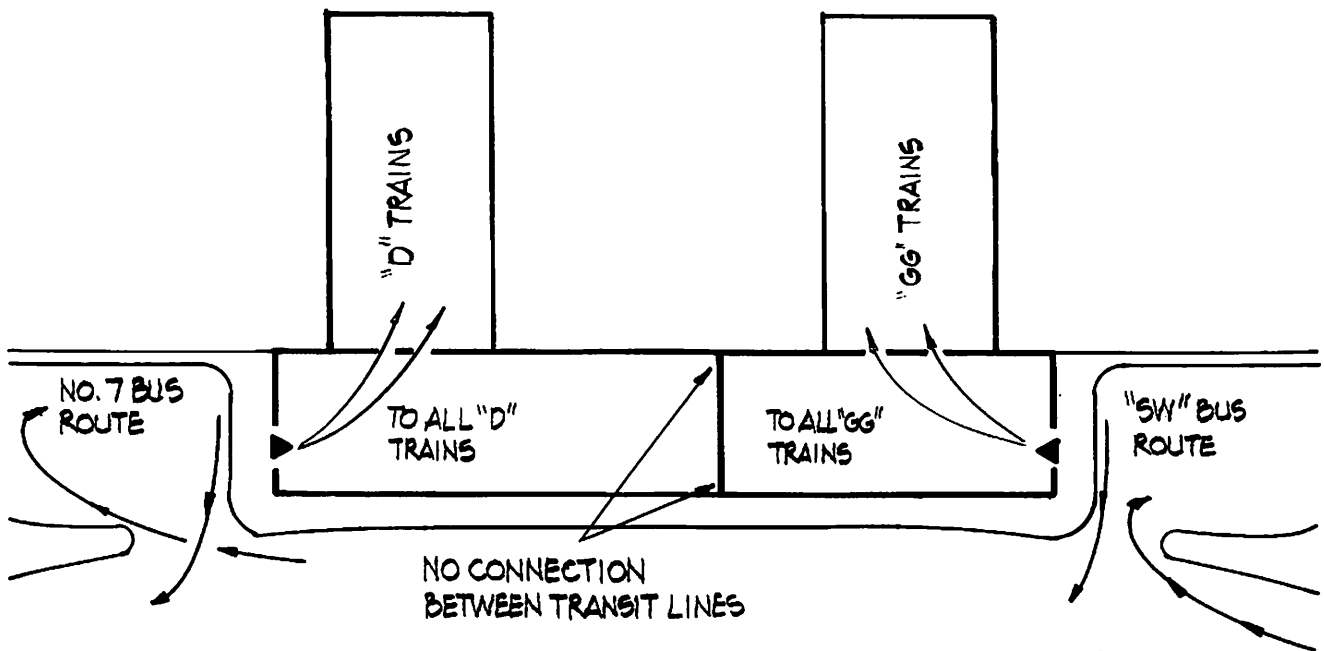
24.3.3.1 - IN PLACE OF COMPLIANCE WITH 6.2, A MINIMUM OF ONE ENTRANCE TO EACH STATION SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE.

(EXAMPLE SHOWN IS AN ELEVATED STATION.)



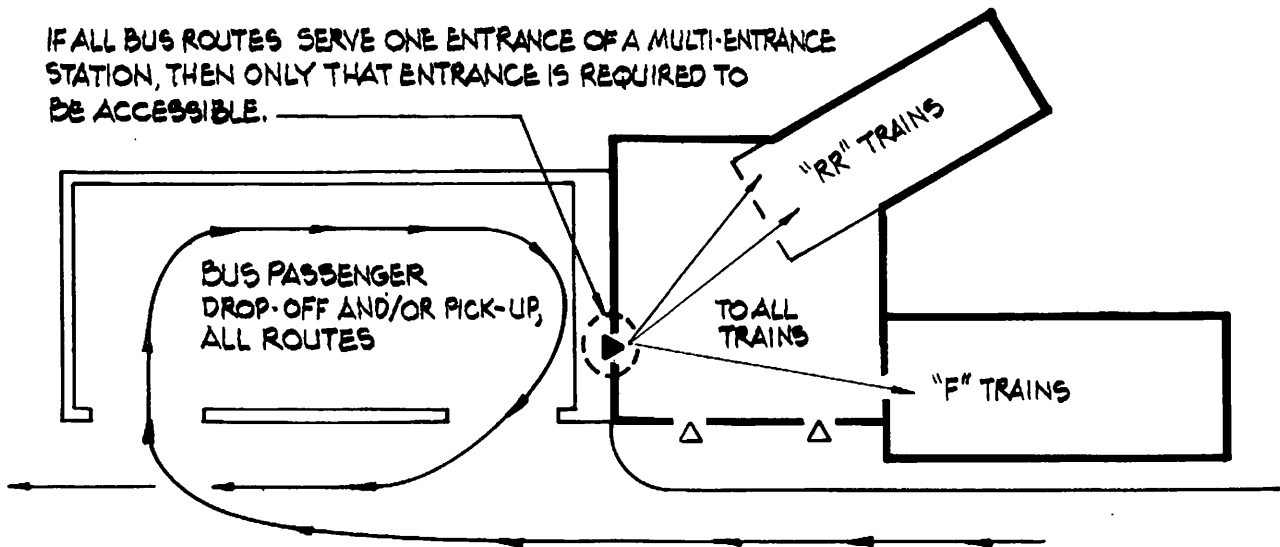
SEE 24.3.3.1.1 IN THE TEXT FOR SIGNAGE AT INACCESSIBLE AND ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

24.3.3 - NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES - PART I



IF A RAIL STATION HAS 2 ENTRANCES EACH SERVING A DIFFERENT BUS ROUTE AND NO CONNECTING ROUTE BETWEEN THEM, THEN BOTH ENTRANCES ARE REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE.

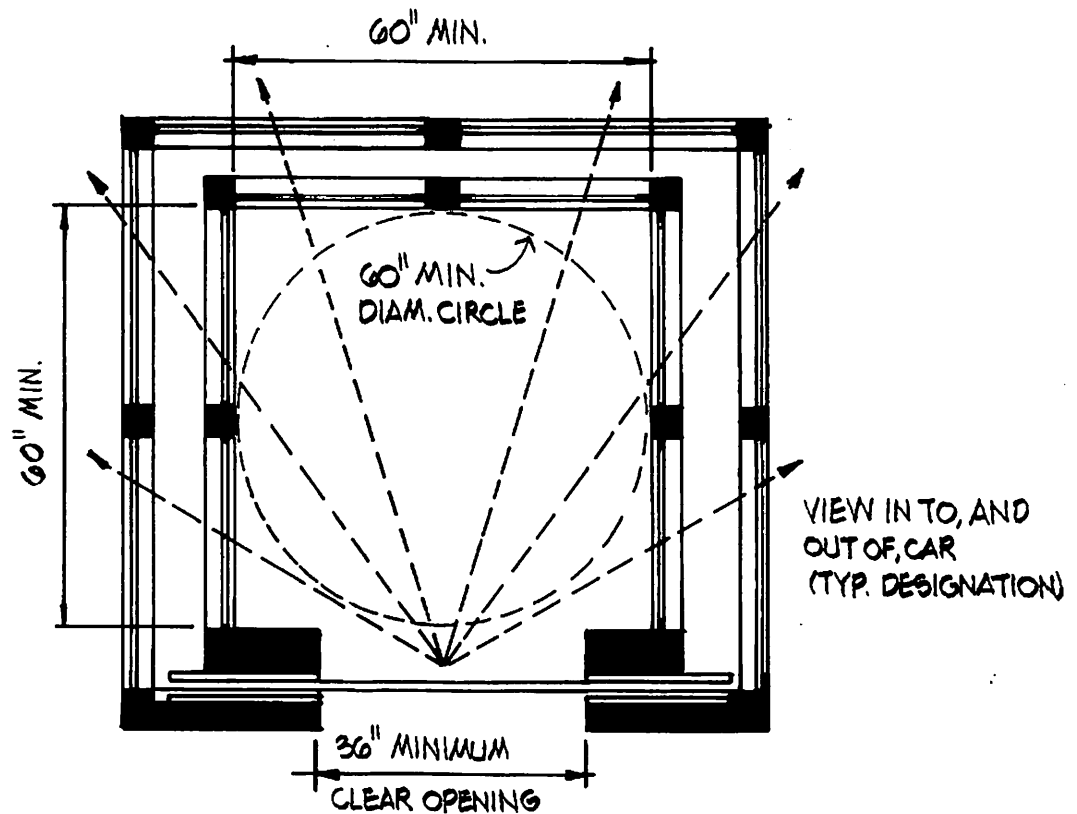
IF ALL BUS ROUTES SERVE ONE ENTRANCE OF A MULTI-ENTRANCE STATION, THEN ONLY THAT ENTRANCE IS REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE.



24.3.3.1-IF DIFFERENT ENTRANCES TO A STATION SERVE DIFFERENT TRANSPORTATION FIXED ROUTES OR GROUPS OF FIXED ROUTES, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE ENTRANCE SERVING EACH GROUP OR ROUTE SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE AND SHALL COINCIDE WITH THE ENTRANCES USED BY THE GENERAL PUBLIC.

24.3.3- NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES-PART 2

24.3.4.1- ELEVATORS SHALL BE EQUIPPED WITH TRANSPARENT PANELS OR GLAZING WHICH PROVIDE AN UNOBSTRUCTED VIEW IN TO, AND OUT OF, THE CAR.

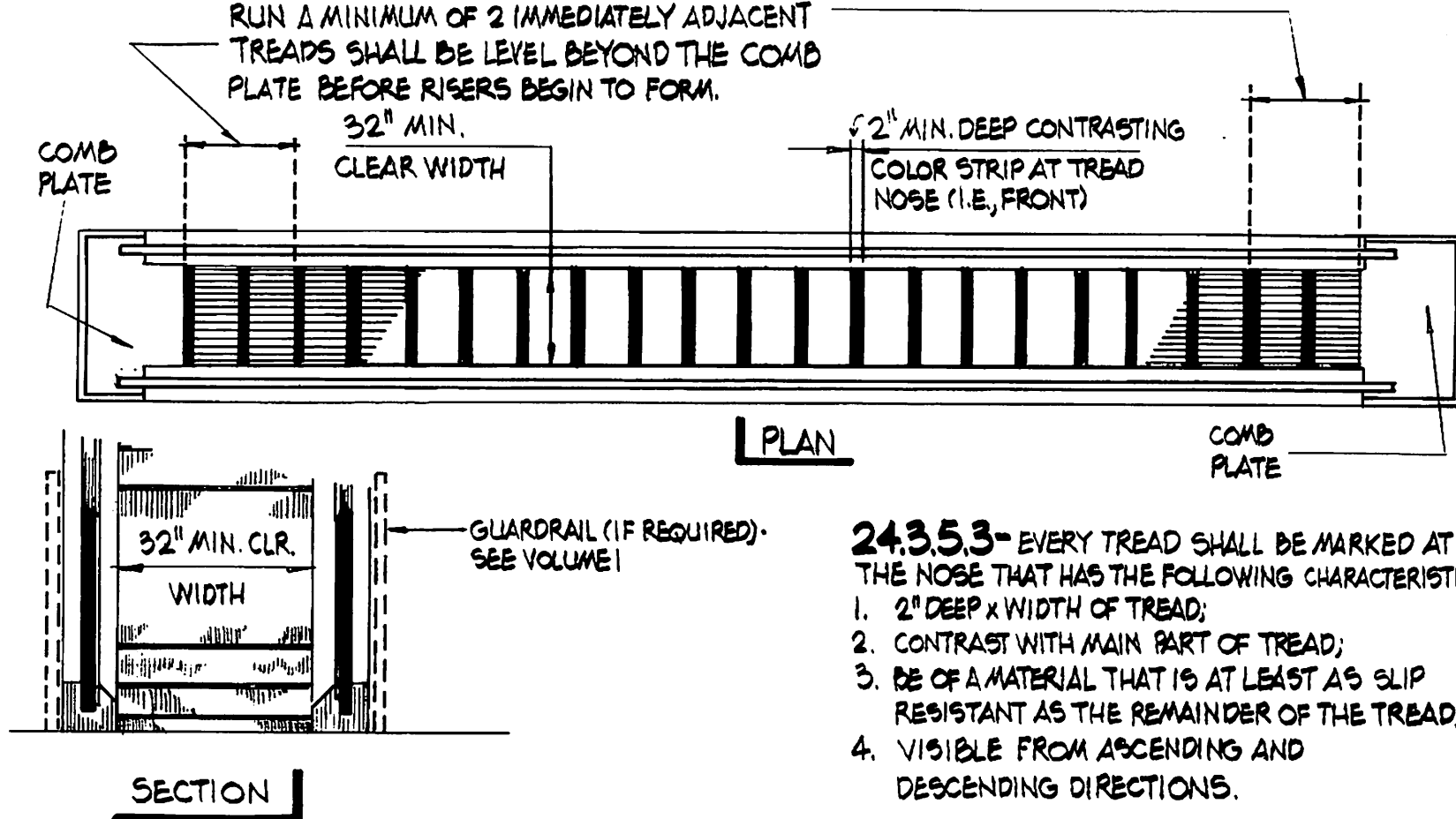


24.3.4.2- AN ELEVATOR CAB HAVING A 60" X 60" MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR AREA (OR A 60" DIAMETER CIRCLE) MAY BE SUBSTITUTED FOR THE CLEAR FLOOR AREA REQUIREMENTS OF 15.4.1 OR 15.4.2.

24.3.4- ELEVATORS

24.3.5.1- IF ESCALATORS ARE PROVIDED IN EITHER ABOVE-GRADE OR BELOW-GRADE STATIONS, THEN THE CLEAR INSIDE WIDTH SHALL BE 32 INCHES MINIMUM. (SEE, ALSO, THE NOTE FOLLOWING THE TEXT OF THIS PARAGRAPH.)

24.3.5.2- AT THE TOP AND BOTTOM OF EACH ESCALATOR RUN A MINIMUM OF 2 IMMEDIATELY ADJACENT TREADS SHALL BE LEVEL BEYOND THE COMB PLATE BEFORE RISERS BEGIN TO FORM.



24.3.5.3- EVERY TREAD SHALL BE MARKED AT THE NOSE THAT HAS THE FOLLOWING CHARACTERISTICS:

1. 2" DEEP x WIDTH OF TREAD;
2. CONTRAST WITH MAIN PART OF TREAD;
3. BE OF A MATERIAL THAT IS AT LEAST AS SLIP RESISTANT AS THE REMAINDER OF THE TREAD;
4. VISIBLE FROM ASCENDING AND DESCENDING DIRECTIONS.

24.3.5- ESCALATORS

24.3.6 DIRECT CONNECTIONS

24.3.6.1 Direct connections to commercial, retail, or residential facilities shall have an accessible route from the point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(3)**

24.3.7 SIGNAGE

24.3.7.1 STATION ENTRANCE SIGNS

24.3.7.1.1 If signs are provided at station entrances identifying the station and/or the entrance, then a minimum of one sign at each entrance shall comply with 18.1.4, 18.3.1, and 18.3.2. Location of the accessible sign shall comply with the applicable requirements of 18.4.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(4)**

24.3.7.1.2 If the station has no defined entrance but signage is provided then the accessible signage shall be placed in a central location.

**ADAAG 10.3.1(4),
Exception**

24.3.7.2 STATION IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

24.3.7.2.1 Stations for the types of systems named in 24.3.1.1 shall have identification signs that comply with 18.1.4, 18.2.1, and 18.2.2 (if applicable), which shall be placed at frequent intervals.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(5)**

24.3.7.2.2 Station identification signs shall be placed so that they are clearly visible from within the vehicle on both sides of the train car. Signs located on one side of a train car may be temporarily obstructed by another train on adjacent tracks.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(5);
FR 9/6/91 At
45507**

24.3.7.2.3 If station identification signs are located close to train car windows (i.e., the signs are placed on the side of a car opposite from the boarding side), then all signs in such locations shall have the top of the highest letter or symbol below the top of the car windows and the bottom of the lowest letter or symbol above the window horizontal centerline.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(5)**

24.3.7.3 ROUTE SIGNAGE

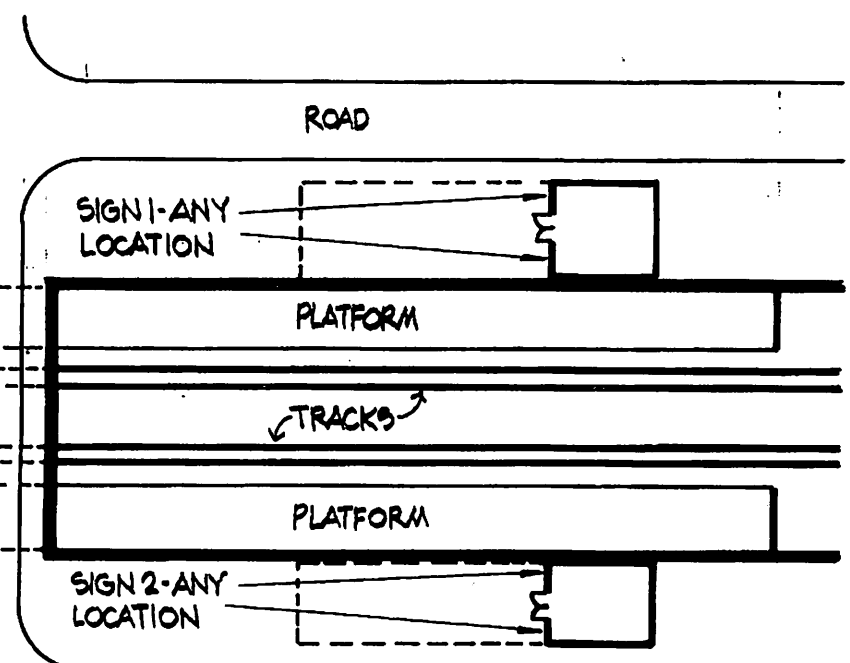
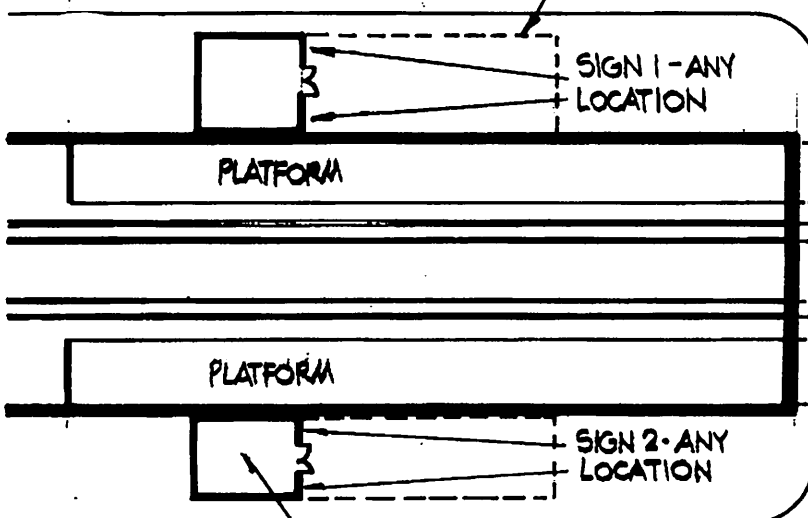
24.3.7.3.1 Lists of stations, routes, or destinations served by the station and located on boarding areas, platforms, or mezzanines shall comply with 18.1.4, 18.2.1, and 18.2.2 (if applicable). A minimum of one sign in compliance with 18.3.1 and 18.3.2 shall be provided at each platform or boarding area identifying the specific station. Placement of this sign shall comply with 18.4.2 and 18.4.3.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(6)**

24.3.7.1- IF SIGNS ARE PROVIDED AT STATION ENTRANCES IDENTIFYING THE STATION AND/OR THE ENTRANCE, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE SIGN AT EACH ENTRANCE SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.4, 18.3.1, AND 18.3.2. LOCATION OF THE ACCESSIBLE SIGN SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 18.4.

(BELOW-GRADE STATION SHOWN AS EXAMPLE)

FARE VENDING AREA (TYPICAL)

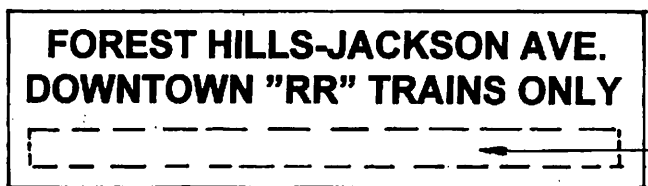


ENTRANCE (TYP.)

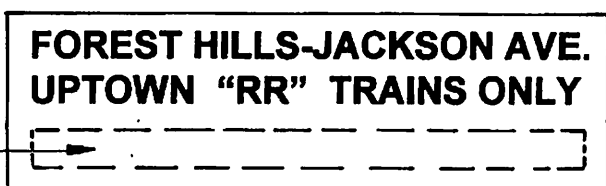
ROAD

ROAD

SIGN 1 (EXAMPLE)



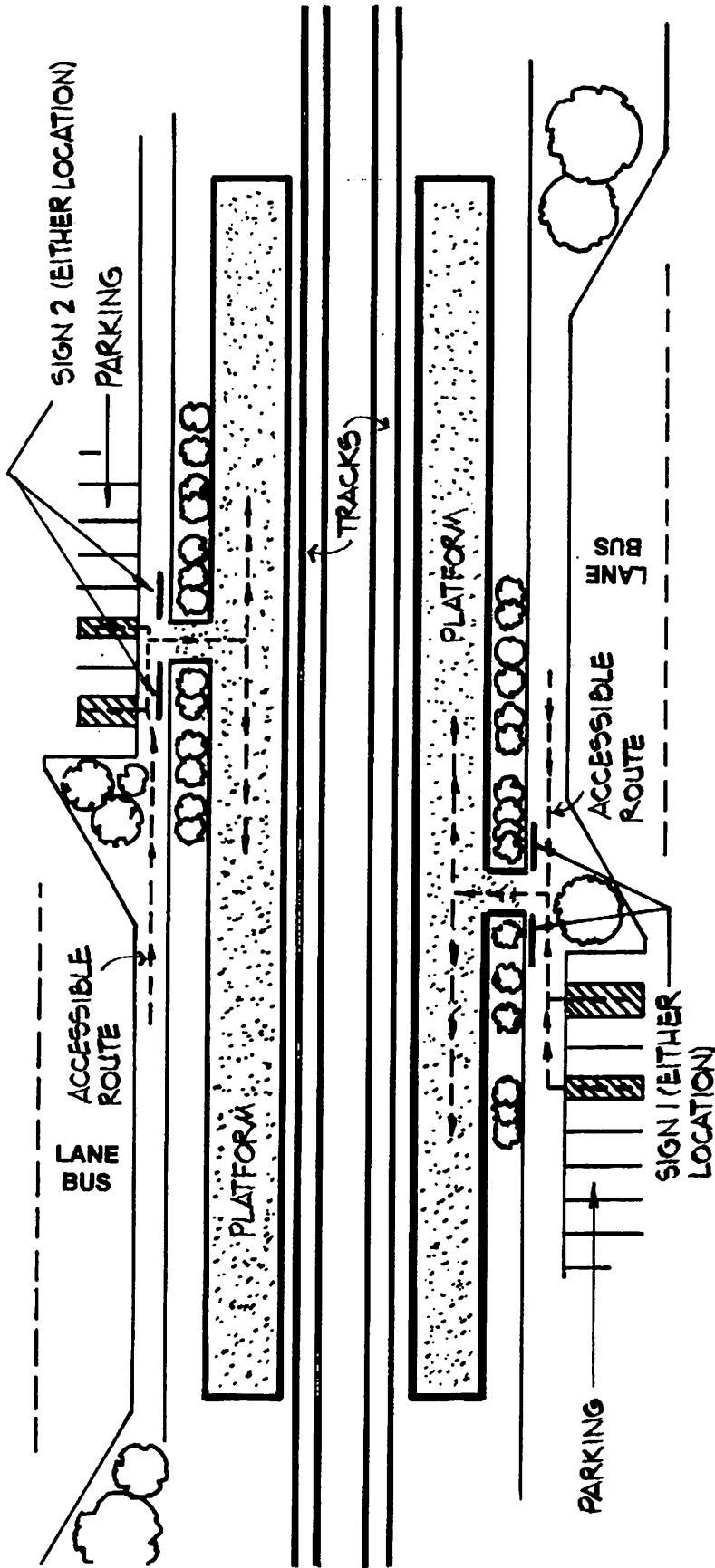
SIGN 2 (EXAMPLE)



BRAILLE

24.3.7.1- STATION ENTRANCE SIGNS-PART I

24.3.7.1.2 - IF THE STATION HAS NO DEFINED ENTRANCE BUT SIGNAGE IS PROVIDED, THEN THE ACCESSIBLE SIGNAGE SHALL BE PLACED IN A CENTRAL LOCATION.



FOREST HILLS-JACKSON AVE.
 UPTOWN "RR" TRAINS
 THIS ENTRANCE ONLY

SIGN 1 (EXAMPLE)

FOREST HILLS-JACKSON AVE.
 DOWNTOWN "RR" TRAINS
 THIS ENTRANCE ONLY

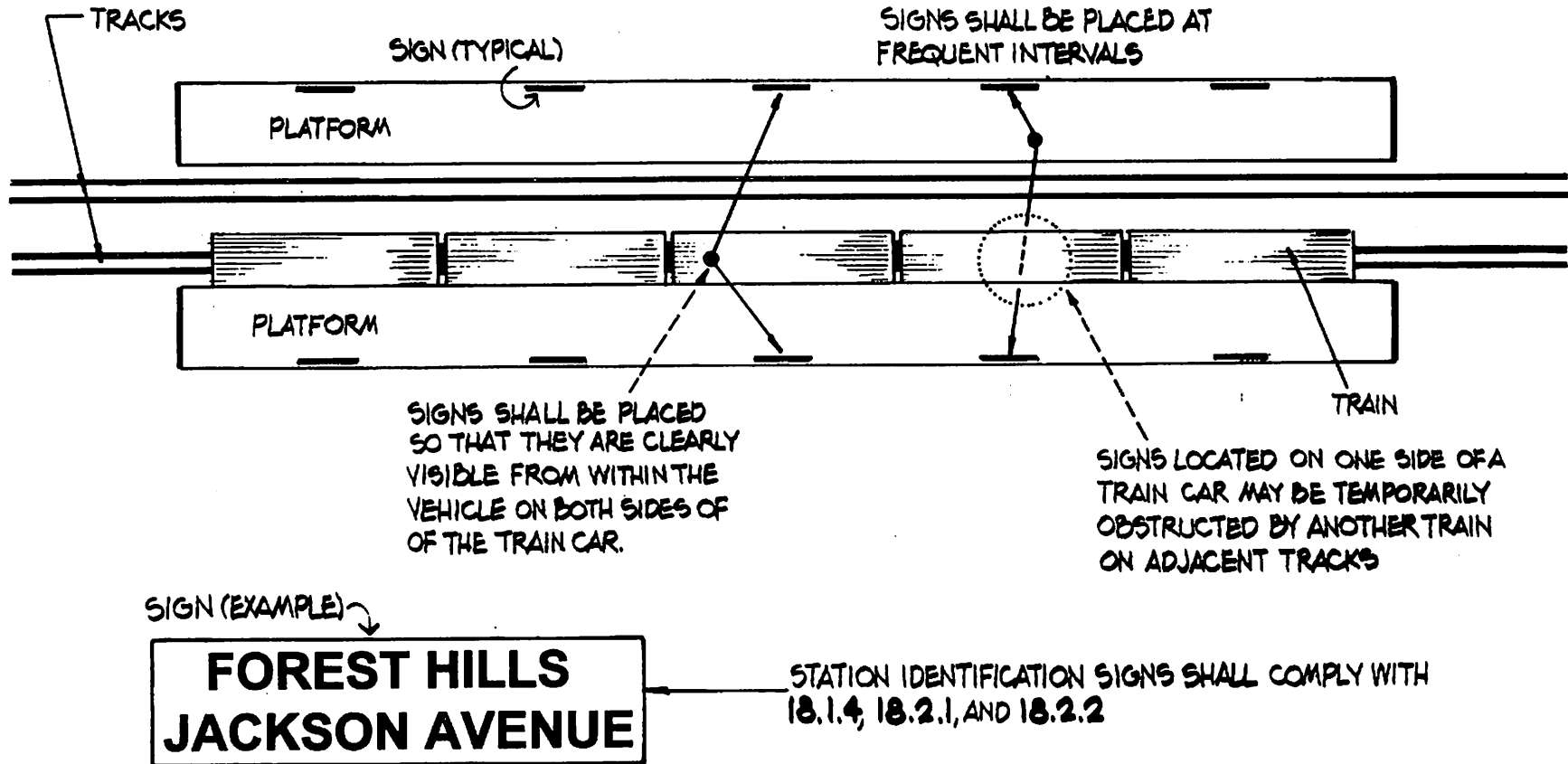
SIGN 2 (EXAMPLE)

BRAILLE

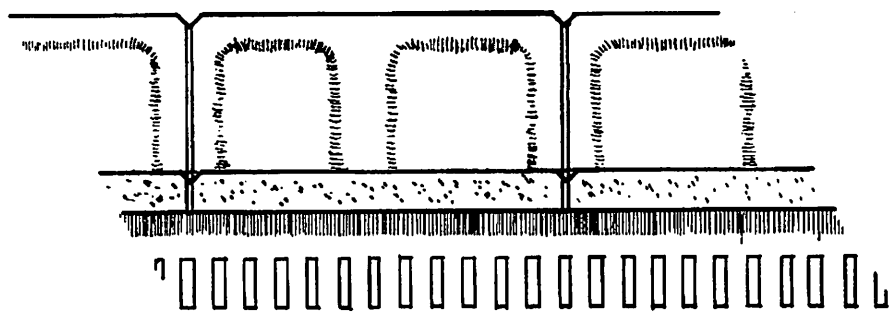
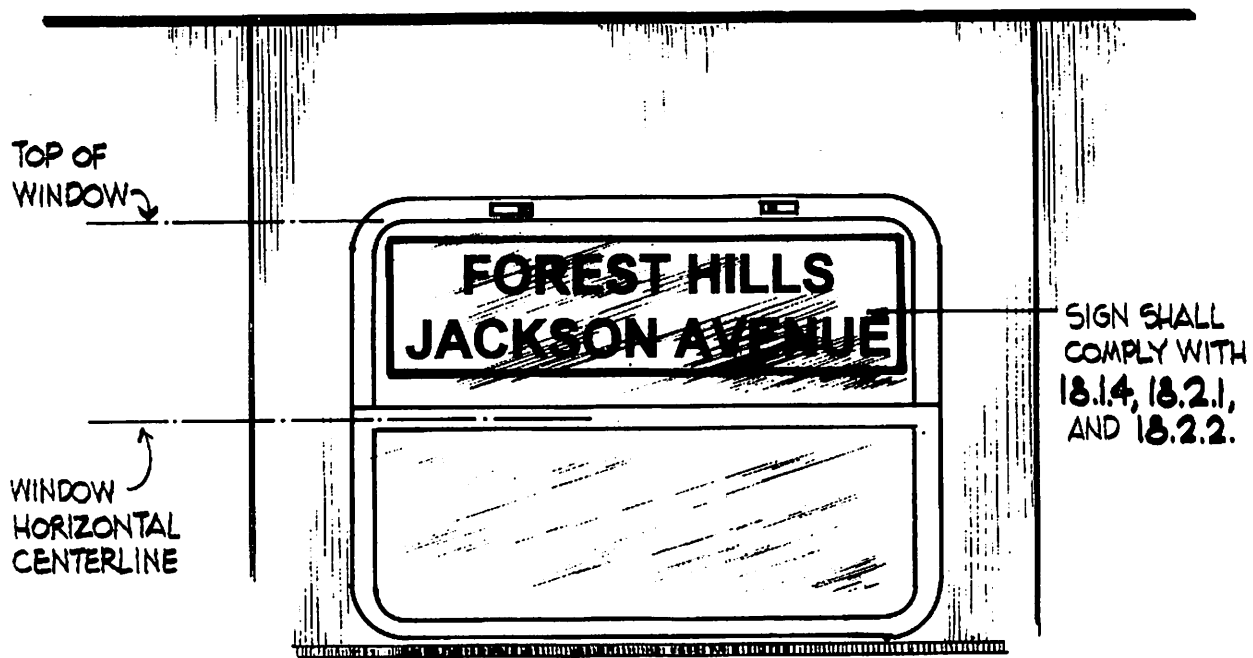
24.3.7.1 - STATION ENTRANCE SIGNS - PART 2

24.3.7.2.1 AND 24.3.7.2.2

THE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS SECTION (I.E., 24.3.7.2) SHALL APPLY TO STATIONS FOR THE TYPES OF STATIONS NAMED IN 24.3.1.1



24.3.7.2- STATION IDENTIFICATION SIGNS - PART I



VIEW SHOWN IS FROM INSIDE THE TRAIN CAR LOOKING OUT

24.3.7.2.3- IF STATION IDENTIFICATION SIGNS ARE LOCATED CLOSE TO TRAIN CAR WINDOWS (I.E., THE SIGNS ARE PLACED ON THE SIDE OF A CAR OPPOSITE FROM THE BOARDING SIDE), THEN ALL SIGNS IN SUCH LOCATIONS SHALL HAVE THE TOP OF THE HIGHEST LETTER OR SYMBOL BELOW THE TOP OF THE CAR WINDOWS AND THE BOTTOM OF THE LOWEST LETTER OR SYMBOL ABOVE THE WINDOW HORIZONTAL CENTERLINE.

24.3.7.2- STATION IDENTIFICATION SIGNS - PART 2

24.3.7.4 ILLUMINATION

24.3.7.4.1 Lighting along all circulation routes shall be of a type and configuration to provide uniform illumination. Illumination levels in areas having signage shall be uniform and minimize glare on signs

“All”: FR 9/6/91
At 45511;
ADAAG
10.3.1(11)

24.3.8 FARE MACHINES AND GATES

24.3.8.1 FARE MACHINES

24.3.8.1.1 At each accessible entrance, automatic fare vending, fare collection, and fare adjustment (e.g., add-fare) systems shall be located on an accessible route.

ADAAG
10.3.1(7)

24.3.8.1.2 If self-service fare collection devices are provided for the use of the general public, then a minimum of one accessible device for entering, and a minimum of one accessible device for exiting, shall be provided at each accessible point of entry and exit. If one accessible device serves both functions, then separate accessible entry and exit devices shall not be required. Accessible fare collection devices shall have a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening.

ADAAG
10.3.1(7)

24.3.8.1.3 Automatic fare vending, fare collection, and fare adjustment (e.g., add-fare) systems shall have a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space which shall allow a wheelchair user to make a forward approach, a parallel approach, or both. The long dimension of the clear floor space shall always be parallel to the direction of approach.

ADAAG
10.3.1(7) = 4.34.2;
(FR 7/15/93)

24.3.8.1.4 Fare systems controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with 16.1.2.

ADAAG 10.3.1(7) = 4.34.4
[FR 7/15/93]

24.3.8.1.5 The highest operable part of all controls and operating mechanisms shall be located above the finished floor or ground level in compliance with the following:

<u>TYPE OF APPROACH</u>	<u>FOR MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF CONTROLS REFER TO SECTION</u>	ADAAG 10.3.1(7) = 4.34.3; [FR 7/15/93]
Forward.	16.4.6.1	
Parallel (Side)1	16.4.6.2	

24.3.8.1.6 If both a forward and parallel (i.e., side) approach are possible, then the highest operable part of all controls shall comply with either 16.4.6.1 or 16.4.6.2.

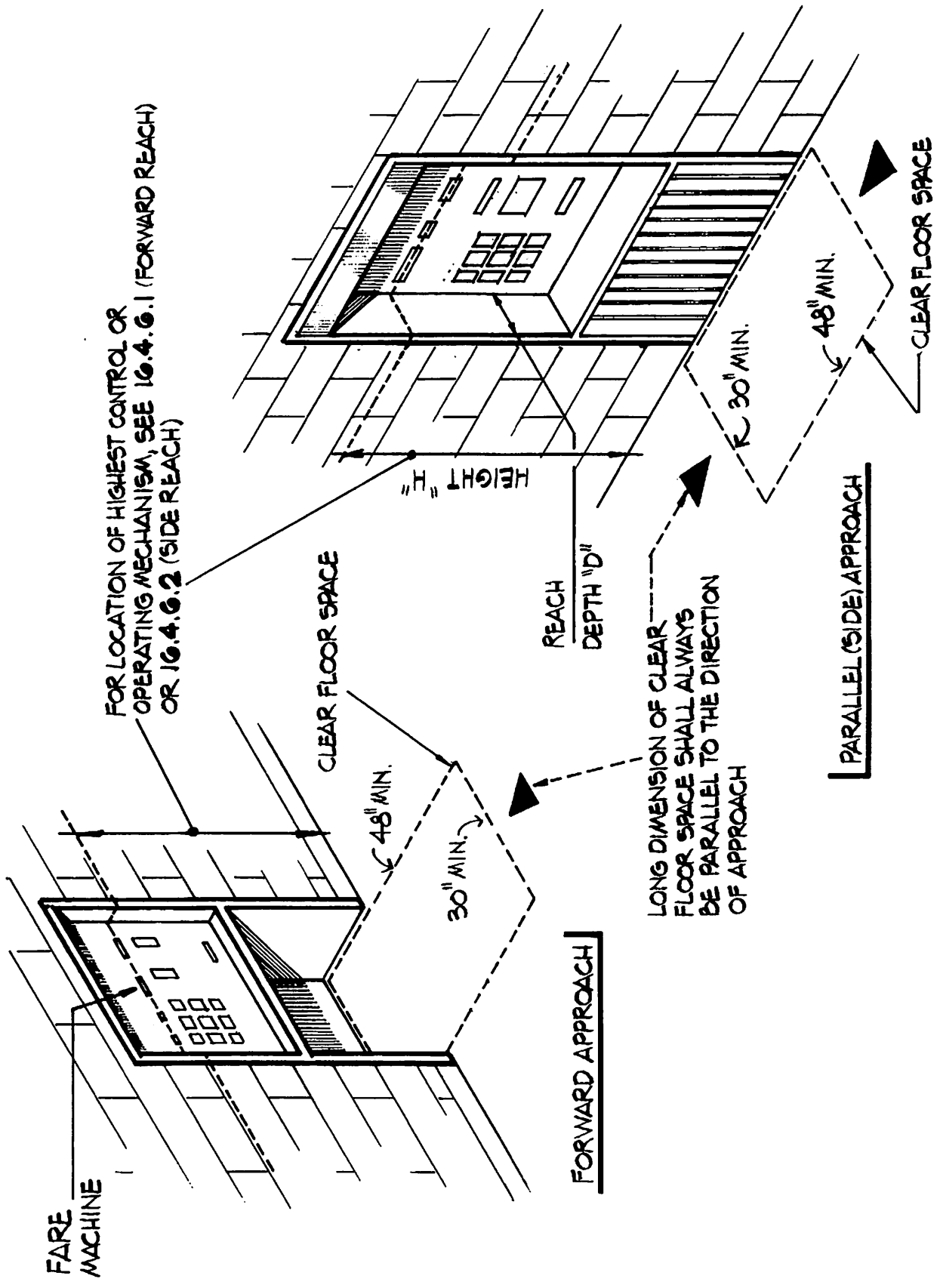
ADAAG
4.34.3(3)
[FR 7/15/93]

24.3.8.1.7 Instructions and all information for use of a fare device shall be made accessible to, and independently usable by, persons with vision impairments. (See, also, the NOTE following 16.4.7.1.)

ADAAG 10.3.1(1) =
4.34.5
[FR 7/25/93]

24.3.8.1.8 If bins are provided for trash paper, used tickets, etc., then a minimum of one at each accessible fare device shall comply with 16.4.8.

ADAAG 10.3.1(7) =
4.34.3(4)-[FR 7/15/93]



24.3.8.1 - FARE MACHINES

24.3.8.2 GATES

24.3.8.2.1 If entry/exit gates are provided, then they shall have a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening.

ADAAG
10.3.1(7)

24.3.8.2.2 Gates shall comply with 7.3.1 and 7.9. Gates shall have a smooth, continuous surface extending from 2 inches to 27 inches (50 mm to 685 mm) above the finished floor.

ADAAG
10.3.1(7)

24.3.8.3 TICKETING AREAS

24.3.8.3.1 Ticketing areas shall be located on an accessible route. A disabled person shall be able to obtain a ticket and check baggage in compliance with the applicable requirements of 26.2.

ADAAG
10.3.1(18)

24.3.8.4 ACCESS TO BAGGAGE CHECK-IN AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS

*24.3.8.4.1 If baggage check-in and retrieval systems are provided, then they shall be located on an accessible route. There shall be a minimum of one 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space located immediately adjacent to the unit. *If more than one unit is provided, then each such unit shall have a minimum of one clear floor space.*

ADAAG
10.3.1(19)

24.3.8.4.2 If access to the check-in and/or retrieval system is through a security barrier, then openings in the barrier shall have a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum clear width. Doors or gates within the barrier shall comply with Chapter 7 or 24.3.8.2, as applicable.

Derived From:
ADAAG 10.3.1(19),
4.13

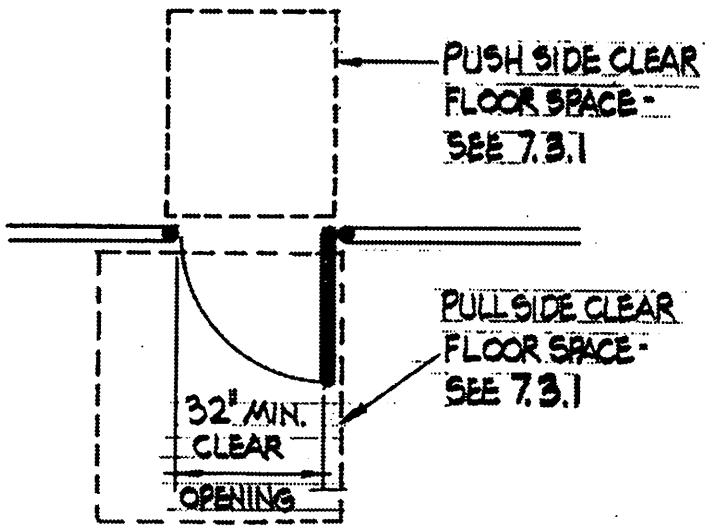
24.3.9 DETECTABLE WARNINGS

24.3.9.1 Platform edges bordering a drop-off of any height that are not protected by platform screens or guard rails shall be equipped with a detectable warning strip having a 24 inches (610 mm) width extending the entire platform length.

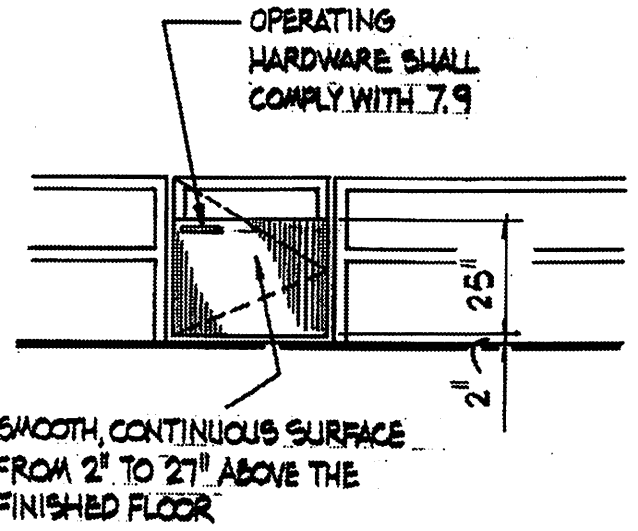
ADAAG 10.3.1(8);
Use Of Domes Not
Suspended:
FR 4/12/94 At 17445

24.3.9.2 The detectable warning shall comply with the applicable requirements of 19.2.

Cross-Reference

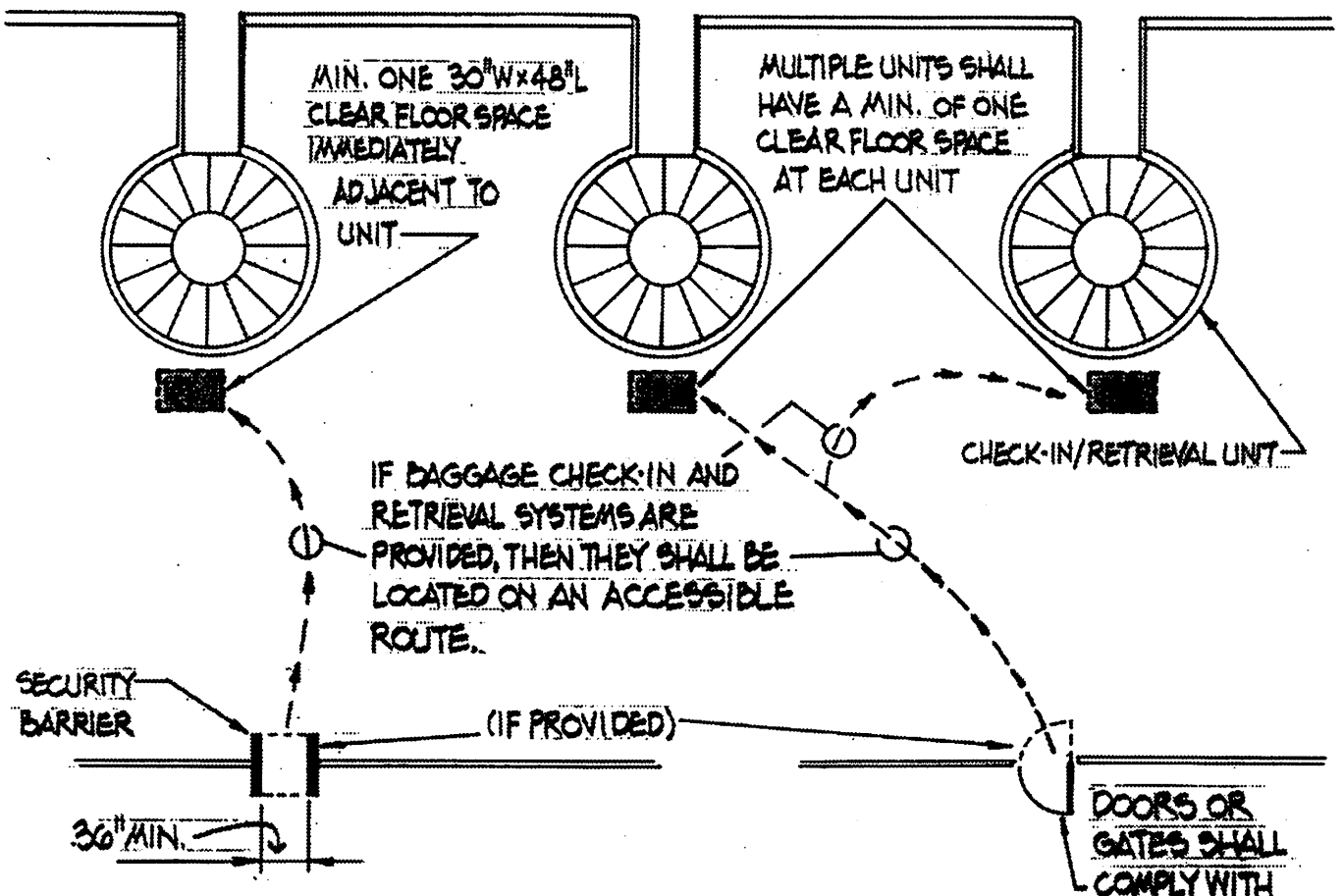


PLAN



ELEVATION

24.3.8.2 - GATES



24.3.8.4 - ACCESS TO BAGGAGE CHECK-IN AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS

24.3.10 PLATFORM/VEHICLE FLOOR LEVELS AND HORIZONTAL SEPARATION

24.3.10.1 The vertical difference plus-or-minus between the platform elevation and the vehicle floor shall be measured when the vehicle is at rest under normal passenger load. The horizontal gap shall be measured when the vehicle is stationary. **ADAAG 10.3.1(9)**

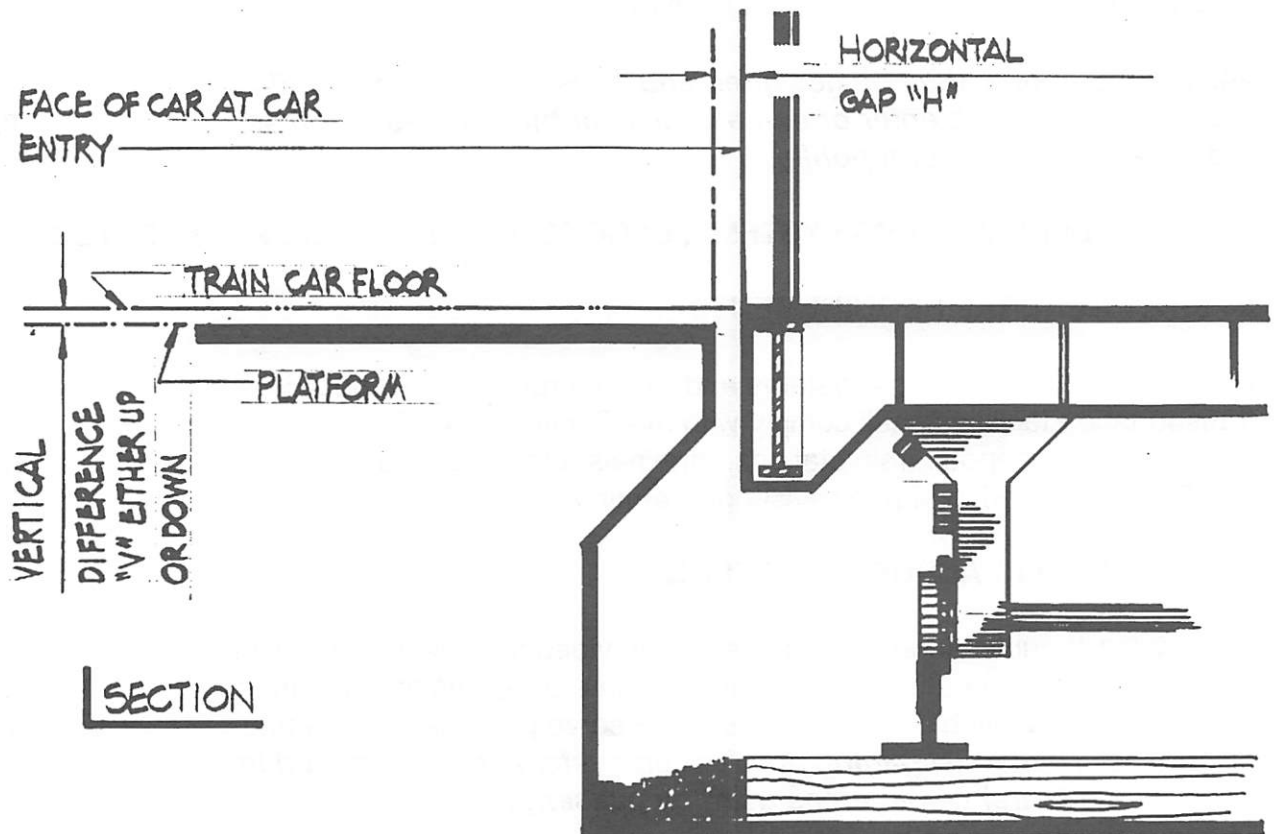
24.3.10.2 For commuter rail, high speed rail, inter-city rail, light rail, monorail systems, or rapid rail systems the vertical difference shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) maximum and the horizontal gap shall be 3 inches (75 mm) maximum. For existing vehicles operating in new stations the vertical difference shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum. **ADAAG 10.3.1(9)**
Exception 1

24.3.10.3 For slow-moving, AGT ("people mover") systems the vertical difference shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum and the horizontal gap shall be 1 inch (25 mm) maximum. If an AGT is operated as a light or high speed rail system, then the vertical difference and horizontal gap shall comply with 24.3.10.2. **USDoT: 1192.173(b), 38.173(b)**
AGT: 1192.173(d), 38.173(d)

24.3.10.4 If commuter rail, intercity rail, light rail, rapid rail, or high speed rail systems operate retrofitted vehicles in new stations, then the vertical difference shall be 2 inches (50 mm) maximum at fifty percent (50%) of full passenger load and the horizontal gap shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum. **USDoT:**
Rapid Rail....38.53(d)(3)....1192.53(d)(3)
Light Rail.....38.73(d)(3)....1192.73(d)(3)
Commuter Rail.....38.93(d)(4)....1192.93(d)(4)
Intercity Rail.....38.113(d)(4)..1192.113(d)(4)

24.3.10.5 In light rail, commuter rail and inter-city rail systems, if the vertical differences between platform/vehicle floor levels and horizontal gap cannot be maintained due to operational or structural necessity (or both), then the requirements of 24.3.10.2 and 24.3.10.4 shall be satisfied by the use of mini-high platforms, car-borne or platform-mounted lifts, ramps, bridge plates, or similar manually deployed devices that provide compliance with those Paragraphs. **ADAAG 10.3.1(9), Exception 2**

(NOTE: The term "...operational...necessity" applies to the situation when freight trains share the same track with commuter rail systems. Since the different systems frequently use vehicles [i.e., train cars] having dissimilar dimensions and clearance requirements, the larger of the two must be the governing factor in platform design. The term "...structural necessity..." describes a situation where a platform must meet certain requirements that cannot be controlled by the designer [e.g., certain existing conditions may require that a curved platform be constructed which, by geometry, dictates that the horizontal gap will be much greater than the maximum dimensions allowed by this Code]. In situations such as described herein, this Paragraph requires that access to the cars be provided and that the methods used will provide the same maximum vertical difference and horizontal gap as required for straight platforms.) **Derived From: FR 9/6/91 At 45510**



PLATFORM/VEHICLE FLOOR LEVELS AND HORIZONTAL SEPARATION					
RAIL SYSTEM			RETROFITTED VEHICLES OPERATING IN NEW STATIONS		
TYPES	MAXIMUM "V" (*)	MAXIMUM "H" (*)	MAXIMUM "V" (*)	MAXIMUM "H"	
Commuter	5/8 Inch	3 Inches	2 Inches	4 Inches	
High Speed	5/8 Inch	3 Inches	2 Inches	4 Inches	
Inter-City	5/8 Inch	3 Inches	2 Inches	4 Inches	
Light	5/8 Inch	3 Inches	2 Inches	4 Inches	
Monorail	5/8 Inch	3 Inches	-----	-----	
Rapid	5/8 Inch	3 Inches	2 Inches	4 Inches	
Existing Vehicles					
In New Stations	1-1/2 Inches	3 Inches			
	(* At Rest Under Normal Passenger Load)	(* When Vehicle Is Stationary)	(* At 50% Full Passenger Load)		
AGT ("People Mover")	1/2 Inch	1 Inch			
AGT Operated					
As Light Or High Speed Rail	5/8 Inch	3 Inches			

24.3.10-PLATFORM/VEHICLE FLOOR LEVELS AND HORIZONTAL SEPARATION (ILLUSTRATION SHOWS 24.3.10.1-24.3.10.4; SEE TEXT FOR 24.3.10.5)

24.3.11 BOARDING/DEBARKING LOCATIONS

***24.3.11.1** *Stations shall be designed and constructed so as to allow disabled persons to enter or exit a vehicle at the same location as that used by the general public.*

ADAAG
10.3.1(10)

24.3.12 PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEMS, CLOCKS, AND TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

24.3.12.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

24.3.12.1.1 Public address systems and clocks provided in all public transportation facilities shall comply with this Section. For TDD's required in bus depots, train stations, terminals, etc., see 24.3.12.4. For TDD's required in airport passenger terminals, see 24.4.5.

From
ADAAG
10.3.1

24.3.12.2 PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEMS

***24.3.12.2.1** If public address systems are provided to convey information the public, then a means of conveying the same or equivalent information shall be made available via visual means to serve persons with hearing disabilities. *The visual paging/notification system shall be placed in a visible location(s) within areas used by passengers.*

ADAAG
10.3.1(14),
10.4.1(6)

24.3.12.2.2 The requirement for a visual paging/notification system may be satisfied through the use of video monitors, crawling message displays, conventional signage, computer technology, etc. conveying the same information as transmitted by an audio paging system.

ADAAG
10.4.1(6)

(NOTE: An Assistive Listening System [see 22.4] may be used in conjunction with a visual system; however, an Assistive Listening System by itself shall not be acceptable in determining compliance with the performance standard of this sub-Section.)

FR 9/6/91 At
45512

24.3.12.3 CLOCKS

24.3.12.3.1 If clocks are provided for use by the general public, then the clock face shall be uncluttered and clearly visible.

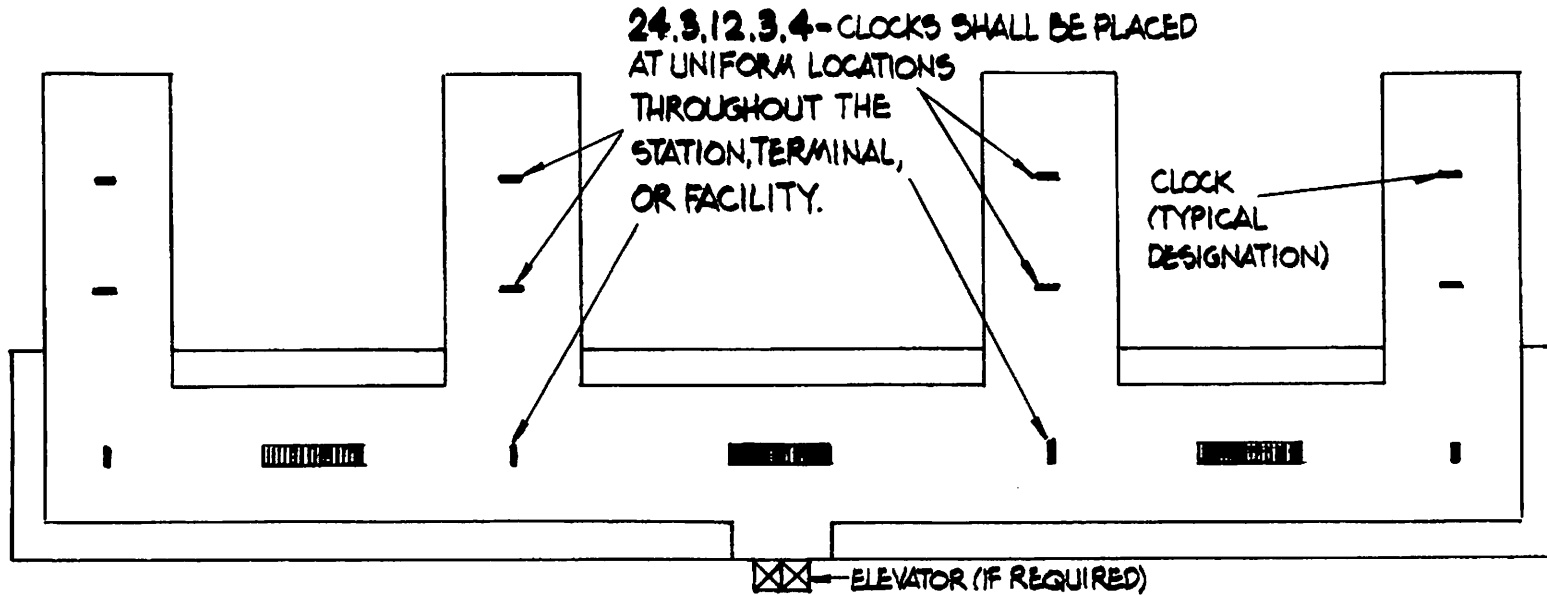
24.3.12.3.2 Hands, numerals and/or digits shall contrast with the background on which they are mounted either by light figures on a dark background, or dark figures on a light background.

CLOCKS:
ADAAG

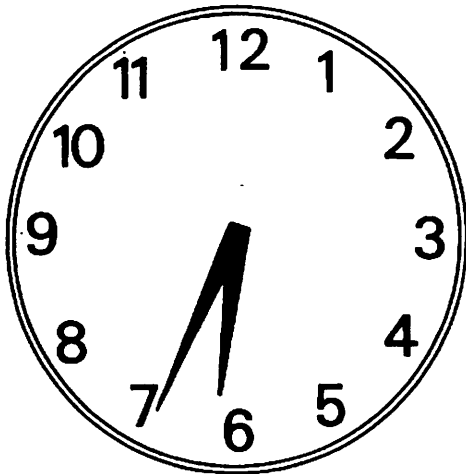
24.3.12.3.3 If clocks are mounted overhead, then the numerals and/or digits shall comply with 18.2.2.

10.3.1(15),
10.4.1(7)

***24.3.12.3.4** *Clocks shall be placed at uniform locations throughout the station, terminal, or facility.*



24.3.12.3.1- IF CLOCKS ARE PROVIDED FOR USE BY THE GENERAL PUBLIC, THEN THE CLOCK FACE SHALL BE UNCLUTTERED AND CLEARLY VISIBLE.



24.3.12.3.2- HANDS, NUMERALS AND/OR DIGITS SHALL CONTRAST WITH THE BACKGROUND ON WHICH THEY ARE MOUNTED EITHER BY LIGHT FIGURES ON A DARK BACKGROUND, OR DARK FIGURES ON A LIGHT BACKGROUND.

24.3.12.3.3- IF CLOCKS ARE MOUNTED OVERHEAD, THEN THE NUMERALS AND/OR DIGITS SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.2.2.

24.3.12.3- CLOCKS



ALTERNATE STYLE CLOCK

24.3.12.4 TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

24.3.12.4.1 Text telephones shall comply with 14.3.2.1 or 14.3.2.2 and 14.3.2.3, and shall be provided at the following locations:

(1) If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a transit facility, then a minimum of one interior public TDD shall be provided in the station.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(12)(a)**

(NOTE: As used in this Paragraph, "transit facility" is defined as a closed structure whose primary function is to facilitate access to and from a transportation system which has scheduled stops at the structure. This definition does not cover open structures since a TDD will not operate properly if exposed to weather, nor does it include a structure whose primary purpose is other than providing transportation services.)

**USDOT
37.3;
FR 9/6/91
At 45586**

(2) If four or more public pay telephones serve a particular entrance to a rail station and at least one is in an interior location, then a minimum of one interior public TDD shall be provided to serve that entrance.

**ADAAG
10.3.1(12)(b)**

(3) If all public pay telephones in a multi-entrance facility are placed in one central location, then only one interior public TDD shall be required at that location.

**FR 9/6/91 At
45511**

(4) If more than one entrance is provided and each is served by three or less public pay telephones, then only one interior public TDD is required in the facility.

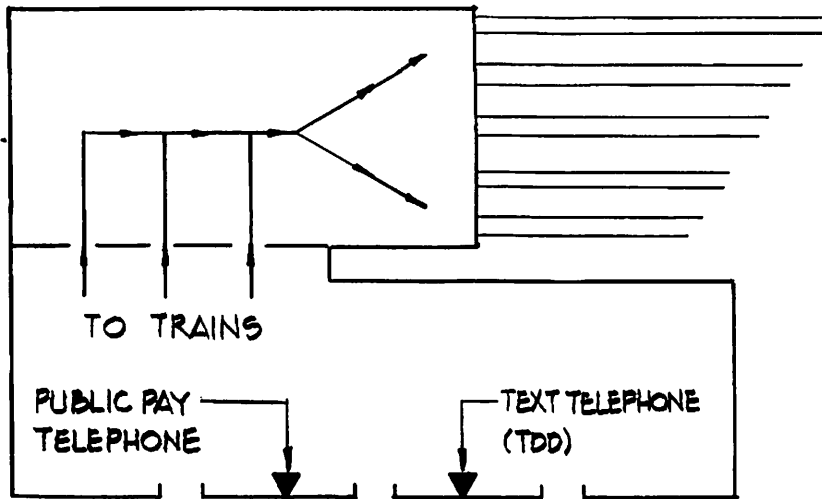
**FR 9/6/91 At
45511**

Compliance with this Paragraph shall constitute compliance with 14.3.1.

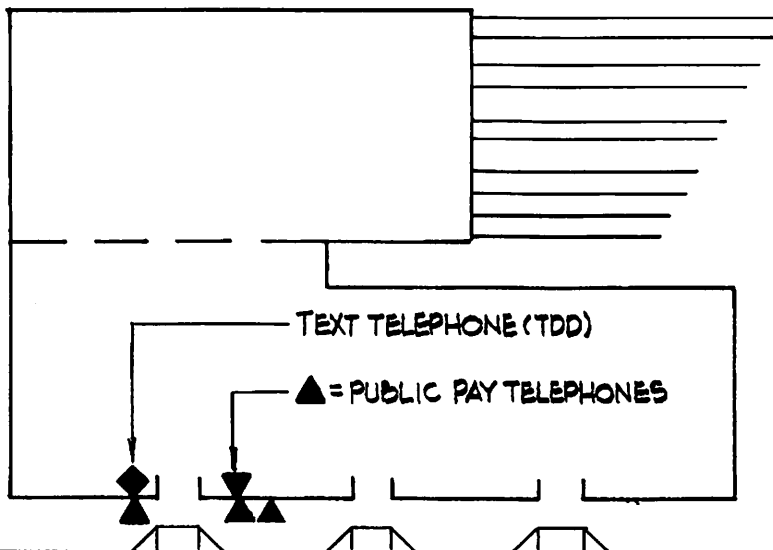
ADAAG 10.3.1(12)(b)

24.3.12.4.2 The signage requirements of 14.3.3 shall be applicable to this Section.

**FR 9/6/91 At
45511**

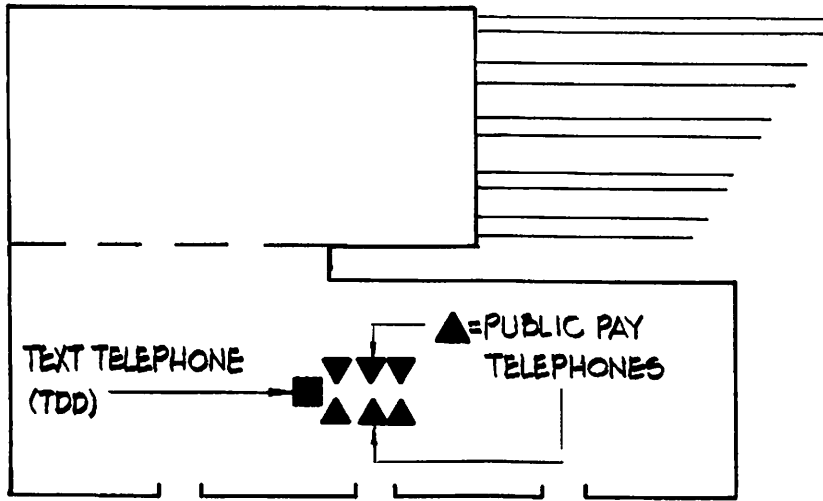


24.3.12.4.1 (1) - IF AN INTERIOR PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONE IS PROVIDED IN A TRANSIT FACILITY, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD SHALL BE PROVIDED IN THE STATION. (SEE, ALSO, THE TEXT NOTE FOLLOWING THIS PARAGRAPH.)

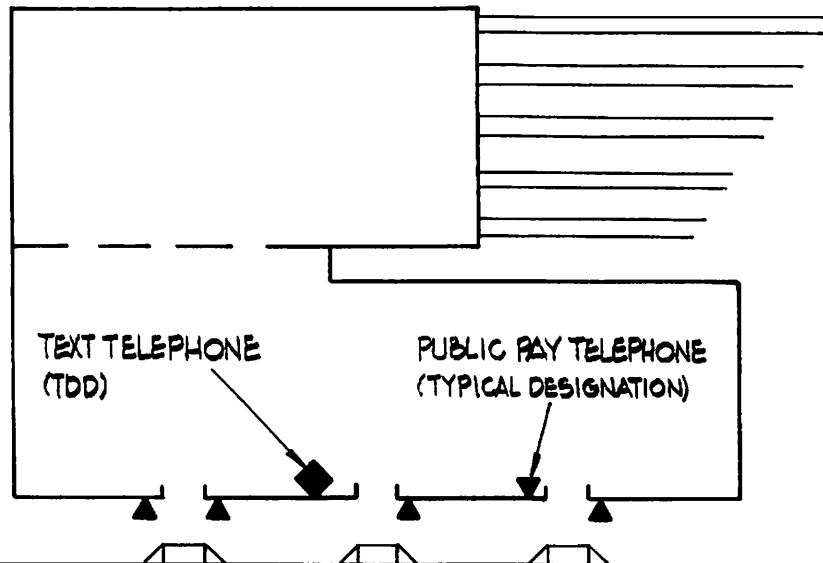


24.3.12.4.1 (2) - IF 4 OR MORE PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES SERVE A PARTICULAR ENTRANCE TO A RAIL STATION AND AT LEAST ONE IS IN AN INTERIOR LOCATION, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD SHALL BE PROVIDED TO SERVE THAT ENTRANCE.

24.3.12.4-TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)-PART I



24.3.12.4.1(3)- IF ALL PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES IN A MULTI-ENTRANCE FACILITY ARE PLACED IN ONE CENTRAL LOCATION, THEN ONLY ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD SHALL BE REQUIRED AT THAT LOCATION.



24.3.12.4.1(4)- IF MORE THAN ONE ENTRANCE IS PROVIDED AND EACH IS SERVED BY 3 OR LESS PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES, THEN ONLY ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD IS REQUIRED IN THE FACILITY.

24.3.12.4-TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)-PART 2

24.4 AIRPORTS

24.4.1 CIRCULATION PATH

*24.4.1.1 *The circulation path leading to, into, and through the facility shall coincide with the route used by the general public and shall lead to all areas necessary for use of the transportation facility.*

From:
ADAAG 10.4.1(1),
10.4.1(2)

24.4.2 TICKETING AREAS

24.4.2.1 Ticketing areas shall be located on an accessible route. A disabled person shall be able to obtain a ticket and check baggage in compliance with the applicable requirements of 26.2.

ADAAG
10.4.1(3)

24.4.3 SECURITY SYSTEMS

24.4.3.1 An accessible route shall be provided at each single-station or multiple-station fixed security barrier.

ADAAG 10.4.1(8)
1/13/98

(NOTE: A multiple-station fixed security barrier is two or more barriers immediately adjacent to each other at a single location.)

24.4.3.2 If security barriers use equipment such as metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices which cannot be made accessible, then an accessible route shall be provided adjacent to all such screening devices. The circulation path shall permit persons with disabilities to maintain visual contact with their personal items in the same manner as the general public.

ADAAG 10.4.1(8)
1/13/98

*24.4.3.3 All doors and doorways leading to, and through, security barriers shall comply with Chapter 7. Gates shall comply with 24.3.8.2. *Doors and gates operated only by security personnel shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 and 7.5 (if applicable), and 7.8.*

ADAAG 10.4.1(8),
Exception 1/13/98

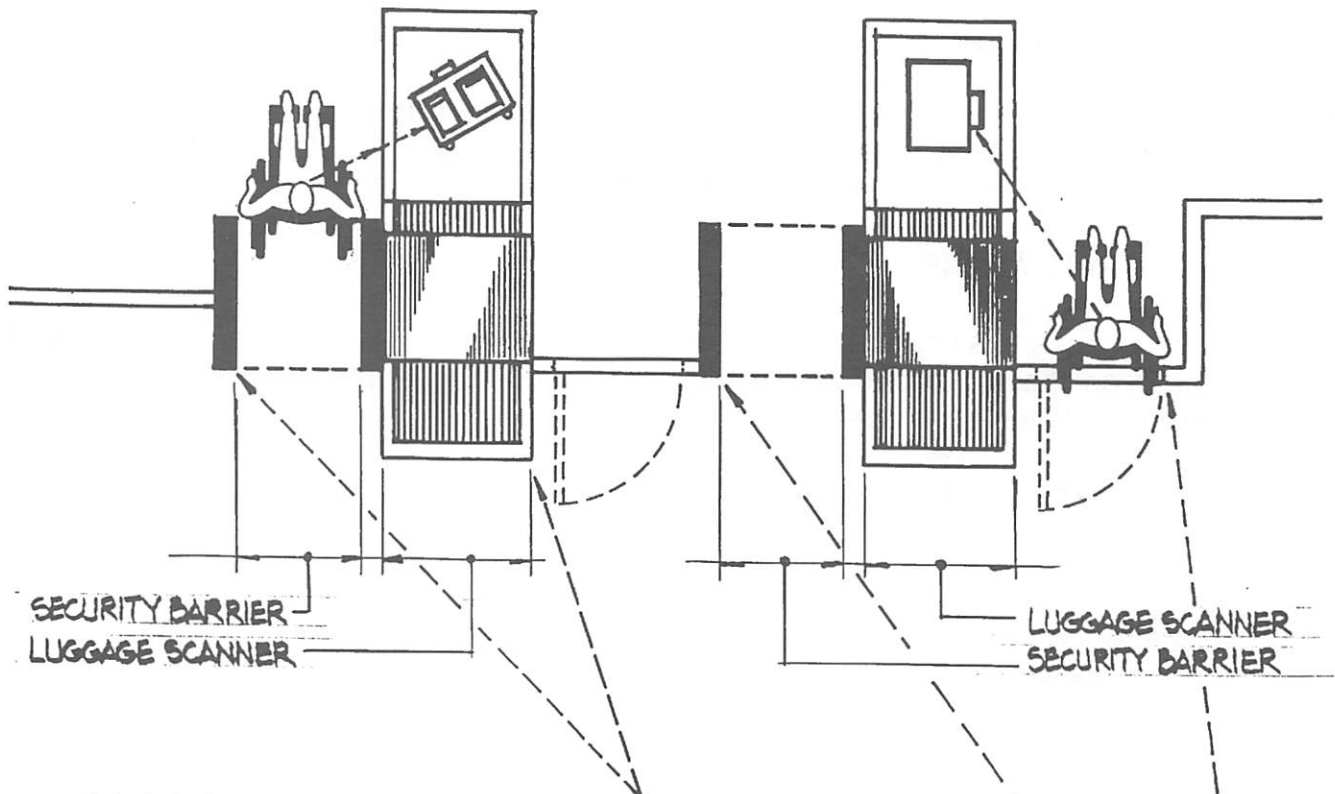
24.4.4 GATES AND BAGGAGE CHECK-IN AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS

24.4.4.1 For entry/exit gates, see 24.3.8.2.

ADAAG 10.4.1(5)

24.4.4.2 For access to baggage check-in and retrieval systems, see 24.3.8.4

ADAAG 10.4.1(5)



24.4.3.1- AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE SHALL BE PROVIDED AT EACH SINGLE-STATION OR MULTIPLE-STATION FIXED SECURITY BARRIER.
 (NOTE: A MULTIPLE-STATION FIXED SECURITY BARRIER IS TWO OR MORE BARRIERS IMMEDIATELY ADJACENT TO EACH OTHER AT A SINGLE LOCATION.)

24.4.3.2- IF SECURITY BARRIERS USE EQUIPMENT SUCH AS METAL DETECTORS, FLOUROSCOPES, OR OTHER SIMILAR DEVICES WHICH CANNOT BE MADE ACCESSIBLE, THEN AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE SHALL BE PROVIDED ADJACENT TO ALL SUCH SCREENING DEVICES. THE CIRCULATION PATH SHALL PERMIT PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES TO MAINTAIN VISUAL CONTACT WITH THEIR PERSONAL ITEMS IN THE SAME MANNER AS THE GENERAL PUBLIC.

24.4.3-SECURITY SYSTEMS

24.4.5 TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

24.4.5.1 If public pay telephones are provided and at least one (1) is at an interior location, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided. The TDD installation shall comply with 14.3.2.1 or 14.3.2.2, and 14.3.2.3.

ADAAG 10.4.1(4)

24.4.5.2 In addition to 24.4.5.1, if four or more public pay telephones are located in any of the following areas, then a minimum of one (1) public TDD shall also be provided at that location:

- (1) A main terminal outside the security areas;
- (2) A concourse within the security areas; or
- (3) A baggage claim area in a terminal.

**ADAAG 10.4.1(4)(a),
10.4.1(4)(b),
10.4.1(4)(c)**

End Of

Compliance with this Paragraph shall constitute compliance with 14.3.1.

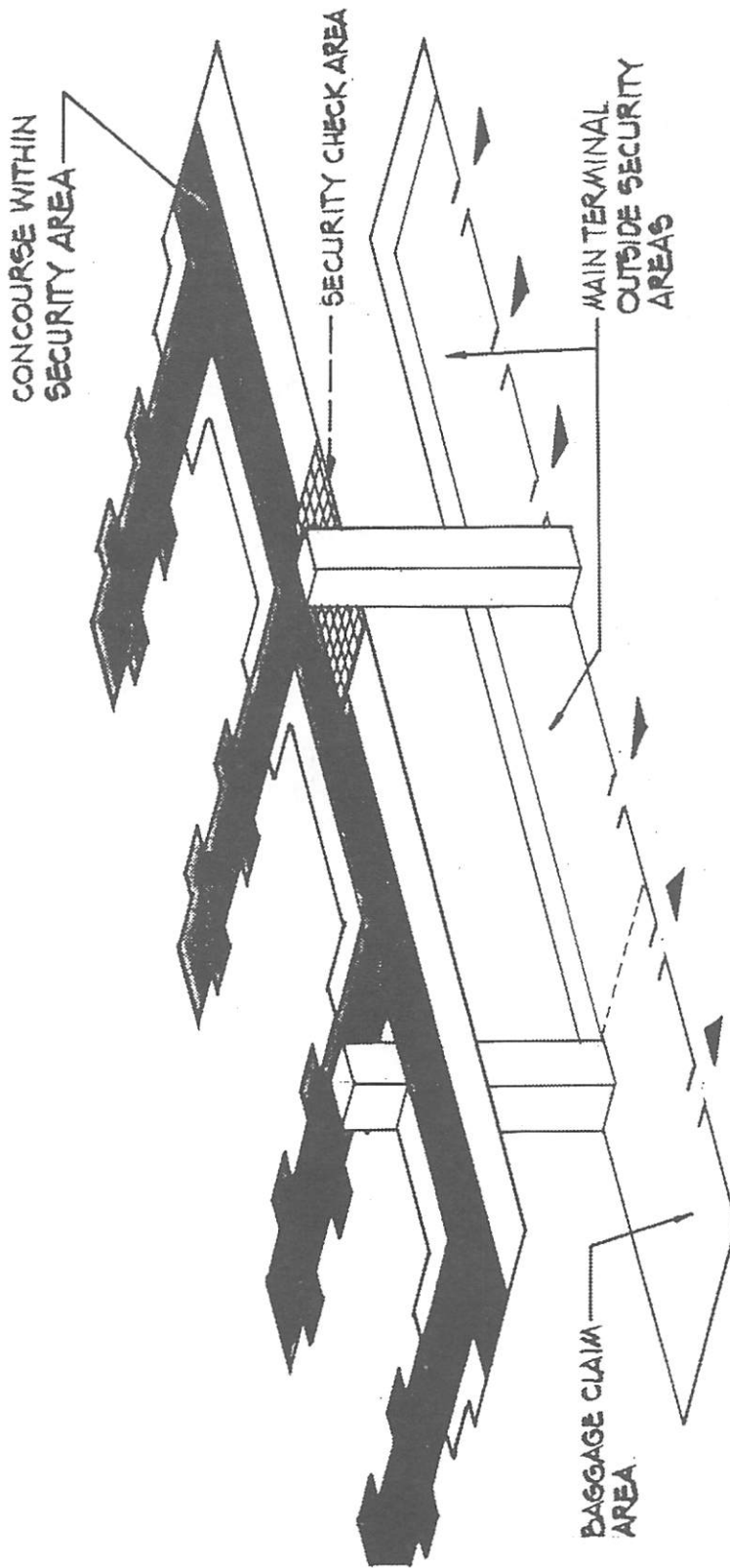
ADAAG 10.4.1(4)

24.4.5.3 The signage requirements of 14.3.3.1 and 14.3.3.2 only shall be applicable to this Section.

(NOTE: Due to the size and distances between airport passenger terminals, compliance with 14.3.3.3 is not required.)

**Access Board (Via
Telephone) 2/12/97**

24.4.5.1 - IF PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES ARE PROVIDED AND AT LEAST ONE IS AT AN INTERIOR LOCATION, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INTERIOR PUBLIC TDD (TEXT TELEPHONE) SHALL BE PROVIDED. THE TDD INSTALLATION SHALL COMPLY WITH 14.3.2.1 OR 14.3.2.2, AND 14.3.2.3.



24.4.5.2 - IN ADDITION TO 24.4.5.1, IF 4 OR MORE PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES ARE LOCATED IN ANY OF THE FOLLOWING AREAS, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE PUBLIC TDD (TEXT TELEPHONE) SHALL ALSO BE PROVIDED AT THAT LOCATION:

1. A MAIN TERMINAL OUTSIDE THE SECURITY AREAS;
2. A CONCOURSE WITHIN THE SECURITY AREAS; OR
3. A BAGGAGE CLAIM AREA IN A TERMINAL.

COMPLIANCE WITH THIS PARAGRAPH SHALL CONSTITUTE COMPLIANCE WITH 14.3.1.
24.4.5 - TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

**CHAPTER 25
LIBRARIES**

25.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

25.1.1 All library public areas, reading and study areas, bookstacks, reference rooms, reserve areas, and special facilities or collections shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code. **ADAAG 8.1**

***25.1.2** *All fixed seating, fixed tables, and all reading or study carrels shall comply with 21.2.1 and 21.3.* Vol. I-C, 7.1(b);
[ADAAG 8.2]

25.2 BOOK STACKS

25.2.1 The clear width between book stacks shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Vol. I-C, 7.4(a);
ADAAG 8.5

25.2.2 Shelf height in bookstack areas shall not be restricted. Vol. I-C, 7.4(a);
ADAAG 8.5

25.3 CARD CATALOGS AND MAGAZINE DISPLAYS

25.3.1 CARD CATALOGS

25.3.1.1 Card catalogs shall have a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum aisle width. Catalog bases shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the finished floor. Vol. I-C, 7.4(c);
ADAAG 8.4,
Fig. 55

25.3.1.2 The tops of card catalogs shall be located above the finished floor in compliance with either of the following:

<u>TYPE OF APPROACH</u>	<u>MAXIMUM HEIGHT TO TOP OF CATALOG</u>	
Forward . . . . .	.48 inches (1220 mm)	ADAAG 4.2.5
Parallel (Side) . . . . .	.54 inches (1370 mm)	ADAAG 4.2.6

***25.3.1.3** *On all floors where electronic catalogs (e.g., computers, high-speed scanning devices, etc.) are provided for public use, a minimum of one such device on each floor shall be located on a table, carrel, shelf or other such furniture or equipment that complies with 21.2.1 and 21.3. The accessible device shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility which shall be displayed in a readily visible location.* Derived
From:
Vol. I-C, 7.2;
ADAAG 4.32
And 4.30.7

25.3.2 MAGAZINE DISPLAYS

25.3.2.1 Magazine displays shall have a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum clear aisle width. **ADAAG 8.4,**

25.3.2.2 For all magazine displays the highest shelf or ledge above the finished floor shall be:

ADAAG 8.4

- (1) 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a forward approach; or
- (2) 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum for a parallel (i.e., side) approach.

ADAAG 4.2
(Reach Range)

25.4 CHECK-OUT AREAS

***25.4.1** Book check-out and return areas shall comply with 26.2.1. *If both check-out and return functions are accommodated at the same location, then only one section of the counter is required to comply with this Paragraph.*

ADAAG 8.3,
7.2(1)

***25.4.1.1** *If other functions in addition to check-out and return are accommodated in separate areas of the counter, then each separate function shall have a counter section in compliance with 26.2.1.*

ADAAG 7.2(1)

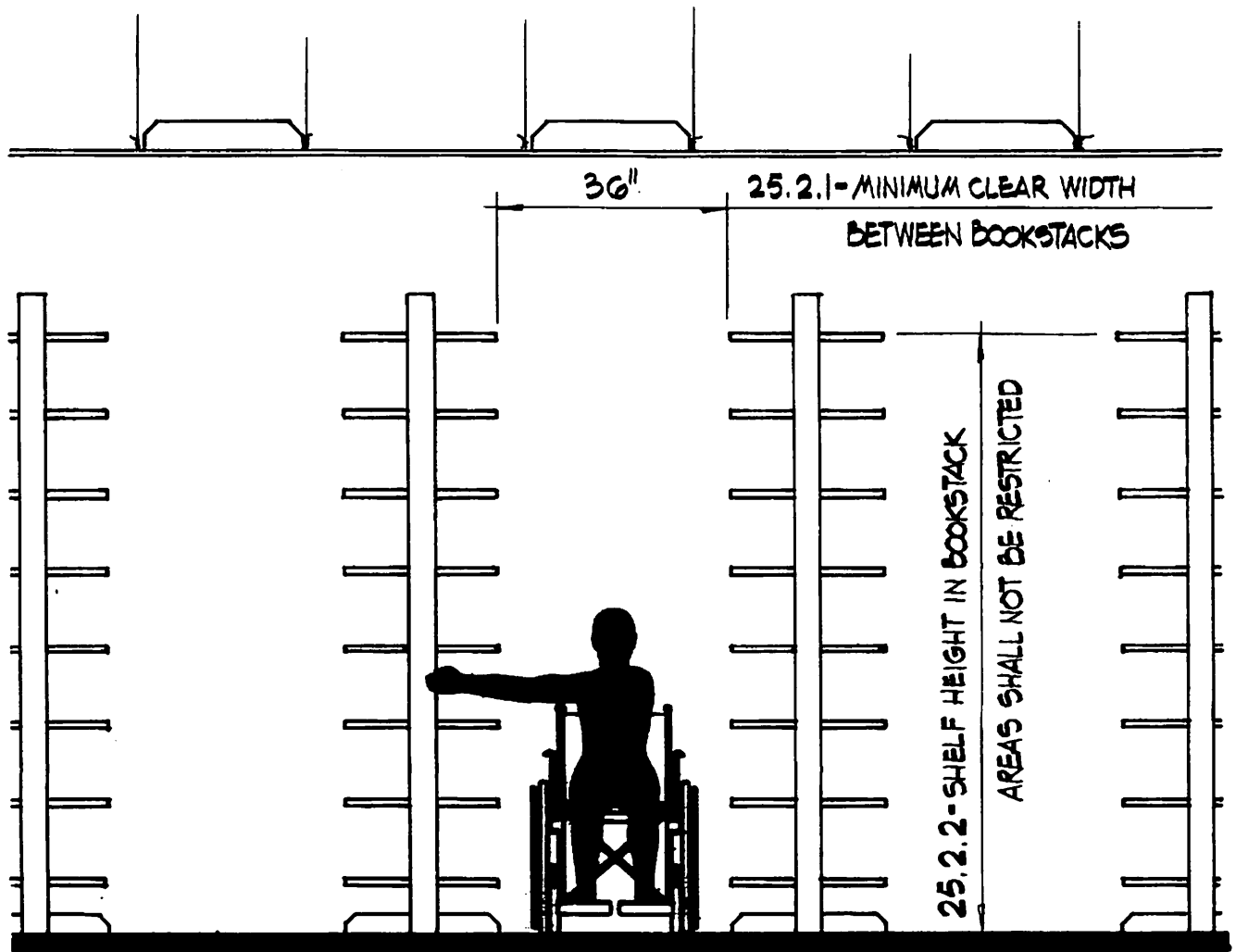
25.5 TRAFFIC CONTROL

25.5.1 Traffic control and/or book security gates shall have a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening. Clear floor space shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.3. If the gate is manually operated, then the opening force and operating hardware shall comply with 7.6 and 7.9. For book security devices without gates the clear opening shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

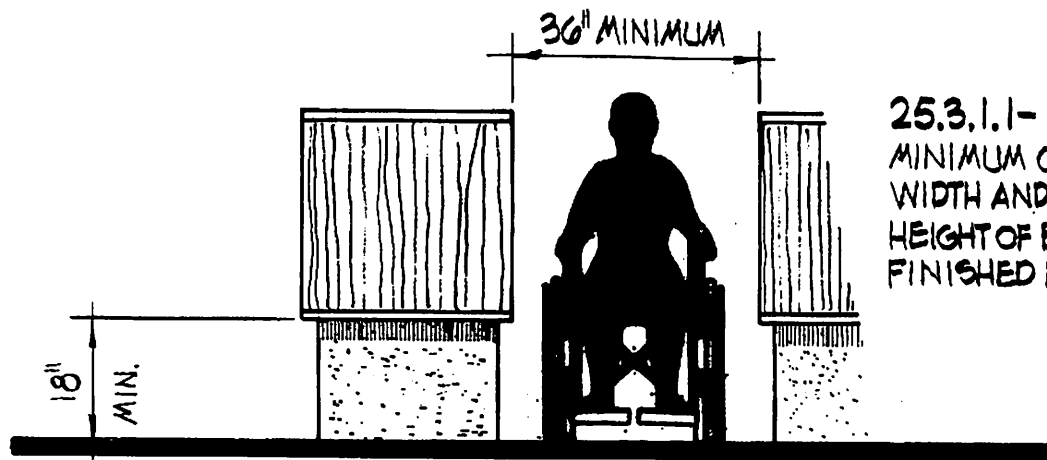
ADAAG 8.3

25.5.2 If entry and/or exit is by means of a turnstile, then an adjacent means of access in compliance with 7.2.4 shall be provided.

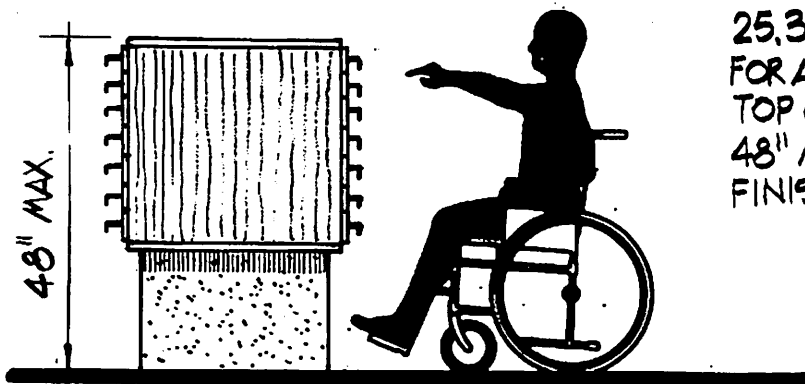
Cross-Reference



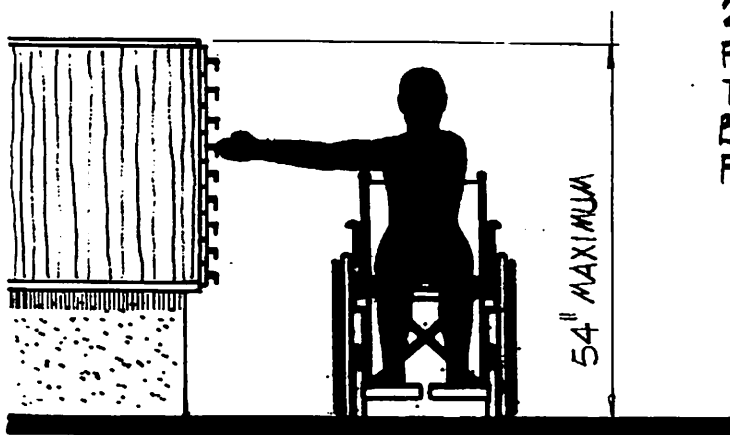
25.2- BOOK STACKS



25.3.1.1-
MINIMUM CLEAR AISLE
WIDTH AND MINIMUM
HEIGHT OF BASE ABOVE
FINISHED FLOOR.

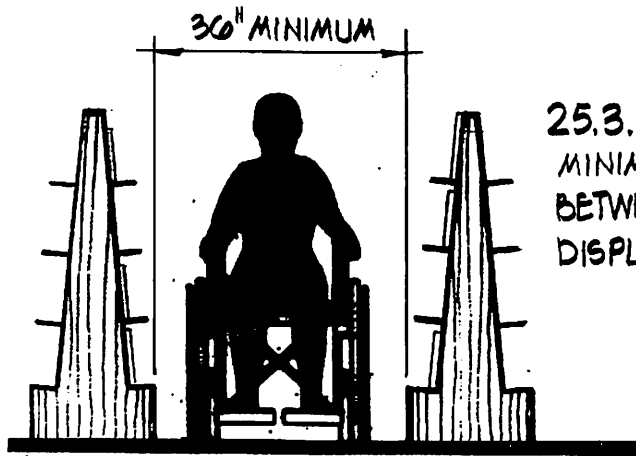


25.3.1.2-
FOR A FORWARD APPROACH THE
TOP OF CARD CATALOGS SHALL BE
48" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE
FINISHED FLOOR.

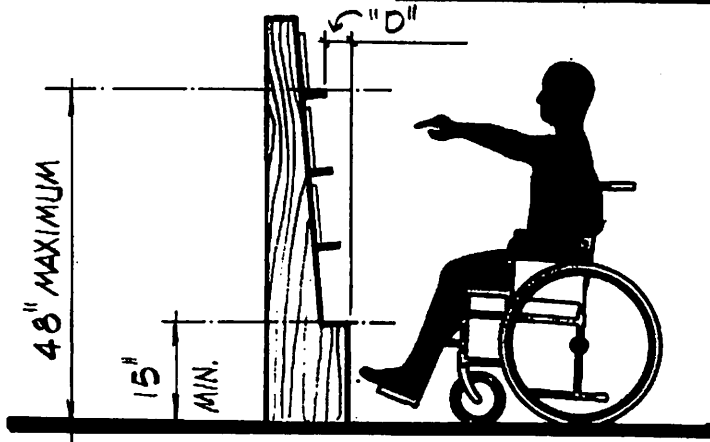


25.3.1.2-
FOR A PARALLEL (SIDE) APPROACH
THE TOPS OF CARD CATALOGS SHALL
BE 54" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE
FINISHED FLOOR.

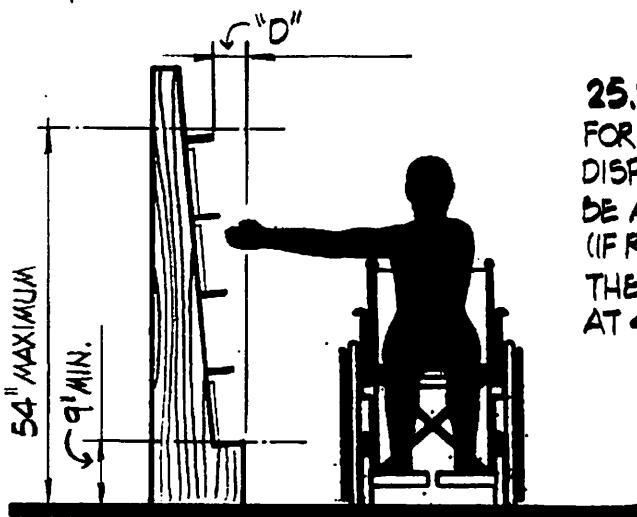
25.3.1- CARD CATALOGS



25.3.2.1-
MINIMUM CLEAR AISLE
BETWEEN MAGAZINE
DISPLAYS.

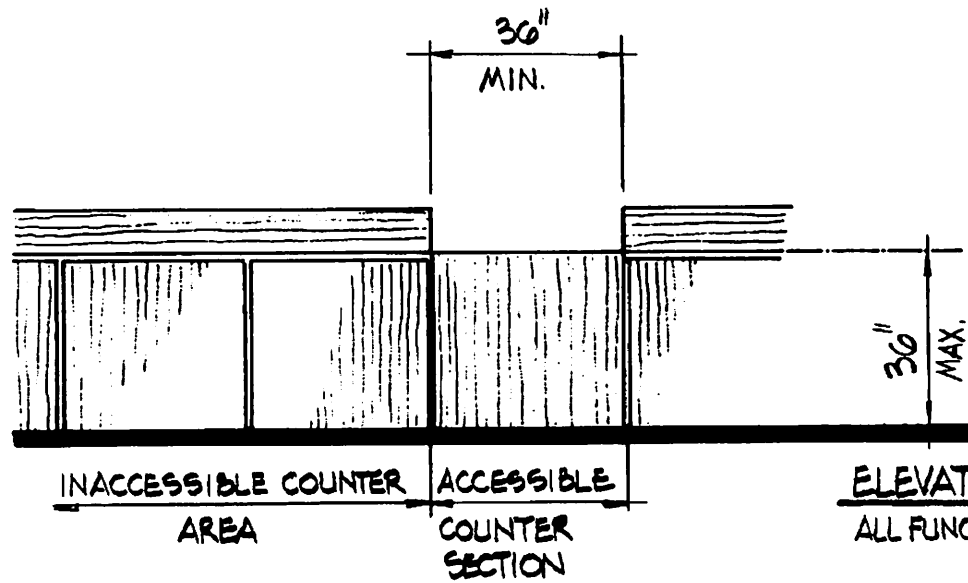


25.3.2.2(1)-
FOR A FORWARD APPROACH TO A
MAGAZINE DISPLAY THE HIGHEST
SHELF OR LEDGE SHALL BE AT
48" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE FINISHED
FLOOR.
(IF REACH DEPTH "D" IS 20" TO 25"
MAXIMUM, THEN THE HIGHEST SHELF
OR LEDGE SHALL BE AT 44")



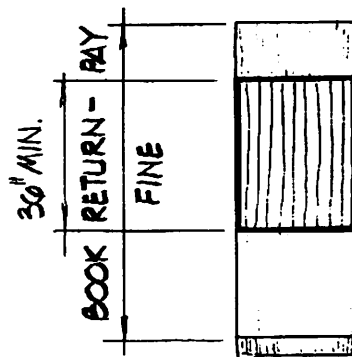
25.3.2.2(2)-
FOR A PARALLEL (SIDE) APPROACH TO A MAGAZINE
DISPLAY THE HIGHEST SHELF OR LEDGE SHALL
BE AT 54" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR.
(IF REACH DEPTH "D" EXCEEDS 10" UP TO 24" MAX.,
THEN THE HIGHEST SHELF OR LEDGE SHALL BE
AT 46")

25.3.2- MAGAZINE DISPLAYS



25.4.1 - BOOK CHECK-OUT AND RETURN AREAS SHALL COMPLY WITH 26.2.1. IF BOTH CHECK-OUT AND RETURN FUNCTIONS ARE ACCOMMODATED AT THE SAME LOCATION, THEN ONLY ONE SECTION OF THE COUNTER IS REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH THIS PARAGRAPH.

ALL FUNCTIONS OCCUR AT SINGLE LOCATION

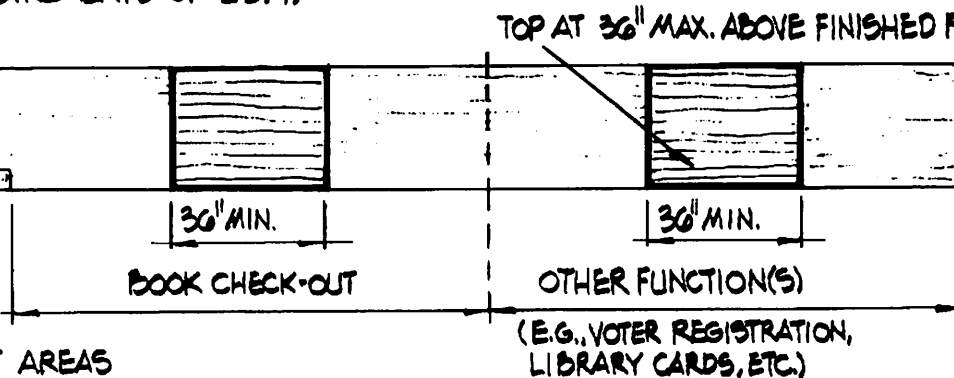


25.4.1.1 - IF OTHER FUNCTIONS IN ADDITION TO CHECK-OUT AND RETURN ARE ACCOMMODATED IN SEPARATE AREAS OF THE COUNTER, THEN EACH SEPARATE FUNCTION SHALL HAVE A COUNTER SECTION IN COMPLIANCE WITH 26.2.1.

(IN A MULTI-COUNTER FACILITY ALL COUNTERS SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 25.4)

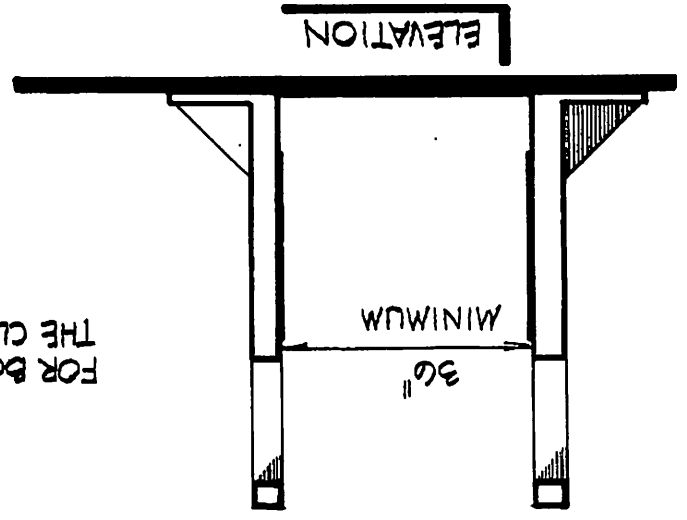
PLAN
COUNTER WITH MULTIPLE FUNCTIONS IN SEPARATE AREAS

25.4 - CHECK-OUT AREAS



25.5- TRAFFIC CONTROL

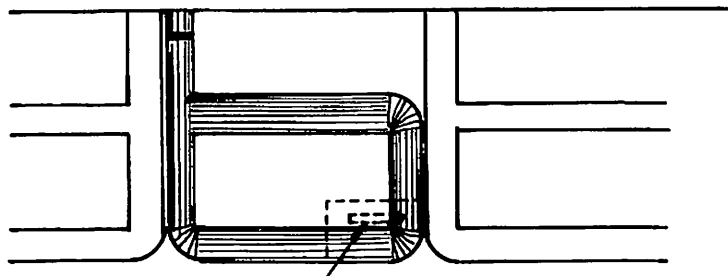
FOR BOOK SECURITY DEVICES WITHOUT GATES THE CLEAR OPENING SHALL BE 36" MINIMUM.



SECURITY GATE

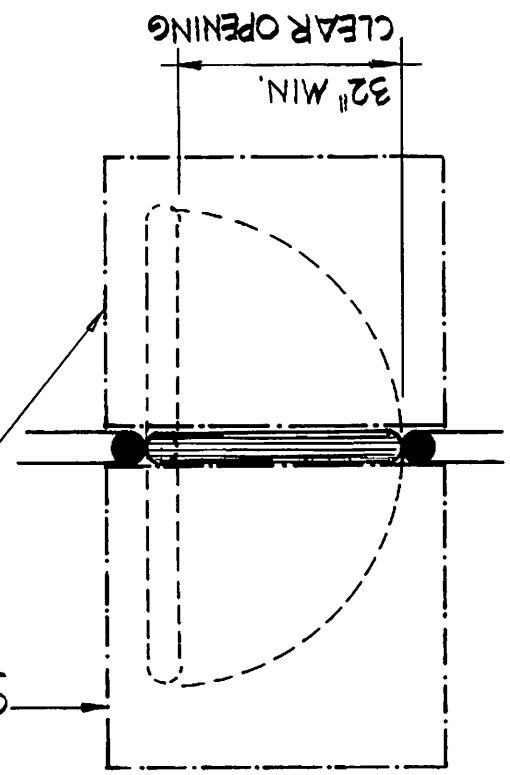
PLAN

ELEVATION



IF THE GATE IS MANUALLY OPERATED, THEN THE OPENING FORCE AND OPERATING HARDWARE SHALL COMPLY WITH 7.6 AND 7.9.

CLEAR FLOOR SPACE SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 7.3.



**CHAPTER 26
BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE**

26.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- *26.1.1 In addition to the applicable requirements of this Code, all areas wherein business transactions with the public are conducted shall comply with this Chapter. ADAAG 7.1

(NOTE: "...[B]usiness transactions..." as used herein describes the activity taking place and is not to be confused with "Business Occupancy-Group B" classification. An information counter in the lobby of the N.C. Museum of Art and the sales counter in the Museum Shop; obtaining a building permit from the local inspections department; and a sales counter in a department store are all locations in different occupancy classifications [A-Assembly, B-Business, and M-Mercantile, respectively]; however, the type of activity at each counter is essentially the same: interaction between the general public and employees for the purposes of disseminating information, providing services and/or receiving/disbursing or distributing goods.)

26.2 SALES/SERVICE COUNTERS, BANK TELLER STATIONS, INFORMATION COUNTERS, HOTEL REGISTRATION COUNTERS, BOX OFFICE TICKET COUNTERS, ETC.

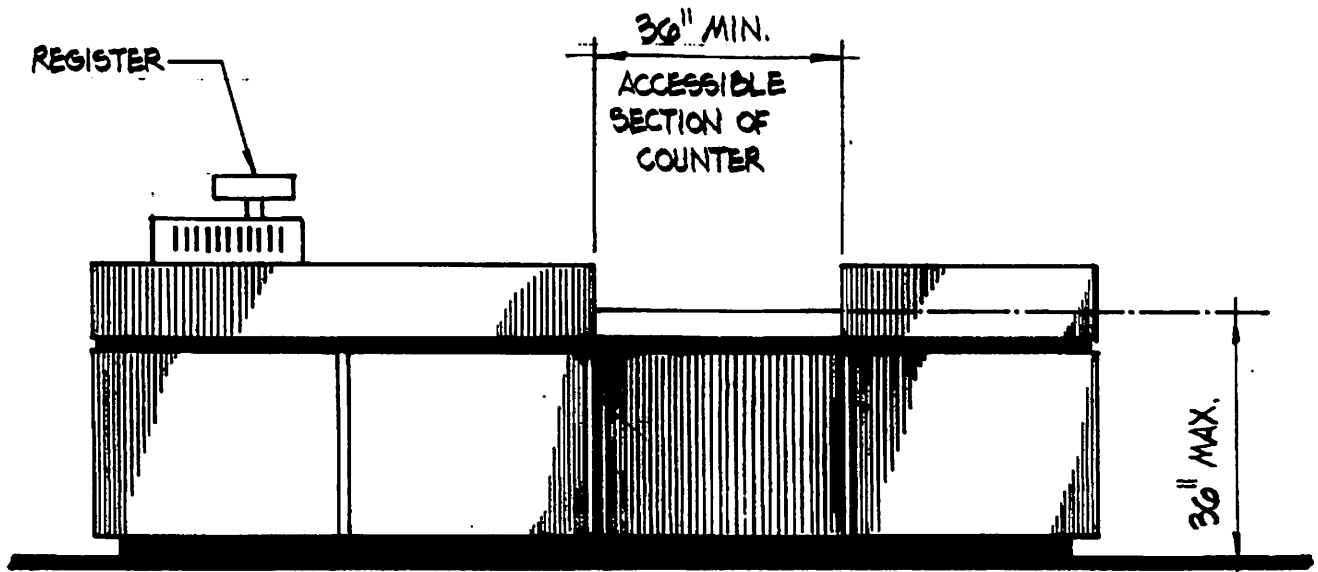
(NOTE: This Section refers to counters which do not have aisles and can be approached from any direction such as the point of sale counter in a department store or an information station in a museum.) Derived From
FR 7/26/91 At 35446

26.2.1 Counters with cash registers (e.g., department store, hobby shop, pharmacy, etc.) and counters without cash registers (e.g., bank teller stations, registration counter at a D.M.V. office, etc.) shall have an accessible section at each type of counter having a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum width and a 36 inches (915 mm) maximum height above the finished floor. All accessible sales and service counters shall be located on an accessible route and dispersed throughout the building or facility. ADAAG
7.2(1),
7.2(2)(i)

- *26.2.2 In addition to 26.2.1, if solid partitions or security glazing is used to separate the general public and employees (e.g., a movie theater box office, bank teller stations, driver's license application, etc.), then a minimum of one window or counter for each type of transaction shall be equipped with method to provide two-way voice communication. The communication system shall be accessible to persons who have difficulty bending or stooping and to persons using wheelchairs. If a window or counter is used only by persons in wheelchairs, then a method to provide communication for standing persons is not required. ADAAG
7.2(3)-1/13/98

(NOTE: Grilles, talk-through baffles, intercoms, or telephone handsets may be used. If grilles or talk-through baffles are used, then placement for persons in wheelchairs is necessary [approximately 40 inches (1015 mm) to 44 inches (1120 mm) above the finished floor] as well as a grille or baffle at standard height. If an intercom is used, then the location of the "speak" button shall comply with 16.2.1 or 16.2.2, as applicable. If telephone handsets are the system of choice, then a minimum of one shall comply with 14.2.5 [14.2.5.2 excepted]. An Assistive Listening System [A.L.S.] shall comply with 22.4.4.) ADAAG A7.2(3)

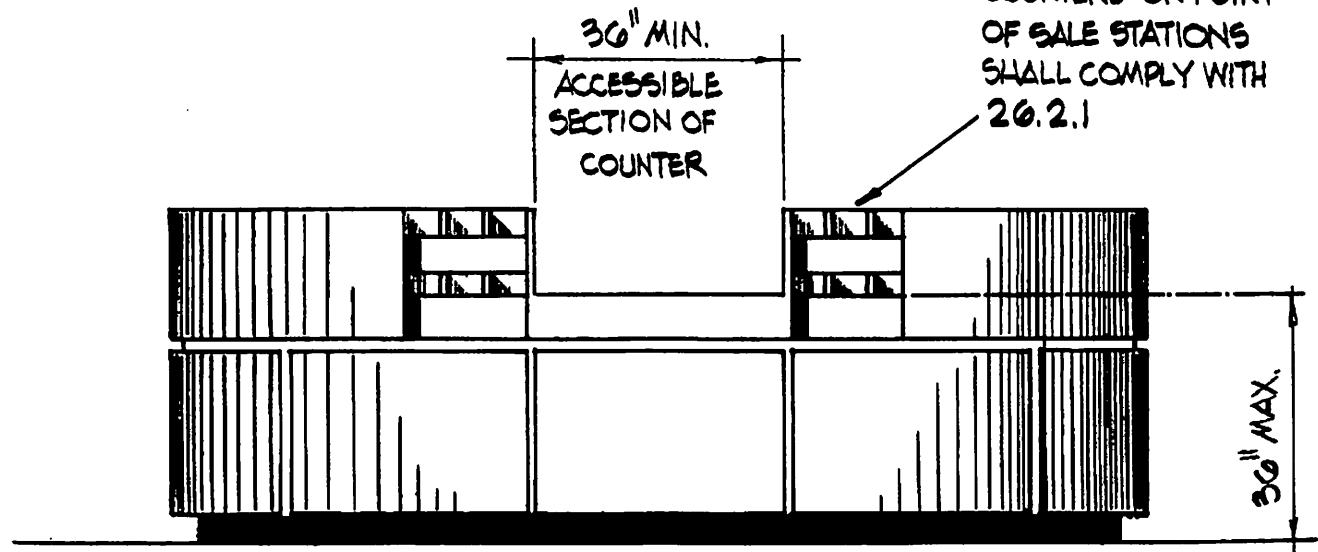
(NOTE: Grilles, talk-through baffles, intercoms, or telephone handsets may be used. If grilles or talk-through baffles are used, then placement for persons in wheelchairs is necessary [approximately 40 inches (1015 mm) to 44 inches (1120 mm) above the finished floor] as well as a grille or baffle at standard height. If an intercom is used, then the location of the "speak" button shall comply with 16.2.1 or 16.2.2, as applicable. If telephone handsets are the system of choice, then a minimum of one shall comply with 14.2.5 [14.2.5.2 excepted]. An Assistive Listening System [A.L.S.] shall comply with 22.4.4.) ADAAG A7.2(3)



COUNTERS WITH REGISTER (DEP'T. STORE, HOBBY SHOP, PHARMACY, ETC.)

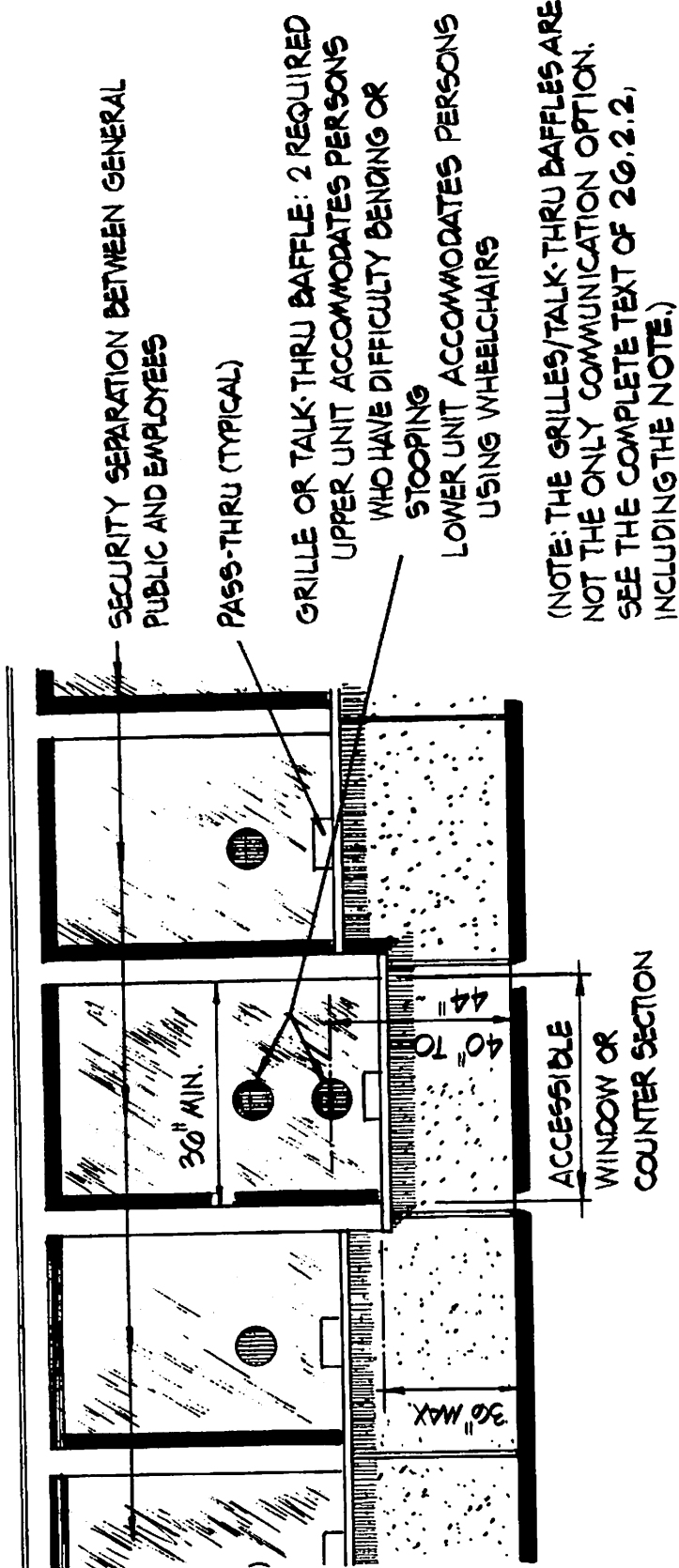
INFORMATION

IN A MULTI-COUNTER FACILITY ALL COUNTERS OR POINT OF SALE STATIONS SHALL COMPLY WITH 26.2.1



COUNTERS WITHOUT REGISTERS (BANK TELLER STATION, MUSEUM INFORMATION, RECEPTIONIST, D.M.V. OFFICE, ETC.)

26.2.1- COUNTERS WITH OR WITHOUT CASH REGISTERS



IF A WINDOW OR COUNTER IS USED ONLY BY PERSONS IN WHEELCHAIRS, THEN A METHOD TO PROVIDE COMMUNICATION FOR STANDING PERSONS IS NOT REQUIRED.

26.2.2 - COUNTERS/WINDOWS WITH SOLID PARTITIONS OR SECURITY GLAZING (MOVIE THEATER BOX OFFICE, BANK TELLER STATIONS, ETC.)

26.2.3 If a counter serves separate functions in discreet areas (e.g., cash sales, charge sales, refund/return, etc.), then each separate function shall have an accessible section.

FR 7/26/91 At
35446

26.3 CHECK-OUT AISLES

(NOTE: This Section refers to aisles having one direction of approach, one path of travel, and one exit path such as check-out aisles in supermarkets or in self-service building supply stores.)

FR 7/26/91 At
35446

26.3.1 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE AISLES

26.3.1.1 In buildings and facilities having a gross sales space of 5,000 square feet (465 square meters) and greater, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in compliance with the following table:

<u>TOTAL CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH DESIGN</u>	<u>MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH DESIGN</u>
1 to 4.	1
5 to 8.	2
9 to 15.	3
16 or more	3 plus 20% of additional aisles

ADAAG
7.3(1)

(NOTE: "Check-out aisles of each design" are those that are identified with permanent signage serving different functions such as, but not limited to, express check-out, credit card only, cash only, etc. Additionally, the type of check-out station [e.g., those with and without a moving belt or having moving belts of different lengths] also constitute check-out aisles of different design.)

ADAAG
7.3(1);
FR 7/26/91 At
35446

26.3.1.2 If the gross area of a sales space is less than 5,000 square feet (465 square meters), then only one accessible check-out aisle is required.

ADAAG 7.3(1),
Exception

26.3.2 AISLE WIDTH AND COUNTER HEIGHT

26.3.2.1 Accessible check-out aisles shall have a minimum 36 inches (915 mm) clear width.

ADAAG
7.3(2)

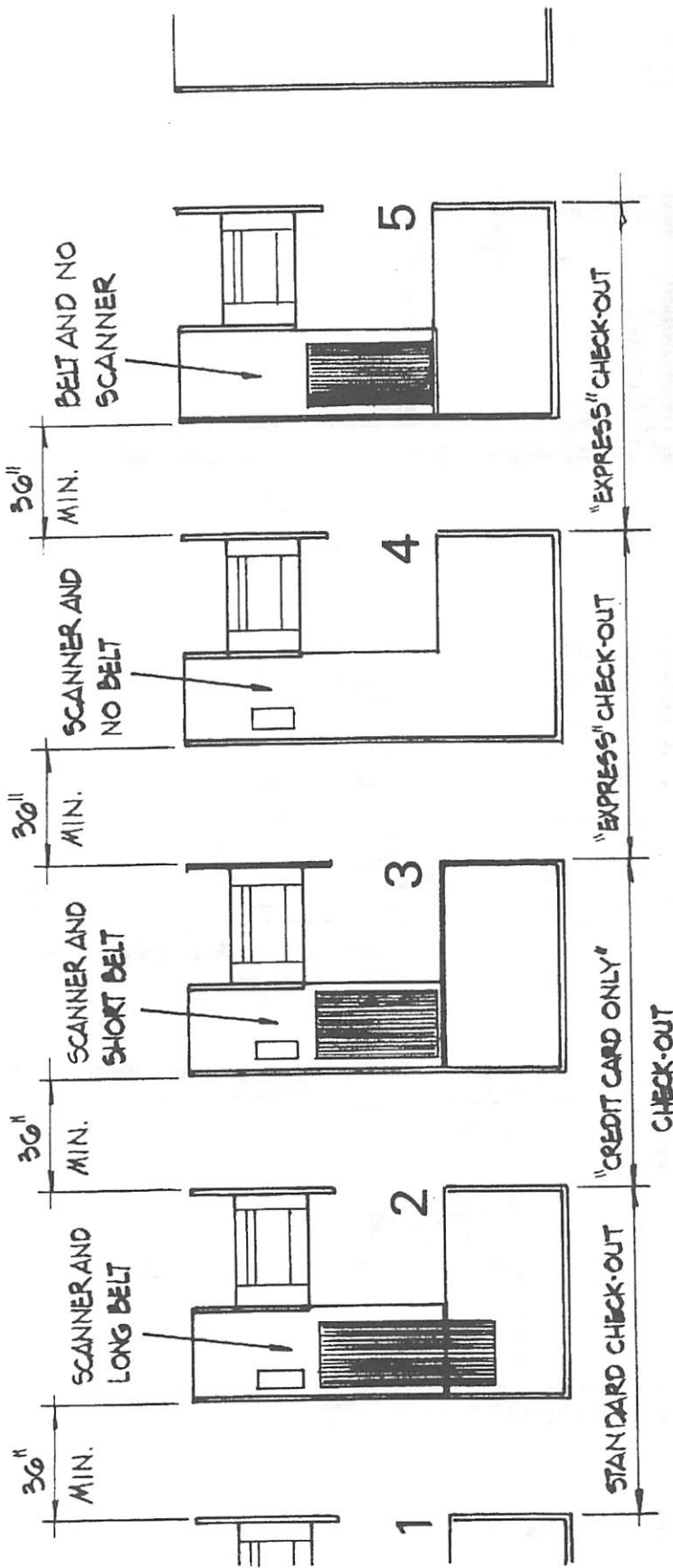
26.3.2.2 Accessible counters shall have the top surface at 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the finished floor. The top of the rim or lip shall be located 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

ADAAG
7.3(2)

26.3.3 SIGNAGE

***26.3.3.1** Accessible check-out aisles shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility which shall be mounted above the accessible aisle in the same location where the check-out aisle number, or type of checkout, is displayed. The Symbol shall comply with 18.1.4. *If the aisle identification is located overhead, then the Symbol border dimension shall comply with 18.3.4 or it shall be equal to the height of the overhead aisle identification sign, whichever is the larger.*

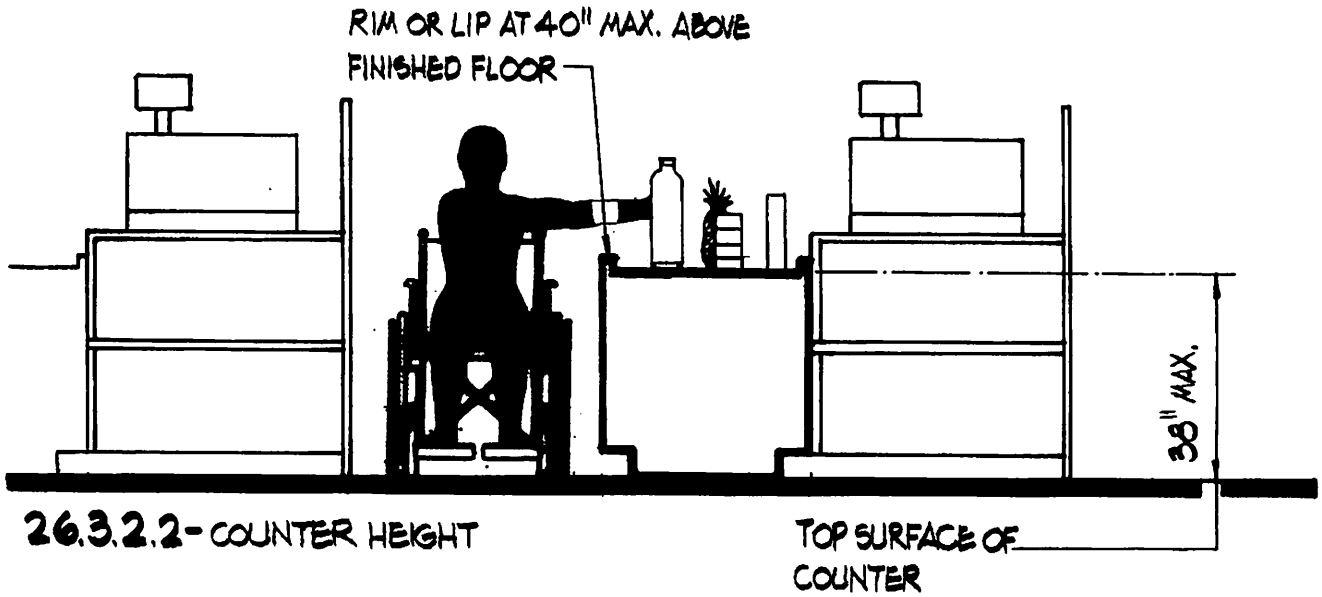
Vol. I-C,
7.2(j);
ADAAG
7.3(3)



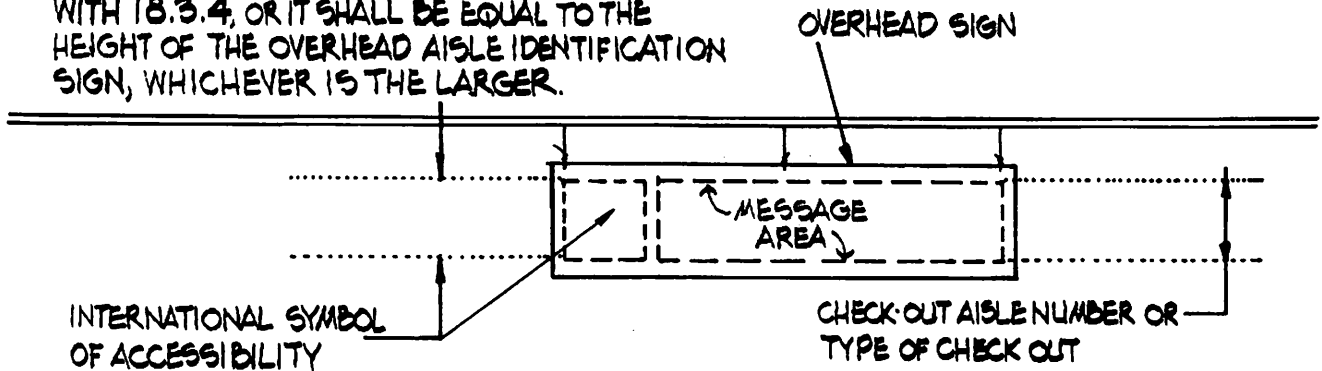
CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH DESIGN - AISLES THAT ARE IDENTIFIED WITH PERMANENT SIGNAGE SERVING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS. ADDITIONALLY, THE TYPE OF CHECK-OUT STATION ALSO CONSTITUTES CHECK-OUT AISLES OF DIFFERENT DESIGN. IN THE ILLUSTRATION ABOVE IT WOULD APPEAR THAT, BASED ON FUNCTION, ONLY AISLES 2, 3, AND 4 (STANDARD, CREDIT CARD, AND EXPRESS CHECK-OUT) ARE REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE. IN FACT, AISLES 2, 3, 4 AND 5 MUST BE ACCESSIBLE; ALTHOUGH ONE FUNCTION (EXPRESS CHECK-OUT) IS DUPLICATED, EACH OF THE FOUR STATIONS IS A DIFFERENT DESIGN.

FOR NUMBER OF CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH DESIGN, SEE 203.1 (TABLE IN TEXT)

203.3.1 - NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE AISLES

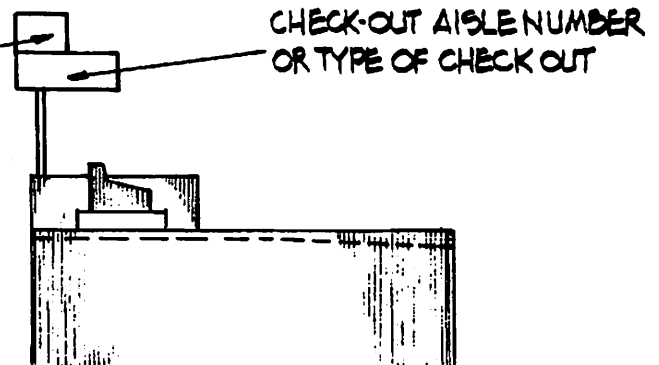


SYMBOL BORDER DIMENSION SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.3.4, OR IT SHALL BE EQUAL TO THE HEIGHT OF THE OVERHEAD AISLE IDENTIFICATION SIGN, WHICHEVER IS THE LARGER.



INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY MOUNTED ABOVE AISLE CHECK-OUT NUMBER OR TYPE OF CHECK OUT

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.4



ONLY ONE OF THE TWO SIGNS IS REQUIRED, NOT BOTH

26.3.3- SIGNAGE

26.3.4 SECURITY BOLLARDS

26.3.4.1 Any device used to prevent the removal of shopping carts from store premises shall not prevent entrance to, and departure from, the store by persons in wheelchairs.

ADAAG 7.4

26.3.4.2 If the spacing or placement of security bollards used to prevent the removal of shopping carts from the premises will not allow a disabled person to enter, or depart from, a building at the same points used by the general public, then a minimum of one accessible entrance and departure point shall be provided that will afford the same degree of convenient entrance/departure as that offered the general public. If one accessible area serves both functions, then separate accessible entrance and departure points are not required.

ADAAG 7.4

*26.3.4.3 Directional signage complying with 18.1.2 shall be provided at the inaccessible entrance and departure points indicating the direction to the accessible elements. Accessible entrance and departure points shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3(2).

ADAAG
4.1.2(7)(c),
4.1.3(16)(b)

(NOTE: As used in this Section, “....depart....” and “....departure....” refer to that place in the building where persons normally leave after check-out and is not to be interpreted as having the same meaning as Means of Egress.)

CHAPTER 27 DRESSING/FITTING ROOMS

27.1 DRESSING ROOMS

27.1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

27.1.1.1 If dressing/fitting rooms are provided for use by the general public, patients, customers, or employees, then a minimum five percent (5%), or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), of the dressing/fitting rooms for each type of use in each cluster shall comply with this Chapter.

ADAAG
4.1.3(21)

(NOTE: "...[F]or each type of use..." are those dressing rooms serving each sex or distinct and different functions as in different treatment or examination facilities. For example: in a hospital having dressing rooms for specific treatment or examination rooms five percent [5%], or a minimum of one, of the dressing rooms provided for each type of treatment or examination rooms shall be accessible.)

ADAAG
4.1.3(21);
FR 7/26/91 At
35426

27.1.1.2 Accessible dressing rooms shall be located on an accessible route.

ADAAG 4.35.1

27.1.2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

27.1.2.1 Each accessible dressing room entered via a swing or sliding door shall have a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum clear floor area or a minimum 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter turning circle. Doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7. The arc of any swing door shall not overlap any part of the required clear floor area.

ADAAG
4.35.2

ADAAG
4.35.3

27.1.2.2 If dressing room entry is via a curtained opening, then the clear clear internal floor area may be reduced to a minimum 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space. The dimension across the opening entrance shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.

ADAAG
4.35.2

27.1.3 DRESSING ROOM BENCH

***27.1.3.1** Every accessible dressing room shall have a 24 inches wide by 48 inches long (610 mm by 1220 mm) bench, the long dimension of which shall be attached to the dressing room wall or partition. The top of the bench shall be 17 inches minimum to 19 inches maximum (430 mm to 485 mm) above the finished floor or ground level and shall be capable of **supporting a minimum 250 pound (113 Kg) load. No part of the bench shall overhang, obstruct, or interfere with the clear floor area required by 27.1.2.1 or the clear floor space required by 27.1.2.2.**

ADAAG
4.35.4

27.1.3.2 Clear floor space shall be provided alongside the bench to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a parallel transfer on to the bench.

ADAAG
4.35.4

27.1.3.3 In wet locations (e.g., showers, swimming pools, etc.) the seating surface of the bench shall be slip resistant and shall not accumulate water.

ADAAG
4.35.4

27.1.4 DRESSING ROOM MIRRORS

- *27.1.4.1 If mirrors are provided in inaccessible dressing rooms *within a given cluster*, then accessible dressing room(s) within the same cluster shall be equipped with a full-length mirror that is a minimum 18 inches wide by 54 inches high (460 mm by 1370 mm). ***The bottom of the mirror shall be 9 inches (230 mm) above the finished floor.*** The mirror shall be located in a position that will accommodate viewing by a person seated on the bench as well as a person in a standing position.

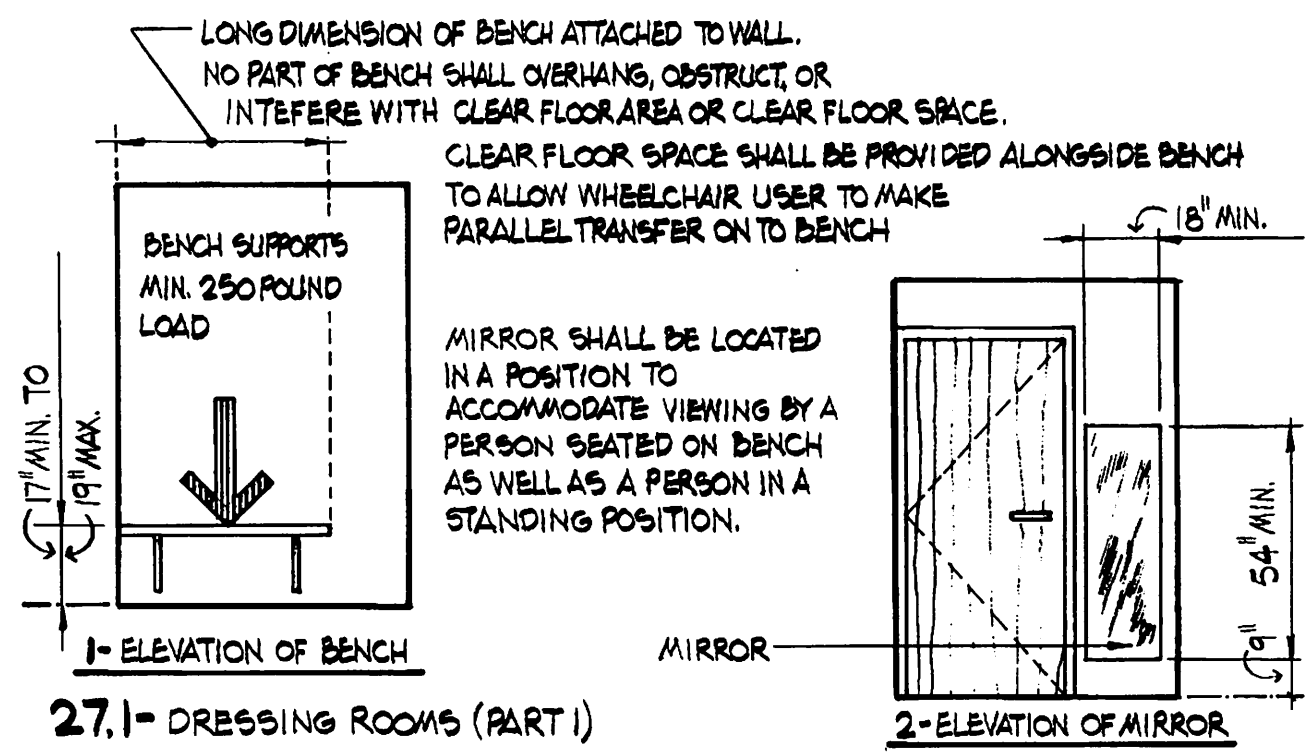
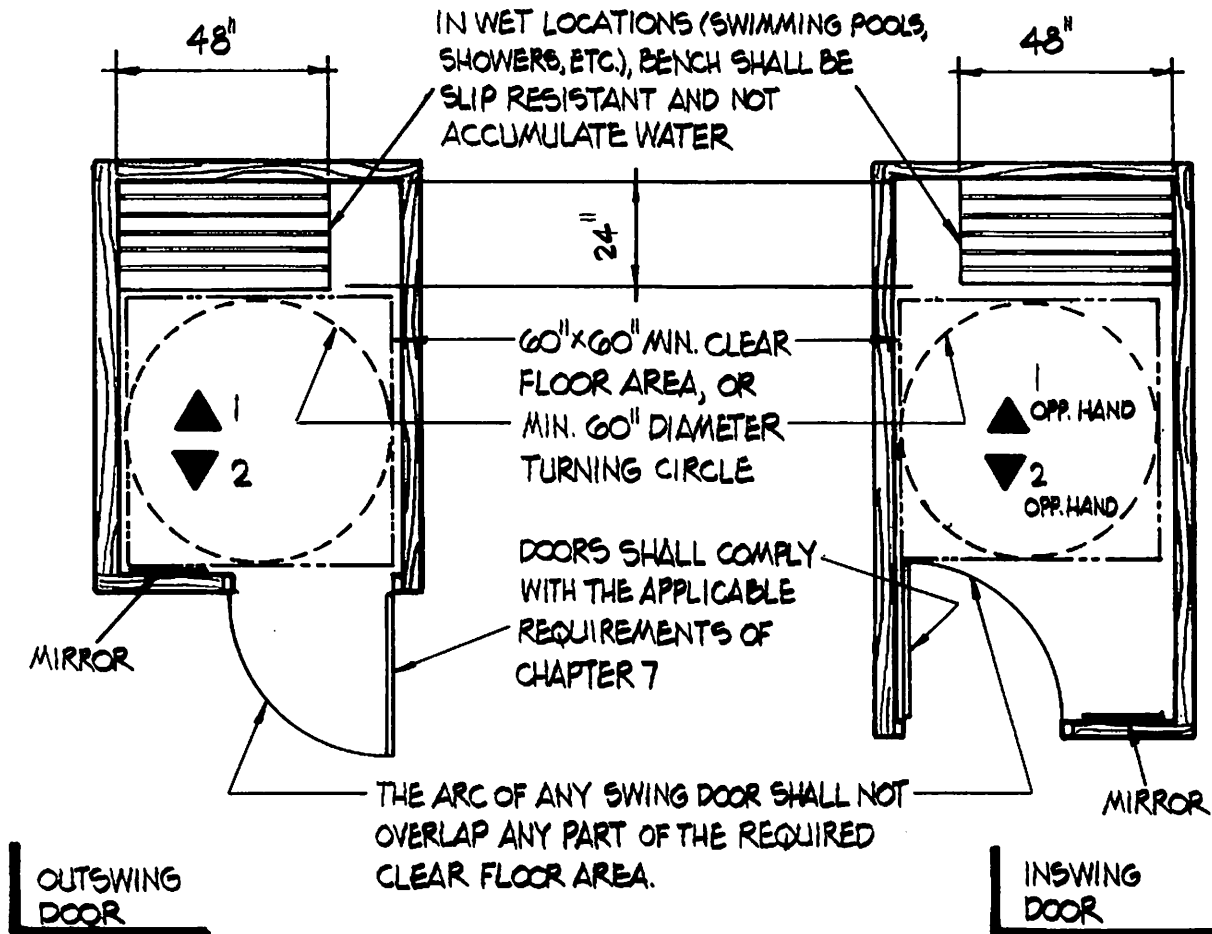
ADAAG 4.35.5

9" = Vol. I-C,
4.6.7(a)(1)

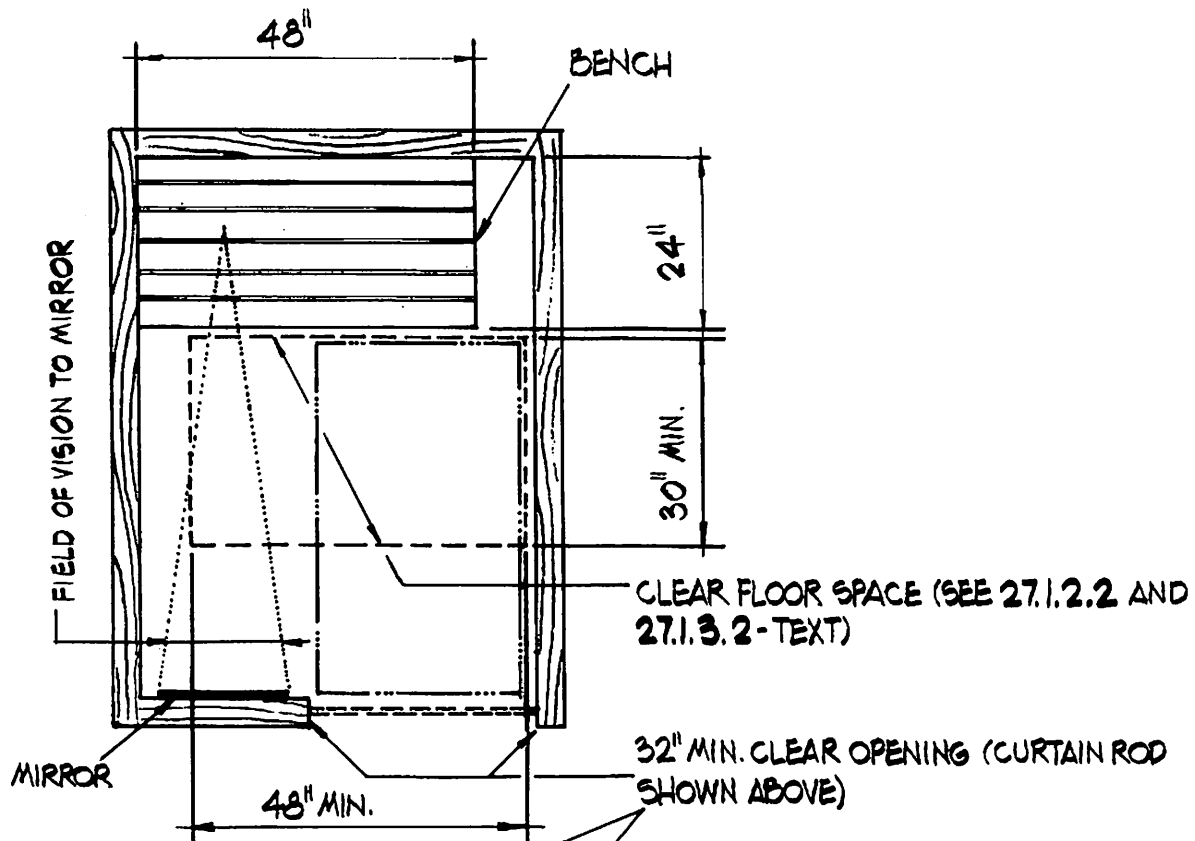
*27.1.5 IDENTIFICATION

- *27.1.5.1 *In buildings or facilities having more than one dressing room, the accessible dressing room(s) shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility which shall comply with 18.1.4 and the applicable requirements of 18.4.1 through 18.4.3.*

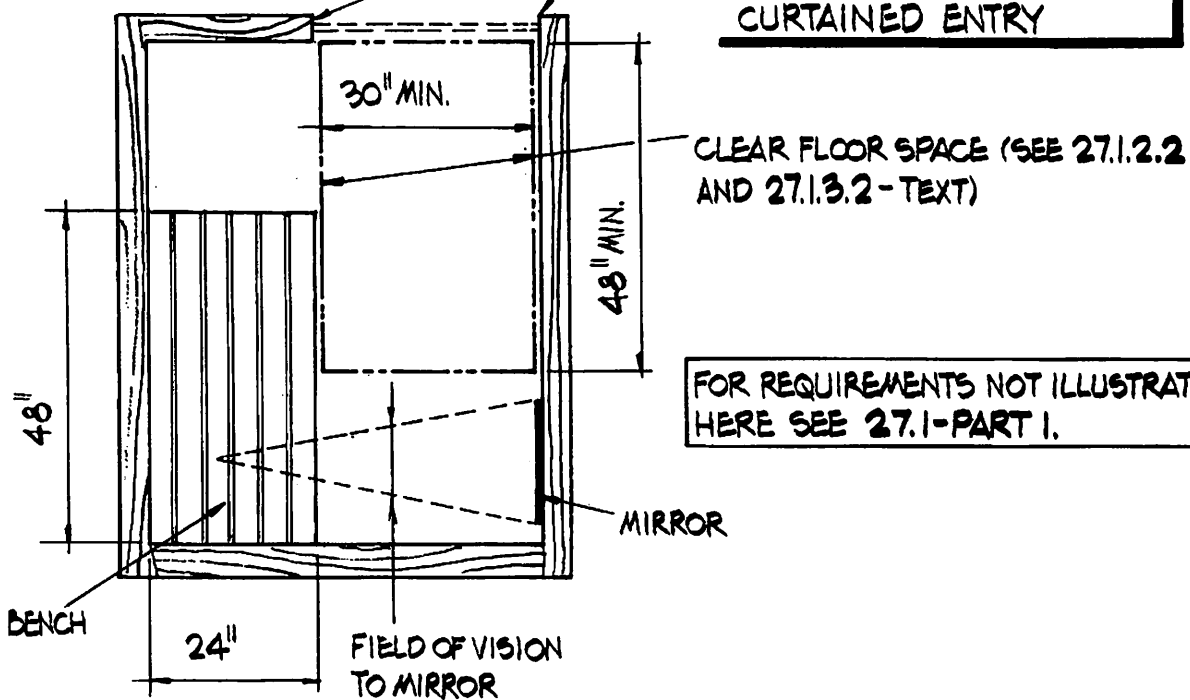
ADAAG
4.30.7



27.1- DRESSING ROOMS (PART 1)



DRESSING ROOMS WITH CURTAINED ENTRY



FOR REQUIREMENTS NOT ILLUSTRATED HERE SEE 27.1-PART 1.

27.1- DRESSING ROOMS- PART 2

**CHAPTER 28
MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES**

28.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

28.1.1 Medical care buildings and facilities as identified by 1.2.7, including all public and common use spaces, shall comply with the requirements of this Code. (For medical facilities serving Group I-3 Occupancies see, also, 31.4.5.7.)

ADAAG 6.1

28.1.2 Residential care facilities, as identified by Volume I and licensed by the State Agency having jurisdiction, shall comply with this Code.

Title III, 307(7)(F);
Title II, 35.149
And 35.151;
FR 7/26/91 At 35552

28.1.3 The professional office of a health care provider shall not be required to comply with this Chapter provided that no patient sleeping rooms are present where the period of stay may exceed 24 hours.

FR 7/26/91 At
35443

28.1.4 NUMBER OF PARKING SPACES

28.1.4.1 For outpatient units and facilities ten percent (10%) of the total number of parking spaces serving each such unit or facility shall be accessible. (NOTE: An outpatient unit/facility is part of a medical care facility serving patients and visitors [e.g., a hospital's clinic or ambulatory care center] that provides regular and continuing medical treatment without overnight stay. Accessible parking for facility employees, doctors' offices, independent clinics, or other facilities not located in medical care facilities shall comply with 4.2 only.)

ADAAG
4.1.2(5)(d)(i)

Access Board
Bulletin #6,
Pgs. 3 And 4
(May, 1994)

28.1.4.2 For units and facilities that specialize in treatment or services for persons with mobility impairments, including vocational rehabilitation facilities, twenty percent (20%) of the total number of parking spaces serving each such unit or facility shall be accessible. (NOTE: The facilities identified herein are those in which the treatment or service specifically serves persons with mobility impairments [e.g., spinal cord injury treatment centers, prosthetic and orthotic retail establishments, and vocational rehabilitation centers for persons with mobility impairments]. Accessible parking for facility employees, and facilities that provide, but do not specialize in, services or treatments for persons with mobility impairments [e.g., general rehabilitative counseling or therapy centers] shall comply with 4.2 only.)

ADAAG
4.1.2(5)(d)(ii);
FR 7/26/91
At 35417

Access Board
Bulletin #6,
Pg. 4
(May, 1994)

28.1.4.3 For 28.1.4.1 and 28.1.4.2, van accessible parking shall be provided in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.

Cross-Reference

28.1.4.4 The applicable requirements of Chapter 4 shall apply to this Section (e.g., width of an accessible space, width and delineation of access aisles, above-ground signs, etc.)

Cross-Reference

28.2 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PATIENT BEDROOMS AND TOILETS

28.2.1 The number of patient bedrooms (and toilet/bath rooms that are part of the patient bedroom) required to be accessible shall comply with the following table:

FR 7/26/91 At
35444

<u>TYPE OF MEDICAL CARE FACILITY (1)</u>	<u>MINIMUM PERCENTAGE OF PATIENT BEDROOMS REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE</u>	
General purpose hospital; psychiatric facilities; detoxification facilities	ten percent (10%)	ADAAG 6.1(1)
Long term care facilities; nursing homes; etc	fifty percent (50%)	ADAAG 6.1(3)
Hospitals and rehabilitation facilities that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility; or, Units within hospitals and rehabilitation facilities that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility	one hundred percent (100%)	ADAAG 6.1(2)

(1) If a specific medical care facility is not mentioned, then it shall meet the requirements of the type of facility it most closely resembles (e.g., an orthopedic hospital will be considered a rehabilitation facility).

FR 7/26/91
At 35445

28.3 ENTRANCES

28.3.1 A minimum of one accessible entrance complying with 6.2.1.1 shall be protected from the weather by a canopy or roof overhang/extension. The protected accessible entrance shall be provided with a passenger loading zone and overhead clearance in compliance with 4.11. (See, also, 31.4.5.7.5.)

ADAAG 6.2

28.4 PATIENT BEDROOMS AND TOILET ROOMS

28.4.1 DOORS

28.4.1.1 Bedroom entry doors and toilet/bath room doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7.

Vol. I-C, Chapters
4.3, 4.3.9;
ADAAG 6.3(1)

28.4.1.1.1 Patient exit doors and bedroom entry doors that are 44 inches (1120 mm) or greater in width are not required to comply with the strike jamb clearances of 7.3.1.

Vol. I-C, 4.3.2(e);
ADAAG 6.3(1),
Exception

28.5 PATIENT BEDROOM CLEAR FLOOR AREA AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

28.5.1 Each patient bedroom required to be accessible shall have a clear floor area that complies with 11.3.1. **ADAAG 6.3(2)**

28.5.1.1 In patient bedrooms having two beds, the required clear floor area may be located between the beds. **ADAAG 6.3(2);
FR 7/26/91 At 35445**

28.5.2 There shall be a minimum 36 inches (915 mm) wide clear floor space along each side of each bed. Two adjacent accessible beds may share a common center clear floor space. **ADAAG 6.3(3)**

28.5.3 Each patient bedroom shall have an accessible route leading to the clear floor space required on each side of each bed. **ADAAG 6.3(3)**

28.6 PATIENT TOILET ROOMS

28.6.1 If toilet/bathrooms are provided as a part of an accessible patient bedroom, then each accessible bedroom shall have accessible toilet/bathing facilities. **Vol. I-C, 5.2(b);
ADAAG 6.4**

28.6.1.1 If patient toilet/bathing facilities are provided in an area other than as part of a patient bedroom, then the remotely located toilet/bathing facilities shall be accessible. **ADAAG 4.1.3(11)**

28.6.2 Accessible toilet/bathing facilities for patients shall be located on an accessible route. **ADAAG 6.4**

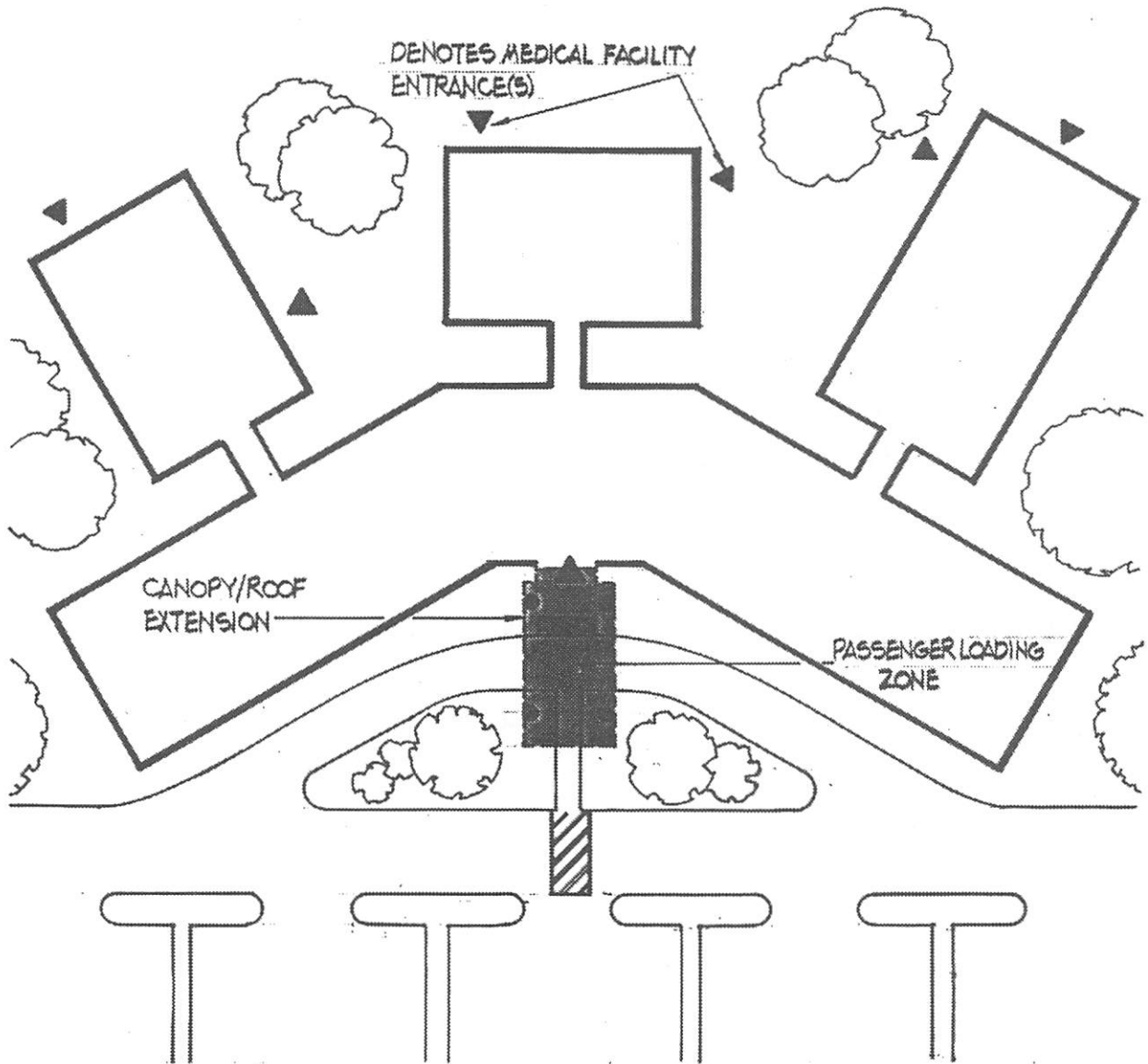
28.6.3 Patient toilet/bathing facilities shall comply with the following table:

<u>TYPE OF ELEMENT (1)</u>	<u>ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOUND IN SECTION/PARAGRAPH</u>	
Clear Floor Area	11.3.1	
Toilet Stalls (if provided)	11.4	
Grab Bars (2)	11.5	
Watercloset.	11.6.1	Cross-References [ADAAG 6.4]
Lavatory	11.6.2	
Accessories	11.7.1, 11.7.2, and 11.7.3	
Sinks (if provided)	11.11	
Shower.	12.2, 12.3.1, 12.3.2, or 29.4.7.3	
Bathtub	12.4	

(1) If fixtures and elements not listed are provided, then they shall comply with this Code. **Intent Of
ADAAG 4.1.3(11)**

(2) If bed pan washers/high flush valves are provided, then the rear wall grab bar may be split or the entire bar may be offset to the wide side of the watercloset. **ADAAG A4.16.5**

28.3.1 - A MINIMUM OF ONE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE COMPLYING WITH 6.2.1.1 SHALL BE PROTECTED FROM THE WEATHER BY A CANOPY OR ROOF OVERHANG/EXTENSION. THE PROTECTED ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE SHALL BE PROVIDED WITH A PASSENGER LOADING ZONE AND OVERHEAD CLEARANCE IN COMPLIANCE WITH 4.11.

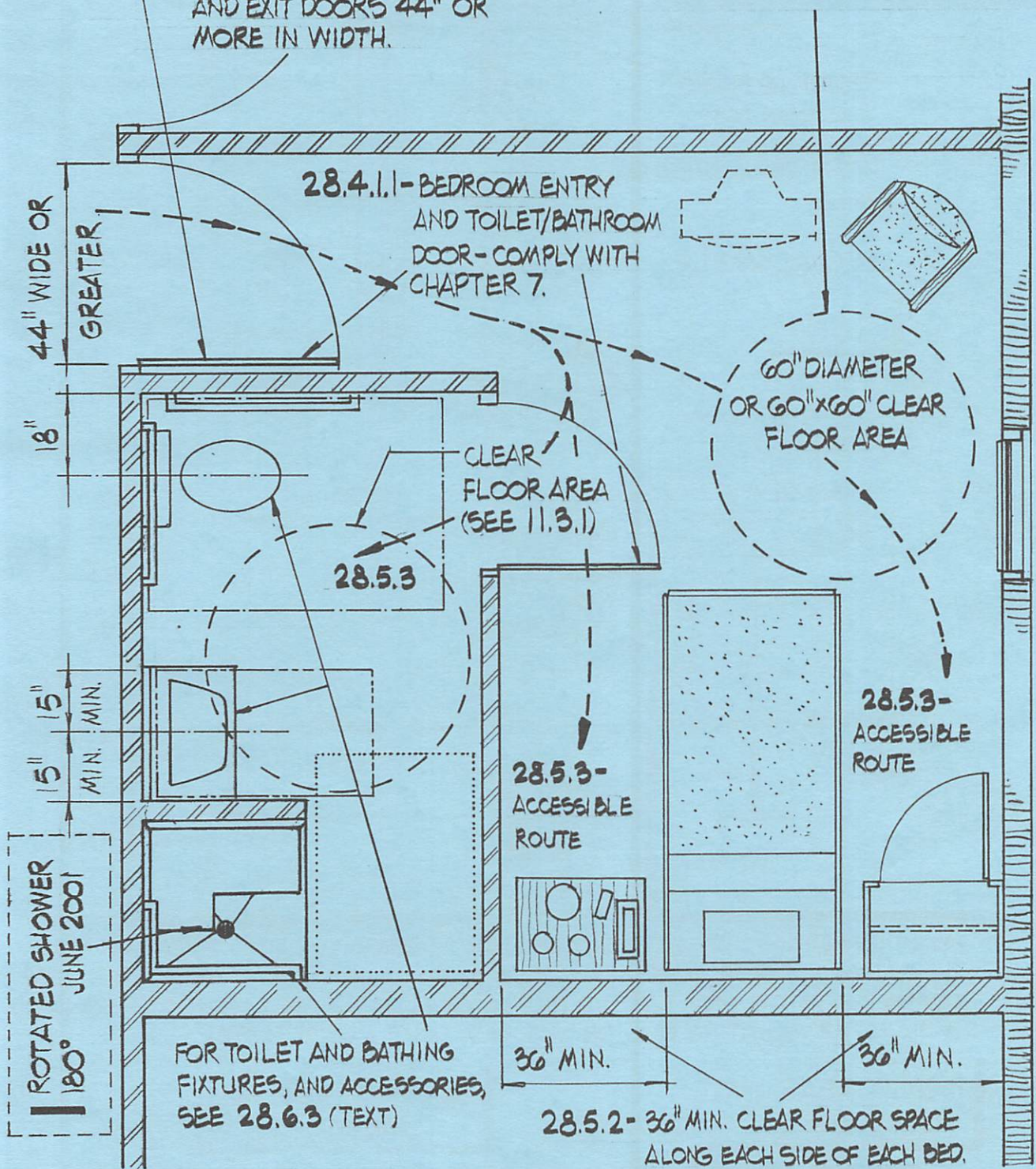


28.3-ENTRANCES

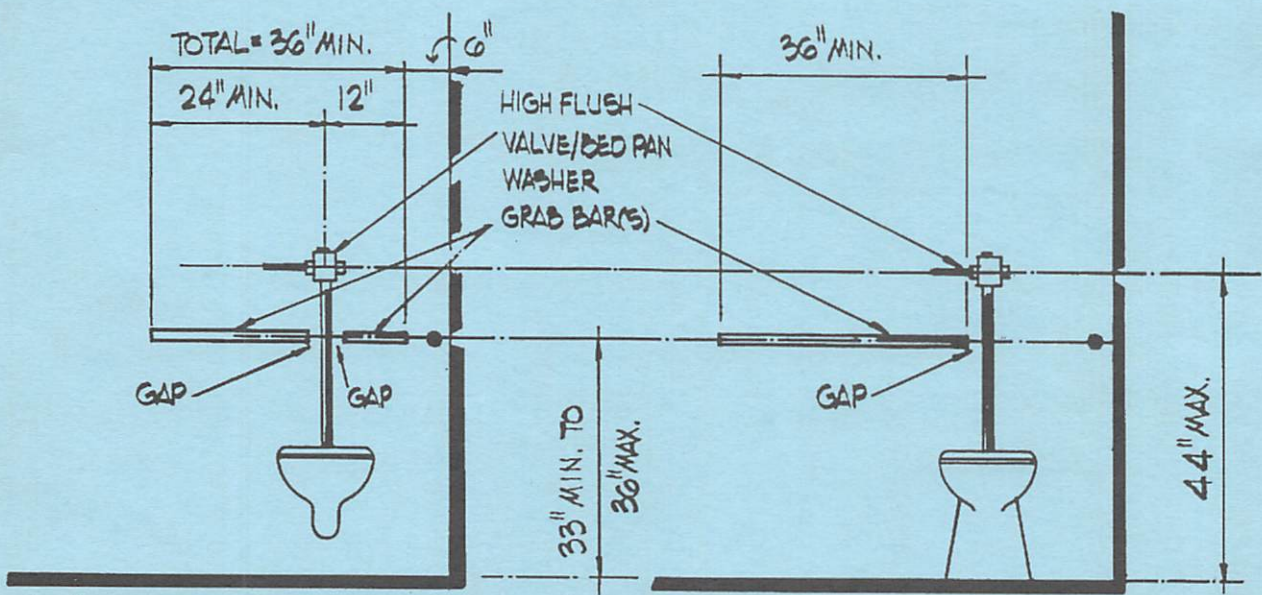
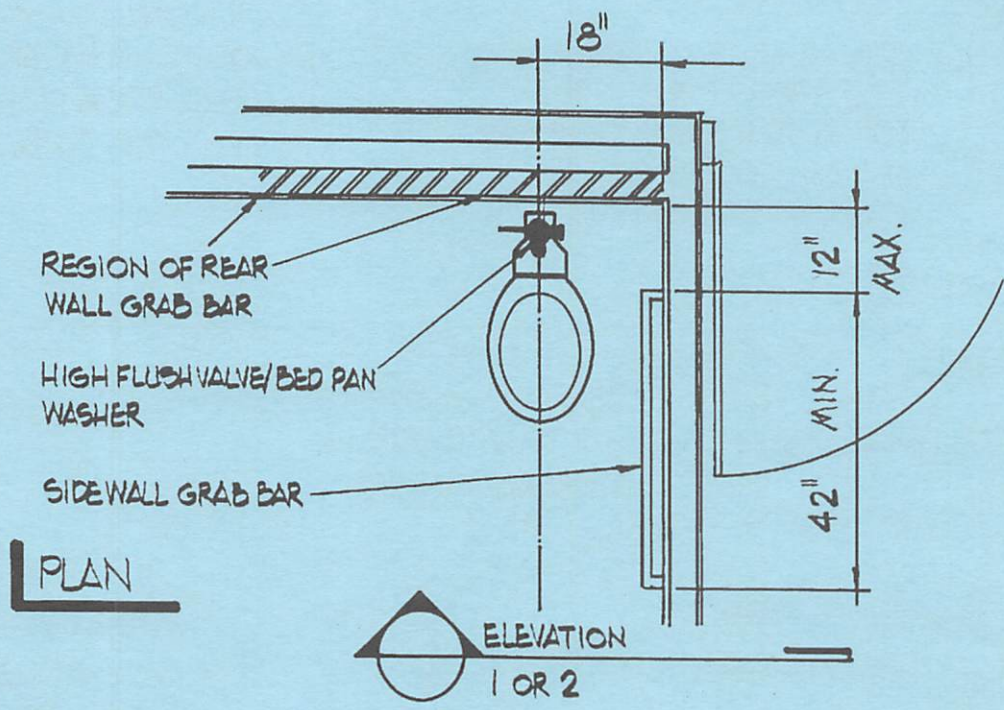
28.4.1.1.1 - STRIKE JAMB CLEARANCES OF 7.3.1 ARE NOT REQUIRED FOR PATIENT BEDROOM ENTRY AND EXIT DOORS 44" OR MORE IN WIDTH.

NOTES:

1. CLEAR FLOOR AREA MAY ALSO BE LOCATED AT EITHER BED SIDE.
2. IN 2-BED ROOM CLEAR FLOOR AREA MAY BE LOCATED BETWEEN BEDS.



28.4 AND 28.5 - PATIENT BEDROOM, TOILET ROOM, AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE



MOUNTING METHODS AND FLANGE SHAPE/SIZE VARY - THEREFORE, A FIXED DIMENSION FOR THE GAP CANNOT BE PROVIDED. HOWEVER, A DISTANCE OF 3 1/2" TO 4" FROM THE FIXTURE CENTERLINE TO THE GRAB BAR END WILL ACCOMMODATE INSTALLATION OF A STANDARD 3" DIAMETER MOUNTING FLANGE (WITH OR WITHOUT A COVER PLATE).

1) SPLIT REAR WALL GRAB BAR

2) OFFSET REAR WALL GRAB BAR

28.6.3, NOTE 2 - WATERCLOSET, HIGH FLUSH VALVE/ BED PAN WASHER AND REAR WALL GRAB BAR

CHAPTER 29 TRANSIENT LODGING

29.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

29.1.1 All transient lodging buildings and facilities, including all public and common use facilities therein, shall comply with this Code. (See, also, 1.2.9.1.1.)

ADAAG 9.1.1

29.1.1.2 All dormitories, fraternities, and sororities shall comply with this Chapter.

ADAAG 9.1
Title

29.2 INTEGRATION

***29.2.1 Guest rooms/suites required to be accessible by 29.4.1 and 29.5.1 shall not be segregated from other guest rooms/suites within the project. (The following are examples of unacceptable designs: locating all accessible rooms on one floor of a building with an elevator; or, locating all accessible rooms in one building in a multi-building facility.)**

Vol. I-C, 5.1(b)

29.2.2 If an elevator is provided, then the accessible rooms shall be distributed throughout the building or facility.

FR 7/26/91 At
35447

29.2.3 If an elevator is not provided, then the accessible rooms shall be located and distributed on the floor level accessible from finished grade.

FR 7/26/91 At
35447

29.2.3.1 If an elevator is not provided and if the site/building design provides for grade level access at more than one floor (e.g., a two-story building built in to the side of a hill), then the required number of accessible rooms shall be distributed among the floor levels accessed from each finished grade.

Derived From
ADAAG
4.1.3(8)

***29.2.4 Two adjacent accessible rooms may be located on opposite sides of a common wall or partition in order to facilitate installation, connection and maintenance of the building systems. (NOTE: This Paragraph does not permit two pairs of two accessible rooms to be placed immediately adjacent to each other [i.e., four accessible rooms in succession]. If the minimum number of accessible rooms is two, then placing these rooms on opposite sides of a common wall or partition shall not be permitted.)**


By Staff,
Vol. I-C 5.1(b)
Integration

29.3 CLASSES OF SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS

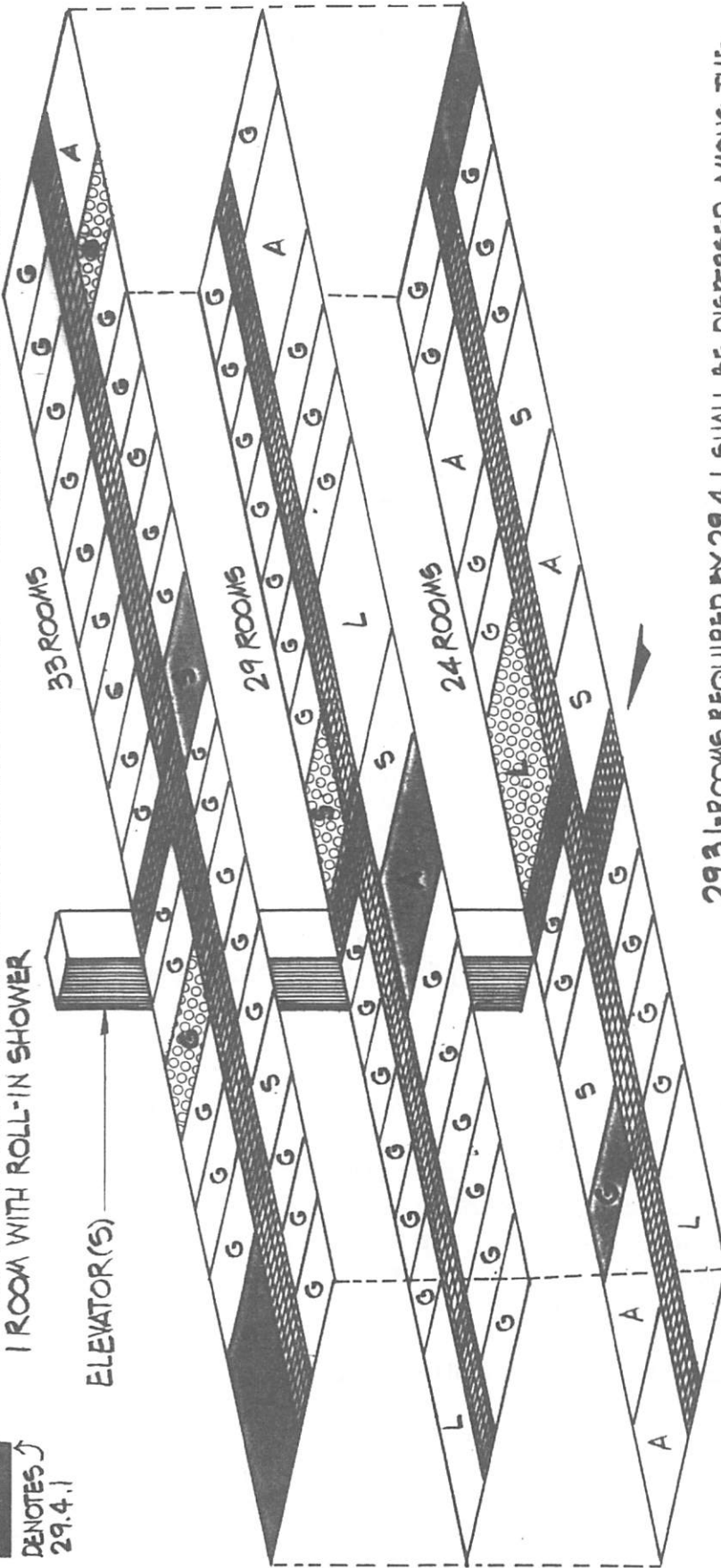
29.3.1 Rooms required by 29.4.1 shall be dispersed among the various classes of sleeping accommodations that are available in the facility. (Factors to be considered are: room size; number of beds; amenities [kitchens, wet bars, etc.]; and cost [standard or premium rooms, suites].)

ADAAG
9.1.4(1);
FR 7/26/91 At
35448


29.4.1- THIS FACILITY HAS A TOTAL ROOM COUNT OF 86;
 MINIMUM NUMBER OF ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS
 WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS - 5
 4 ROOMS WITH ANY TYPE ACCESSIBLE BATHING FIXTURE
 1 ROOM WITH ROLL-IN SHOWER

 DENOTES
 29.4.1

GUEST ROOMS(G) SUITES(S)
 APARTMENT ROOM(A) LUXURY SUITES(L)
 (ROOM DESIGNATIONS USED FOR
 ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY.)



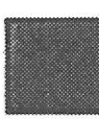
29.5.1- FOR 86 TOTAL ROOMS THE
 MINIMUM NUMBER OF ROOMS
 ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH
 HEARING IMPAIRMENTS IS 4.

 DENOTES
 29.5.1

29.3.1- ROOMS REQUIRED BY 29.4.1 SHALL BE DISPERSED AMONG THE
 VARIOUS CLASSES OF SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS THAT ARE
 AVAILABLE IN THE FACILITY. (FACTORS TO BE CONSIDERED
 ARE: ROOM SIZE; NUMBER OF BEDS; AMENITIES [KITCHENS,
 WET BARS, ETC.] AND COST [STANDARD OR PREMIUM ROOMS,
 SUITES].)

29.2.2- INTEGRATION - PART I (FACILITY WITH ELEVATOR[S])

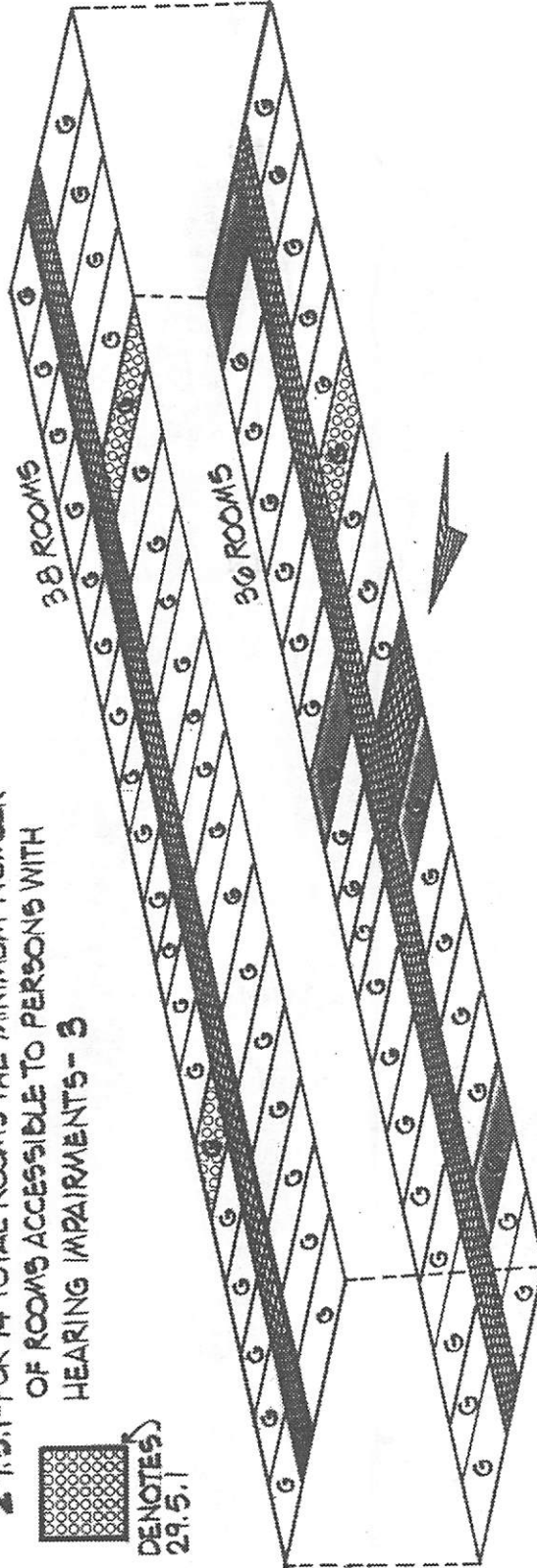
29.4.1- THIS FACILITY HAS A TOTAL ROOM COUNT OF 74;
 MINIMUM NUMBER OF ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO
 PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS - 4
 3 ROOMS WITH ANY TYPE ACCESSIBLE
 BATHING FIXTURE
 1 ROOM WITH ROLL-IN SHOWER

 DENOTES
 29.4.1

29.5.1- FOR 74 TOTAL ROOMS THE MINIMUM NUMBER
 OF ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH
 HEARING IMPAIRMENTS - 3

 DENOTES
 29.5.1

THIS FACILITY HAS ONLY 1-BED
 GUEST ROOMS (G); THEREFORE,
 29.3.1 IS NOT APPLICABLE.



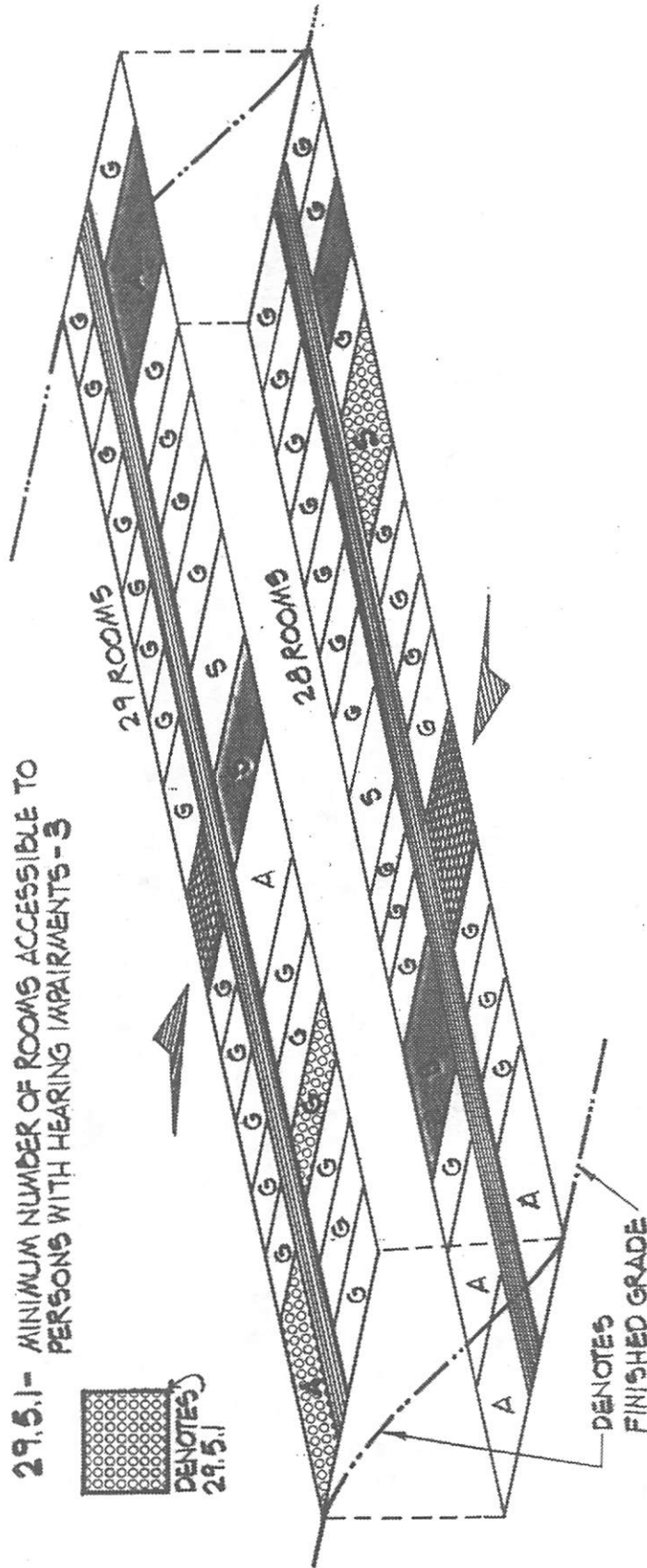
29.2.3- INTEGRATION - PART 2 (FACILITY WITHOUT ELEVATOR-ALL ROOMS ACCESSIBLE
 TO PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS LOCATED ON FLOOR AT FINISHED GRADE)

29.4.1- THIS FACILITY HAS A TOTAL ROOM COUNT OF: 57
 MINIMUM NUMBER OF ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO
 PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS - 4
 3 ROOMS WITH ANY TYPE ACCESSIBLE
 BATHING FIXTURE
 1 ROOM WITH ROLL-IN SHOWER
 SEE, ALSO, 29.3.1 (TEXT)

GUEST ROOMS (G)
 APARTMENT ROOMS (A) SUITES (S)
 (ROOM DESIGNATIONS USED FOR
 ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY.)

29.5.1- MINIMUM NUMBER OF ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO
 PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS - 3

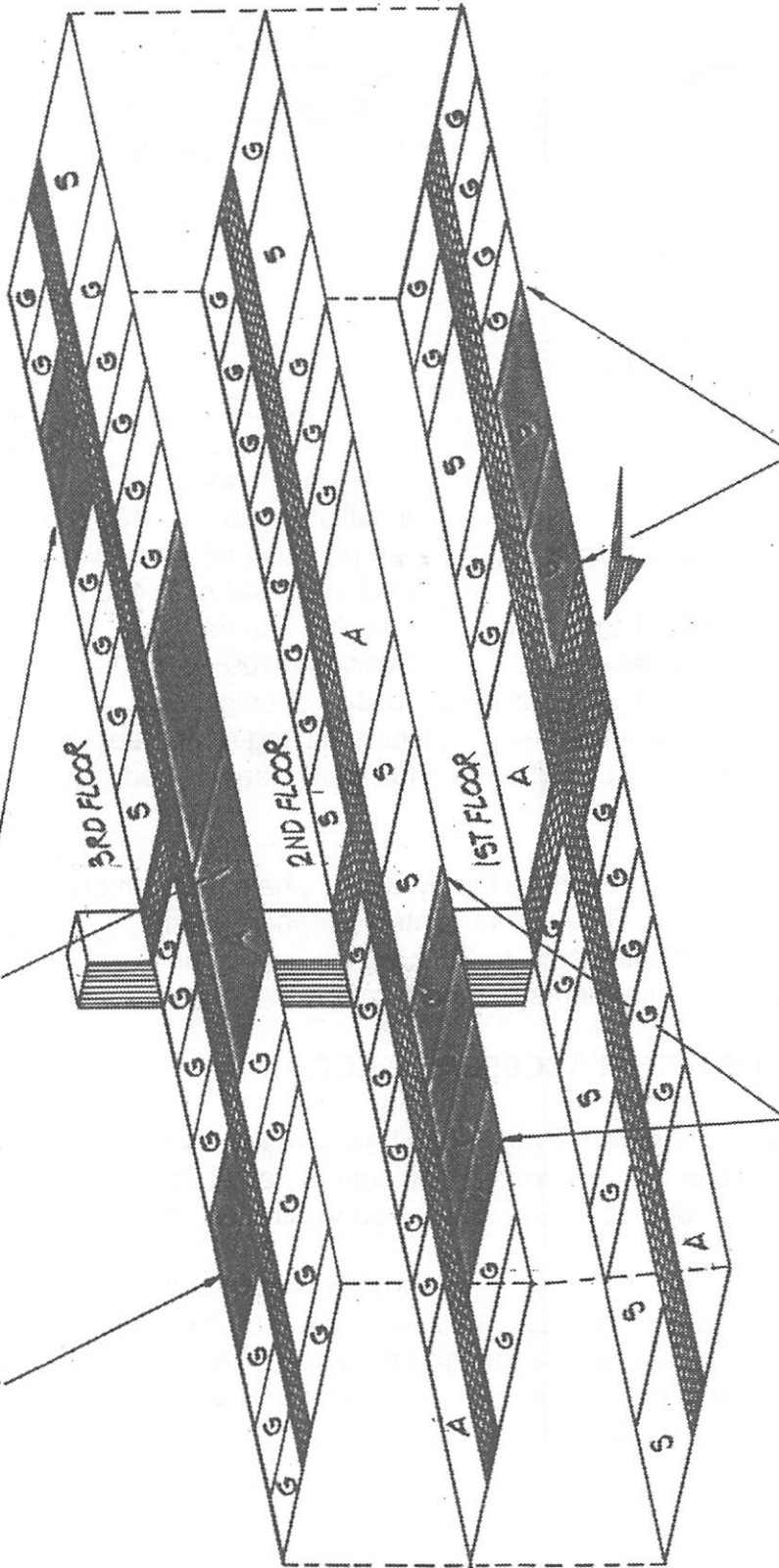
 DENOTES
 29.5.1



29.2.3.1- INTEGRATION - PART 3 (FACILITY WITHOUT ELEVATOR); SITE/BUILDING DESIGN
 PROVIDES FOR GRADE LEVEL ACCESS AT MORE THAN ONE FLOOR - ACCESSIBLE ROOMS
 DISTRIBUTED AMONG FLOOR LEVELS ACCESSED FROM EACH FINISHED GRADE.)

TWO ADJACENT ACCESSIBLE ROOMS MAY BE LOCATED ON OPPOSITE SIDES OF A COMMON WALL OR PARTITION IN ORDER TO FACILITATE INSTALLATION, CONNECTION, AND INSTALLATION OF THE BUILDING SYSTEMS. (EXAMPLE SHOWN ON 3RD FLOOR.)

GUEST ROOMS (G) SUITES (S)
APARTMENT ROOMS (A)
(ROOM DESIGNATIONS USED FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY)



THIS PARAGRAPH DOES NOT PERMIT TWO PAIRS OF TWO ACCESSIBLE ROOMS TO BE PLACED IMMEDIATELY ADJACENT TO EACH OTHER (I.E., 4 ACCESSIBLE ROOMS IN SUCCESSION). (EXAMPLE SHOWN ON 2ND FLOOR)

IF THE MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ROOMS IS 2, THEN PLACING THESE ROOMS ON OPPOSITE SIDES OF A COMMON WALL OR PARTITION SHALL NOT BE PERMITTED. (EXAMPLE SHOWN ON 1ST FLOOR.)

29.2.4- INTEGRATION - PART 4

29.4 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ROOMS FOR PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

29.4.1 All transient lodging buildings and facilities shall provide accessible sleeping rooms or suites in compliance with the following:

ADAAG 9.1.2

TOTAL NUMBER OF ROOMS	MINIMUM NO. OF ROOMS REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE	MINIMUM NO. OF ADDITIONAL ROOMS REQUIRED TO HAVE A ROLL-IN SHOWER	TOTAL NO. OF ACCESSIBLE ROOMS
1 to 25	1 (4%)	0	1
26 to 50	2 (4%)	0	2
51 to 75	3 (4%)	1	4
76 to 100	4 (4%)	1	5
101 to 150	5 (3%)	2	7
151 to 200	6 (3%)	2	8
201 to 300	7 (2%)	3	10
301 to 400	8 (2%)	4	12
401 to 500	9 (2%)	4 plus one for each additional 100 over 400	13+
501 to 1,000	.2% of total	.4 plus one for each additional 100 over 400	13+
1,001 & over	.20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000	4 plus one for each additional 100 over 400	13+

(NOTE: Percentages are shown only for the purposes of calculating the number of accessible beds in homeless shelters having multi-bed rooms or spaces in place of, or in addition to, individual sleeping rooms. See the example following 29.6.2.2.)

ADAAG 9.5.3,
2nd Paragraph

29.4.2 Every room required to be accessible by 29.4.1 shall also comply with 29.5.2, 29.5.3, and 29.5.4. For volume control telephones and visual notification devices compliance with 29.5.5 shall be deemed acceptable in fulfilling the requirements of this Paragraph.

ADAAG
9.2.2(8)

29.4.3 ACCESS TO AND WITHIN ACCESSIBLE ROOMS

29.4.3.1 Each accessible guest room/suite shall have an accessible route leading to and through the unit which shall connect all accessible spaces and elements, including telephones, located within that room/suite.

ADAAG 9.2.2
And 9.2.2(2)

29.4.3.1.1 Within a multi-level room a ramp or elevator shall not be required provided that the accessible spaces identified by 29.4.3.2 and 29.4.5 are located on accessible levels and the accessible sleeping area is suitable for dual occupancy (i.e., either a bed large enough for two persons or two single beds).

ADAAG
9.2.2(2)

29.4.3.2 If the following spaces are provided as part of an accessible room, then they shall be accessible:

- (1) The living area.
- (2) The dining area.
- (3) A minimum of one sleeping area.
- (4) A minimum of one full bathroom (i.e., one room equipped with a watercloset, lavatory, and a bathtub or shower).
- (5) If only half-baths are provided, then a minimum of one half-bath.
- (6) Carports, garages or parking spaces.
- (7) Patios, terraces, or balconies.

**ADAAG
9.2.2(6)**

(NOTE: If weather protection requirements necessitate placement of patios, terraces, or balconies at floor levels other than specified by 3.3.1, then access to these areas shall be provided by extensions of the accessible route: e.g., providing a ramp in compliance with Chapter 5; installing raised decking that permits storm drainage while providing a floor level difference within the tolerances allowed by 3.3.1, or by other extensions of an accessible route that comply with this Code.)

**ADAAG
9.2.2(6)(d),
Exception**

29.4.4 DOORS AND DOORWAYS

29.4.4.1 All doors leading to, and within, all accessible rooms shall comply with Chapter 7.

**Vol. I-C, 4.3.9(b)(1);
ADAAG 9.2.2(3)**

29.4.4.2 Doors and doorways leading to, and within, all other sleeping rooms, suites, or other guest rooms shall comply with 7.2.1 and 7.3.5 only.

ADAAG 9.4

29.4.5 KITCHENS, KITCHENETTES, WET BARS AND SIMILAR AMENITIES

29.4.5.1 If kitchens, kitchenettes, wet bars, or similar amenities are provided within a class of sleeping accommodations, then the same accessible amenities shall be provided within the accessible room(s) found in that sleeping accommodation class.

**ADAAG
9.2.2(7)**

29.4.5.2** Cabinets, counters, and appliances shall have a minimum 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space that provides for a forward or parallel (i.e., side) approach. Fifty percent (50%) minimum of all cabinet shelves shall comply with 16.2.1 or 16.2.2 as applicable. Cabinet/drawer operating hardware shall comply with 20.4. ***Refrigerators shall comply with 30.5.4.4.4.

**ADAAG 9.2.2(7)*
* 9.2.2(7) Says
“Cabinets OR
Refrigerator-
Freezer”; Access
Board Says
Word Is “And”
(Via Phone 3/9/94)**

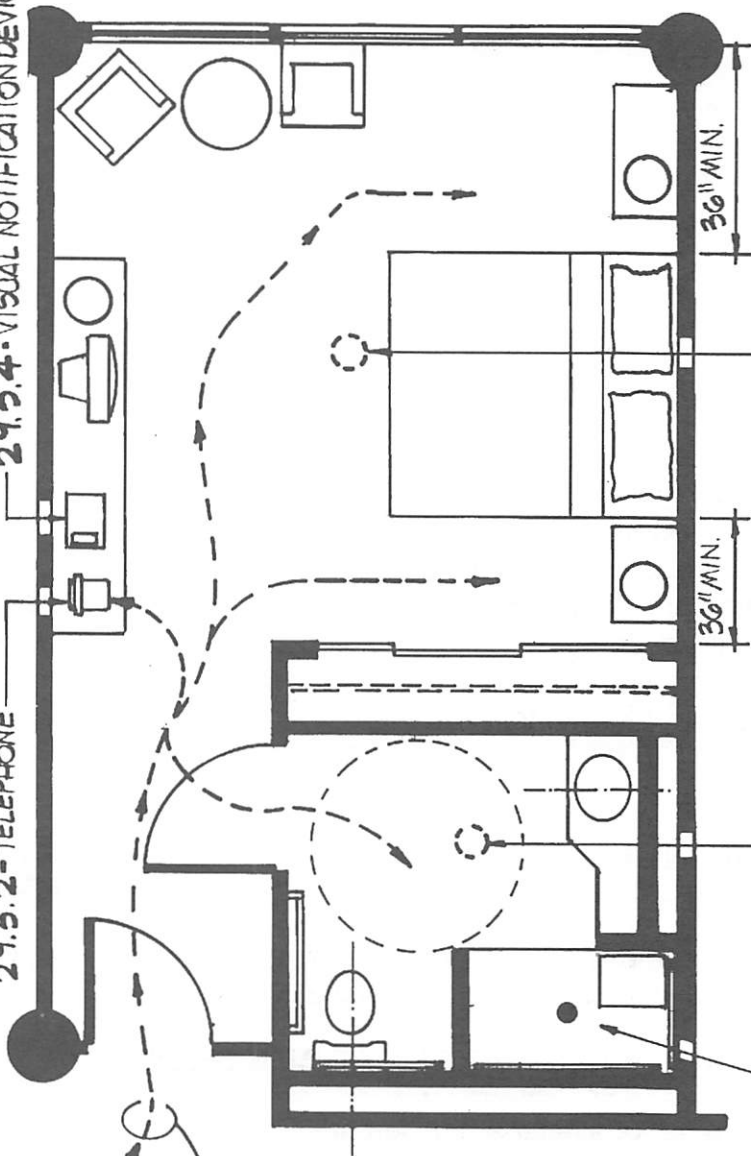
29.4.5.3** Countertops shall be ***located 34 inches minimum to 36 inches maximum (865 mm to 915 mm) above the finished floor. Sinks shall comply with 11.11.3.

ADAAG 9.2.2(7)

29.5.4-VISUAL NOTIFICATION DEVICE

29.5.2-TELEPHONE

29.4.3.1-EACH ACCESSIBLE GUEST ROOM/SUITE SHALL HAVE AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE LEADING TO AND THROUGH THE UNIT WHICH SHALL CONNECT ALL ACCESSIBLE SPACES AND ELEMENTS, INCLUDING TELEPHONES, LOCATED WITHIN THAT ROOM/SUITE. (SEE, ALSO, 29.4.3.1.1 AND 29.4.3.2 [TEXT].)



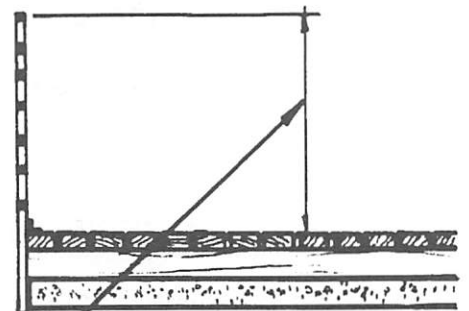
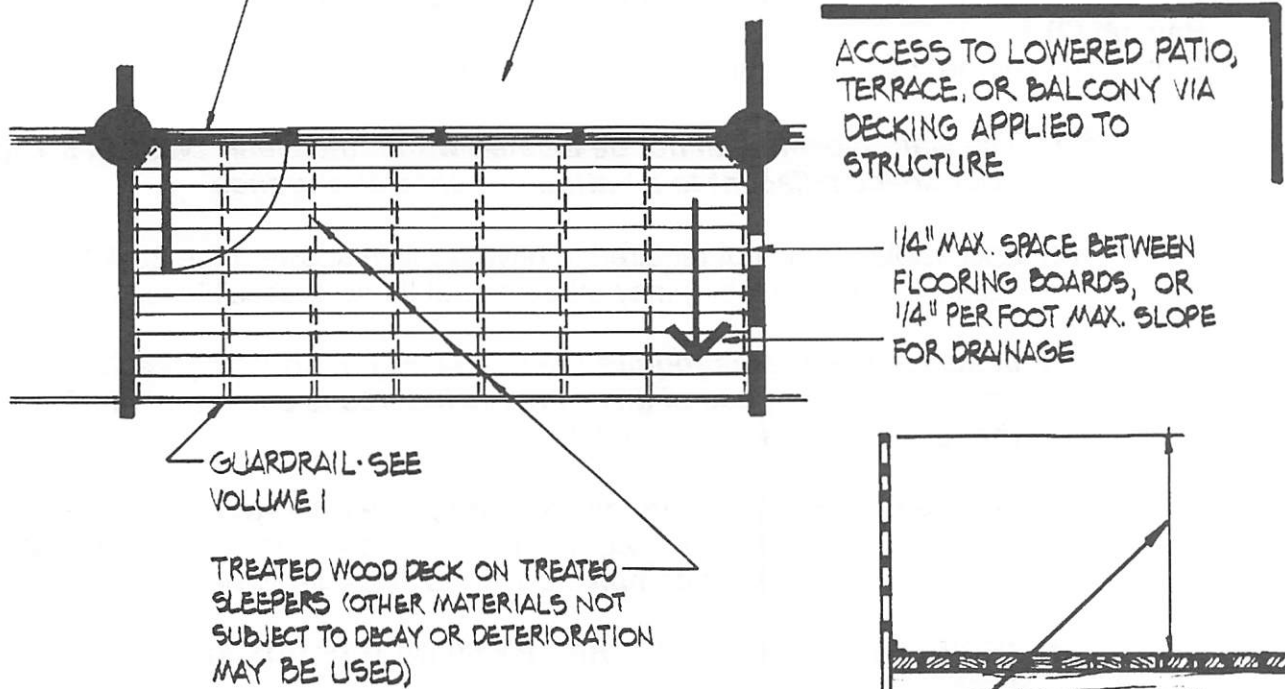
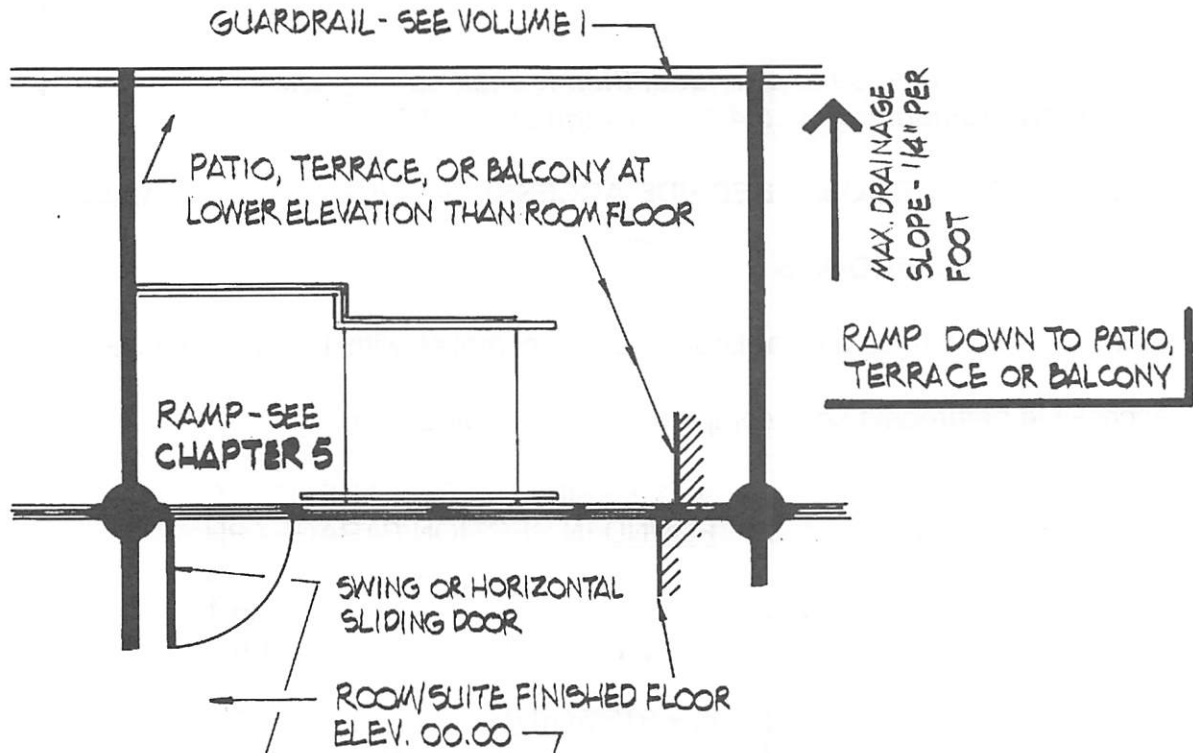
29.4.6- THERE SHALL BE A MINIMUM 36" WIDE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ALONG EACH SIDE OF EACH BED. TWO ADJACENT ACCESSIBLE BEDS MAY SHARE A COMMON CENTER CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.

29.5.3.2-VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCE (SLEEPING AREA[S])

29.5.3.1.1-VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCE (NON-SLEEPING AREA[S])

29.4.7.3-ROLL-IN SHOWER

29.4.3- ACCESS TO AND WITHIN ACCESSIBLE ROOMS



GUARDRAIL HEIGHT IS FROM TOP OF DECKING, NOT TOP OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

29.4.3.2 (7), NOTE -
 ACCESS TO PATIOS, TERRACES, OR BALCONIES LOWERED FOR WEATHER PROTECTION

***29.4.5.4** *If a work top is provided, then it shall comply with the applicable requirements of 30.5.4.1.* Vol. I-C, 5.3.1(a)(4)

***29.4.5.5** *If a cooking appliance is provided, then it shall comply with the applicable requirements of 30.5.4.4.1 through 30.5.4.4.3.* Vol. I-C, 5.3.2(a)

29.4.6 ACCESSIBLE BEDROOMS, BEDSIDE ACCESS: See 28.5.2 ADAAG 9.2.2(1)

29.4.7 ACCESSIBLE BATHROOMS

29.4.7.1 Bathrooms shall have a clear floor area that complies with 11.3.1. Vol. I-C, 5.4.1; ADAAG 9.2.2(6)(e)

29.4.7.2 Accessible bathrooms shall comply with the following table:

<u>TYPE OF ELEMENT</u>	<u>ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOUND IN SECTION/PARAGRAPH</u>	
Grab Bars	11.5	
Watercloset (1)	11.6.1	
Lavatory	11.6.2	
Accessories	11.7	
Transfer Shower: 36" x 36" [915 mm x 915 mm] (2)	12.2	Cross-Ref.
Roll-in Shower: 30" x 60" [760 mm x 1525 mm] (2), (3), (4)	12.3.1	
Full Shower Room: 60" x 60" [1525 mm x 1525 mm] (2),(3),(4)	12.3.2	
Bathtub (2).	12.4	
Roll-in Shower: 36" x 60" [915 mm x 1525 mm] (2), (3).	29.4.7.3	

***1)** *The watercloset shall not be located within the clear floor space adjacent to a bathtub or shower entrance* Vol. I-C, 5.4.4(a)(5)

(2) Accessible rooms not required to have a roll-in shower (see 29.4.1, second column in table) may utilize any of these accessible fixtures.

***3)** *In accessible rooms required to have a roll-in shower (see 29.4.1, third column in table), use of any of these fixtures is acceptable in fulfilling the requirements of 29.4.3.2(4).*

***4)** *For a 30" by 60" (760 mm by 1525 mm) roll-in shower, a seat complying with 12.3.1.6 shall be provided. For a 60" by 60" (1525 mm by 1525 mm) roll-in shower, a seat complying with 12.3.2.4 shall be provided.*

29.4.7.3 ROLL-IN SHOWER: MINIMUM 36 INCHES BY 60 INCHES (915 MM BY 1525 MM)

29.4.7.3.1 A minimum 36 inches (915 mm) wide clear opening shall be provided on the 60 inches (1525 mm) long side of the enclosure. No curb or threshold shall be provided at the entrance opening. ADAAG Fig. 57(b)

29.4.7.3.2 The controls and hand-held shower spray shall comply with 12.2.3 and 12.2.5 and shall be located on the short wall adjacent to the seat. ADAAG Fig. 57(b)

29.4.7.3.3 A folding seat having a 16 inches (405 mm) minimum depth shall be provided on the 24 inches (610 mm) short wall next to the entrance opening and immediately adjacent to the short wall containing the controls and hand-held shower spray. The seat shall comply with 12.2.2(2).

**ADAAG
Figure 57(b)**

29.4.7.3.4 A sidewall grab bar shall be provided on the control wall and a long wall grab bar shall be provided directly opposite the entrance opening. The bar lengths shall equal the nominal lengths of their respective walls. In lieu of two separate grab bars, a single continuous bar may be used. For either application, the mounting height above the finished floor shall comply with 12.2.4.

**ADAAG
Figure 57(b)**

29.4.8 CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS

29.4.8.1 Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with 16.1, 16.2.1 or 16.2.2 (as applicable), and 16.2.3. (See, also, 16.3.)

**Vol. I-C, 4.10;
ADAAG 9.2.2(5)**

29.4.9 STORAGE

29.4.9.1 If fixed or built-in storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets, drawers, etc., are provided, then a minimum of one of each type of storage shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 20.

ADAAG 9.2.2(4)

29.5 SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS FOR PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

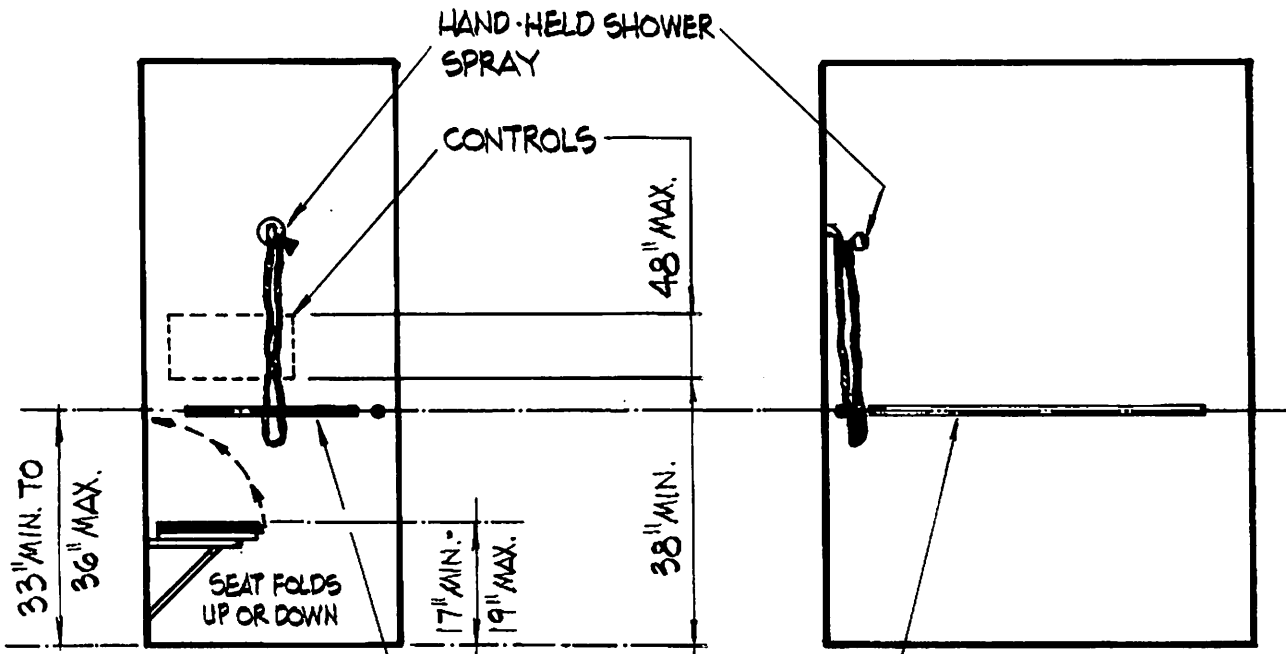
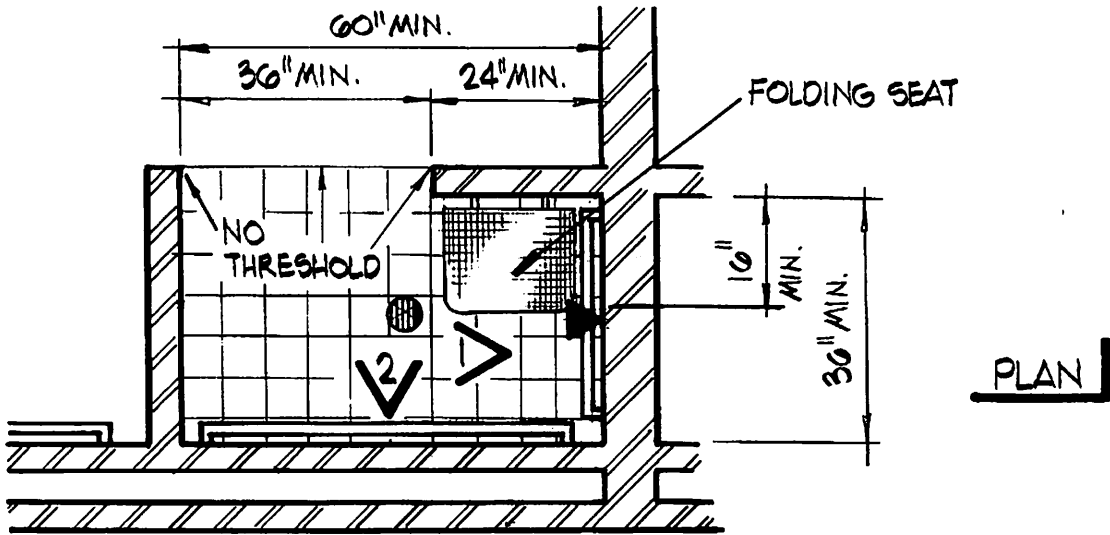
29.5.1 In addition to the number of accessible rooms required by 29.4.1, the number of rooms required to serve persons with hearing impairments shall comply with the following:

<u>TOTAL NUMBER OF ROOMS</u>	<u>MINIMUM NUMBER OF ROOMS REQUIRED TO SERVE HEARING IMPAIRED PERSONS</u>
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9
501 to 1,000	2% of total
1,001 & over	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000

ADAAG 9.1.3

(NOTE: Rooms/suites serving persons with hearing impairments shall only be required to have: doors complying with 29.4.4.2; volume control control telephones; a TDD connection; visual alarm indicating appliances; and visual notification devices.)

**Explanatory Note
Derived From
FR 7/26/91 At
35448**



NOTE: A CONTINUOUS GRAB BAR MAY BE USED IN LIEU OF 2 SEPARATE BARS.

1) CONTROL WALL ELEVATION

2) LONG WALL ELEVATION

29.4.7.3 - ROLL-IN SHOWER: MINIMUM 36" x 60"

29.5.2 TELEPHONES

29.5.2.1 Permanently installed telephones shall be equipped with volume control in compliance with 14.2.5.1. (See, also, 29.5.5.) ADAAG 9.3.1

***29.5.2.2** In addition 29.5.2.1, each room having a permanently installed telephone shall also be equipped with an electrical outlet for a TDD connection. Such outlet shall be located within 48 inches (1220 mm) *horizontally of a telephone connection. The height above the finished floor shall comply with 16.2.1.* ADAAG 9.3.1

29.5.3 VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES

29.5.3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

***29.5.3.1.1** *The requirements of this sub-Section shall apply to indicating appliances provided in sleeping areas. Indicating appliances provided in non-sleeping areas shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 17.* Scope

***29.5.3.1.2** *If multiple sleeping rooms are provided, then an indicating appliance(s) shall be provided in each sleeping room.* Derived From
NFPA 72, A-6-4.4.1.1(a)

***29.5.3.1.3** *Indicating appliances shall be permanently installed.* Vol. I, 905.1.1

29.5.3.2 LOCATION, INTENSITY, AND MOUNTING HEIGHT

***29.5.3.2.1** *For sleeping rooms having 16 feet (4.9 m) maximum linear dimensions the indicating appliance shall comply with the following:*

DISTANCE FROM CEILING TO TOP OF APPLIANCE LENS	MINIMUM CANDELA (cd) RATING
<i>Equal to, or greater than, 24 inches (610 mm or more)</i>	<i>110 cd</i>
<i>Less than 24 inches (609 mm or less)</i>	<i>177 cd</i>

NFPA 72,
6-4.4.3.2;

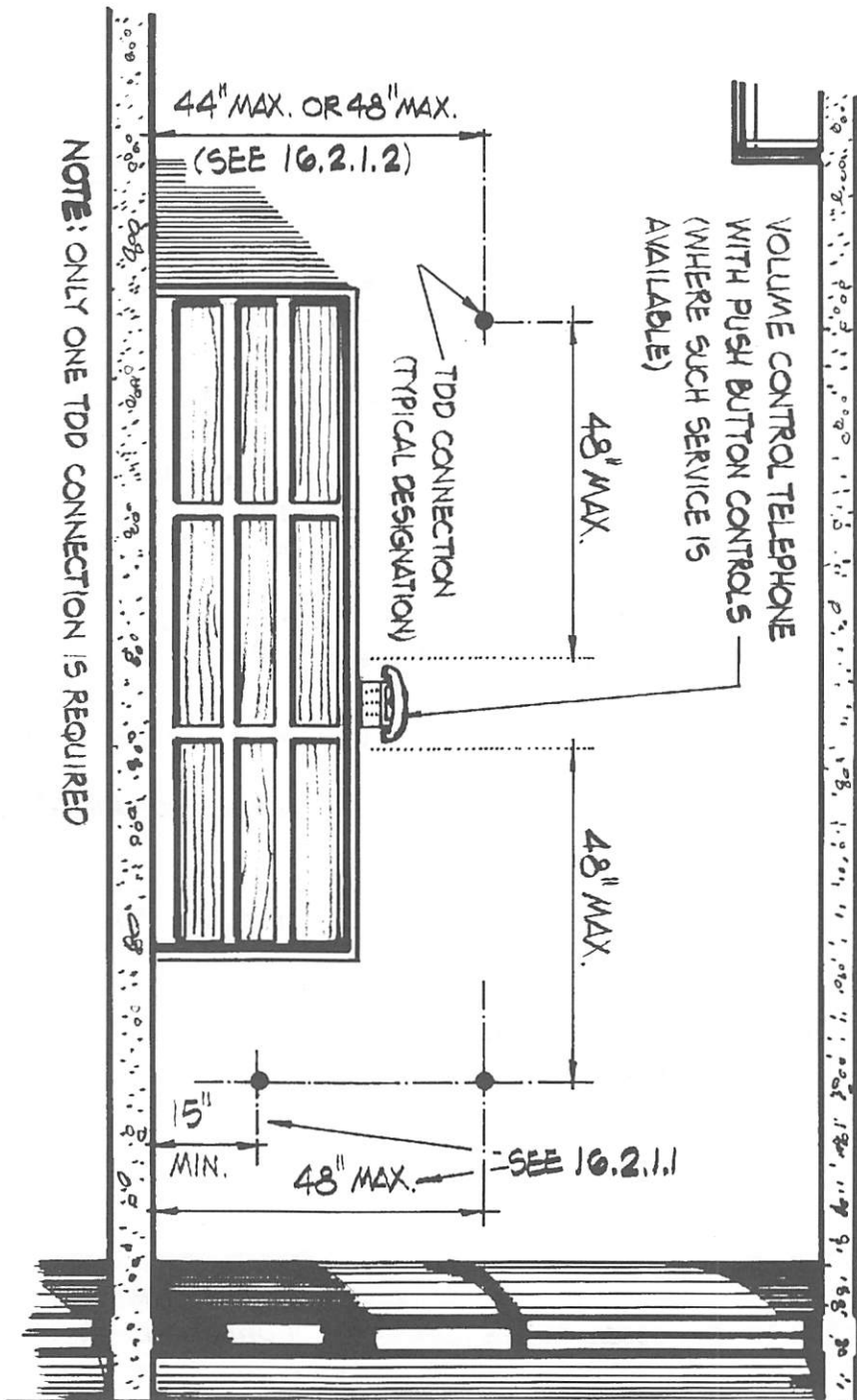
***29.5.3.2.2** *If any linear room dimension exceeds 16 feet (4.9 m), then a minimum of one indicating appliance shall be located within 16 feet (4.9 m) of the pillow.* Table 6-4.4.3.2

29.5.4 VISUAL NOTIFICATION DEVICES

29.5.4.1 Visual notification devices shall be provided in units, sleeping rooms, and suites. ADAAG 9.3.1

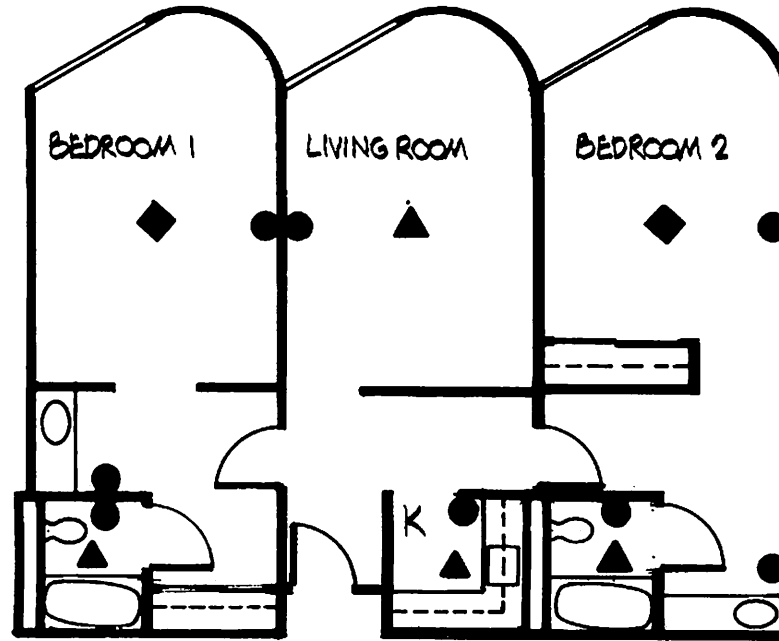
29.5.4.2 Such devices shall provide a visual indication to alert room occupants of an incoming telephone call and that a party outside the room is knocking on the door or is ringing the doorbell. ADAAG 9.3.1

NOTE: THE REQUIREMENTS SHOWN BELOW APPLY TO 29.4.1 AND 29.5.1



29.5.2 - TELEPHONES

NOTE:
 THE REQUIREMENTS SHOWN
 HERE APPLY TO 29.4.1
AND 29.5.1



LEGEND:

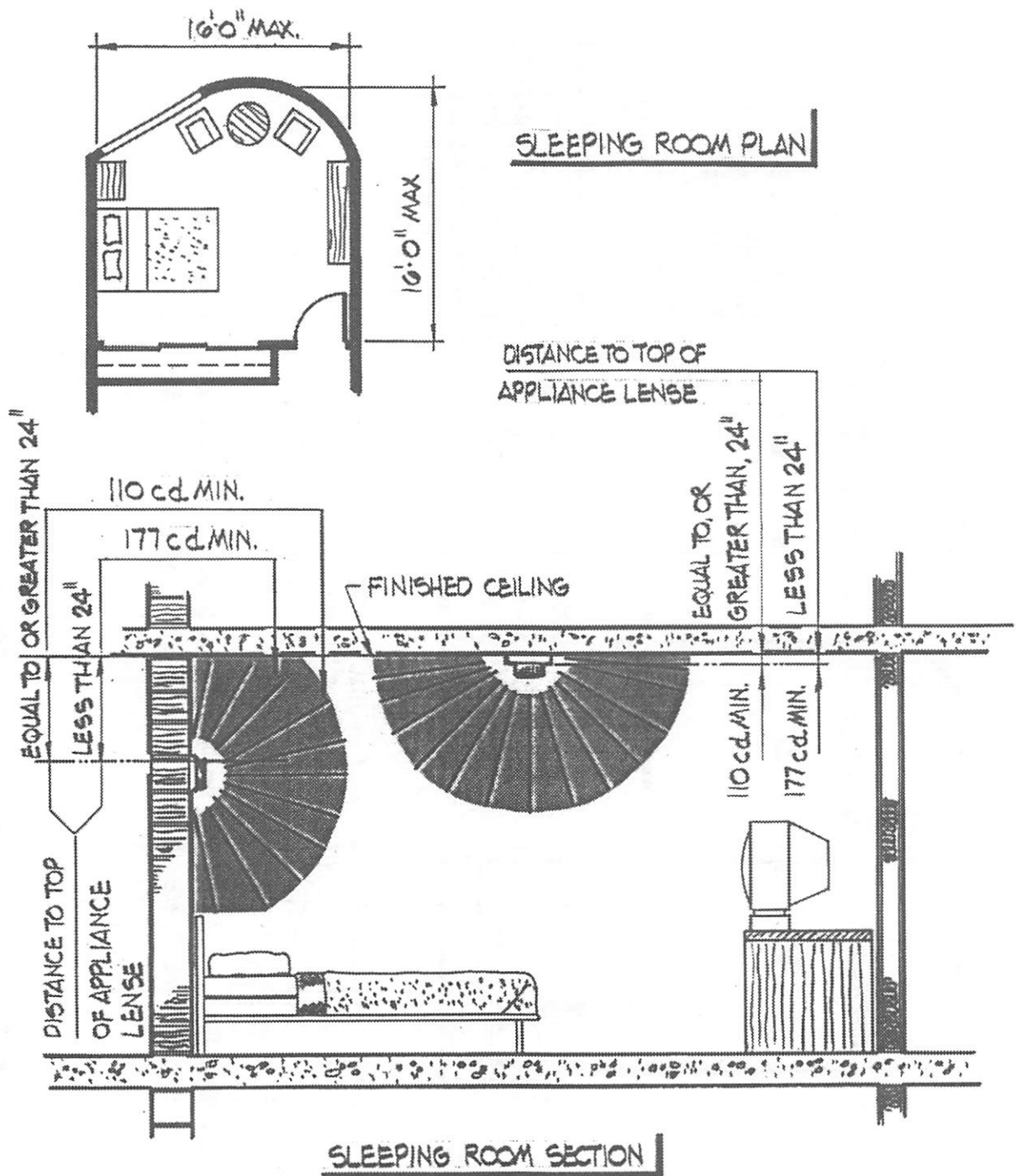
- ▲ VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCE IN COMPLIANCE WITH CHAPTER 17 (NON-SLEEPING AREAS)
- ◆ VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCE IN COMPLIANCE WITH 29.5.3.1.2 AND 29.5.3.2
- VISUAL NOTIFICATION DEVICE (SEE 29.5.4-TEXT) NUMBER AND LOCATION DEPENDENT UPON ACTUAL NUMBER OF ROOMS AND CONFIGURATION

29.5.4.3-WHETHER PERMANENTLY INSTALLED OR PROVIDED IN COMPLIANCE WITH 29.5.5, NOTIFICATION DEVICES SHALL NOT BE CONNECTED TO AN ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCE.

ROOMS HAVING MULTIPLE CEILING PLANES AND/OR NON-RECTANGULAR SHAPES MAY REQUIRE MULTIPLE VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES

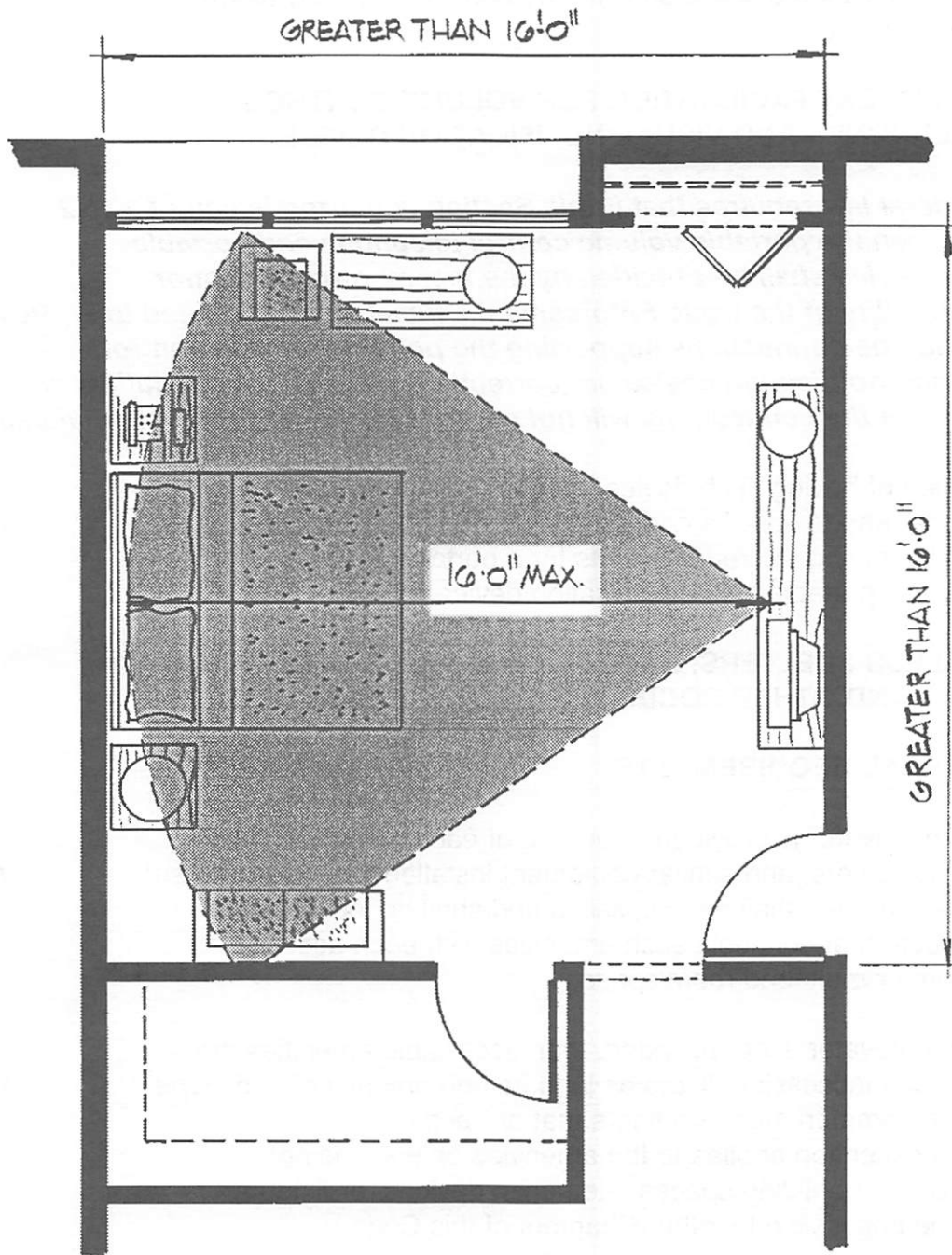
29.5.3-VISUAL ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES

29.5.4-VISUAL NOTIFICATION DEVICES



NOTE: THE REQUIREMENTS SHOWN HERE APPLY TO 29.4.1 AND 29.5.1

29.5.3.2.1 - LOCATION, INTENSITY, AND MOUNTING HEIGHT



29.5.3.2.2 - IF ANY LINEAR ROOM DIMENSION EXCEEDS 16 FEET, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE INDICATING APPLIANCE SHALL BE LOCATED WITH 16 FEET OF THE PILLOW.

29.5.3.2 - LOCATION, INTENSITY, AND MOUNTING HEIGHT

29.5.4.3 Whether permanently installed or provided in compliance with 29.5.5, notification devices shall not be connected to any alarm indicating appliance(s).

ADAAG 9.3.1

29.5.5 EQUIVALENT FACILITATION FOR VOLUME CONTROL TELEPHONES AND VISUAL NOTIFICATION DEVICES

*** (NOTE: Federal law requires that if this Section is utilized in lieu of 29.5.2 and 29.5.4, then the portable volume control telephone and portable notification device shall be provided by the facility owner/operator. The responsibility of the Code Enforcement Official shall be limited to ensuring that the connections supporting the portable volume control telephone and notification device are correctly installed, that the outlets are active, and that the connections will not present a hazard to the potential user.)**

Defines
C.E.O.
Responsibilities

29.5.5.1 In lieu of having such devices permanently in place a separate electrical outlet and telephone connection shall be installed each independently serving the requirements for a portable volume control telephone and a portable visual notification device.

ADAAG 9.3.2

29.6 HOMELESS SHELTERS, HALFWAY HOUSES, TRANSIENT GROUP HOMES AND OTHER SOCIAL SERVICE ESTABLISHMENTS

29.6.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

29.6.1.1 If an elevator is provided, then one of each type of amenity (e.g., washers, dryers, and similar equipment installed for occupant use) in each common area shall be accessible and shall be located on an accessible route that connects such amenities with each accessible sleeping room or multi-bed room/space.

ADAAG 9.5.1

29.6.1.2 If an elevator is not provided, then accessible amenities are not required on inaccessible floors as long as one amenity of each type is provided in common areas on floors that are accessible.

ADAAG 9.5.1,
Exception

(NOTE: This exception applies to the amenities only and is not applicable to other building spaces, elements, devices, or fixtures required to be accessible by other Chapters of this Code.)

29.6.2 SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS FOR PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

29.6.2.1 If individual sleeping rooms are provided, then the number of rooms required to be accessible shall comply with 29.4.1. Each accessible sleeping room shall comply with 29.4.2, and the applicable requirements of 29.4.3 through 29.4.9.

ADAAG 9.5.3

29.6.2.2 If multi-bed rooms or spaces are provided in lieu of individual rooms, then the number of beds required to be accessible shall be equal to the percentage represented by the Table in 29.4.1. If more than one multi-bed room or space is provided, then the number of accessible beds shall be distributed among the several rooms. For the clear floor space at an accessible bed(s) see 28.5.2.

ADAAG 9.5.3

(**E.G.:** In a homeless shelter having a total of 54 beds, the minimum number of accessible beds is: $54 \times .04 = 2.16 = 2$.)

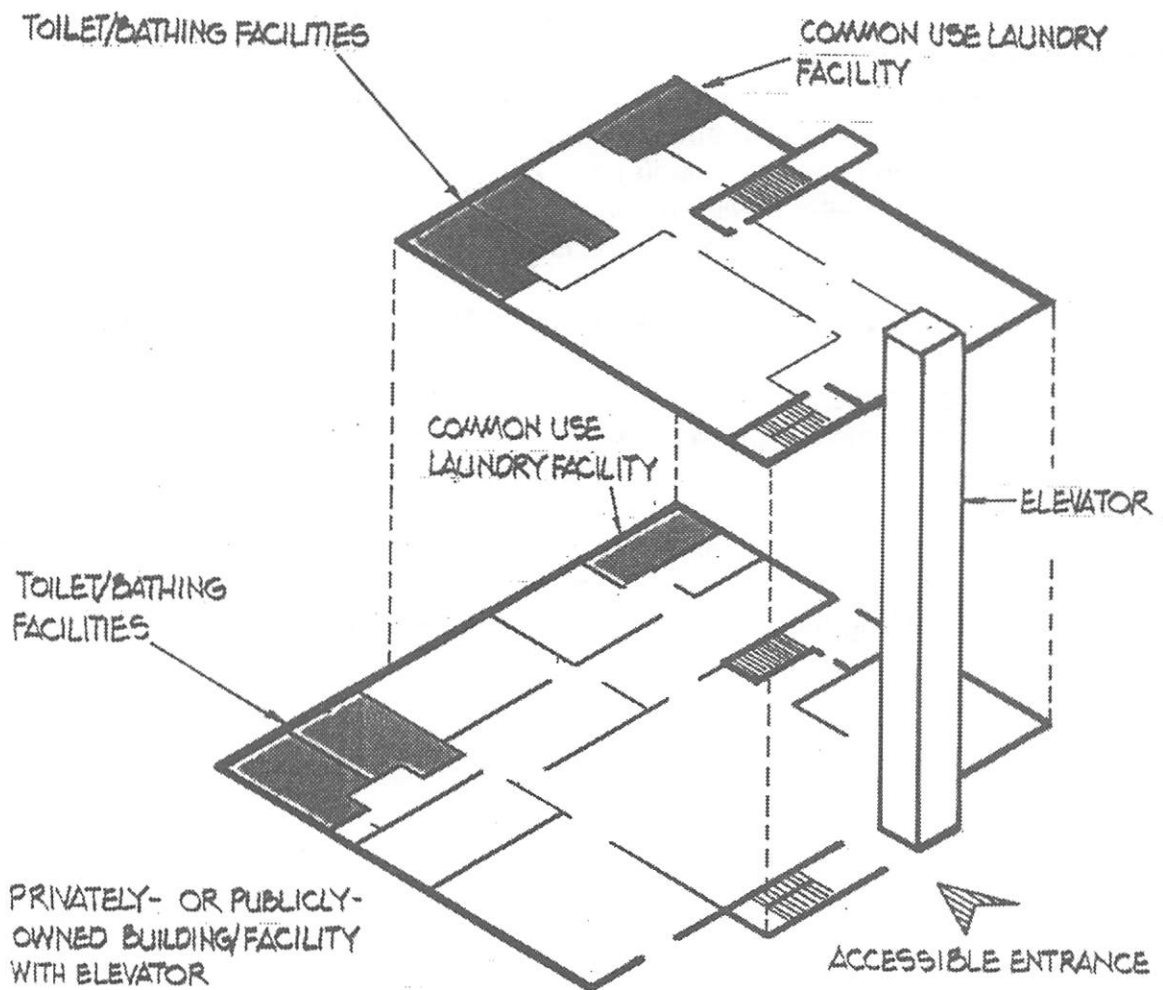
29.6.3 SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS FOR PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

29.6.3.1 In addition to the accessible rooms required by 29.6.2.1, if individual sleeping rooms are provided, then the number of rooms required to serve persons with hearing impairments shall comply with 29.5.1.

ADAAG 9.5.3

29.6.3.2 Each room required to serve hearing impaired persons shall comply with 29.5.2, 29.5.3, and 29.5.4. Compliance with 29.5.5 shall be acceptable in fulfilling the requirements of this Paragraph.

ADAAG 9.5.3

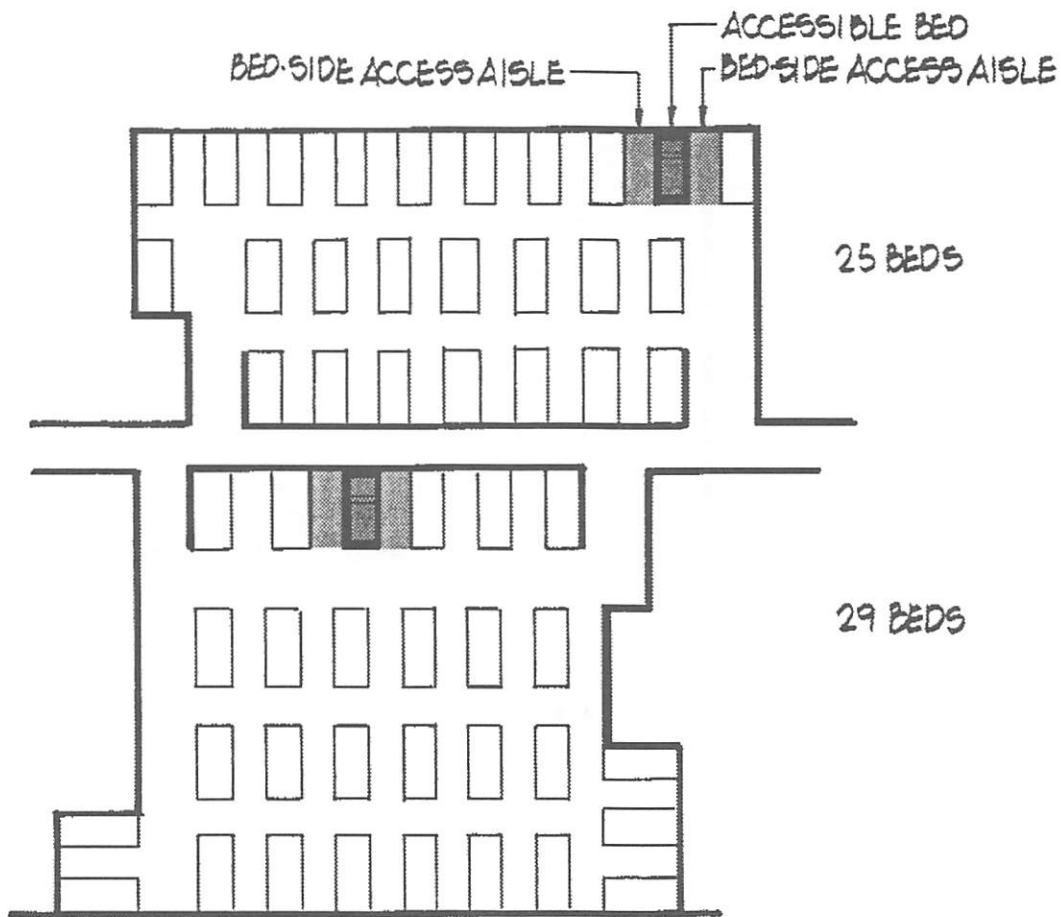


29.6.1.1- IF AN ELEVATOR IS PROVIDED, THEN ONE OF EACH TYPE OF AMENITY (E.G., WASHERS, DRYERS, AND SIMILAR EQUIPMENT INSTALLED FOR OCCUPANT USE) IN EACH COMMON AREA SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE AND SHALL BE LOCATED ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE THAT CONNECTS SUCH AMENITIES WITH EACH ACCESSIBLE SLEEPING ROOM OR MULTI-BED ROOM/SPACE.

29.6.1.2- IF AN ELEVATOR IS NOT PROVIDED, THEN ACCESSIBLE AMENITIES ARE NOT REQUIRED ON INACCESSIBLE FLOORS AS LONG AS ONE AMENITY OF EACH TYPE IS PROVIDED IN COMMON AREAS ON FLOOR THAT ARE ACCESSIBLE.

(NOTE: THIS EXCEPTION APPLIES TO THE AMENITIES ONLY AND IS NOT APPLICABLE TO OTHER BUILDING SPACES, ELEMENTS, DEVICES OR FIXTURES REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE BY OTHER CHAPTERS OF THIS CODE.)

29.6.1- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



29.6.2.2- IF MULTI-BED ROOMS OR SPACES ARE PROVIDED IN LIEU OF INDIVIDUAL ROOMS, THEN THE NUMBER OF BEDS REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE SHALL BE EQUAL TO THE PERCENTAGE REPRESENTED BY THE TABLE IN 29.4.1. IF MORE THAN ONE MULTI-BED ROOM OR SPACE IS PROVIDED, THEN THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE BEDS SHALL BE DISTRIBUTED AMONG THE SEVERAL ROOMS.

EXAMPLE (BASED ON ABOVE ILLUSTRATION):

$$29 + 25 = 54 \text{ TOTAL BEDS}$$

$$54 \times .04 = 2.16 = 2 \text{ BEDS MINIMUM}$$

DISTRIBUTION: 1 ACCESSIBLE BED PER ROOM

FOR SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS SERVING HEARING IMPAIRED PERSONS SEE 29.6.3 (TEXT).

29.6.2- SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS FOR PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

**CHAPTER 30
MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS**

30.1 SCOPE

30.1.1 This Chapter shall apply to all residential multi-family facilities having dwelling units for lease, rent, or sale that are either:

- Privately-Owned with four (4) or more covered multi-family dwellings; or
- Publicly-Owned with one (1) or more covered multi-family dwellings.

(NOTE: This Chapter regulates only the Privately-Owned multi-family dwelling having four [4] or more units or, the Publicly-Owned multi-family dwelling having one [1] or more units. Except for 30.1.3, this Code does not regulate the single-family residence.)

GS41A;

Title II:
Program Access

FR 1/23/89
At 3244

30.1.2 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") AND FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS

30.1.2.1 PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING

(NOTE: In conjunction with this Section see, also, 30.2.4.1, 30.2.7, 30.2.8, 30.3.3, 30.3.4, and 30.4.1.5.)

30.1.2.1.1 Facilities having four (4) or more covered multi-family dwellings for sale shall be accessible ("B" units).

GS41A-3(1a)(a),
GS41A-3(1a)(b),
FHAA 100.201

30.1.2.1.2 Facilities having four (4) to ten (10) covered multi-family dwellings for lease or rent shall be accessible ("B" units).

GS41A-3(1a)(a),
GS41A-3(1a)(b),
FHAA 100.201

30.1.2.1.3 Facilities having eleven (11) or more covered multi-family dwellings for lease or rent shall comply with the following:

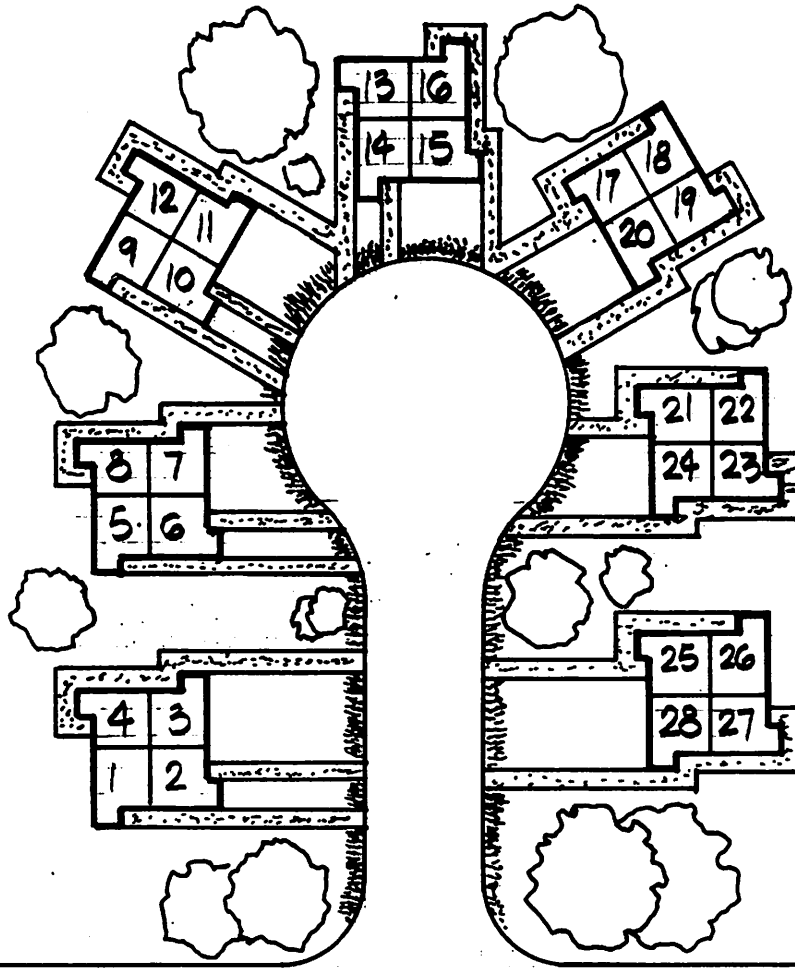
- (1) Five percent (5%) of the total number, or a minimum of one, (whichever is the greater number) shall be fully accessible ("A" units) or adaptable to be fully accessible (see 30.2.2 for "Adaptable Dwelling Units"); and

Vol. I-C,
5.2(a)

- (2) All others shall be accessible ("B" units).

(NOTE: If an elevator is not provided and each ground floor accessible ["B"] unit is served from finished grade by its own entrance, or if an elevator is not provided for an individual building[s] having one or more common entrances, then the number of ground floor accessible ["B"] units may be reduced due to Site Impracticality [see 30.2.8.1 and 30.2.8.2].)

GS41A-4;
HUD Letter-
4/26/91

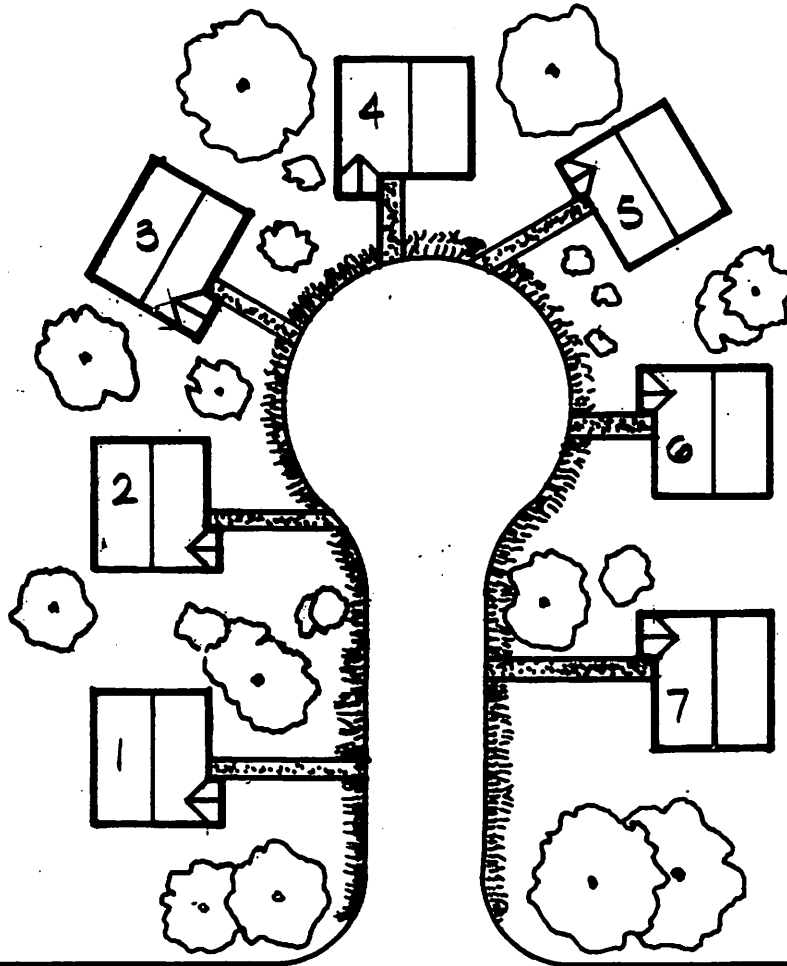


30.1.2.1.1 - FACILITIES HAVING 4 OR MORE COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS FOR SALE SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE ("B" UNITS - COMPLY WITH 30.4 ONLY).

EXAMPLE: 28 ONE-STORY CONDOMINIUMS ALL OF WHICH ARE "B" UNITS (I.E., COMPLY WITH 30.4 ONLY).

30.1.2.1 - PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING

30.1.2 - NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") AND FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS

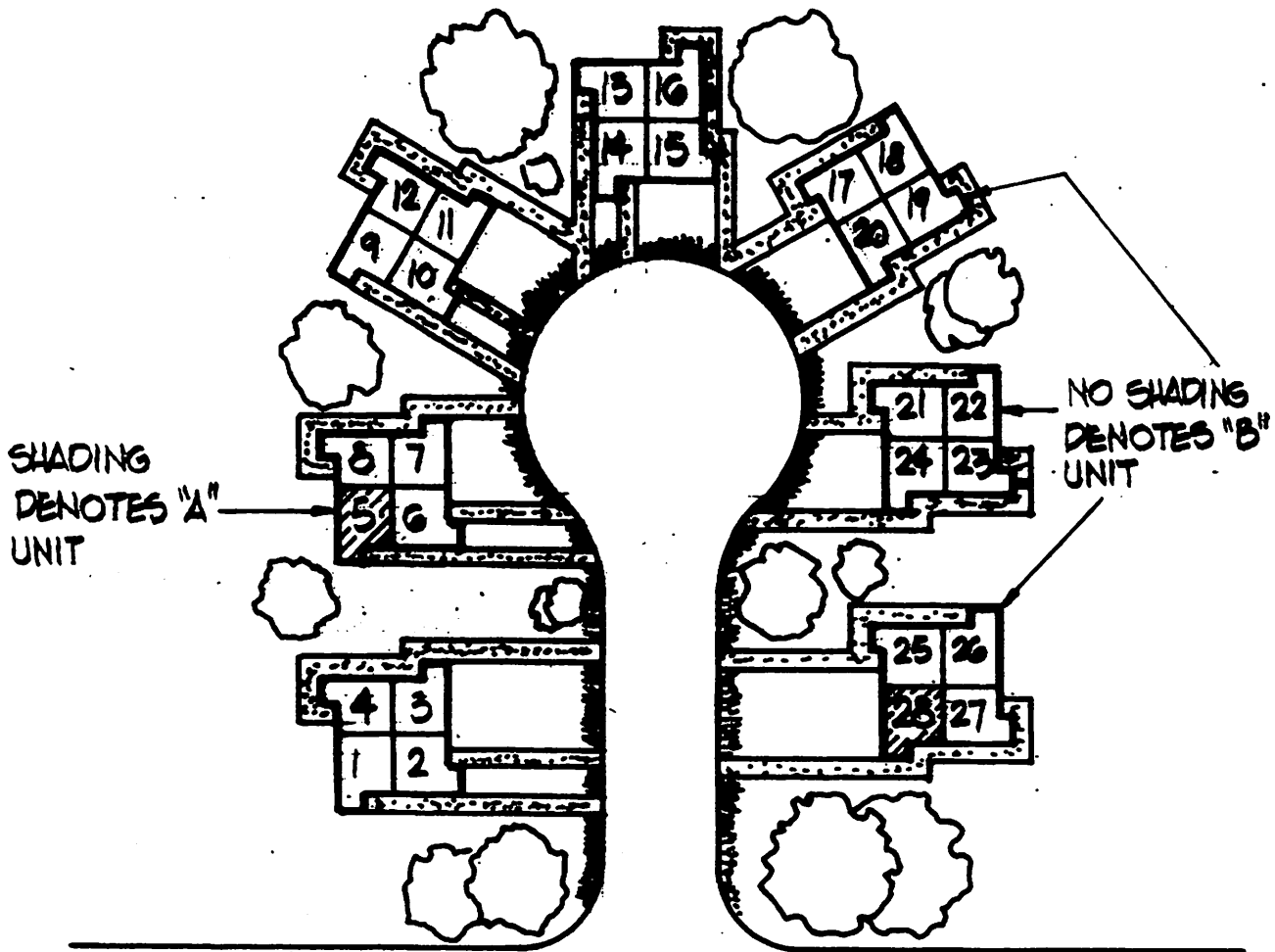


30.1.2.1.2- FACILITIES HAVING 4 TO 10 COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS FOR LEASE OR RENT SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE ("B" UNITS-COMPLY WITH 30.4 ONLY).

EXAMPLE: 7 RENTAL UNITS ALL OF WHICH ARE "B" UNITS (I.E., COMPLY WITH 30.4 ONLY).

30.1.2.1- PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING

30.1.2- NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") AND FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS



30.1.2.1.3 FACILITIES HAVING 11 OR MORE COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS FOR LEASE OR RENT SHALL COMPLY WITH THE FOLLOWING:

- (1) 5% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER) SHALL BE FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A" UNITS) OR ADAPTABLE TO BE FULLY ACCESSIBLE (SEE 30.2.2 FOR "ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNITS); AND
- (2) ALL OTHERS SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE ("B" UNITS).

(NOTE: IF AN ELEVATOR IS NOT PROVIDED AND EACH GROUND FLOOR ACCESSIBLE ["B"] UNIT IS SERVED FROM FINISHED GRADE BY ITS OWN ENTRANCE, THEN THE NUMBER OF GROUND FLOOR-ACCESSIBLE ["B"] UNITS MAY BE REDUCED DUE TO SITE IMPRACTICALITY [SEE 30.2.8.1 AND 30.2.8.2]).

EXAMPLE (BASED ON ABOVE ILLUSTRATION): 28 ONE-STORY DWELLING UNITS

NUMBER OF "A" UNITS = $28 \times .05 = 1.4 = \text{MIN. } 2$

NUMBER OF "B" UNITS = 26

**30.1.2.1--PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING
30.1.2--NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") AND FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS**

30.1.2.2 PUBLICLY-OWNED HOUSING

**Title II Scope
Greater Than
GS41A**

30.1.2.2.1 Facilities having one (1) or more covered multi-family dwelling units for sale shall be accessible ("B" units).

30.1.2.2.2 Facilities having one (1) or more covered multi-family dwellings for lease or rent shall comply with the following:

- (1) Five percent (5%) of the total number, or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number) shall be fully accessible ("A" units); and

**Vol. I-C,
5.2(a)**

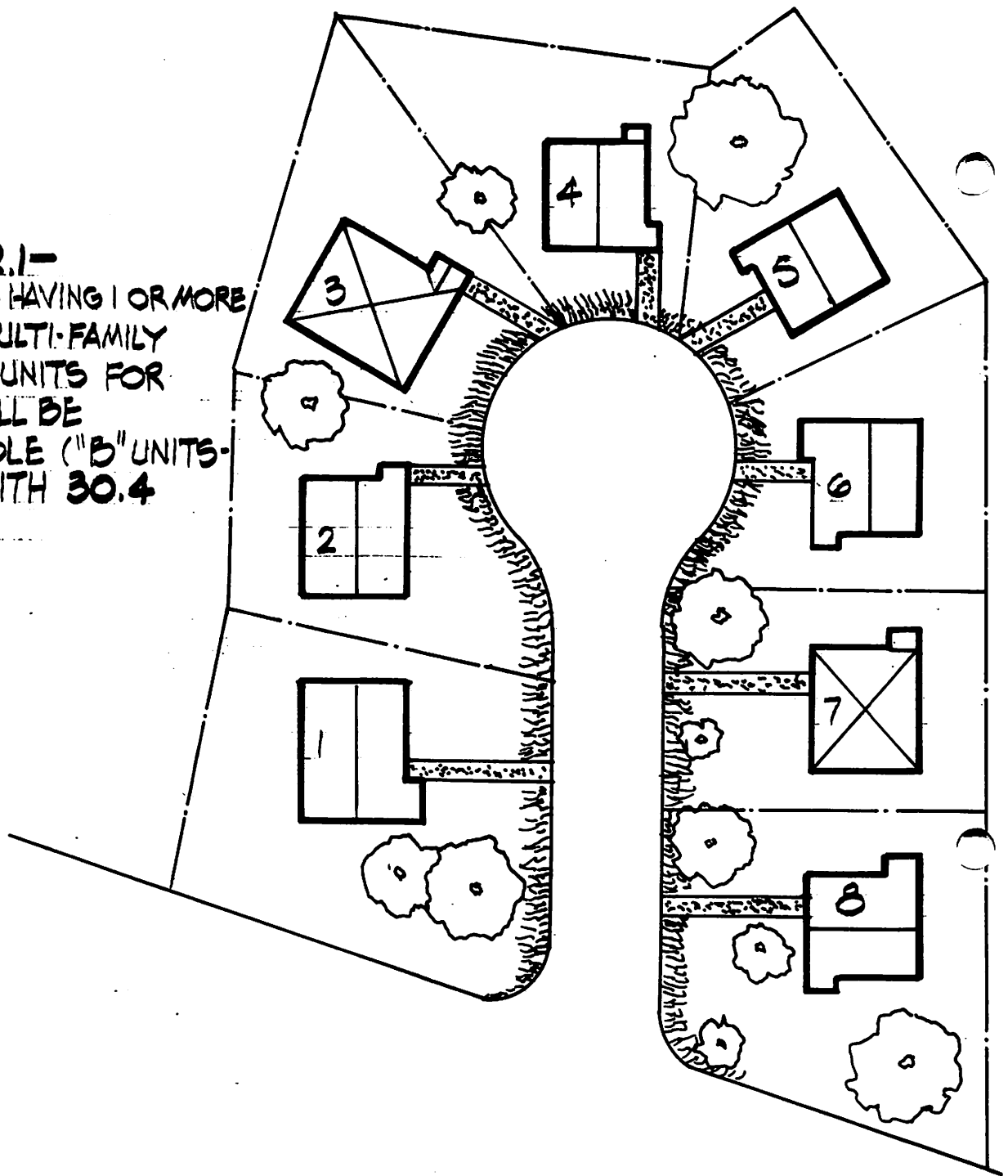
- (2) All others shall be accessible ("B" units).

**GS41A;
HUD Letter-4/26/91**

30.1.3 In addition to 30.1.2.1 and 30.1.2.2, if a private or public entity provides a specific residence for a specific employee position (e.g., building manager, Governor's Mansion, Mayor's Residence, house for university President, etc.), then each specific purpose dwelling unit shall be fully accessible ("A" unit) or adaptable to be fully accessible.

**Title I (Non-
Discrimination
In Employment)**

30.1.2.2.1-
FACILITIES HAVING 1 OR MORE
COVERED MULTI-FAMILY
DWELLING UNITS FOR
SALE SHALL BE
ACCESSIBLE ("B" UNITS-
COMPLY WITH 30.4
ONLY).



30.1.2.2 - PUBLICLY-OWNED HOUSING

**30.1.2 - NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") AND
FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS**

30.1.2--NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") AND FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS

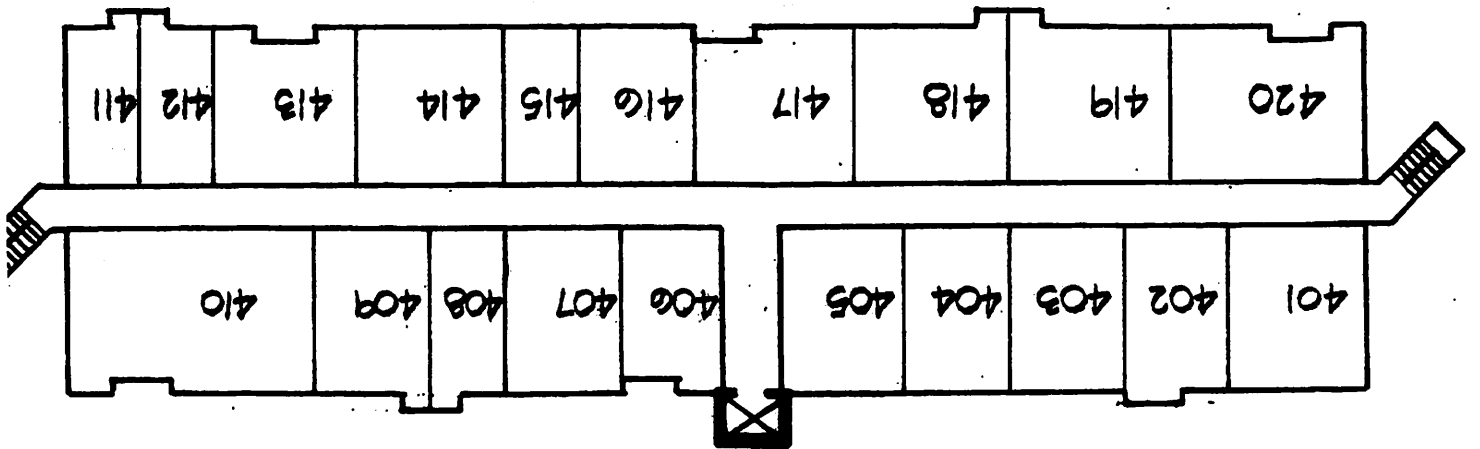
30.1.2.2--PUBLICLY-OWNED HOUSING

EXAMPLE (BASED ON THE ABOVE ILLUSTRATION):

(1) 4-STORY BUILDING WITH 20 APARTMENTS PER FLOOR = 80 TOTAL;
 (2) 80 X .05 = MINIMUM 4 FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS
 COMPLYING WITH 30.5; AND
 (3) 76 ACCESSIBLE ("B") DWELLING UNITS COMPLYING WITH 30.4.

30.1.2.2.2--FACILITIES HAVING 1 OR MORE COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS FOR LEASE OR RENT SHALL COMPLY WITH THE FOLLOWING:

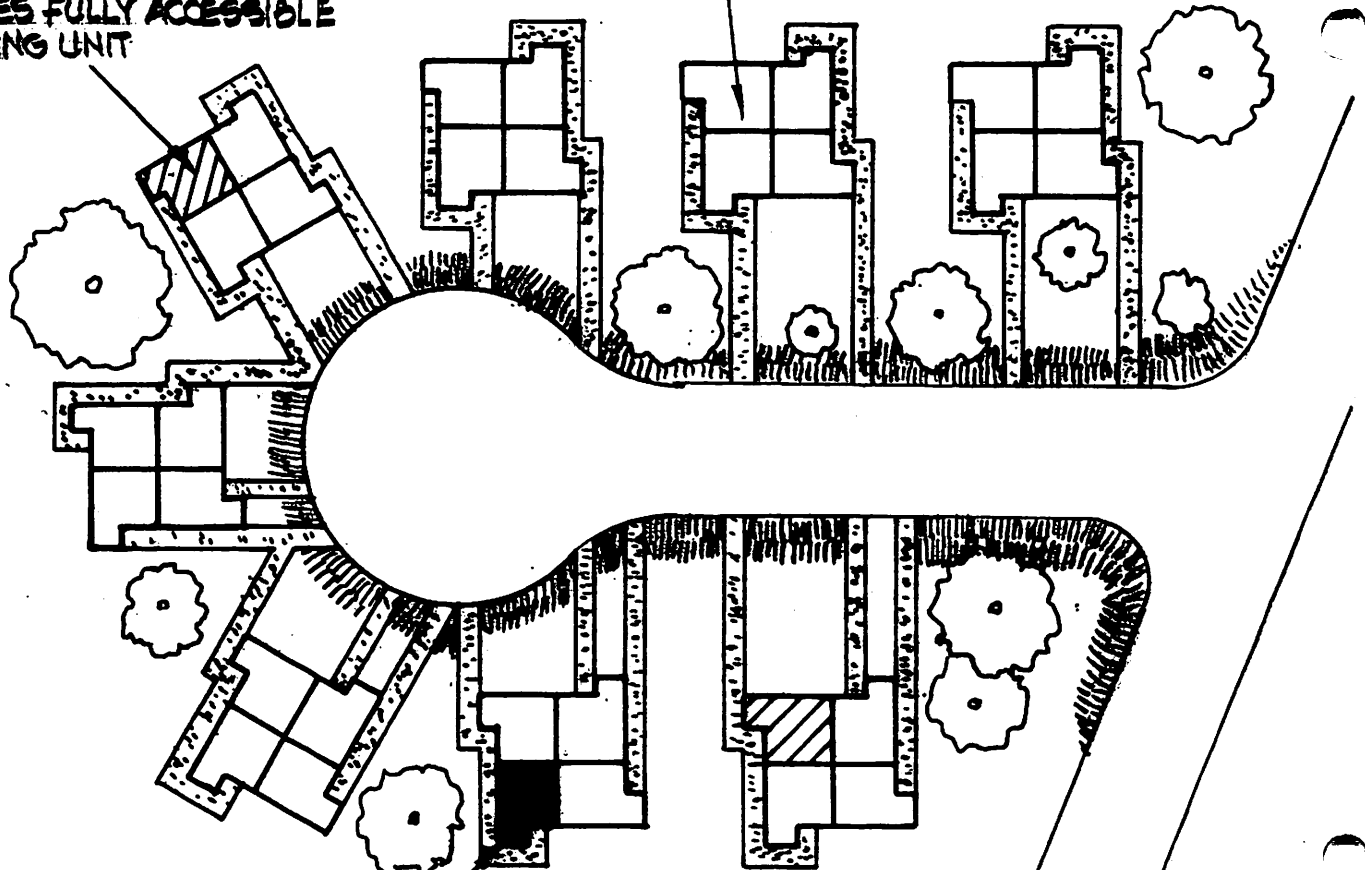
(1) 5% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER) SHALL BE FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") UNITS COMPLYING WITH 30.5; AND (2) ALL OTHERS SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE ("B") UNITS COMPLYING WITH 30.4).



ELEVATOR - REQUIRED IN ALL MULTI-STORY PUBLICLY-OWNED BUILDINGS (SEE 15.2.1)

DENOTES ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNIT

DENOTES FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNIT



DENOTES PROPERTY MANAGER'S DWELLING UNIT

30.1.3- IN ADDITION TO 30.1.2.1 AND 30.1.2.2, IF A PRIVATE OR PUBLIC ENTITY PROVIDES A SPECIFIC RESIDENCE FOR A SPECIFIC EMPLOYEE POSITION (E.G., BUILDING MANAGER, GOVERNOR'S MANSION, MAYOR'S RESIDENCE, HOUSE FOR A UNIVERSITY PRESIDENT, ETC.), THEN EACH SPECIFIC PURPOSE DWELLING UNIT SHALL BE FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A" UNIT) OR ADAPTABLE TO BE FULLY ACCESSIBLE.

30.1.3-SPECIFIC RESIDENCE(S) FOR SPECIFIC EMPLOYEE POSITION(S)

30.2 DEFINITIONS

30.2.1 ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNIT (A.K.A., "B" DWELLING UNIT)

A dwelling unit that complies with 30.4 only.

GS41A-4(2c)

30.2.2 ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNITS

30.2.2.1 "Adaptable" means those walls or partitions that have been designated as grab bar locations and have been suitably reinforced to withstand a 250 pound (113 Kg) load that can be applied to the grab bar in any direction anywhere along its length. Such grab bars shall be installed within the dwelling unit at such time prior to a disabled person actually establishing residence (if such installation has not already taken place at the time the unit was constructed).

Vol. I-C, 5.4.1(a);
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(5);
FR 3/6/91 At 9480

30.2.2.1.1 "Adaptable" shall not be applied to:

- (1) Common use areas;
- (2) An accessible route to and through the dwelling unit;
- (3) Doors that allow passage into, within, and through the unit;
- (4) Light switches, electrical outlets, thermostats, and other controls and operating mechanisms; and
- (5) The clear floor space within kitchens and baths.

GS41A-4(2c)1, 2,
3, 4, And 6;
FR 3/6/91 At 9480

(NOTE: Elements not specifically identified in this Paragraph are subject to adaptability [e.g., removable cabinets under a kitchen sink or bathroom lavatory; lowering of a closet clothes hanger rod; a kitchen base cabinet that can be removed and replaced with an accessible work top; etc.]. The examples given are illustrative, not exhaustive.)

30.2.3 COMMON USE AREAS

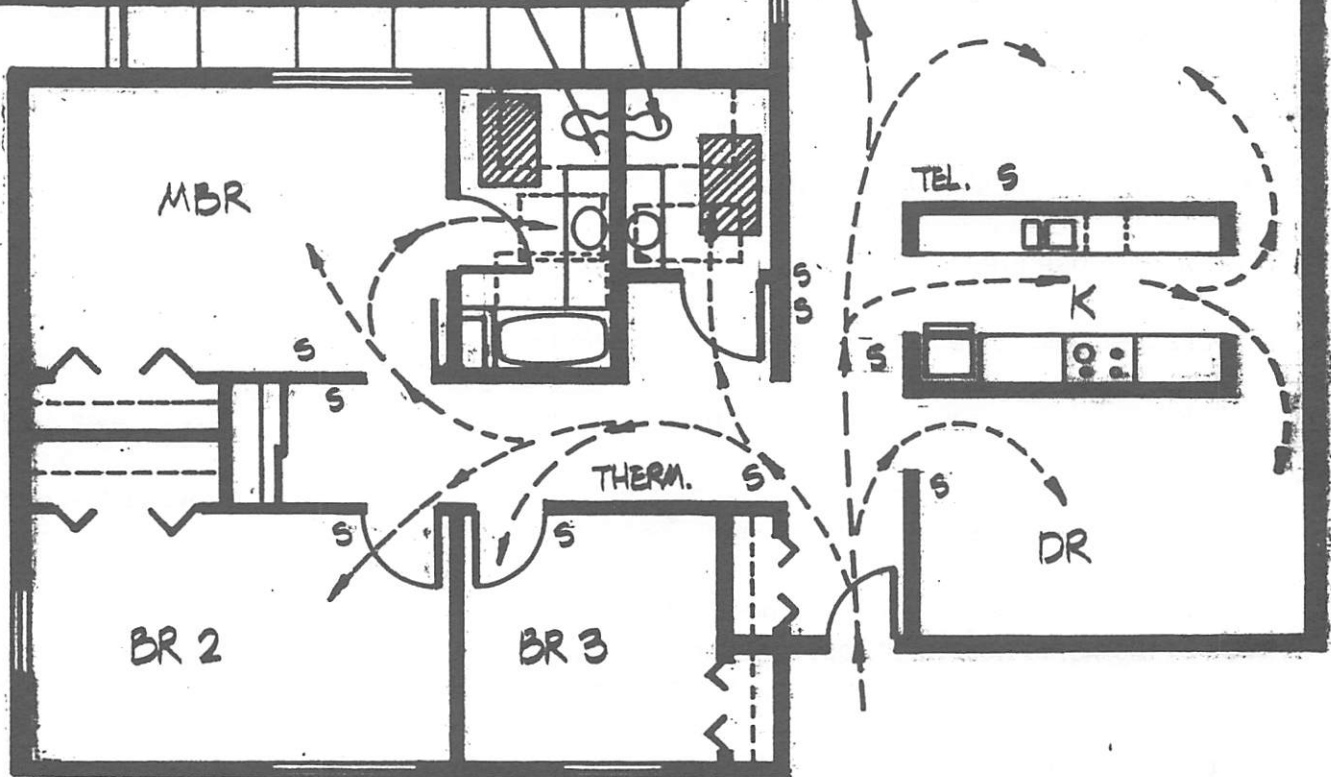
30.2.3.1 Spaces, areas, rooms, or elements inside or outside the building (excluding spaces within the dwelling unit) that are made available for the use of the residents and their guests. These areas may include, but are not limited to, hallways, lounges, lobbies, laundry rooms, refuse rooms, storage areas, mail boxes/rooms, clubhouses, office(s), recreational facilities, and travel routes among and between buildings. Common use areas shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code.

GS41A-3(1a);
Vol. I-C, 5.1(c);
FHAA 100.201;
FR 3/6/91 At 9500

30.2.3.2 If multiple recreational facilities (e.g., tennis courts, swimming pools) are provided, then a minimum of one of each type shall be accessible.

Derived From
Vol. I-C, 5.1(c)

30.2.2.1 "ADAPTABLE" MEANS THOSE WALLS OR PARTITIONS THAT HAVE BEEN DESIGNATED AS GRAB BAR LOCATIONS AND SUITABLY REINFORCED TO WITHSTAND A 250 POUND LOAD THAT CAN BE APPLIED TO THE GRAB BAR IN ANY DIRECTION ANYWHERE ALONG ITS LENGTH. SUCH GRAB BARS SHALL BE INSTALLED WITHIN THE DWELLING UNIT AT SUCH TIME PRIOR TO A DISABLED PERSON ACTUALLY ESTABLISHING RESIDENCE (IF SUCH INSTALLATION HAS NOT ALREADY TAKEN PLACE AT THE TIME THE UNIT WAS CONSTRUCTED).



30.2.2.1.1 "ADAPTABLE" SHALL NOT BE APPLIED TO:

- (1) COMMON USE AREAS;
- (2) AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO AND THROUGH THE DWELLING UNIT;
- (3) DOORS THAT ALLOW PASSAGE INTO, WITHIN, AND THROUGH THE UNIT;
- (4) LIGHT SWITCHES, ELECTRICAL OUTLETS, THERMOSTATS, AND OTHER CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS; AND
- (5) THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE WITHIN KITCHENS AND BATHS.

(NOTE: ELEMENTS NOT SPECIFICALLY IDENTIFIED IN THIS PARAGRAPH MAY BE SUBJECT TO ADAPTABILITY [E.G., REMOVABLE CABINETS UNDER A KITCHEN SINK OR BATHROOM LAVATORY; LOWERING OF A CLOSET CLOTHES HANGER ROD; A KITCHEN BASE CABINET THAT CAN BE REMOVED AND REPLACED WITH AN ACCESSIBLE WORK TOP; ETC.]. THE EXAMPLES GIVEN ARE ILLUSTRATIVE NOT EXHAUSTIVE.)

30.2.2—ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNITS

30.2—DEFINITIONS

30.2.4 COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLING

30.2.4.1 PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING

A residential facility within one of the categories of 30.1.2.1 and 30.1.3 that is owned and/or operated by a non-government entity (e.g., a bank, contractor, homeowner's association, investment company, real estate corporation, etc.) shall be made accessible if it falls into one of the following categories:

- (1) A building, including all units and common use areas, in which there are four (4) or more dwelling units if the building has one or more elevators; or **GS41A-3(1a)**

- (2) Ground floor units and ground floor common use areas in a building with four (4) or more dwelling units if the building does not have an elevator. **GS41A-3(1a)**

30.2.4.2 PUBLICLY-OWNED HOUSING

A residential facility within one of the categories of 30.1.2.2 and 30.1.3 owned by any State, county, or municipal government; any department, agency, special purpose district or instrumentality of a State, county, or municipal government that has a building, including all units and common use areas, in which there is one (1) or more dwelling units.

**Title II
Program
Access**

30.2.5 DWELLING UNIT

Apartments; condominiums; garden apartments.

Single-family residences provided by any entity which serves as a job-related residence.

Dwellings having the entire living space (e.g., living/dining/bed room[s] den, deck, patio, kitchen, toilet/bathing room[s], etc.) on the ground floor (The listings in this Paragraph are illustrative and shall not be considered exhaustive.)

**FR 3/6/91 At
9481 And 9500;

HUD (Via Phone)
2/14/97**

30.2.6 FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNIT (A.K.A., "A" DWELLING UNIT)

A dwelling unit that complies with 30.5 and (if applicable) 30.6.

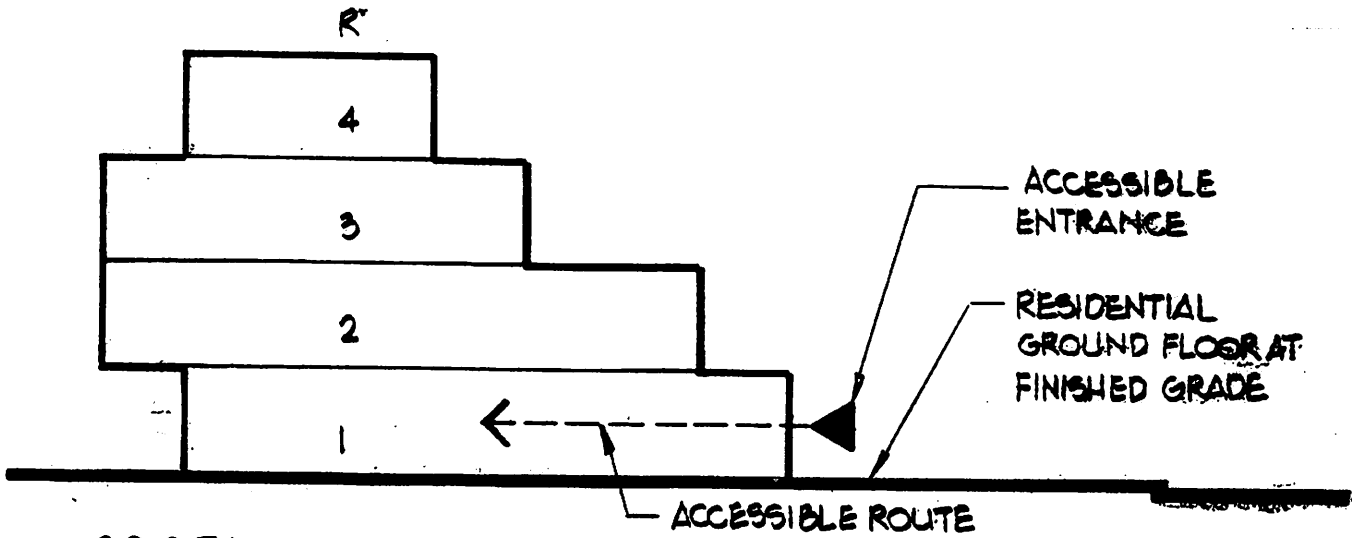
30.2.7 GROUND FLOOR

30.2.7.1 A floor of a building with a building entrance on an accessible route. A building may have more than one ground floor (e.g., a building built into the side of a hill).

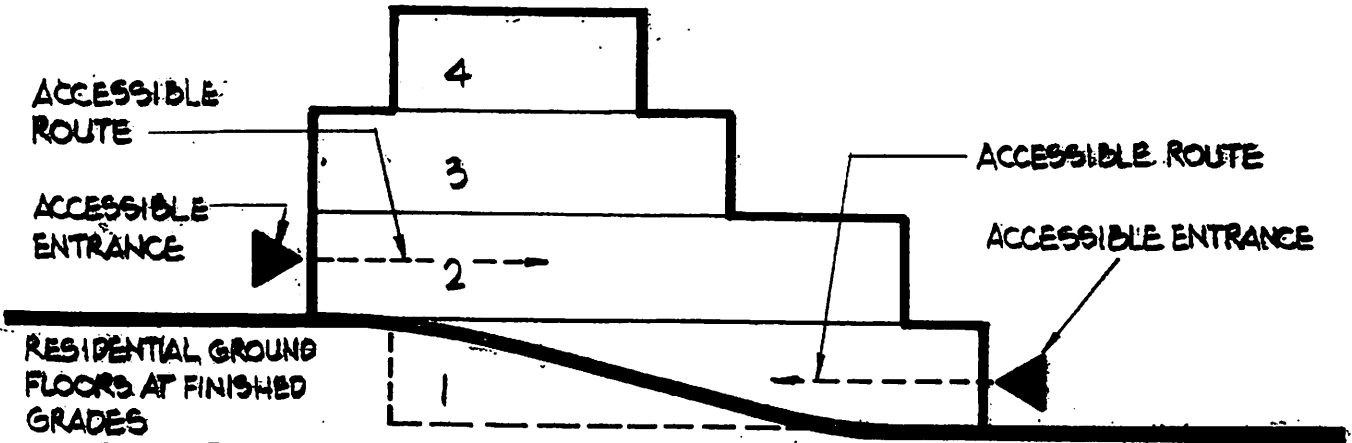
**FHAA 100.201;
FR 3/6/91 At 9482
And 9500**

30.2.7.1.1 If the lowest floor containing dwelling units is elevated above finished grade, then that floor shall be considered the residential ground floor. The building shall have an accessible entrance and an accessible route that leads to the residential level(s).

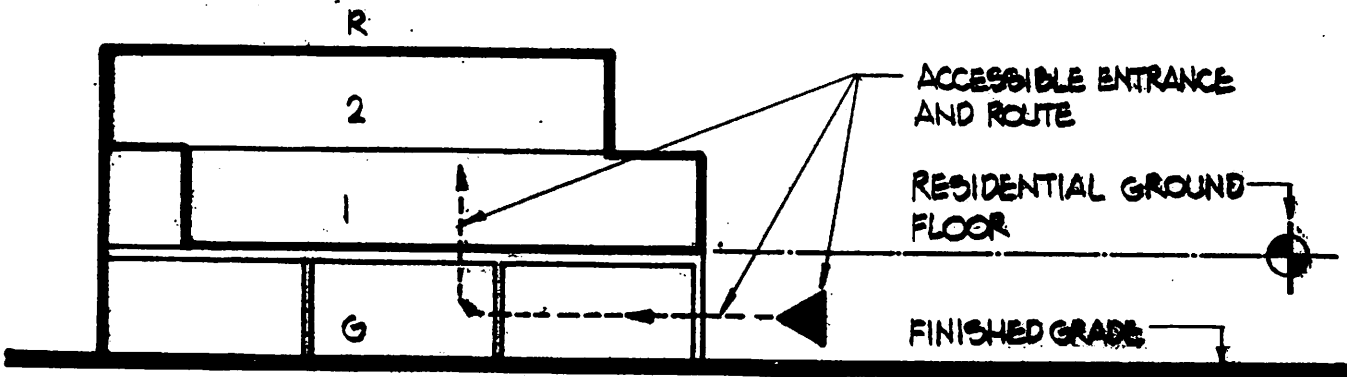
**FHAA 100.201;
FR 3/6/91 At 9482
And 9500**



30.2.7.1-A FLOOR OF A BUILDING WITH A BUILDING ENTRANCE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.



30.2.7.1-A BUILDING MAY HAVE MORE THAN ONE GROUND FLOOR (E.G., A BUILDING BUILT INTO THE SIDE OF A HILL).



30.2.7.1.1-IF THE LOWEST FLOOR CONTAINING DWELLING UNITS IS ELEVATED ABOVE FINISHED GRADE, THEN THAT FLOOR SHALL BE CONSIDERED THE RESIDENTIAL GROUND FLOOR.

30.2.7- (DEFINITION OF) GROUND FLOOR

30.2.8 SITE IMPRACTICALITY (OR, SITE ANALYSIS TEST)

30.2.8.1 Use of this Section is limited to privately-owned residential buildings and facilities. (See the NOTE following 30.1.2.1.3[2].)

Scope

30.2.8.2 The number of accessible ("B") dwelling units provided in single or multiple buildings without an elevator on a single site may be reduced to a percentage of the ground floor units equal to the percentage of the entire site having undisturbed, natural grades of ten percent (10%) or less. In no instance shall the number of accessible ("B") units be less than twenty percent (20%) of the total ground floor dwelling units on the entire site.

FR 3/6/91
At 9503-
9504

(E.G.: A privately-owned housing project having 120 ground floor units is located on a 30-acre site, 18 acres of which have natural, undisturbed slopes of ten percent [10%] or less. That part of the entire site having slopes of ten percent [10%] or less equals sixty percent [60%] of the entire site [i.e., $18 \div 30 = .60$]. Therefore, of the 120 total ground floor units only 72 are required to be accessible "B" units [i.e., $120 \times .60 = 72$].)

30.2.8.3 SITE IMPRACTICALITY: UNUSUAL CHARACTERISTICS

30.2.8.3.1 This Section is applicable to all privately-owned facilities having fully accessible ("A") and accessible ("B") dwelling units for lease, rent, or sale and an elevator is not provided.

Scope

30.2.8.3.2 Unusual site characteristics are those sites located in a coastal high hazard area, ocean hazard area or a designated flood plain.

Definition;
Vol. 1, Chap. 37;
FR 3/6/91 At 9504

30.2.8.3.3 The number of dwelling units required to comply with this Chapter do not apply to a site where the lowest floor or lowest structural member(s) supporting that floor is required to be raised to a specified level above the base flood elevation if there:

(1) Is a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and a ten percent (10%) slope measured between an entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15.2 m) of the planned entrance; or

(2) Are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15.2 m) of the planned entrance and the difference in finished grade elevation between an entrance and the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point exceeds 30 inches (760 mm) and a ten percent (10%) slope.

FR 3/6/91
At 9504

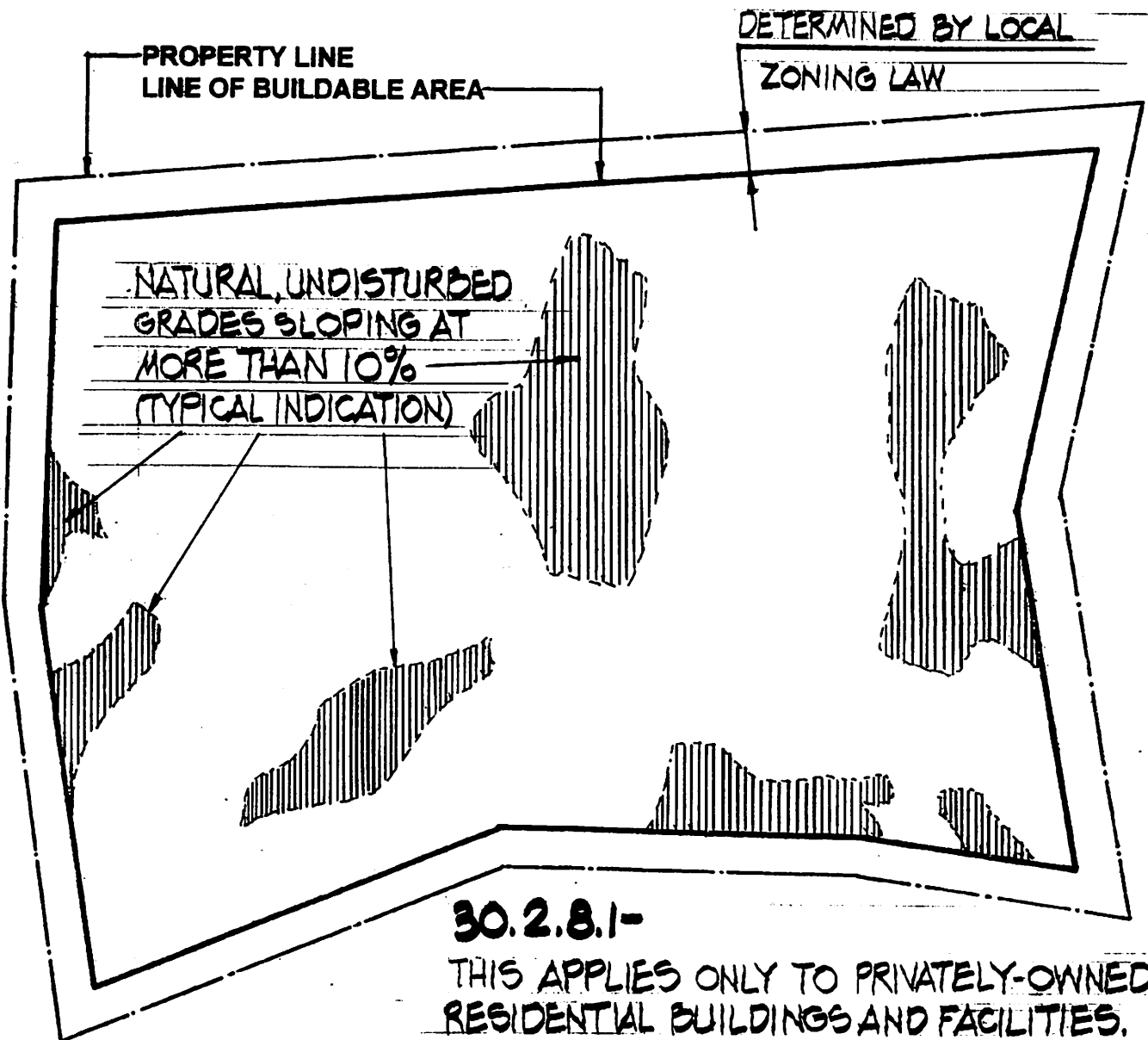
(NOTE 1: In order to be exempt, a building or facility need only qualify on one count, not both.

Sim. To
15.2.8, Note 2;
PVA Fair Hsg.
Design Guide,
P. 56

NOTE 2: Examples of "pedestrian arrival points" are parking spaces, passenger loading zones [if provided], and public transportation stops.)

EXAMPLE: A privately-owned, 10-unit building without an elevator is to be constructed on a waterfront site in a coastal high hazard area. The lowest structural member must be located at 12 feet (3.7 m) M.S.L. minimum base elevation. This housing may be constructed on the waterfront site even though this means that there will be no practical way to provide an accessible route to the building entrance.

FHAA
100.205(b),
Ex. 2



30.2.8.1-

THIS APPLIES ONLY TO PRIVATELY-OWNED RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES. (BUILDINGS WITHOUT ELEVATORS ONLY.)

30.2.8.2 (EXAMPLE BASED ON ABOVE SITE):

TOTAL BUILDABLE AREA = 18 ACRES = 784,080 SF

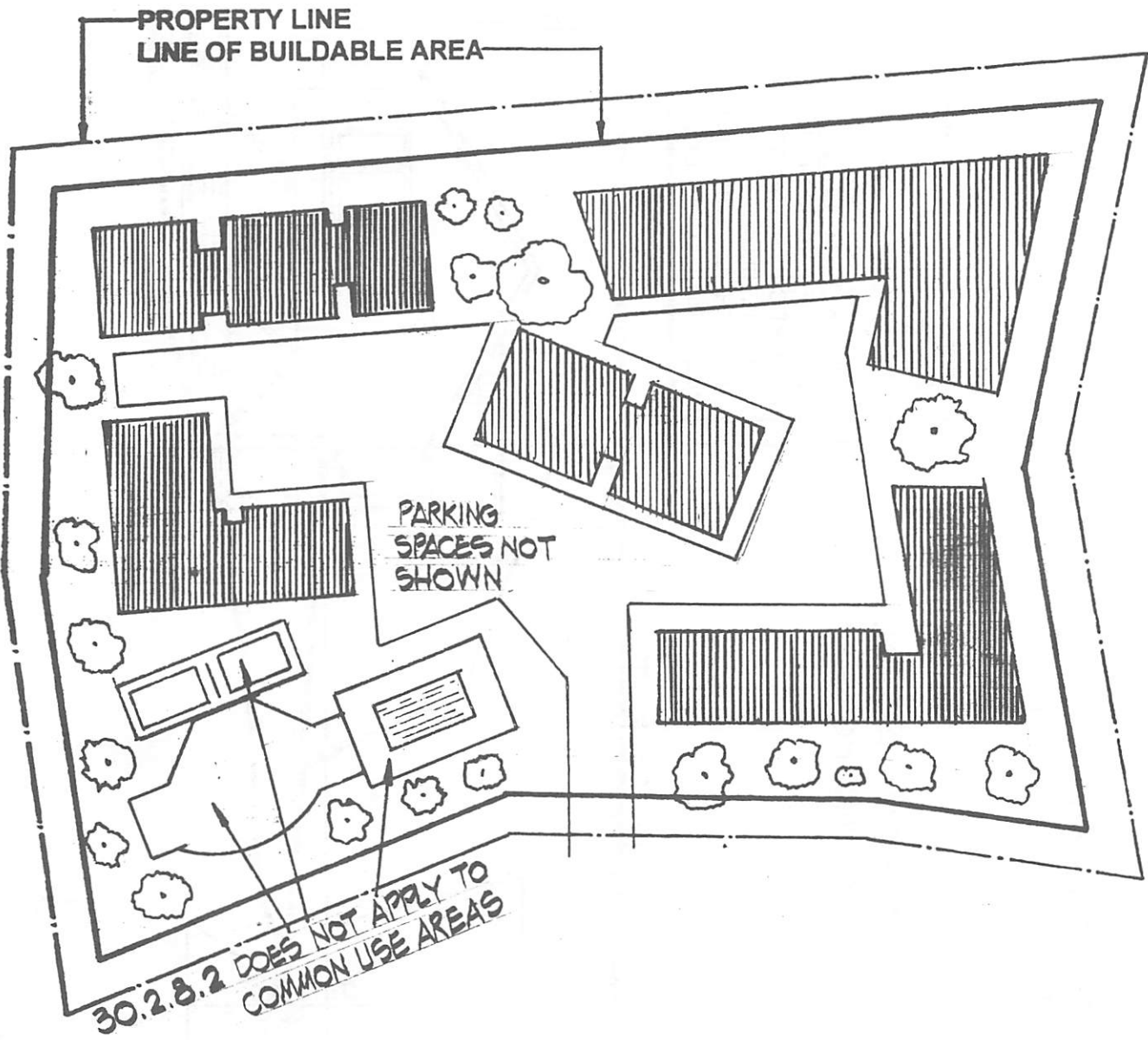
BUILDABLE AREA WITH SLOPES

OF 10% OR LESS = 10 ACRES = 435,600 SF

AREA WITH SLOPE 10% OR LESS = $\frac{10 \text{ ACRES}}{18 \text{ ACRES}} = 55\%$
 TOTAL BUILDABLE AREA

(DO NOT RELY SOLELY ON ILLUSTRATION; SEE PARAGRAPH TEXT.)

30.2.8- SITE IMPRACTICALITY (OR, SITE ANALYSIS TEST) - PART I



30.2.8.2 - NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ("B") UNITS IN RELATION TO SITE IMPRACTICALITY:

5 RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS HAVING A TOTAL OF 130 GROUND FLOOR DWELLING UNITS.

NUMBER OF "B" UNITS REQUIRED =

$$\left[\begin{array}{l} \text{TOTAL NO. GROUND} \\ \text{FLOOR UNITS} \end{array} \right] \times \left[\begin{array}{l} \% \text{ OF SITE SLOPING} \\ \text{AT 10\% OR LESS} \end{array} \right] = 130 \times .55$$

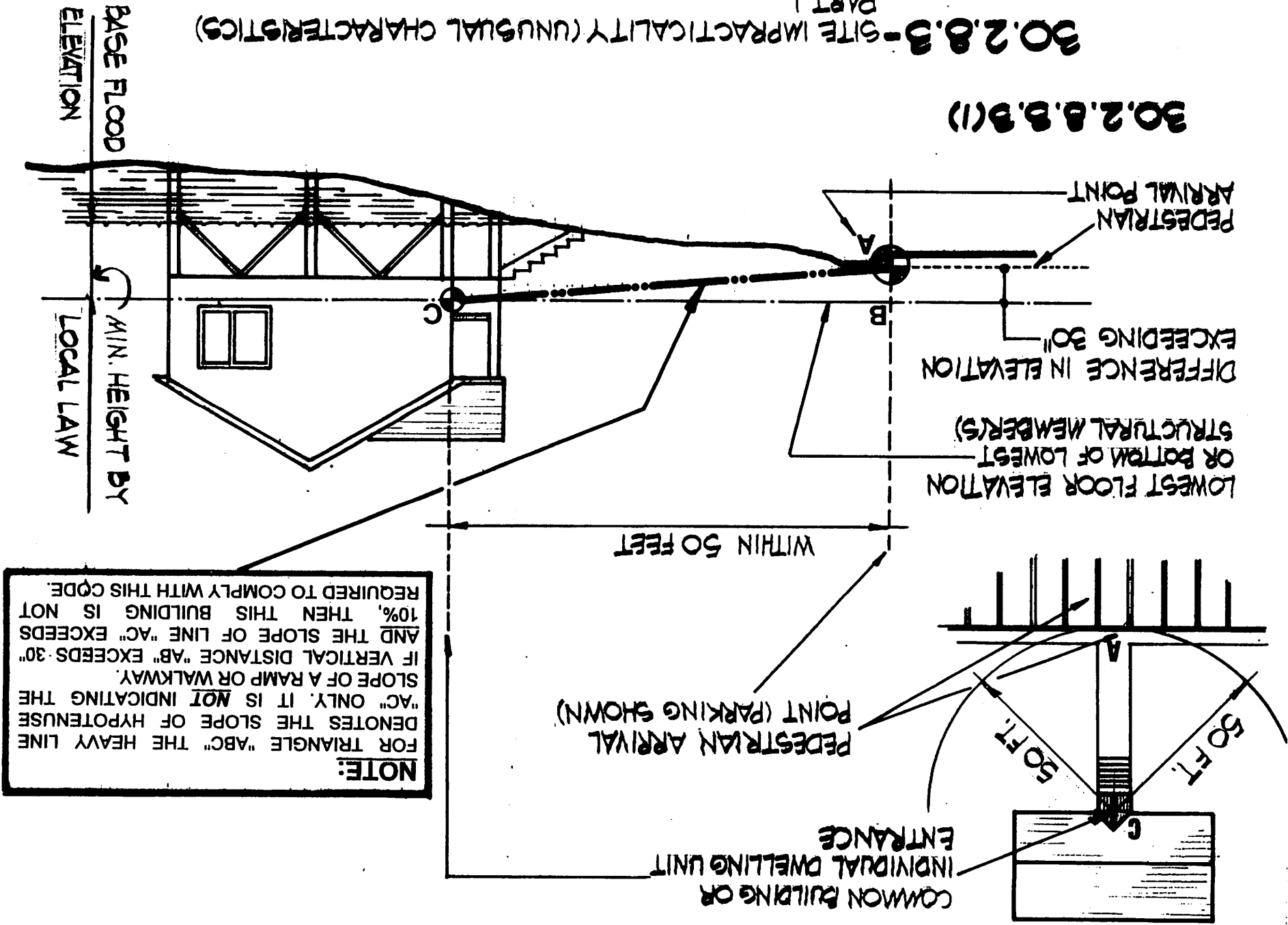
$$= 71.5 = 72$$

(NUMBER ROUNDED UP, NOT DOWN)

30.2.8 - SITE IMPRACTICALITY (OR, SITE ANALYSIS TEST) - PART 2

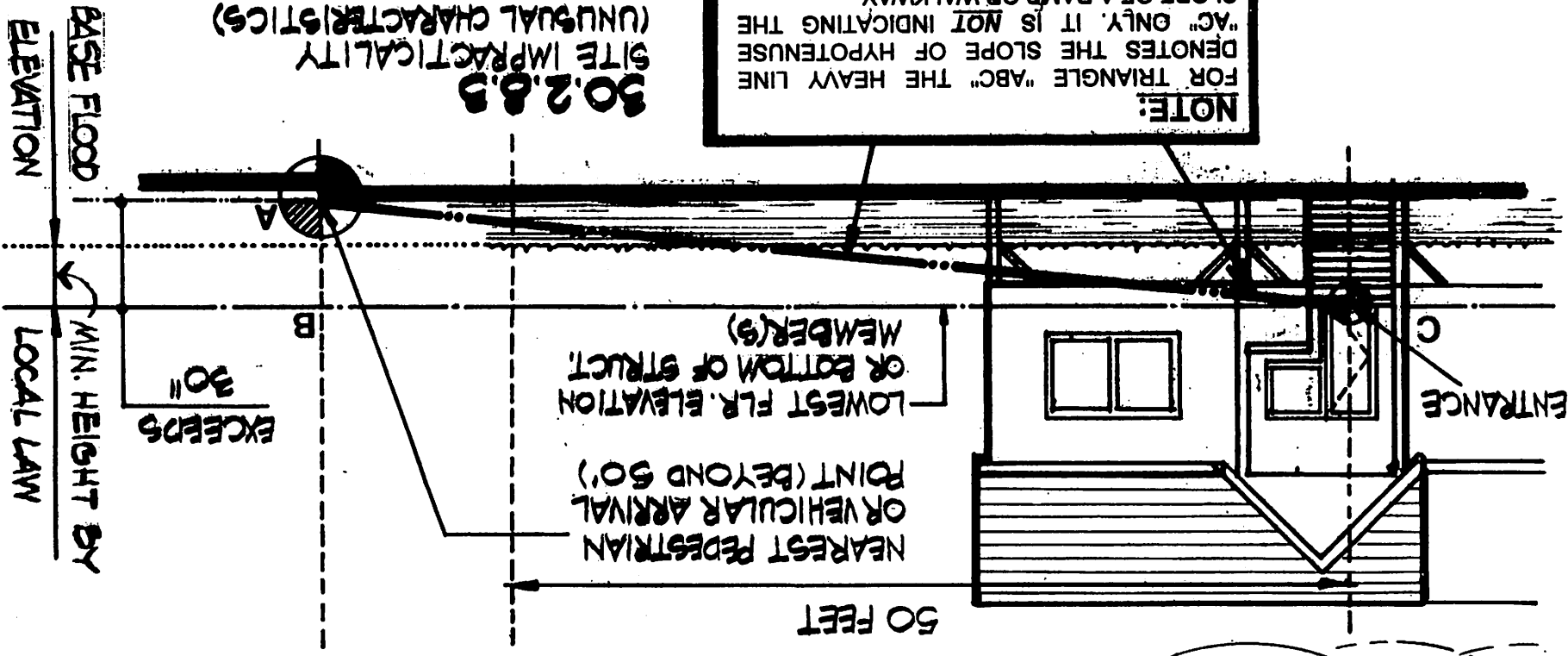
30.2.8.3.3(1)

30.2.8.3-SITE IMPRACTICALITY (UNUSUAL CHARACTERISTICS) PART I



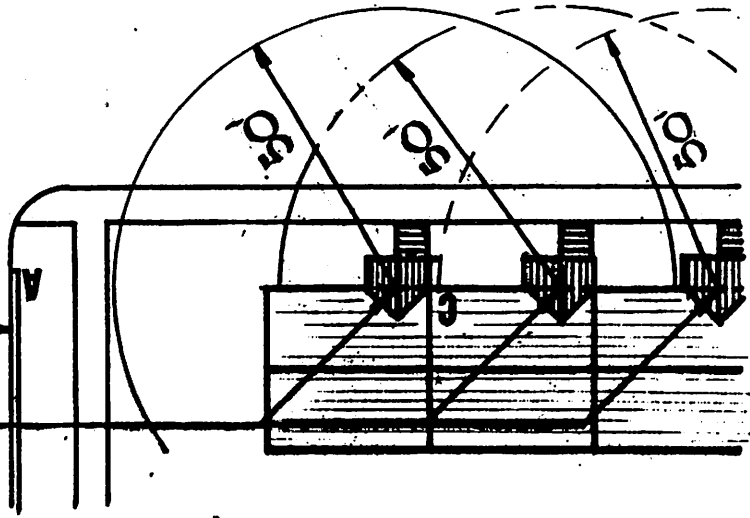
NOTE:
 FOR TRIANGLE "ABC" THE HEAVY LINE DENOTES THE SLOPE OF HYPOTENUSE "AC" ONLY. IT IS *NOT* INDICATING THE SLOPE OF A RAMP OR WALKWAY. IF VERTICAL DISTANCE "AB" EXCEEDS .30" AND THE SLOPE OF LINE "AC" EXCEEDS 10%, THEN THIS BUILDING IS NOT REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH THIS CODE.

NOTE:
 FOR TRIANGLE "ABC" THE HEAVY LINE DENOTES THE SLOPE OF HYPOTENUSE "AC" ONLY. IT IS NOT INDICATING THE SLOPE OF A RAMP OR WALKWAY. IF VERTICAL DISTANCE "AB" EXCEEDS 30" AND THE SLOPE OF LINE "AC" EXCEEDS 10%, THEN THIS BUILDING IS NOT REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH THIS CODE.



30.2.8.3 SITE IMPRACTICALITY (UNUSUAL CHARACTERISTICS) PART 2

30.2.8.3.3(2)
 INDIVIDUAL DWELLING UNIT OR COMMON BUILDING ENTRANCE
 NEAREST PEDESTRIAN/VEHICULAR ARRIVAL POINT (BUS STOP SHOWN)



30.3 INTEGRATION AND DISTRIBUTION

30.3.1 In no instance shall dwelling units designed to be fully accessible ("A" units) be segregated from other dwelling units within a building or project. (E.G.: It is not acceptable to locate all fully accessible ["A"] dwelling units in one location on the ground floor of a privately-owned facility not equipped with an elevator, nor can fully accessible ["A" units] be located on one floor of a publicly-owned, multi-story building.)

Vol. I-C,
5.1(b)

30.3.2 Fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall be distributed among the classes of living units measured in terms of number of bedrooms. (NOTE: In distributing units according to the number of bedrooms per dwelling unit, compliance with this Paragraph shall be forthcoming even if it is necessary to exceed the minimum number calculated by 30.1.2.1.3[1] or 30.1.2.2.2[1]. If the calculated number does not equal the number of living unit classes, then the calculated number shall be increased to provide a minimum of one fully accessible ["A"] dwelling unit in each class so that the housing choices available to persons with disabilities is comparable to that available to the general public.)

Similar To 29.3.1
[ADAAG 9.1.4(1)]

G.S. 168-9

EXAMPLE 1: A privately-owned, three story building with an elevator has 20 one-bedroom, 30 two-bedroom, and 10 three-bedroom apartments. From 30.1.2.1.3(1), the minimum number of fully accessible ("A") units is three ($60 \times .05 = 3$). In compliance with 30.3.2, one fully accessible ("A") apartment shall be provided within each class of living unit. The number of fully accessible ("A") dwelling units (3) provides for a minimum of one in each housing class.

EXAMPLE 2: A publicly-owned, three story building has 10 one-bedroom, 20 two-bedroom, and 10 three bedroom apartments. From 30.1.2.2.2(1) the minimum number of fully accessible ("A") units is two ($40 \times .05 = 2$). To comply with 30.3.2 that number must be increased to three (3) in order to provide a minimum of one housing choice within each housing class.

EXAMPLE 3: The schematic design of a privately-owned two story building without an elevator shows 27 one-bedroom units on the ground floor and 13 two-bedroom units on the second floor. From 30.1.2.1.3(1), the minimum number of fully accessible ("A") units is two ($40 \times .05 = 2$). To comply with 30.3.2 a design choice must then be made to either relocate one of the two-bedroom units to the ground floor, or add an elevator, in order to provide choice among the housing classes.

30.3.3 BUILDINGS WITH ELEVATORS

(NOTE: See 30.4.1.5 for buildings required to have an elevator.)

30.3.3.1 In buildings having an elevator(s) serving all residential floors, fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall be distributed throughout the building.

GS41A-3(1a)(a);
Vol. I-C, 5.1(b)

30.3.3.2 For privately-owned buildings having only the residential ground floor served by an elevator(s), the accessible ("B") and fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall be distributed throughout that floor.

GS41A-3(1a)(b);
Vol. I-C, 5.1(b);
FR3/6/91 At 9482

30.3.4 PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDING WITHOUT AN ELEVATOR(S)

30.3.4.1 For a site/building design that provides access to the residential ground floor only, the accessible ("B") and fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall be distributed throughout that floor.

GS41A-3(1a)(b);
FR 3/6/91 At 9482

30.3.4.2 If the site building design provides for grade level access at more than one floor (e.g., a two-story building built into the side of a hill), then the accessible ("B") and fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall be distributed throughout the floors accessible from each finished grade.

FR 3/6/91
At 9482

30.3.5 Two fully accessible ("A") units may be located on opposite sides of a common wall or partition in order to facilitate installation, connection, and maintenance of the building systems. (See, also, the NOTE following 29.2.4.)

Vol. I-C,
5.1(b)
Integration

30.4 ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNITS (A.K.A, "B" DWELLING UNITS)

30.4.1 ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

30.4.1.1 Except when permitted by 30.2.8.3, each dwelling unit required to comply with this Chapter shall have an accessible route leading to and through the unit.

GS41A-4
(2c)(b)(2)

30.4.1.2 Changes in floor levels between spaces within the dwelling unit shall be permitted provided that the floor level changes comply with 3.3.1, or the accessible route shall be continued by other means. (See, also, the NOTE following 29.4.3.2[7].)

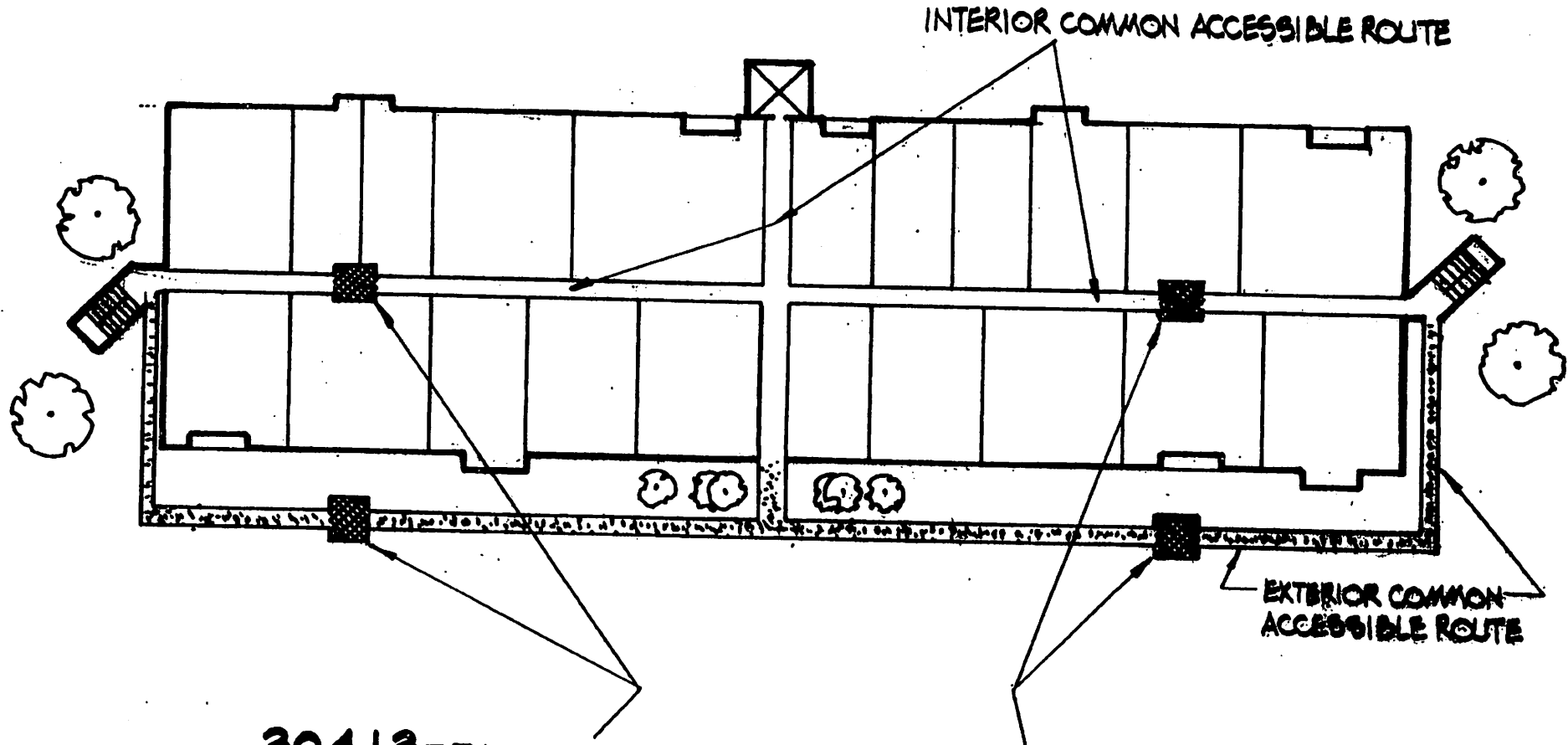
Vol. I-C,
5.3 Note

(NOTE: Access to lofts is not required provided that all spaces other than the loft [e.g., living/dining bed room(s), den, deck, patio, kitchen, toilet/bathing room(s), etc.] are on an accessible route.)

FR 3/6/91
At 9489

30.4.1.3 The passing space(s) required by 3.3.4 and 5.2.4 shall be applicable to the common use areas around and within publicly-owned dwelling unit buildings and facilities only. Passing space(s) is not required within the dwelling units.

USDoJ 35.151
(ADA Title II)



30.4.1.3- THE PASSING SPACE(S) REQUIRED BY 3.3.4 AND 5.2.4 SHALL BE APPLICABLE TO THE COMMON USE AREAS AROUND AND WITHIN PUBLICLY-OWNED DWELLING UNIT BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES ONLY. PASSING SPACE(S) IS NOT REQUIRED WITHIN DWELLING UNITS.

(FOR PRIVATELY-OWNED RESIDENTIAL DEVELOPMENTS PASSING SPACE IS REQUIRED ONLY FOR FACILITIES WITHIN THE SCOPE OF 1.4.2 AND/OR 1.4.3, NOT THE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS THEMSELVES.)

30.4.1- ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

30.4.1.4 PARKING

30.4.1.4.1 Accessible parking for dwelling units required to comply with this Chapter shall be provided as follows:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS----a minimum of one (1) space complying with 4.4.1 for each such dwelling unit. Van accessible spaces shall be provided as required by 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1 and shall comply with 4.4.2. (See, also, 4.4.2.1.) | Vol. I-C,
3.4(b)(2) |
| (2) ACCESSIBLE ("B") DWELLING UNITS----the minimum number of accessible parking spaces shall equal two percent (2%) of the total number of this type dwelling unit. Van accessible spaces shall be provided as required by 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1 and shall comply with 4.4.2. (See, also, 4.4.2.1.) | GS41A-4
(2c)(b)(2);
FR 3/6/91
At 9505 |
| (NOTE: If the demand for accessible parking serving "B" units is greater than the number provided, then conversion of inaccessible spaces is permitted under 30.2.2.1.1.) | "Adaptable"
Elements |

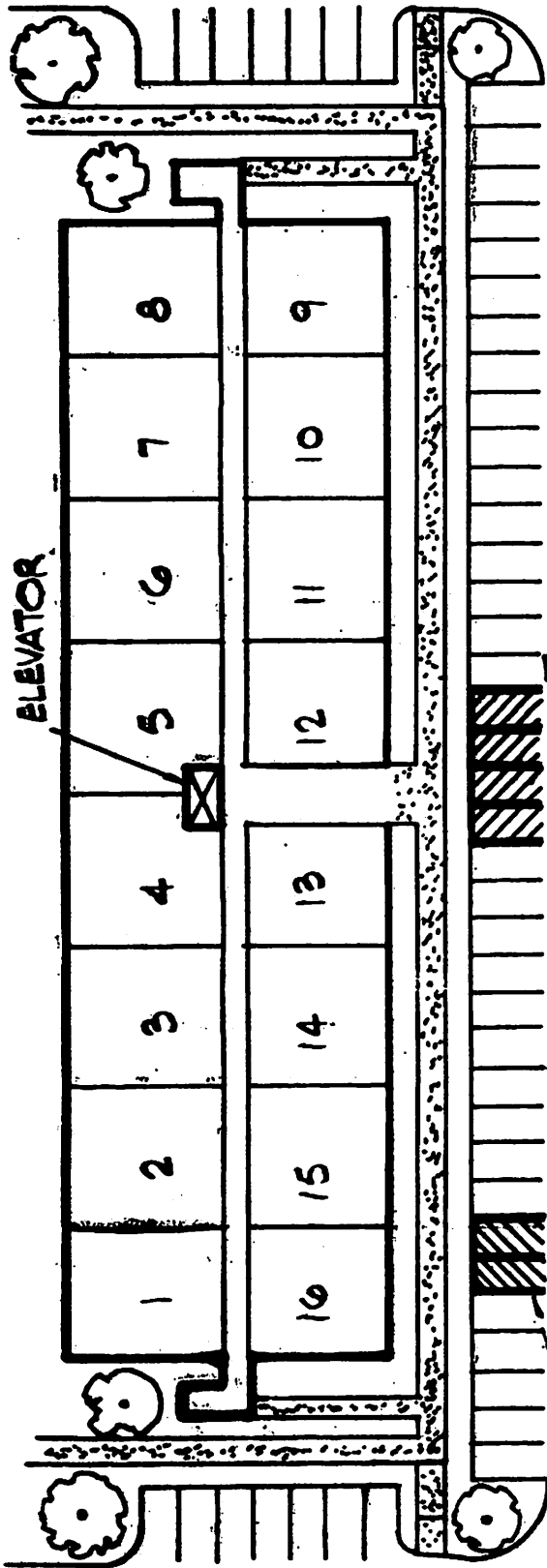
30.4.1.4.2 Accessible parking spaces serving dwelling units required to comply with this Chapter shall be provided on the same terms as that offered to other residents (e.g., surface parking, covered parking, garage, etc.).

FR 3/6/91
At 9505

(NOTE: This Paragraph shall not be interpreted as requiring covered or garage parking. If such facilities are provided in addition to uncovered surface parking, then the number of accessible and van accessible spaces shall be divided proportionally among the several choices. This does not imply nor state that an accessible parking space in a garage or under cover be held open pending occupancy by a disabled person, nor does it require that a covered, accessible parking space be relinquished by the current occupant if accessible surface parking is available.)

30.4.1.4.3 If parking is provided at common use area (e.g., club house, business/rental office, swimming facility, etc.), then the number of accessible spaces shall comply with 4.2.1; space/access aisle width shall comply with 4.4.1. Van accessible parking shall be provided in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1 (as applicable); space/access aisle width shall comply with 4.4.2. (See, also, 4.4.2.1.)

Similar To
Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(4);
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(1);
FR 3/6/91 At 9505



30.4.1.4.1---PART 1 (BUILDING WITH ELEVATOR)

ACCESSIBLE PARKING FOR DWELLING UNITS REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH THIS CHAPTER SHALL BE PROVIDED AS FOLLOWS:

- (1) FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS---A MINIMUM OF 1 SPACE COMPLYING WITH 4.4.1 FOR EACH SUCH DWELLING UNIT. VAN ACCESSIBLE SPACES SHALL BE PROVIDED AS REQUIRED BY 4.2.2 OR 4.2.2.1 AND SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.4.2. (SEE, ALSO, 4.4.2.1.)
- (2) ACCESSIBLE ("B") DWELLING UNITS---THE MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES SHALL EQUAL 2% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF THIS TYPE DWELLING UNIT. VAN ACCESSIBLE SPACES SHALL BE PROVIDED AS REQUIRED BY 4.2.2 OR 4.2.2.1 AND SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.4.2. (SEE, ALSO, 4.4.2.1.)

(NOTE: IF THE DEMAND FOR ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES SERVING "B" UNITS IS GREATER THAN THE NUMBER PROVIDED, THEN CONVERSION OF INACCESSIBLE SPACES IS PERMITTED UNDER 30.2.2.1.1.)

EXAMPLE (BASED ON ABOVE ILLUSTRATION):

5-STORY BUILDING WITH 16 DWELLING UNITS PER FLOOR = 80 UNITS TOTAL

(1) NUMBER OF "A" UNITS = $80 \times .05 = 4$

NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES SERVING "A" UNITS = MIN. 4;

(2) NUMBER OF "B" UNITS = 76

NUMBER OF PARKING SPACES SERVING "B" UNITS = $76 \times .02 = 1.52 = \text{MIN. } 2$

30.4.1.4---PARKING

30.4.1.4.4 All accessible parking spaces shall comply with the following table, as applicable:

<u>ELEMENT</u>	<u>ACCESSIBLE REQUIREMENTS FOUND IN SECTION/PARAGRAPH</u>	
Marking of Access Aisle	4.2.3	
Connection To Accessible Entrance	4.4.3	
Vehicle Overhangs	4.4.4	
Overhead Clearance	4.4.5	
Cross-Slope	4.4.6	
Parking Decks	4.5	Cross- References
Location/Travel Distance	4.6	
Curb Cuts And Curb Ramps	4.7	
Corner (Diagonal) Curb Cuts	4.8	
Detectable Warnings	(Reserved)	
Islands	4.10	
Passenger Loading Zones	4.11	

30.4.1.4.5 Above-ground R7-8 and R7-8D Maximum Penalty Signs or, R7-8E signs, and "Van Accessible" signs shall be provided at each accessible and van accessible space. If the occupant of an accessible ("B") or fully accessible ("A") dwelling unit is not a disabled person, then the corresponding parking space for that unit is not required to comply with this Paragraph for as long as that person occupies the residence. Immediately following a signed lease, rental, or sale agreement between a disabled person and a landlord or rental/sales agent, the signage required by this Paragraph shall be installed at the parking space corresponding to that dwelling unit.

**GS20-37.6,
136-30;
Vol. I-C,
3.4(b)(3)**

(NOTE: This Paragraph shall be applicable only for accessible parking spaces serving dwelling units.)

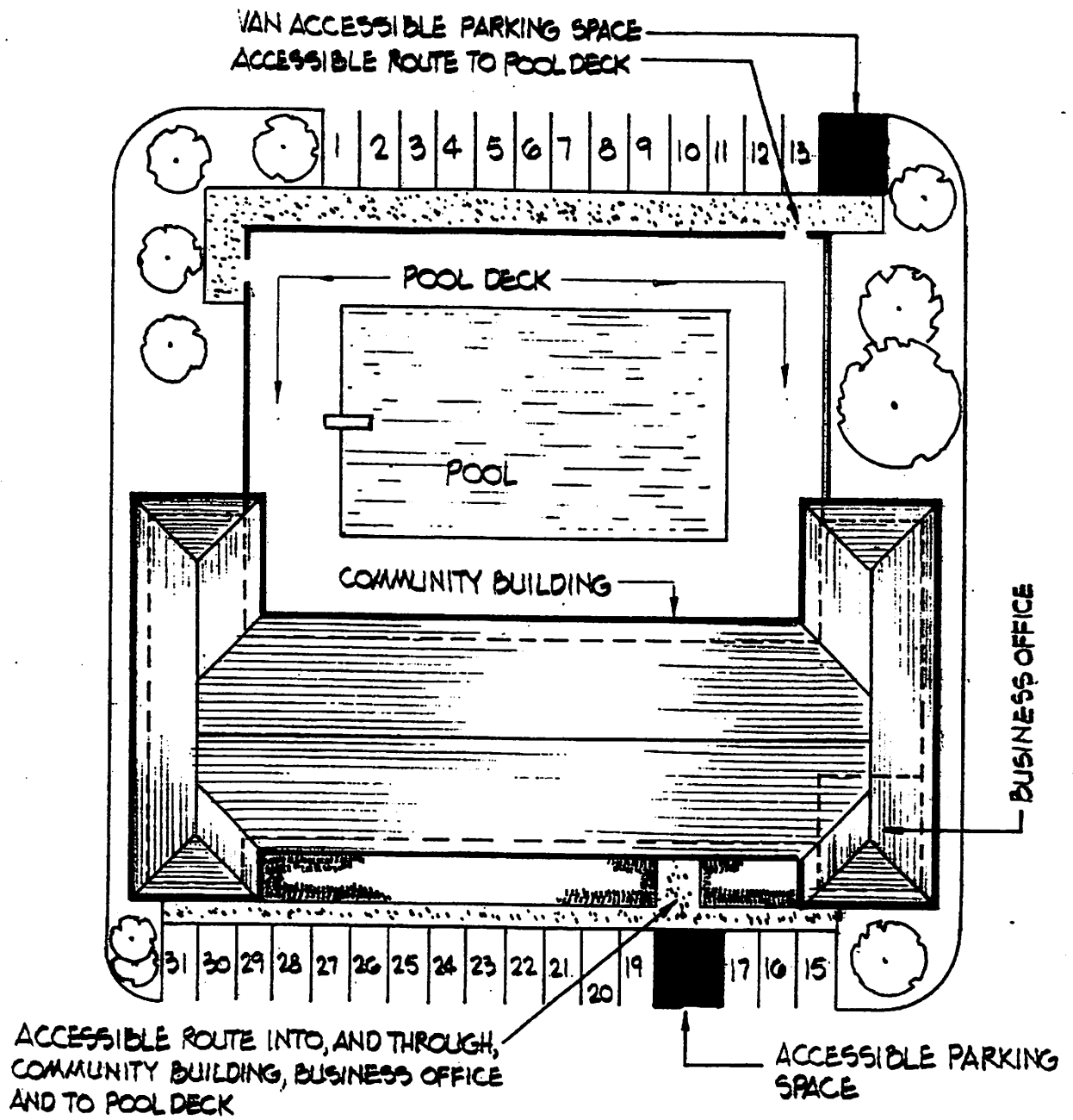
30.4.1.4.6 If the route between accessible residential buildings and accessible public or common use areas exceeds:

- (1) A 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum slope; or
- (2) A 200 feet (61 m) horizontal travel distance,

then a vehicular route having accessible parking at each end may be used in lieu of an accessible route. (See 30.4.1.4.4.)

**FR 3/6/91 At
9504-9505**

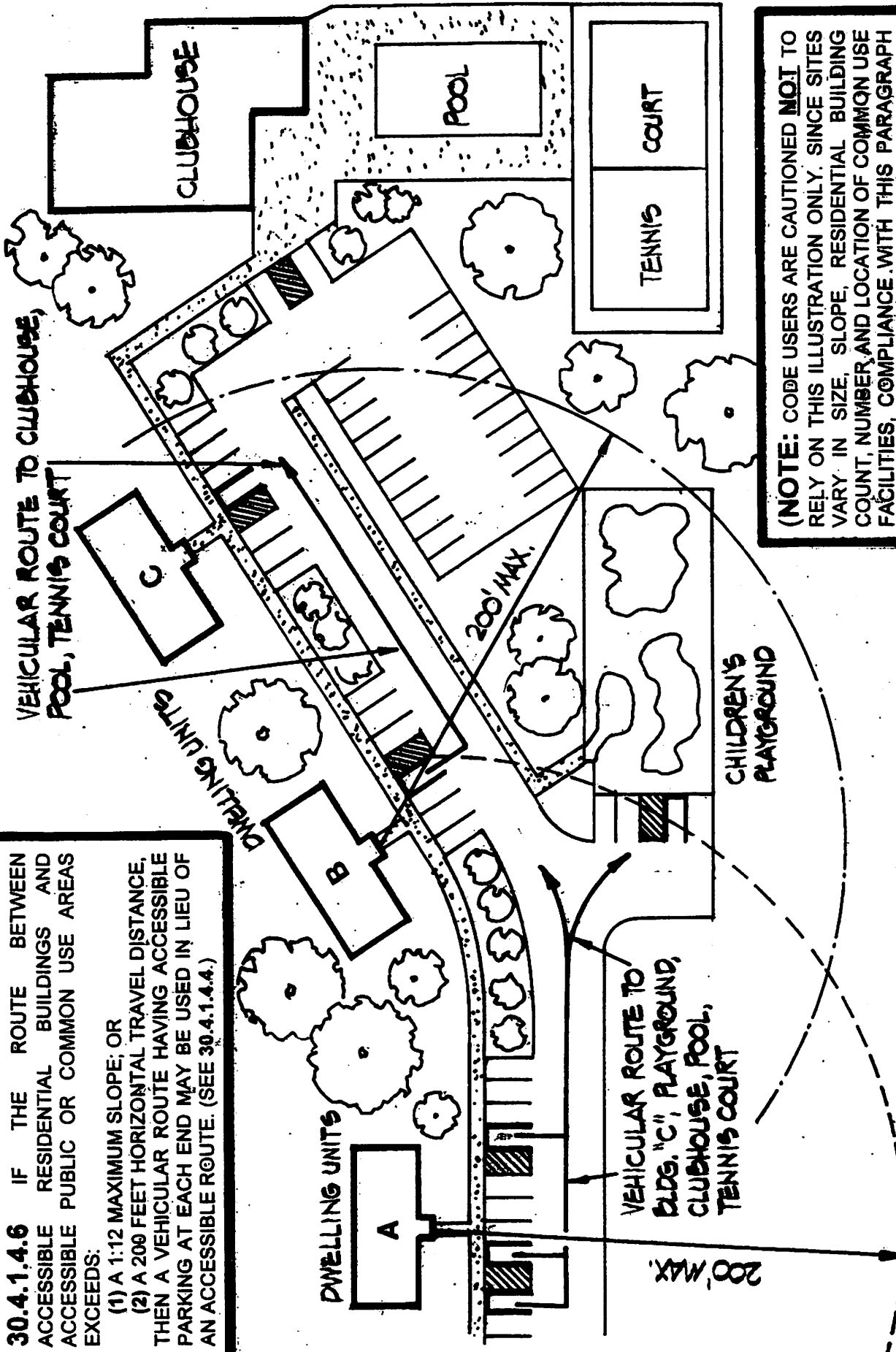
(NOTE: For dwelling units entered directly from finished grade the horizontal travel distance is measured from the dwelling unit entrance. For dwelling units entered from a common area [e.g., corridor, hallway, lobby, etc.] the horizontal travel distance is measured from: the accessible building entrance in privately-owned facilities; the accessible entrance closest to the accessible public or common use area in publicly-owned facilities.)



30.4.1.4.3- IF PARKING IS PROVIDED AT COMMON USE AREAS (E.G., CLUB HOUSE, BUSINESS/RENTAL OFFICE, SWIMMING FACILITY, ETC.), THEN THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.2.1; SPACE/ACCESS AISLE WIDTH SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.4.1. VAN ACCESSIBLE PARKING SHALL BE PROVIDED IN COMPLIANCE WITH 4.2.2 OR 4.2.2.1 (AS APPLICABLE); SPACE/ACCESS AISLE WIDTH SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.4.2. (SEE, ALSO, 4.4.2.1.)

30.4.1.4-PARKING

30.4.1.4.6 IF THE ROUTE BETWEEN ACCESSIBLE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND ACCESSIBLE PUBLIC OR COMMON USE AREAS EXCEEDS:
 (1) A 1:12 MAXIMUM SLOPE; OR
 (2) A 200 FEET HORIZONTAL TRAVEL DISTANCE,
 THEN A VEHICULAR ROUTE HAVING ACCESSIBLE PARKING AT EACH END MAY BE USED IN LIEU OF AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. (SEE 30.4.1.4.4.)



(NOTE: CODE USERS ARE CAUTIONED NOT TO RELY ON THIS ILLUSTRATION ONLY. SINCE SITES VARY IN SIZE, SLOPE, RESIDENTIAL BUILDING COUNT, NUMBER, AND LOCATION OF COMMON USE FACILITIES, COMPLIANCE WITH THIS PARAGRAPH CAN ONLY BE ACHIEVED BY THE USE OF THE COMPLETE PARAGRAPH TEXT.)

30.4.1.4 - PARKING

30.4.1.5 BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS

30.4.1.5.1 All privately-owned buildings four (4) or more stories in height, excluding basements as defined by Volume I, Section 503.2.4, regardless of the gross area per floor.

Vol. I, 503.2.4;
Vol. I-C, 4.9.1(f)

30.4.1.5.2 All privately-owned buildings three (3) stories in height, excluding basements as defined by Volume I, Section 503.2.4, having an occupant content of 100 or more persons per floor.

Vol. I, 503.2.4;
Vol. I-C, 4.9.1(e)

30.4.1.5.3 For privately-owned buildings an elevator shall be provided to serve only the elevated residential ground floor in a building that has:

GS41A-4(2c)(b)(2);
FR 3/6/91 At 9482

- (1) Three (3) stories with an occupant content of 99 or fewer persons per floor; or
- (2) Two (2) or fewer stories.

30.4.1.5.4 All publicly-owned buildings two (2) or more stories in height.

Title II

30.4.1.5.5 If resident and/or guest parking is provided in a basement, or a parking area located below an elevated ground floor, then an elevator shall be provided to connect the accessible parking level(s) and at least the residential ground floor.

GS41A-4(2c)(b)(2);
FR 3/6/91 At 9482

(NOTE: Housing facilities covered by 30.4.1.5.1, 30.4.1.5.2, and 30.4.1.5.4 shall require elevator travel beyond the residential ground floor.)

30.4.2 ENTRANCES AND MEANS OF EGRESS

(NOTE: See, also, 30.2.8.3 when accessible entrances and accessible Means of Egress are not required.)

Cross-Reference

30.4.2.1 ENTRANCES

30.4.2.1.1 Each accessible ("B") and fully accessible ("A") dwelling unit shall have a minimum of one accessible entrance.

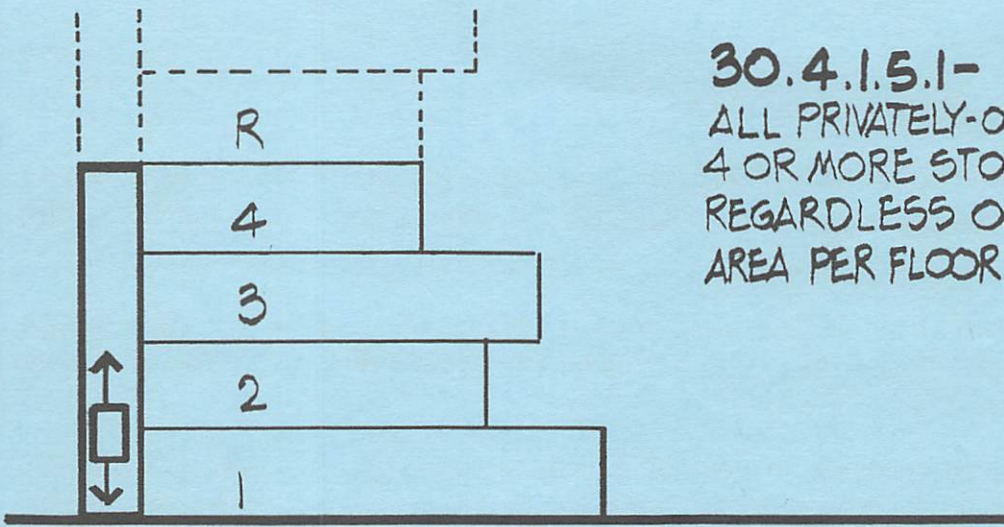
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(2);
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(3);
FHAA 100.205(a)

30.4.2.1.2 For privately-owned buildings, if dwelling unit entry is from a common area (e.g., corridor, hallway, lobby, etc.), then there shall be a minimum of one accessible entrance serving each functional use.

GS41A-4(2c)(b)(2);
Vol. I-C, 4.2(a)

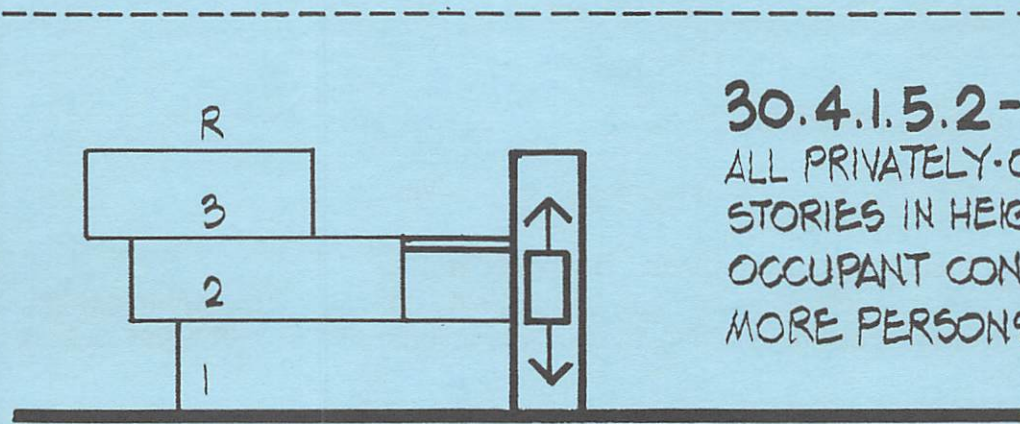
30.4.2.1.3 For publicly-owned buildings, if dwelling unit entry is from a common area (e.g., corridor, hallway, lobby, etc.), the number of accessible building entrances shall comply with the applicable requirements of 6.2.

ADAAG
4.1.3(8)



30.4.1.5.1-

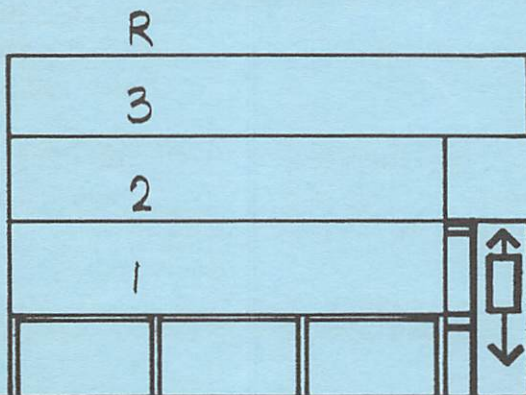
ALL PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDINGS 4 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT REGARDLESS OF THE GROSS AREA PER FLOOR.



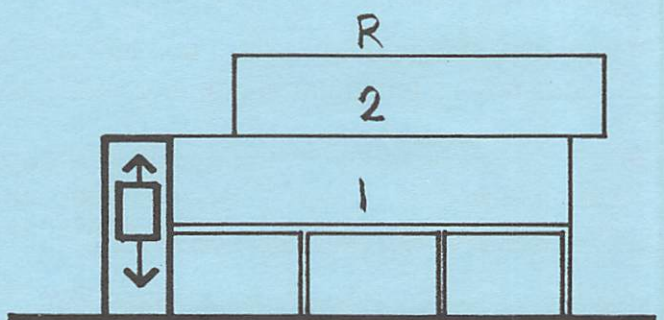
30.4.1.5.2-

ALL PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDINGS 3 STORIES IN HEIGHT HAVING AN OCCUPANT CONTENT OF 100 OR MORE PERSONS PER FLOOR.

30.4.1.5.3- FOR PRIVATELY-OWNED BUILDINGS AN ELEVATOR SHALL BE PROVIDED TO SERVE ONLY THE ELEVATED RESIDENTIAL GROUND FLOOR IN A BUILDING THAT HAS:

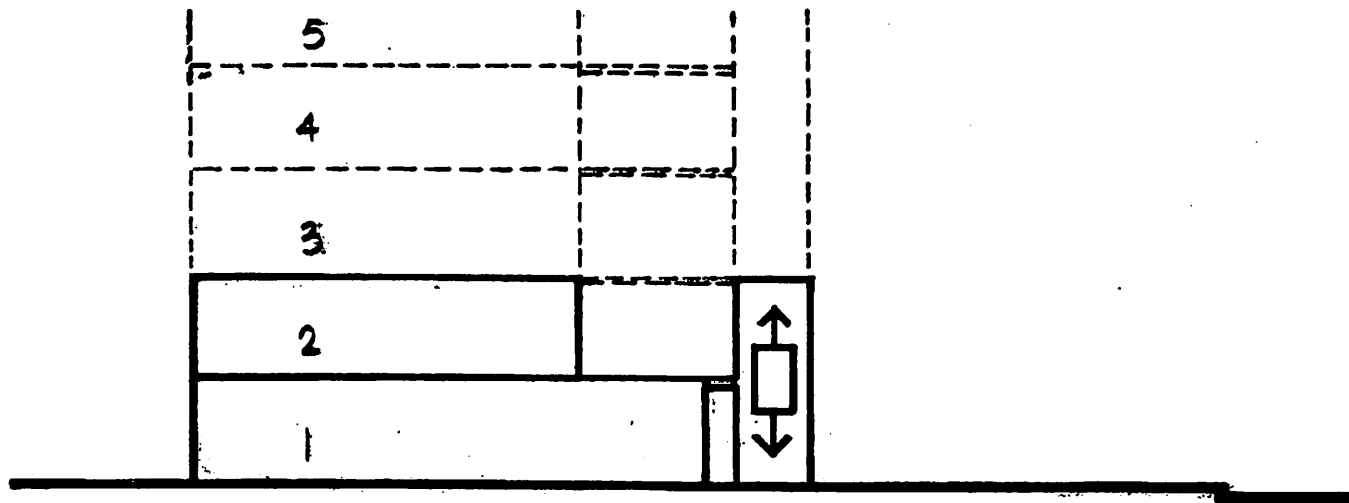


(1) - 3 STORIES WITH AN OCCUPANT CONTENT OF 99 OR FEWER PERSONS PER FLOOR

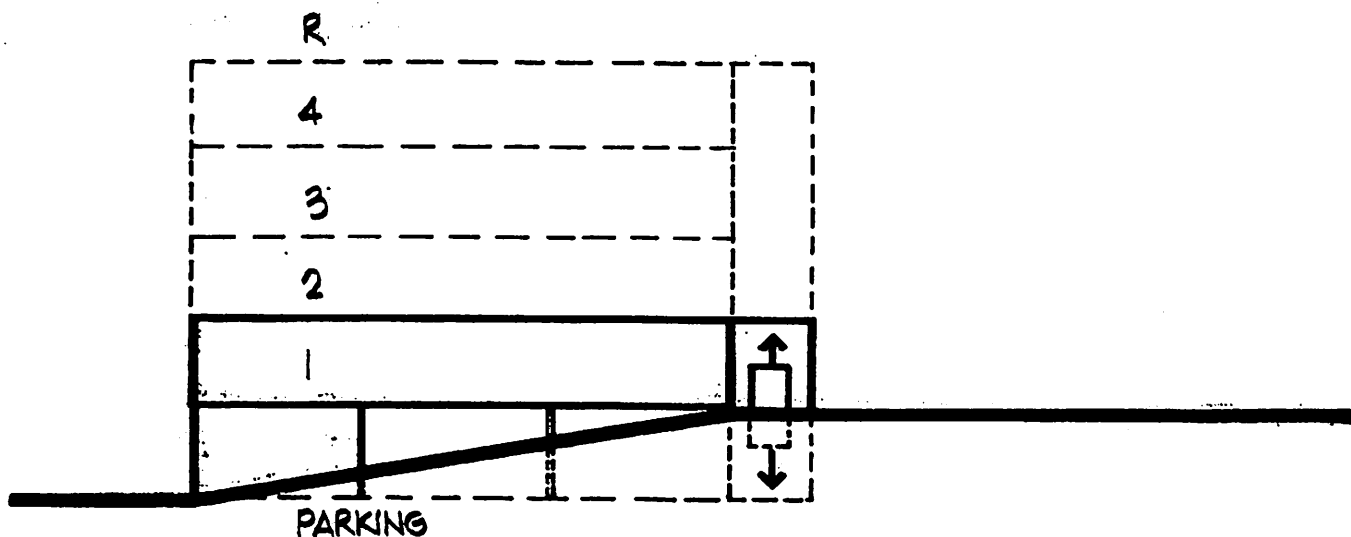


(2) - 2 OR FEWER STORIES

30.4.1.5- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS-PART 1



30.4.1.5.4-ALL PUBLICLY-OWNED BUILDINGS 2 OR MORE STORIES IN HEIGHT.

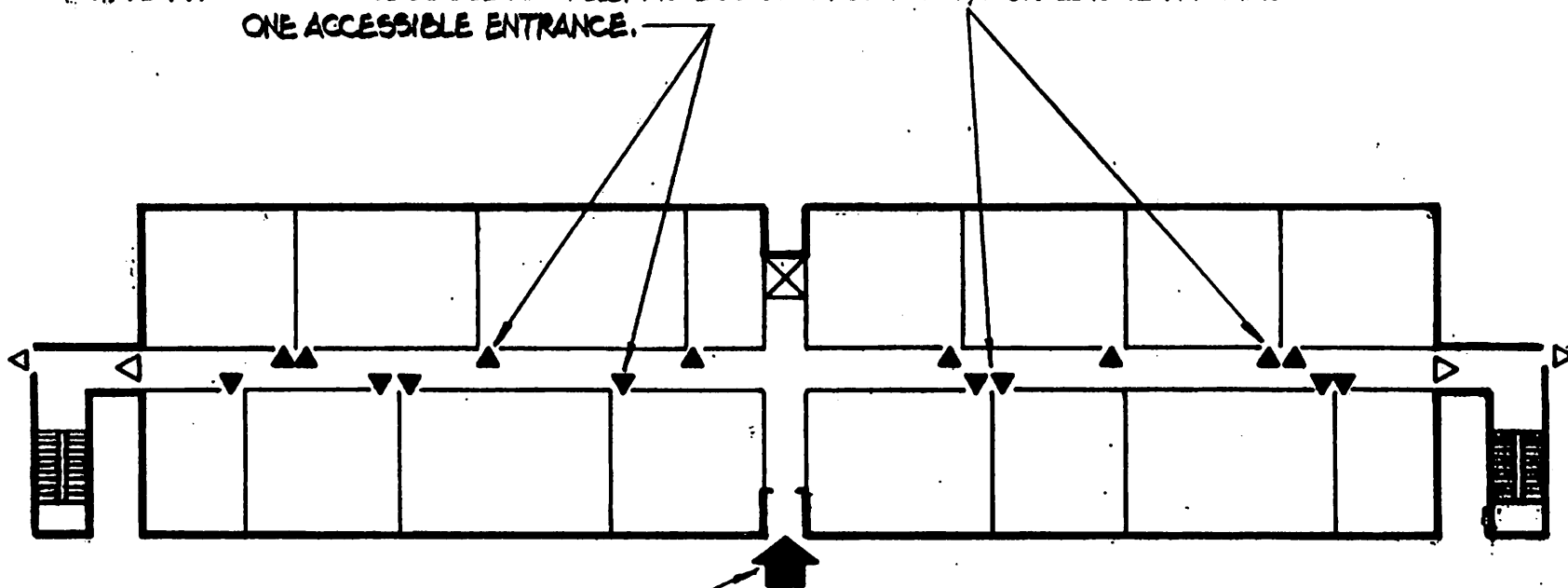


30.4.1.5.5-IF RESIDENT AND/OR GUEST PARKING IS PROVIDED IN A BASEMENT, OR A PARKING AREA LOCATED BELOW AN ELEVATED RESIDENTIAL GROUND FLOOR, THEN AN ELEVATOR SHALL BE PROVIDED TO AT LEAST THE RESIDENTIAL GROUND FLOOR.

(NOTE: HOUSING FACILITIES COVERED BY 30.4.1.5.1, 30.4.1.5.2 AND 30.4.1.5.4 SHALL REQUIRE ELEVATOR TRAVEL BEYOND THE RESIDENTIAL GROUND FLOOR.)

30.4.1.5- BUILDINGS REQUIRING ELEVATORS- PART 2

30.4.2.1.1- EACH ACCESSIBLE AND FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNIT SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM OF ONE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE.



30.4.2.1.2- FOR PRIVATELY OWNED BUILDINGS, IF DWELLING UNIT ENTRY IS FROM A COMMON AREA (E.G., CORRIDOR, HALLWAY, LOBBY, ETC.), THEN THERE SHALL BE A MINIMUM OF ONE ACCESSIBLE BUILDING ENTRANCE SERVING EACH FUNCTIONAL USE.

30.4.2.1.3- FOR PUBLICLY OWNED BUILDINGS, IF DWELLING UNIT ENTRY IS FROM A COMMON AREA (E.G., CORRIDOR, HALLWAY, LOBBY, ETC.), THEN THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE BUILDING ENTRANCES SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 6.2.

30.4.2.1- ENTRANCES

30.4.2- ENTRANCES AND MEANS OF EGRESS

30.4.2.2 MEANS OF EGRESS

30.4.2.2.1 For each accessible ("B") and fully accessible ("A") dwelling unit the accessible entrance shall also serve as the accessible Means of Egress from that dwelling unit.

Vol. I,
1012.1.3

30.4.2.2.2 Except for a privately-owned facility wherein the residential floors above and/or below the residential ground floor are not served by a ramp or elevator, for all buildings and facilities accessible Means of Egress shall be provided in compliance with 6.3. (See, also, 6.3.3.1[1].)

ADAAG
4.1.3(9)

30.4.2.3 DOORS, DOORWAYS AND DOOR HARDWARE

30.4.2.3.1 Doors into, within, and through dwelling units required by this Chapter shall comply with the following:

- (1) FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") UNITS----doors shall have a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening and clear floor spaces in compliance with 7.3. Thresholds (if provided) shall comply with 7.8.

GS41A-4(2c)(b)(2);
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(3)

- (2) ACCESSIBLE ("B") UNITS----dwelling unit entrance doors shall have a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening. Doors within dwelling units shall be located on an accessible route and have a 32 inches (815 mm) nominal clear opening.

GS41A-4(2c)(b)(2);
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(3)

(NOTE 1: For [1] and [2], those Chapter 7 requirements not specifically referenced above [e.g., door operating hardware, thresholds, closers, etc.] are subject to adaptability [see 30.2.2.1.1].)

FR 3/6/91
At 9487;

(NOTE 2: For "B" dwelling units only the entry door is required to be "accessible"; doors within the unit are only required to be "usable".)

PVA Fair Hsg.
Design Guide,
Pg. 81-82

30.4.2.3.2 If door security sights ("peepholes") are provided for dwelling units, then dwelling units required to comply with this Chapter shall have such devices installed as a feature of "Adaptability" (see 30.2.2).

(NOTE: For dwelling units serving persons using wheelchairs, the location of a "peephole" is approximately 42 inches [1070 mm] to 48 inches [1220 mm] above the finished floor.)

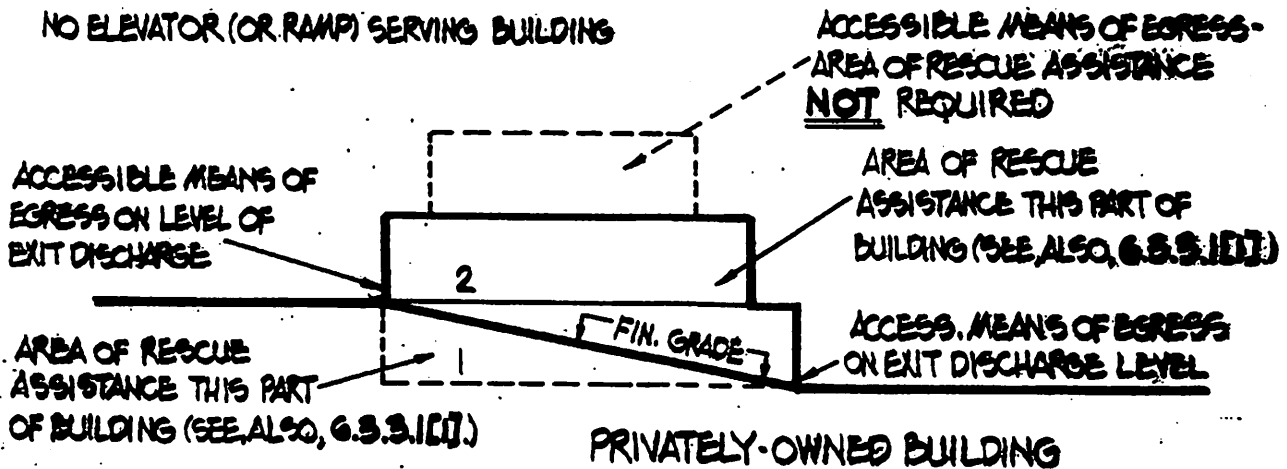
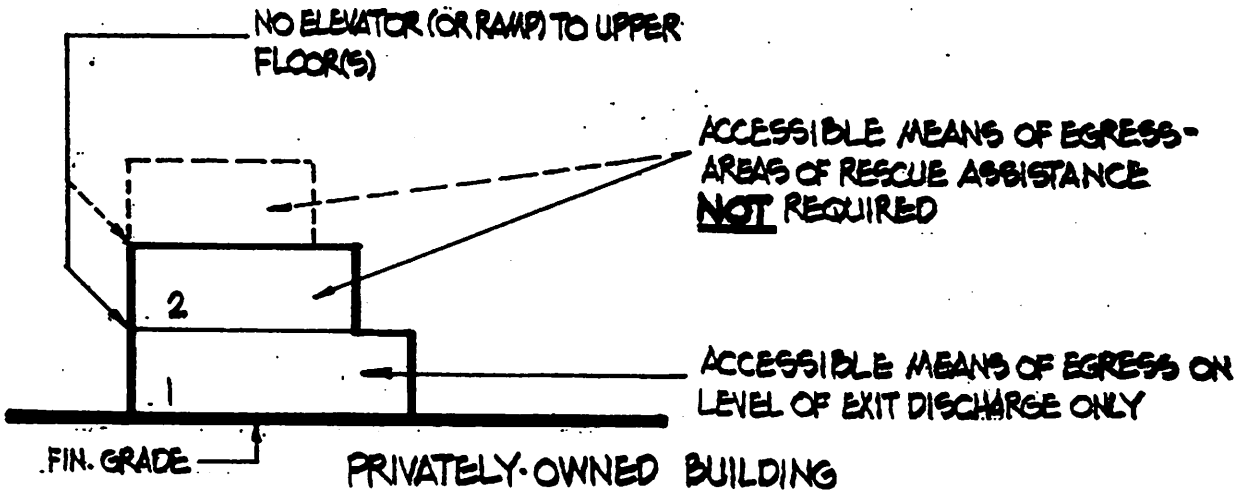
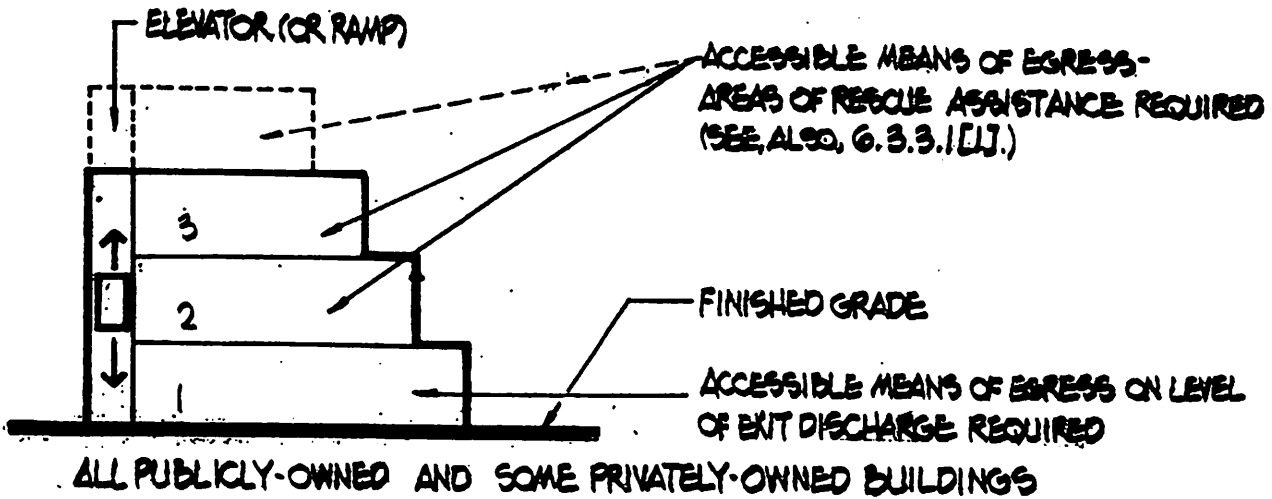
Sim. To
26.2.2,
NOTE

30.4.3 CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS

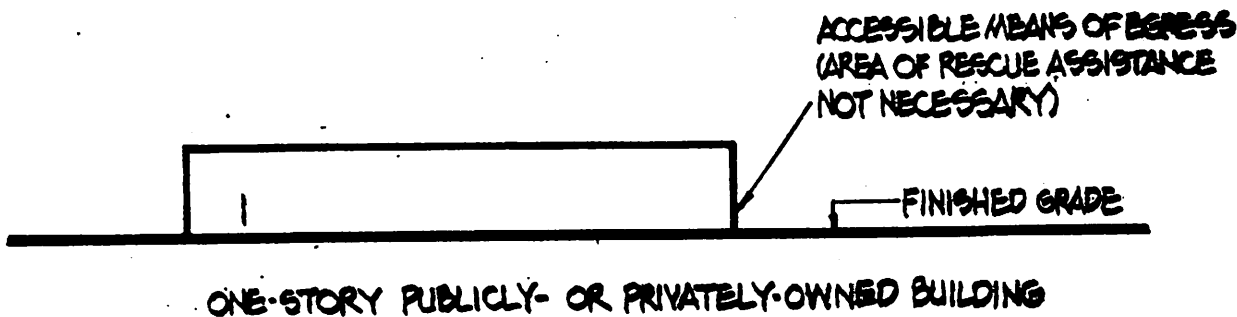
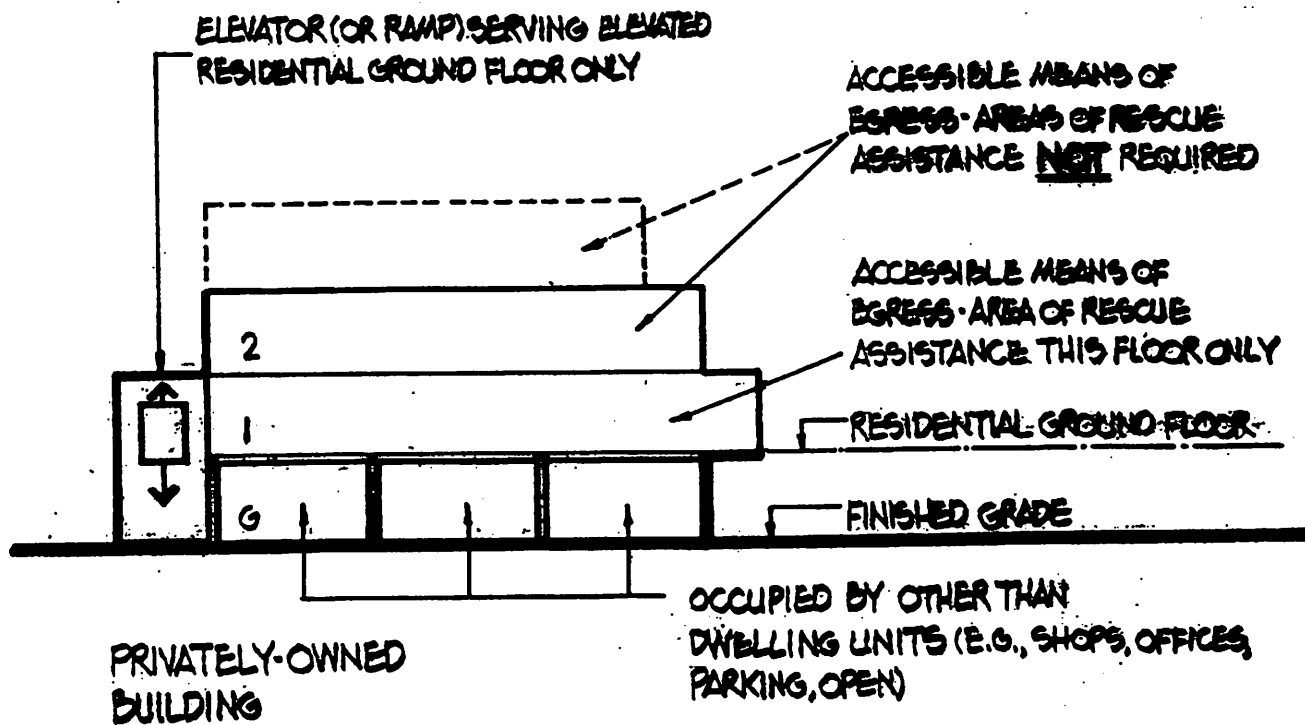
30.4.3.1 Light switches, electrical switches, electrical outlets, thermostats, and other environmental controls shall comply with the applicable requirements of 16.1 through 16.3.

GS41A-4(2c)(b)(4);
Vol. I-C, 4.10

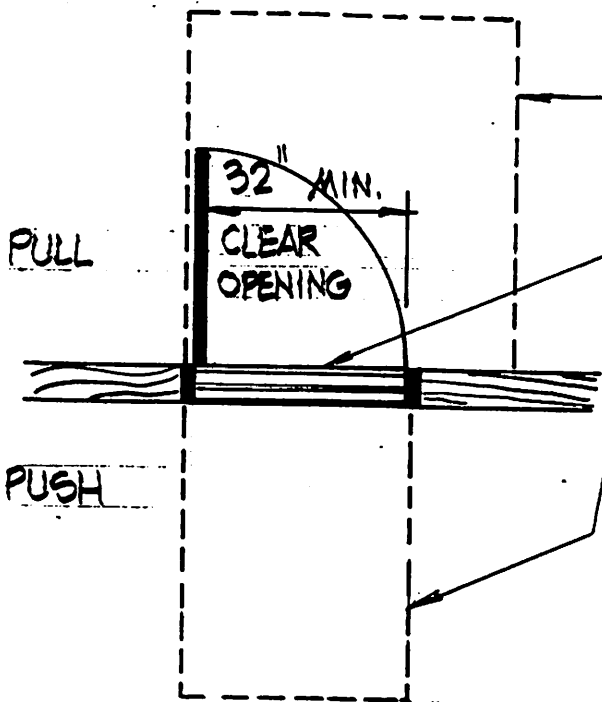
(NOTE: With respect to this Chapter, 16.3 is also applicable to dwelling unit elements such as, but not limited to: HVAC diffusers; floor receptacles [if any]; switches or controls built into appliances [e.g., a refrigerator control dial], etc.)



30.4.2.2.2 - AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE - PART 1



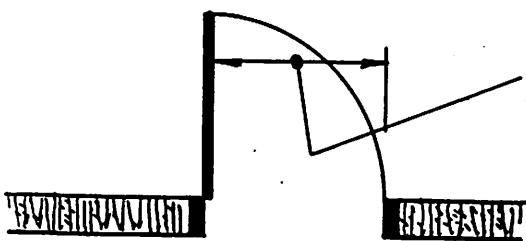
30.4.2.2.2- AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE: PART 2



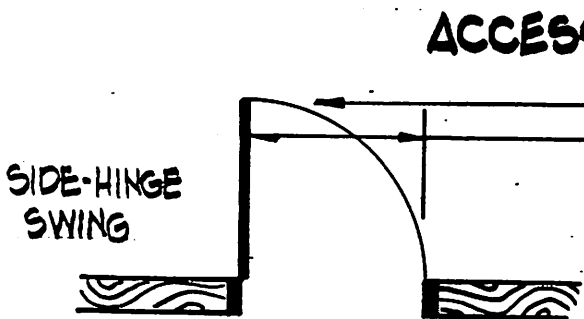
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE(S)-SEE 7.3.

THRESHOLD (IF PROVIDED)-
COMPLY WITH 7.8.

30.4.2.3.1(1)
DOORS INTO, WITHIN AND
THROUGH FULLY ACCESSIBLE
("A") UNITS

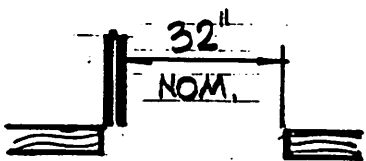


ACCESSIBLE ("B") UNIT ENTRY DOOR
32" MINIMUM CLEAR OPENING

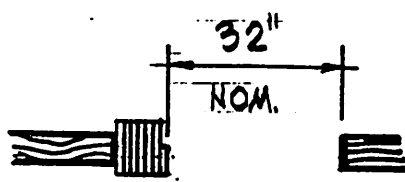


ACCESSIBLE ("B") UNIT INTERIOR DOORS

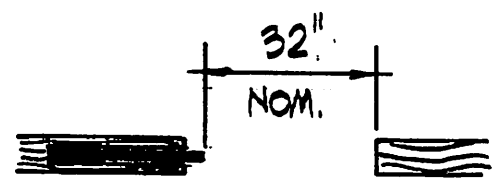
2'-10" DOOR MAY BE USED:
32" NOMINAL CLEAR OPENING
(MINIMUM 31 5/8" - 31 1/2")



BI-FOLD



FOLDING



POCKET

30.4.2.3.1(2) - DOORS INTO, WITHIN AND THROUGH "B" UNITS

30.4.2.3 - DOORS, DOORWAYS AND DOOR HARDWARE - PART 1

30.4.4 KITCHENS AND BATHROOMS

30.4.4.1 CLEARANCES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

30.4.4.1.1 Kitchens in accessible ("B") dwelling units shall comply with the following, as applicable:

- (1) For galley and "L-shaped" kitchens clearances between counters and all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances or walls shall be 40 inches (1020 mm) minimum; FR 3/6/91
At 9511

- (2) U-shaped (i.e., dead-end) kitchens with a sink, range, or cooktop at the base of the "U" shall have a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) minimum clear floor area or, a 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum diameter turning circle, that provides a parallel (i.e., side) approach to the aforementioned elements; or base cabinets are removable at the base of the "U" to provide a 29 inches (735 mm) minimum clear knee space for a forward approach. FR 3/6/91
At 9511

30.4.4.1.2 A 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space oriented for a parallel (i.e., side approach) shall be provided at the range, cooktop, or sink. For an oven, dishwasher, refrigerator/freezer, or trash compactor the clear floor space shall be oriented for either a forward or parallel (i.e., side) approach. FR 3/6/91
At 9511

30.4.4.1.3 Bathrooms (a room having, at a minimum, a usable: watercloset; lavatory; and bathing fixture) shall have the requisite minimum floor spaces at each fixture (see the table below). In addition to the required floor spaces, there shall also be a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space that will allow a wheelchair user to enter the room, close the door, use the fixtures, and exit the room. Floor spaces may be independent of, or overlap, each other. FR 3/6/91 At
9491 To 9493,
9511 To 9515

(NOTE: This Paragraph is also applicable to toilet rooms [i.e., half-baths] that are provided in addition to a bathroom[s] but is not mandatory for a powder room[s].)

<u>FIXTURE TYPE (1)</u>	<u>FLOOR SPACE REQUIREMENTS ILLUSTRATED IN</u>	
Watercloset	11.6.1	
Lavatory (2)	11.6.2	
Transfer Shower: 36" x 36" (915 mm x 915mm) (3)	12.2	
Roll-In Shower: 30" x 60" (760 mm x 1525 mm) (3)	12.3.1	
Full Shower Room: 60" x 60" (1525 mm x 1525 mm) (3)	12.3.2	Cross- Reference
Bathtub (3), (4)	12.4.2, 12.4.3, 12.4.5.1	
Roll-In Shower: 36" x 60" (915 mm x 1525 mm) (3)	29.4.7.3	

- (1) In multiple fixture bathrooms and toilet rooms only one fixture of each type must be accessible.

- (2) If the lavatory is adaptable to be accessible, then the clear floor space may be oriented for a parallel (i.e., side) approach.
- (3) Any bathing fixture may be used.
- (4) Depending on the watercloset location within the bathroom, floor space adjacent to the bathtub may vary in size and orientation from those shown in Chapter 12. For clarification refer to the illustrations in this Chapter.

30.4.4.1.4 In all rooms having a watercloset and a bathing fixture, the watercloset shall not be located within the clear floor space adjacent to a bathtub or shower entrance.

Sim. to I-C
5.4.4(a)(5);
FR 3/6/91 At 9514

(NOTE: For the principal bathroom in Type "A" dwelling units, only [30.5.2.1], the watercloset shall not be located within the bathtub or shower clear floor space. In illustration 30.5.2.1 compare the watercloset location in a Type "A" principal bathroom with that shown for Type "B" bathrooms.)

30.4.4.2 DOORS

30.4.4.2.1 For accessible ("B") dwelling unit bathrooms and toilet rooms the arc of an inswing door shall not overlap the clear floor space required for room entry.

FR 3/6/91
At 9511

Within fully accessible ("A") dwelling units an inswing door may overlap the 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm), or 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter, minimum clear floor area by 12 inches (305 mm) maximum.

Vol. I-C,
5.4.2(b)

30.4.4.2.2 Horizontal sliding doors shall have a bottom track with a 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum overall height. Doors of this type may utilize a heavy-duty top track that allows the threshold/bottom track to be deleted.

Vol. I-C,
5.4.2(e)

30.4.4.3 GRAB BARS

30.4.4.3.1 In all bathrooms and toilet rooms walls and/or partitions serving as grab bar locations shall be reinforced to support the later installation of grab bars. When installed, grab bars shall comply with 11.5.

FHAA 100.205(c)(3)(iii);
GS41A-4(2c)(b)(5);
Vol. I-C,
5.4.1(a)-Sim.

30.4.4.4 USABLE FIXTURES

30.4.4.4.1 Waterclosets shall comply with 11.6.1 except that the seat height shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

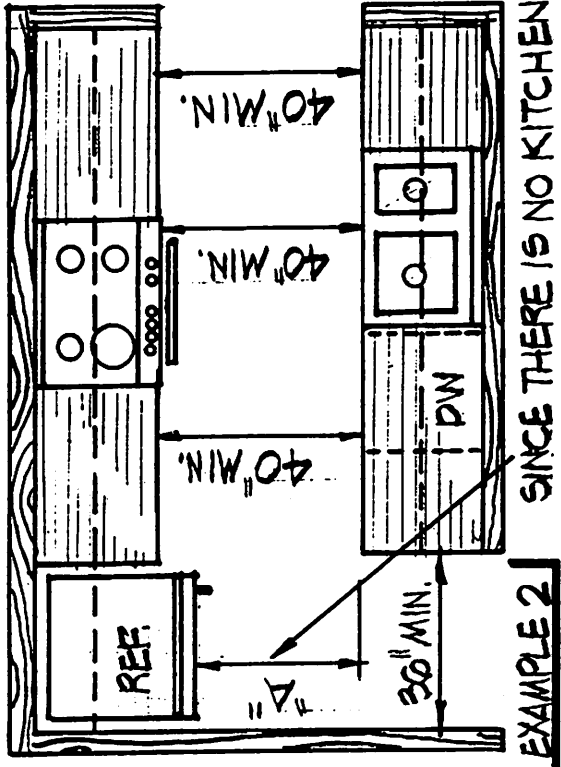
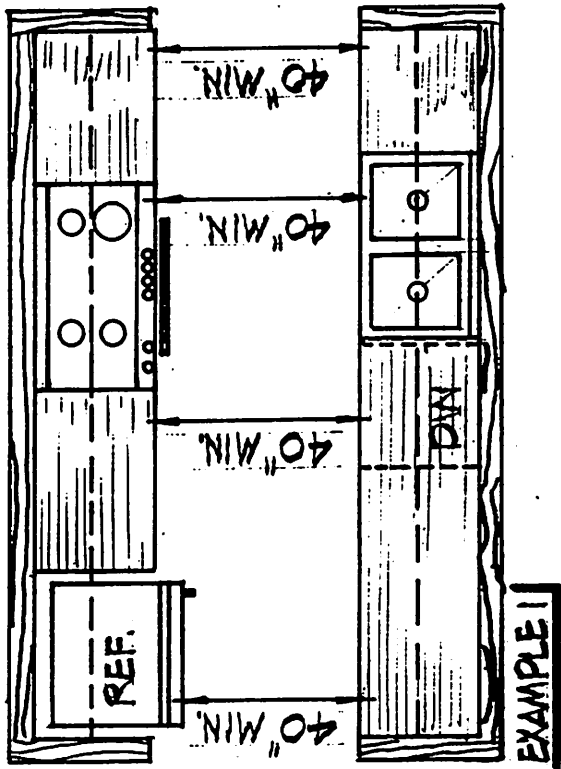
Vol. I-C, 5.4.4(a)(1)

30.4.4.4.2 Lavatories shall comply with 11.6.2.

Vol. I-C, 5.4.4(b)

30.4.4.4.3 If a shower is the fixture of choice, then it shall comply with 12.2, 12.3.1, 12.3.2, or 29.4.7.3. If the fixture of choice is a bathtub, then it shall comply with 12.4.

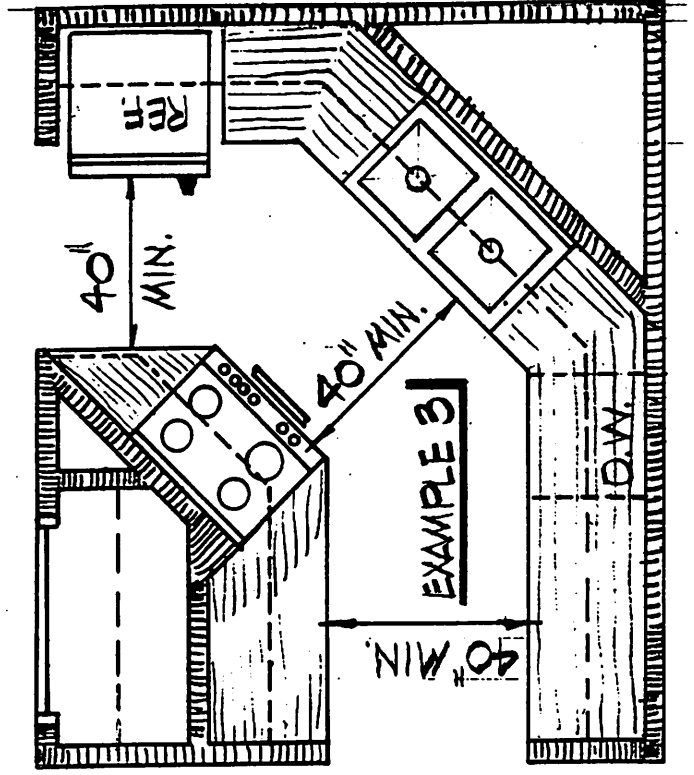
Vol. I-C, 5.4.4(d),
5.4.4(e)



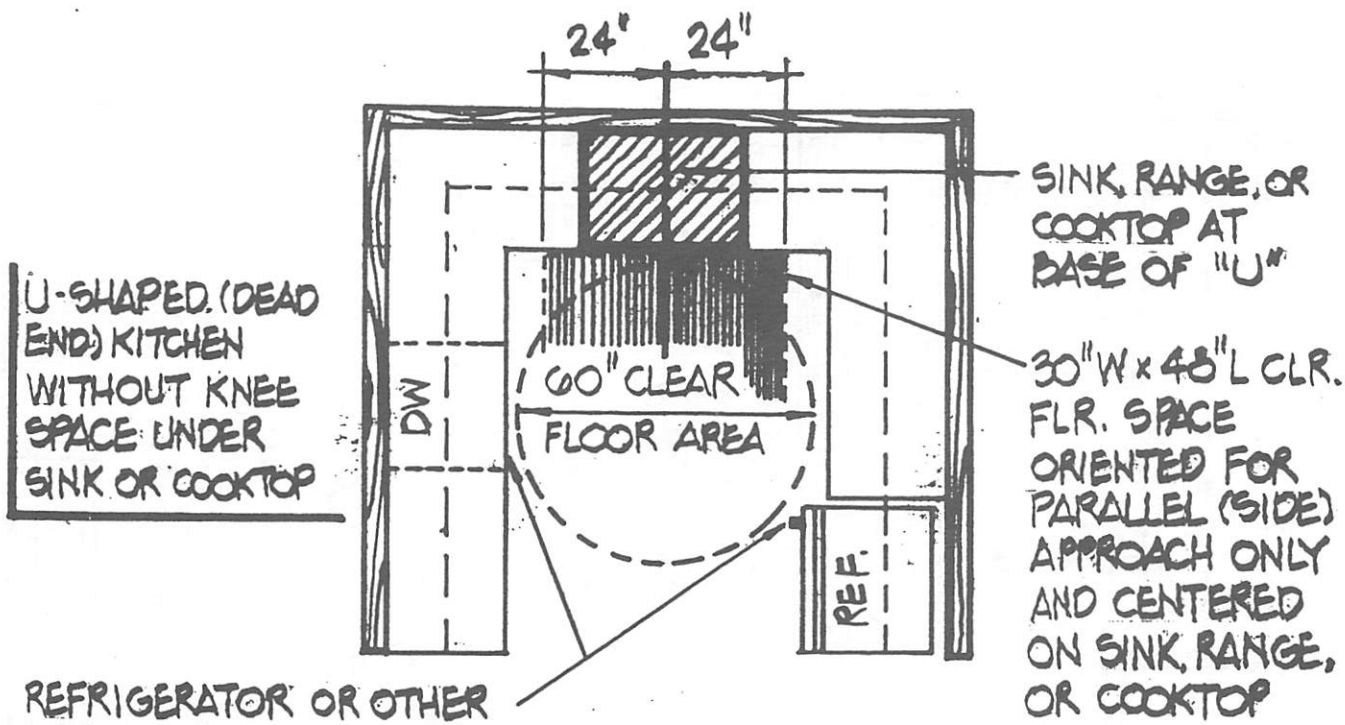
SINCE THERE IS NO KITCHEN ELEMENT OPPOSITE THE REFRIGERATOR, "A" = 36" MIN.

30.4.4.1.(1) - "B" UNIT CLEARANCES FOR GALLEY AND "L-SHAPED" KITCHENS

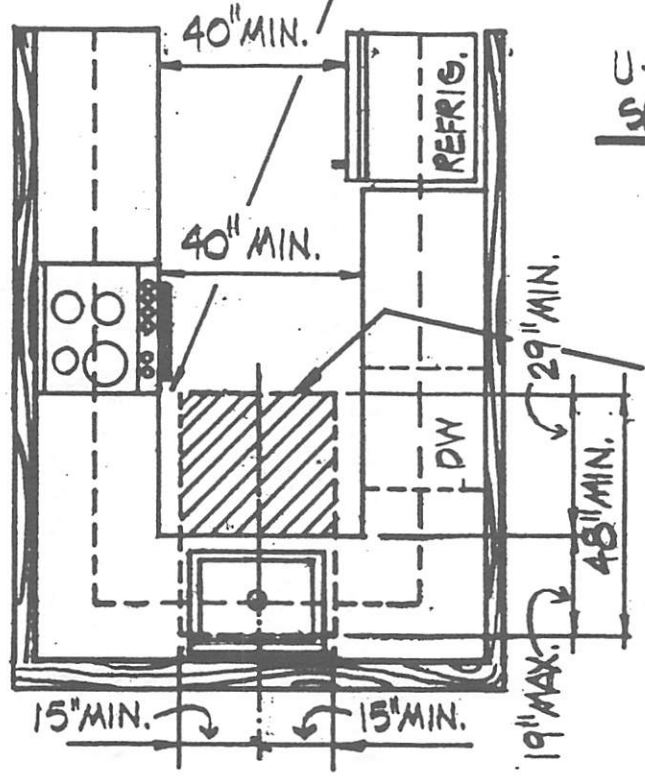
30.4.4.1 - CLEARANCES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE (PART 1)



EXAMPLE 3



REFRIGERATOR OR OTHER APPLIANCE DO NOT OVERLAP CLEAR FLOOR AREA OR CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

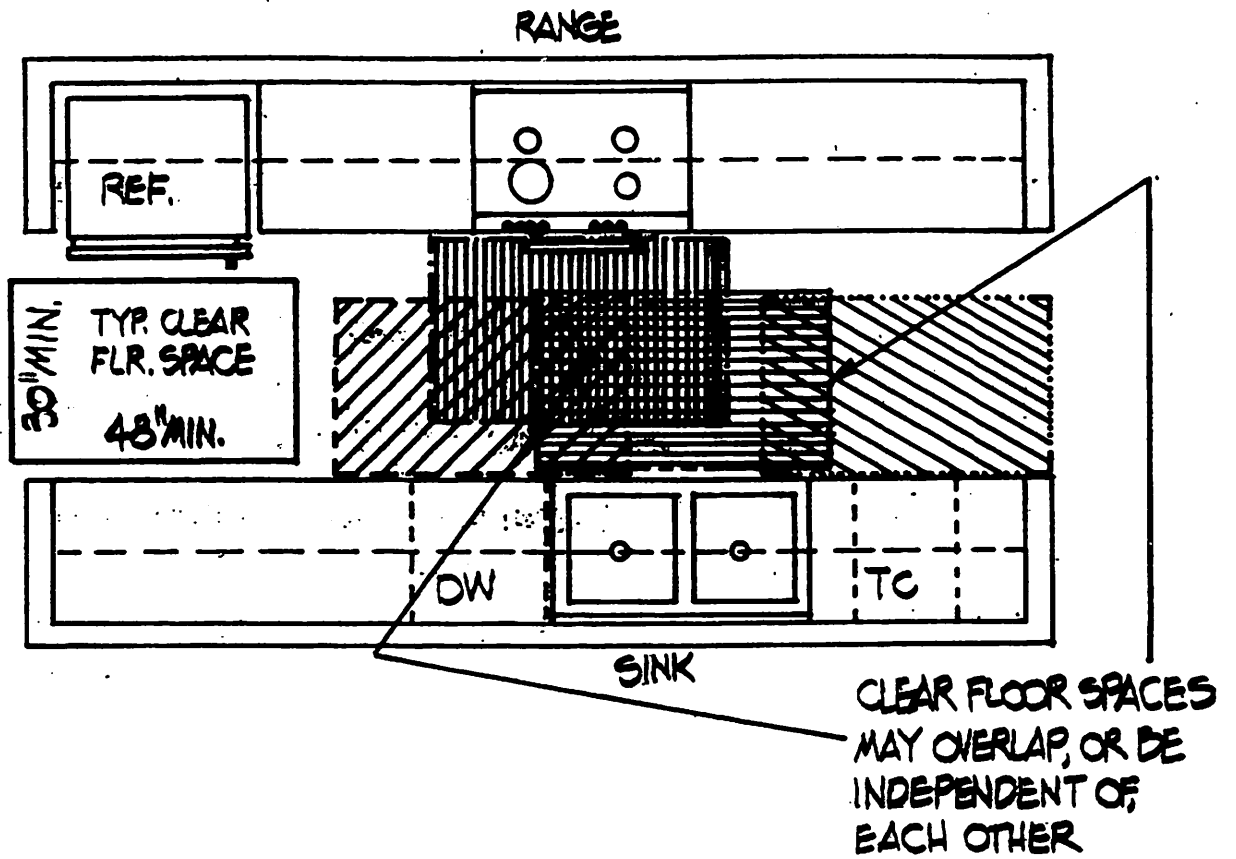


U-SHAPED KITCHEN WITH KNEE SPACE UNDER SINK OR COOKTOP

30" W x 48" L CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ORIENTED FOR FORWARD APPROACH ONLY

30.4.4.1.1(2) - "B" UNIT CLEAR FLOOR AREA/SPACE FOR U-SHAPED (DEAD-END) KITCHENS

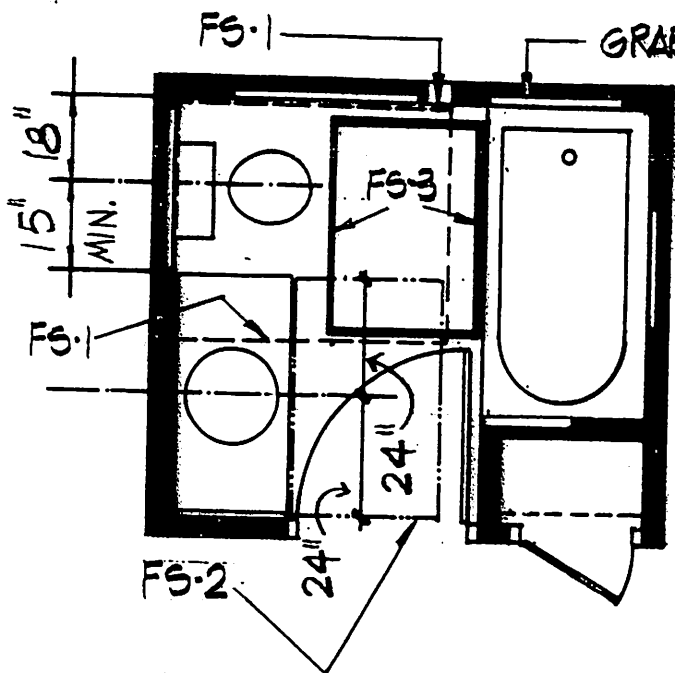
30.4.4.1 - CLEARANCES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE (PART 2)



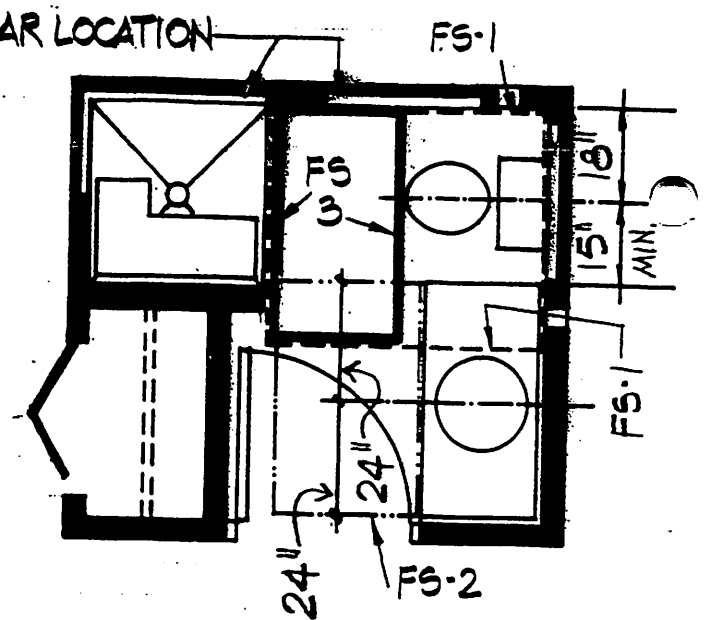
ORIENTATION OF 30"W x 48"L CLEAR FLOOR SPACE			
KITCHEN ELEMENT	FORWARD APPROACH	PARALLEL (SIDE) APPROACH	EITHER APPROACH
RANGE	—	●	—
COOKTOP	—	●	—
SINK	—	●	—
REFRIGERATOR	—	—	●
FREEZER	—	—	●
OVEN	—	—	●
DISHWASHER	—	—	●
TRASH COMPACTOR	—	—	●

30.4.4.1.2 - "B" UNIT CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT KITCHEN ELEMENTS/APPLIANCES

30.4.4.1 - CLEARANCES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACES (PART 3)



**EXAMPLE 1
(WITH BATHTUB)**



**EXAMPLE 2
(WITH TRANSFER SHOWER)**

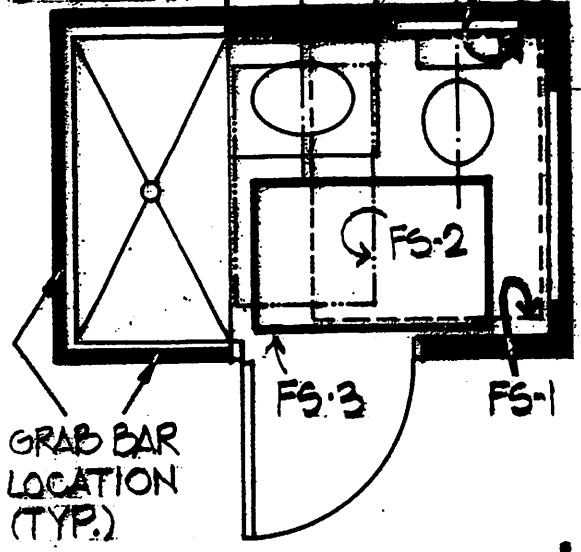
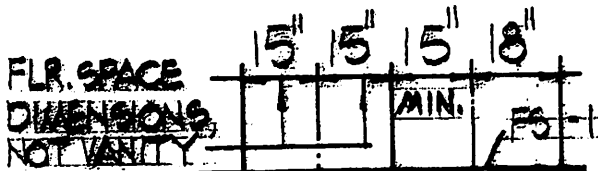
- LEGEND:**
- FS-1 FLOOR SPACE AT WATERCLOSET.
 - FS-2 FLOOR SPACE AT LAVATORY (SEE NOTE 2 BELOW).
 - FS-3 30" W x 48" L CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ALLOWING PERSON TO BE WITHIN ROOM AND CLEAR OF DOOR SWING.
- BATHTUB/SHOWER FLOOR SPACE NOT SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATION CLARITY ONLY.

NOTES:

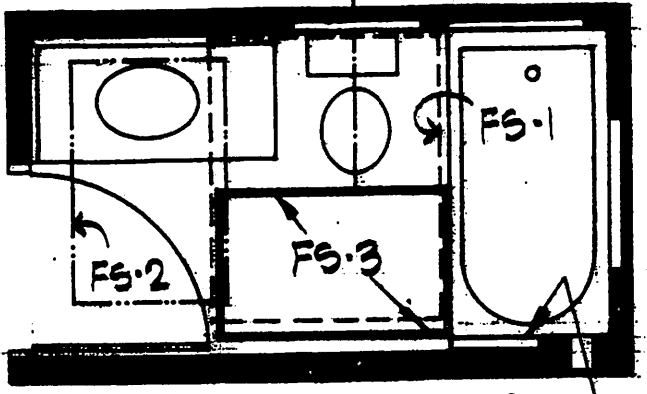
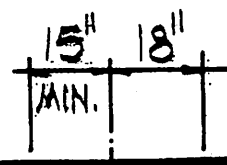
1. FOR FLOOR SPACE AT WATERCLOSET SEE ILLUSTRATION 11.6.1.
2. IF THE LAVATORY IS ADAPTABLE TO BE ACCESSIBLE, THEN THE FLOOR SPACE MAY BE ORIENTED FOR A PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH (SHOWN ON ABOVE PLANS).
3. FLOOR SPACES MAY OVERLAP (AS SHOWN), OR BE INDEPENDENT OF, EACH OTHER.
4. "GRAB BAR LOCATION" DENOTES WALLS/PARTITIONS REINFORCED FOR LATER GRAB BAR INSTALLATION.
5. THE DRAWINGS SHOWN ON THIS PAGE ARE ILLUSTRATIVE, NOT EXHAUSTIVE; OTHER CONFIGURATIONS MAY BE USED.

30.4.4.1.3-BATHROOMS AND TOILET ROOMS (PART 1)

30.4.4.1- CLEARANCES AND FLOOR SPACE



**EXAMPLE 1
(WITH ROLL-IN SHOWER)**



BATHTUB MAY BE INSTALLED WITH CONTROLS AT THIS LOCATION

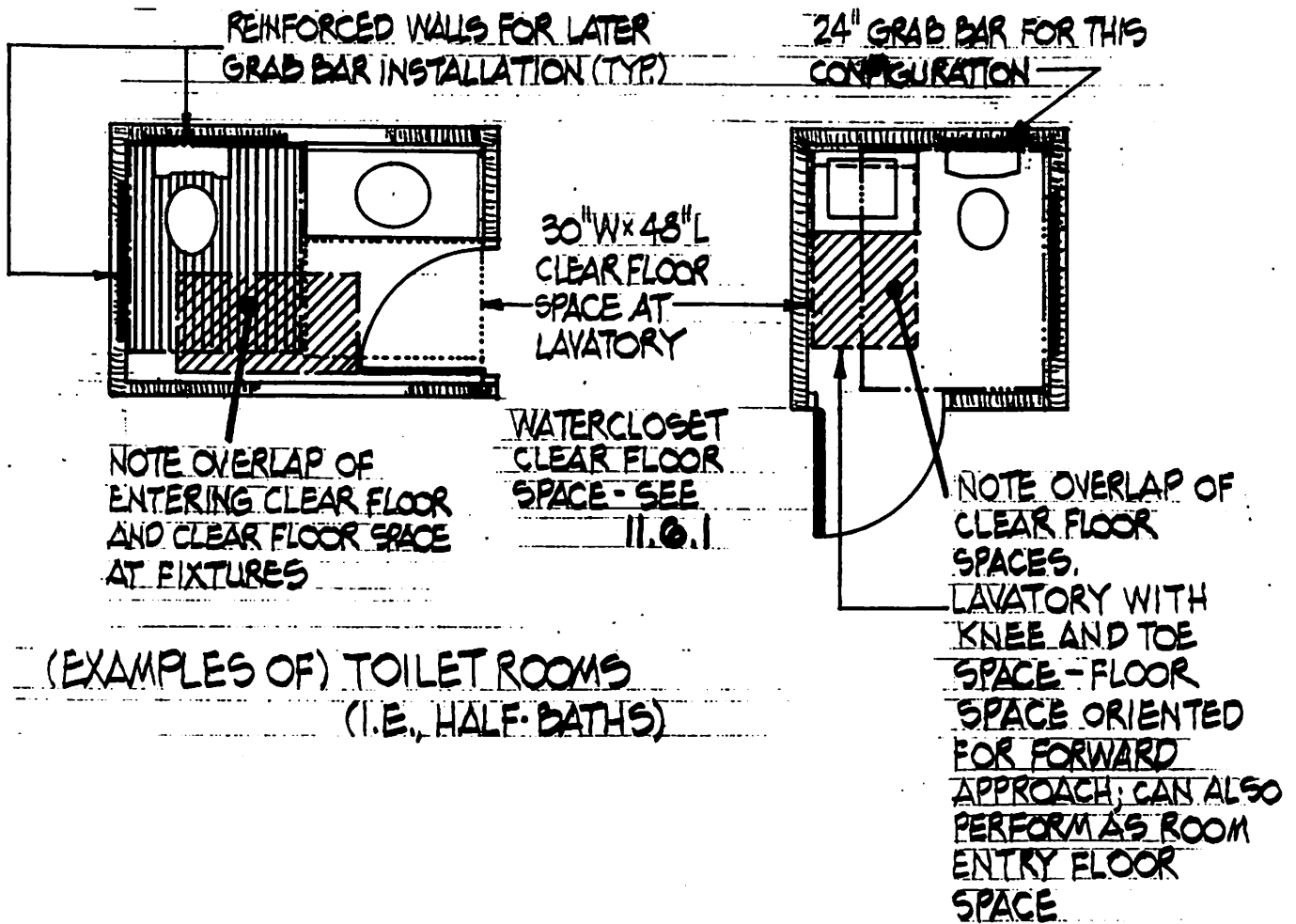
**EXAMPLE 2
(WITH BATHTUB)**

- LEGEND:**
- FS-1 FLOOR SPACE AT WATERCLOSET.
 - FS-2 FLOOR SPACE AT LAVATORY.
(FOR EXAMPLE 2: IF THE LAVATORY IS ADAPTABLE TO BE ACCESSIBLE, THEN THE FLOOR SPACE MAY ORIENTED FOR A PARALLEL [I.E., SIDE] APPROACH.)
 - FS-3 30"W x 48"L CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ALLOWING PERSON TO BE WITHIN ROOM AND CLEAR OF DOOR SWING.
(FOR EXAMPLE 2: ENTRY FLOOR SPACE ALSO SERVES AS BATHTUB FLOOR SPACE. NOTE THAT BATHTUB FLOOR SPACE SIZE AND ORIENTATION DIFFERS FROM CHAPTER 12 ILLUSTRATIONS.)

- NOTES:**
1. FOR FLOOR SPACE AT WATERCLOSET SEE ILLUSTRATION 11.6.1.
 2. FLOOR SPACES MAY OVER LAP (AS SHOWN), OR BE INDEPENDENT OF, EACH OTHER.
 3. "GRAB BAR LOCATION" DENOTES WALLS/PARTITIONS REINFORCED FOR LATER GRAB BAR INSTALLATION.
 4. THE DRAWINGS SHOWN ON THIS PAGE ARE ILLUSTRATIVE, NOT EXHAUSTIVE; OTHER CONFIGURATIONS MAY BE USED.

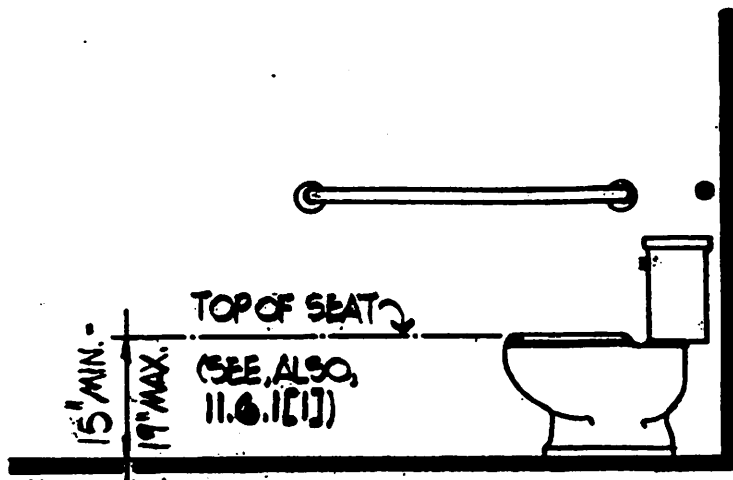
30.4.4.1.3- BATHROOMS AND TOILET ROOMS (PART 2)

30.4.4.1- CLEARANCES AND FLOOR SPACE



30.4.4.1.3 - BATHROOMS AND TOILET ROOMS (PART 3)

30.4.4.1 - CLEARANCES AND CLEAR FLOOR SPACE



30.4.4.4.1-
 WATERCLOSETS SHALL COMPLY WITH 11.6.1 EXCEPT THAT THE SEAT HEIGHT SHALL BE 15" MINIMUM TO 19" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR.

30.4.4.4.2: LAVATORIES
 SEE 11.6.2

30.4.4.4.3: BATHING FIXTURES
 (CHOICE OF ANY TYPE)

- TRANSFER SHOWER.....12.2
- 30" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER.....12.3.1
- 60" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER ROOM.....12.3.2
- 36" x 60" ROLL-IN SHOWER ENCLOSURE.....29.4.7.3
- BATHTUB.....12.4

30.4.4.4 - USABLE FIXTURES

30.5 FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNITS (A.K.A., "A" DWELLING UNITS)

30.5.1 Except as referenced in the NOTE immediately below, dwelling units required by 30.1.2.1.3(1), 30.1.2.2.2(1) and 30.1.3 shall comply with 30.4 and the applicable requirements of this Section.

(NOTE: For doors into, within and through this type dwelling unit, see 30.4.2.3.1[1]. For clear floor space and clear floor area in the kitchen and principal bathroom, see 30.5.2.1 not 30.4.4.1.1 nor 30.4.4.1.2.)

Vol. I-C,
Chapter 5

Cross-
Reference

30.5.2 CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AND CLEAR FLOOR AREA

30.5.2.1 A 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (7660 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space shall be provided at all fixtures, appliances, storage facilities, etc. (For the clear floor space at bathroom/toilet room fixtures refer to the table in 30.4.4.1.3.) The kitchen and one principal bathroom (a room having, at a minimum, a usable: watercloset, lavatory; and bathing fixture) shall have a clear floor area that:

Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(a)(2);
ADAAG 4.2.4.1

(1) Is 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm); or

Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(a)(1);
5.4.2(a)

(2) Has a 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter minimum turning circle.

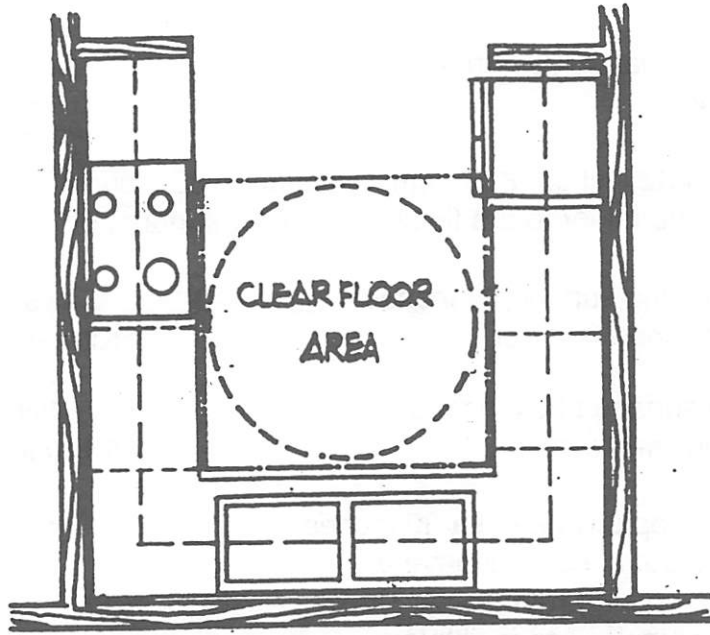
Use of 11.3.1.2 and 11.3.1.3 shall be permitted in the kitchen and principal bathroom. If second bathrooms and/or toilet rooms are provided, then they shall comply with 30.4.4.1.3.

Vol. I-C, 5.4.4(c);

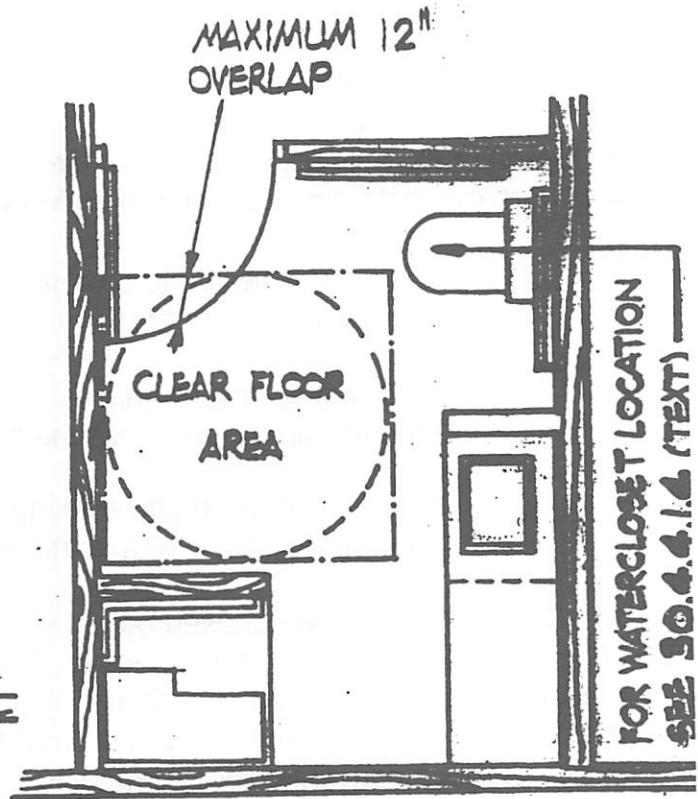
30.5.3 BATHROOM ACCESSORIES

30.5.3.1 Bathroom accessories shall comply with the applicable requirements of 11.7. If medicine cabinets are provided, then a minimum of one shall be located in the principal bathroom with with a minimum of one usable shelf at 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

Vol. I-C,
5.4.4(c);
ADAAG 4.23.9



KITCHEN - CLEAR FLOOR AREA:
60" x 60" MINIMUM; OR
60" DIAMETER TURNING CIRCLE



PRINCIPAL BATHROOM -
CLEAR FLOOR AREA:
60" x 60" MINIMUM; OR
60" DIAMETER MINIMUM TURNING CIRCLE

(A PRINCIPLE BATHROOM HAS, AT A
MINIMUM, A WATERCLOSET, A LAVATORY,
AND A BATHING FIXTURE)

IF SECOND BATHROOMS AND/OR
TOILET ROOMS ARE PROVIDED,
THEN THEY COMPLY WITH
30.4.4.1.3.

30.5.2.1 - KITCHENS AND PRINCIPAL BATHROOMS
IN FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS

30.5.2 - CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AND CLEAR FLOOR AREA

30.5.4 KITCHENS

30.5.4.1 WORK TOPS

30.5.4.1.1 Each fully accessible ("A") kitchen shall have a minimum of one work top that complies with the following:

- (1) A unit adjustable within a range of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum to 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the finished floor to the finished working surface; or
- (2) A fixed unit having its finished working surface 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor; or Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(a)(4)(A)
- (3) A pull-out unit having its working surface at 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(a)(4)(C)

30.5.4.1.2 An adjustable or fixed height work top shall have a 30 inches (760 mm) minimum clear working width. Pull-out units shall have a nominal 30 inches (760 mm) minimum clear working width. Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(4)
(NOTE: The width of a pull-out unit is "...nominal..." to facilitate installation in a conventionally-sized base cabinet.)

30.5.4.1.3 For adjustable or fixed height working surfaces the clear floor space shall be oriented for a forward approach only. At all working surfaces the clear floor space may extend 19 inches (485 mm) maximum under the work top and knee clearance shall be 27 inches (685 mm) minimum. Vol. I-C,
Pg. 176, 178

30.5.4.1.4 Work top undersurfaces and supporting sidewalls shall be free of abrasive surfaces, sharp projections, and unprotected and/or loosely hanging electrical connections. Similar To
ADAAG 4.26.4

30.5.4.2 CABINETS, SHELVES, AND DRAWERS

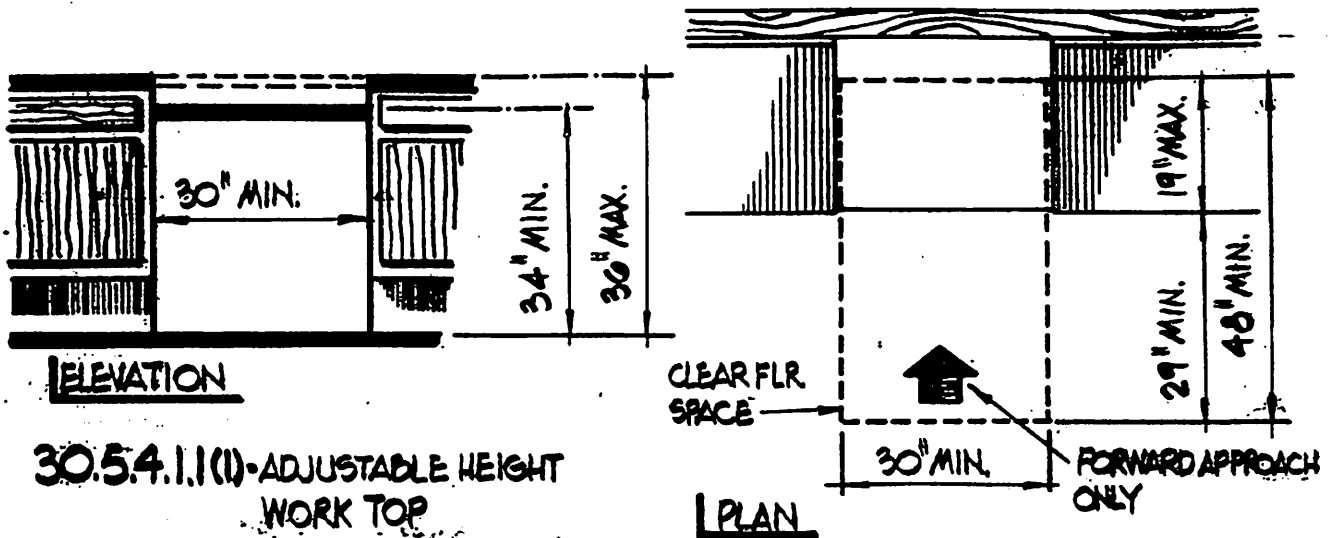
30.5.4.2.1 The height of at least one shelf of all wall cabinets and storage shelves shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(a)(5)

30.5.4.2.2 Handles and pulls shall have a shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require a tight or fine grasp, nor a wrist-twisting motion. Cabinet door operating hardware shall be located as follows:

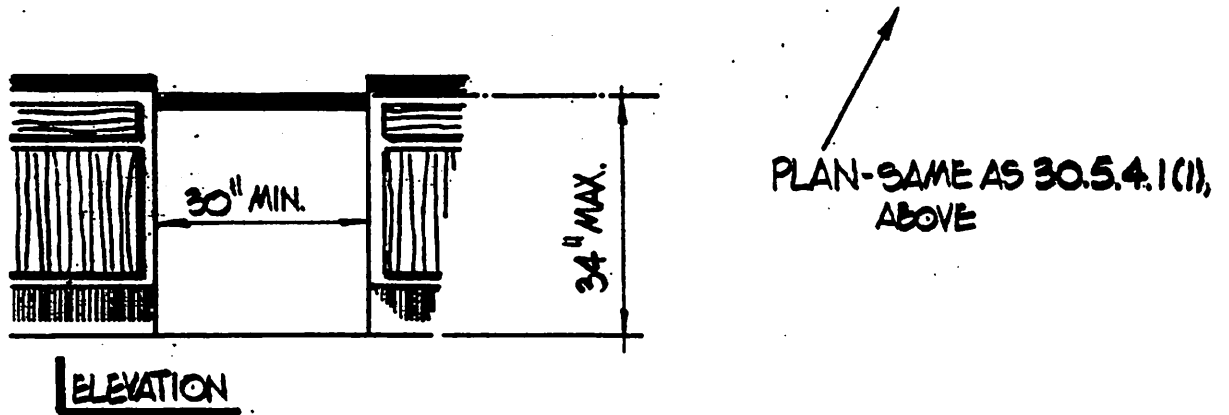
- (1) WALL CABINETS----as close to the bottom of the door as possible; Vol. I-C,
- (2) BASE CABINETS----as close to the top of the door as possible. 5.3.1(a)(6)

30.5.4.2.3 Drawers shall be openable by means of handle or pull. Finger slots or any other method requiring a tight or fine grasp, or wrist-twisting motion shall not be used. Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(a)(7)

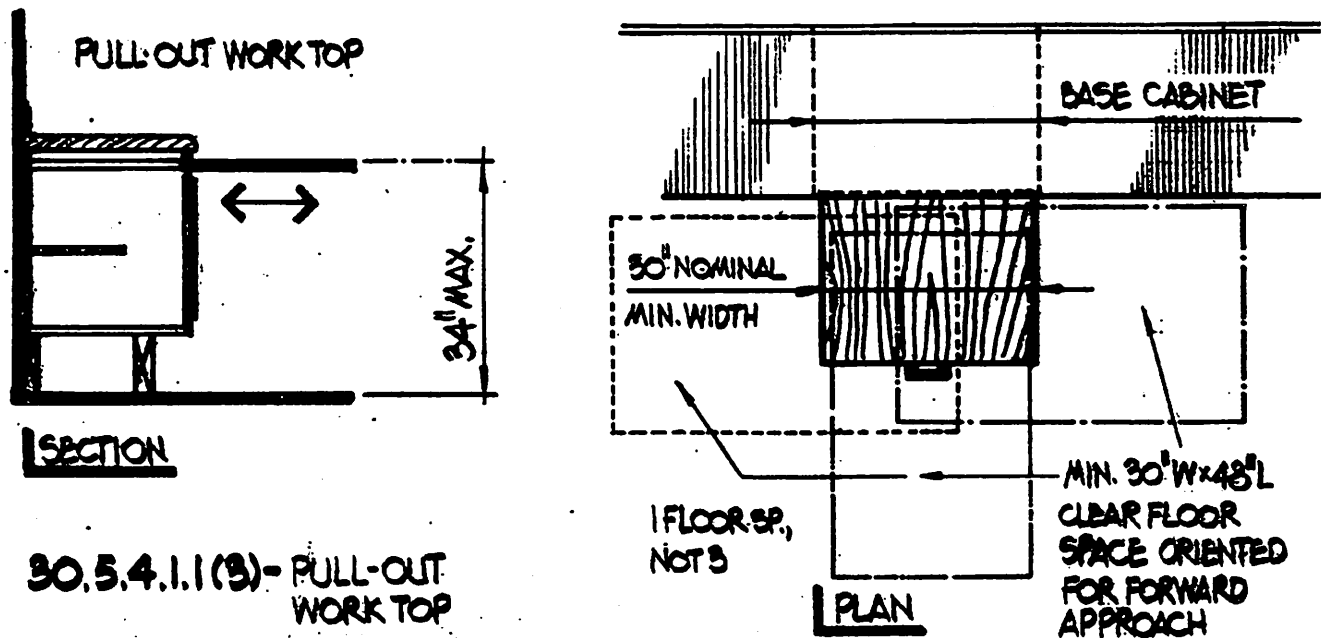
30.5.4.2.4 The use of touch latches shall be acceptable. ADAAG 4.25.4



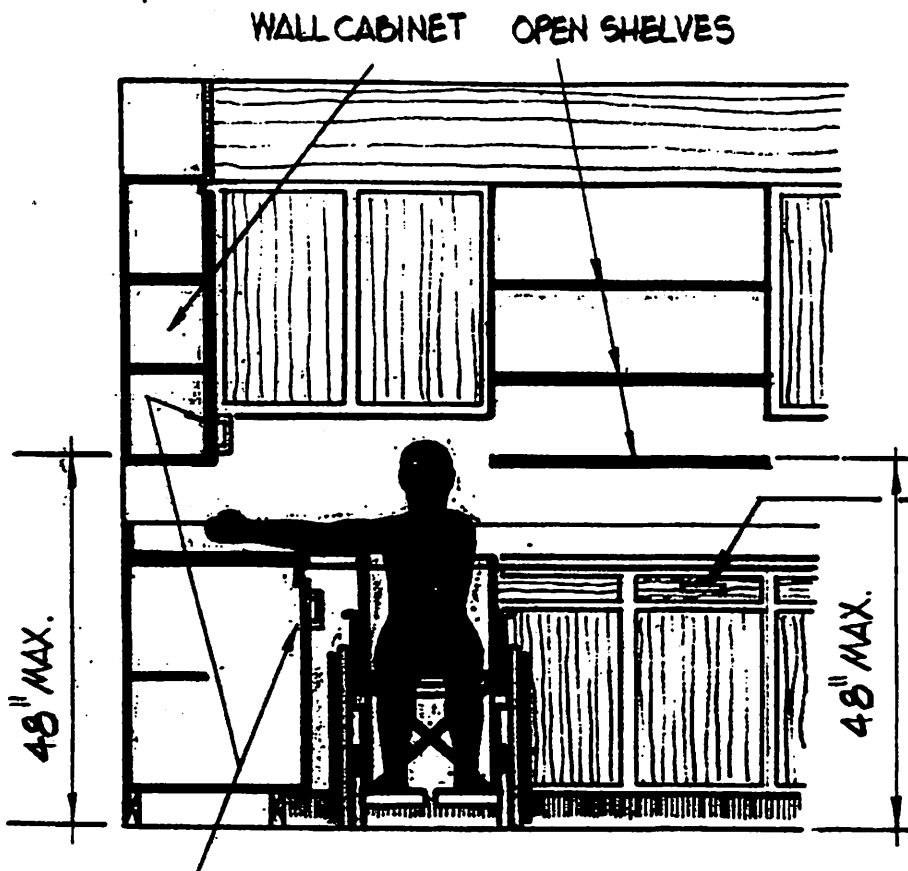
30.5.4.1.1(1)-ADJUSTABLE HEIGHT WORK TOP



30.5.4.F.1(2)-FIXED HEIGHT WORK TOP



30.5.4.1.1(3)- PULL-OUT WORK TOP



30.5.4.2.1-
 THE HEIGHT OF AT LEAST
 ONE SHELF OF ALL WALL
 CABINETS AND STORAGE
 SHELVES SHALL BE 48"
 MAXIMUM ABOVE THE
 FINISHED FLOOR.

FOR DRAWERS SEE
30.5.4.2.3 BELOW

30.5.4.2.2- HANDLES AND PULLS SHALL HAVE A SHAPE THAT IS EASY TO GRASP WITH ONE HAND AND DOES NOT REQUIRE A TIGHT OR FINE GRASP, NOR A WRIST-TWISTING MOTION. CABINET DOOR OPERATING HARDWARE SHALL BE LOCATED AS FOLLOWS:
 WALL CABINETS - AS CLOSE TO THE BOTTOM OF THE DOOR AS POSSIBLE;
 BASE CABINETS - AS CLOSE TO THE TOP OF THE DOOR AS POSSIBLE.

30.5.4.2.3- DRAWERS SHALL BE OPENABLE BY MEANS OF A HANDLE OR PULL. FINGER SLOTS OR ANY OTHER METHOD REQUIRING A TIGHT OR FINE GRASP, OR WRIST-TWISTING SHALL NOT BE USED.

30.5.4.2.4- THE USE OF TOUCH LATCHES SHALL BE ACCEPTABLE.

30.5.4.2- CABINETS, SHELVES, AND DRAWERS

30.5.4.3 KITCHEN SINK

30.5.4.3.1 A minimum of one sink shall comply with 11.11.3 and the applicable requirements of this Section. The clear floor space shall be oriented to provide a forward approach only and may extend 19 inches (485 mm) maximum under the fixture. Knee clearance shall be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum.

**Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(b)(1)
Through
5.3.1(b)(7)**

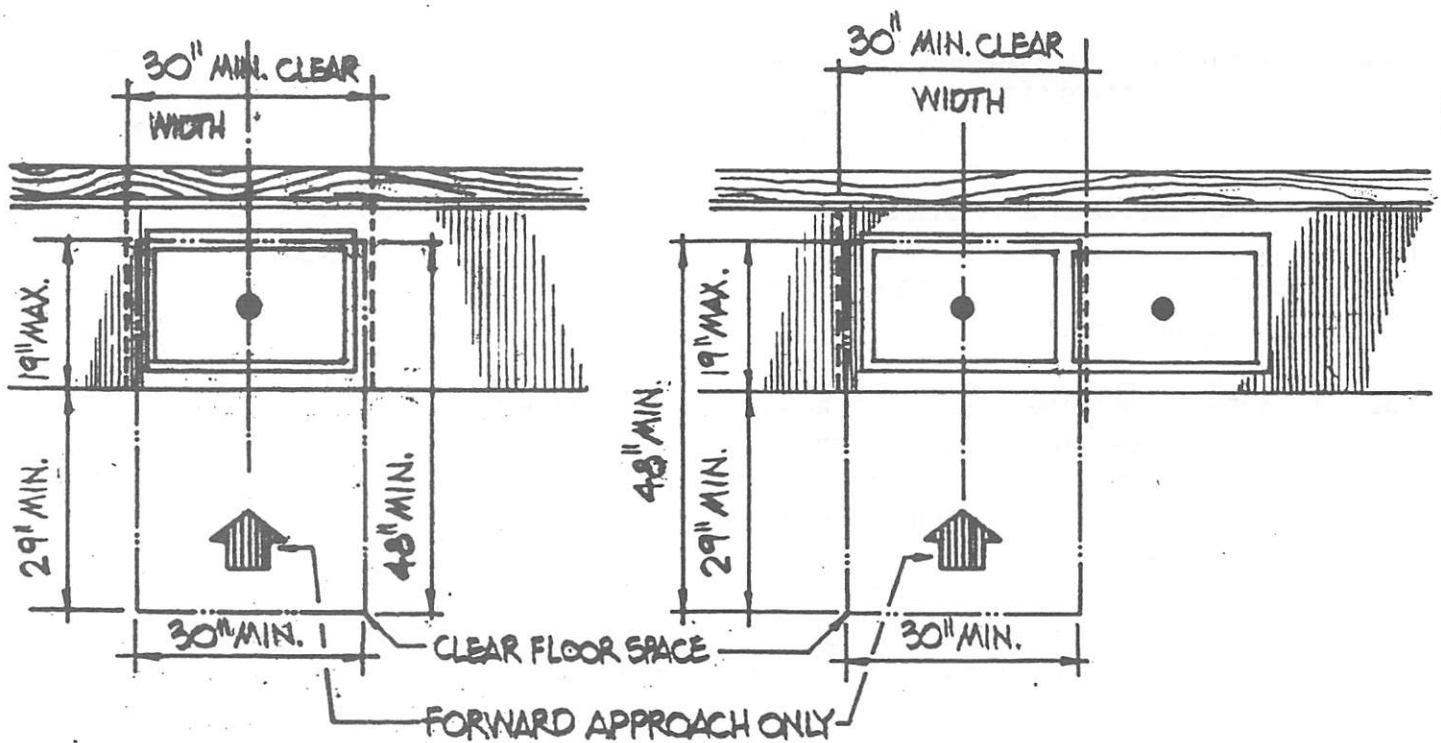
30.5.4.3.2 The counter beneath the sink shall have a 30 inches (760 mm) minimum clear width.

**Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(b)(1)**

30.5.4.3.3 If a garbage disposal/grinder is provided, then it shall be located under the deeper bowl of a double bowl sink. All electrical and water connections shall be fully insulated or covered with a removable, non-metallic baffle. The switch activating the unit shall be placed in one of the following locations:

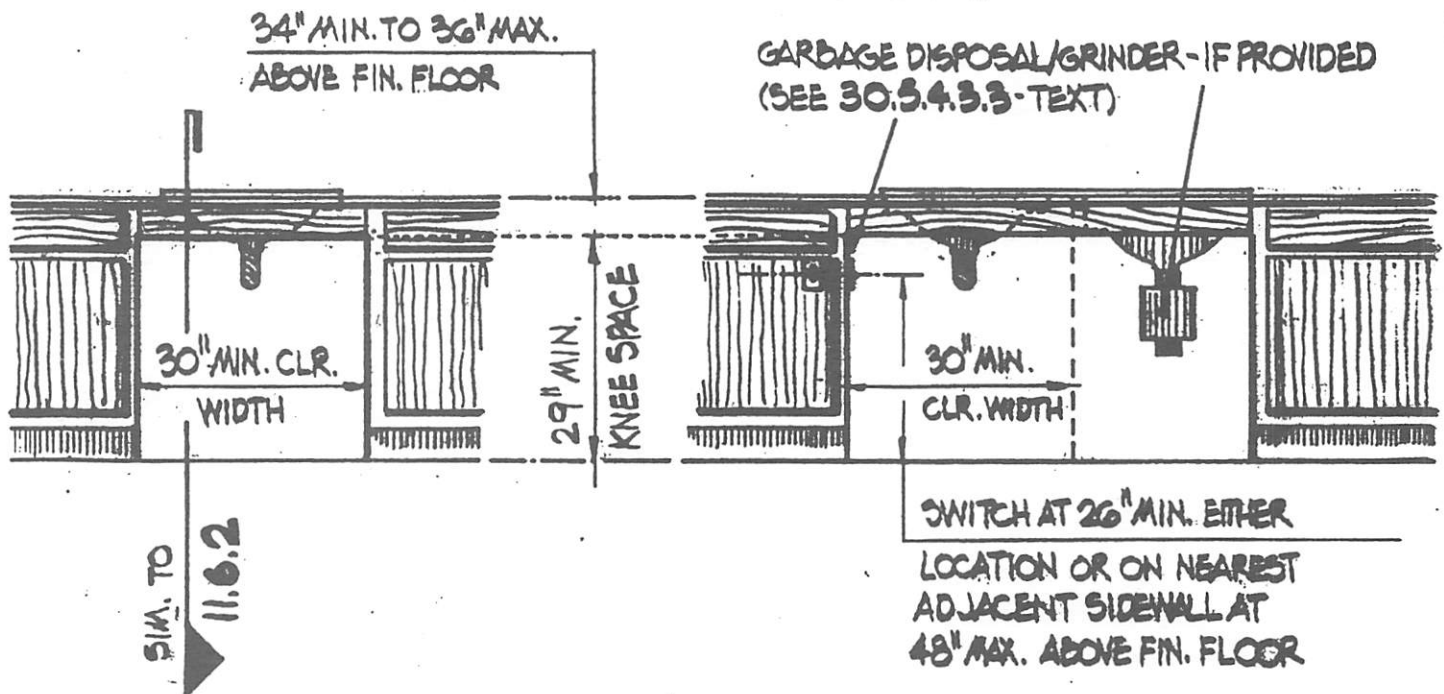
**Vol. I-C,
5.3.1(b)(8)**

- (1) On the forward side or front of the nearest base cabinet at 26 inches (660 mm) minimum above the finished floor; or
- (2) On the nearest sidewall midway between the finished counter surface and the bottom of the wall cabinets (the maximum height shall be 48 inches [1220 mm] above the finished floor).



SINGLE-BOWL SINK

DOUBLE-BOWL SINK
(ONLY ONE BOWL REQUIRED TO COMPLY)



30.5.4.3 - KITCHEN SINK

30.5.4.4 KITCHEN APPLIANCES

30.5.4.4.1 Cooking appliances shall have either up-front controls or controls grouped to one side. Use of any appliance that requires a reach across a burner(s) to access the control(s) shall be prohibited. If cooktops have knee space underneath, then: Vol. I-C,
5.3.2(a)

- (1) The cooking surface shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor; and
- (2) The clear floor space shall be oriented for forward approach only and may extend 19 inches (485 mm) maximum under the appliance and knee clearance shall be 27 inches (685 mm) minimum; and
- (3) The bottom of the unit shall be fully insulated or otherwise protected with a non-heat conducting baffle to guard against burn, electric shock, abrasions, etc.

30.5.4.4.2 Ovens, whether of self-cleaning type or not, shall be located adjacent to the work top and shall have the following features:

- (1) **SIDE OPENING DOORS**---the latch side shall be adjacent to the work top with a pull-out shelf under the door extending the full width of the of the oven and pulling out 10 inches (255 mm) minimum; or Vol. I-C,
5.3.2(b)(1)
- (2) **BOTTOM HINGED DOORS**---shall have the latch located either on the side of the door adjacent to the worktop, or at the top of the door. If the latch is located at the door top, then it shall be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor. The door shall open 90 degrees and, when open, be parallel to the finished floor. Vol. I-C,
5.3.2(b)(2)
(NOTE: For floor-mounted ovens a non-heat conducting panel complying with 30.5.4.4.3 shall be provided between the appliance and the work top.)
- (3) **OVEN CONTROLS**---shall be up-front, panel mounted, and may be located on either side of the door with buttons, switches or other activating devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Vol. I-C,
5.3.2(b)(3)

30.5.4.4.3 If a range/oven is provided, then it shall be located adjacent to the work top and the door shall be bottom hinged. Between the appliance and the work top there shall be an insulated, non-heat conducting panel which shall extend the full depth of the floor space open area and be as high as the appliance. Panel thickness shall not be included in the minimum 30 inches (760 mm) clear floor space width. Vol. I-C, 5.3.29(c),
5.3.2(d)

30.5.4.4.4 A refrigerator/freezer shall have:

- (1) A location within the kitchen that will not obstruct the clear floor space required by 30.5.2.1 nor prevent access to the appliance; Same As
Vol. I-C,
5.3.2(e)
- (2) Kitchen wing or end walls that do not prevent the doors from opening to allow drawer/shelf removal and cleaning.

30.5.4.4.5 If a dishwasher is provided, then it shall be front-loading and have up-front push button controls. Door locking shall be either by push button or by lever. Locking mechanisms shall not require the use of a fine grasp or any wrist-twisting motion to ensure positive locking. Vol. I-C, 5.3.2(f)

30.5.4.4.6 If a trash compactor is provided, then it shall be front-loading and have up-front push button controls. Door locking shall be the same as required for a dishwasher. Vol. I-C, 5.3.2(g)

30.5.4.5 STORAGE FACILITIES

30.5.4.5.1 General storage (e.g., pantry, clothes closet, coat closet, etc.) shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 20. (For kitchen wall/base cabinets, see 30.5.4.2.) Vol. I-C, 5.5.1;
ADAAG 4.25

30.5.5 TELEPHONES

30.5.5.1 Telephones shall be located on an accessible route. Vol. I-C, Pg. 162

30.5.5.2 Wall-mounted telephones shall have the highest control or operating mechanism at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Vol. I-C, Pg. 162

30.5.5.3 Telephones shall be hearing aid compatible. Volume controls shall be capable of 12dbA minimum to 18dbA maximum. If an automatic reset is provided, then 18dbA may be exceeded. Vol. I-C, 4.8(a)(5);
ADAAG 4.31.5(1),
4.31.5(2)

30.6 LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT

30.6.1 If laundry equipment is provided within dwelling units, then a washer and dryer complying with this Section shall be provided in each fully accessible ("A") dwelling unit. If laundry equipment is located in a common use area(s), then such equipment and facilities shall comply with this Section. GS168-9

GS41A-3(1a)

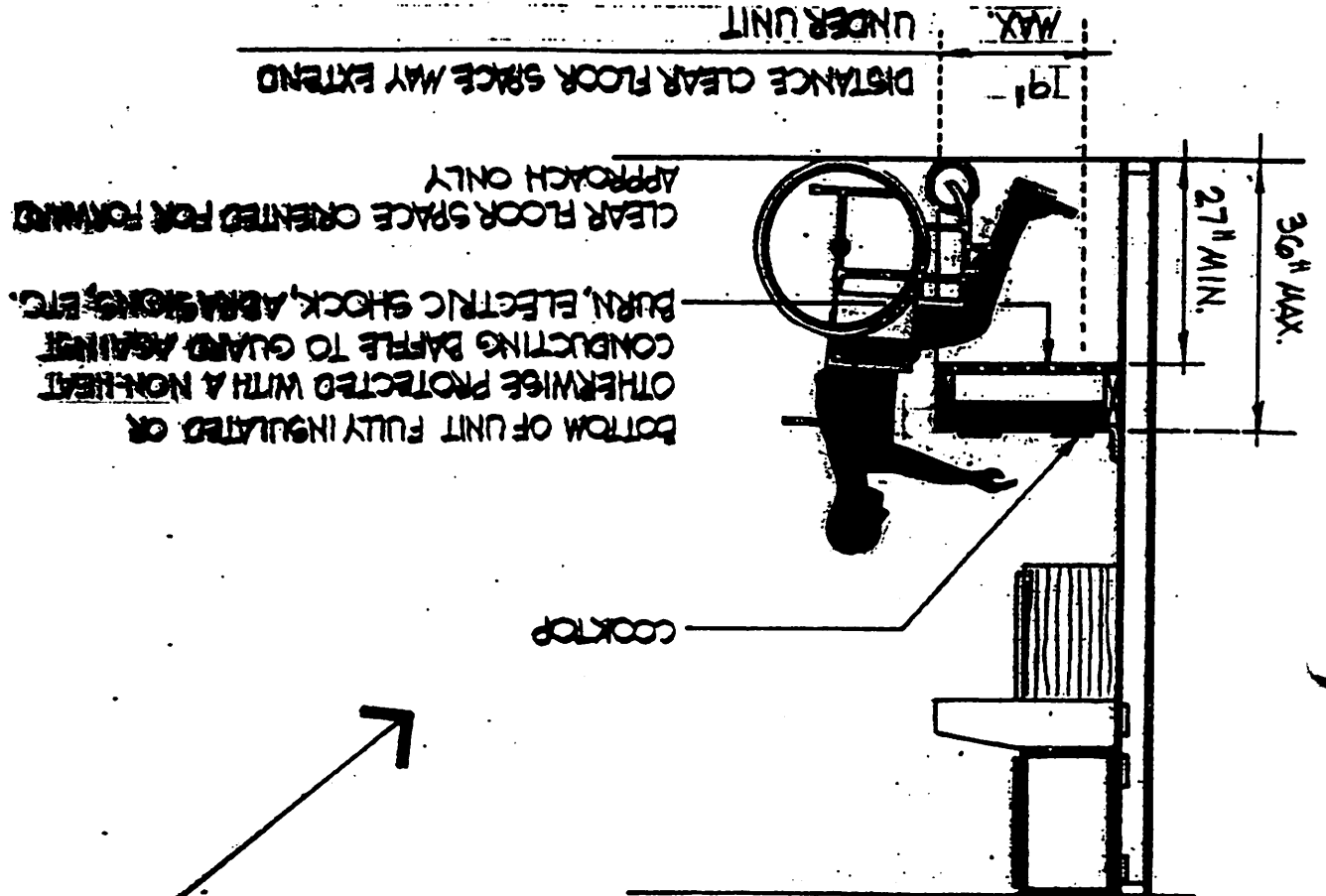
30.6.2 Laundry facilities and equipment shall be located on an accessible route. Vol. I-C, 2.1(a), 2.1(g);
ADAAG 3.5

30.6.3 Accessible washing machines and dryers shall be front loading and shall have up-front controls. Door locking shall either be by push button or by lever and shall not require the use of a fine grasp or any wrist-twisting motion to ensure positive locking. Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with 16.2.1 or 16.2.2.1, as applicable. Similar To Vol. I-C,
5.3.2(a), 5.3.2(f),
5.3.2(g)

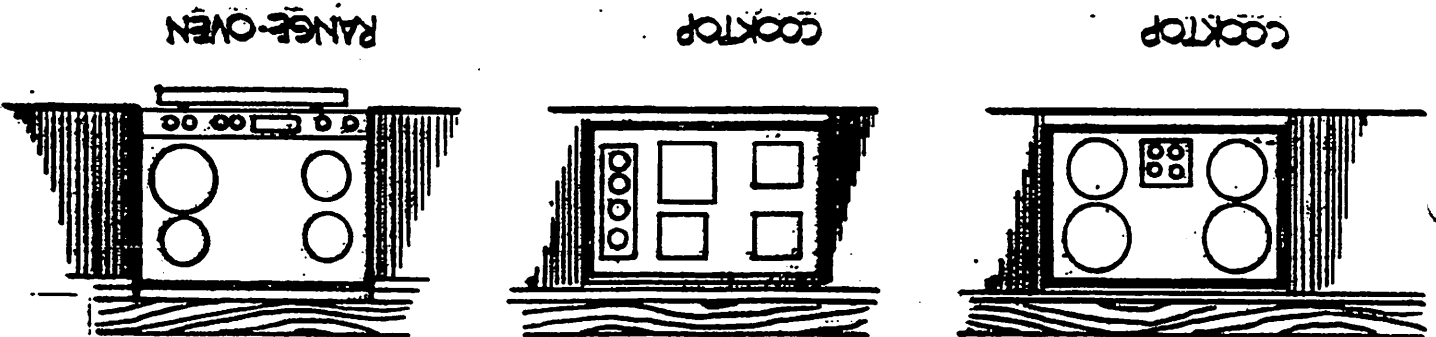
ADAAG 4.27

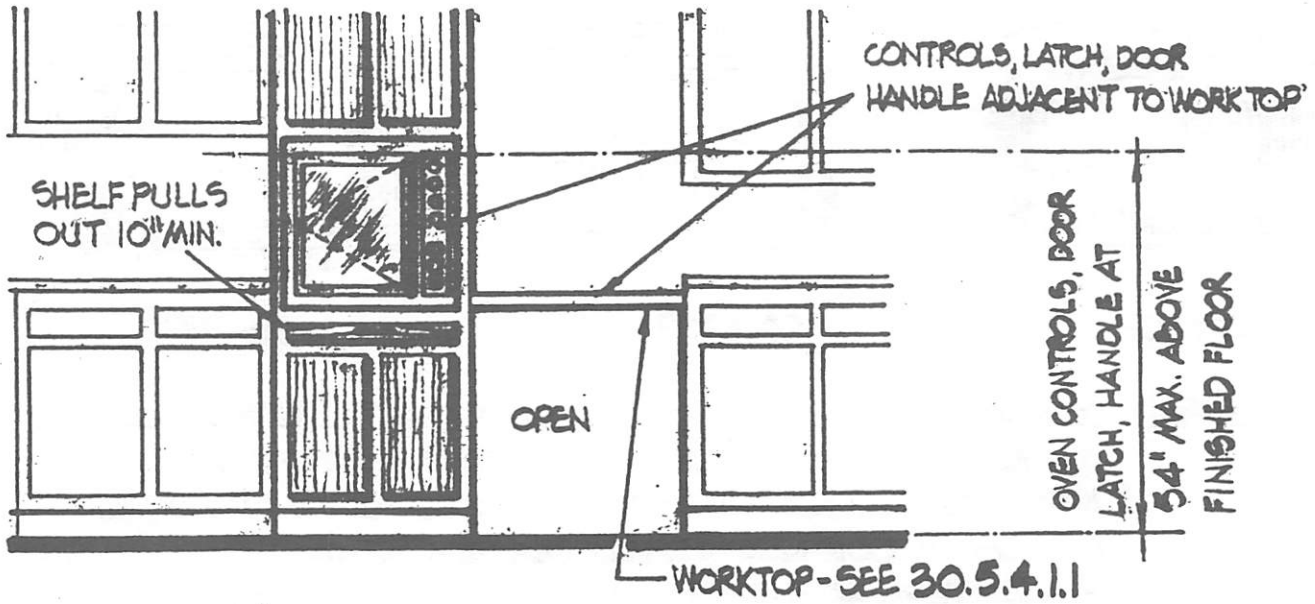
30.6.4 In each common use laundry facility a minimum of one washer and one dryer shall comply with 30.6.2 and 30.6.3. GS41A-3(1a);
FHAA 100.205(c)(1)

30.5.4.4 - KITCHEN APPLIANCES - PART 1

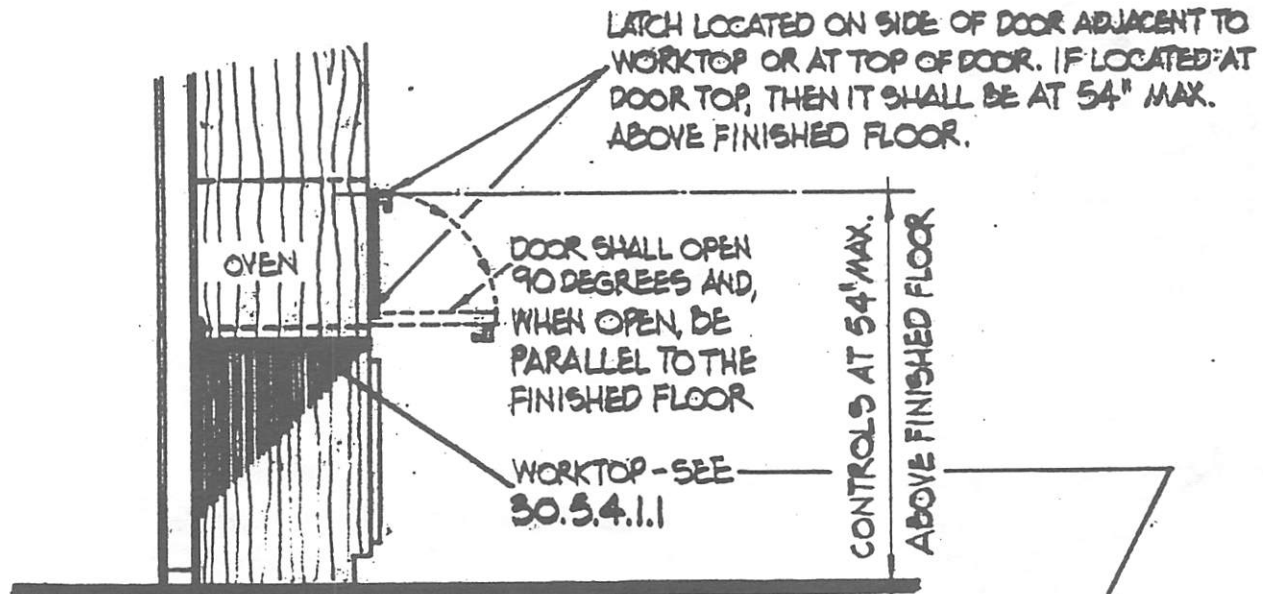


30.5.4.4.1 - COOKING APPLIANCES SHALL HAVE EITHER UP-FRONT CONTROLS OR CONTROLS GROUPED TO ONE SIDE. USE OF ANY COOKING APPLIANCE THAT REQUIRES A REACH ACROSS A BURNER(S) TO ACCESS THE CONTROL(S) SHALL BE PROHIBITED. IF COOKTOPS HAVE KNEE SPACE UNDERNEATH, THEN





30.5.4.4.2(1) - OVEN WITH SIDE-HINGED DOOR

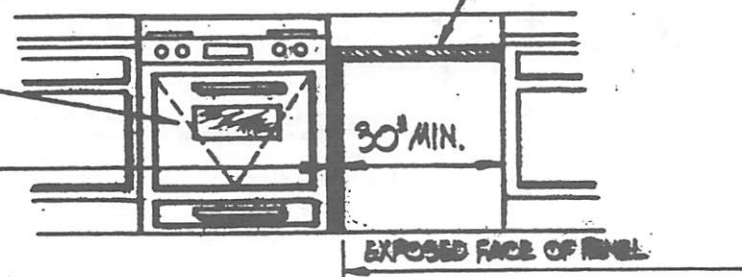


30.5.4.4.2(2) - OVEN WITH BOTTOM-HINGED DOOR

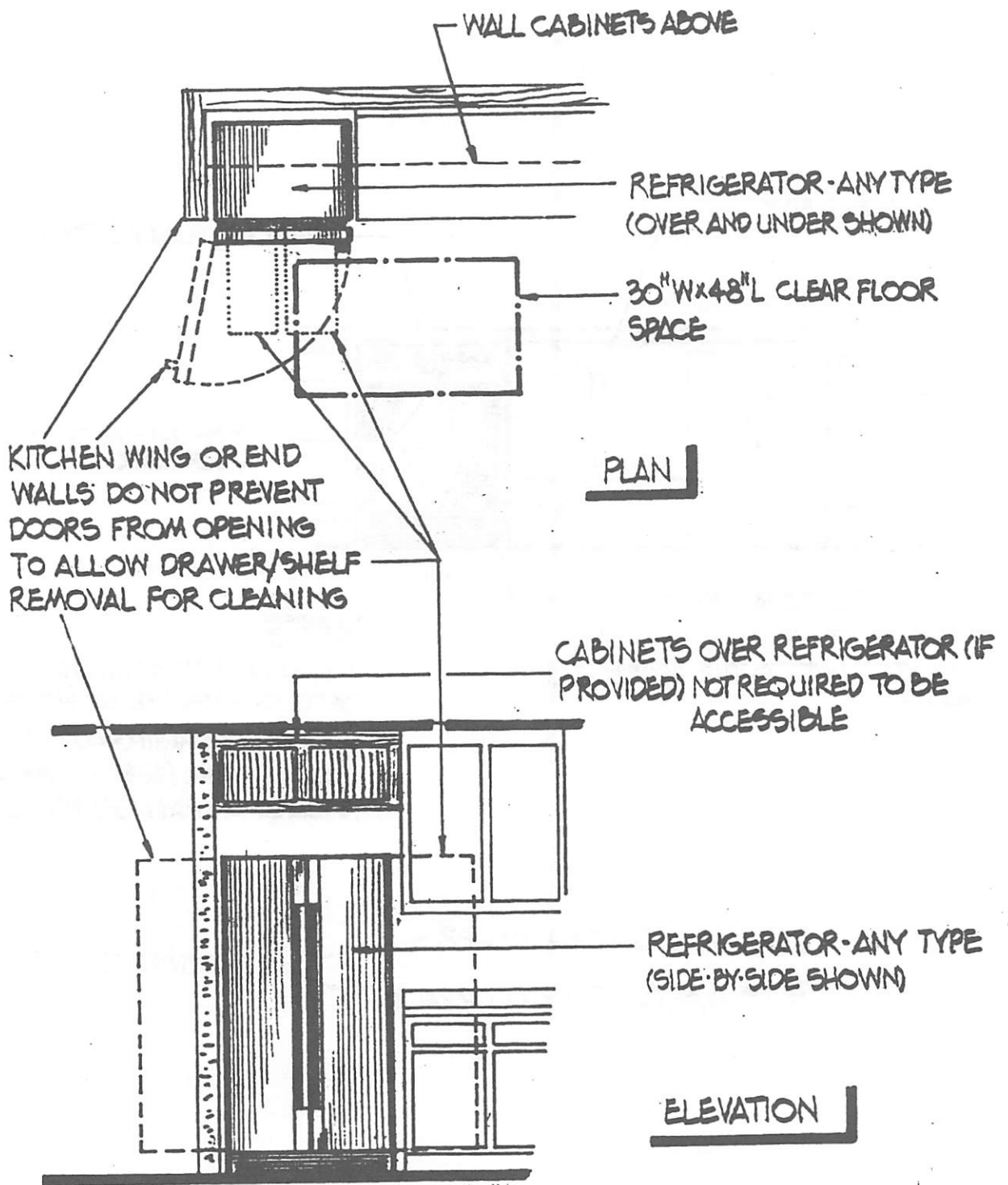
RANGE/OVEN WITH BOTTOM-HINGED DOOR SHALL BE LOCATED ADJACENT TO WORKTOP

NON-HEAT CONDUCTING PANEL

30.5.4.4.3 - RANGE/OVEN

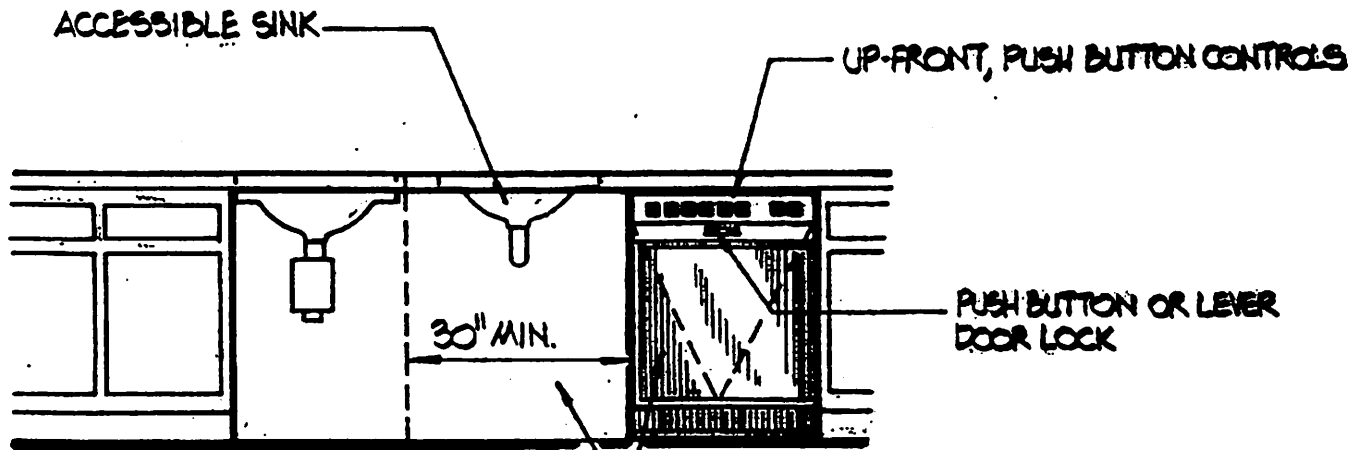


30.5.4.4 - KITCHEN APPLIANCES - PART 2



30.5.4.4.4 - REFRIGERATOR/FREEZER

30.5.4.4 - KITCHEN APPLIANCES - PART 3



IF A DOUBLE-BOWL SINK IS USED, THEN THE DISHWASHER SHALL BE LOCATED NEXT TO THE ACCESSIBLE BOWL.

NOTE:
 IN LIEU OF PUSH BUTTONS THE USE OF TOUCH PADS ARE ACCEPTABLE. APPLIANCES HAVING AUTOMATIC DOOR LOCKING (WHEN THE APPLIANCE IS TURNED ON) MAY ALSO BE USED.

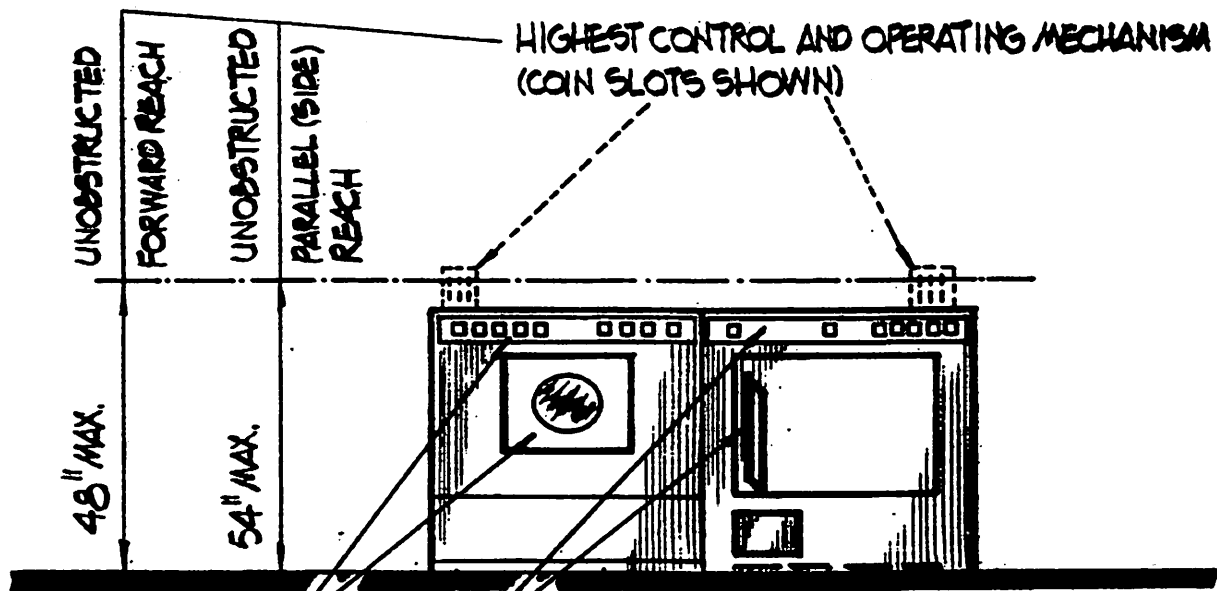
- 30.5.4.4.5 - DISHWASHER
 - 30.5.4.4.6 - TRASH COMPACTOR
- (IF PROVIDED).

30.5.4.4 - KITCHEN APPLIANCES - PART 4

30.6.1- IF LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT IS PROVIDED WITHIN DWELLING UNITS, THEN A WASHER AND A DRYER COMPLYING WITH THIS SECTION SHALL BE PROVIDED IN EACH FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNIT. IF LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT IS LOCATED IN A COMMON USE AREA(S), THEN SUCH EQUIPMENT AND FACILITIES SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS SECTION.

30.6.2- LAUNDRY FACILITIES AND EQUIPMENT SHALL BE LOCATED ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.

30.6.4- IN EACH COMMON USE LAUNDRY FACILITY A MINIMUM OF ONE WASHER AND ONE DRYER SHALL COMPLY WITH 30.6.2 AND 30.6.3.



FRONT LOADING MACHINES WITH UP-FRONT CONTROLS. DOOR LOCKING BY PUSH BUTTON OR LEVER.

30.6.3- ACCESSIBLE WASHING MACHINES AND DRYERS.

NOTES:

- 1 USE OF TOUCH PADS IS ACCEPTABLE.
- 2 DOOR LOCKING WILL APPLY MORE TO WASHERS THAN TO DRYERS

30.6- LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT

**CHAPTER 31
COURTHOUSES AND COURTROOMS,
PRISONS, JAILS, DETENTION CENTERS,
AND
LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES**

31.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

31.1.1 All courthouses and courtrooms (31.3), and all legislative and regulatory facilities (31.5), and all public and common use areas therein, shall comply with this Code. **ADAAG 11.1
1/13/98**

31.1.2 All prisons, jails, detention centers, etc. (31.4), and all public and common use areas therein, shall comply with this Code. **ADAAG 12.1
1/13/98**

31.1.2.1 Inmate common use areas serving accessible cells or rooms shall comply with this Code. **ADAAG 12.1
1/13/98**

(NOTE: Inmate common use areas are facilities such as, but not limited to, exercise yards, recreation areas, dayrooms, etc. that serve a specific group of cells or rooms and are used exclusively by inmates of those cells/rooms. If accessible cells or rooms are provided in a housing section, then the associated inmate common use areas shall be accessible. Alternatively, if a housing section does not contain accessible cells/rooms, then the associated inmate common use areas are not required to be accessible.

**ADAAG A12.1
1/13/98**

Detention/correction facilities also contain other common use areas such as, but not limited to, instruction or vocational training, counseling areas, cafeterias, commissaries, medical facilities, offices for clergy and facility administration, etc. Since these areas are used by inmates, public, and facility staff they shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code.)

31.2 DEFINITIONS

31.2.1 RESTRICTED ENTRANCES

Those entrances used only by judges, public officials, facility personnel, and other authorized parties on a controlled basis.

**ADAAG 11.1.1
1/13/98**

31.2.2 SECURED ENTRANCES

Entrances to judicial facilities used only by inmates/detainees and detention/law enforcement personnel.

**ADAAG 11.1.1
1/13/98**

31.3 COURTHOUSES, COURTROOMS, AND COURTHOUSE HOLDING FACILITIES

31.3.1 COURTHOUSES

31.3.1.1 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE RESTRICTED AND SECURED ENTRANCES

31.3.1.1.1 In addition to the accessible entrances required by 6.2.1.1 and 6.2.1.2, if restricted and secured entrances are provided, then a minimum of one of each type shall be accessible.

ADAAG 11.1.1
1/13/98

(NOTE: If multiple restricted and/or secured entrances are provided, then the inaccessible entrances shall be provided with signage in compliance with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the nearest accessible restricted and/or secured entrance. The signage shall be installed at or near the inaccessible entrance[s] so that a disabled person will not be required to retrace the approach route from those inaccessible entrances. The inaccessible entrance[s] shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3[2].)

Similar To
ADAAG 4.1.2(7),
4.1.6(1)(h)

***31.3.1.1.2** *Secured entrance doors operated only by security personnel shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 and 7.5 (if applicable), and 7.8.*

ADAAG 11.1.1,
Exception 1/13/98

31.3.1.2 SECURITY SYSTEMS AND TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION

31.3.1.2.1 An accessible route shall be provided through fixed security barriers at required accessible entrances. If security barriers use equipment such as metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices which cannot be made accessible, then an accessible route shall be provided adjacent to all such screening devices.

ADAAG 11.1.2
1/13/98

31.3.1.2.2 If a two-way communication system is provided in order to gain admittance to a facility or to restricted areas within the facility, then the system shall provide audible and visual signals. System controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with 16.1, and 16.2.1 or 16.2.2 (as applicable).

ADAAG 11.1.3
1/13/98

31.3.2 COURTROOMS

31.3.2.1 Each element in this Section that is provided in a courtroom shall be on an accessible route.

ADAAG 11.2.1(1)
1/13/98

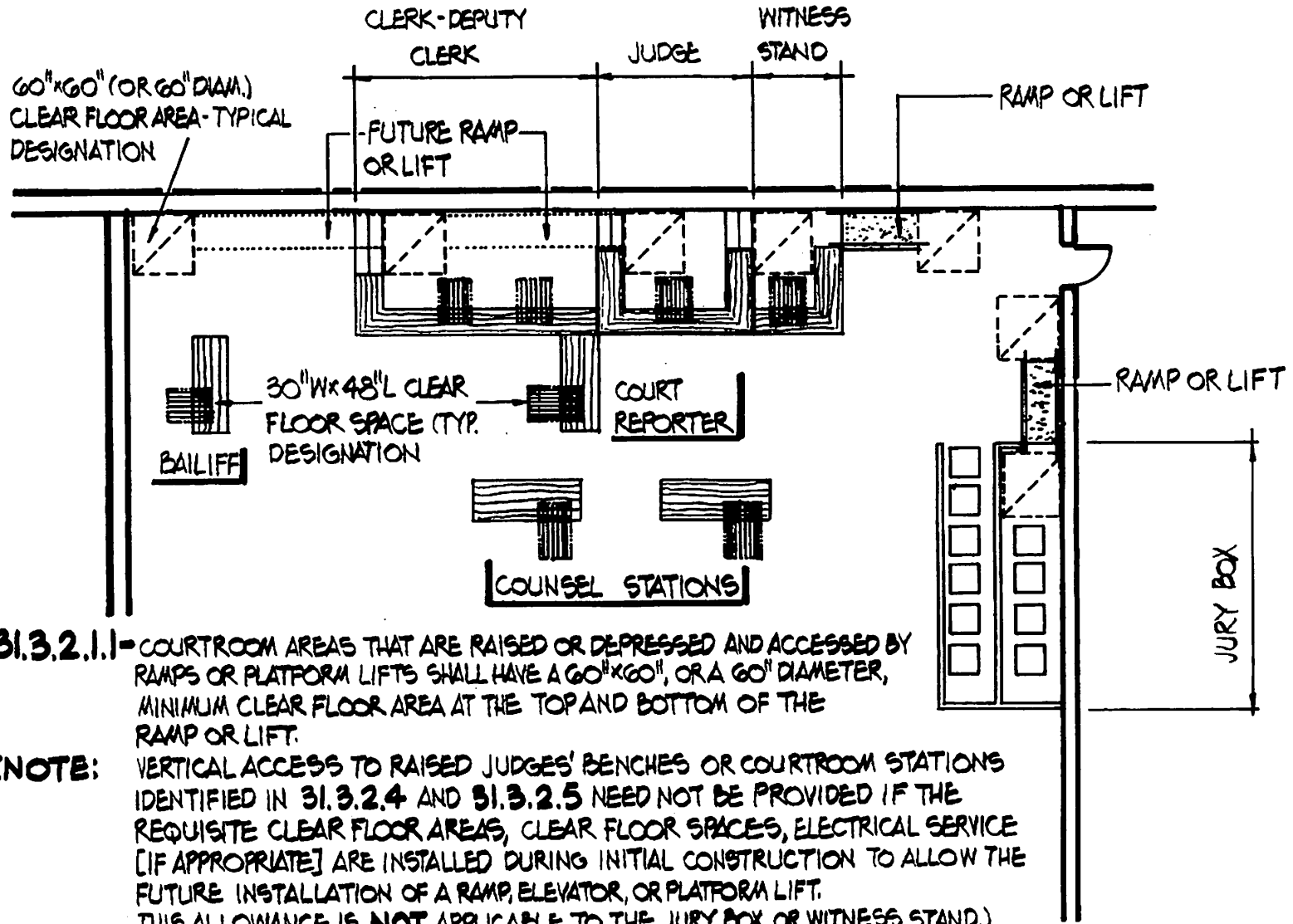
31.3.2.1.1 Courtroom areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps (Chapter 5) or platform lifts (15.11) shall have a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm), or a 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter, minimum clear floor area at the top and bottom of the ramp or lift.

ADAAG 11.2.1(1)
1/13/98

(NOTE: Vertical access to raised judges' benches or courtroom stations identified in 31.3.2.4 and 31.3.2.5 need not be provided if the requisite clear floor areas, clear floor spaces, and electrical service [if appropriate] are installed during initial construction to allow future installation of ramp, elevator, or platform lift. This allowance is not applicable to jury boxes or witness stands.)

ADAAG 11.2.1(1),
Exception 1/13/98

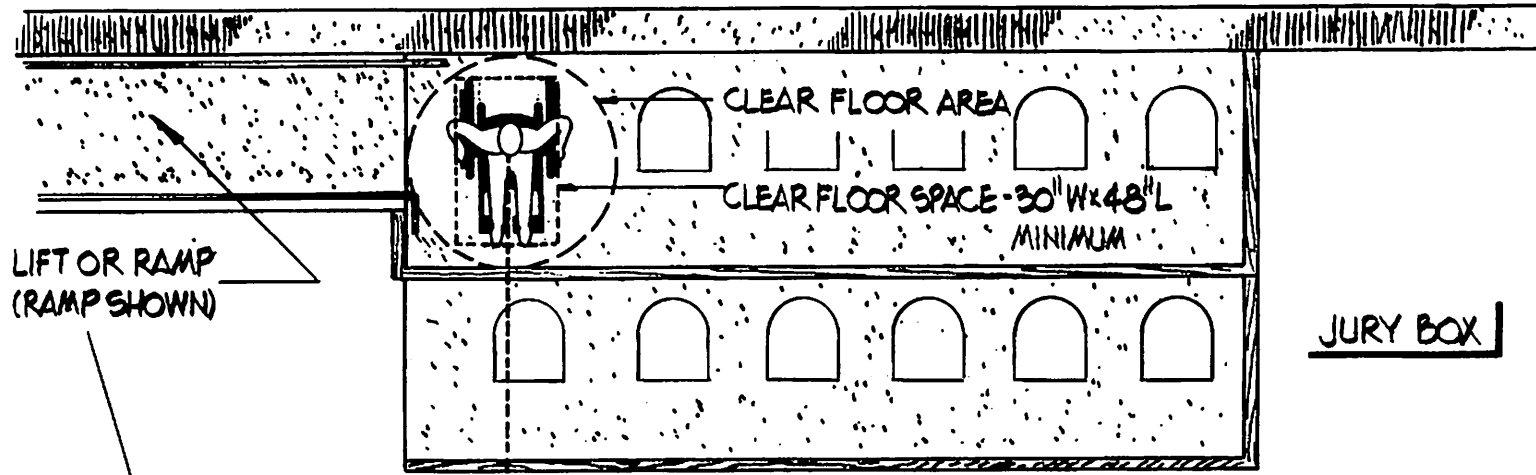
Access Board (Via
Telephone) 5/8/98



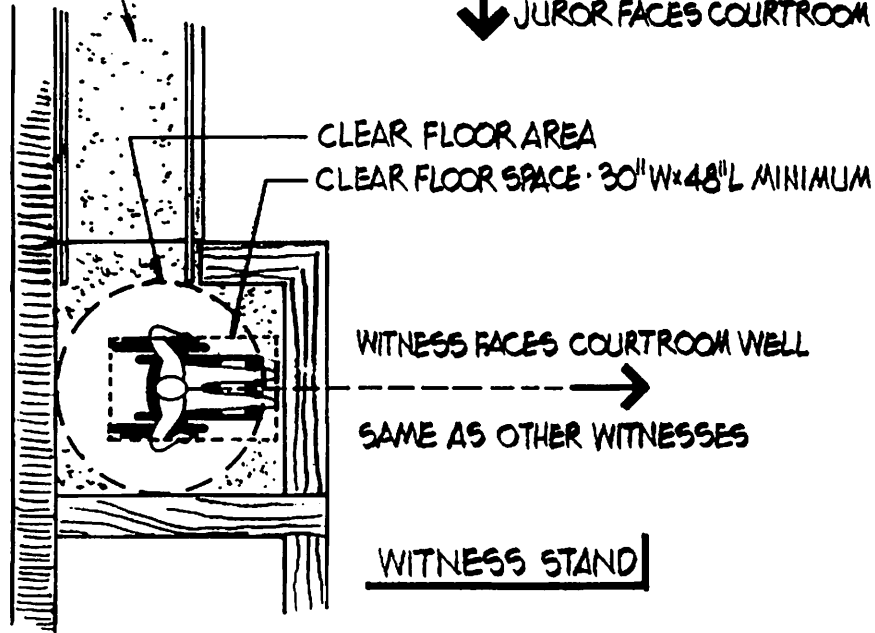
31.3.2.1.1 - COURTROOM AREAS THAT ARE RAISED OR DEPRESSED AND ACCESSED BY RAMPS OR PLATFORM LIFTS SHALL HAVE A 60"x60", OR A 60" DIAMETER, MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR AREA AT THE TOP AND BOTTOM OF THE RAMP OR LIFT.

(NOTE: VERTICAL ACCESS TO RAISED JUDGES' BENCHES OR COURTROOM STATIONS IDENTIFIED IN 31.3.2.4 AND 31.3.2.5 NEED NOT BE PROVIDED IF THE REQUISITE CLEAR FLOOR AREAS, CLEAR FLOOR SPACES, ELECTRICAL SERVICE [IF APPROPRIATE] ARE INSTALLED DURING INITIAL CONSTRUCTION TO ALLOW THE FUTURE INSTALLATION OF A RAMP, ELEVATOR, OR PLATFORM LIFT. THIS ALLOWANCE IS NOT APPLICABLE TO THE JURY BOX OR WITNESS STAND.)

31.3.2- COURTROOMS



↓ JUROR FACES COURTROOM WELL SAME AS OTHER JURORS



31.3.2.3 - JURY BOXES AND WITNESS STANDS
 (SEE, ALSO, 31.3.2.3.2 - TEXT)

31.3.2 - COURTROOMS

31.3.2.3 JURY BOXES AND WITNESS STANDS

*31.3.2.3.1 Each jury box and witness stand shall have a minimum of one (1) 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space *oriented to allow the juror or witness to face the courtroom well in the same manner as all other jurors and witnesses.* ADAAG 11.2.1(1)(b)
1/13/98

31.3.2.3.2 If the accessible juror and/or witness seating spaces are not required to accommodate a person in a wheelchair, then compliance with 22.1.3 shall be acceptable. Cross-Reference

31.3.2.4 BAILIFFS' STATIONS, COURT REPORTERS' STATIONS, LITIGANTS AND COUNSEL STATIONS

31.3.2.4.1 Each such station shall have a clear floor space in compliance with 21.2.1 oriented for a forward approach. Knee clearances and height of the finished working surface shall comply with 21.3. (See, also, 31.3.2.1.1 and its NOTE.) ADAAG 11.2.1(1)(c)
1/13/98

31.3.2.5 JUDGES' BENCHES AND CLERKS'/DEPUTY CLERKS' STATIONS

31.3.2.5.1 Each such station shall have a clear floor space in compliance with 21.2.1 oriented for a forward approach. Knee clearances and height of the finished working surface shall comply with 21.3. (See, also, 31.3.2.1.1 and its NOTE.) ADAAG 11.2.1(1)(c)
1/13/98

31.3.2.6 SPECTATOR, PRESS, AND OTHER AREAS WITH FIXED SEATS

31.3.2.6.1 Spectator seating, seating for the press, and other fixed seating areas is defined as the courtroom seating located outside the courtroom well. Definition

31.3.2.6.2 If seating for spectators, members of the press, and other fixed seating areas are provided, then each type of seating area shall shall comply with 22.1.1, and 22.1.1.1 through 22.1.2.1. ADAAG 11.2.1(1)(a)
1/13/98

31.3.2.6.3 Each accessible seating space shall comply with applicable requirements of 22.3. Cross-Reference

31.3.2.7 JURY ASSEMBLY AREAS AND DELIBERATION ROOMS

31.3.2.7.1 All such assembly areas and deliberation rooms shall be located on an accessible route. Within these areas or rooms all elements and features required to be accessible shall be located on an accessible route. ADAAG 11.2.2
1/13/98

31.3.2.7.2 If drinking fountains are provided in rooms covered by this Section, then each room shall have a minimum of one fixture that complies with the applicable requirements of Chapter 13. ADAAG 11.2.1(2);
"Min. Of One"—
FR 1/13/98 At 2008

31.3.2.7.3 If kitchens, kitchenettes, wet bars, and similar refreshment amenities are provided, then each such installation shall comply with 29.4.5. **ADAAG 11.2.2(1)**
1/13/98

31.3.2.8 ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS (A.L.S.)

31.3.2.8.1 A permanently installed A.L.S. shall be provided in each courtroom to serve spectator, press, and other fixed seating areas. **ADAAG 11.2.1(2)**
1/13/98

31.3.2.8.2 The minimum number of receivers shall be equal to four percent (4%) of the number of spectator, press, and other fixed seats, or a minimum of two (whichever is the greater number). **ADAAG 11.2.1(2)**
1/13/98

***31.3.2.8.3** Informational signage indicating the availability of an A.L.S. shall be located adjacent to, *or if wall space is limited immediately below*, the room identification sign. The sign shall incorporate the International Symbol for Hearing Loss and the written message shall comply with 18.1.2 and 18.4.2. **ADAAG 11.2.1(2)**
1/13/98

31.3.3 COURTHOUSE HOLDING FACILITIES

31.3.3.1 All cells required to comply with this Section, and all accessible elements contained therein, shall be located on an accessible route. **ADAAG 11.2.3(2)**
1/13/98

31.3.3.2 NUMBER REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE

31.3.3.2.1 If separate central holding cells are provided for adult and juvenile males, and adult and juvenile females, then a minimum of one cell of each type shall comply with this Section. Central holding cells not separated by age or sex shall have a minimum of one cell complying with this Section. **ADAAG 11.2.3.(1)(a)**
1/13/98

31.3.3.2.2 If separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult and juvenile males, and adult and juvenile females, then each courtroom shall be served by a minimum of one cell of each type that complies with this Section. **ADAAG 11.2.3(1)(b)**
1/13/98

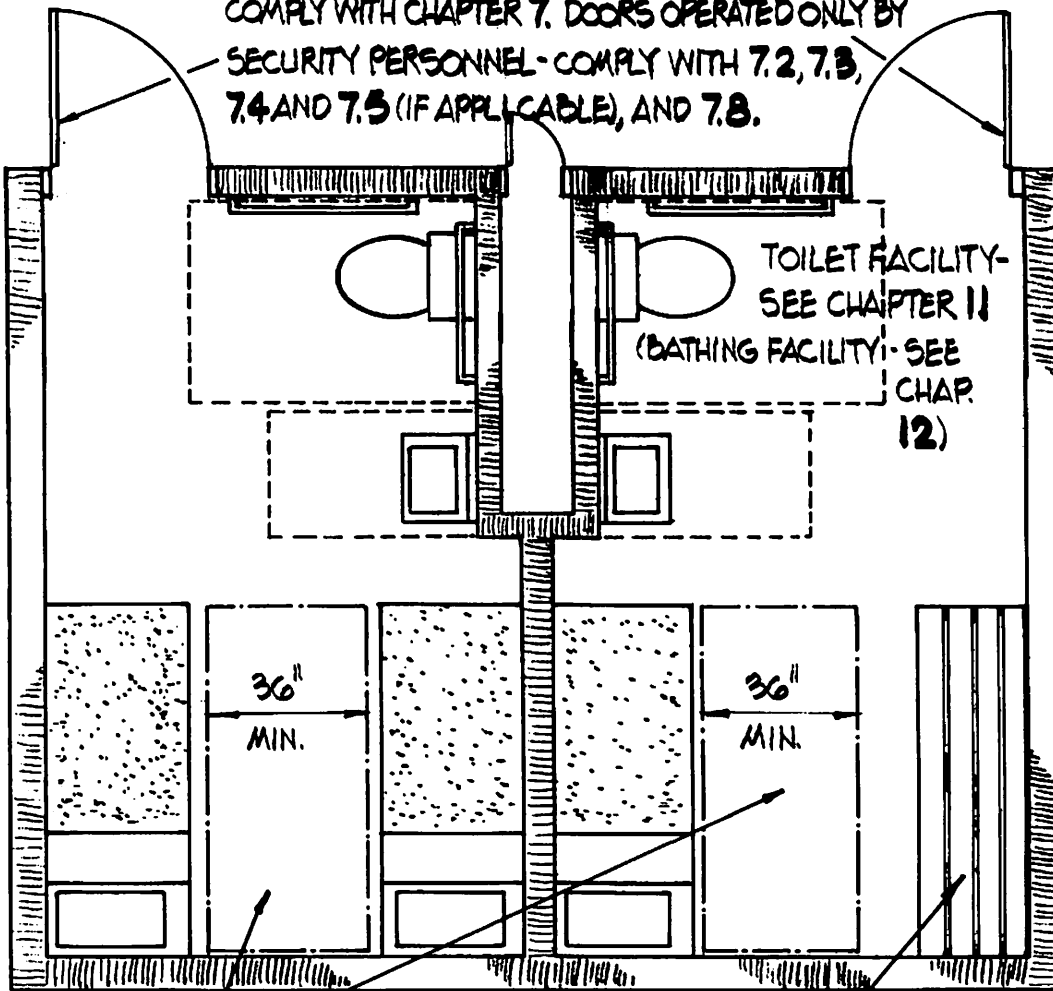
31.3.3.2.3 If court-floor holding cells are provided and not separated by age or sex, then courtrooms shall be served by a minimum of one cell that complies with this Section. Court-floor holding cells may serve more than one courtroom. **ADAAG 11.2.3(1)(b)**
1/13/98

(NOTE: Some courtroom designs may have multiple courtrooms with two [2] court-floor holding cells provided between every two [2] courtrooms. In such designs, only one [1] holding cell is required to be accessible. A single accessible holding cell may serve more than one courtroom.) **FR 1/13/98 At**
2008

31.3.3.3 ACCESSIBLE HOLDING CELLS

- *31.3.3.3.1** All doors and doorways leading to, and through, accessible spaces shall comply with Chapter 7. ***Doors operated only by security personnel shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 and 7.5 (if applicable), and 7.8.*** ADAAG 11.2.3(2)(a)
And Exception 1/13/98
- 31.3.3.3.2** Accessible toilet facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 11. If bathing facilities are provided, then they shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 12. ADAAG 11.2.3(2)(b)
1/13/98
- 31.3.3.3.3** If drinking fountains are provided, then they shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 13. ADAAG 11.2.3(2)(d)
1/13/98
- 31.3.3.3.4** Fixed or built-in seating, tables, and counters shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 21. ADAAG 11.2.3.(2)(e)
1/13/98
- 31.3.3.3.5** Beds shall have a minimum 36 inches (915 mm) wide wide floor space along one side. Two adjacent accessible beds may share a common center clear floor space. ADAAG 11.2.3(2)(c)
1/13/98
- *31.3.3.3.6** If a fixed bench is provided, then the top of the seat shall be 17 inches minimum to 19 inches maximum (430 mm to 485 mm) above the finished floor. ***The bench shall be attached to a wall and be capable of supporting a 250 pound (113 Kg) minimum load.*** ADAAG 11.2.3.(2)(f)
1/13/98
- 31.3.3.3.7** Except for 31.4.4.1.1, visiting areas shall comply with 31.4 .4. ADAAG 11.2.3(3)

31.3.3.3.1- DOORS LEADING TO AND THRU ACCESSIBLE SPACES SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 7. DOORS OPERATED ONLY BY SECURITY PERSONNEL - COMPLY WITH 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 AND 7.5 (IF APPLICABLE), AND 7.8.



31.3.3.3.5- BEDS SHALL HAVE A MIN. 36" WIDE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ALONG ONE SIDE. TWO ADJACENT ACCESSIBLE BEDS MAY SHARE A COMMON CENTER CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.

31.3.3.3.6- IF A FIXED BENCH IS PROVIDED, THEN THE TOP OF THE SEAT SHALL BE 17" MIN. TO 19" MAX. ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR. THE BENCH SHALL BE ATTACHED TO A WALL AND BE CAPABLE OF SUPPORTING A 250 POUND LOAD.

31.3.3- COURTHOUSE HOLDING FACILITIES

31.4 PRISONS, JAILS, DETENTION CENTERS, REFORMATORIES, CORRECTION FACILITIES, AND POLICE STATION HOLDING FACILITIES

31.4.1 DEFINITIONS

31.4.1.1 HOUSING CATEGORY

Various types of housing such as minimum, medium, and maximum security; work release, trustee. Housing for male, female, and juvenile inmates is typically segregated.

Definition

31.4.1.2 NON-CONTACT VISITOR AREA

A room, space, or area wherein inmates are physically, but not visually or aurally, separated from visitors.

Definition

31.4.2 ENTRANCES, ELEVATORS AND STAIRS, AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE, DOORS, AND SIGNAGE

31.4.2.1 Public entrances, including those that are secured, shall be accessible and comply with the applicable requirements of 6.2.

ADAAG 12.2.1
1/13/98

31.4.2.2 If accessible cells or rooms and all common use areas serving them, and all public use areas, are on an accessible route, then compliance with this Code for stairs (Chapter 8) and elevators (Chapter 15) are not required in multi-story housing facilities.

FR 1/13/98 At 2009
[ADAAG 12.1, Exception]

31.4.2.3 AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE: See 6.3.3.1(2).

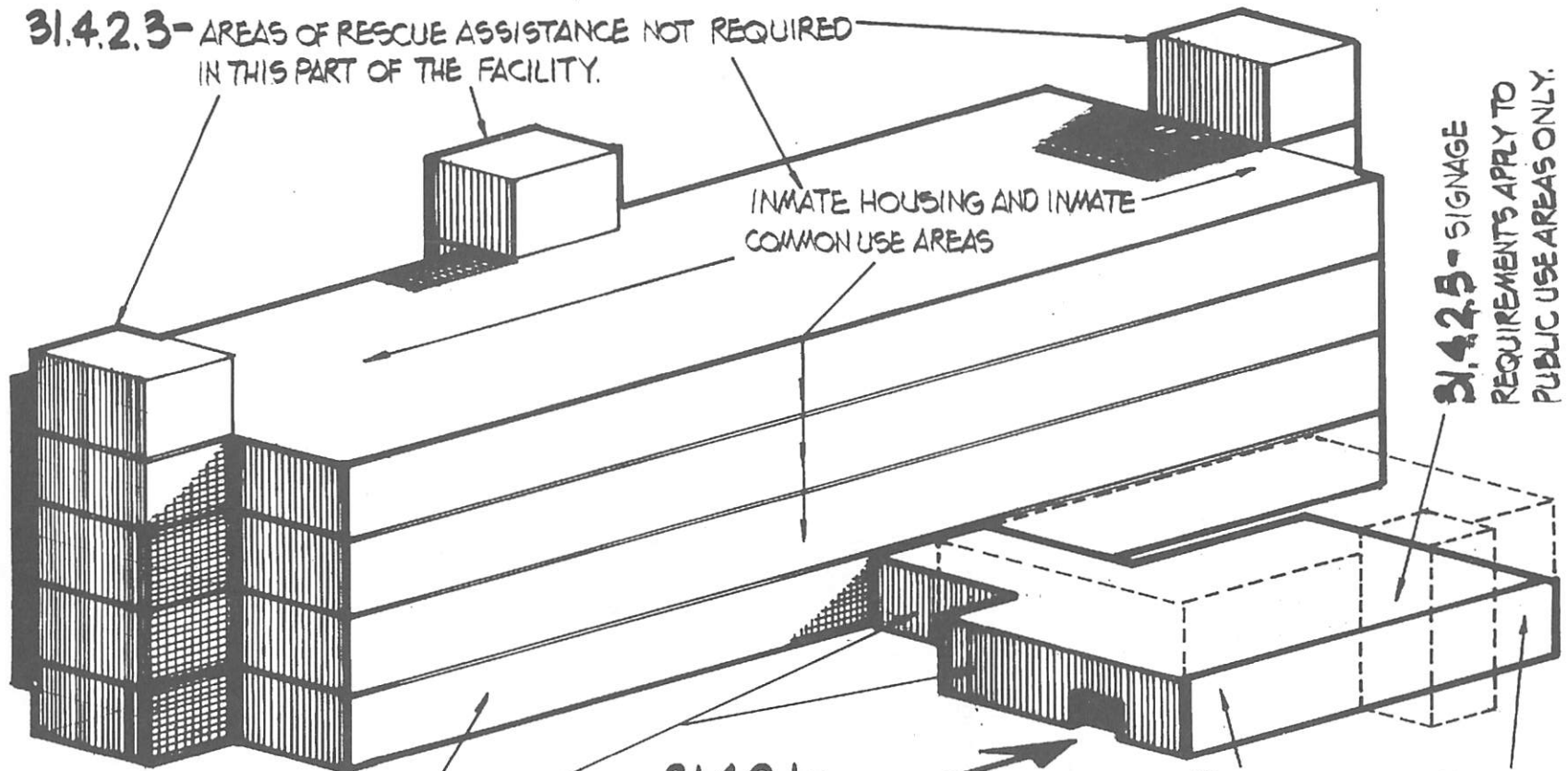
Cross-Reference

***31.4.2.4 Entrance doors and doorways operated only by security personnel shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 and 7.5 (if applicable), and 7.8.**

ADAAG 12.2.1 And
Exception 1/13/98

31.4.2.5 The signage requirements of Chapter 18 shall apply to public use areas only.

ADAAG 12.1
Exception 1/13/98



31.4.2.3- AREAS OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE NOT REQUIRED IN THIS PART OF THE FACILITY.

INMATE HOUSING AND INMATE COMMON USE AREAS

31.4.2.5- SIGNAGE REQUIREMENTS APPLY TO PUBLIC USE AREAS ONLY.

31.4.2.2- IF ACCESSIBLE CELLS/ROOMS AND ALL COMMON USE AREAS SERVING THEM, AND ALL PUBLIC USE AREAS, ARE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH THIS CODE STAIRS AND ELEVATORS ARE NOT REQUIRED IN MULTI-STORY HOUSING FACILITIES.

31.4.2.1- PUBLIC ENTRANCES, INCLUDING THOSE THAT ARE SECURED, SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE AND COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 6.2.

FOR DOORS AND DOORWAYS OPERATED ONLY BY SECURITY PERSONNEL, SEE 31.4.2.4 (TEXT)

FACILITY ADMINISTRATION, VISITORS, CLERGY, SOCIAL WORKERS, COUNSELING, ETC. IF THIS PART OF THE FACILITY IS MULTI-STORY, THEN AN ELEVATOR IS REQUIRED.

31.4.2- ENTRANCES, ELEVATORS AND STAIRS, ETC.

31.4.3 SECURITY SYSTEMS

31.4.3.1 If security systems are provided at entrances required to be accessible by 31.4.2.1, then the accessible route shall extend to, and through, the fixed security barriers. **ADAAG 12.2.2**
1/13/98

31.4.3.1.1 If equipment such as metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices cannot be made accessible, then an accessible route shall be provided immediately adjacent to all such inaccessible screening devices. **ADAAG 12.2.2**
1/13/98

31.4.4 VISITING AREAS

31.4.4.1 For non-contact visitor areas, if the elements described in this Section are provided, then they shall be located on an accessible route and paired on both the inmate and visitor sides. **ADAAG 11.2.3(3) And**
12.3(1) 1/13/98

31.4.4.1.1 For non-contact visitor areas serving cells or rooms not required to be accessible the visitor side only shall comply with this Section. **ADAAG 12.3(1)**
Exception 1/13/98
(NOTE: This exception applies only to facilities covered by this Section. It is not applicable to visitor areas referenced by 31.3.3.3.7.) **Cross-Reference**

31.4.4.2 CUBICLES AND COUNTERS

31.4.4.2.1 Five percent (5%), or a minimum of one (whichever is the greater number), of fixed cubicles shall comply with 21.2.1. If a counter is provided, then a section having a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum length shall be made to comply with 21.3. **ADAAG 11.2.3(3)(a) And**
12.3(1) 1/13/98

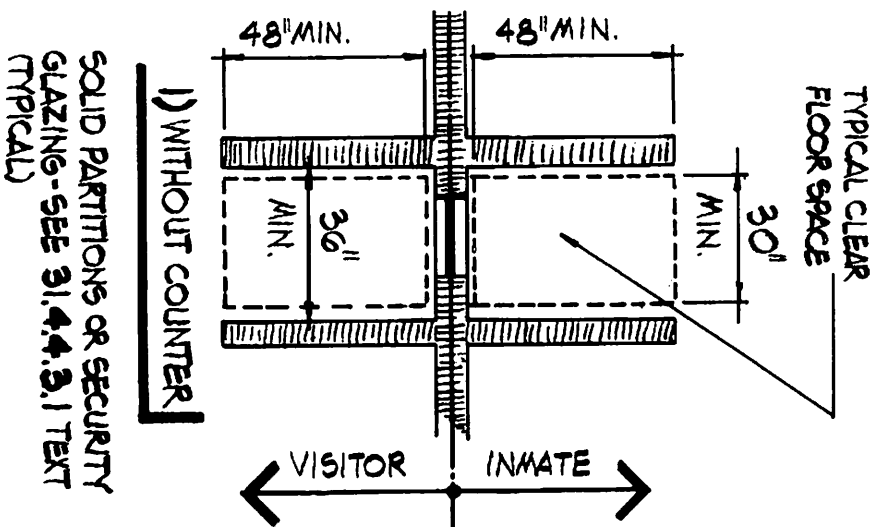
31.4.4.3 PARTITIONS SEPARATING INMATES AND VISITORS

31.4.4.3.1 If solid partitions or security glazing is used to separate inmates and visitors, then a method to provide two-way voice communication shall be provided. The communication system shall be accessible to persons who have difficulty bending or stooping and to persons using wheelchairs. (See the NOTE following 26.2.2.) **ADAAG 11.2.3(3)(b) And**
12.3(2) 1/13/98

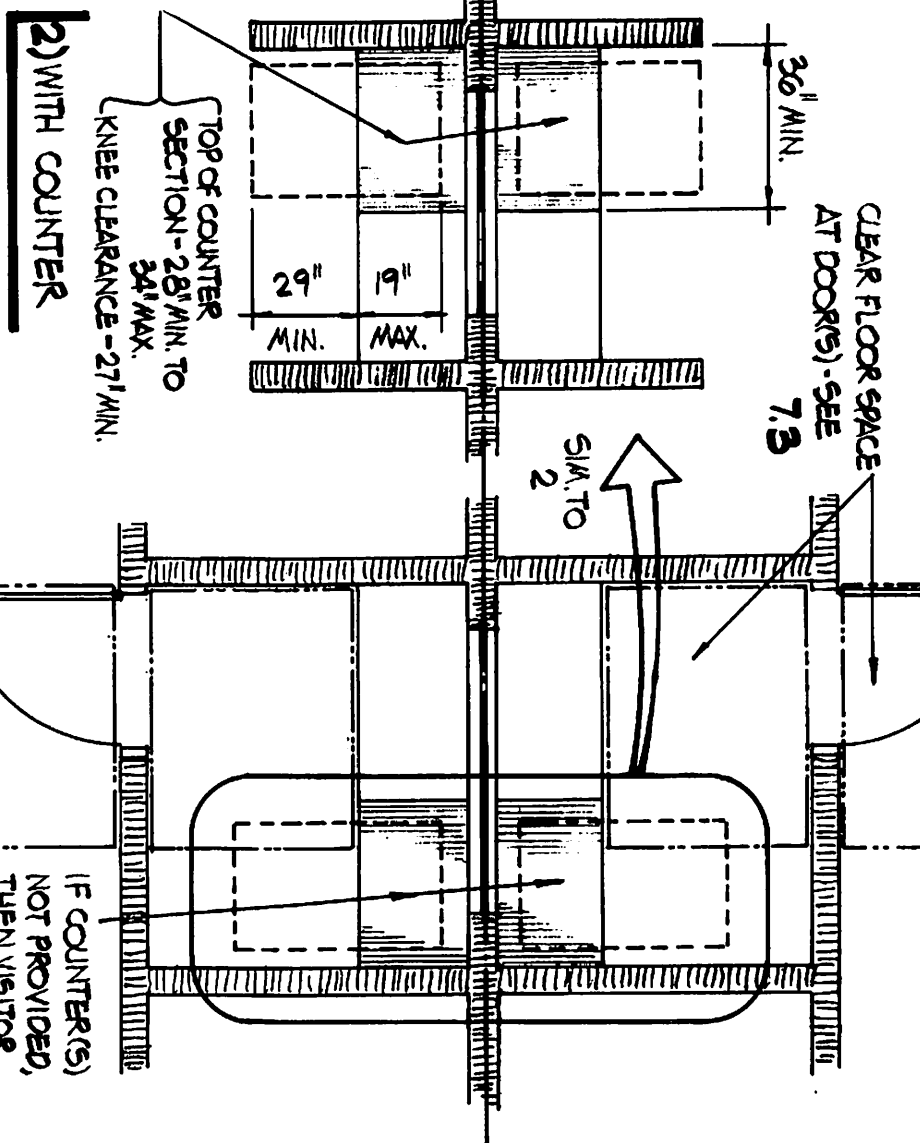
31.4.4.4 TEXT TELEPHONES (TELECOMMUNICATIONS DEVICE FOR THE DEAF, OR TDD)

31.4.4.4.1 If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a secured area, then a minimum of one public TDD shall also be provided in a minimum of one secured area. **ADAAG**
4.1.3(17)(c)(iv)
1/13/98
(NOTE: A secured area[s] is an area[s] used only by inmates and security personnel.)

31.4.4.4.2 For areas used by inmates and security personnel having a bank of three (3) or more public pay telephones, compliance with 14.3.1.2 shall not be mandatory if the installation of shelves and text telephone outlets are prohibited for security and safety purposes by the corrections department having jurisdiction. **ADAAG 4.1.3(17)(d),**
Exception 1/13/98

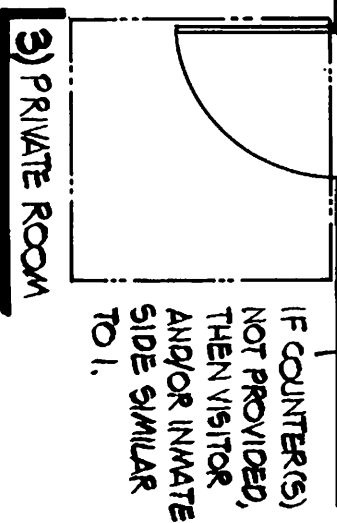


1) WITHOUT COUNTER
 SOLID PARTITIONS OR SECURITY GLAZING - SEE 31.4.4.3.1 TEXT (TYPICAL)

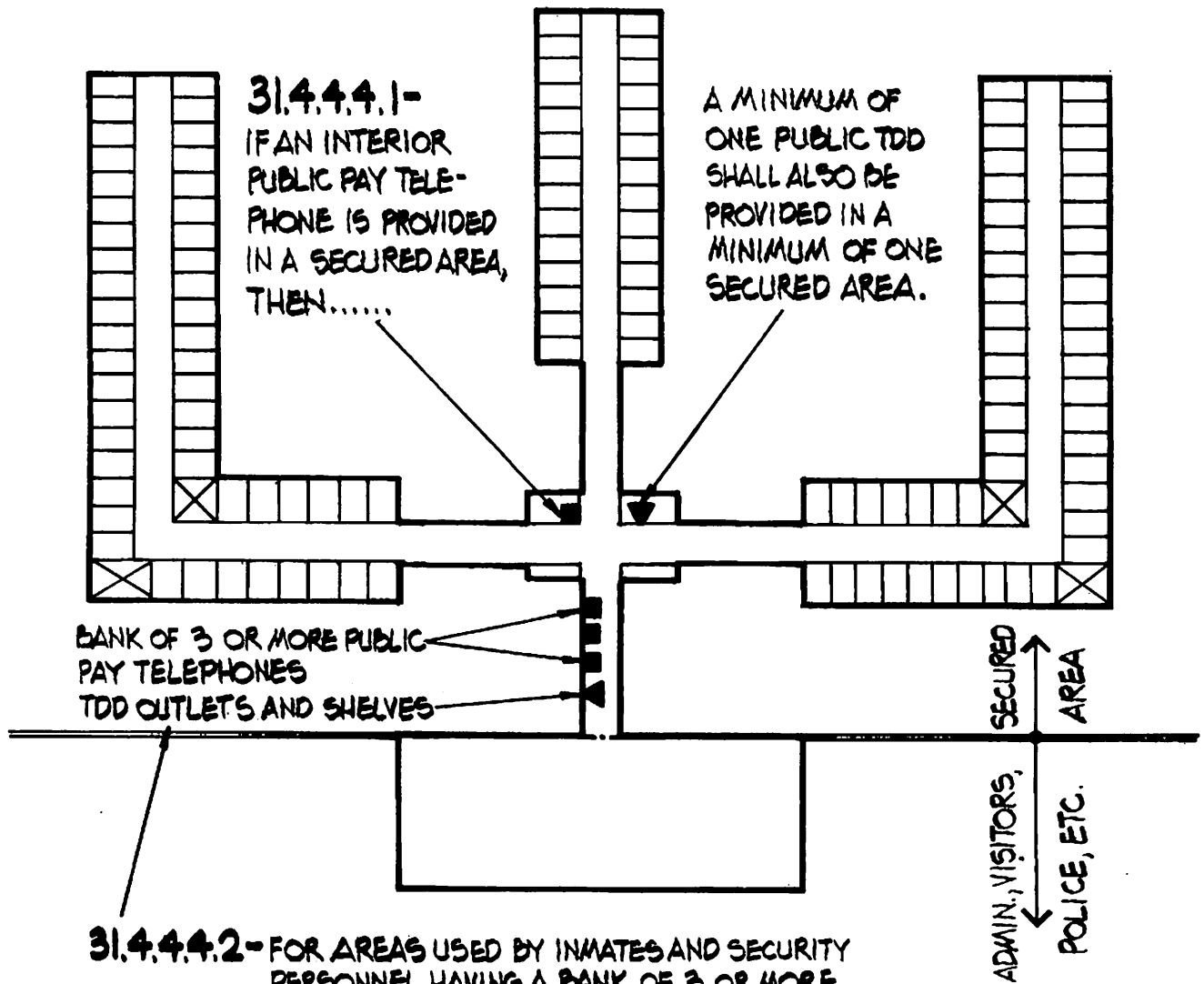


2) WITH COUNTER
 TOP OF COUNTER SECTION - 28" MIN. TO 34" MAX.
 KNEE CLEARANCE - 27" MIN.

31.4.4.2.1 - 5% OF VISITOR CUBICLES, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER), SHALL BE ACCESSIBLE (APPLIES TO BOTH SIDES).
 31.4.4.1.1 - FOR NON-CONTACT VISITOR AREAS SERVING CELLS/ROOMS NOT REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE THE VISITOR SIDE ONLY SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS SECTION. (THIS EXCEPTION IS NOT APPLICABLE TO COURTHOUSE HOLDING FACILITIES.)



31.4.4 - VISITING AREAS



31.4.4.4.2- FOR AREAS USED BY INMATES AND SECURITY PERSONNEL HAVING A BANK OF 3 OR MORE PUBLIC PAY TELEPHONES, COMPLIANCE WITH 14.3.1.2 SHALL NOT BE MANDATORY IF THE INSTALLATION OF SHELVES AND TDD OUTLETS ARE PROHIBITED FOR SECURITY AND SAFETY PURPOSES BY THE CORRECTIONS DEPARTMENT HAVING JURISDICTION.

31.4.4.4- TEXT TELEPHONES (TDD)

31.4.5 MINIMUM NUMBER AND DISTRIBUTION OF ACCESSIBLE HOLDING AND HOUSING CELLS OR ROOMS

***31.4.5.1** Two percent (2%) of the total number of cells/rooms, or a minimum of one, (whichever is the greater number) in a facility shall comply with 31.4.5.5. If the facility contains different levels of security or housing categories, then accessible cells/rooms *shall* be distributed among the various security/housing categories.

ADAAG 12.4.1 1/13/98;
RE: Distribution-ADAAG
A12.4.1 Uses "Should"
Whereas Vol. I-C, 5.1(b)
Says "Shall"

***31.4.5.2** *Two adjacent accessible cells or rooms may be located on opposite sides of a common wall or partition in order to facilitate installation, connection, and maintenance of the building systems. (See, also, the NOTE following 29.2.4.)*

Vol. I-C, 5.1(b)
Integration

31.4.5.3 In addition to 31.4.5.1, if special holding or housing cells are provided, then a minimum of one serving each purpose shall comply with 31.4.5.5. (For medical isolation cells, see 31.4.5.7.4.) (NOTE: Detention and correction facilities may have special use cells such as, but not limited to, administrative segregation, detoxification, disciplinary detention, orientation, or protective custody. If special holding or housing cells or rooms are provided to serve separate holding or housing categories, then a minimum of one [1] cell or room of each type serving each category is required to be accessible.)

ADAAG 12.4.2 1/13/98

"Medical Isolation":
ADAAG A12.4.2

ADAAG 12.4.2 1/13/98

ADAAG A12.4.2 1/13/98

31.4.5.4 If cells or rooms are provided that are specially designed without protrusions and used solely for the purposes of suicide prevention, then such cells/room shall be exempt from the requirements of this Code pertaining to grab bars at waterclosets.

ADAAG 12.4.2,
Exception 1/13/98

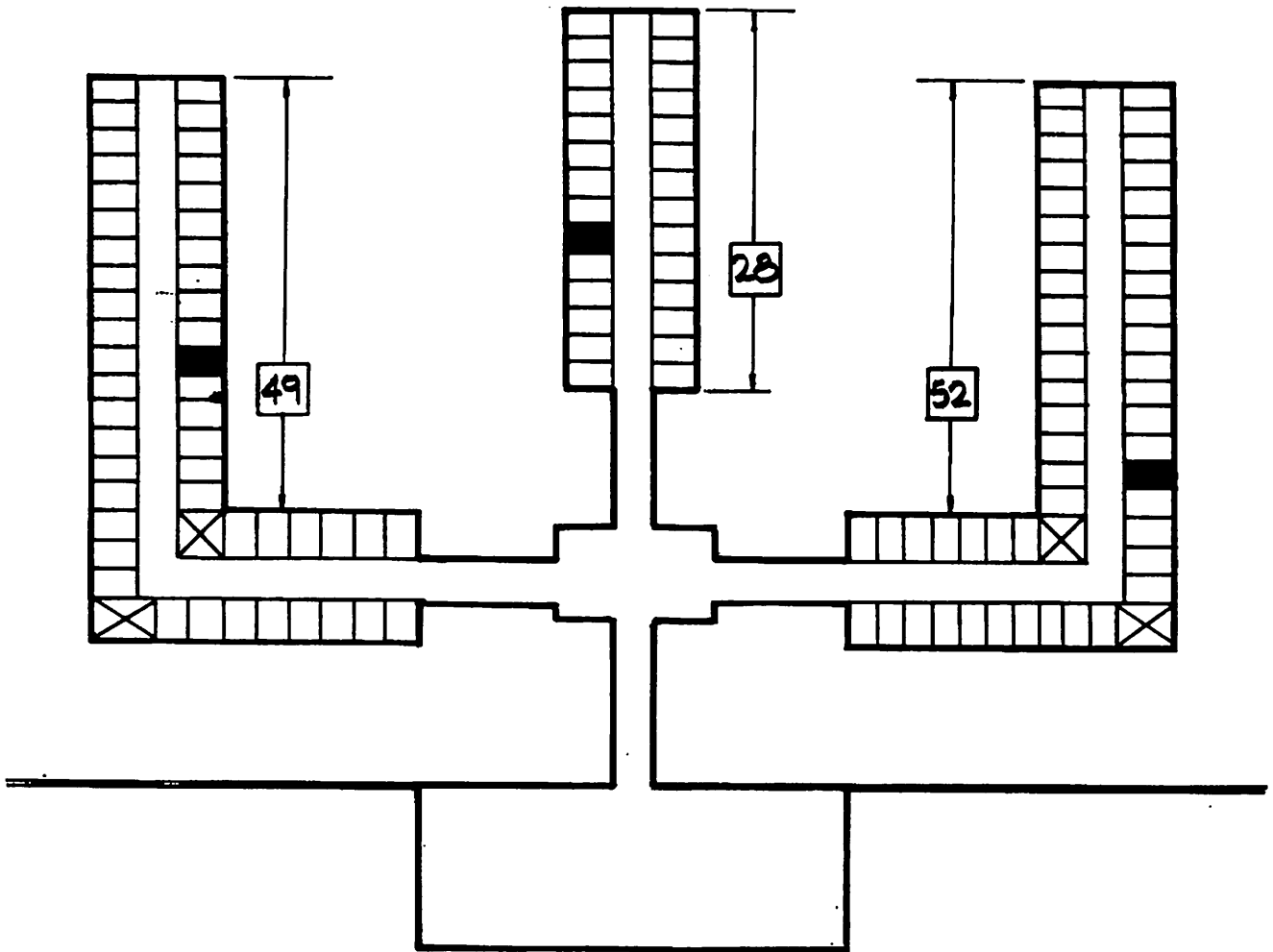
31.4.5.5 ACCESSIBLE CELLS/ROOMS

31.4.5.5.1 Accessible cells/rooms shall be located on an accessible route.

ADAAG 12.5.2

***31.4.5.5.2** All doors and doorways leading in to, and through, inmate housing shall comply with Chapter 7. *Doors and doorways operated only by security personnel shall comply with the applicable requirements of 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 and 7.5 (if applicable), and 7.8.*

ADAAG 12.5.2(1) And
Exception 1/13/98



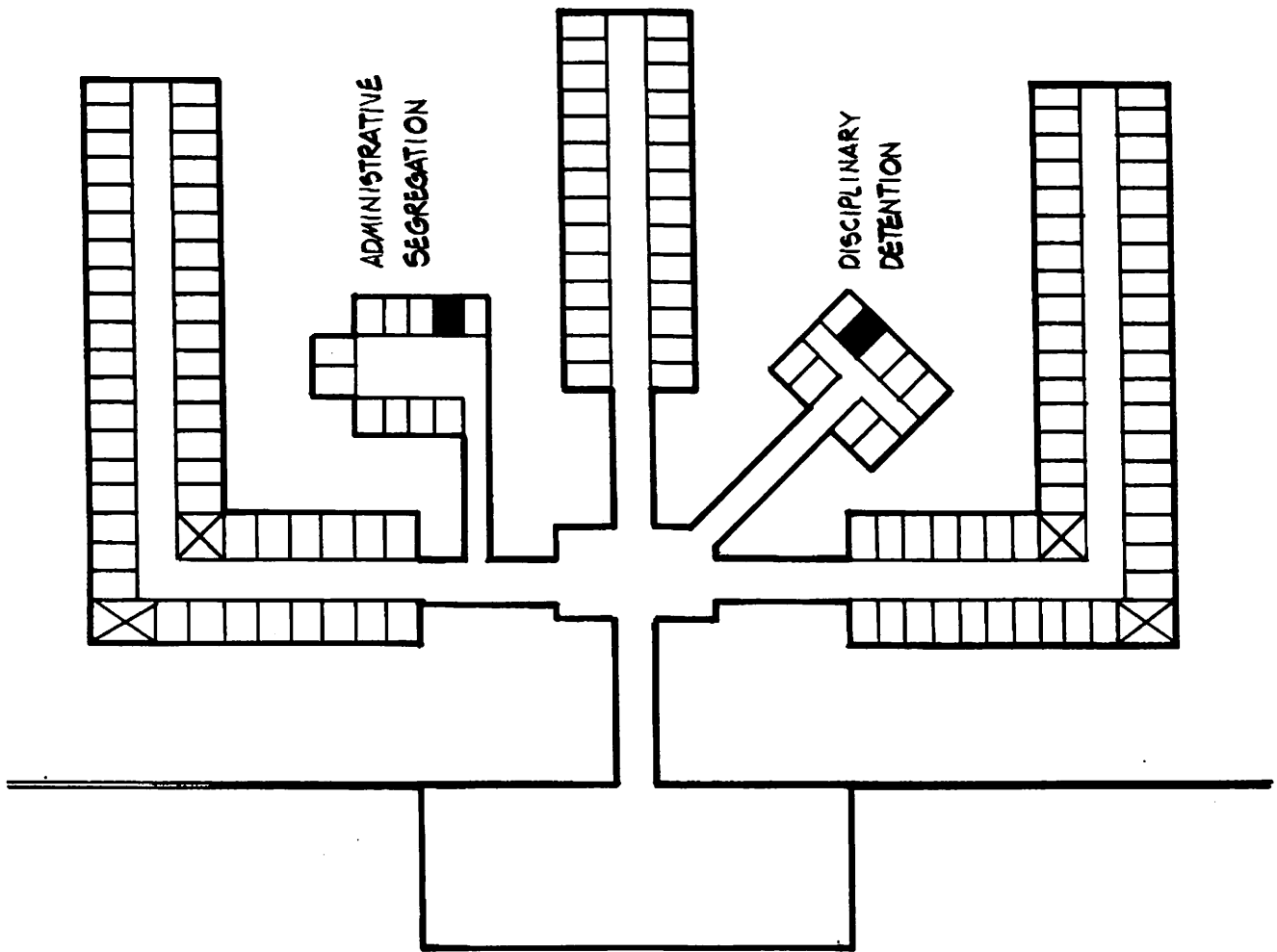
31.4.5.1- 2% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF CELLS/ROOMS, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE, (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER) IN A FACILITY SHALL COMPLY WITH 31.4.5.5.

IF THE FACILITY CONTAINS DIFFERENT LEVELS OF SECURITY OR HOUSING CATEGORIES, THEN ACCESSIBLE CELLS/ROOMS SHALL BE DISTRIBUTED AMONG THE VARIOUS SECURITY/HOUSING CATEGORIES.

EXAMPLE (BASED ON FACILITY SHOWN ABOVE):

TOTAL NUMBER OF CELLS: 129
 $129 \times .02 = 2.58 = \text{MINIMUM OF } 3$

31.4.5- MINIMUM NUMBER AND DISTRIBUTION OF ACCESSIBLE HOLDING AND HOUSING CELLS OR ROOMS

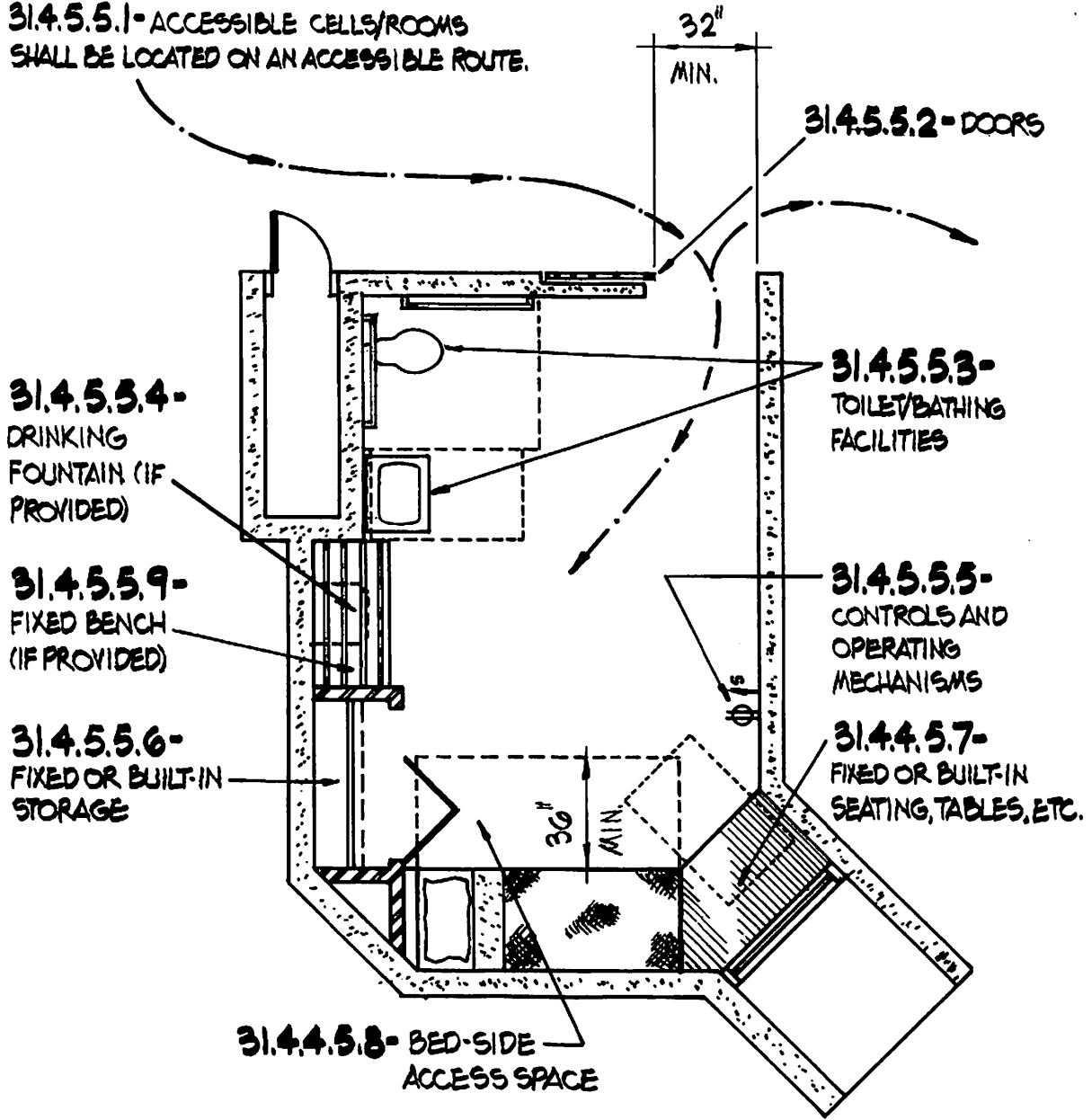


31.4.5.3- IN ADDITION TO 31.4.5.1, IF SPECIAL HOLDING OR HOUSING CELLS ARE PROVIDED, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE SERVING EACH PURPOSE SHALL COMPLY WITH 31.4.5.5. (FOR MEDICAL ISOLATION CELLS, SEE 31.4.5.7.4.) SEE ALSO THE NOTE FOLLOWING THE TEXT OF THIS PARAGRAPH.

FOR CELLS OR ROOMS USED SOLELY FOR THE PURPOSES OF SUICIDE PREVENTION, SEE 31.4.5.4-TEXT.

31.4.5- MINIMUM NUMBER AND DISTRIBUTION OF ACCESSIBLE HOLDING AND HOUSING CELLS OR ROOMS

31.4.5.5.1- ACCESSIBLE CELLS/ROOMS SHALL BE LOCATED ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.



31.4.5.5.10- EACH ACCESSIBLE HOLDING OR HOUSING CELL REQUIRED BY 31.4.5.1 SHALL ALSO COMPLY WITH 31.4.5.6.

31.4.5.5- ACCESSIBLE CELLS/ROOMS

31.4.5.5.3 Accessible toilet facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 11. Accessible bathing facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 12. **ADAAG 12.5.2(2)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.5.4 If drinking fountains are provided within inmate cells or rooms, then a minimum of one (1) shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 13. **ADAAG 12.5.2(4)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.5.5 All controls and operating mechanisms intended for operation by inmates shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 16. **ADAAG 12.5.2(8)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.5.6 Fixed or built-in storage facilities (e.g., cabinets, closets, drawers, shelves, etc.) shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 20. **ADAAG 12.5.2(7)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.5.7 Fixed or built-in seating, tables, counters, etc. shall comply with the applicable requirements of 21.2.1 and 21.3. **ADAAG 12.5.2(5)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.5.8 Beds in accessible cells or rooms shall have a minimum 36 inches (915 mm) wide clear floor space along one side. Two adjacent beds may share a common center clear floor space. **ADAAG 12.5.2(3)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.5.9 Fixed benches shall comply with 31.3.3.3.6. **ADAAG 12.5.2(6)** 1/13/98

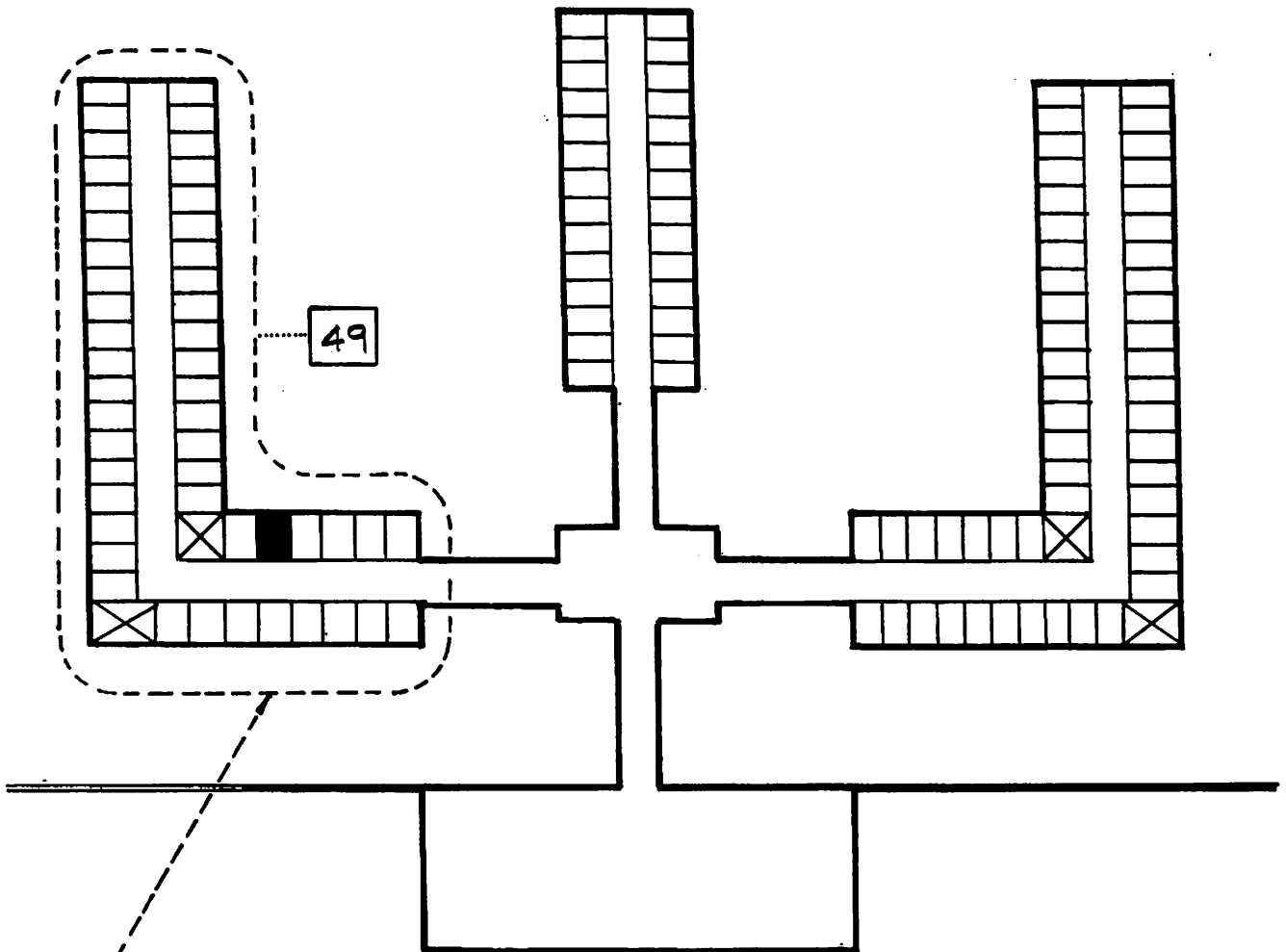
31.4.5.5.10 Each accessible holding or housing cell required by 31.4.5.1 shall also comply with 31.4.5.6. **ADAAG 12.5.2(9)**
1/13/98

31.4.5.6 ACCESSIBLE CELLS OR ROOMS FOR INMATES WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

(NOTE: This Section applies only to individual inmate cells or rooms, not to similar elements located in common use areas. Most correctional facilities do not provide telephones or alarm indicating appliances within cells; however, some facility types [e.g., minimum security prisons] may provide such devices. If permanently installed telephones or audible alarm indicating appliances are provided in cells/rooms in a housing category, then the percentage or minimum number is based on the total number of cells within that housing category, not the total number of cells/rooms for the entire facility. If alarm indicating appliances and/or telephones are not provided within individual inmate cells or rooms, then this Section is not applicable.)

ADAAG A12.4.3
1/13/98

31.4.5.6.1 In addition to 31.4.5.1, if audible alarm indicating appliances and/or permanently installed telephones are provided within inmate holding or housing cells or rooms, then two percent (2%) of the total number of general holding or housing cells/rooms, or a minimum of one, (whichever is the greater number) shall comply with this Section. **ADAAG 12.4.3**
1/13/98



-IF PERMANENTLY INSTALLED TELEPHONES OR AUDIBLE ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES ARE PROVIDED IN CELLS/ROOMS IN A HOUSING CATEGORY, THEN THE PERCENTAGE OR MINIMUM NUMBER IS BASED ON THE TOTAL NUMBER OF CELLS WITHIN THAT HOUSING CATEGORY, NOT THE TOTAL NUMBER OF CELLS/ROOMS FOR THE ENTIRE FACILITY.

31.4.5.6.1- IN ADDITION TO 31.4.5.1, IF AUDIBLE ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES AND/OR PERMANENTLY INSTALLED TELEPHONES ARE PROVIDED WITHIN INMATE HOLDING OR HOUSING CELLS OR ROOMS, THEN 2% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF GENERAL HOLDING OR HOUSING CELLS/ROOMS, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE, (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER) SHALL COMPLY WITH THIS SECTION.

EXAMPLE: $49 \text{ CELLS} \times .02 = .98 = \text{MINIMUM OF 1 CELL.}$

31.4.5.6- ACCESSIBLE CELLS OR ROOMS FOR INMATES WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

31.4.5.6.2 If permanently installed telephones are provided, then they shall comply with 14.2.5.1. **ADAAG 12.6**
1/13/98

31.4.5.6.3 If audible alarm indicating appliances are provided, then visual alarm indicating appliances complying with 29.5.3 shall be provided. **ADAAG 12.6**
1/13/98

(NOTE: If inmates are not permitted independent means of egress, then visual alarm indicating appliances within cells or rooms are not required even if a facility-wide audible emergency warning system is provided.) **ADAAG 12.6,**
Exception 1/13/98

31.4.5.7 MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES

31.4.5.7.1 In addition to the requirements of 31.4.5.3, if patient cells/rooms are provided in medical facilities that: **ADAAG 12.4.4**
1/13/98

- (1) Provide emergency care or treatment; and
- (2) The period of stay may exceed 24 hours,

then accessible patient cells/rooms shall be required.

31.4.5.7.2 The number of accessible patient cells or rooms shall equal the percentage required by 28.2.1 for a given type of medical facility. If different types of care are provided within a facility or building, or in different buildings, then the applicable percentage shall be applied independently to each facility. **ADAAG 12.4.4**
(E.G.: A 50-room hospital providing general medical services is required to have five accessible rooms [$50 \times .10 = 5$]. If this same hospital has 40 patient rooms serving general medical care and 10 rooms serving long-term care, then the number of accessible rooms is: $40 \times .10 = 4$ for general medical care, and $10 \times .50 = 5$ for long-term care.)

31.4.5.7.3 Accessible patient cells/rooms and accessible toilet/bathing facilities shall comply with 28.4 through 28.6. **ADAAG 12.4.4**
1/13/98

31.4.5.7.4 If medical isolation cells/rooms are provided, then a minimum of one of each type of medical isolation shall comply with 28.4 through 28.6. **ADAAG 12.4.4**
1/13/98

(NOTE: Medical isolation cells/rooms are special holding/housing facilities similar to 31.4.5.3; they shall be counted separately from the minimum number of patient bedrooms or cells required to be accessible by 31.4.5.7.2.) **ADAAG A12.4.2**
1/13/98

31.4.5.7.5 For medical facilities covered by this Section, providing a canopy or roof overhang/extension at an accessible entrance and passenger loading zone is not required. **Access Board (Via Telephone)-2/26/98**

31.5 LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY FACILITIES

31.5.1 DEFINITIONS

31.5.1.1 LEGISLATIVE FACILITIES

Town halls, city council chambers, city or county commissioners' meeting rooms/chambers, and State capitols where public debate, discussion of local issues, laws, ordinances, or regulations take place.

ADAAG A11.3
1/13/98

(NOTE: As used in this Section, the term "chambers" does not have the same meaning as a judge's "chamber" in that a "chamber" wherein public debate on legislative or regulatory issues takes place is larger and accommodates many more occupants than does a judge's "chamber".)

Explanatory Note
Derived From
FR 1/13/98 At 2009

31.5.1.2 REGULATORY FACILITIES

Facilities which house municipal, county, or State entities whose function include governing, licensing, or regulating activities such as, but not limited to: zoning application or waiver hearings; adjudicatory administrative hearings are held (e.g., drivers' license suspension); licensing or regulatory hearings; or housing authority meeting rooms.

ADAAG A11.3
1/13/98

31.5.1.3 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE RESTRICTED AND SECURED ENTRANCES

31.5.1.3.1 In addition to the accessible entrances required by 6.2.1.1 and 6.2.1.2, if restricted and secured entrances are provided, then a minimum of one of each type shall be accessible.

ADAAG 11.1.1
1/13/98

(NOTE: For these types of entrances see: 31.2.1 and 31.2.2; 31.3.1.1; and 31.3.1.2.)

31.5.2 ACCESS, RAISED SPEAKERS' PLATFORMS, SPECTATOR, PRESS, AND OTHER AREAS WITH FIXED SEATS, AND ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS (A.L.S.)

31.5.2.1 Raised or depressed areas accessed by ramps (Chapter 5) or platform lifts (15.11) shall have a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm), or a 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter, minimum clear floor area at the top and bottom of the ramp or lift.

ADAAG 11.3.1
1/13/98

*31.5.2.2 If raised speakers' platforms are provided, then a minimum of one of each type shall be accessible.

ADAAG 11.3.1(1)
1/13/98

(NOTE: This requirement is a performance specification since speakers' platforms may vary widely in design [e.g., a lectern with a microphone and ledge/shelf for papers, or simply a platform with or without a ledge or microphone]. If speakers' platforms are permanent installations, then Code Enforcement Officials shall ensure compliance with this Code. If speakers' platforms are moveable furniture, then it is entirely the responsibility of the legislative or regulatory entity having jurisdiction to ensure compliance with those requirements of State and/or Federal civil rights law that are outside the scope of this Code.)

Defines C.E.O.
Responsibilities

31.5.2.3 If seating for spectators, members of the press, and other fixed seating areas are provided, then each area shall comply with 22.1.1, and 22.1.1.1 through 22.1.2.1. Each accessible seating space shall comply with the applicable requirements of 22.3.

ADAAG 11.3.1(2)
1/13/98

31.5.2.4 If assembly areas regulated by this Section have a permanently installed audio-amplification system, then a permanently installed A.L.S. shall be provided. The minimum number of receivers shall be equal to four percent (4%) of the:

ADAAG 11.3.2
1/13/98

*** (1) Total number of fixed seats within the room; or**

ADAAG 11.3.2 Uses
"Room Occupant Load";
Vol. I Describes Two
Methods To Determine
Room Occupant Load

*** (2) Room maximum occupant content for rooms without fixed seating,**

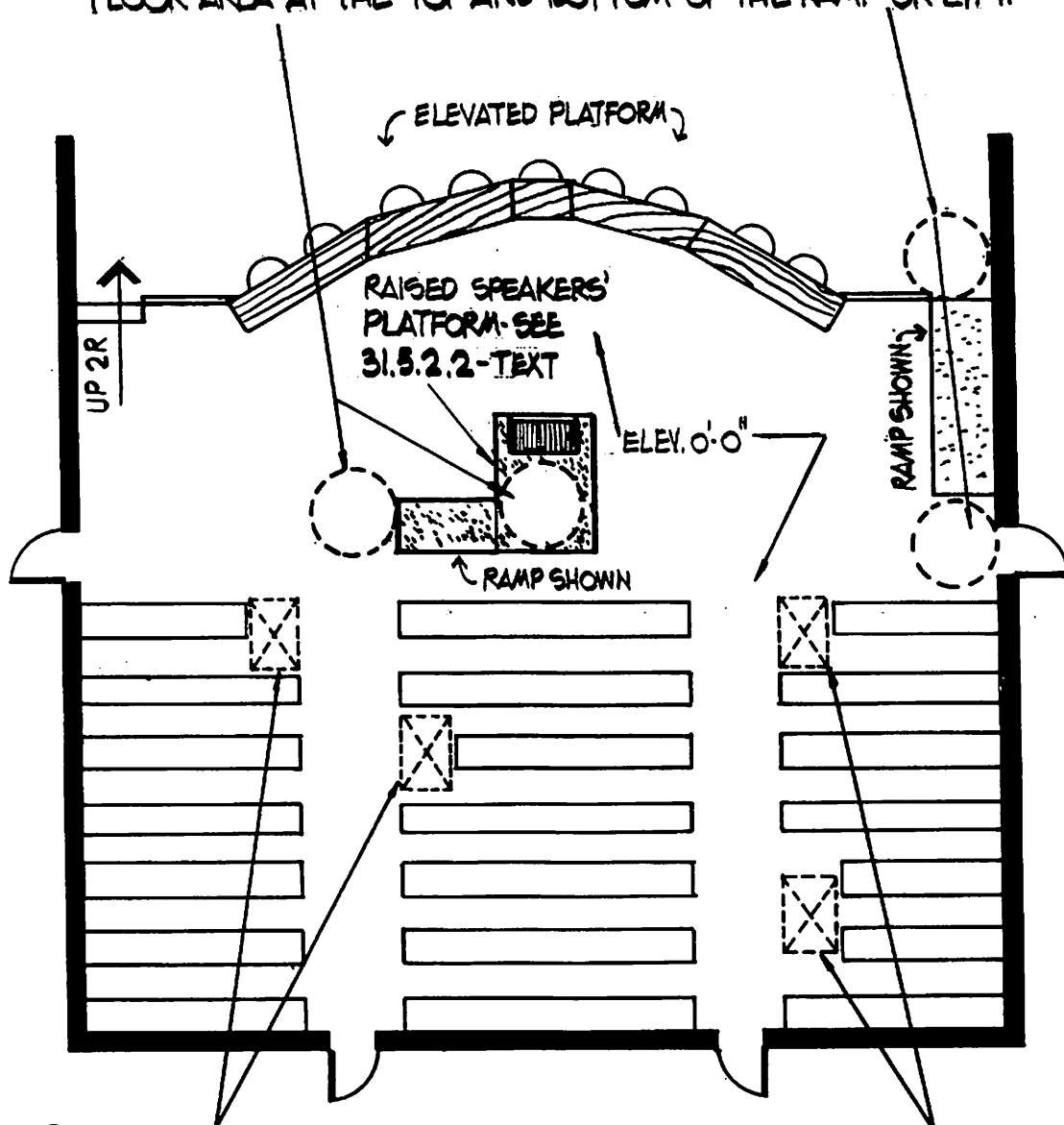
or a minimum of two (whichever is the greater number). Receivers shall be located within 50 feet (15 m) of the front of the room or seating area of the governing body (e.g., adjudicatory board, city council, county commissioners, etc.).

Same As 22.4.2.1
[ADAAG 4.33.6]

31.5.2.5 For informational signage indicating the availability of an A.L.S., see 31.3.2.8.3.

Cross-Reference

31.5.2.1- RAISED OR DEPRESSED AREAS ACCESSED BY RAMPS OR PLATFORM LIFTS SHALL HAVE A 60" X 60", OR A 60" DIAMETER, MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR AREA AT THE TOP AND BOTTOM OF THE RAMP OR LIFT.



31.5.2.3- IF SEATING FOR SPECTATORS, MEMBERS OF THE PRESS, AND OTHER FIXED SEATING AREAS ARE PROVIDED, THEN EACH AREA SHALL COMPLY WITH 22.1.1, AND 22.1.1.1 THROUGH 22.1.2.1. EACH ACCESSIBLE SEATING SPACE SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 22.3.

FOR AUDIO AMPLIFICATION SYSTEM AND AN ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM (A.L.S.), SEE 31.5.2.4 AND 31.5.2.5-TEXT.

31.5.2- ACCESS, RAISED SPEAKERS' PLATFORMS, SPECTATOR, PRESS, AND OTHER AREAS WITH FIXED SEATS, AND ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

CHAPTER 32 CHILDREN'S ENVIRONMENTS

32.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Vol. I-C, Pg. 222;
ADAAG-Summary,
FR 1/13/98 At 2060

32.1.1 Children are persons twelve (12) years of age and younger.

32.1.2 Sections and Paragraphs of this Code not modified by this Chapter shall be applied as specified.

Vol. I-C, Pg. 222;
FR 1/13/98 At 2061-
Similar

32.1.2.1 Design professionals may identify additional areas of this Code which are in need of modification based upon experience and/or published sources when serving children. If, in serving this age group, evidence (e.g., previously constructed buildings, published sources, research from State and/or Federal agencies, etc.) is presented to the Code Enforcement Official indicating safe, accessible, and usable exceptions to the adult standards presented throughout this Code, then such documented evidence shall be deemed acceptable.

Similar To
Vol. I-C, Pg. 222

(NOTE: Modifications shall be carried through in a complete manner; modifying one element without concurrent adjustments to other elements is not acceptable since a single modification does not provide an accessible environment. [For example: lowering the height of a watercloset seat must be accompanied by a concurrent lowering of grab bars, lavatory rims, toilet accessories, etc.])

FR 1/13/98 At 2061

32.1.3 If a dimension range is given in 32.2, then this Chapter intends that the lower range be applicable to children ages 3 to 5 and the upper range be applicable to children ages 6 to 12.

ADAAG A4.2.5, A4.2.6,
And A4.16.7 1/13/98

(NOTE: For further optional guidance on ages and dimensions see the tables in the illustrations.)

32.2 TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

32.2.1 SCHOOL LOADING ZONES (ADULT: 4.11)

32.2.1.1 *If designated school bus loading zones are provided, then a minimum of one accessible entrance complying with 6.2.1.1 shall be protected from the weather by a canopy or roof overhang/extension.*

AB, Pg. 6;
OSEP, Pg. 2

*32.2.1.2 *The designated loading zone shall be 144 inches wide by 600 inches long (12 ft by 50 ft/3.7 m by 15.2 m) minimum.*

AB, Pg. 6;
OSEP, Pg. 2

32.2.2 INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE (ADULT: 5.2.3)

32.2.2.1 *An interior accessible route shall have a 44 inches(1120 mm) minimum clear width.*

NC Public
Comment, 8/96;
AB, Pg. 3

32.2.3 RAMP AND STAIR HANDRAILS (ADULT: 5.4.2[2] AND 8.3.2)

32.2.3.1 Handrails shall be located 28 inches (710 mm) maximum above the finished ramp walking surface and/or common line of stair nosings. A 9 inches (75 mm) minimum gap shall be maintained between the childrens' (lower) and adults' (upper) handrails.

ADAAG A4.8.5
And A4.9.5;
FR 1/13/98 At
2063

***32.2.3.2** *Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous and not be interrupted by any elements used to support the adult height rails. If children's handrails are mounted inside of the adult height rails, then the minimum clear width of an accessible route shall be measured between the lower rails.* Maintain Clear Width

32.2.4 TOILET STALLS (ADULT: 11.4)

32.2.4.1 DEPTH OF STALLS AND TOE SPACE

(ADULT: 11.4.1[1], 11.4.3[1], 11.4.5 AND 39.3.1[1])

32.2.4.1.1 A Type I Standard Stall having a wall-hung watercloset shall have a 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum clear width and a 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum clear depth.

ADAAG 4.17.7(2),
1/13/98

32.2.4.1.2 In addition to a Type I or II standard stall, if six (6) or more waterclosets are provided in any toilet room, then a stall complying with 11.4.3 shall also be provided. If that stall is equipped with a wall-hung watercloset, then the clear depth shall be 69 inches (1745 mm) minimum.

ADAAG 4.17.7(2),
1/13/98

32.2.4.1.3 In Alterations, if a front entry stall complying with 39.3.1(1) is equipped with a wall-hung watercloset, then the clear depth shall be 69 inches (1745 mm) minimum.

ADAAG 4.17.7(2),
1/13/98

32.2.4.2 Regardless of stall depth and watercloset type, Types I and II Standard Stalls shall have a minimum 12 inches (305 mm) high toe clearance at the front partition and a minimum of one side partition.

ADAAG 4.17.7(3),
1/13/98

32.2.5 GRAB BARS (ADULT: 11.4.1[4] AND 11.4.1[5])

32.2.5.1 Grab bars shall be located with the horizontal centerline 18 inches (455 mm) minimum to 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

ADAAG 4.16.7(3),
1/13/98

(NOTE 1-FLUSH VALVE WATERCLOSET: If the grab bar location conflicts with flush valve mounting height [see 32.2.6.2], then the 36 inches [915 mm] long rear wall grab bar may split.

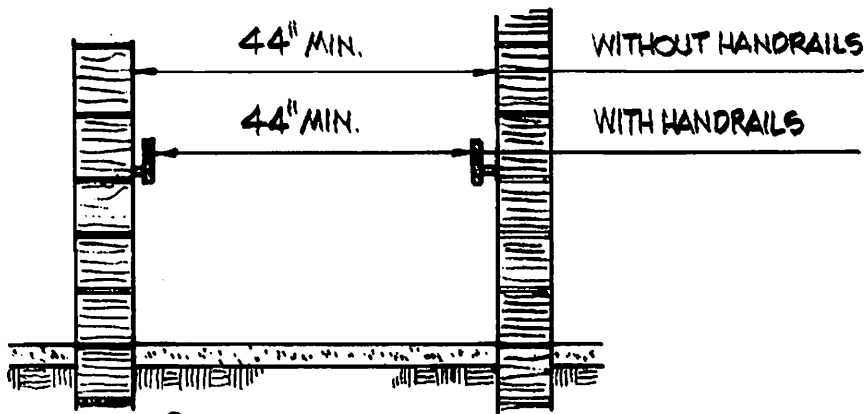
ADAAG 4.16.7(3), Exception;
ADAAG 4.17.7(5), Exception
1/13/98

NOTE 2-FLUSH VALVE OR FLUSH TANK WATERCLOSET: If the fixture centerline is less than 15 inches [380 mm] from the adjacent sidewall, then use of a minimum 24 inches [610 mm] long rear wall grab bar offset to the fixture wide side shall be permitted.

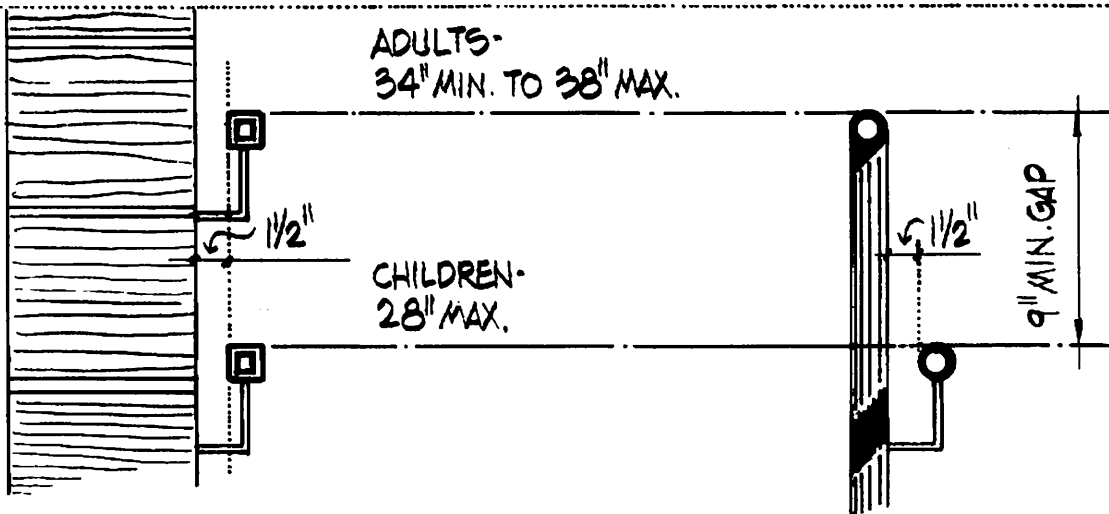
ADAAG 4.16.7(3), Exception;
ADAAG 4.17.7(5), Exception
1/13/98

***NOTE 3-FLUSH TANK WATERCLOSET:** *If the tank height will prevent grab bar placement over the fixture, then use of a minimum 24 inches [610 mm] long rear wall grab bar offset to the fixture wide side shall be permitted.)*

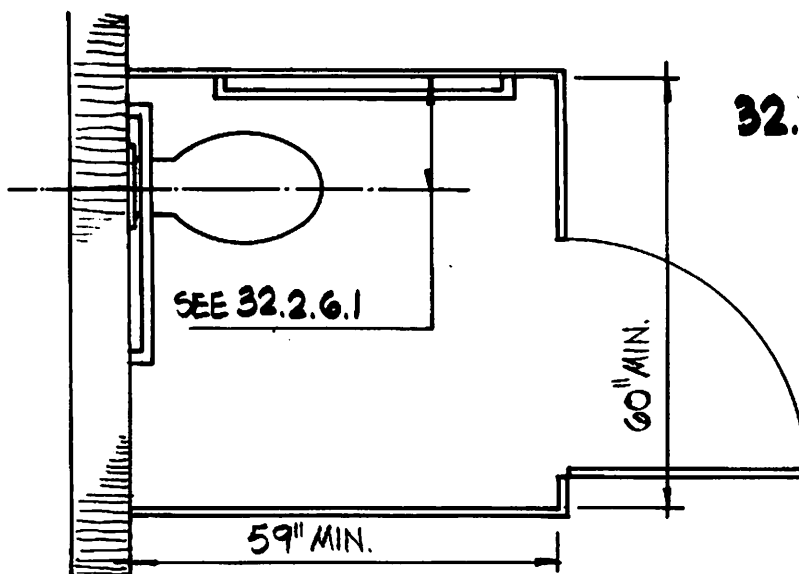
NC Plumbing Code Permits
Use Of Flush Tank In Lieu
Of Flush Valve



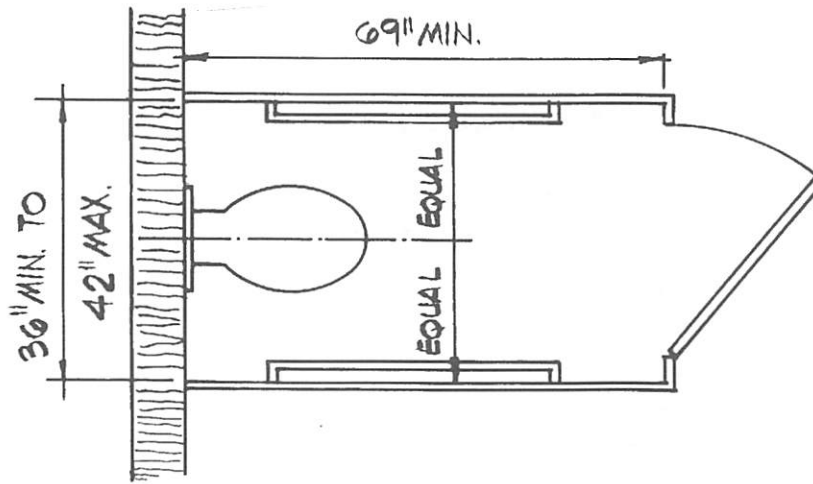
32.2.2- INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE



32.2.3- RAMP AND STAIR HANDRAILS

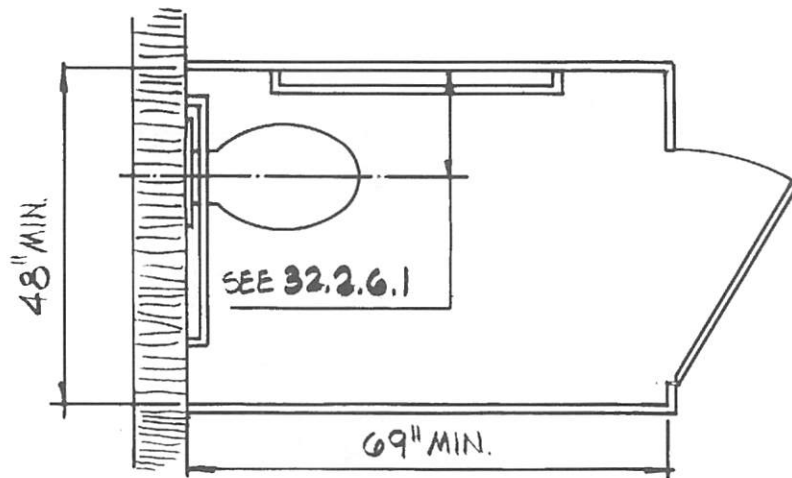


32.2.4.1- TYPE I STANDARD STALL WITH WALL-HUNG WATERCLOSET



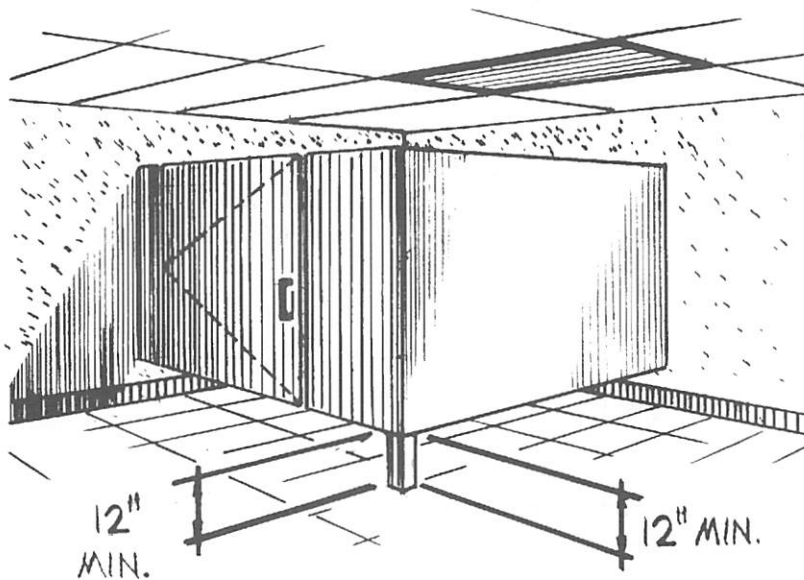
32.2.4.1.2-

FRONT-ENTRY STALL WITH WALL-HUNG WATERCLOSET (SEE 11.4.3 WHICH TELLS WHEN THIS STALL IS REQUIRED IN NEW CONSTRUCTION)



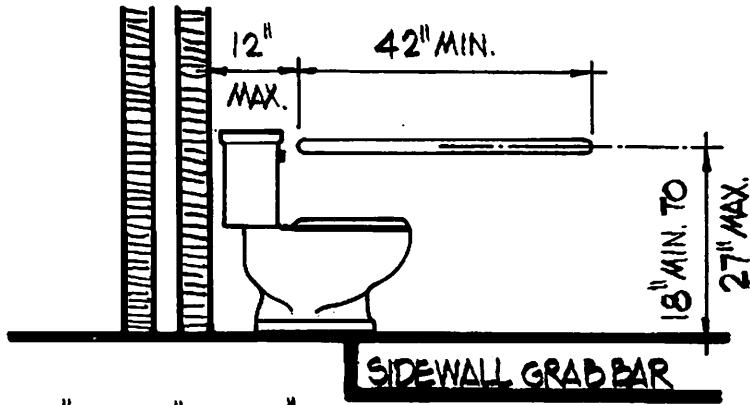
32.2.4.1.3-

IN ALTERATIONS, IF A FRONT-ENTRY STALL COMPLYING WITH 39.3.1(1) IS EQUIPPED WITH A WALL-HUNG WATERCLOSET, THEN THE CLEAR DEPTH SHALL BE 69" MINIMUM.

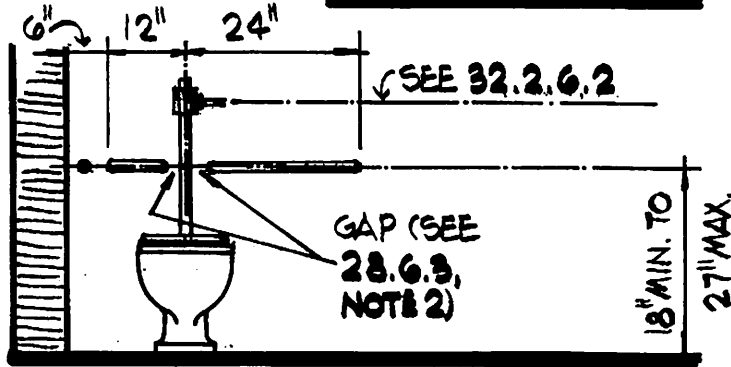


32.2.4.2-

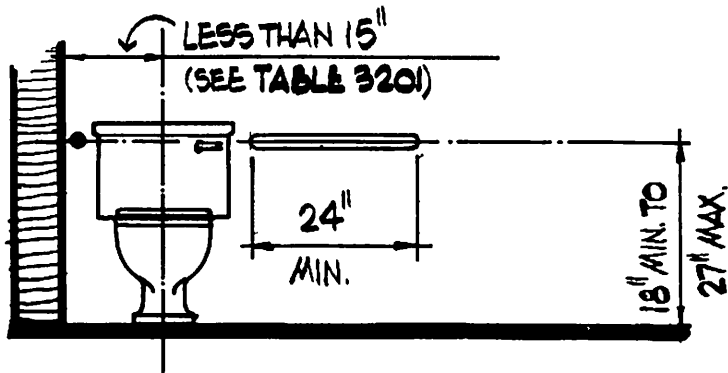
REGARDLESS OF STALL DEPTH AND WATERCLOSET TYPE, TYPES I AND II STANDARD STALLS SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM 12" HIGH TOE SPACE AT THE FRONT PARTITION AND A MINIMUM OF ONE SIDE PARTITION.



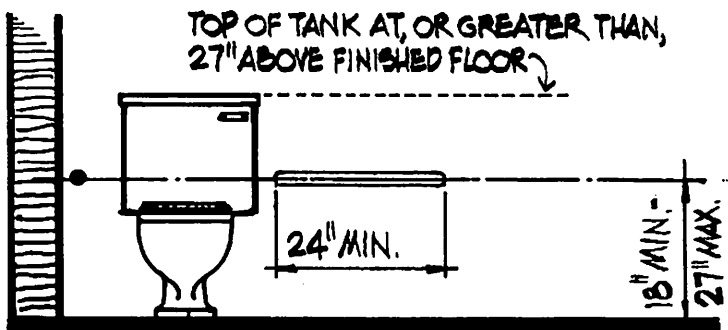
FOR MORE SPECIFIC INFORMATION REGARDING AGE GROUPS AND MOUNTING HEIGHTS, SEE **TABLE 3201** (IN ILLUSTRATIONS, NOT TEXT)



NOTE 1 - FLUSH VALVE WATERCLOSET



NOTE 2 - FLUSH VALVE OR FLUSH TANK WATERCLOSET (FLUSH TANK SHOWN)



NOTE 3 - FLUSH TANK WATERCLOSET

32.2.5 - GRAB BARS

32.2.6 WATERCLOSETS (ADULT: 11.6.1[1], 11.6.1[4] AND 11.6.1[5])

32.2.6.1 The watercloset centerline shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the adjacent sidewall. Height to the top of the seat shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum to 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**ADAAG 4.16.7(1)
And 4.16.7(2),
1/13/98**

32.2.6.2 The flush control activating mechanism shall be at 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**ADAAG 4.16.7(4)
1/13/98**

32.2.6.3 Toilet paper dispensers shall be located on the sidewall adjacent to the watercloset with the dispenser horizontal centerline at 14 inches (355 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**ADAAG 4.16.7(5)
1/13/98**

**32.2.7 LAVATORIES AND SINKS (ADULT: 11.6.2[1], 11.6.2[3], 11.6.2[5]
11.11.3[1], AND 11.11.3[2])**

32.2.7.1 For lavatories and/or sinks serving children six (6) to twelve (12) years of age the rim or finished countertop shall be 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the finished floor. A 24 inches (610 mm) high minimum clear knee space shall be maintained from the finished floor to the bottom of the forward edge of the apron or skirt.

**ADAAG 4.19.2, Exception 1;
ADAAG 4.24.3, Exception 1,
1/13/98**

32.2.7.1.1 For lavatories and/or sinks serving children five (5) years of age and younger if a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space oriented for a parallel (i.e., side) approach is provided, then compliance with 32.2.7.1 is not required. Space below the fixture(s) may be enclosed.

**ADAAG 4.19.2, Exception 2;
ADAAG 4.24.3, Exception 2,
1/13/98**

FR 1/13/98 At 2066

32.2.8 URINALS (ADULT: 11.6.3[1] AND 11.6.3[4])

***32.2.8.1** *Rim height shall be 14 inches (355 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 224;
AB, Page 14**

***32.2.8.2** *The flush control shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

**ADAAG A4.2.5 And
A4.2.6 1/13/98**

32.2.9 TOILET ACCESSORIES (ADULT: 11.7.1, 11.7.2, AND 11.7.3[1])

***32.2.9.1 Mirrors located over lavatories shall have the bottom edge at 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor. (NOTE: If a full length mirror is used, then the bottom edge shall be 12 inches [305 mm] minimum above the finished floor.)**

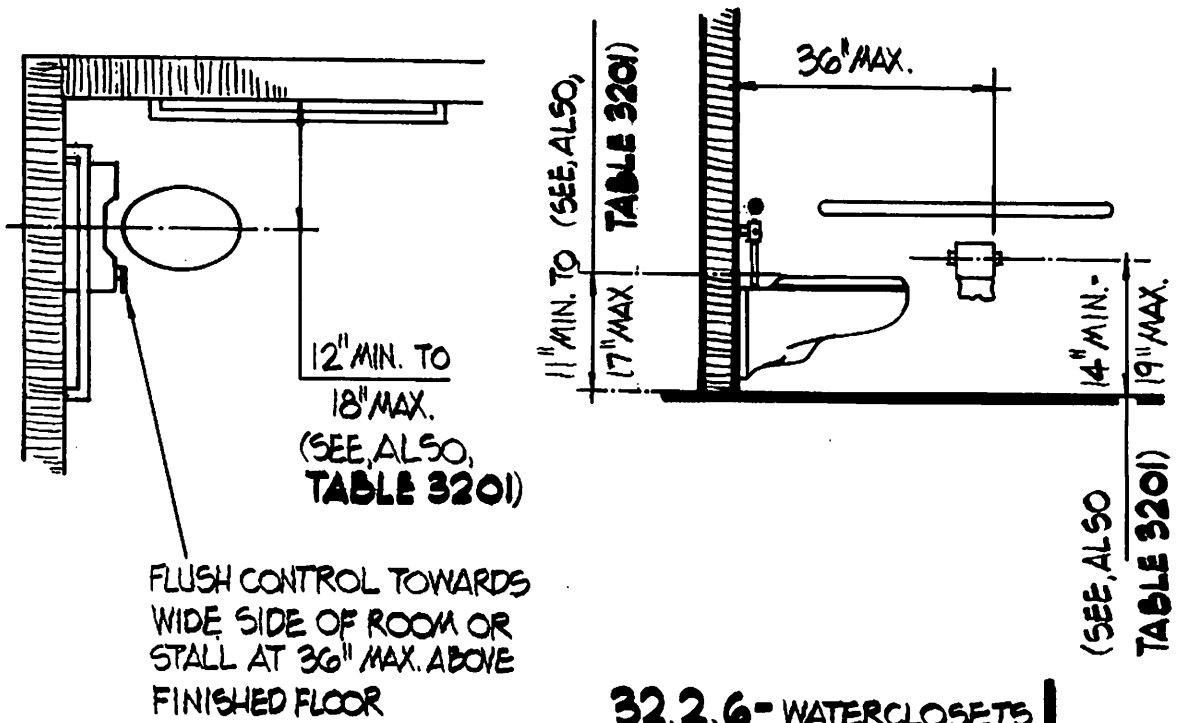
**Vol. I-C, Pg. 224;
ADAAG A4.19.6,
1/13/98**

***32.2.9.2 If shelves are provided, then one shelf minimum shall have the finished top surface at 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor.**

**Vol. I-C,
Pg. 224**

***32.2.9.3 Towel bars, and dispenser/disposal controls, operating mechanisms, or slots shall be located 20 inches (510 mm) minimum to 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor.**

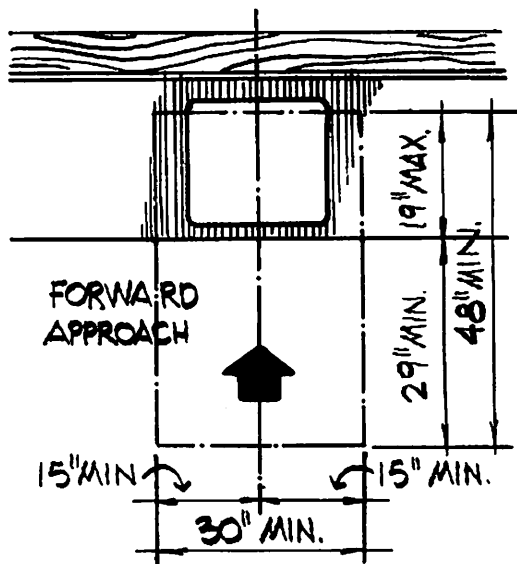
**ADAAG A4.2.5 And
A4.2.6, 1/13/98**



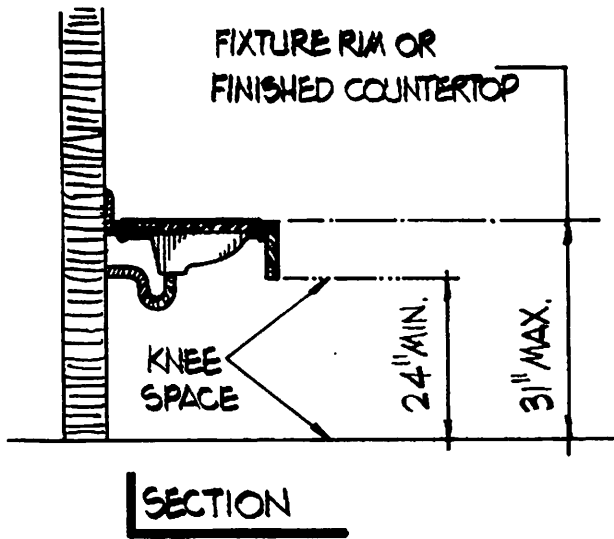
32.2.6 - WATERCLOSETS

THIS TABLE MAY BE USED TO ACCOMMODATE A SPECIFIC AGE GROUP(S)

TABLE 3201			
ELEMENT	AGES		
	3 AND 4	5 THRU 8	9 THRU 12
Watercloset Centerline	12 Inches (305 mm)	12 To 15 Inches (305 to 380 mm)	15 To 18 Inches (380 to 455 mm)
Seat Height	11 To 12 Inches (280 To 302 mm)	12 To 15 Inches (305 To 380 mm)	15 To 17 Inches (380 To 430 mm)
Grab Bar Mounting Ht.	18 To 20 Inches (455 To 510 mm)	20 To 25 Inches (510 To 635 mm)	25 To 27 Inches (635 To 685 mm)
Toilet Tissue Dispenser Height	14 Inches (355 mm)	14 To 17 Inches (355 To 430 mm)	17 To 19 Inches (430 To 485 mm)

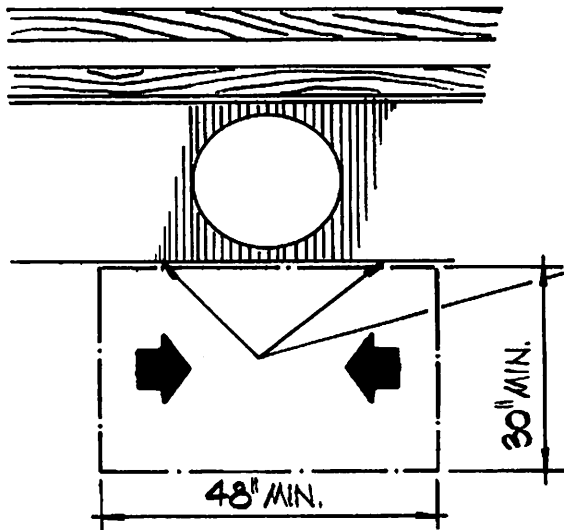


PLAN



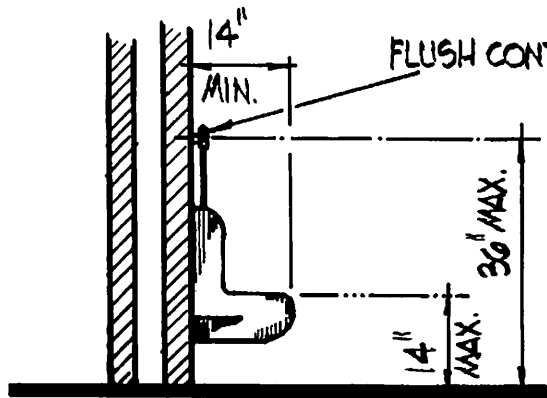
SECTION

32.2.7.1- FIXTURE SERVING AGES 6 TO 12

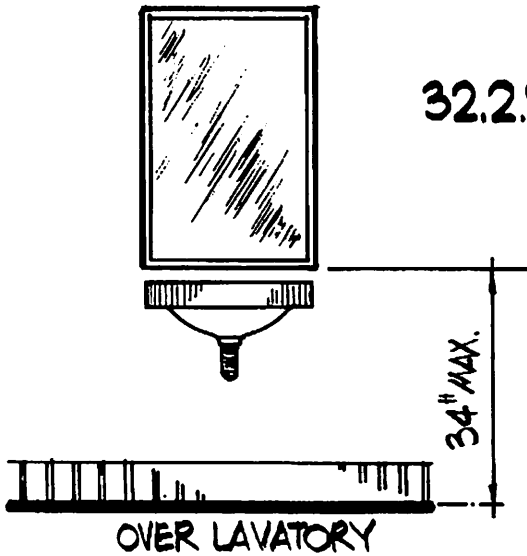


32.2.7.1.1-
 FOR LAVATORIES AND/OR SINKS SERVING CHILDREN 5 YEARS OF AGE AND YOUNGER IF A 30"W X 48"L MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ORIENTED FOR A PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH IS PROVIDED, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH 32.2.7.1 IS NOT REQUIRED. SPACE BELOW THE FIXTURE(S) MAY BE ENCLOSED.

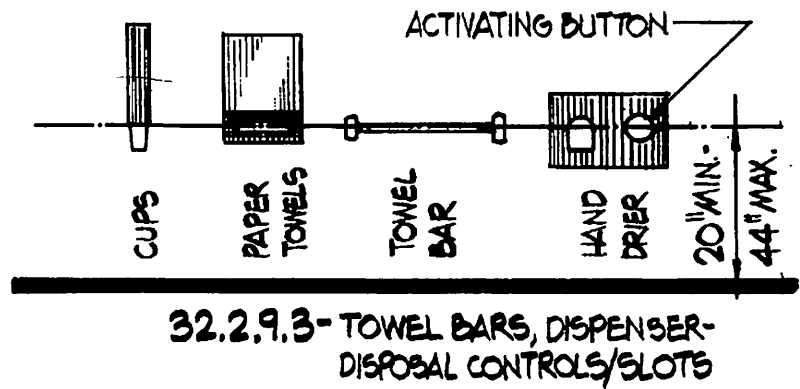
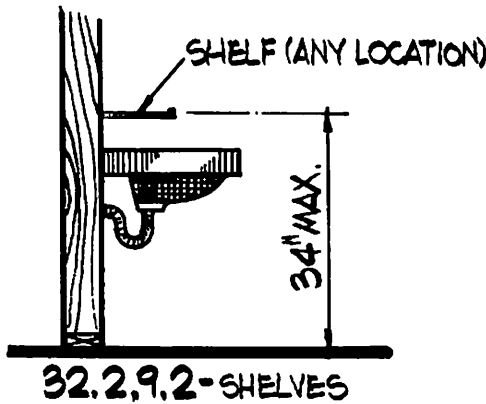
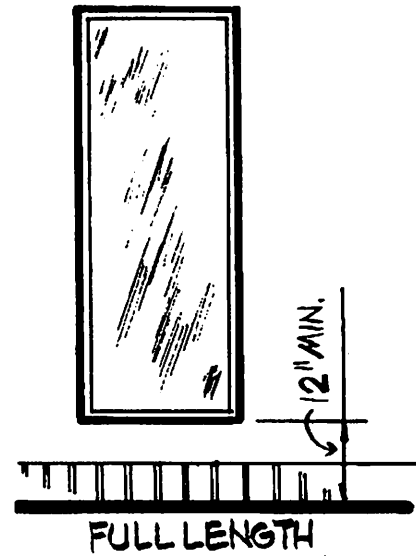
32.2.7- LAVATORIES AND SINKS



32.2.8-URINALS



32.2.9.1-MIRRORS



32.2.9-TOILET ACCESSORIES

32.2.10 SHOWERS (ADULT: 12.2.2[2], 12.2.3, AND 12.2.4)

***32.2.10.1** *The top of the shower seat shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum to 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the finished floor.* Same As 32.2.6.1 [ADAAG 4.16.7(2)]

***32.2.10.2** *Controls and soap tray shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished bathroom floor.* Vol. I-C, Pg. 224; OSEP, Pg. 14

32.2.10.3 Grab bar mounting height shall comply with 32.2.5. Cross-Reference

32.2.11 BATHTUBS (ADULT: 12.4.1.5 AND 12.4.6)

***32.2.11.1** *Grab bar mounting height shall comply with 32.2.5. (NOTE: Due to the low mounting height, one grab bar shall be permitted on the wall parallel to the tub long dimension.)* Vol. I-C, Pg. 225, 232

32.2.12 DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATERCOOLERS (ADULT: 13.1.4)

32.2.12.1 If a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space oriented for a parallel (i.e., side) approach is provided and the spout outlet is at 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level, then compliance with the vertical clearances of 13.2 is not required. ADAAG 4.15.5(1), Exception 1/13/98

32.2.13 TELEPHONES (ADULT: 14.2.3.3 AND 14.2.4.3)

***32.2.13.1** *Public pay telephones shall have the highest operable part located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor.* OSEP, Pg. 17; ADAAG A4.2.5 And A4.2.6, 1/13/98

32.2.14 ELEVATORS (ADULT: 15.5.3.2, 15.9.2 AND 15.10.4)

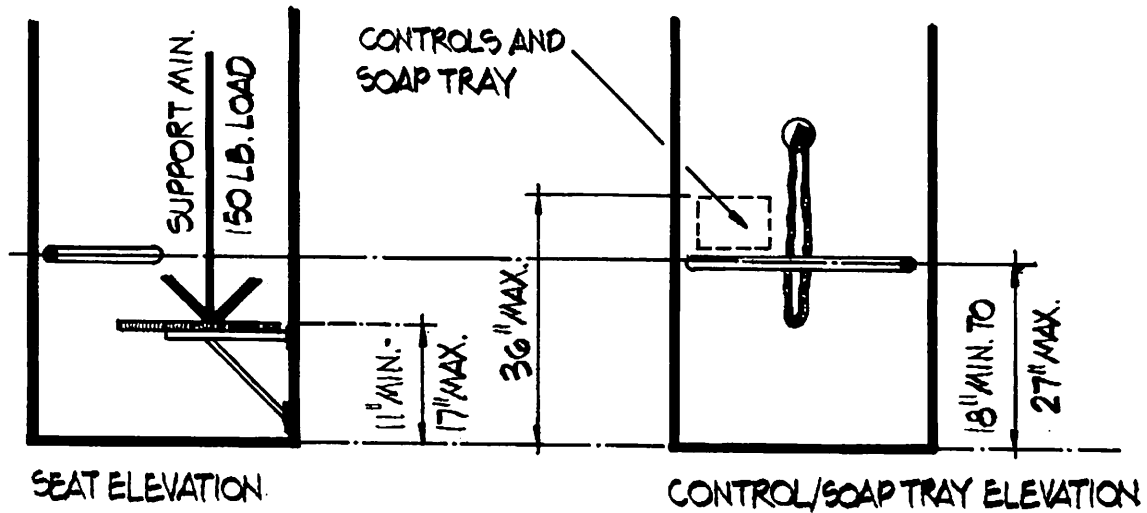
***32.2.14.1** *Floor designations at hoistways shall have the horizontal centerline at 40 inches (1015 mm) above the finished floor or ground level.* Vol. I-C, Pg. 225; OSEP, Pg. 17

***32.2.14.2** *Elevator cab controls shall be located 36 inches (195 mm) maximum above the finished cab floor.* Vol. I-C, Pg. 225; OSEP, Pg. 5

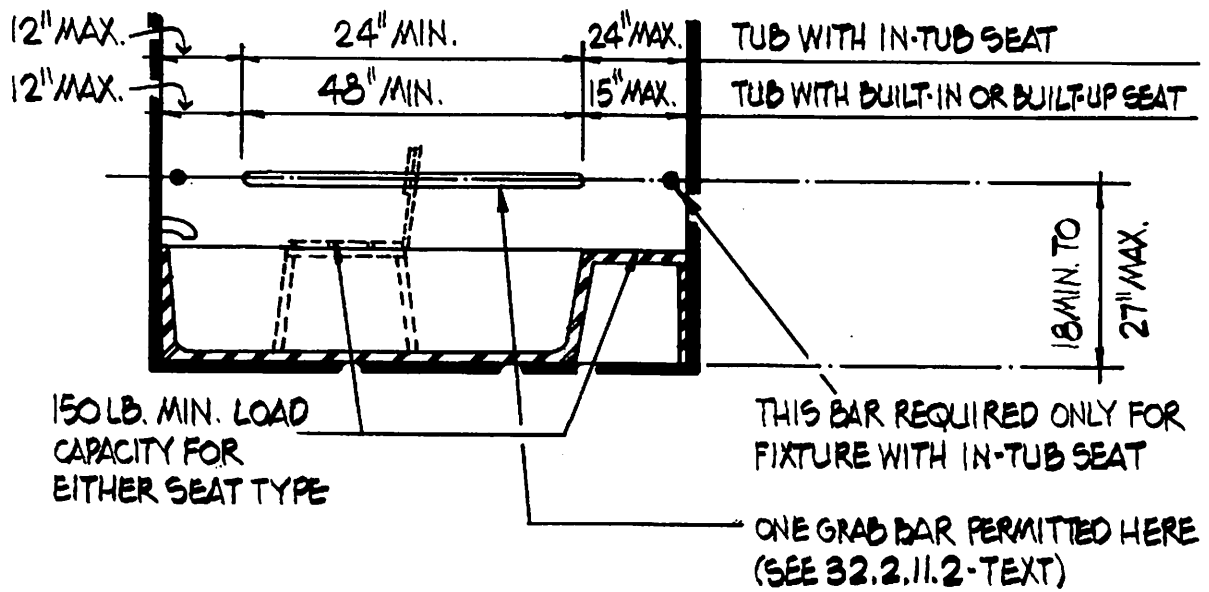
***32.2.14.3** *If emergency communications are provided, then the highest operable part of the system shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished cab floor.* OSEP, Pg. 5

32.2.15 CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS (ADULT: 16.2.1 AND 16.2.2)

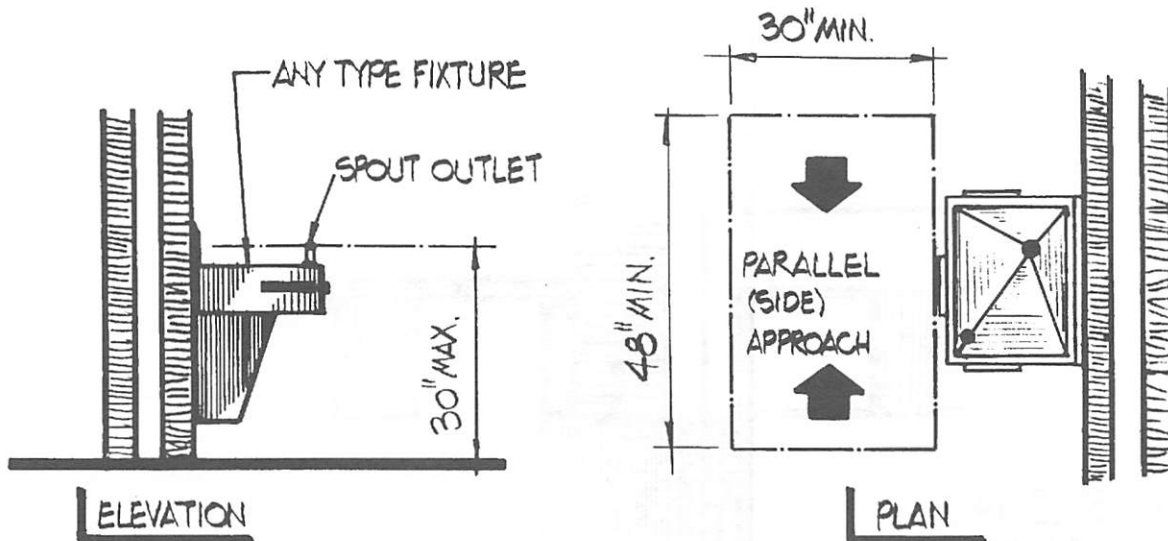
***32.2.15.1** *All controls and operating mechanisms shall be located 20 inches (510 mm) minimum to 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.* Vol. I-C, Pg. 225 Sim. To ADAAG A4.2.5 And A4.2.6 1/13/98



32.2.10-SHOWERS

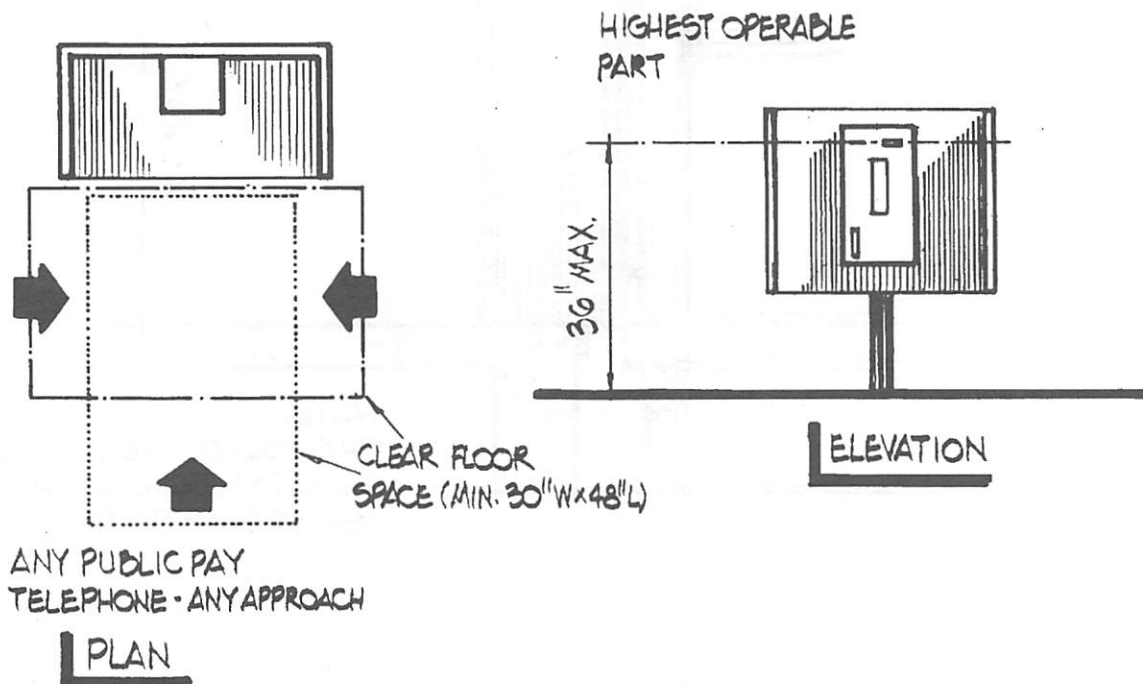


32.2.11-BATHTUBS

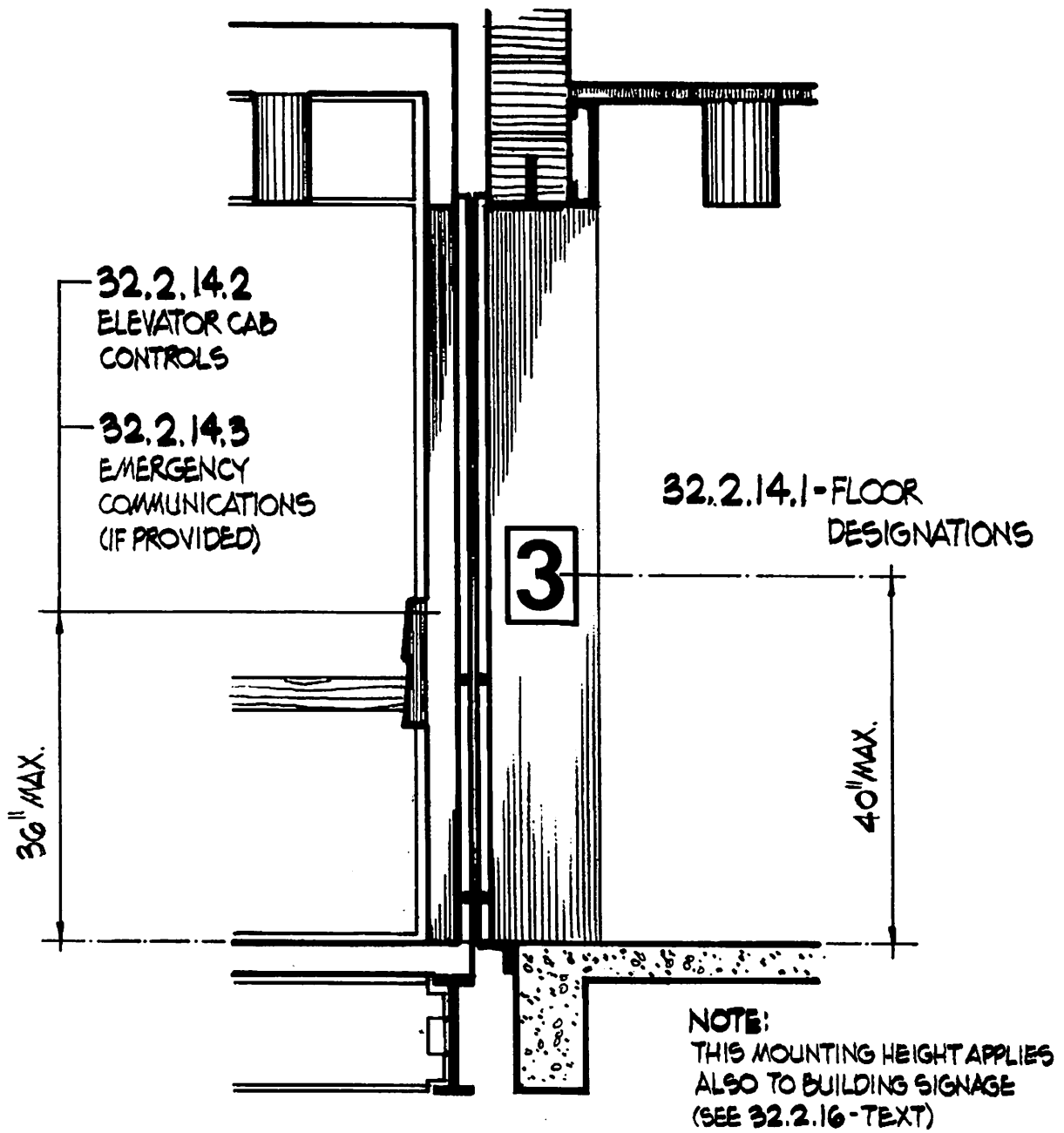


32.2.12.1- IF A 30"Wx48"L CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ORIENTED FOR A PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH IS PROVIDED AND THE SPOUT OUTLET IS AT 30" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR OR GROUND LEVEL, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VERTICAL CLEARANCES OF 13.2 IS NOT REQUIRED.

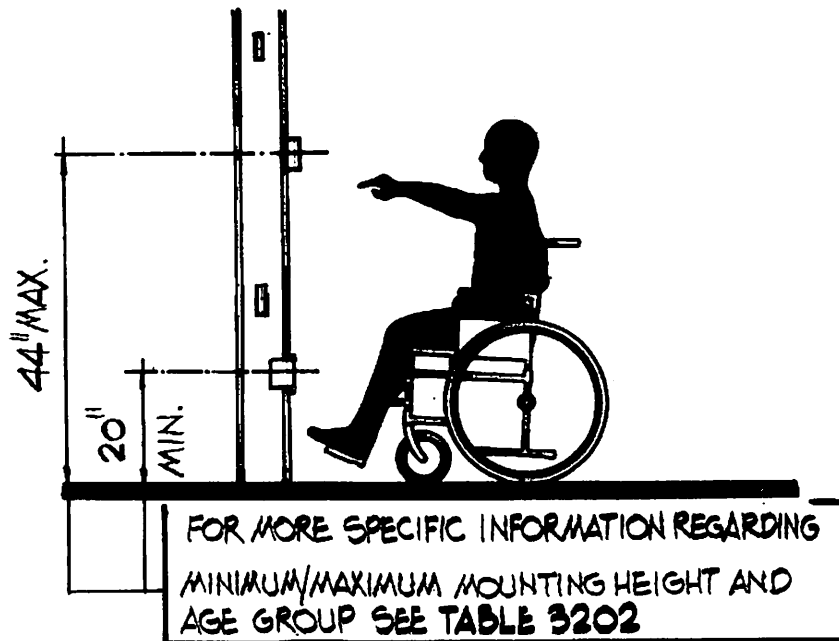
32.2.12- DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATERCOOLERS



32.2.13- TELEPHONES



32.2.14-ELEVATORS



32.2.15- CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS
 (NOTE: THE MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM MOUNTING HEIGHTS AND TABLE 3202 APPLY ALSO TO FIXED OR BUILT-IN STORAGE FACILITIES; SEE 32.2.17.1-TEXT)

THIS TABLE MAY BE USED TO ACCOMMODATE A SPECIFIC AGE GROUP(S)

TABLE 3202-REACH RANGE				
		AGES		
FORWARD OR SIDE REACH		3 AND 4	5 THRU 8	9 THRU 12
High (Maximum)		36 Inches (915 mm)	40 Inches (1015 mm)	44 Inches (1120 mm)
Low (Minimum)		20 Inches (510 mm)	18 Inches (455 mm)	16 Inches (405 mm)

32.2.16 SIGNAGE (ADULT: 18.4.3)

***32.2.16.1** *The horizontal centerline of the sign shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground level.*

Vol. I-C, Pg. 225;
OSEP, Pg. 17

32.2.17 STORAGE (ADULT: 20.3.1.1, AND 20.3.2.1)

***32.2.17.1** *Fixed or built-in storage facilities, (e.g., cabinets, shelves, drawers, etc.) shall be located at 20 inches (510 mm) minimum to 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

ADAAG A4.2.5 And
A4.2.6 1/13/98

***32.2.17.2** *Clothes hanger rods, hooks, or shelves shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) minimum to 44 inches (1120) maximum above the finished floor.*

ADAAG A4.2.5 And
A.4.2.6 1/13/98

32.2.18 SEATING AND TABLES (ADULT: 21.3.1 AND 21.3.2)

32.2.18.1 Knee clearance shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum from the finished floor to the underside of the table, work station, carrel or other fixed facility. The clear floor space shall extend 19 inches (485 mm) maximum under the table, work station, etc.

ADAAG 4.32.5(1) And
4.32.5(2) 1/13/98

32.2.18.2 The finished working surface shall be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum to 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

ADAAG 4.32.5(3)
1/13/98

32.2.18.3 At fixed seating or tables serving children five (5) years of age and younger if a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) minimum clear floor space is provided oriented for a parallel (i.e., side) approach, then compliance with 32.2.18.1 and 32.2.18.2 is not required.

ADAAG 4.32.5,
Exception 1/13/98

32.2.19 RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS (ADULT: 23.4.1, 23.4.2, 23.4.3. and 23.5)

***32.2.19.1** *Food service lines shall have a 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum clear width.*

NC Public Comment, 8/96
AB, Pg. 3

***32.2.19.2** *The top of the tray slide shall be 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

Vol. I-C, Pg. 226; OSEP
Pg. 19; AB, Pg. 24

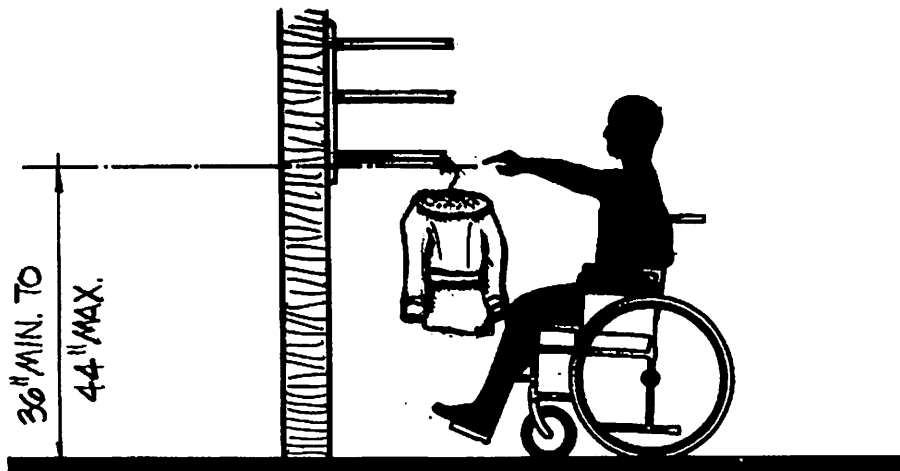
***32.2.19.3** *For a staffed service line, the horizontal side reach from the forward edge of the tray slide shall be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum.*

OSEP, Pg. 19;
ADAAG A4.2.5
And A4.2.6
1/13/98

***32.2.19.3.1** *For a self-service line one item of each type shall be level with the tray slide or, located 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the tray slide (e.g., for a tray slide at 30 inches [760 mm], one item of each type will be located no more than 36 inches [915 mm] above the finished floor).*

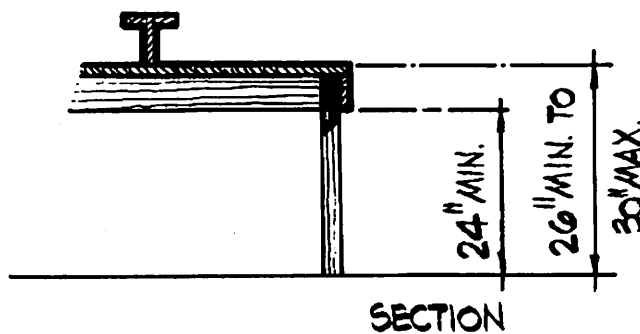
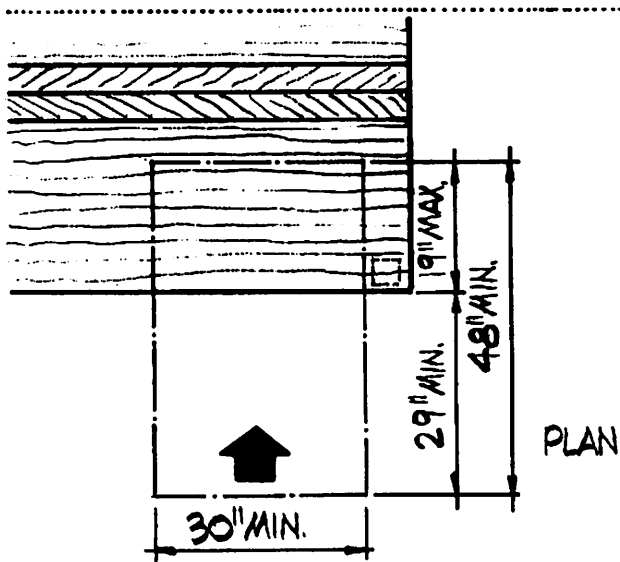
***32.2.19.4** *If tableware, dishware, condiments and beverage dispensers, etc. are provided on a self-service basis, then such items shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor.*

Vol. I-C, Pg. 226;
OSEP, Pg. 20;
ADAAG A4.2.5 And
A4.2.6 1/13/98

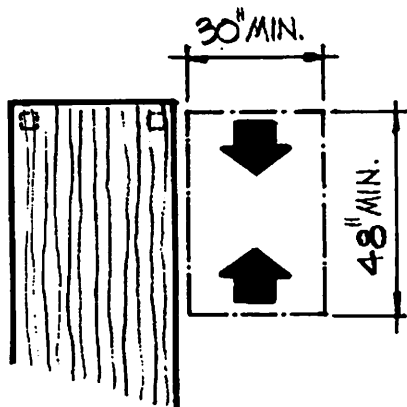


32.2.17.2 - CLOTHES HANGER RODS, HOOKS, OR SHELVES

32.2.17 - STORAGE

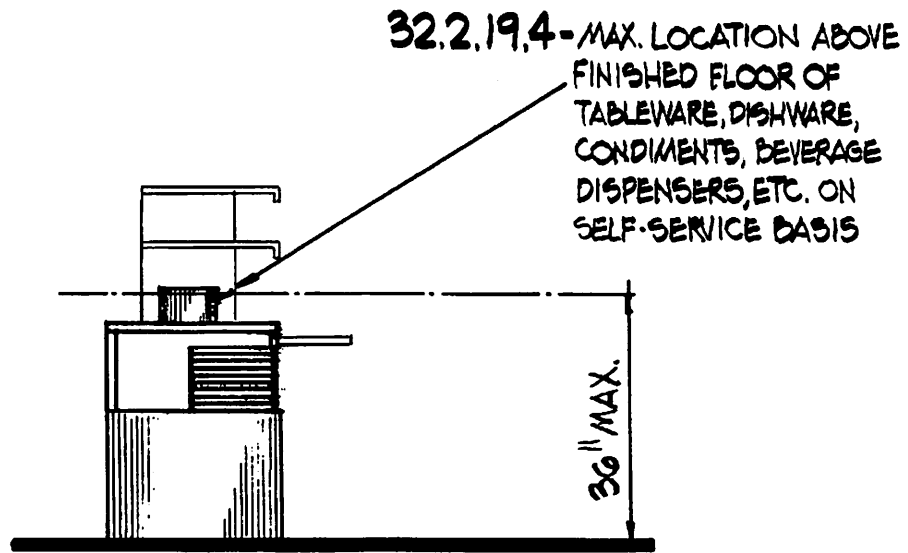
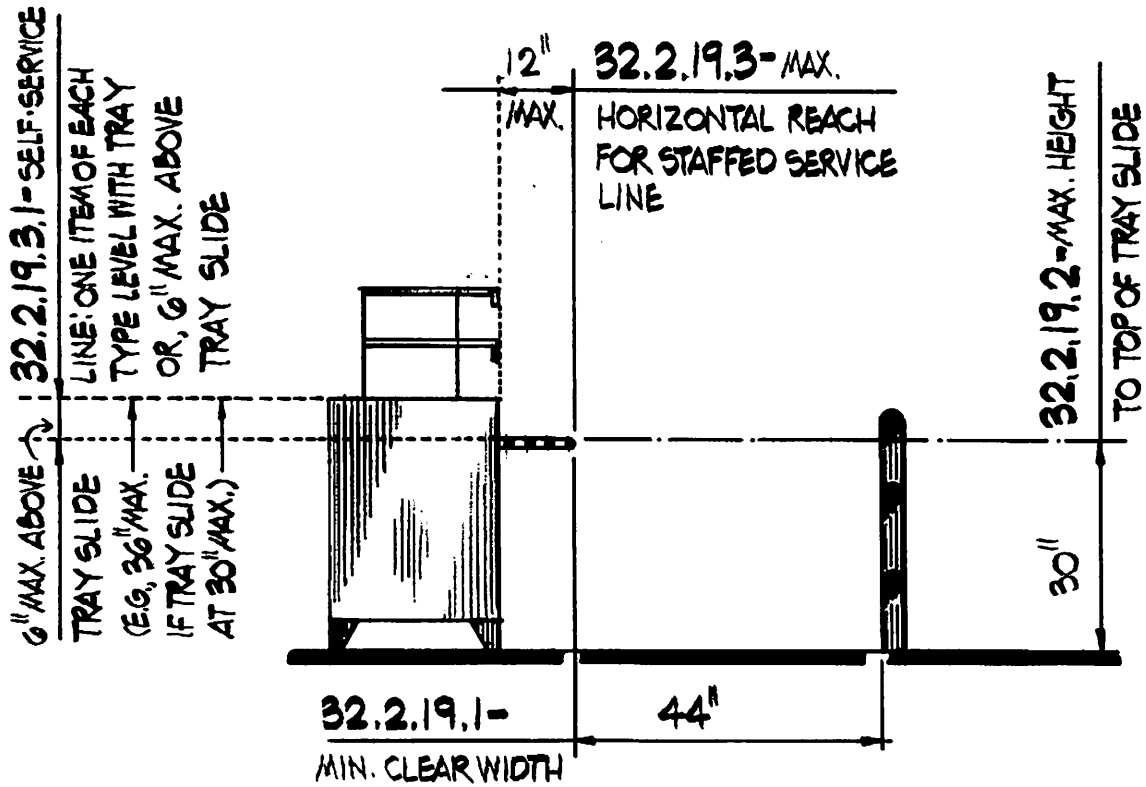


32.2.18.1 AND 32.2.18.2 - SEATING AND TABLES (SERVING AGES 6 TO 12)



32.2.18.3 (CHILDREN 5 YEARS OF AGE AND YOUNGER)
 IF A CLEAR FLOOR SPACE ORIENTED FOR A PARALLEL (I.E., SIDE) APPROACH IS PROVIDED, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH 32.2.18.1 AND 32.2.18.2 IS NOT REQUIRED.

32.2.18 - SEATING AND TABLES



32.2.19-RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS

32.2.20 LIBRARIES (ADULT: 25.3.1.1 and 25.3.1.2)

32.2.20.1 *Card catalogs shall have a 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum clear aisle width.

**NC Public Comment, 8/96;
AB, Pg. 3**

32.2.20.2 *Card catalogs shall have the base 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and the top 44 inches (1120 m) maximum above the finished floor.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 226;
OSEP, Pg. 21;
ADAAG A4.2.5 And
A4.2.6 1/13/98**

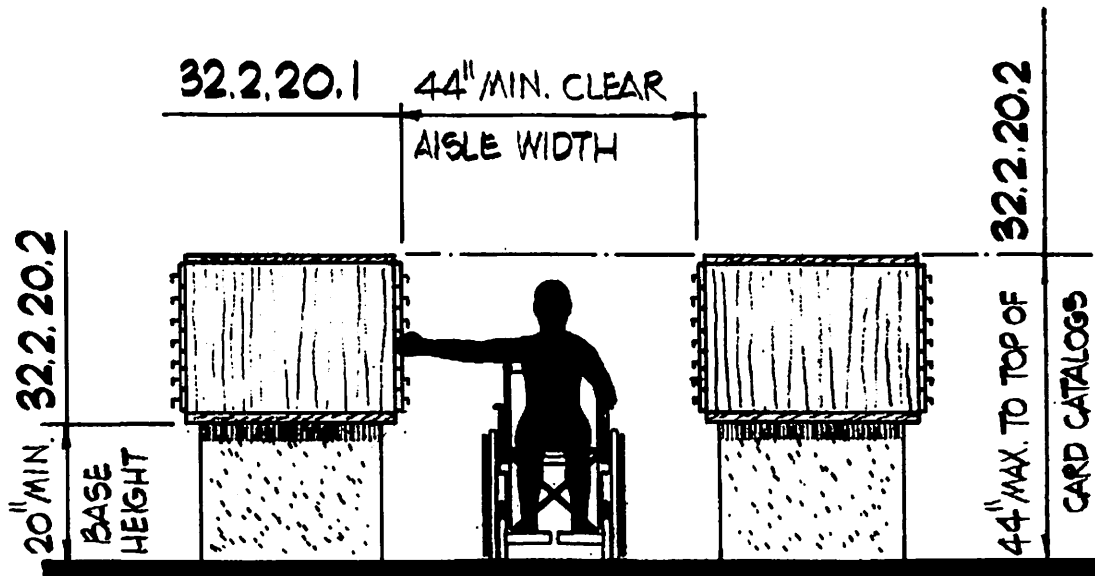
LEGEND FOR MARGIN ANNOTATIONS:

Vol. I-C.....Vol. I-C, Appendix A [Predecessor To This Code]

AB.....Access Board Recommendations (January, 1992)

OSEP.....Office of Special Education Projects, #86-14 (March, 1986)

**ADAAG.....Federal Register January 13, 1998; 36 CFR 1191:
Building Elements Designed For Children's Use**



32.2.20-LIBRARIES

PART III:

APPENDICES FOR ALTERATIONS

***This Part Does Not Require Alterations;
It Simply Provides That When Alterations
Are Undertaken, They Must Be Made In A
Manner That Provides Access.***

(U.S. Department Of Justice: Federal Register, July 26, 1991 At 35580)

***APPLICABILITY OF BUILDING CODE TO ALTERED BUILDINGS
Under Rules And Regulations Of The Building Code Council, The Code
Applies To The Design And Construction Of Buildings That Are Altered.***

(N.C. General Statute 143-138, Case Notes: Olympic Products Co. v. Roof Sys., 88 N.C. App. 315, 363 S.E. 2d 367, cert. denied, 321 N.C. 744, 366 S.E. 2d 862, 863 [1988].)

***Any Alteration To A Place Of Public Accommodation
Or A Commercial Facility, After January 26, 1992,
Shall Be Made To Ensure That, To The Maximum
Extent Feasible, That The Altered Portions Of The Facility
Are Readily Accessible To And Usable By Individuals
With Disabilities, Including Individuals Who Use
Wheelchairs.***

(U.S. Department Of Justice, §36.402[a][1])

***Each Facility Or Part Of A Facility Altered By, On Behalf
Of, Or For The Use Of A Public Entity In A Manner That
Affects Or Could Affect The Usability Of The Facility Or
Part Of The Facility Shall, To The Maximum Extent Feasible,
Be Altered In Such A Manner That The Altered Portion
Of The Facility Is Readily Accessible To And Usable
By Individuals With Disabilities, If The Alteration Was
Commenced After January 26, 1992.***

(U.S. Department Of Justice, §35.151[b])

CHAPTER 33
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

33.1 SCOPE

33.1.1 Alterations to buildings and facilities to which 1.2 applies shall be made to ensure that, to the Maximum Extent Feasible (see 34.1.1), the altered parts are accessible to, and usable by, persons with disabilities including individuals who use wheelchairs. **USDoJ**
36.402(a)(1)

33.1.2 No alteration shall be undertaken which decreases or has the effect of decreasing access to, or usability of, a building or facility below the requirements for new construction at the time of alteration. **ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(a)**

33.1.3 Except for alterations to the Primary Functional Areas within a specific facility type (see 33.1.3.2), alterations of elements, spaces, or common areas shall comply with the requirements of Part II: New Construction. If compliance with Part II is Technically Infeasible (see 34.1.2), then access shall be provided by compliance with the corresponding requirements of Part III: Alterations. **From ADAAG**
4.1.6(1)(b)

33.1.3.1 Alterations to existing elements, spaces, and common areas are not required to be on an accessible route except when required to be so located by Path of Travel requirements (see 34.2). **ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(b)**

(E.G.: In new construction, an accessible drinking fountain must be located on an accessible route. In an existing building, if only a drinking fountain is replaced, then that fixture is required to be accessible but is not required to be located on an accessible route since a drinking fountain is not an Area of Primary Function. However, if a second floor Area of Primary Function is altered, then that drinking fountain is required to be located on the Path of Travel to that altered Area.) **FR 7/26/91 At**
35427

33.1.3.2 Alterations to the Primary Functional Area of a specific facility type shall comply with the applicable requirements of Part III, Chapters 42 through 45, 47 through 49, and 50.2. **Derived From**
FR 7/26/91 At
35427

(E.G.: Compare 28.2.1 and 47.2 [Medical Care Facilities: Number of Accessible Patient Rooms]; or, 29.4.1 and 48.1.1.1 [Transient Lodging: Number of Accessible Guest Rooms].)

(NOTE: There are three principles to be observed in conjunction with 33.1.3, 33.1.3.1 and 33.1.3.2: [1] Alterations shall generally comply with Part II, therefore the Technically Infeasible exception is restricted to an analysis of each alteration; [2] minor alterations do not require extensive retrofitting of buildings; and [3] if Part III indicates a scoping requirement that differs from that required by Part II, then the Part III requirement may be used. The following examples illustrate the above: **FR 7/26/91:**
#1 At 35426;
#2 At 35426;
#3 Derived
From FR
7/26/91 At
35427

EXAMPLE 1 [TECHNICAL INFEASIBILITY]: Of the three boys' and three girls' toilets in a school, a firewall and two bearing walls enclose one of the girls' toilets. The Technically Infeasible exception is applicable only to that toilet room, not all six.

EXAMPLE 2 [MINOR ALTERATIONS]: If door operating hardware is replaced, then only that hardware set must comply with 7.9. Replacing door operating hardware imposes no other accessibility requirements for that door.

EXAMPLE 3 [PART III SCOPE VS. PART II]: A school is altered with no increase in building area or school population. Although Chapter 6 requires accessible multiple entrances and Means of Egress, Chapter 38 only requires a minimum of one accessible entrance.)

33.1.4 If alterations of single elements, when considered together, amount to an alteration of a room or space in a building or facility, then the entire space shall be made accessible.

ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(c)

(E.G.: If waterclosets, toilet stalls, lavatories, and mirrors are all replaced, then those replacements amount to an alteration of the entire toilet room and compliance with Chapter 11 shall be required.)

FR 7/26/91 At
35427

33.1.5 No alteration of an existing element, space, or area shall impose a requirement for accessibility that would be greater than that which would be required for new construction.

ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(d)

(E.G.: A 50-room motel is altered in two phases: in the first phase two guest rooms are made accessible to persons with mobility impairments and two guest rooms are made accessible to persons with hearing impairments. In the second phase accessible rooms serving persons with mobility and hearing impairments are not required since to do so will exceed the minimum requirements of 29.4.1 and 29.5.1.)

33.1.6 For alterations to buildings and facilities on a historic register(s), see Chapter 51.

Cross-Reference

33.2 EXISTING ACCESSIBILITY

***33.2.1** *If existing accessible elements, spaces, or common areas are not affected by alterations to a building or facility, then they shall be made to comply only with those requirements of this Code that are necessary to augment the existing accessibility and usability.*

Accounts For
Chapter 11X And
Vol. I-C, Which
Pre-Date ADAAG

(NOTE: If the scope of the alteration[s] does not encompass the existing accessibility mandated by previous editions of this Code, then the owner need not be penalized with the undue financial burden of demolishing, rebuilding, and having to pay twice for that accessible element, space, or common area. Since alterations can vary widely in the scope of work, each must be examined on a case-by-case basis. The following examples illustrate the intent of this Paragraph:

EXAMPLE 1: An existing accessible two-story office building is to be altered but the scope of work does not include the existing toilet rooms. The building has audible alarm indicating appliances; the toilet rooms are identified by signs having raised letters, numbers, and color contrast; and each accessible stall is 42 inches wide by 72 inches long [1067 mm by 1830 mm]. Since the toilet rooms are not being altered, the following must occur to augment the existing accessibility and life safety systems:

- [1] Audible alarm indicating appliances must be investigated for compliance with 17.2;
- [2] Visual alarm indicating appliances shall be installed where indicated by 17.1.2 and shall comply with 17.3; and
- [3] Toilet room identification signage must have Braille added, or new signs complying with Chapter 18 must be installed.

EXAMPLE 2: As a preliminary to the alteration of the two-story building in Example 1, pre-construction demolition leaves only the structural frame in place. Since every feature to be constructed represents new construction, all facilities required to be accessible shall comply solely with Part II.)

33.3 MAINTENANCE AND SAFETY

33.3.1 Maintenance of a building or facility structural and/or service systems (plumbing, mechanical [HVAC], electrical, sprinklers, alarms, etc.) shall not be considered alterations unless such maintenance involve the alteration of any elements or spaces required to be accessible.

Vol. I-A, 104.6;
 USDoJ 36.402(b)(1);
 ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(i)

33.3.2 Hazardous material removal, the addition of a sprinkler system, or, cosmetic changes (e.g., painting, wallpapering, replacement of ceiling tiles, etc.) shall not be considered alterations unless such work necessitates alteration to spaces, areas, rooms, or elements required to be accessible.

USDoJ 36.402(b)(1);
 ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(i)

33.3.3 If alterations are required by other volumes of the Code to correct unsafe or hazardous conditions, or to correct any defect, and if the correction is an alteration of any space, area, room, or element required to be accessible, then each such correction shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code.

Vol. I-A, 205;
 USDoJ:
 36.402(b)(1),
 36.402(b)(2);
 ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(b)

(E.G.: If an entire stair must be replaced to correct an unsafe condition, then the replacement stair shall comply with Chapter 8. Alternatively, if an individual stair component such as one tread, or two handrail supports, must be replaced, then that does not require that the entire stair be made accessible.)

33.4 REMOVAL OF BARRIERS

33.4.1 Removal of Barriers, including communication barriers that are structural in nature, is required by the Americans with Disabilities Act (P.L. 101-336) and is the responsibility of property owners and/or their tenants in order to be in compliance with the terms and obligations of that Federal civil rights law. Initiating Barrier Removal is not within the jurisdiction of the Department of Insurance nor any State or local Code Enforcement Official.

(NOTE: This Paragraph and Appendix R are provided in this Code for public information purposes only.)

33.4.2 If Removal of Barriers is initiated by the building owner or tenant, then the Code Enforcement Official shall ensure that the construction complies with the applicable requirements of this Code.

**Defines C.E.O.
Responsibility**

**CHAPTER 34
DEFINITIONS,
AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION AND PATH OF TRAVEL,
AND DISPROPORTIONALITY**

34.1 DEFINITIONS

34.1.1 MAXIMUM EXTENT FEASIBLE

Applies to the occasional case where the nature of an existing facility makes it virtually impossible to comply fully with the applicable requirements of this Code through a planned alteration. In these circumstances, any altered features of the facility that can be made accessible shall be made accessible. If providing accessibility in compliance with this Code to individuals with certain disabilities (e.g., those who use wheelchairs) would not be feasible, then the facility shall be made accessible to persons with other types of disabilities (e.g.: persons using crutches; persons with visual impairments; persons with hearing impairments; etc.).

**USDoJ
36.402(c)**

34.1.2 TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE (OR, TECHNICAL INFEASIBILITY)

***34.1.2.1** An alteration that has little likelihood of being accomplished due to existing structural conditions that would require removing or altering a load bearing member which is an essential part of the structural frame. (NOTE: "...[S]tructural frame" is defined *as footings, piers, columns, girders, trusses, beams, wind bracing, bearing walls, and other members which are essential to the stability of the building as a whole. This definition does not include non-bearing wood or metal stud partitions nor wood or metal joists used in light-frame floor construction.*)

**ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(j)**

ADAAG 3.5

**FR 7/26/91 At
35428**

34.1.2.2 Existing physical or site constraints that prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features which comply with the requirements of Part II: New Construction.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(j)**

(NOTE: "Existing physical or site constraints..." can result from the slope of an existing site or the existence of a Right-of-Way which prevents construction of a ramp in front of a building.)

**FR 7/26/91 At
35428**

34.1.2.3 The inability to accommodate an accessibility requirement due to Technical Infeasibility shall not be interpreted to mean that the alteration may then forego all other accessibility requirements.

**Derived From
FR 7/26/91 At
35581**

34.1.2.4 Adding accessibility features that may increase alteration costs shall not be interpreted to mean that compliance with this Code is Technically Infeasible. Cost is not a consideration. (NOTE: The concept of feasibility only reaches the question of whether it is possible to make the alteration accessible in compliance with this Code. Costs are to be considered only with respect to an alteration of an Area of Primary Function and the Path of Travel to that altered Area.)

**Title III Technical
Assistance Manual
III-6.1000**

**FR 7/26/91 At
35581**

EXAMPLE 1: Toilet room walls are load-bearing masonry. A determination can then be made that it is Technically Infeasible to enlarge these toilet rooms in order to accommodate the clear floor area required by 11.3.1.

EXAMPLE 2: The toilet room walls in Example 1 are non-bearing metal stud partitions. Although providing a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) clear floor area may result in an increase in the cost of the alteration, the Technically Infeasible exception is not applicable and the toilet rooms shall be increased in size to comply with 11.3.1.

34.2 PATH OF TRAVEL AND DISPROPORTIONALITY

**USDoJ Via
Telephone-3/28/94**

34.2.1 This Section shall be applicable to buildings and facilities covered by 1.2.

34.2.2 ALTERATION TO AREAS OF PRIMARY FUNCTION INCLUDING PATH OF TRAVEL

34.2.2.1 Alterations to an Area of Primary Function (see 2.2.29) shall be made to ensure that, to the Maximum Extent Feasible, the Path of Travel to that altered Area is also made accessible unless the cost and scope of such Path of Travel alterations is Disproportionate (see 34.2.5) to the cost of the alteration to the Area of Primary Function.

USDoJ 36.403(a)

34.2.2.1.1 As a supplement to 2.2.29, an Area of Primary Function can be (the examples given below are illustrative not exhaustive):

- (1) The customer services lobby of a bank;
- (2) The dining area of a cafeteria;
- (3) Meeting rooms in a conference center;
- (4) Offices and other work areas where principal activities are carried out;
- (5) Merchandise display areas or employee work areas in a department store; or
- (6) A factory assembly line.

**USDoJ 36.403(b)
36.403(c)(1)**

34.2.2.1.2 An Area of Primary Function does not include mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, boiler rooms, supply storage rooms, employee lounges or locker rooms, janitor closets, entrances, corridors, or toilets. (**NOTE:** There may be exceptions to the general rule of Area of Primary Function: e.g., at rest areas located along many North Carolina highways the toilet rooms themselves are the reason the building exists; therefore, for this building type, the toilets are the Area of Primary Function.)

USDoJ 36.403(b)

**FR 7/26/91 At
35582;**

34.2.2.1.3 Alterations to windows, door operating hardware, controls (fire alarms, thermostats, etc.) electrical outlets, and signage shall not be interpreted to be alterations that affect access to, or usability of, an Area of Primary Function.

USDoJ 36.403(c)(2)

34.2.3 An accessible Path of Travel shall include a continuous, unobstructed way of pedestrian passage by means of which the altered Area of Primary Function can be approached, entered, and exited and which connects that altered Area with an exterior approach, an entrance to the building or facility, and other parts of the building or facility. (NOTE: An accessible Path of Travel may consist of walks and sidewalks; parking spaces and access aisles; curb cuts/curb ramps, and other exterior and/or interior pedestrian ramps; clear floor path through lobbies, corridors, rooms, and other improved areas; elevators and lifts; or any combination of these elements.)

**ADAAG 4.1.6(2);
USDoJ:
36.403(e)(1),
36.403(e)(2),
36.403(e)(3)**

34.2.3.1 For the purposes of this Code, Path of Travel shall also include the toilet rooms, public telephones [if any], and drinking fountains-watercoolers [if any] serving the altered Area of Primary Function.

USDoJ 36.403(e)(3)

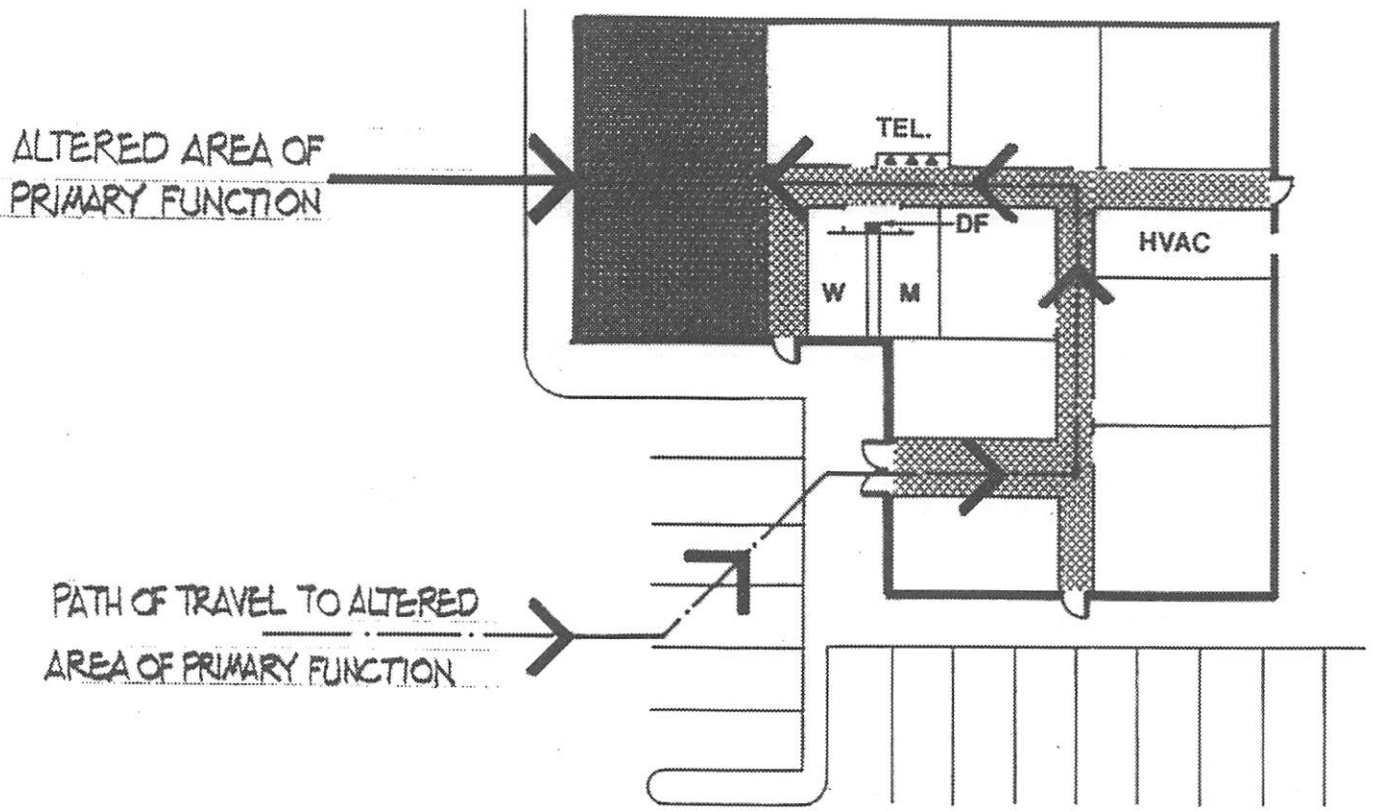
34.2.4 LANDLORD/TENANT RESPONSIBILITIES

34.2.4.1 If a tenant is making alterations to its premises under the terms of a lease that grant that tenant the authority to do so (even if such alterations would then initiate Path of Travel requirements) and the landlord is not making alterations to those parts of the building or facility that are under landlord control, then the alterations by the tenant to its own premises do not place a Path of Travel obligation upon the landlord in areas of the building or facility under the landlord's authority that are not otherwise being altered.

**USDoJ
36.403(d)**

(NOTE: If the terms of a lease place all responsibility for a tenant space in the hands of the landlord, then the landlord may be obligated [depending on the scope of work] to comply with Path of Travel requirements since the altered tenant space is the Area of Primary Function for that owner.)

**USDoJ Via
Telephone
(3/28/94)**



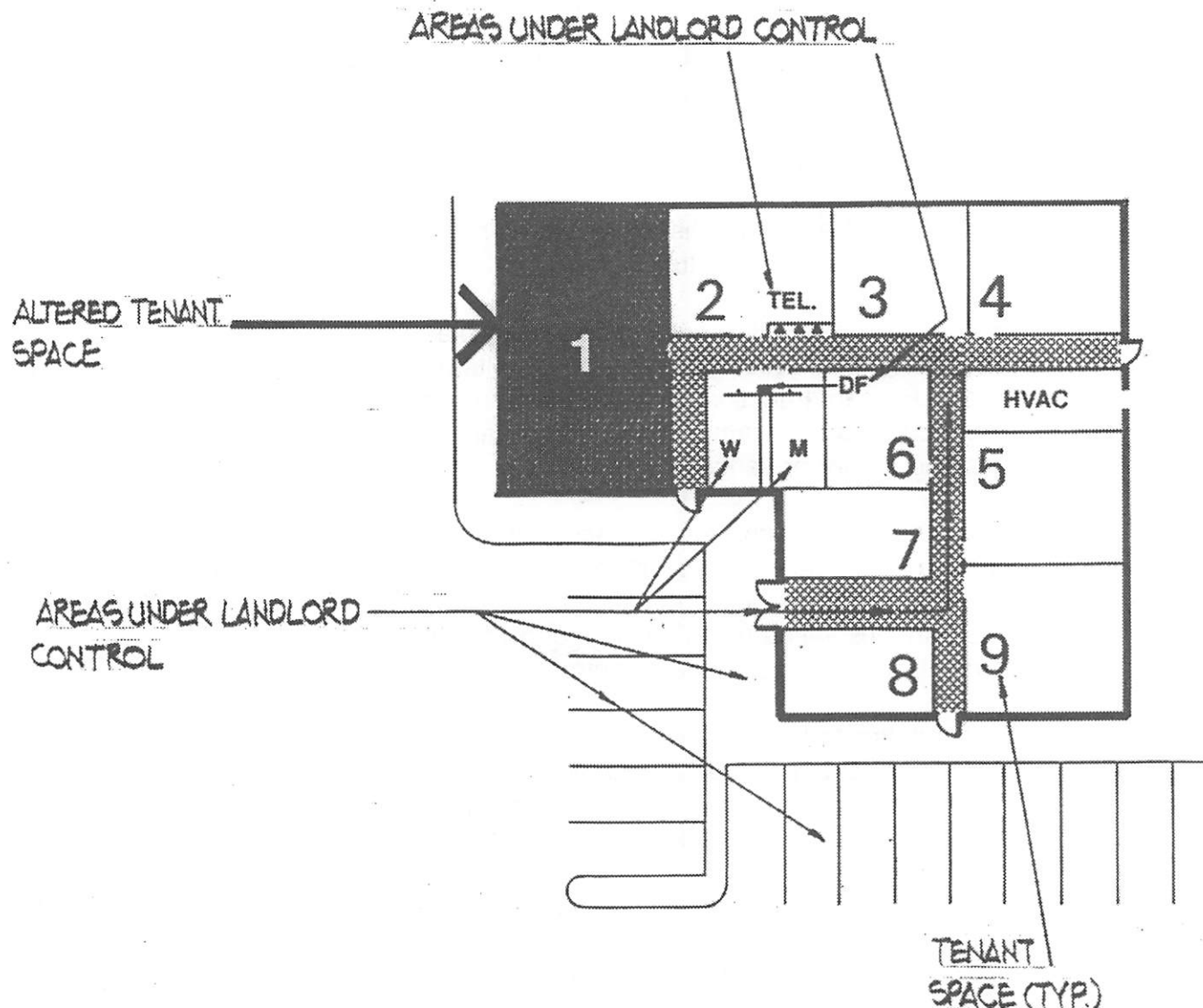
34.2.3

AN ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* SHALL INCLUDE A CONTINUOUS, UNOBSTRUCTED WAY OF PEDESTRIAN PASSAGE BY MEANS OF WHICH THE ALTERED *AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION* CAN BE APPROACHED, ENTERED, AND EXITED AND WHICH CONNECTS THAT ALTERED *AREA* WITH AN EXTERIOR APPROACH, AN ENTRANCE TO THE BUILDING OR FACILITY, AND OTHER PARTS OF THE BUILDING OR FACILITY.

(NOTE: AN ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* MAY CONSIST OF WALKS AND SIDEWALKS; PARKING SPACES AND ACCESS AISLES; CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS, AND OTHER EXTERIOR AND/OR INTERIOR PEDESTRIAN RAMPS; CLEAR FLOOR PATH THROUGH LOBBIES, CORRIDORS, ROOMS, AND OTHER IMPROVED AREAS; ELEVATORS AND LIFTS; OR ANY COMBINATION OF THESE ELEMENTS.)

34.2.3.1

FOR THE PURPOSES OF THIS CODE, *PATH OF TRAVEL* SHALL ALSO INCLUDE THE TOILET ROOMS, PUBLIC TELEPHONES [IF ANY], AND DRINKING FOUNTAINS-WATERCOOLERS [IF ANY] SERVING THE ALTERED *AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION*.



34.2.4 LANDLORD/TENANT RESPONSIBILITIES

34.2.4.1 IF A TENANT IS MAKING ALTERATIONS TO ITS PREMISES UNDER THE TERMS OF A LEASE THAT GRANT THAT TENANT THE AUTHORITY TO DO SO (EVEN IF SUCH ALTERATIONS WOULD THEN INITIATE *PATH OF TRAVEL* REQUIREMENTS) AND THE LANDLORD IS NOT MAKING ALTERATIONS TO THOSE PARTS OF THE BUILDING OR FACILITY THAT ARE UNDER LANDLORD CONTROL, THEN THE ALTERATIONS BY THE TENANT TO ITS OWN PREMISES DO NOT PLACE A *PATH OF TRAVEL* OBLIGATION UPON THE LANDLORD IN AREAS OF THE BUILDING OR FACILITY UNDER THE LANDLORD'S AUTHORITY THAT ARE NOT OTHERWISE BEING ALTERED.

(NOTE: IF THE TERMS OF A LEASE PLACE ALL RESPONSIBILITY FOR A TENANT SPACE IN THE HANDS OF THE LANDLORD, THEN THE LANDLORD MAY BE OBLIGATED [DEPENDING ON THE SCOPE OF WORK] TO COMPLY WITH *PATH OF TRAVEL* REQUIREMENTS SINCE THE ALTERED TENANT SPACE IS THE *AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION* FOR THAT OWNER.)

34.2.5 DISPROPORTIONALITY

34.2.5.1 Alterations made to provide an accessible Path of Travel to the altered Area will be deemed Disproportionate to the overall alteration when the cost exceeds twenty percent (20%) of the cost of the alteration to the Area of Primary Function.

USDoJ 36.403(f)(1)

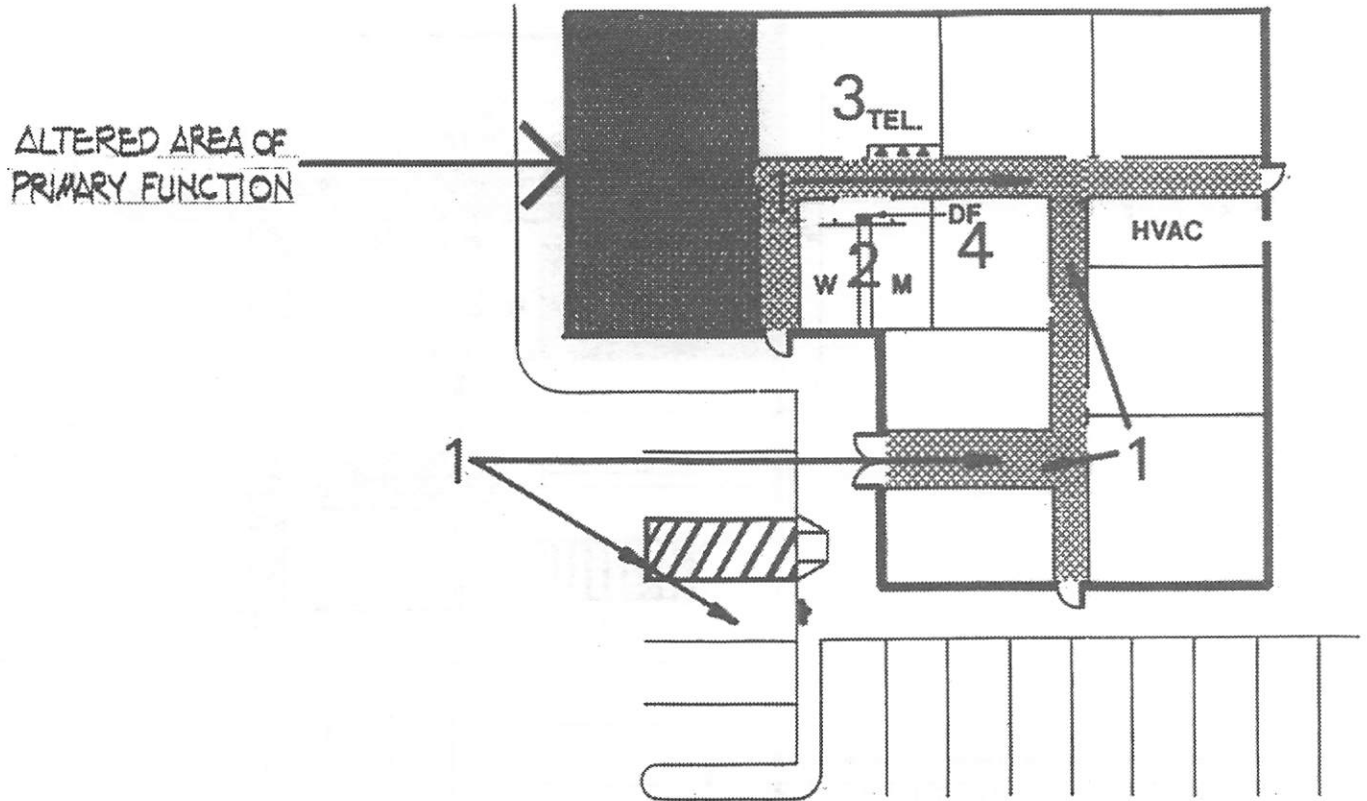
34.2.5.2 Costs that may be counted as expenditures required to provide an accessible Path of Travel may include:

- * (1) Costs associated with providing an accessible entrance and an accessible route to the altered Area of Primary Function (e.g., ***accessible parking***, a curb cut or a curb ramp, installation of ramp, widening a door or series of doors); USDoJ 36.403(f)(2)(i)

- (2) Costs associated with providing accessible toilet rooms (or costs associated with providing an accessible unisex toilet room) such as installing grab bars, insulating pipes, enlarging toilet stalls, or installing accessible faucet controls; USDoJ 36.403(f)(2)(ii)

- (3) Costs associated with providing accessible telephones (e.g., relocating telephones at accessible heights, installing volume control handsets, or installing a text telephone [TDD]); USDoJ 36.403(f)(2)(iii)

- * (4) Costs associated with relocating an inaccessible drinking fountain/watercooler; or, ***replacing an inaccessible fountain/cooler with a new, accessible fixture.*** USDoJ 36.403(f)(2)(iv)

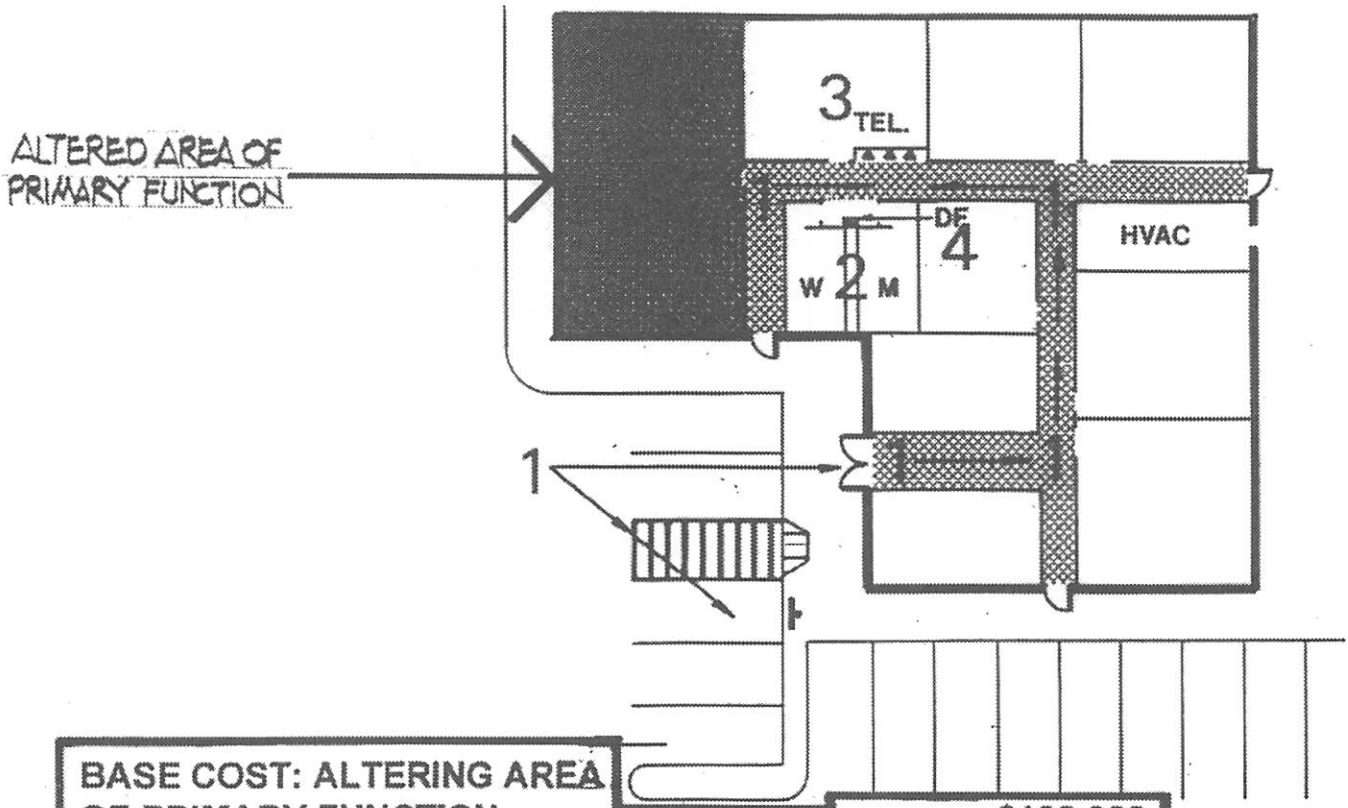


34.2.5.1 ALTERATIONS MADE TO PROVIDE AN ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* TO THE ALTERED *AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION* WILL BE DEEMED *DISPROPORTIONATE* TO THE OVERALL ALTERATION WHEN THE COST EXCEEDS *TWENTY PERCENT (20%)* OF THE COST OF THE ALTERATION TO THE *AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION*.

34.2.5.2 COST THAT MAY BE COUNTED AS EXPENDITURES REQUIRED TO PROVIDE AN ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* MAY INCLUDE (THE FOLLOWING IS ABBREVIATED TO FIT THIS ILLUSTRATION; REFER TO THE TEXT FOR THE FULL EXPLANATION):

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) COST ASSOCIATED WITH AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE AND AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE; | 3) COSTS ASSOCIATED WITH ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES; |
| 2) COSTS ASSOCIATED WITH ACCESSIBLE TOILET ROOMS; | 4) COSTS ASSOCIATED WITH ACCESSIBLE DRINKING FOUNTAIN/WATERCOOLER |

34.2.5 DISPROPORTIONALITY (PART 1)



BASE COST: ALTERING AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION.....\$100,000

PATH OF TRAVEL EXPENDITURES:

1) COST OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE AND ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO ALTERED AREA.....	\$4,500
2) COST FOR MAKING EXISTING TOILET ROOMS ACCESSIBLE.....	\$9,800
3) COST FOR MAKING EXISTING TELEPHONES ACCESSIBLE.....	\$1,500
4) COST FOR PROVIDING ACCESSIBLE WATERCOOLER.....	\$2,500
TOTAL.....	\$18,300

SINCE THE COST OF PROVIDING AN ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* DOES NOT EXCEED 20% ($\$18,300/\$100,000 = 18.3\%$) DISPROPORTIONALITY IS NOT APPLICABLE; THEREFORE, THE ENTIRE *PATH OF TRAVEL* IS REQUIRED TO BE MADE ACCESSIBLE.

(NOTE: FOR DISPROPORTIONATE *PATH OF TRAVEL* COSTS SEE 34.2.6.)

34.2.5 DISPROPORTIONALITY (PART 2)

34.2.6 PROVIDING ACCESSIBLE FEATURES IN THE EVENT OF DISPROPORTIONALITY

34.2.6.1 If the cost of providing a fully accessible Path of Travel is Disproportionate to the alteration cost of the Area of Primary Function, then the Path of Travel shall be made accessible to the extent that it can be made accessible without incurring Disproportionate costs.

USDoJ 36.403(g)(1)

***34.2.6.2** *If providing a fully accessible Path of Travel (i.e., all elements listed in 34.2.5.2) is determined to be Disproportionate, then priority shall* be given to those elements that will provide the greatest access in the following order (elements are listed in descending order of priority):

- (1) An accessible entrance (e.g., **accessible parking, a curb cut or curb ramp**, installation of a ramp, widening a door or series of doors);
- (2) An accessible route leading to the altered Area of Primary Function;
- (3) A minimum of one accessible toilet room for each sex or an accessible unisex toilet room;
- (4) Accessible telephones;
- (5) Accessible drinking fountains/watercoolers; and
- (6) Providing additional accessible elements (e.g., storage, alarm indicating appliances, controls and operating mechanisms, signage, etc.).

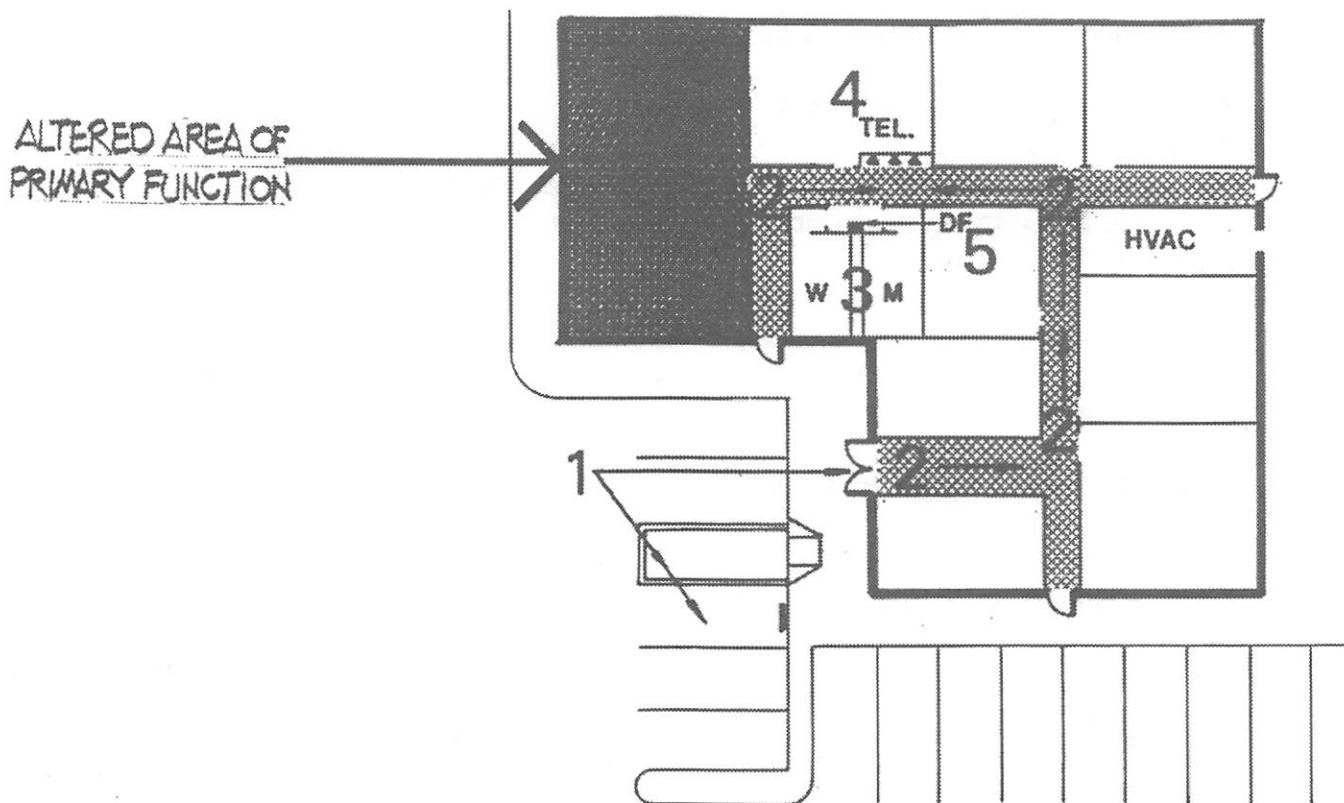
USDoJ 36.403(g)(2)(i)-
Through
36.403(g)(2)(vi)

34.2.6.3 The obligation to provide an accessible Path of Travel may not be evaded by performing a series of small alterations to the Area of Primary Function served by a single Path of Travel if those alterations could have been performed as a single undertaking.

USDoJ 36.403(h)(1)

34.2.6.4 If an Area of Primary Function is altered without providing an accessible Path of Travel to that Area, and subsequent alterations of that first Area, or a different Area of Primary Function on the same Path of Travel, are undertaken within three (3) years of the original alteration then the total cost of alterations to the Areas of Primary Function on that Path of Travel during the preceding three (3) year period shall be considered in determining whether the cost of providing an accessible Path of Travel is Disproportionate.

USDoJ 36.403(h)(2)(i)

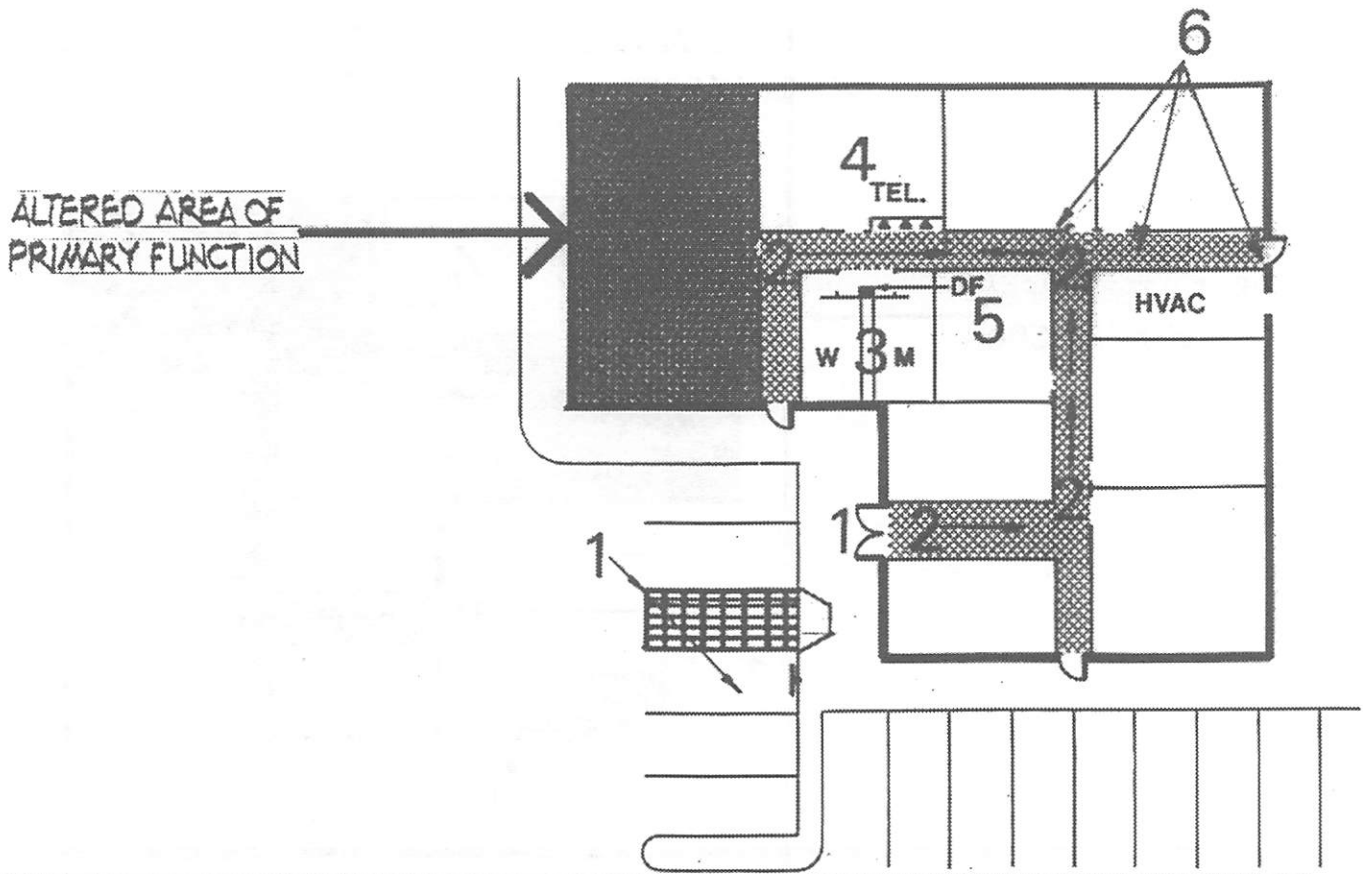


34.2.6.1 IF THE COST OF PROVIDING A FULLY ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* IS DISPROPORTIONATE TO THE ALTERATION COST OF THE *AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION*, THEN THE *PATH OF TRAVEL* SHALL BE MADE ACCESSIBLE TO THE EXTENT THAT IT CAN BE MADE ACCESSIBLE WITHOUT INCURRING DISPROPORTIONATE COSTS.

34.2.6.2 IF PROVIDING A FULLY ACCESSIBLE *PATH OF TRAVEL* (I.E., ALL ELEMENTS LISTED IN 34.2.5.2) IS DETERMINED TO BE DISPROPORTIONATE, THEN PRIORITY SHALL BE GIVEN TO THOSE ELEMENTS THAT WILL PROVIDE THE GREATEST ACCESS IN THE FOLLOWING ORDER (ELEMENTS ARE LISTED IN DESCENDING ORDER OF PRIORITY):

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1) AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE;</p> <p>2) AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE LEADING TO THE ALTERED AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION;</p> <p>3) A MINIMUM OF ONE TOILET ROOM FOR EACH SEX OR AN ACCESSIBLE UNISEX TOILET ROOM;</p> | <p>4) ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES</p> <p>5) ACCESSIBLE DRINKING FOUNTAINS/WATERCOOLERS;</p> <p>6*) PROVIDING ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE ELEMENTS (E.G., STORAGE, ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES, ETC.) [NOT SHOWN ON DRAWING]</p> |
|---|---|

34.2.6 PROVIDING ACCESSIBLE FEATURES IN THE EVENT OF DISPROPORTIONALITY (PART 1)



BASE COST: ALTERING AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION.....\$100,000

POINT BEYOND WHICH DISPROPORTIONALITY MAY BE CLAIMED: GREATER THAN 20% OF \$100,000 (I.E., MORE THAN \$20,000)

PATH OF TRAVEL EXPENDITURES:

- 1) COST OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE.....\$6,500
- 2) COST OF ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO ALTERED AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION...\$2,500
- 3) COST OF MAKING EXISTING-TOILET ROOMS ACCESSIBLE.....\$10,500

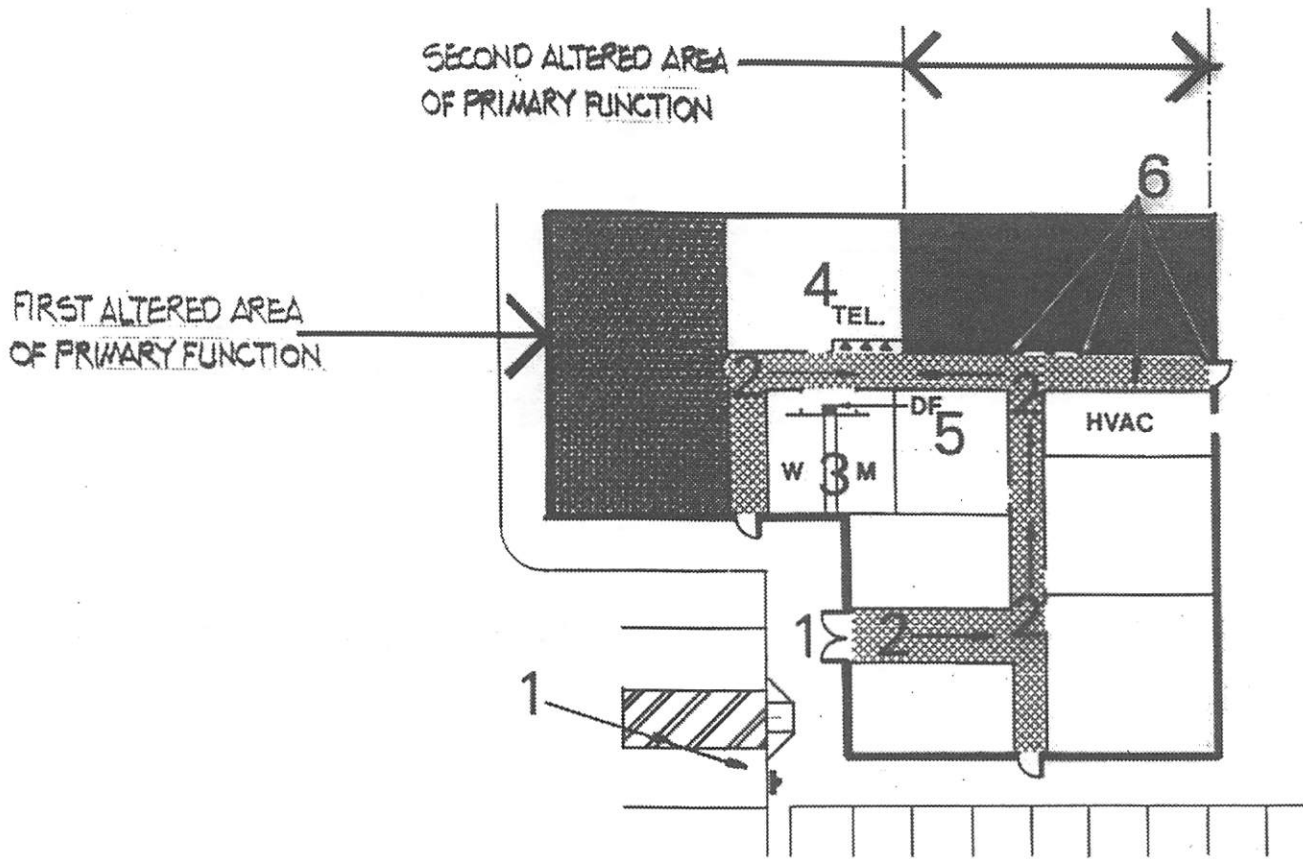
POINT BEYOND WHICH DISPROPORTIONATE COSTS INCURRED

SUBTOTAL (ITEMS 1, 2, 3).....\$19,500 (19.5%)



- 4) COST OF ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES.....\$2,750 (22.25%)
- 5) COST OF ACCESSIBLE WATERCOOLER.....\$2,500 (24.75%)
- 6) COST OF VISUAL ALARMS AND SIGNAGE...\$8,550 (33.3%)
- SUBTOTAL (ITEMS 4, 5, 6).....\$13,800**
- GRAND TOTAL (ITEMS 1 THRU 6).....\$33,300 (33.3%)**

34.2.6 PROVIDING ACCESSIBLE FEATURES IN THE EVENT OF DISPROPORTIONALITY (PART 2)



34.2.6.4 IF AN AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION IS ALTERED WITHOUT PROVIDING AN ACCESSIBLE PATH OF TRAVEL TO THAT AREA, AND SUBSEQUENT ALTERATIONS OF THAT FIRST AREA, OR A DIFFERENT AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION ON THE SAME PATH OF TRAVEL, ARE UNDERTAKEN WITHIN THREE (3) YEARS OF THE ORIGINAL ALTERATION, THEN THE TOTAL COST OF ALTERATIONS TO THE AREAS OF PRIMARY FUNCTION ON THAT PATH OF TRAVEL DURING THE PRECEDING THREE (3) YEAR PERIOD SHALL BE CONSIDERED IN DETERMINING WHETHER THE COST OF PROVIDING AND ACCESSIBLE PATH OF TRAVEL IS DISPROPORTIONATE.

1) BASE COST: FIRST AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION.....	\$100,000
2) COST OF ALTERING SECOND AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION.....	\$68,000
TOTAL ALTERATION COSTS WITHIN THREE YEAR PERIOD.....	<u>\$168,000</u>

MONETARY AMOUNT BEYOND WHICH DISPROPORTIONALITY MAY BE CLAIMED: 20% OF \$168,000 = \$33,600

PATH OF TRAVEL EXPENDITURES:

1) COST OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE.....	\$6,500	4) COST OF ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES.....	\$2,750
2) COST OF ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO ALTERED AREAS OF PRIMARY FUNCTION.....	\$2,500	5) COST OF ACCESSIBLE WATERCOOLER.....	\$2,500
3) COST OF MAKING EXISTING TOILET ROOMS ACCESSIBLE.....	\$10,500	6) COST OF VISUAL ALARMS AND SIGNAGE.....	\$8,550
SUBTOTAL (ITEMS 1, 2, 3).....	\$19,500	SUBTOTAL (ITEMS 4, 5, 6).....	\$13,800
		GRAND TOTAL (ITEMS 1 THRU 6).....	\$33,300
			<i>(19.8% OF \$168,000)</i>

(NOTE: WITH RESPECT TO THE ALTERATION OF THE FIRST AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION, THIS COST WAS THE POINT BEYOND WHICH DISPROPORTIONALITY CAN BE CLAIMED.)

34.2.6 PROVIDING ACCESSIBLE FEATURES IN THE EVENT OF DISPROPORTIONALITY (PART 3)

**CHAPTER 35
SITE ACCESS**

35.1 WIDTH OF AN EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

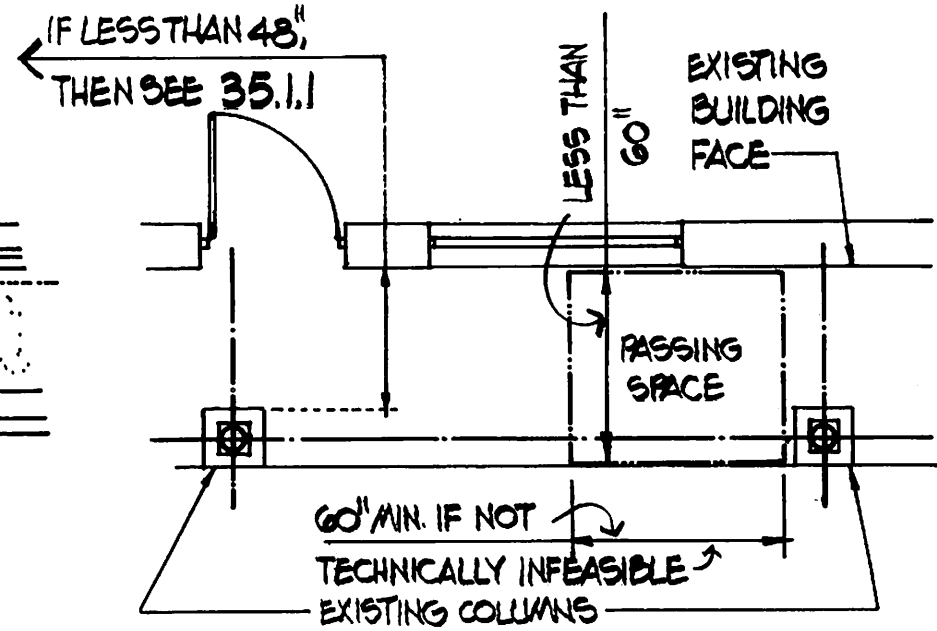
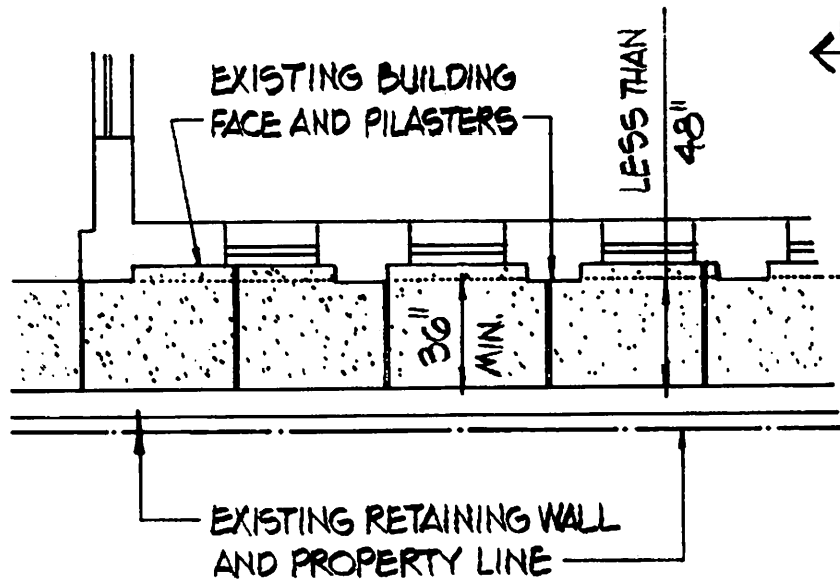
***35.1.1** *If providing a 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear width is Technically Infeasible, then that clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.*

**ADAAG 4.3.3 = 36" Modifies
Vol. I-C, 3.2(b)(1) = 48"**

35.2 PASSING SPACE

35.2.1 If providing a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm) passing space is Technically Infeasible, then the passing space shall be the maximum size that can be provided.

**Derived From
ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(j)**



35.1.1- IF PROVIDING A 48" MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE, THEN THAT CLEAR WIDTH MAY BE REDUCED TO 36" MINIMUM.

35.2.1- IF PROVIDING A 60" x 60" PASSING SPACE IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE, THEN THE PASSING SPACE SHALL BE THE MAXIMUM SIZE THAT CAN BE PROVIDED.

35.1- WIDTH OF AN EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

35.2- PASSING SPACE

**CHAPTER 36
PARKING LOTS**

36.1 SCOPE

36.1.1 Alterations to parking facilities may consist of resurfacing, restriping, reconfiguration, addition(s), total replacement, etc. Repaving, or restriping that produces a new configuration, shall be considered an alteration.

Derived From
USDoJ 36.402(b)(1)

36.2 MINIMUM NUMBER OF SPACES

36.2.1 INACCESSIBLE PARKING LOTS

36.2.1.1 Accessible parking spaces shall be provided in compliance with the applicable requirements of Chapter 4.

ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(b)

36.2.2 PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN SEPTEMBER 1, 1973 AND SEPTEMBER 11, 1989
(NOTE: Prior to September 12, 1989 the minimum number of accessible spaces was equal to two percent (2%) of the total number of parking spaces for a given lot. Van accessible spaces were not required.)

***36.2.2.1** *The number of accessible parking spaces to be added shall be computed as follows:*

$$\begin{array}{r} [\text{Number of Parking}] \\ [\text{Spaces Required}] \\ [\text{By 4.2.1}] \end{array} - \begin{array}{r} [\text{Number of Existing}] \\ [\text{Accessible Spaces}] \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} [\text{Number of Accessible}] \\ [\text{Spaces To Be Added}] \end{array}$$

***36.2.2.1.1** *If the final number is one (1) or more, then the number of accessible spaces to be added shall include van accessible spaces in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.*

Accounts For
Chapter 11X , Vol. I-C;
ADAAG 4.1.2(5)

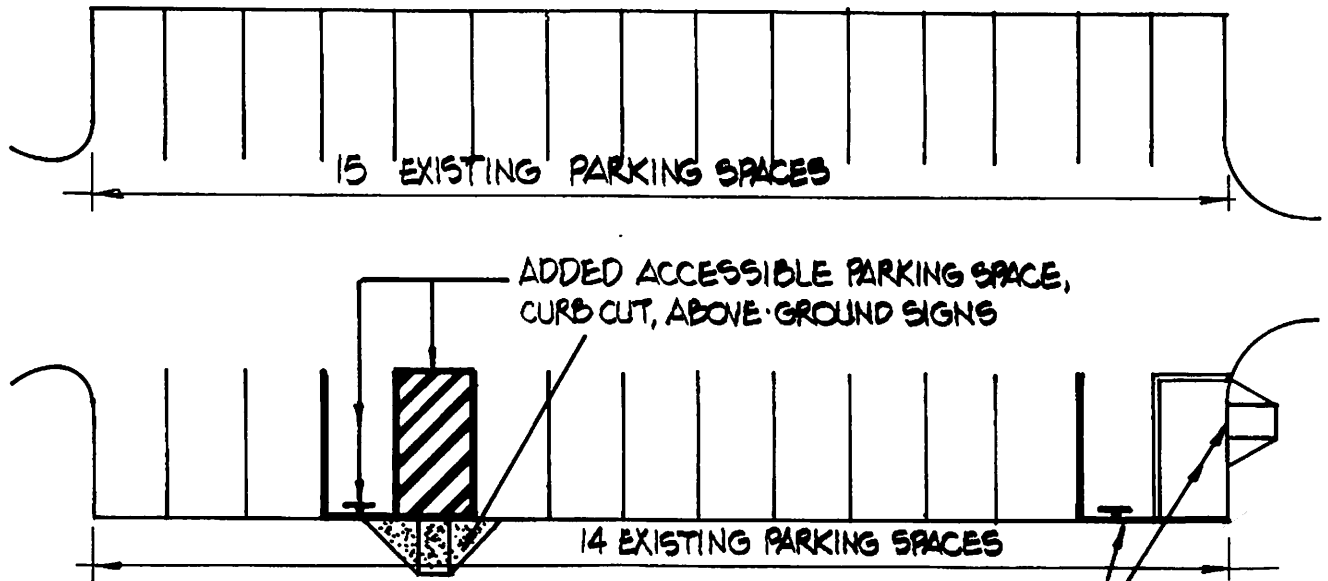
***36.2.2.1.2** *If the final number is zero (0), or a negative number, then the number of existing accessible spaces to be made van accessible shall comply with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.*

36.2.3 PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN SEPTEMBER 12, 1989 AND THE EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS CODE

(NOTE: On September 12, 1989 the two percent (2%) calculation for number of accessible spaces was replaced by the table in 4.2.1. Between September 12, 1989 and the effective date of this Code Van Accessible parking spaces were not required.)

***36.2.3.1** *The number of existing accessible spaces to be made van accessible shall comply with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.*

Adds ADAAG
4.1.2(5)(b) To
Vol. I-C, Chapter 3.4



PREVIOUS CODE REQUIREMENT: 9/1/73 - 9/1/89
 29 TOTAL SPACES x .02 = .58 = 1 ACCESSIBLE SPACE, MINIMUM

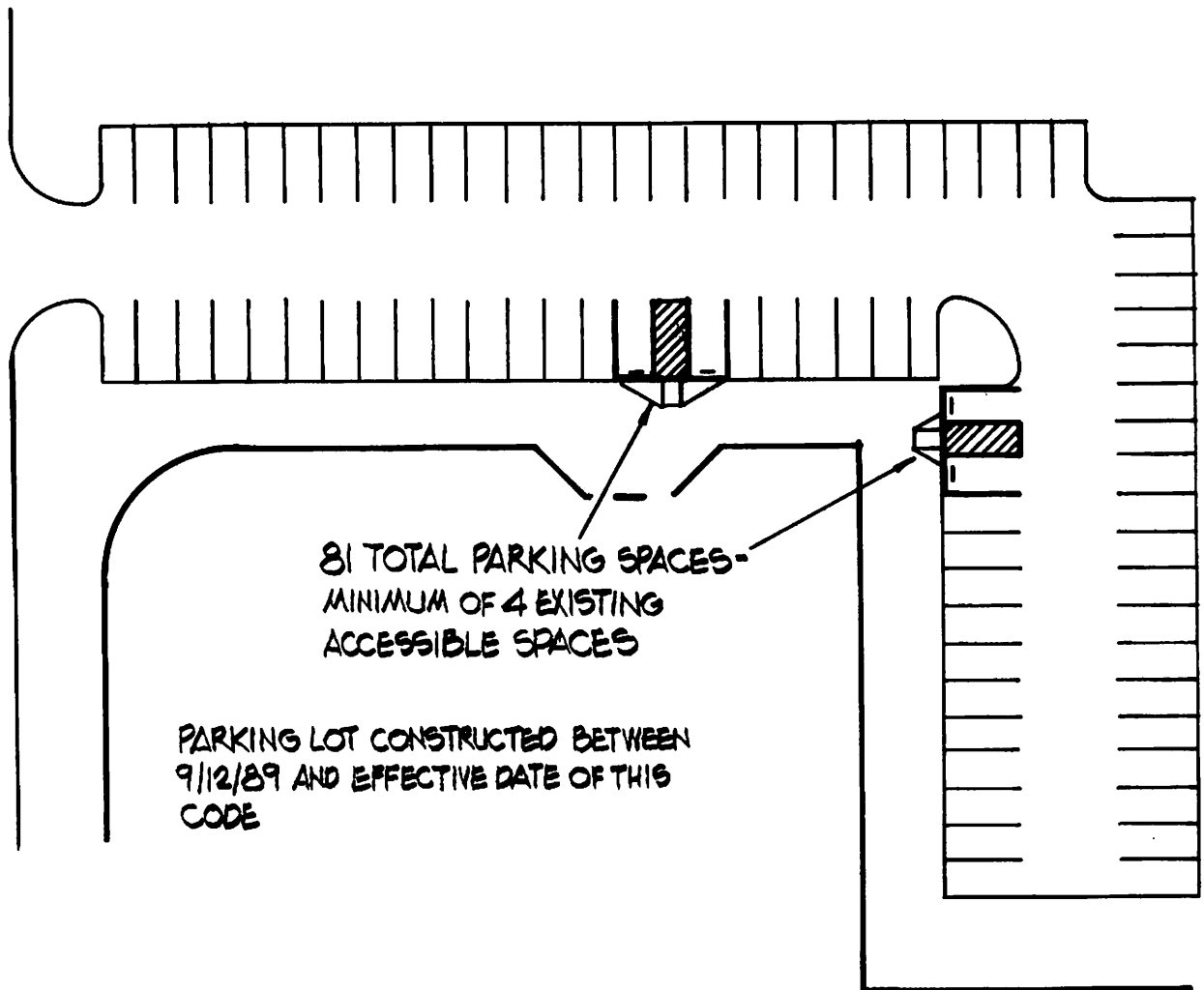
EXISTING ACCESSIBLE SPACE, CURB CUT, ABOVE-GROUND SIGNS*
 (*REQUIRED FOR ALL ACCESSIBLE SPACES REGARDLESS OF WHEN PARKING SPACE WAS CONSTRUCTED.)

36.2.2.1- THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES TO BE ADDED SHALL BE COMPUTED AS FOLLOWS:
 NUMBER OF PARKING SPACES REQ'D BY 4.2.1 - NUMBER OF EXISTING ACCESSIBLE SPACES = NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE SPACES TO BE ADDED

FOR PARKING LOT SHOWN ABOVE 2 - 1 = 1 MINIMUM

FOR VAN ACCESSIBLE SPACES, SEE 36.2.2.1.1-TEXT (SEE, ALSO, 36.2.2.1.2-TEXT)

36.2.2- PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN SEPTEMBER 1, 1973 AND SEPTEMBER 11, 1989



36.2.3.1- THE NUMBER OF EXISTING SPACES TO BE MADE VAN ACCESSIBLE SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.2.2 OR 4.2.2.1, AS APPLICABLE.

OF THE 4 EXISTING ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES, A MINIMUM OF 1 SHALL BE MADE VAN ACCESSIBLE (IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE "...MINIMUM OF ONE..." REQUIREMENT OF 4.2.2)

36.2.3- PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN SEPTEMBER 12, 1989 AND THE EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS CODE

36.3 TECHNICAL INFEASIBILITY: EFFECT OF ZONING ORDINANCES/LAND USE LAWS

36.3.1 In a parking lot or deck, if the number of accessible parking spaces required by 4.2.1 would result in a reduction of the total number of parking spaces required by local zoning ordinances or land use laws, then the minimum number of accessible spaces may be reduced in order to comply with such local laws for total number of parking spaces.

FR 7/26/91 At 35427

(E.G.: If 4.2.1 requires five accessible parking spaces but the existing lot or deck can only accommodate four accessible spaces in order to be in compliance with the total number of spaces required by local law, then four accessible spaces shall be provided rather than five.)

36.4 CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS

***36.4.1** *If a 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum walking surface width is Technically Infeasible, then that clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.*

ADAAG 4.3.3 = 36"
Modifies Vol. I-C,
3.2(b)(1) = 48"

36.4.2 If Technical Infeasibility prohibits the use of a 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum slope, then the walking surface of a curb cut or curb ramp may have a slope and rise that complies with one of the following:

Technically Infeasible-
FR 7/26/91 At 35428

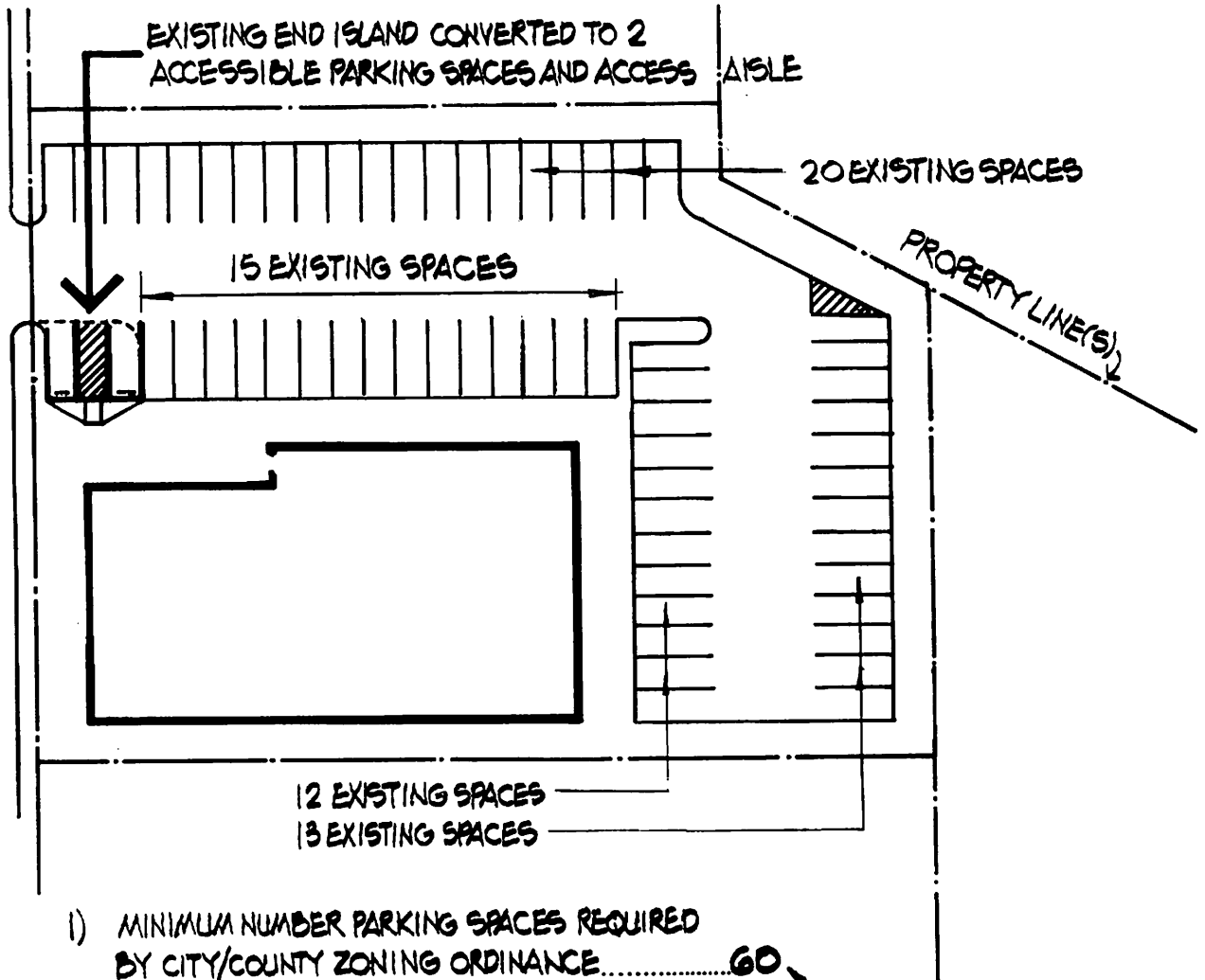
- (1) A slope between 1:10 (25mm:255mm) and 1:12 (25mm:302mm) is permitted for a maximum 6 inches (150 mm) rise.
- (2) A slope between 1:8 (25mm:205mm) and 1:10 (25mm:255mm) is permitted for a maximum 3 inches (75 mm) rise.

ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(a)(i)

ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(a)(ii)

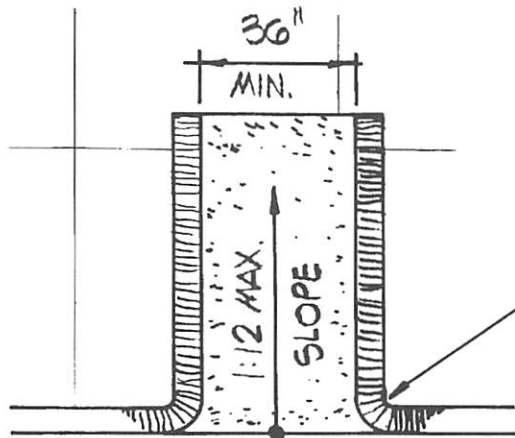
36.4.2.1 The use of any slope steeper than 1:8 (25mm:205mm) shall be prohibited.

ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(a)(ii)



- | | | |
|--|----|---|
| 1) MINIMUM NUMBER PARKING SPACES REQUIRED BY CITY/COUNTY ZONING ORDINANCE..... | 60 | |
| 2) NUMBER PARKING SPACES ON PROPERTY WHEN FACILITY ORIGINALLY BUILT..... | 60 | |
| 3) ACCESSIBLE SPACES REQUIRED IF FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION (SEE 4.2.1)..... | 3 | REFER TO 36.3.1 (TEXT) FOR COMPLETE EXPLANATION OF THIS EXCEPTION |
| 4) NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES THAT CAN BE BUILT WITHOUT INCURRING REDUCTION OF TOTAL SPACES REQUIRED BY ZONING ORDINANCE..... | 2 | |

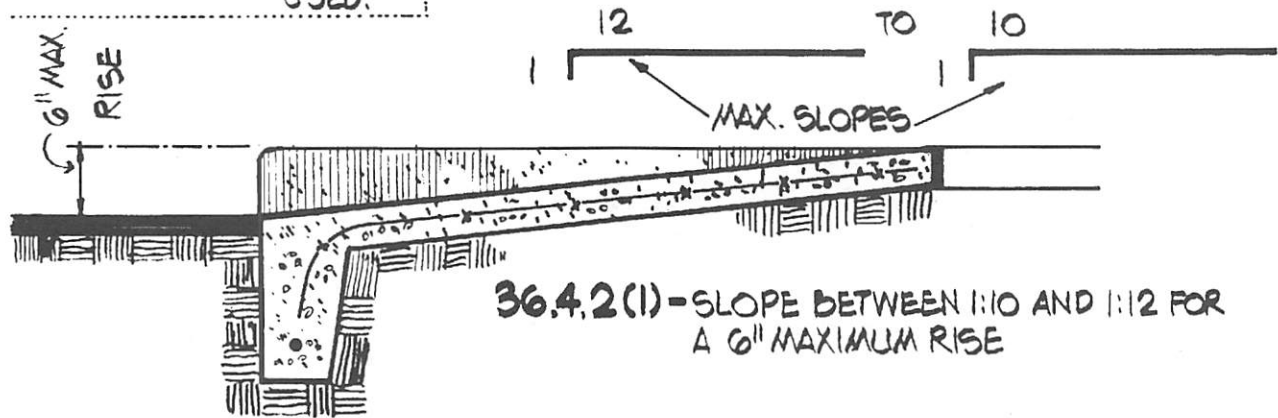
36.3- TECHNICAL INFEASIBILITY: EFFECT OF ZONING ORDINANCES/LAND USE LAWS



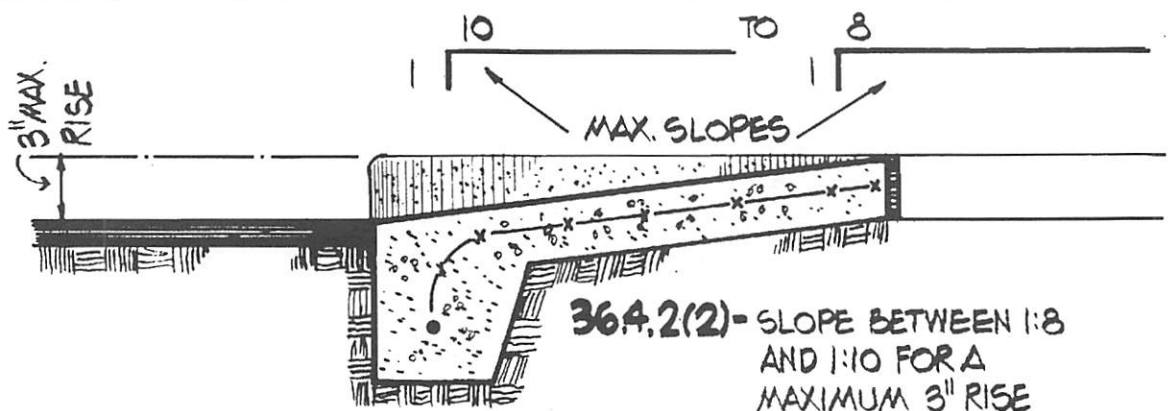
36.4.1- IF A 48" MINIMUM WALKING SURFACE WIDTH IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE, THEN THAT CLEAR WIDTH MAY BE REDUCED TO 36" MINIMUM.

FOR RETURNED CURBS OR SIDE FLARES, SEE CHAPTER 4

IF A 1:12 MAX. SLOPE IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE, THEN A CURB CUT OR CURB RAMP COMPLYING WITH 36.4.2(1) OR 36.4.2(2) MAY BE USED.



36.4.2(1)- SLOPE BETWEEN 1:10 AND 1:12 FOR A 6" MAXIMUM RISE



36.4.2(2)- SLOPE BETWEEN 1:8 AND 1:10 FOR A MAXIMUM 3" RISE

36.4.2.1- THE USE OF ANY SLOPE STEEPER THAN 1:8 SHALL BE PROHIBITED.

36.4 - CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS

CHAPTER 37 RAMPS

37.1 SLOPES, WIDTH OF ACCESSIBLE ROUTE, AND PASSING SPACE

37.1.1 If Technical Infeasibility prohibits the use of a 1:12 (25mm:305mm) maximum slope, then the ramp walking surface may have a slope and rise that complies with one of the following:

**Technically Infeasible-
FR 7/26/91 At 35428**

- (1) A slope between 1:10 (25mm:255mm) and 1:12 (25mm:305mm) is permitted for a maximum 6 inches (150 mm) rise.

ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(a)(i)

- (2) A slope between 1:8 (25mm:205mm) and 1:10 (25mm:255mm) is permitted for a maximum 3 inches (75 mm) rise.

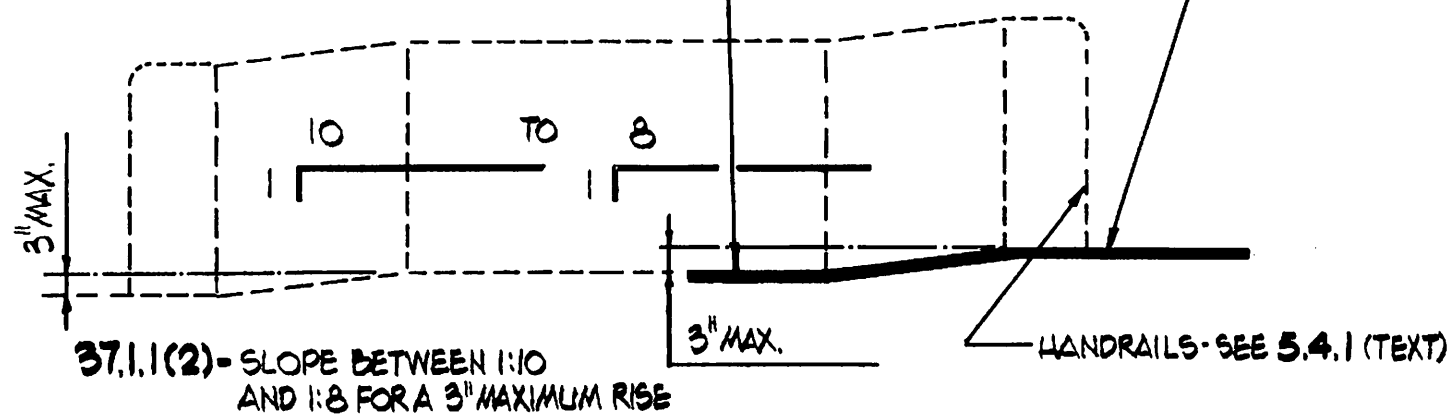
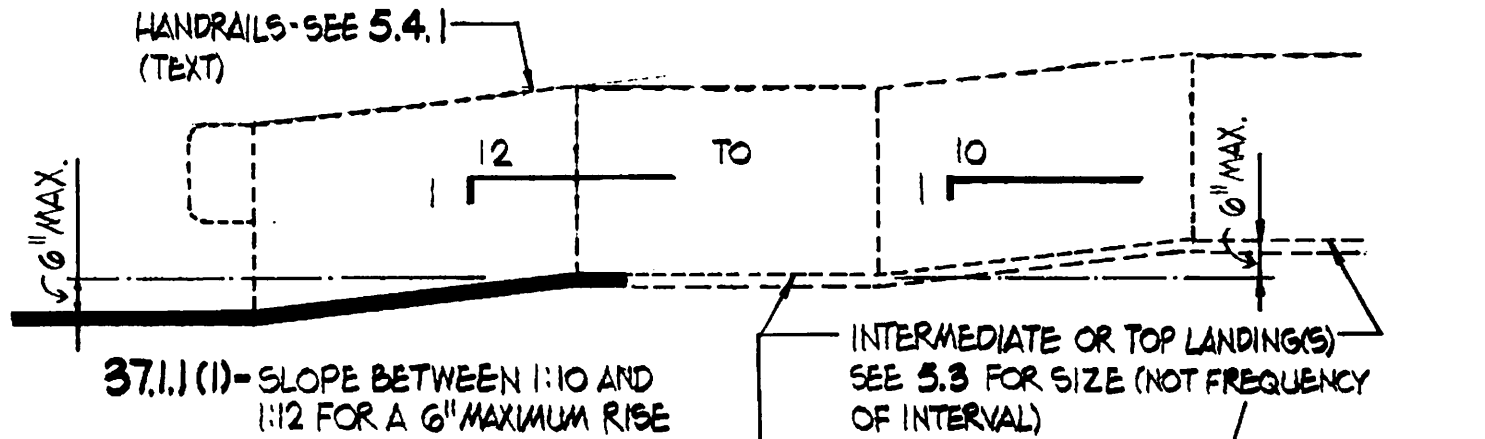
ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(a)(ii)

37.1.2 The use of any slope steeper than 1:8 (25mm:205mm) shall be prohibited.

ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(a)(ii)

37.1.3 For the clear width of an exterior ramp, see 35.1.1. For an interior passing space(s), see 35.2.1.

Cross-Reference



37.1.2- THE USE OF ANY SLOPE STEEPER THAN 1:8 SHALL BE PROHIBITED.

37.1- SLOPES, WIDTH OF ACCESSIBLE ROUTE, AND PASSING SPACE

**CHAPTER 38
ENTRANCES AND MEANS OF EGRESS**

38.1 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

38.1.1 Alterations to entrances to inaccessible buildings or facilities shall require that a minimum of one altered entrance be made accessible. Vol. I-C, 4.2(a);
ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(h)

38.1.2 For a building or facility having an existing accessible entrance, alterations to inaccessible entrances shall not require compliance with this Code. (See, also, 38.1.4.1.) ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(h)

* **38.1.3** *If an accessible entrance is altered, then it shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code.* USDA 36.402(b)(2)

38.1.4 PATH OF TRAVEL

* **38.1.4.1** *If a building or facility has an entrance that is located on a Path of Travel leading to an altered Area of Primary Function, then an inaccessible entrance(s) located on that Path of Travel is not required to comply with this Code.* Derived From:
Chapter 11X, Vol. I-C
(Min. 1 Access. Entrance);
Added To USDoJ
36.403(f)(2)(i)
(Path Of Travel)
(NOTE: Both conditions must be satisfied concurrently; the presence of an existing accessible entrance, by itself, is insufficient. If the accessible entrance is not located on the Path of Travel, then either the Path of Travel shall be made to connect to the accessible entrance, or an inaccessible entrance on the Path of Travel shall be made accessible.)

38.1.5 DIRECTION AND IDENTIFICATION SIGNAGE

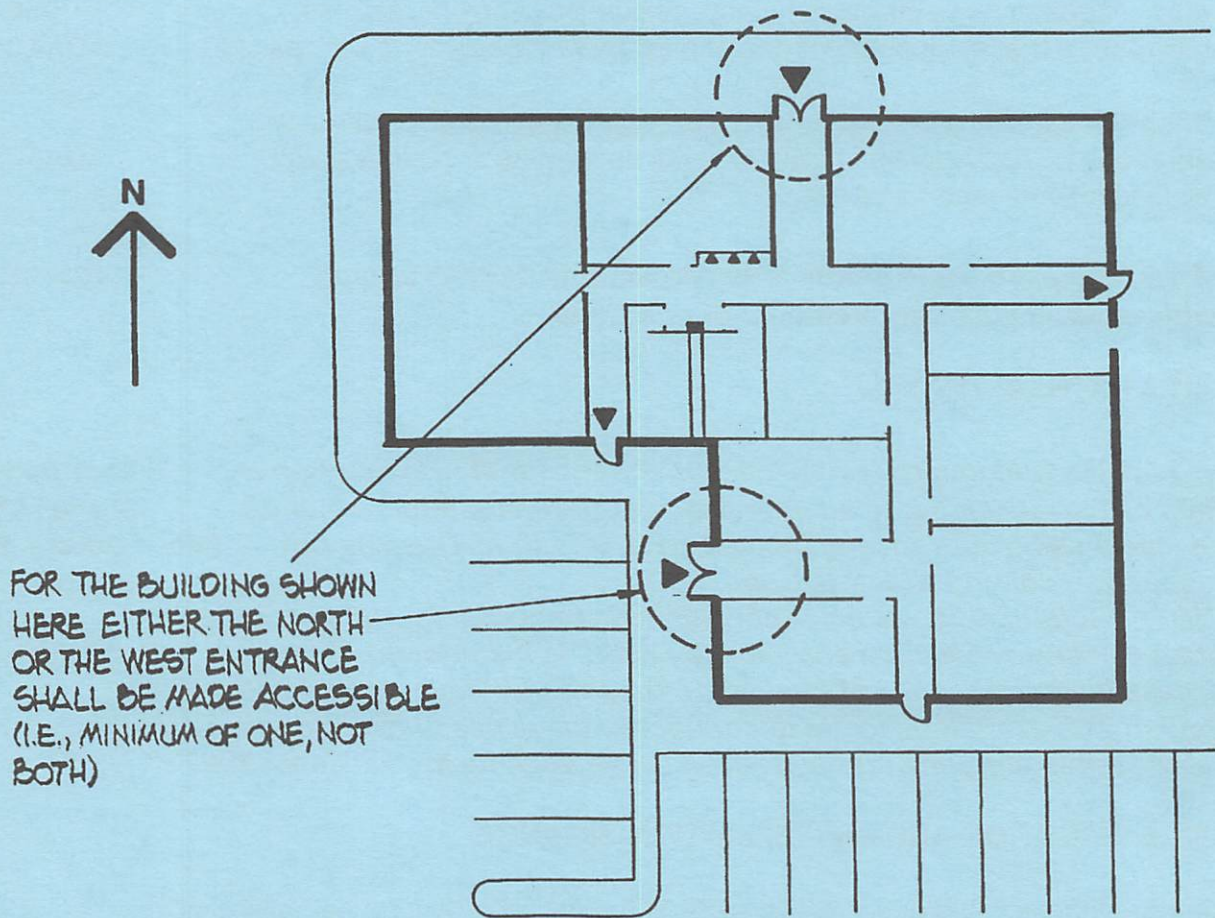
38.1.5.1 Inaccessible entrances shall be provided with signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the nearest accessible entrance. The sign shall be placed at or near each inaccessible entrance such that a disabled person will not have to retrace the approach route from that inaccessible entrance. The accessible entrance shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3(2). ADAAG
4.1.2(7)(c),
4.1.6(1)(h)

38.2 ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

38.2.1 If additional Means of Egress is not required by either the North Carolina Building Code and/or the North Carolina Existing Buildings Code, then compliance with 6.3 shall not be required. ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(g)

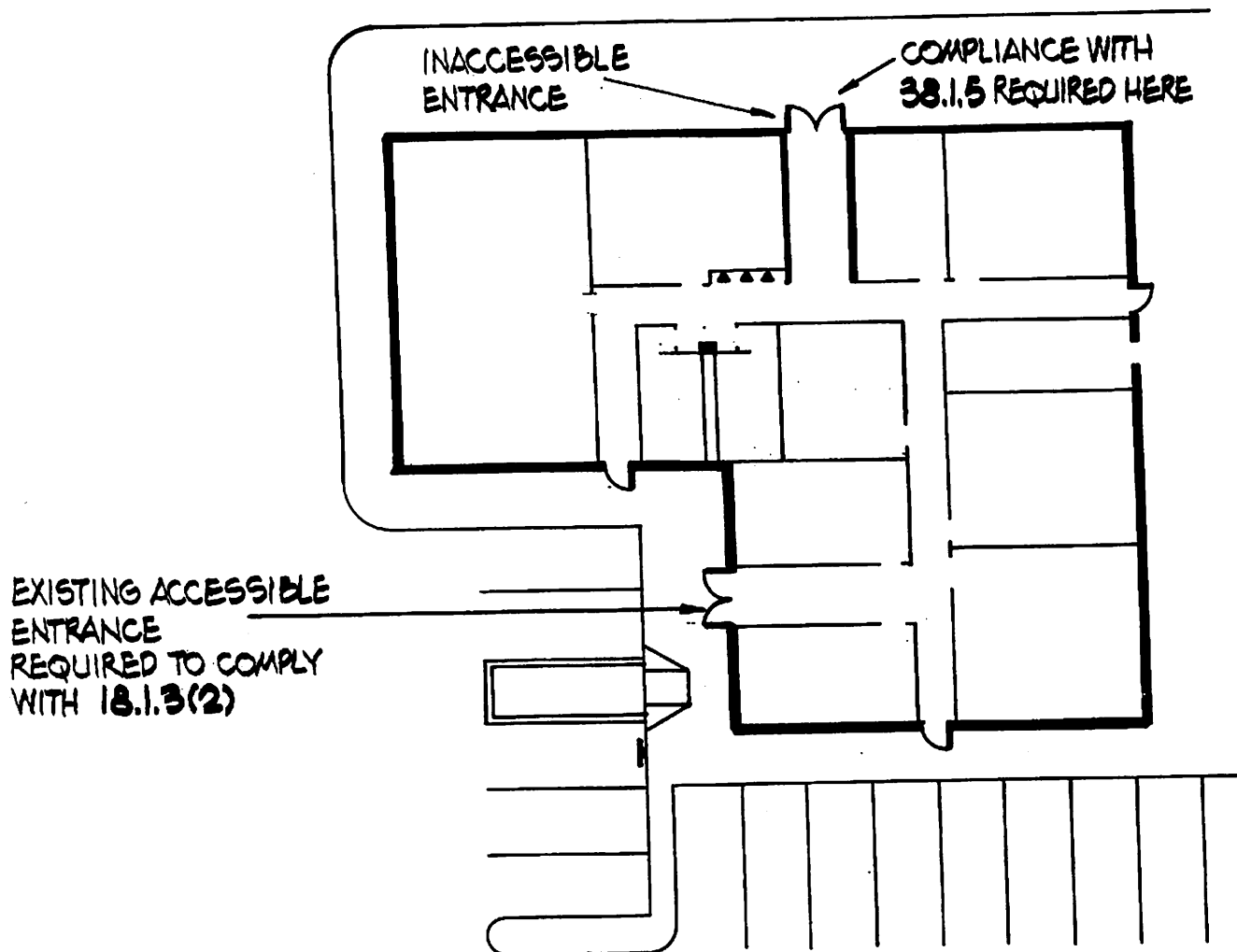
* **38.2.2** *Means of Egress added by either the North Carolina Building Code and/or the North Carolina Existing Buildings Code shall comply with 6.3. On the level of exit discharge if construction of an accessible exit discharge is Technically Infeasible, then an Area(s) of Rescue Assistance shall be provided in compliance with 6.3.2. Signage complying with 6.3.2.6.2 shall be provided at all inaccessible exits indicating the direction to the Area(s) of Rescue Assistance.* ADAAG
4.1.5,
4.3.11.5

38.2.3 For buildings and facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system, see 6.3.3.1(1). Cross-Reference



38.1.1- ALTERATIONS TO ENTRANCES TO INACCESSIBLE BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES SHALL REQUIRE THAT A MINIMUM OF ONE ALTERED ENTRANCE BE MADE ACCESSIBLE. (SEE, ALSO, 38.1.5, TEXT.)

38.1- NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES



38.1.2- FOR A BUILDING OR FACILITY HAVING AN EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE, ALTERATIONS TO INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES SHALL NOT REQUIRE COMPLIANCE WITH THIS CODE. (SEE, ALSO, 38.1.4.1.)

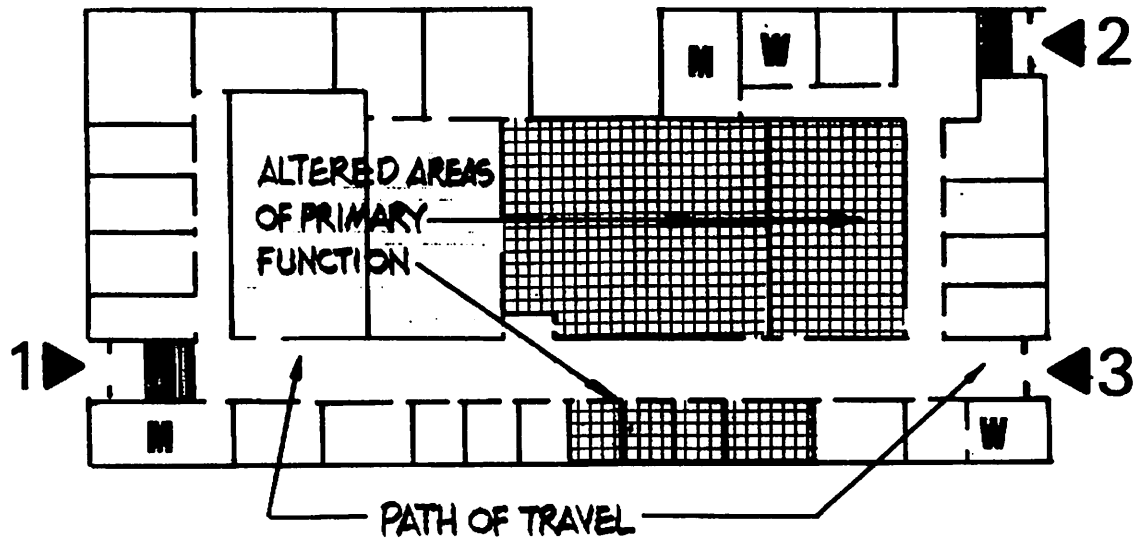
38.1.3- IF AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE IS ALTERED, THEN IT SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS CODE.

38.1- NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

LEGEND:

- 1) EXISTING INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE
- 2) EXISTING INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE
- 3) EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE

M = MEN'S TOILETS
W = WOMEN'S TOILETS



ENTRANCES 1 AND 2 ARE REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH 38.1.5.
ENTRANCE 3 SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.3(2).

38.1.4.1 IF A BUILDING OR FACILITY HAS AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE THAT IS LOCATED ON A *PATH OF TRAVEL* LEADING TO AN *ALTERED AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION*, THEN AN INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE(S) LOCATED ON THAT *PATH OF TRAVEL* IS NOT REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH THIS CODE. (SEE, ALSO, 38.1.4--PART 2.)

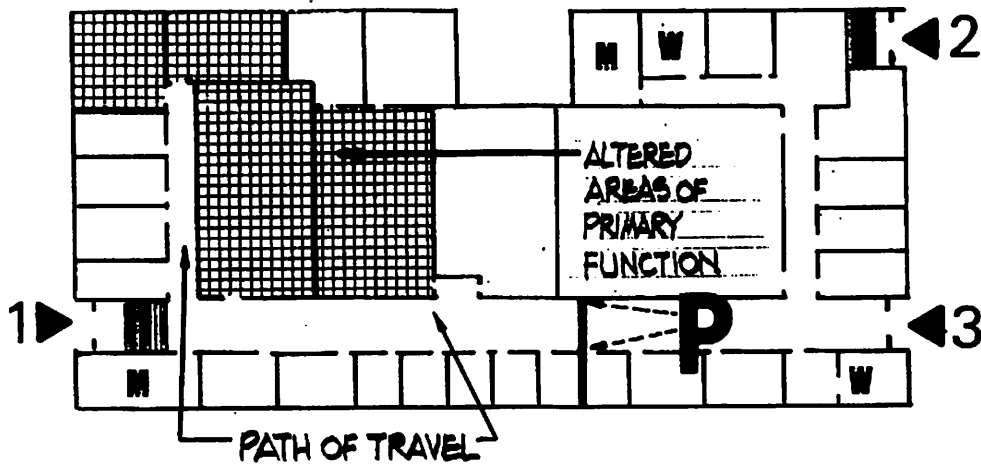
38.1.4--PATH OF TRAVEL (PART 1)

38.1--NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

LEGEND:

- 1) EXISTING INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE
- 2) EXISTING INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE
- 3) EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE

M = MEN'S TOILETS
W = WOMEN'S TOILETS



IF PARTITION P IS REMOVED, THEN:

- 1) ENTRANCES 1 AND 2 SHALL COMPLY WITH 38.1.5; AND
- 2) ENTRANCE 3 SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.3(2).

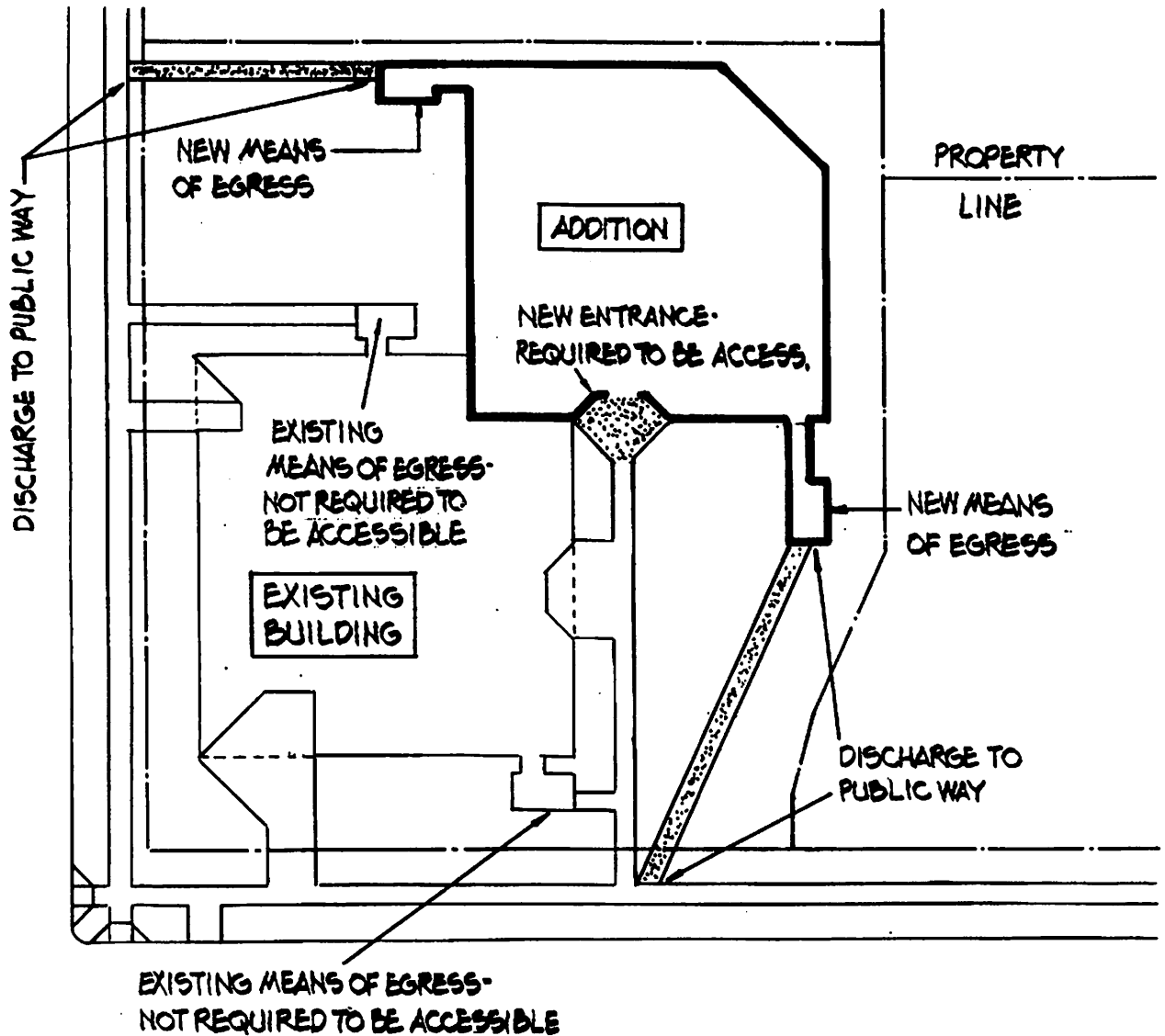
IF PARTITION P IS NOT REMOVED, THEN:

- 1) ENTRANCE 1 SHALL BE MADE ACCESSIBLE; AND
- 2) ENTRANCE 2 SHALL COMPLY WITH 38.1.5; AND
- 3) ENTRANCES 1 AND 3 SHALL COMPLY WITH 18.1.3(2).

38.1.4.1, NOTE: BOTH CONDITIONS (I.E., EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE LOCATED ON A *PATH OF TRAVEL*) MUST BE SATISFIED CONCURRENTLY: THE PRESENCE OF AN EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE, BY ITSELF, IS INSUFFICIENT. IF THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE IS NOT LOCATED ON THE *PATH OF TRAVEL*, THEN EITHER THE *PATH OF TRAVEL* SHALL BE MADE TO CONNECT TO THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE, OR AN INACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE ON THE *PATH OF TRAVEL* SHALL BE MADE ACCESSIBLE.

38.1.4--PATH OF TRAVEL (PART 2)

38.1--NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES



38.2.1 IF ADDITIONAL MEANS OF EGRESS IS NOT REQUIRED BY EITHER VOLUMES I AND/OR IX, THEN COMPLIANCE WITH 6.3 SHALL NOT BE REQUIRED.

38.2.2 MEANS OF EGRESS ADDED BY EITHER VOLUMES I AND/OR IX SHALL COMPLY WITH 6.3. ON THE LEVEL OF EXIT DISCHARGE IF CONSTRUCTION OF AN ACCESSIBLE EXIT DISCHARGE IS *TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE*, THEN AN AREA(S) OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE SHALL BE PROVIDED IN COMPLIANCE WITH 6.3.2. SIGNAGE COMPLYING WITH 6.3.2.6.2 SHALL BE PROVIDED AT ALL INACCESSIBLE EXITS INDICATING THE DIRECTION TO THE AREA(S) OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE.

38.2.3 FOR BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES HAVING A SUPERVISED AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SEE 6.3.3(1).

38.2--ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

**CHAPTER 39
TOILET ROOMS AND BATHING FACILITIES**

39.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

39.1.1 On floors wherein inaccessible toilet rooms and/or bathing facilities are located, if an alteration is undertaken to an existing facility, or if a unisex facility is built, then each inaccessible facility shall be provided with signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the accessible facilities (or facility). Each accessible facility shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3(3).

**ADAAG
4.1.2(7)(d),
4.1.6(3)(e)(iii)**

39.2 FIXTURE COUNT REDUCTION

***39.2.1** *To provide for accessibility, if the existing fixture count exceeds the minimum number of fixtures of each type required by the Plumbing Code in effect at the time the building or facility was originally built, then that fixture count may be reduced by the number of excess fixtures only.*

**Derived From
ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(e)(ii)**

39.3 ACCESSIBLE TOILET STALLS

39.3.1 If compliance with 11.4.1 or 11.4.2 is Technically Infeasible, then one of the alternate stalls listed below shall be used:

(1) A Front Entry Stall having

1. A 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum width and a 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum depth if a wall hung watercloset is used; or, a minimum 69 inches (1745 mm) depth if a floor mounted watercloset is used;
2. An outswing, or horizontal sliding, door having a 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear opening and located diagonally opposite the watercloset;
3. A clear floor space on the pull side of the door having a 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum clear aisle width for an approach towards the pull handle; or, a 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum aisle width for any other type of approach;
4. Sidewall and rearwall grab bars that comply with 11.4.1(4) and 11.4.1(5).

**ADAAG
Figure 30(b),
Bottom**

*** (2) A Side Entry Stall located at the end of the room and having**

**Vol. I-C, 4.6.3(c),
Pg. 85 And 86**

***1. A 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum to 42 inches (1070 mm) width; maximum clear**

***2. A minimum 114 inches (2895 mm) clear length for wall hung watercloset; or, a minimum 117 inches (2970 mm) clear length for a floor mounted watercloset;**

***3. An outswing, or horizontal sliding, door having a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum dimension across the face;**

***4. Two sidewall grab bars in compliance with 11.4.3(4). (NOTE: For this stall the watercloset flush mechanism may be left- or right-handed.)**

ADAAG Fig.
30(b), Top

(3) A stall in compliance with 11.4.3.

39.4 UNISEX TOILET AND/OR BATHING FACILITIES

39.4.1 TRAVEL DISTANCE AND LOCATION

39.4.1.1 If it is Technically Infeasible to make existing toilets and/or bathing facilities accessible, then a minimum of one unisex facility per floor may be permitted.

ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(e)(i)

***39.4.1.2** *For all building types the unisex facility (or facilities) shall be placed within 60 feet (18.3 m) horizontal distance from any existing common use toilet/bathing facilities.*

60 Ft: ADAAG Says
"Within Same Area"
But Offers No Guidance

***39.4.2 UNISEX TOILET ROOM**

***39.4.2.1** *For buildings or facilities having a gross area greater than 2,500 square feet (232.25 square meters), the toilet room shall have a 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm), or a 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter, minimum clear floor area.*

Vol. I-C,
Pg. 91 And 92

***39.4.2.2** *For buildings and facilities having a gross area of 2,500 square feet (232.25 square meters) or less the minimum toilet room shall comply with 11.8.2.1 or 11.8.2.2. (For buildings and facilities where this size toilet room is permitted see 11.8.1.1 and 11.8.1.2.)*

Vol. I-C, 4.6.4(a);
Vol. II, Table 407.2.5,
Note 4

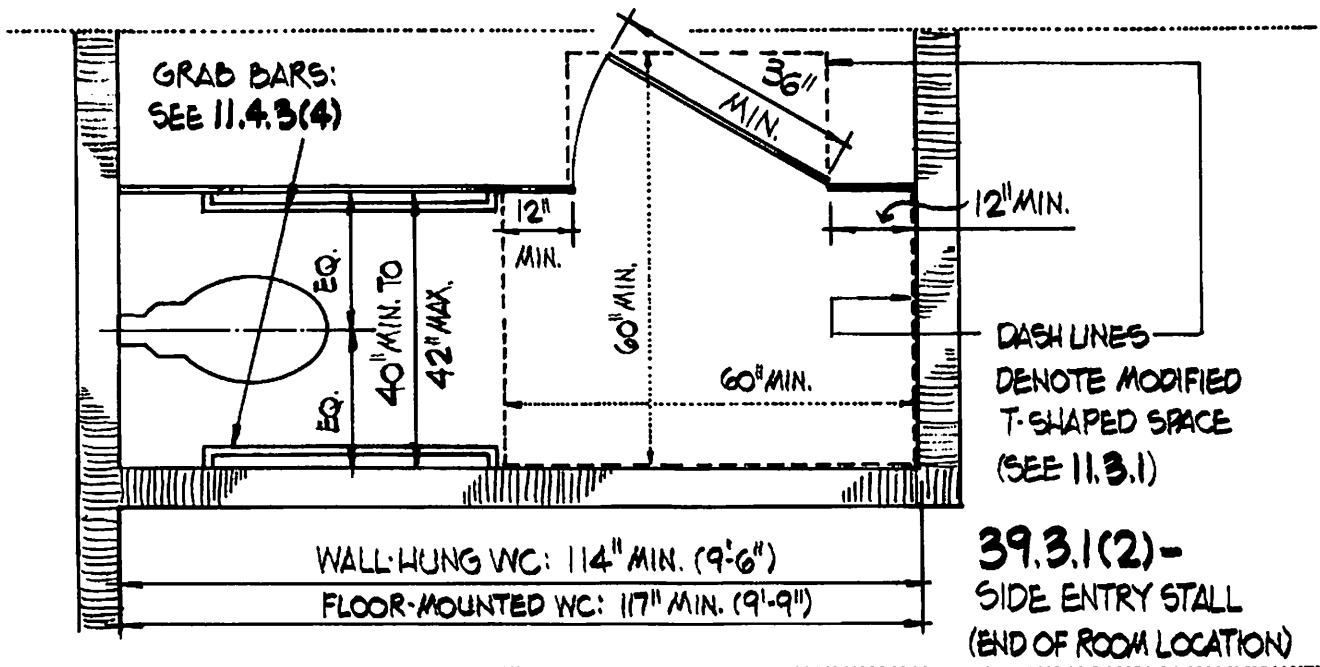
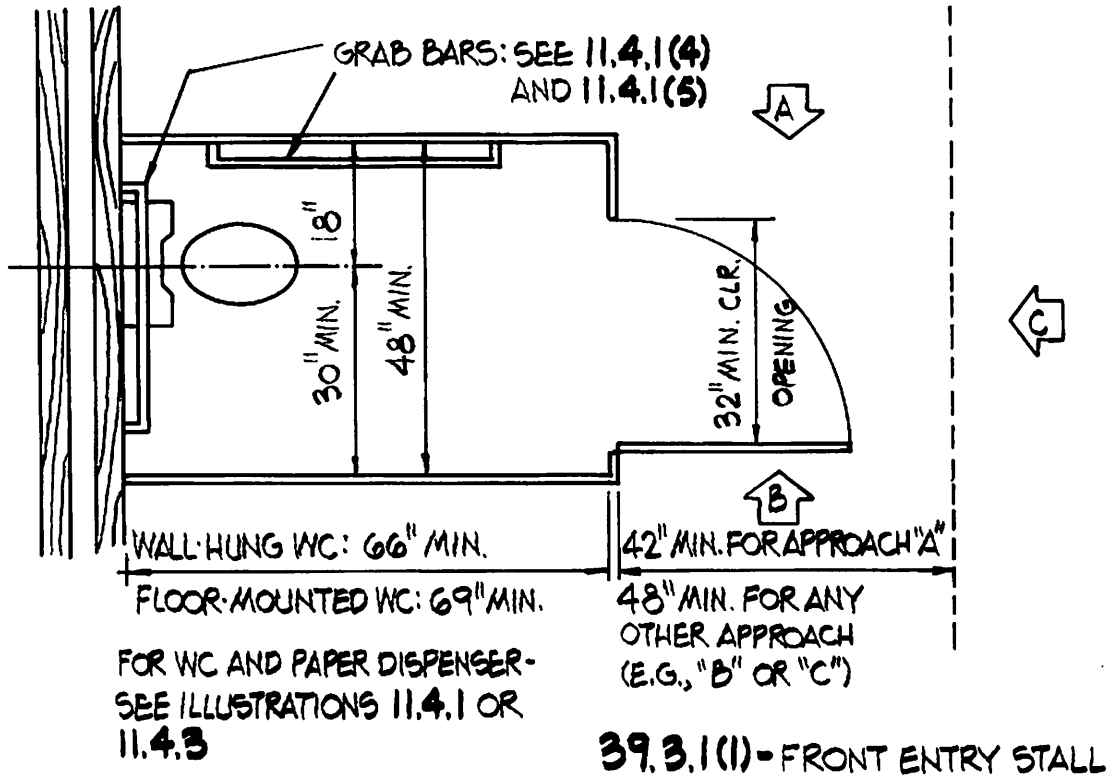
39.4.3 UNISEX BATHING FACILITY

39.4.3.1 Each unisex bathing room shall have a clear floor area within the room in compliance with 11.3.1. Bathing fixtures shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 12.

Vol. I-C, 4.6.8, 4.6.9;
ADAAG 4.23.3

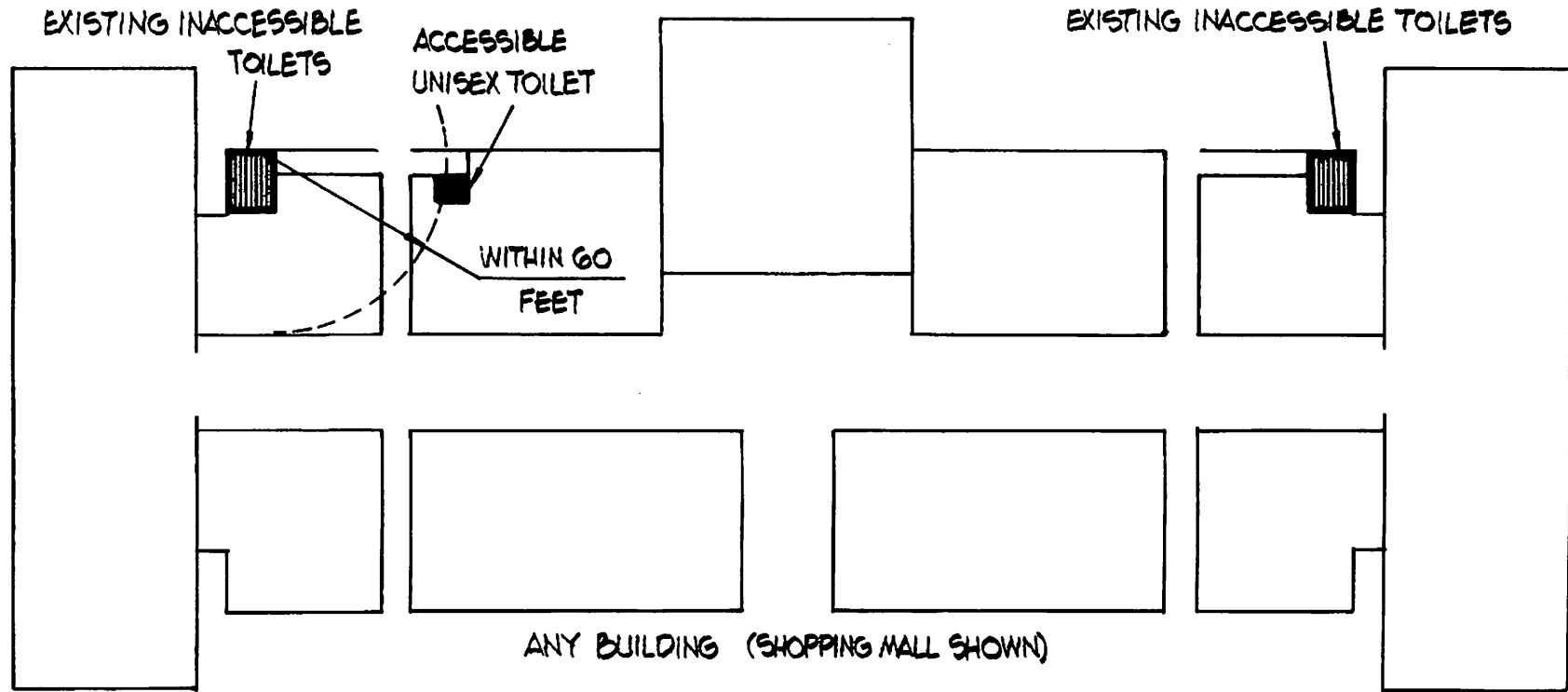
***39.4.3.2** *If non-bathing fixtures (e.g., watercloset, lavatory, etc.) are provided within the room, then they shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 11. Placement of these non-bathing fixtures shall not obstruct access to, and use of, the bathing fixture.*

Derived From:
Vol. I-C, Chapter 4.6 et al;
ADAAG 4.22.3 And 4.23.3



39.3.1(3) - A STALL IN COMPLIANCE WITH 11.4.3.

39.3.1 - IF COMPLIANCE WITH 11.4.1 OR 11.4.2 IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE, THEN ONE OF THE STALLS CALLED FOR ON THIS PAGE SHALL BE USED.



39.4.1.1- IF IT IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE TO MAKE EXISTING TOILETS AND/OR BATHING FACILITIES ACCESSIBLE, THEN A MINIMUM OF 1 UNISEX FACILITY PER FLOOR MAY BE PERMITTED.

39.4.1.2- FOR ALL BUILDING TYPES THE UNISEX FACILITY (OR FACILITIES) SHALL BE PLACED WITHIN 60 FEET HORIZONTAL DISTANCE FROM ANY COMMON USE TOILET/BATHING FACILITIES.

EACH INACCESSIBLE FACILITY SHALL BE PROVIDED WITH SIGNAGE COMPLYING WITH 18.1.2 INDICATING THE DIRECTION TO THE ACCESSIBLE FACILITIES.

EACH ACCESSIBLE FACILITY SHALL BE IDENTIFIED IN COMPLIANCE WITH 18.1.3(3).

FOR ROOM SIZES SEE 39.4.2 AND 39.4.3.1-TEXT.
FOR BATHING FACILITIES SEE 39.4.3.1 AND 39.4.3.2-TEXT

39.4- UNISEX TOILET AND/OR BATHING FACILITIES

**CHAPTER 40
TELEPHONES**

40.1 ACCESSIBLE (VOLUME CONTROL) TELEPHONES

***40.1.1** If public pay telephones are provided, then compliance with 14.1.1 shall be computed as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} [\textit{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\textit{Public Telephones}] \\ [\textit{Required To Comply}] \\ [\textit{With 14.1.1}] \end{array} \begin{array}{c}] \\] \\] \\] \end{array} - \begin{array}{r} [\textit{Number Of Existing}] \\ [\textit{Accessible Public}] \\ [\textit{Telephones}] \end{array} \begin{array}{c}] \\] \\] \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} [\textit{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\textit{Public Telephones}] \\ [\textit{Required To Be Added}] \end{array} \begin{array}{c}] \\] \\] \end{array}$$

***40.1.1.1** *If the final number is zero (0), or a negative number, then providing additional accessible public pay telephones is not mandatory.* Accounts For
Chapter 11X,
Vol. I-C, 4.8

40.2 TEXT TELEPHONES (TELECOMMUNICATIONS DEVICE FOR THE DEAF, OR TDD)

40.2.1 If alterations to buildings or facilities having less than four (4) exterior or interior public pay telephones will increase the total number of telephones to four (4) or more with a minimum of one (1) at an interior location, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(e)(i)**

(E.G.: A building has one [1] interior and one [1] exterior public pay telephones. As part of a planned alteration two [2] public pay telephones are added. Since the total number of public telephones is now four [4] with one [1] at an interior location, a minimum of one [1] interior public TDD is required.)

**FR 7/26/91 At
35427**

40.2.2 If alterations to one (1) or more exterior or interior public pay telephones occur in a building or facility having four (4) or more public telephones with a minimum of one (1) in an interior location, then a minimum of one (1) interior public TDD shall be provided.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(e)(ii)**

(E.G.: An existing building has two [2] interior and two [2] exterior public pay telephones. As part of a planned alteration one [1] or more of these units is altered; therefore, a minimum of one [1] interior public TDD is required.)

**FR 7/26/991 At
35427**

**CHAPTER 41
ELEVATORS AND PLATFORM LIFTS**

41.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

***41.1.1** *For all buildings and facilities required to have an elevator (see 15.2.1 through 15.2.8, and 30.4.1.5.1 through 30.4.1.5.5) if an escalator or stair is planned or installed where none previously existed and major modifications of the structural frame are necessary for such installation, then a means of accessible vertical access shall be provided in compliance with the applicable requirements of 4.7.2, 4.7.3, Chapter 5, 15.3 through 15.10, or 15.11.*
(NOTE: For “....structural frame....”, see the NOTE following 34.1.2.1.)

FR 7/26/91 At
35426;
ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(f)

41.1.2 ACCESSIBILITY MAINTAINED

41.1.2.1 For buildings or facilities not required to have an elevator (see 15.2.1 through 15.2.8), alterations to floors above and/or below the accessible ground floor shall comply with the applicable requirements of this Code except for elevator service.

USDoJ
36.404(b);
ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(k)(ii)

***41.1.2.2** *For privately-owned multi-family dwellings not required to have an elevator (see 30.4.1.5.1 through 30.4.1.5.3, and 30.4.1.5.5), alterations to residential floors above and/or below the residential ground floor shall not be required to comply with Chapter 30.*

Privately-Owned Multi-Family
Not Covered By
ADA/ADAAG

**41.2 ELEVATOR, PATH OF TRAVEL, AND
DISPROPORTIONALITY**

ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(k)(i), 4.1.6(2);

***41.2.1** Alterations to Areas of Primary Function in buildings and facilities to which 15.2.1 through 15.2.8 *and 30.4.1.5* applies which do not have an elevator shall require that an elevator be installed unless such installation is determined to be Disproportionate

USDoJ 36.403(e)(2),
36.403(f)(2)(i)
(References To
Elevators And Access.
Route To Alt. Area)

41.2.2 Alterations to Areas of Primary Function in buildings and facilities which have an inaccessible passenger elevator shall require compliance with one of the following:

- (1) Install an elevator complying with Chapter 15; or
- (2) Alter the existing elevator to comply with this Code,

USDoJ 36.403(e)(2),
36.403(f)(2)(i)
(References To
Elevators And Access.
Route To Alt. Area)

unless such installation/alteration is determined to be Disproportionate.

41.2.3 Alterations to Areas of Primary Function in buildings and facilities having an existing accessible elevator shall require that it be made to comply with one or more of the following:

<u>ADDITIONS OR ADJUSTMENTS (1), (2)</u>	<u>ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOUND IN SECTION/PARAGRAPH</u>	
Location Of "Up" Call Button	15.5.1.2	
Objects Located Below Call Buttons	15.5.1.5	
Hall Lanterns	15.5.2	
Hoistway Entrance Markings, Braille	15.5.3.3	
Door Signal And Timing.	15.7	Adds ADAAG 4.10
Car Control Panel Location	15.9.1	To Chapter 11X
Car Control Panel Markings, Braille	15.9.5.1	And Vol. I-C.
Car Position Indicator: Signal Strength And Frequency	15.9.6.2	
Emergency Communication	15.10	

(1) Provided that such additions/adjustments are not Disproportionate.

*** (2) *Some existing accessible elevators may not be required to comply with each Item listed due to revisions to ANSI/ASME A17.1 and this Code since September 1, 1973 (the effective date of this Code.)***

41.3 ELEVATOR CAB DIMENSIONS

41.3.1 If existing elevator shaft dimensions or Technical Infeasibility prohibit compliance with either 15.4.1 or 15.4.2, then the clear, inside cab dimensions may be reduced to 48 inches by 48 inches (1220 mm by 1220 mm) minimum.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(c)(ii)**

41.3.2 Clear, inside cab dimensions other than 48 inches by 48 inches (1220 mm by 1220 mm) may be used provided that the cab complies with the following:

(1) The clear inside dimensions will accommodate a 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (765 mm by (1220 mm) clear floor space; and

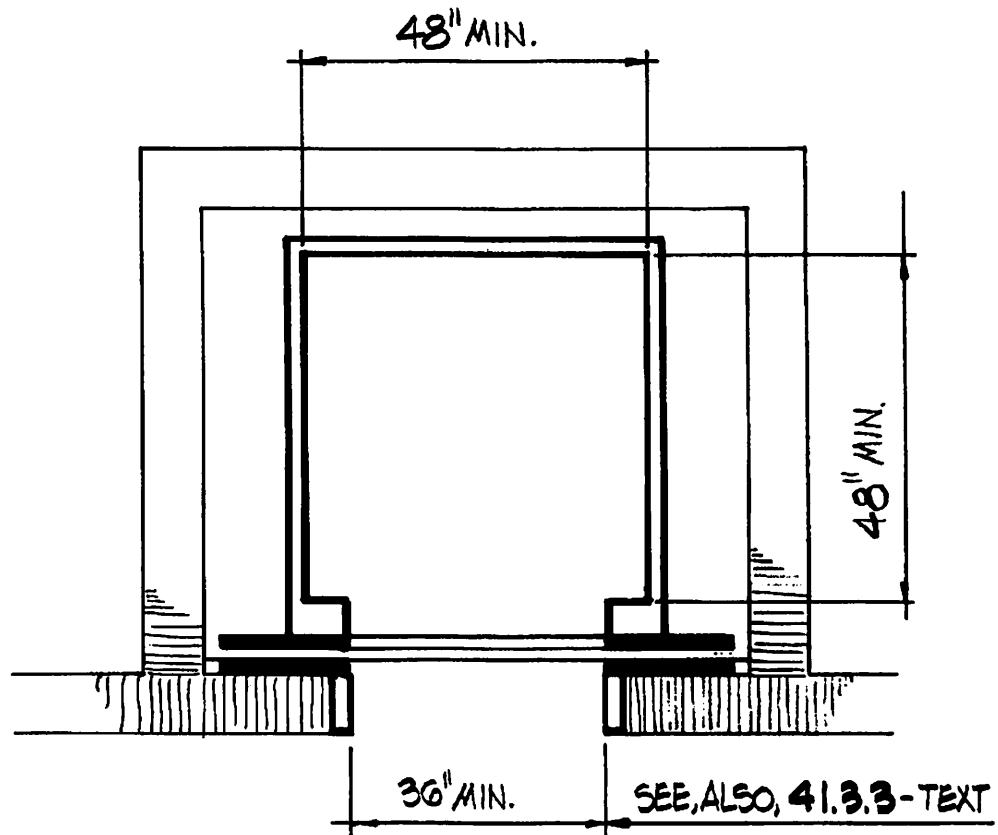
**From
ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(c)(iii)**

(2) All elevator features comply with 15.3, and 15.5 through 15.10.

(NOTE: [1] above, does not mean that the clear, inside cab size can be 30 inches by 48 inches [760 mm by 1220 mm]. The cab size must be larger than the clear floor space in order to accommodate entry, access to the controls, and exit [e.g., a cab that is 47 inches wide by 69 inches deep (1195 mm by 1755 mm)]. Additionally, within some elevators a wheelchair user will not be able to make a left or right turn within the cab; therefore, the hoistway/cab doors must be located at the narrow end of the shaft in order to facilitate "straight-in/straight-out" entry and exit.)

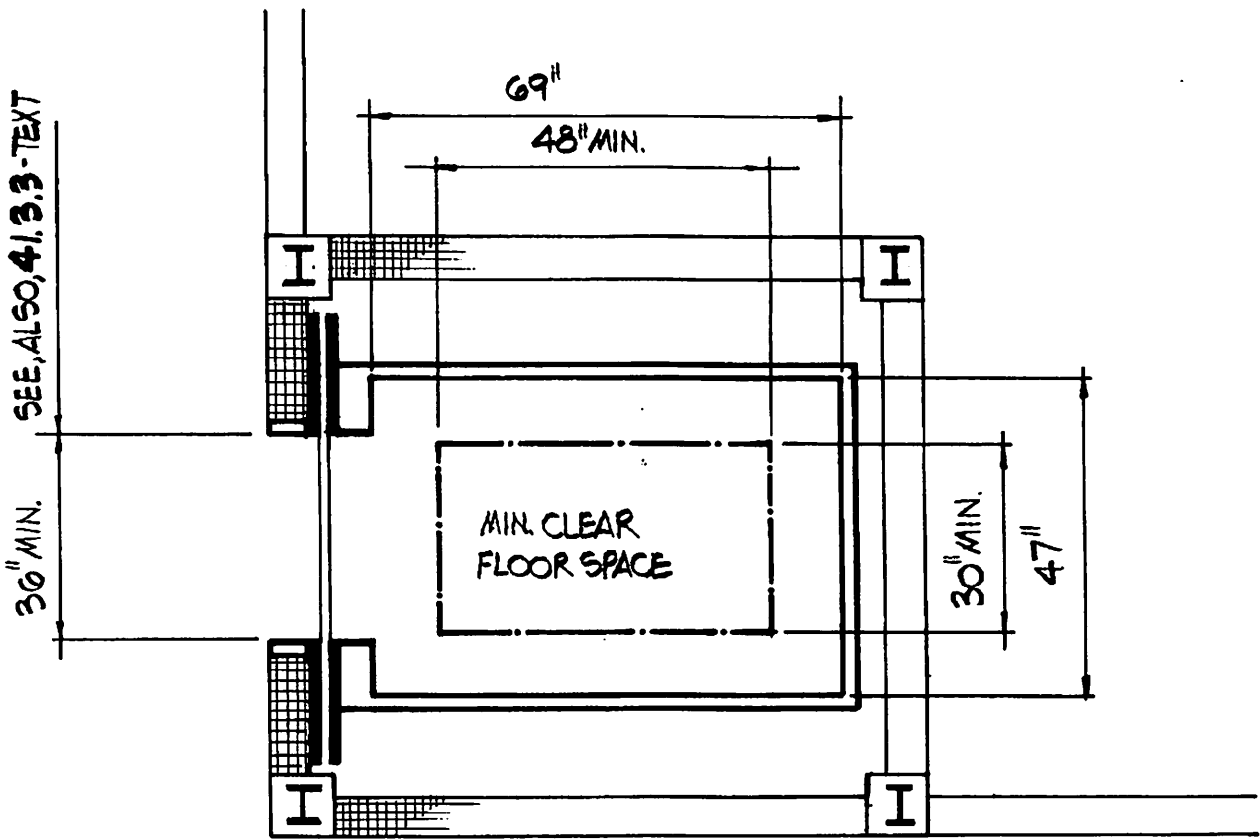
*** 41.3.3 *If it is Technically Infeasible for the shaft to accommodate a door having a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum clear opening, then the clear opening may be reduced to 32 inches (813 mm) minimum.***

**Use Vol. I-C, Pg. 152
To Amend ADAAG Figure 22**



41.3.1- IF EXISTING ELEVATOR SHAFT DIMENSIONS OR TECHNICAL INFEASIBILITY PROHIBIT COMPLIANCE WITH EITHER 15.4.1 OR 15.4.2, THEN THE CLEAR, INSIDE CAB DIMENSIONS MAY BE REDUCED TO 48" x 48" MINIMUM.

41.3- ELEVATOR CAB DIMENSIONS



41.3.2- CLEAR, INSIDE CAB DIMENSIONS OTHER THAN 48" X 48" MAY BE USED PROVIDED THAT THE CAB COMPLIES WITH THE FOLLOWING:

- (1) THE CLEAR INSIDE DIMENSIONS WILL ACCOMMODATE A 30" WIDE X 48" LONG CLEAR FLOOR SPACE; AND
- (2) ALL ELEVATOR FEATURES COMPLY WITH 15.3, AND 15.5 THROUGH 15.10.

(NOTE: [I] ABOVE, DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE CLEAR, INSIDE CAB SIZE CAN BE 30" X 48". THE CAB SIZE MUST BE LARGER THAN THE CLEAR FLOOR SPACE IN ORDER TO ACCOMMODATE ENTRY, ACCESS TO THE CONTROLS, AND EXIT [E.G., A CAB THAT IS 47" WIDE X 69" LONG.] ADDITIONALLY, WITHIN SOME ELEVATORS A WHEELCHAIR USER WILL NOT BE ABLE TO MAKE A LEFT OR RIGHT TURN WITHIN THE CAB; THEREFORE, THE HOISTWAY/CAB DOORS MUST BE LOCATED AT NARROW END OF THE SHAFT IN ORDER TO FACILITATE "STRAIGHT-IN/STRAIGHT-OUT" ENTRY AND EXIT.)

41.3- ELEVATOR CAB DIMENSIONS

41.4 DOOR REOPENING DEVICE

41.4.1 If safety door edges are provided in passenger elevators capable of automatic operation, then compliance with 15.6 is not required.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(c)(i)**

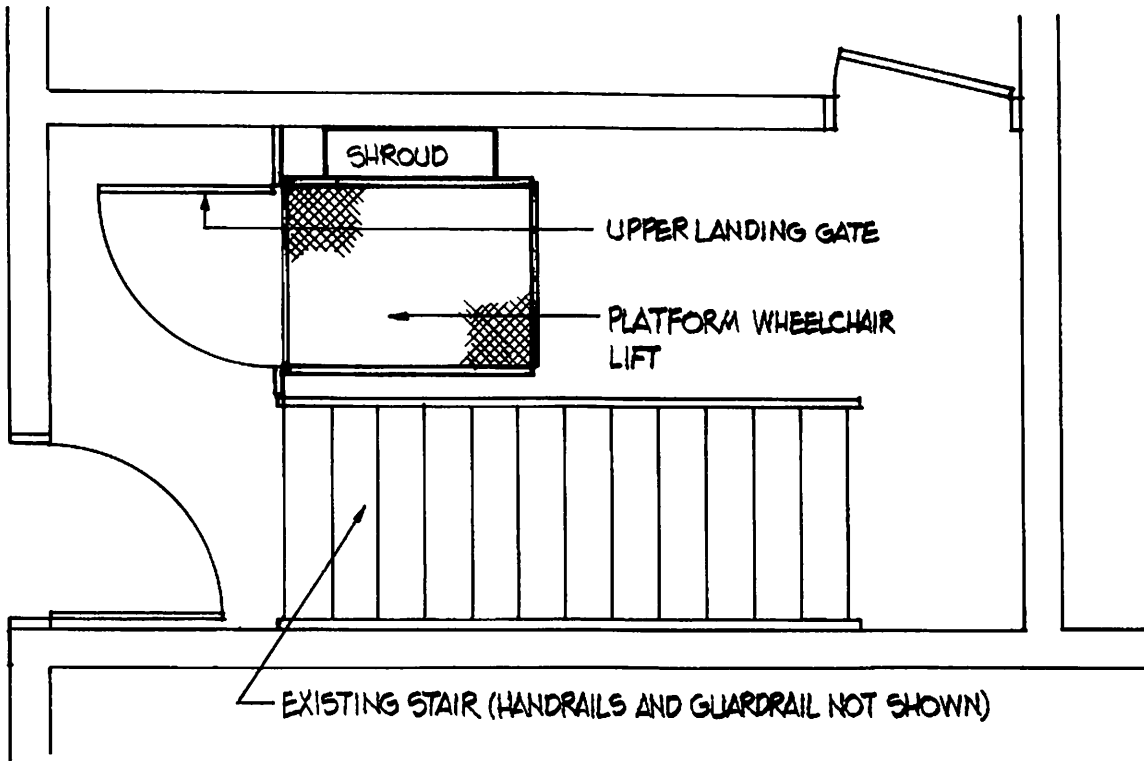
41.5 PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS

41.5.1 The use of a platform wheelchair lift shall not be limited to the scope of 15.11.1.1(1) through 15.11.1.1(5). Wheelchair lifts may be used to provide access where existing site or other constraints make installation of a ramp or elevator Technically Infeasible.

**Vol. I-C, Pg. 151;
ADAAG 4.1.3(5),
Exception 4(d);
ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(g)**

41.5.2 A platform wheelchair lift, whether interior or exterior, shall comply with 15.11.1.2 and 15.11.2.

Cross-Reference

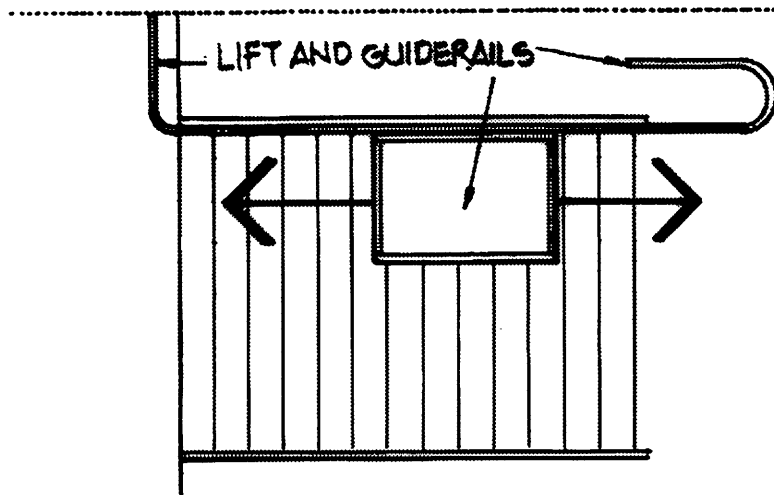


41.5.1- THE USE OF A PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFT SHALL NOT BE LIMITED TO THE SCOPE OF 15.11.1.1(1) THROUGH 15.11.1.1(5). WHEELCHAIR LIFTS MAY BE USED TO PROVIDE ACCESS WHERE EXISTING SITE OR OTHER CONSTRAINTS MAKE INSTALLATION OF A RAMP OR ELEVATOR TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE.

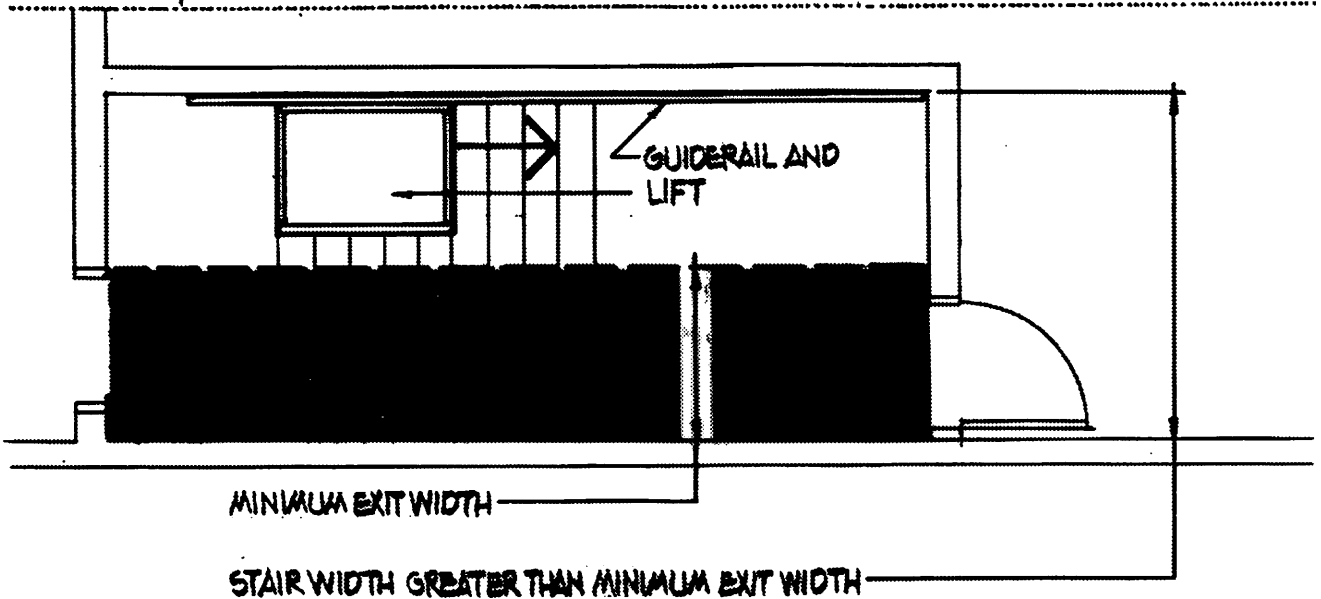
41.5.2- A PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFT, WHETHER INTERIOR OR EXTERIOR, SHALL COMPLY WITH 15.11.1.2 AND 15.11.2.

41.5- PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS- PART 1

"MEANS OF EGRESS—A CONTINUOUS AND UNOBSTRUCTED WAY OF EXIT TRAVEL FROM ANY POINT IN A BUILDING TO A PUBLIC WAY...."; (SEE VOLUME I) THEREFORE....



1 FOR A STAIR THAT PROVIDES ACCESS ONLY, AN INCLINED LIFT MAY BE USED. (MONUMENTAL STAIR SHOWN)



IF AN EXIT HAS A TOTAL WIDTH GREATER THAN THE MINIMUM WIDTH REQUIRED FOR EGRESS, THEN AN INCLINED LIFT MAY BE USED.

2 NO PART OF THE LIFT SHALL, AT ANY TIME, OVERLAP ANY PART OF THE MINIMUM EGRESS WIDTH.

3 IF THE MINIMUM EGRESS WIDTH AND STAIR WIDTH ARE THE SAME, THEN PLACEMENT OF A LIFT ON THE STAIR SHALL NOT BE PERMITTED.

4.5- PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS-PART 2

**CHAPTER 42
ASSEMBLY SEATING**

42.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

42.1.1 Altered Places of Assembly having four (4) or more fixed seats shall comply with this Code.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(b)**

42.2 SEATING FOR PERSONS USING WHEELCHAIRS

42.2.1 INACCESSIBLE PLACES OF ASSEMBLY

42.2.1.1 Except for the conditions established in 42.5.1 and 42.6, alterations shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 22.

**USDoJ 36.308(b);
ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(b)**

***42.2.2 ACCESSIBLE PLACES OF ASSEMBLY**

***42.2.2.1 Alterations shall require that the number of wheelchair accessible seating spaces be computed as follows:**

[<i>Number Of Wheelchair</i>]	[<i>Number Of Existing</i>]	[<i>Number Of Wheelchair</i>]	Accounts
[<i>Seating Places</i>]	- [<i>Wheelchair Seating</i>]	= [<i>Seating Spaces to Be</i>]	For Chap.
[<i>Req'd. By 22.1.1</i>]	[<i>Spaces</i>]	[<i>Added</i>]	11 X And
			Vol. I-C

***42.2.2.1.1 If the final number is zero (0), or a negative number, then additional wheelchair seating areas are not required. (NOTE: See, also, 42.5.1 and 42.6.)**

***42.3 ACCESSIBLE AISLE SEATING**

(NOTE: From September 1, 1973 until March 31, 1989 this Code required accessible aisle seating equal to one percent [1%] of the total seat count. From April 1, 1989 until the adoption of this Code only Places of Assembly having 201 or more seats were required to provide accessible aisle seating, equal to one percent [1%] of the total seat count.)

Explanatory Note

***42.3.1 For Places of Assembly constructed between September 1, 1973 and March 31, 1989, and those constructed on or after April 1, 1989 having 201 or more seats, the number of accessible aisle seats shall be maintained. The existing seats shall be altered to comply with 22.1.2, or new seats shall be installed.**

N.C. Bldg. Code
= ADAAG

***42.3.2 For Places of Assembly constructed on or after April 1, 1989 having four (4) to two hundred (200) seats, accessible aisle seating shall be provided in compliance with 22.1.2.**

Applies ADAAG
4.1.3(19)
To Vol. I-C, 6.1(b)

42.3.3 Accessible aisle seating, whether existing or new, shall be identified in compliance with 22.1.2.1. Signage notifying patrons of the availability of such seating shall comply with 22.1.2.2.

Cross-Reference

42.4 ACCESS TO PERFORMING AREAS

(NOTE: Prior to April 1, 1989 this Code did not require access to areas used by performers.)

N.C. Bldg. Code Chap.
11X Did Not Address Access
To Performing Areas

42.4.1 Alterations to a Place of Assembly constructed on or before March 31, 1989 shall comply with 22.1.4.

42.4.1.1 If it is Technically Infeasible to alter all performing areas to be on an accessible route, then a minimum of one of each type of performing area shall be made accessible.

ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(f)(ii)

***42.4.2** *For alterations to a Place of Assembly constructed on or after April 1, 1989 the accessible route to performing areas shall be maintained.*

(NOTE: This Paragraph is not to be interpreted to mean that the accessible route must remain in its original location. The scope of the alteration may require that the route itself be altered [e.g., relocated, re-directed, made longer or shorter, etc.]; however, under no circumstances shall this accessible route be deleted.)

Accounts For
Vol. I-C, 6.1(g)

42.5 INTEGRATION, DISPERSAL, AND COMPANION SEATING

42.5.1 If dispersing wheelchair seating areas is Technically Infeasible, then accessible seating areas may be clustered. Wheelchair seating areas shall offer a choice of admission prices and lines of sight comparable to those available to the general public.

(NOTE: Paragraph 22.2.2 requires wheelchair seating areas to be provided in more than one location only if the total seating capacity exceeds three hundred [300]. Therefore, this Paragraph cannot be interpreted to require dispersal of wheelchair seating in an altered Place of Assembly having a total seating capacity of 300 or less.)

USDoJ
36.308(a)(1)(ii)(B),
ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(f)(i)

FR 7/26/91 At
35572

42.5.2 A minimum of one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating space.

ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(f)(i)

42.6 MEANS OF EGRESS

42.6.1 If additional Means of Egress are not required by Volumes I and/or IX, then the accessible route to each accessible seating area shall also serve as the Means of Egress.

USDoJ 36.308(a)(1)(ii)(C);
ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(f)(i)

***42.6.2** *Means of Egress added by Volumes I and/or IX shall comply with 38.2.2.*

Addition = New
Construction

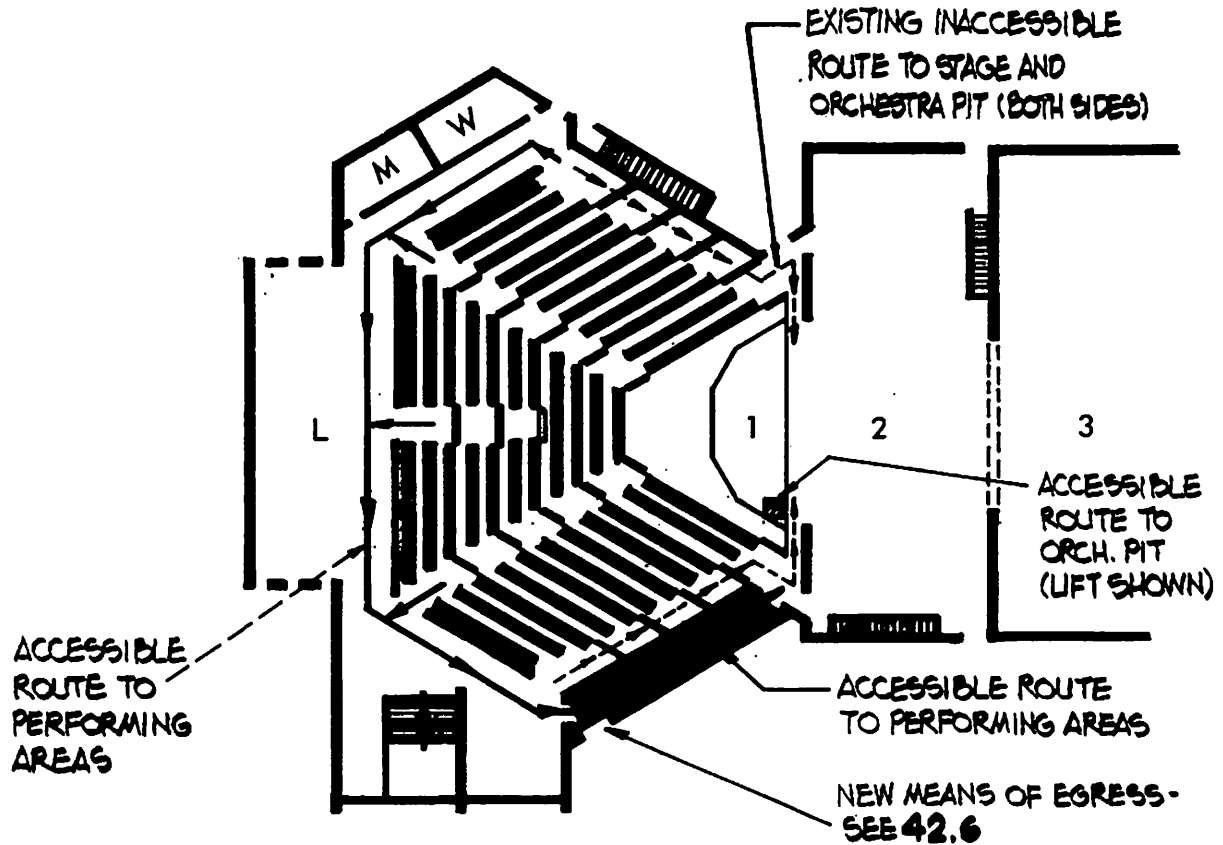
42.6.3 For buildings and facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system, see 6.3.3.1(1)

Cross-Reference

LEGEND:

- | | | | |
|--------|----------------|--------|---------------|
| L..... | LOBBY | 1..... | ORCHESTRA PIT |
| M..... | MEN'S TOILET | 2..... | STAGE |
| W..... | WOMEN'S TOILET | 3..... | BACKSTAGE |

424.1.1- IF IT IS TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE TO ALTER ALL PERFORMING AREAS TO BE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE, THEN A MINIMUM OF ONE OF EACH TYPE OF PERFORMING AREA SHALL BE MADE ACCESSIBLE.



42.4-ACCESS TO PERFORMING AREAS

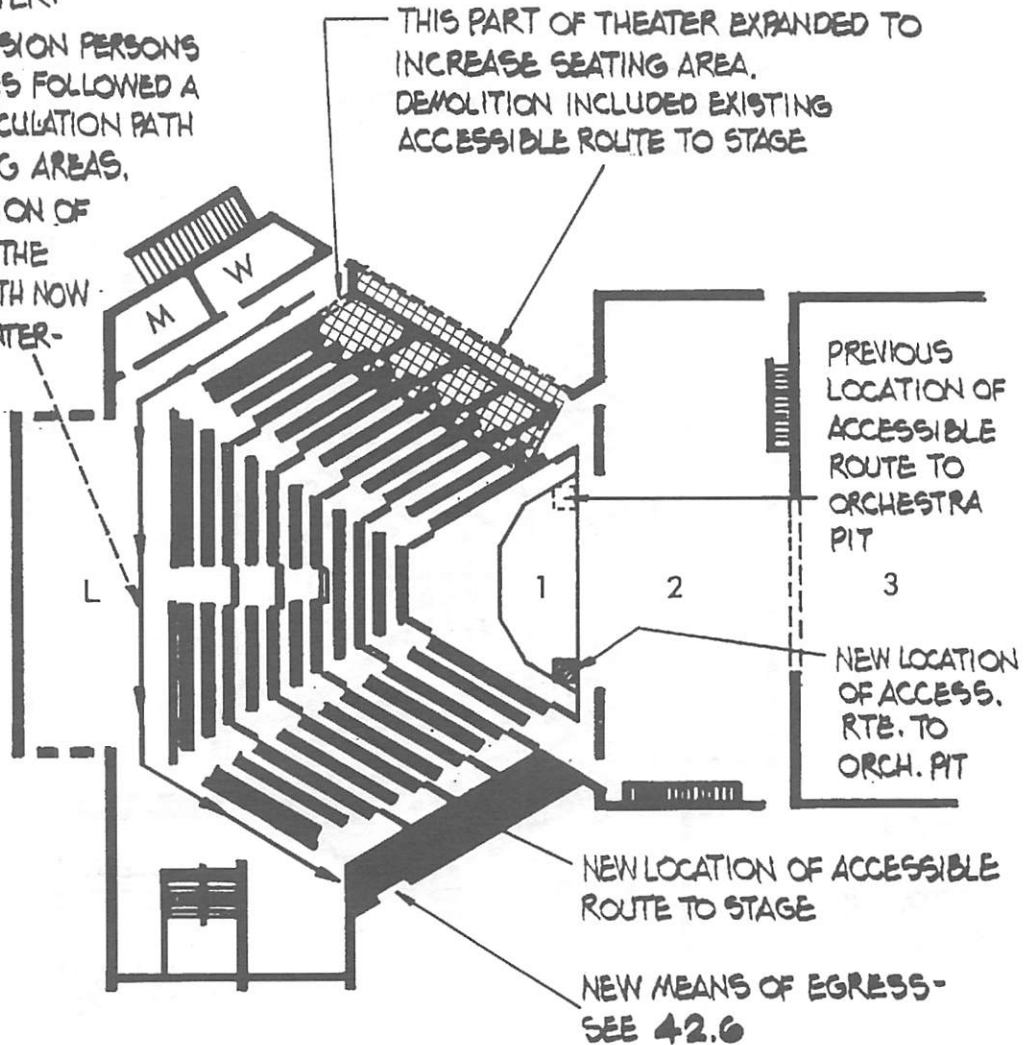
LEGEND:

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| L.....LOBBY | 1.....ORCHESTRA PIT |
| M.....MEN'S TOILET | 2.....STAGE |
| W.....WOMEN'S TOILET | 3.....BACKSTAGE |

FOR THIS THEATER:

PRIOR TO EXPANSION PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES FOLLOWED A CLOCK-WISE CIRCULATION PATH TO PERFORMING AREAS.

UPON COMPLETION OF CONSTRUCTION, THE CIRCULATION PATH NOW GOES IN A COUNTER-CLOCKWISE DIRECTION.



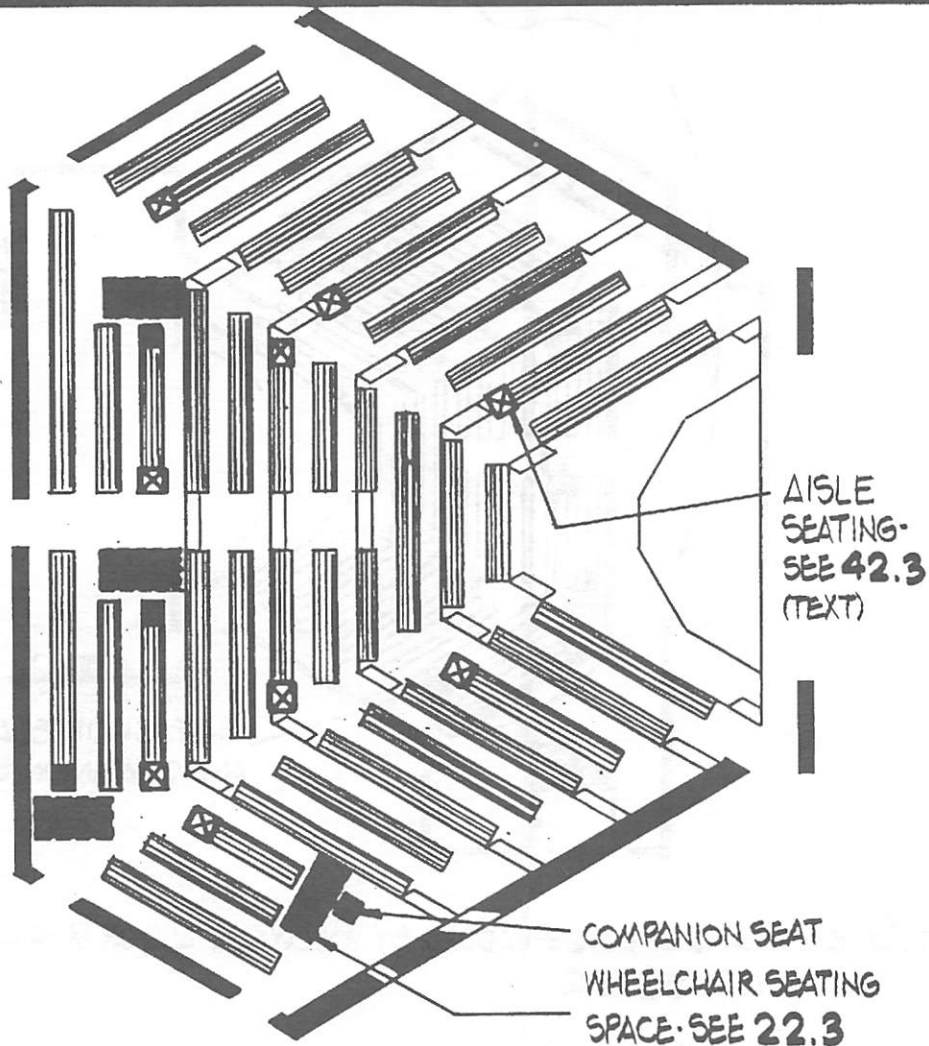
42.4.2- FOR ALTERATIONS TO A PLACE OF ASSEMBLY CONSTRUCTED ON OR AFTER APRIL 1, 1989 THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO PERFORMING AREAS SHALL BE MAINTAINED.

(NOTE: THIS PARAGRAPH IS NOT TO BE INTERPRETED TO MEAN THAT THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE MUST REMAIN IN ITS ORIGINAL LOCATION. THE SCOPE OF THE ALTERATION MAY REQUIRE THAT THE ROUTE ITSELF BE ALTERED [E.G., RELOCATED, RE-DIRECTED, MADE LONGER OR SHORTER, ETC.]; HOWEVER, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL IT BE DELETED.)

42.4- ACCESS TO PERFORMING AREAS

42.5.1 IF DISPERSING WHEELCHAIR SEATING IS *TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE*, THEN ACCESSIBLE SEATING AREAS MAY BE CLUSTERED. TO THE EXTENT THAT IT IS NOT *TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE* WHEELCHAIR SEATING AREAS SHALL, TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT FEASIBLE, OFFER A CHOICE OF ADMISSION PRICES AND LINES OF SIGHT COMPARABLE TO THOSE AVAILABLE TO THE GENERAL PUBLIC.

(NOTE: PARAGRAPH 22.2.2 REQUIRES WHEELCHAIR SEATING AREAS TO BE PROVIDED IN MORE THAN ONE LOCATION ONLY IF THE TOTAL SEATING CAPACITY EXCEEDS 300. THEREFORE, THIS PARAGRAPH CANNOT BE INTERPRETED TO REQUIRE DISPERSAL OF WHEELCHAIR SEATING IN AN ALTERED PLACE OF ASSEMBLY HAVING A TOTAL SEATING CAPACITY OF 300 OR LESS.)



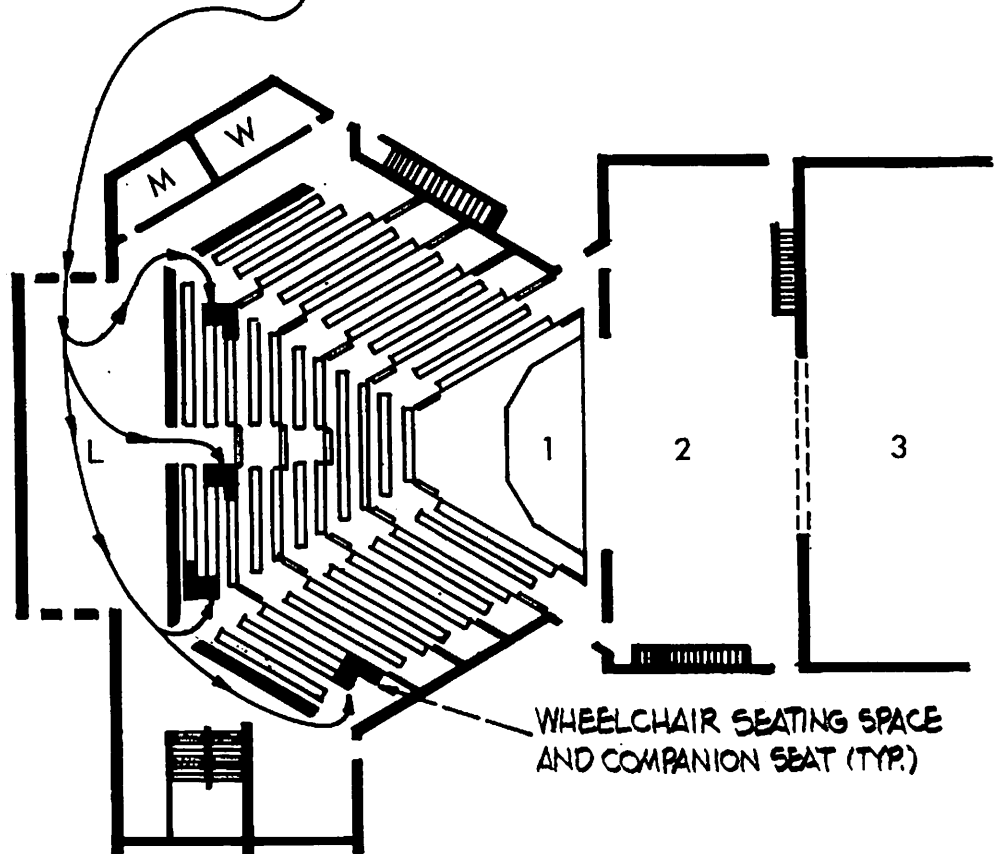
42.5.2 A MINIMUM OF ONE COMPANION SEAT SHALL BE PROVIDED NEXT TO EACH WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACE.

42.5 INTEGRATION, DISPERSAL, AND COMPANION SEATING

LEGEND:

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| L.....LOBBY | 1.....ORCHESTRA PIT |
| M.....MEN'S TOILET | 2.....STAGE |
| W.....WOMEN'S TOILET | 3.....BACKSTAGE |

42.6.1- IF ADDITIONAL MEANS OF EGRESS IS NOT REQUIRED BY VOLUMES I AND/OR IX, THEN THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO EACH ACCESSIBLE SEATING AREA SHALL ALSO SERVE AS THE MEANS OF EGRESS.



42.6.2- MEANS OF EGRESS ADDED BY VOLUMES I AND/OR IX SHALL COMPLY WITH 38 2 2.

42.6.3- FOR BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES HAVING A SUPERVISED AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SEE 6.3.3.1(1).

42.6- MEANS OF EGRESS

**CHAPTER 43
RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS**

43.1 RAISED/DEPRESSED DINING AREAS AND OUTDOOR SEATING AREAS

*** 43.1.1 *If existing accessible raised or depressed dining areas are altered, then access to those areas shall be maintained. (See, also, the NOTE following 42.4.2.)***

**Accounts For
Chapter 11X, Vol. I-C**

43.1.2 For alterations to existing facilities having inaccessible raised or depressed dining areas or to all parts of outdoor seating areas, accessibility to those areas shall not be required provided that the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by the general public. The accessible space shall not be restricted to use by persons with disabilities.

ADAAG 5.4

**CHAPTER 44
TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES**

****(NOTE: Transit system operators are required by Federal law to designate selected existing stations [known as Key Stations] for the purposes of making the transit system accessible to, and usable by, persons with disabilities. Key Station selection and alterations required to provide access to and within vehicles and cars are the responsibility of the transit system operator in compliance with criteria established by the United States Department of Transportation. The authority of the Code Enforcement Official shall be limited solely to ensuring that alteration of the Key Station complies with the applicable requirements of this Code.)***

**Defines C.E.O.
Responsibilities**

44.1 DISPROPORTIONALITY, PATH OF TRAVEL, AND AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION

44.1.1 DISPROPORTIONALITY

44.1.1.1 Chapter 34 shall be applicable to alterations of an Area(s) of Primary Function in transportation buildings or facilities, whether privately or publicly owned.

**ADAAG 10.3.3(1);
USDoT 37.43(a)(2),
37.45**

44.1.1.2 For the purposes of transportation facilities, Disproportionality and Maximum Extent Feasible shall be considered relevant only for expenses related to accessibility for passengers. Non-passenger improvements such as, but not limited to, tracks, trackbeds, signal lights, bus driveways, aircraft maintenance hangers, shall not be considered relevant.

**FR 9/6/91 At
45739**

44.1.1.3 For secondary services (e.g., newsstands, souvenir shops, food service establishments, etc.) located in public areas, see 34.2.4.

**USDoT 37.45
(Refers To ADA Title III)**

44.1.2 PATH OF TRAVEL

44.1.2.1 In addition 34.2.3 and 34.2.3.1, Path of Travel shall also include:

- (1) Clear floor paths through corridors;
- (2) Waiting areas;
- (3) Concourses and other improved areas;
- (4) Parking access aisles;
- (5) Elevators and lifts;
- (6) Bridges, tunnels, or other passageways between platforms;

USDoT 37.43(d)

or a combination of these and other elements.

44.1.3 AREA OF PRIMARY FUNCTION

44.1.3.1 In addition to 2.2.29 and 34.2.2.1.1, an Area of Primary Function shall also include, but is not necessarily limited to, the following:

- (1) Ticket purchase and collection areas;
 - (2) Passenger waiting areas;
 - (3) Train or bus platforms;
 - (4) Baggage check-in and return areas; and
 - (5) Employment areas (e.g., administrative offices, customer relations, security offices, personnel, etc.).
- (NOTE: See, also, 1.2.11.2[2].)

USDoT 37.43(c)

44.2 BUS PASSENGER PADS AND ROUTE IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

44.2.1 Passenger pad locations shall be chosen such that, to the Maximum Extent Feasible, the areas where lifts or ramps are to be deployed complies with 24.2.2.

ADAAG 10.2.2(1)

44.2.2 If new bus route identification signs are installed, or if existing signs are replaced, then such signs shall comply with 24.2.4.

ADAAG 10.2.2(2)

44.3 PASSENGER TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS

44.3.1 CIRCULATION PATH

***44.3.1.1** *If complying with 24.3.2.1 is Technically Infeasible and a circulation path is provided that is separate from that used by the general public, then signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the route to the accessible entrance shall be provided. The accessible entrance shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3(2).*

Derived From:
ADAAG 10.3.1(1),
Last Part

ADAAG 4.1.2(7)(c)

44.3.2 NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

44.3.2.1 Commuter rail, intercity rail, light rail, and rapid rail stations shall provide a minimum of one accessible route from an accessible entrance to those areas necessary for use of the transportation system.

ADAAG
10.3.2(1)

44.3.3 ACCESSIBLE ROUTE-FEATURES

44.3.3.1 The accessible route required by 44.3.2.1 shall comply with the following table, as applicable:

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOUND IN SECTION/PARAGRAPH</u>	
Track Crossing	24.3.2.3	
Elevators (1)	24.3.4	
Station Entrance Signs	24.3.7.1	
Station Identification Signs	24.3.7.2	
Route Signage	24.3.7.3	
Illumination	24.3.7.4	
Fare Machines and Gates (2)	24.3.8.1 and 24.3.8.2	ADAAG 10.3.2(2)
Ticketing Areas	24.3.8.3	
Baggage Check-In/Retrieval	24.3.8.4	
Detectable Warnings (3)	24.3.9	
Public Address Systems	24.3.12.2	
Clocks	24.3.12.3	
Text Telephone (TDD)	24.3.12.4	
*(1) With respect to escalators (24.3.5), <i>replacing an existing unit with one that is new could be an extremely difficult and costly operation. If escalator components are replaced, then the unit shall be made to comply only with 24.3.5.2 and 24.3.5.3 so that it can accommodate some degree of disability (persons who use canes or crutches, persons with visual impairments, etc.).</i>		Derived From FR 9/6/91 At 45515 "That Which Can Be Made Accessible Shall Be Made Accessible."
(2) If it is Technically Infeasible to locate the fare collection system at, or adjacent to, the accessible entrance, then the collection system shall be located at any point along the accessible route leading to those areas necessary for use of the transportation system.		ADAAG 10.3.2(3); Access Board (Via Telephone) 1/28/93
(3) In transportation facilities having an existing platform-edge detectable warning, compliance with 24.3.9 shall be required only if the alterations affect, or could affect, the existing detectable warning.		FR 9/6/91 At 45514

44.3.3.2 DIRECT CONNECTIONS

44.3.3.2.1 New direct connections to commercial, retail, or residential facilities shall, to the Maximum Extent Feasible, have an accessible route from the point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public.

**ADAAG
10.3.2(5)**

44.3.4 PLATFORM/VEHICLE FLOOR LEVELS AND HORIZONTAL SEPARATION: COMMUTER RAIL, INTER-CITY RAIL, LIGHT RAIL, AND RAPID RAIL

44.3.4.1 NEW VEHICLES OPERATING IN KEY STATIONS

44.3.4.1.1 For a minimum of one door of each vehicle or car required to be accessible, the vertical difference between the platform finished surface and the vehicle finished floor shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum either up or down measured under normal passenger load conditions. A 3 inches (75 mm) maximum horizontal gap may be permitted between the platform edge and at least one door of each vehicle required to be accessible measured when the car is at rest.

ADAAG 10.3.2(4)

44.3.4.2 RETROFITTED VEHICLES OPERATING IN KEY STATIONS

44.3.4.2.1 For vehicles or cars retrofitted to meet the Federal "One-Car-Per-Train" Rule, the vertical difference between the platform finished surface and the vehicle finished floor shall be 2 inches (50 mm) maximum either up or down measured when the car is at rest under fifty percent (50%) passenger load. A 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontal gap may be permitted between the platform edge and the vehicle measured when the car is at rest.

**ADAAG
10.3.2(4),
Exception 1**

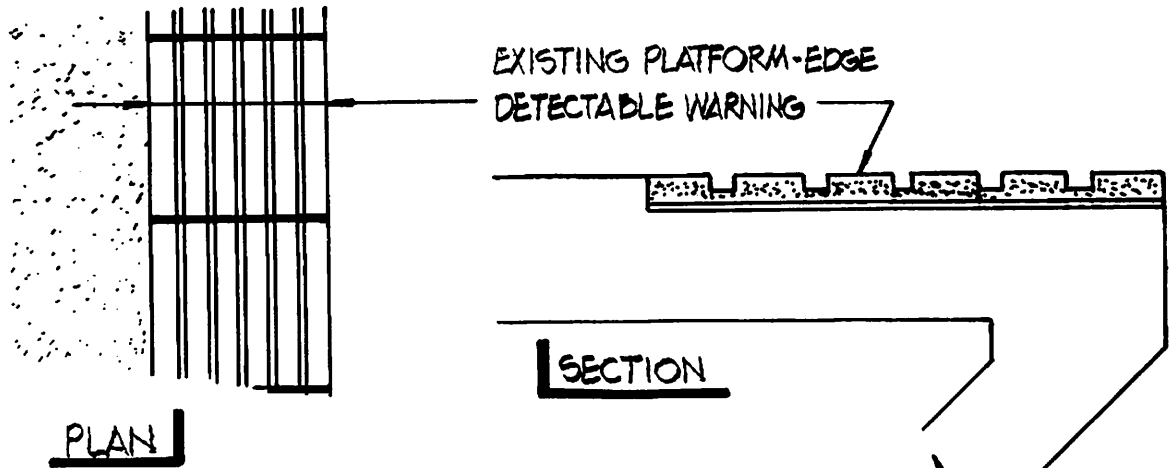
44.3.4.3 AUTOMATED GUIDEWAY TRANSIT (AGT): RETROFITTED VEHICLES OPERATING IN KEY STATIONS

44.3.4.3.1 If AGT transit systems are used as a light or rapid rail system, then the vertical difference shall be 2 inches (50 mm) maximum either up or down measured when the vehicle is at rest under fifty percent (50%) normal passenger load. A 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontal gap may be permitted between the platform edge and the vehicle measured when the car is at rest.

**USDOT:
1192.173(d),
38.173(d)**

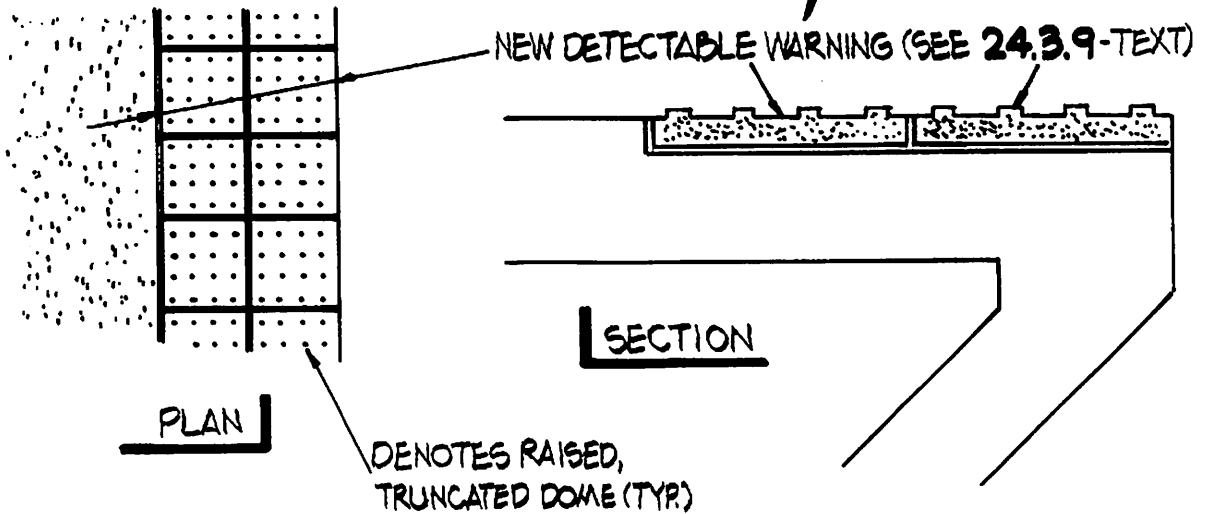
44.3.4.4 If the vertical differences between platform/vehicle floor levels and horizontal gap cannot be maintained due to operational or structural necessity (or both), then the requirements of 44.3.4.1, 44.3.4.2 and 44.3.4.3 shall be satisfied by the use of mini-high platforms, car-borne or platform mounted lifts, ramps, bridge plates, or similar manually deployed devices that provide compliance with those Paragraphs. (For "operational or structural necessity" see the NOTE following 24.3.10.5.)

**ADAAG
10.3.2(4),
Exception 2**

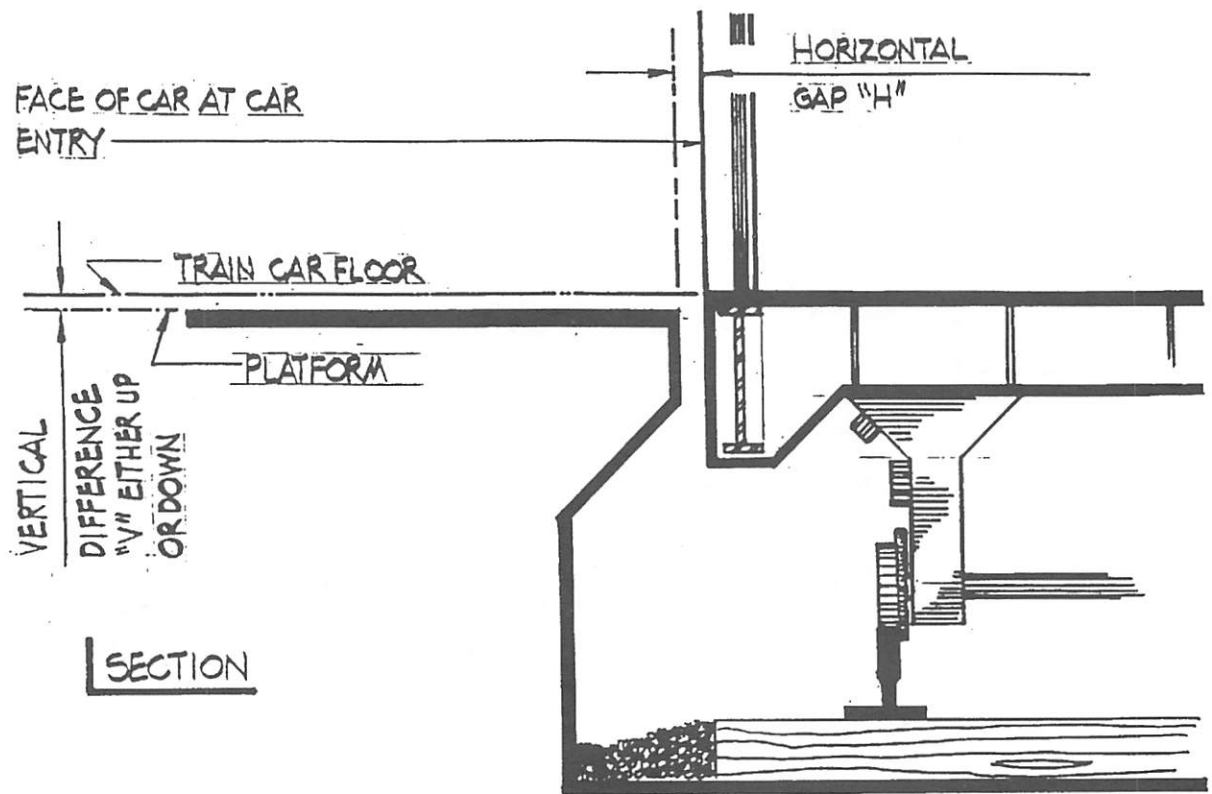


44.3.3.1, NOTE 3-

IN TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES HAVING AN EXISTING PLATFORM-EDGE DETECTABLE WARNING, COMPLIANCE WITH 24.3.9 SHALL BE REQUIRED ONLY IF THE ALTERATIONS AFFECT, OR COULD AFFECT, THE EXISTING DETECTABLE WARNING.



44.3.3- ACCESSIBLE ROUTE-FEATURES



PLATFORM/VEHICLE FLOOR LEVELS AND HORIZONTAL SEPARATION			
COMMUTER RAIL, INTER-CITY RAIL, LIGHT RAIL, RAPID RAIL			
	MAXIMUM "V"	MAXIMUM "H"	REMARKS
New Vehicles	1-1/2 Inches	3 Inches	Minimum One Door Of Each Car/Vehicle
Operating In Key Stations*	Under Normal Passenger Load		
(*Transit System Designates Key Station, Not Building Code)			
Retrofitted Vehicles	2 Inches	4 Inches	"One Car Per Train" Rule Is Transit System Obligation, Not Bldg. Code Requirement
Operating In Key Stations*	Under 50% Passenger Load		
(*Transit System Designates Key Station, Not Building Code)			
AGT ("People Mover")	2 Inches	4 Inches	For AGT Used As Light Or Rapid Rail
	Under 50% Passenger Load		

44.3.4- PLATFORM/VEHICLE FLOOR LEVELS AND HORIZONTAL SEPARATION
 COMMUTER RAIL, INTER-CITY RAIL, LIGHT RAIL, AND RAPID RAIL
 (ILLUSTRATION SHOWS 44.3.4.1- 44.3.4.3; SEE TEXT FOR 44.3.4.4)

**CHAPTER 45
BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE**

(NOTE: Editions of this Code in effect prior to April 1, 1989 did not require accessible check-out aisles. From April 1, 1989 until the effective date of this Code, a minimum of one accessible "standard" check-out aisle and [if provided] one accessible "express" aisle were required, each to be identified by the International Symbol Of Accessibility "...permanently mounted and readily visible...".)

Note On
Vol. I-C,
7.2(i),
7.2(j)

**45.1 CHECK-OUT AISLES: GROSS AREA OF SALES SPACE 5,000 SQUARE FEET
(465 SQUARE METERS) OR GREATER**

45.1.1 For alterations to buildings and facilities having inaccessible check-out aisles, a minimum of one check-out aisle of each design shall be made accessible until the number of accessible aisles equals the number required by 26.3.1.1 if that facility were new construction. (NOTE: For "...check-out aisles of each design...", see the NOTE following 26.3.1.1.)

ADAAG 7.3,
2nd Exception

***45.1.2** *For alterations to buildings and facilities having accessible check-out aisles, the number of accessible aisles of each design to be added shall be computed as follows:*

Accounts For
Vol. I, 7.2(i)

$$\begin{array}{r} [\text{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\text{Check-Out Aisles}] \\ [\text{Required By 26.3.1.1}] \end{array} - \begin{array}{r} [\text{Number Of Existing}] \\ [\text{Accessible Check-Out}] \\ [\text{Aisles}] \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} [\text{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\text{Check-Out Aisles Of}] \\ [\text{Each Design To Be}] \\ [\text{Added}] \end{array}$$

***45.1.2.1** *If the number of existing accessible check-out aisles of each design equals the number required by 26.3.1.1, then providing additional accessible aisles shall not be necessary.*

No Increase In
Code Minimum

45.1.3 If the alterations affect, or could affect, existing accessible check-out aisles, then they shall be made to comply with 26.3.2.

USDoJ 36.402(b)(2)

**45.2 CHECK-OUT AISLES: GROSS AREA OF SALES SPACE LESS THAN 5,000 SQUARE
FEET (465 SQUARE METERS)**

45.2.1 For alterations to buildings and facilities a minimum of one accessible check-out aisle shall be provided.

ADAAG 7.3,
1st Exception

45.2.2 Existing facilities having an accessible check-out aisle shall not be required to comply with 26.3.2 unless the alterations affect, or could affect, that accessible aisle.

USDoJ 36.402(b)(2)

CHAPTER 46 DRESSING ROOMS

46.1 Alterations to dressing rooms shall comply with 27.1.1.1, and the applicable requirements of 27.1.2 through 27.1.5.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(1)(b)**

46.1.1 If it is Technically Infeasible to comply with 27.1.1.1, then a minimum of one dressing room for each sex shall be made accessible on each floor or level where dressing rooms are located. If only unisex dressing rooms are provided, then accessible unisex dressing rooms may be used to comply with this requirement.

**ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(h)**

46.2 If the accessible dressing room(s) are not located within the same cluster as all other dressing rooms, then inaccessible dressing room areas shall be provided with signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the accessible dressing room(s)

**Derived From:
ADAAG 4.1.2(7)(c);
4.1.2(7)(d);
4.1.3(16)(b)**

**CHAPTER 47
MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES**

47.1 ACCESSIBLE PARKING

47.1.1 BUILDINGS/UNITS WITHOUT ACCESSIBLE PARKING

47.1.1.1 Alterations to inaccessible medical facilities shall require compliance with Chapter 28 and the applicable requirements of this Code. USDoJ 36.402(a);
35.151(b)

47.1.2 BUILDINGS/UNITS WITH ACCESSIBLE PARKING

***47.1.2.1** *For accessible medical facilities the number of accessible parking spaces to be added shall be calculated as follows:* Accounts For
Chap. 11X, Vol. I-C

$$\begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of Parking}] \\ [\text{Spaces Required By}] \\ [\text{28.1.4.1 Or 28.1.4.2}] \end{array} - \begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of Existing}] \\ [\text{Accessible Spaces}] \\ [] \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of}] \\ [\text{Accessible Spaces}] \\ [\text{To Be Added}] \end{array}$$

***47.1.2.1.1** *If the final number is one (1) or more, then the number of accessible spaces to be added shall include van accessible spaces in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.* Adds ADAAG
4.1.2(5)(b)
To Chapter
11X, Vol. I-C

***47.1.2.1.2** *If the final number is zero (0), or a negative number, then the number of existing accessible spaces to be made van accessible shall comply with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.* 11X, Vol. I-C

47.2 ALTERATIONS OF, OR ADDITIONS TO, DEPARTMENTS, WINGS, OR AREAS

47.2.1 For alterations or additions of patient rooms that are part of a planned alteration of an inaccessible department, wing, or other discrete area, the number of rooms required to be accessible shall comply with the applicable percentage for accessible rooms required by 28.2.1 for the given facility until the number of accessible rooms equals the overall number that would be required if the facility were new construction. (E.G.: Alterations to an inaccessible 40-room neurology department requires that four accessible rooms be provided [40 x .10 = 4]. The addition of a 56-room long term care unit requires that 28 accessible rooms be provided [56 x .50 = 28].) ADAAG
6.1(4)(a)

***47.2.1.1** *For alterations of, or additions to, an entire department, wing, or other discrete area having existing accessible patient rooms, the number of accessible patient rooms to be added shall be computed as follows:* Accounts For
Chap. 11X,
Vol. I-C

$$[1] \begin{array}{l} [\text{Total Number Of}] \\ [\text{Rooms Added Or}] \\ [\text{Altered}] \end{array} \times \begin{array}{l} [\text{Percentage Required}] \\ [\text{By 28.2.1}] \\ [] \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\text{Patient Rooms Required}] \\ [] \end{array}$$

$$[2] \begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\text{Patient Rooms Required}] \\ [] \end{array} - \begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of Existing}] \\ [\text{Accessible Patient}] \\ [\text{Rooms}] \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} [\text{Number Of Accessible}] \\ [\text{Rooms to Be Added}] \\ [] \end{array}$$

47.2.1.2 An alteration of, or addition to, an entire department, wing, or other discrete area that affects, or could affect, existing accessible patient rooms shall require that the affected rooms comply with 28.4, 28.5, and 28.6.

**USDoJ 36.402(a);
35.151(b)**

47.3 ALTERATION OR ADDITION OF AN INDIVIDUAL PATIENT ROOM

47.3.1 If a patient room is altered or added individually (i.e., not as part of an alteration/addition of an entire department, wing, or other discrete area), then it shall comply with 28.4, 28.5, and 28.6.

**ADAAG
6.1(4)(b)**

47.3.1.1 Compliance with 47.3.1 shall not be required if either of the following conditions are present:

- (1) The number of existing accessible patient rooms within the department, wing, or area containing the altered room equals the number of accessible patient rooms that would be required if the percentage requirement of 28.2.1 were applied to that department, wing, or other discrete area; or,
- (2) The number of existing accessible patient rooms in the facility equals the overall number that would be required by 28.2.1 if that facility were new construction.

**ADAAG
6.1(4)(b)a**

**ADAAG Access
Survey, Pg. 24-3**

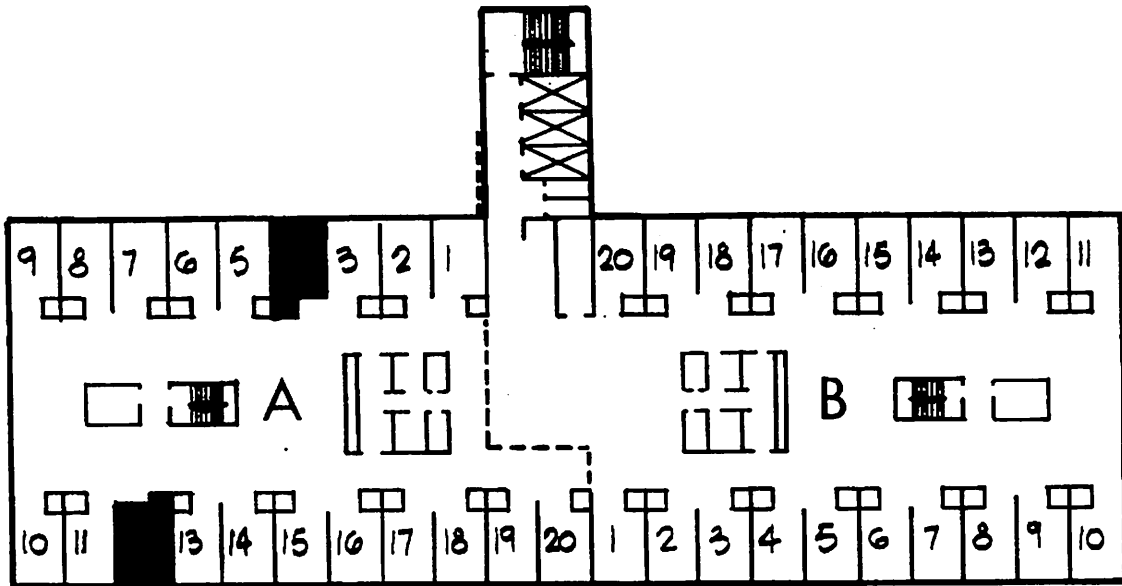
**ADAAG
6.1(4)(b)b**

EXAMPLE 1: A 40-room psychiatric department having four (4) accessible patient rooms is planning to alter one of the inaccessible patient rooms. Since the number of existing accessible patient rooms (4) equals the number required by 28.2.1 (i.e., $40 \times .10 = 4$), the planned alteration does not require compliance with this Code.

EXAMPLE 2: A 40-room rehabilitation center has two (2) accessible patient rooms. A forty-first patient room is to be created from unused administrative space. The new room shall comply with this Code since 28.2.1 requires one hundred percent (100%) of the patient rooms in this type of facility to be accessible.

47.4 For 47.2 and 47.3, if toilet/bathing rooms are part of patient bedrooms which are altered or added and required to be accessible, then each such toilet/bathing room shall be made to comply with 28.6.

**ADAAG
6.1(4)(b)b**



EXISTING INACCESSIBLE HOSPITAL FLOOR ALTERED TO:

DEPARTMENT A - 20 ROOM
NEUROLOGY DEPT.
PERCENTAGE REQUIRED BY 28.2.1: 10%
MIN. NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ROOMS -
 $20 \times .10 = 2$

DEPARTMENT B - 20 ROOM DEPT.
TREATING MOBILITY
CONDITIONS
PERCENTAGE REQUIRED BY 28.2.1:
100%
ALL 20 ROOMS SHALL BE MADE
ACCESSIBLE

47.2.1- FOR ALTERATIONS OR ADDITIONS OF PATIENT ROOMS THAT ARE PART OF A PLANNED ALTERATION OF AN INACCESSIBLE DEPARTMENT, WING, OR OTHER DISCRETE AREA, THE NUMBER OF ROOMS REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE SHALL COMPLY WITH THE APPLICABLE PERCENTAGE FOR ACCESSIBLE ROOMS REQUIRED BY 28.2.1 FOR THE GIVEN FACILITY UNTIL THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE ROOMS EQUALS THE OVERALL NUMBER THAT WOULD BE REQUIRED IF THE FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION.

47.2- ALTERATIONS OF, OR ADDITIONS TO, DEPARTMENTS, WINGS, OR AREAS

47.2.1.1 - FOR ALTERATIONS OF, OR ADDITIONS TO, AN ENTIRE DEPARTMENT, WING, OR OTHER DISCRETE AREA HAVING EXISTING ACCESSIBLE PATIENT ROOMS, THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PATIENT ROOMS TO BE ADDED SHALL BE COMPUTED AS FOLLOWS:

$$[1] \quad \boxed{\text{TOTAL NO. OF ROOMS ADDED OR ALTERED}} \times \boxed{\% \text{ REQUIRED BY 28.2.1}} = \boxed{\text{NO. OF ACCESSIBLE PATIENT RMS. REQ'D.}}$$

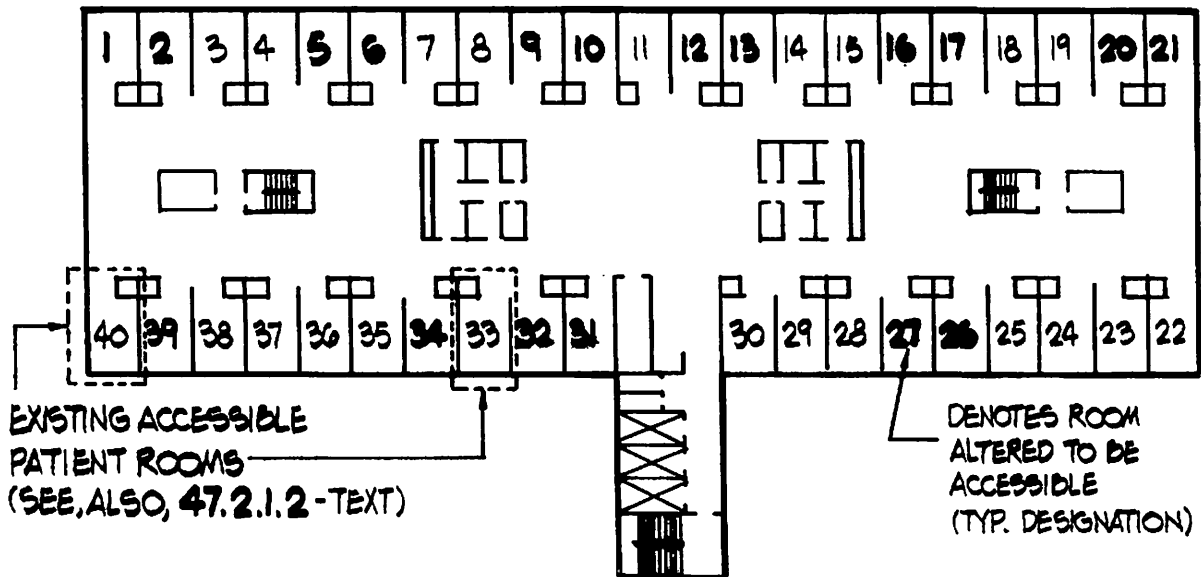
$$[2] \quad \boxed{\text{NO. OF ACCESSIBLE PATIENT RMS. REQ'D.}} - \boxed{\text{NO. OF EXISTING ACCESSIBLE PATIENT RMS.}} = \boxed{\text{NO. OF ACCESSIBLE RMS. TO BE ADDED}}$$

EXAMPLE: 40-ROOM GENERAL HOSPITAL FLOOR HAVING 2 EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ROOMS IS ALTERED TO SERVE AS A LONG-TERM CARE UNIT

$$[1] \quad \boxed{40 \text{ ROOMS TOTAL}} \times \boxed{.50} = \boxed{20 \text{ ROOMS}}$$

$$[2] \quad \boxed{20} - \boxed{2} = \boxed{18}$$

18 NEW ACCESSIBLE ROOMS + 2 EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ROOMS = 20 ACCESSIBLE ROOMS
 (▲ NO. REQ'D IF FACILITY WERE NEW CONST.)



47.2 - ALTERATIONS OF, OR ADDITIONS TO, DEPARTMENTS, WINGS, OR AREAS

**CHAPTER 48
TRANSIENT LODGING**

48.1 GUEST ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

48.1.1 FACILITIES WITHOUT ACCESSIBLE ROOMS/SUITES

48.1.1.1 A minimum of one room or suite for each 25 rooms (or fraction thereof) being altered shall comply with 29.4.2 and the applicable requirements of 29.4.3 through 29.4.9 until the minimum number of accessible guest rooms equals the number required by 29.4.1 if that building or facility were new construction.

ADAAG 9.1.5

EXAMPLE 1: An inaccessible 90-room hotel will alter fifteen (15) guest rooms. In compliance with this Paragraph, a minimum of one (1) of the altered rooms shall be made accessible ($15/25 = 0.6 = 1$).

48.1.2 FACILITIES HAVING ACCESSIBLE ROOMS/SUITES

***48.1.2.1** *For alterations to a facility having existing accessible rooms or suites, the number of accessible guest rooms to be added shall be computed as follows:*

	[	<i>Number of Rooms</i>	]	=	[	<i>Number Of Accessible</i>]		
[1]	[	$\frac{\textit{To Be Altered}}{25}$	]		[	<i>Rooms Required</i>	]		Accounts Chapter 11X, Vol. I-C

	[	<i>Number Of</i>	]	-	[	<i>Number Of Existing</i>]		
[2]	[	<i>Accessible</i>	]		[	<i>Accessible Rooms</i>]	=	[
	[	<i>Rooms Required</i>	]		[	<i>Additional Number</i>]	=	[
					[	<i>To Be Accessible</i>]]

***48.1.2.2** *If the number of existing accessible guest rooms equals the number required by 29.4.1, then providing additional accessible guest rooms shall not be necessary.*

**No Increase
In Code
Minimum**

***48.1.2.3** *Alterations that do not affect existing accessible rooms shall require that these rooms be made to comply with 29.5.2, 29.5.3, and 29.5.4 only. Use of 29.5.5 shall be acceptable in complying with this Paragraph.*

**Adds
ADAAG 9.2.2(8) To
Chap. 11X, Vol. I-C**

48.1.2.4 Alterations that affect, or could affect, existing accessible guest rooms shall require that they be made to comply with 29.4.2 and the applicable requirements of 29.4.3 through 29.4.9.

**USDoJ 36.402(a),
36.402(b)(2)**

48.2 SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS FOR PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

ADAAG 9.1.5

48.2.1 In addition to 48.1.1.1 or 48.1.2.1, a minimum of one room or suite for each 25 rooms (or fraction thereof) being altered shall comply with 29.5.2, 29.5.3, and 29.5.4 until the minimum number of guest rooms accessible to persons with hearing impairments equals the number required by 29.5.1 if that building or facility were new construction. Use of 29.5.5 shall be acceptable in complying with this Paragraph.

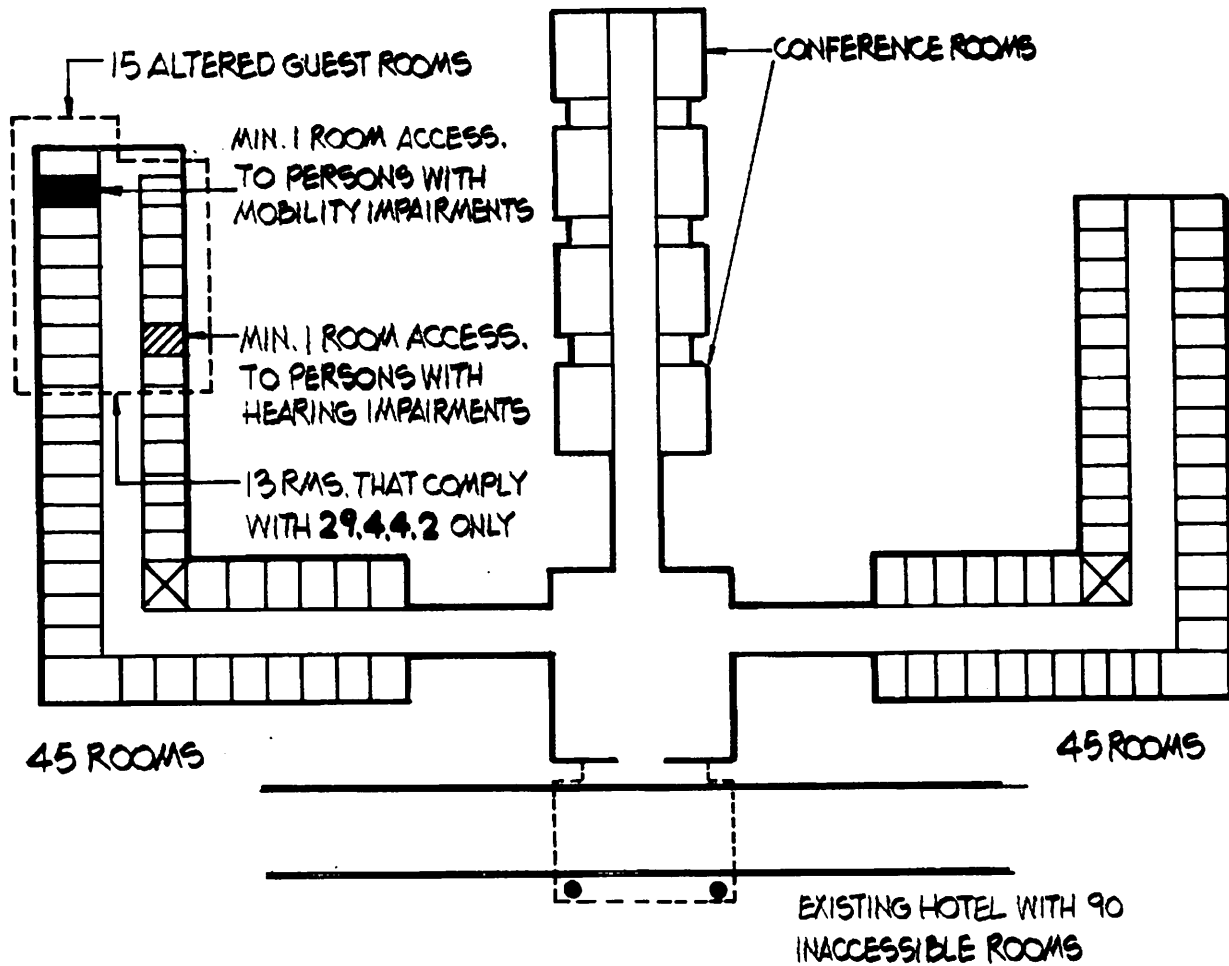
EXAMPLE 2: For the 90-room hotel in Example 1, alteration of the fifteen (15) rooms shall also require a minimum of one (1) room being altered ($15/25 = .06 = 1$) to comply with 29.5.2, 29.5.3, and 29.5.4 (or, 29.5.5).

(NOTE: Upon completion of the alterations in Examples 1 and 2, the following will be in place:

- [1] One room accessible to persons with mobility impairments that complies with 29.4.2 and the applicable requirements 29.4.3 through 29.4.9;
- [2] One room accessible to persons with hearing impairments that complies with 29.4.4.2 and 29.5.2 through 29.5.3 [or, 29.5.5]; and
- [3] Thirteen rooms that comply with 29.4.4.2 only.

Alterations to the remaining 75 rooms will require the following:

- [1] Four rooms [one with a roll-in shower] accessible to persons with mobility impairments that complies with 29.4.2 and the applicable requirements of 29.4.3 through 29.4.9;
- [2] Three rooms accessible to persons with hearing impairments that complies with 29.4.4.2, 29.5.2, 29.5.3, and 29.5.4 [or, 29.5.5]; and
- [3] Sixty-eight rooms that comply with 29.4.4.2 only.)



48.1.1.1- A MINIMUM OF ONE ROOM OR SUITE FOR EACH 25 ROOMS (OR FRACTION THEREOF) BEING ALTERED SHALL COMPLY WITH 29.4.2 AND THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 29.4.3 THROUGH 29.4.9 UNTIL THE MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE GUEST ROOMS EQUALS THE NUMBER REQUIRED BY 29.4.1 IF THAT BUILDING OR FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION.

EXAMPLE: 15 ROOMS BEING ALTERED/25 = .06 = MIN. 1 ROOM ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

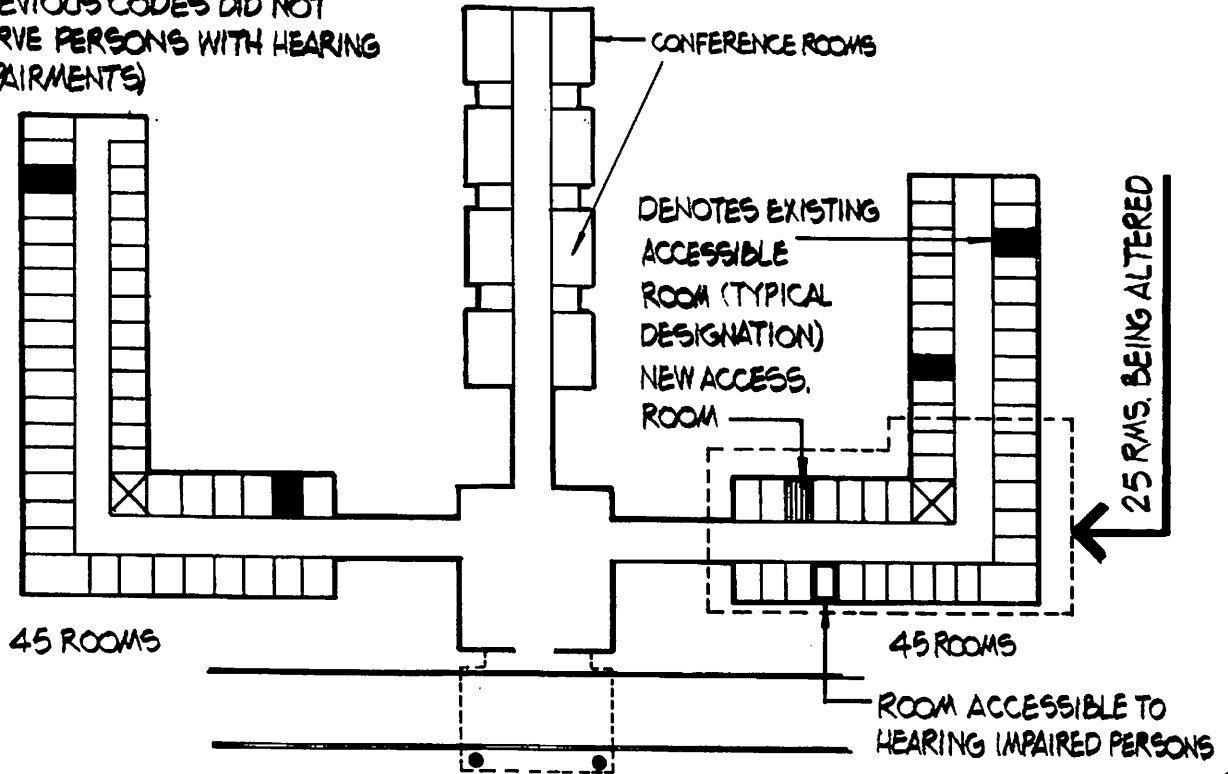
48.2.1- IN ADDITION TO 48.1.1.1 OR 48.1.2.1, A MINIMUM OF ONE ROOM OR SUITE FOR EACH 25 ROOMS (OR FRACTION THEREOF) BEING ALTERED SHALL COMPLY WITH 29.5.2 THROUGH 29.5.4 (OR 29.5.5) UNTIL THE MINIMUM NUMBER OF GUEST ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS EQUALS THE NUMBER REQUIRED BY 29.5.1 IF THAT BUILDING OR FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION.

EXAMPLE: 15 ROOMS BEING ALTERED/25 = .06 = MIN. 1 ROOM ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

48.1.1- FACILITIES WITHOUT ACCESSIBLE ROOMS/SUITES

48.2- SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS FOR PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

FROM PREVIOUS CODE EDITIONS: NO. OF ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO MOBILITY IMPAIRED PERSONS - $90 \times .05 = 4.5 = \text{MIN. } 4$
 (PREVIOUS CODES DID NOT SERVE PERSONS WITH HEARING IMPAIRMENTS)



48.1.2.1- FOR ALTERATIONS TO A FACILITY HAVING EXISTING ACCESSIBLE GUEST ROOMS OR SUITES, THE NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE GUEST ROOMS TO BE ADDED SHALL BE COMPUTED AS FOLLOWS:

- [1] $\lceil \text{NO. OF ROOMS TO BE ALTERED} / 25 \rceil = \lceil \text{NO. OF ACCESSIBLE RMS. REQ'D.} \rceil$
- [2] $\lceil \text{NO. OF ACCESSIBLE ROOMS REQUIRED} \rceil - \lceil \text{NO. OF EXISTING ACCESSIBLE RMS.} \rceil = \lceil \text{ADDITIONAL NO. OF ROOMS REQ'D. TO BE ACCESSIBLE} \rceil$

48.1.2.2- IF THE NUMBER OF EXISTING ACCESSIBLE GUEST ROOMS EQUALS THE NUMBER REQUIRED BY 29.4.1, THEN PROVIDING ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE GUEST ROOMS SHALL NOT BE NECESSARY.

EXAMPLE: 90 ROOM HOTEL W/4 EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ROOMS; 25 ROOMS BEING ALTERED.

- 29.4.1 REQUIRES A TOTAL OF 5 RMS. ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS (4 WITH ANY ACCESSIBLE BATHING FIXTURE, 1 WITH A ROLL-IN SHOWER) - ONE OF THE 25 ALTERED ROOMS SHALL BE MADE ACCESSIBLE.
- THE 4 EXISTING ACCESSIBLE ROOMS SHALL BE MADE TO COMPLY WITH 48.1.2.3 (SEE, ALSO, 48.1.2.4 - TEXT).
- ONE OF THE 25 ALTERED ROOMS SHALL COMPLY WITH 29.4.4.2 AND 48.2.1.
- OF THE OTHER 23 ALTERED ROOMS, ALL SHALL COMPLY WITH 29.4.4.2.

48.3 HOMELESS SHELTERS, HALFWAY HOUSES, TRANSIENT GROUP HOMES AND OTHER SOCIAL SERVICE ESTABLISHMENTS

48.3.1 HOMELESS SHELTERS

48.3.1.1 Alterations to the following elements shall require that they be made accessible:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) A minimum of one public entrance
(NOTE: See, also, 18.1.3[2]); | ADAAG
9.5.2(2)(a) |
| (2) Sleeping accommodations
(NOTE: If sleeping rooms are provided, then the number of accessible rooms shall comply with 29.4.1. If multi-bed sleeping spaces are provided, then the number of accessible beds shall equal the percentage represented by 29.4.1. Each accessible bed shall comply with 28.5.2. A minimum of one door to accessible sleeping rooms or spaces shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7); | ADAAG
9.5.2(2)(b) |
| (3) A minimum of one toilet room for each sex; | ADAAG 9.5.2(2)(c) |
| (4) A minimum of one bathing facility (if any are provided) for each sex
* (NOTE: A unisex toilet room or bathing facility is permitted by 39.4 only if alterations to group facilities is Technically Infeasible. For [3] and [4], use of a unisex toilet room and/or bathing facility shall be permitted without regard to Technical Infeasibility. A unisex toilet room shall comply with 39.4.2.1. A unisex bathing facility shall comply with 39.4.3.) | Technical Infeasibility:
Access Board (Via Telephone)-2/11/93

Unisex: Vol. II,
Table 407, Note 18 |
| (5) A minimum of one common area; | ADAAG 9.5.2(2)(d) |
| (6) A minimum of one route connecting elements (1) through (5). | ADAAG
9.5.2(2)(e) |

48.3.1.2 Nothing shall prevent any building or facility covered by this Section from providing 48.3.1.1(1) through 48.3.1.1(6) on one accessible floor.

ADAAG
9.5.2(2)(f)

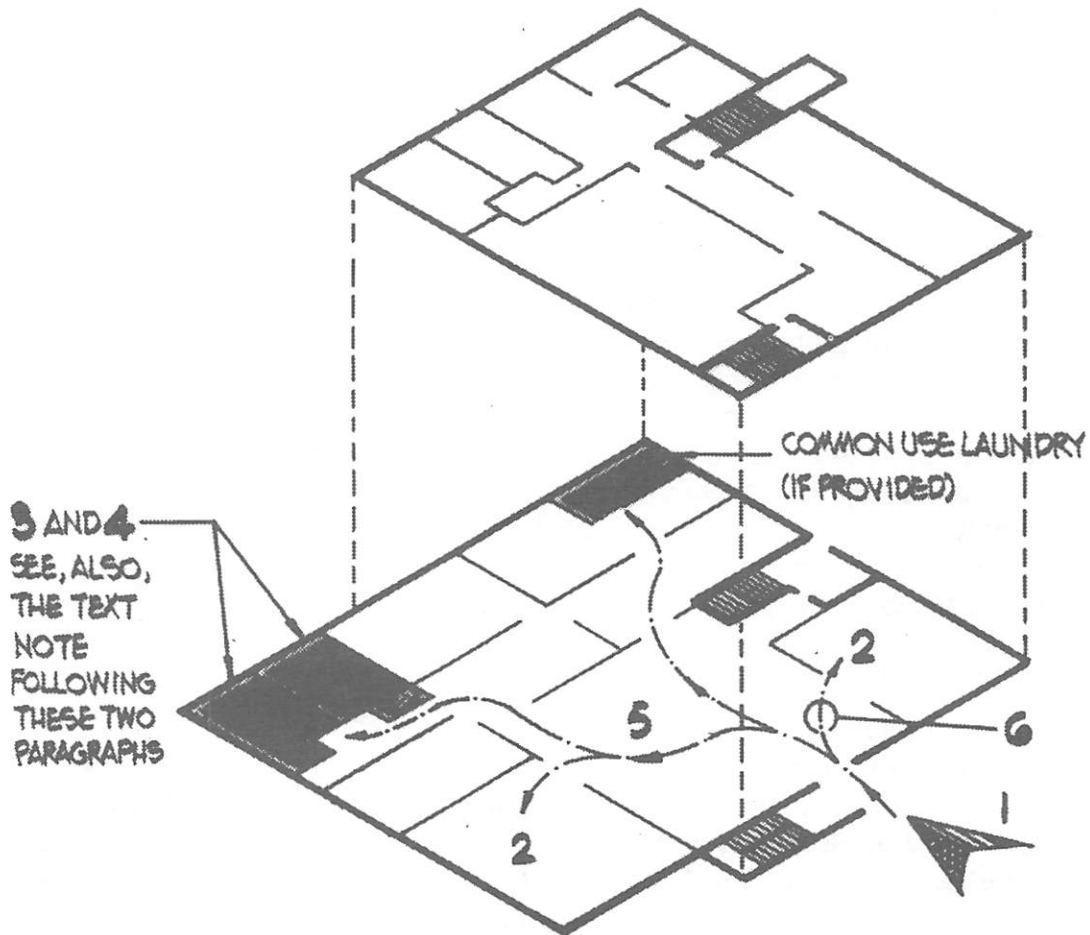
48.3.2 SOCIAL SERVICE ESTABLISHMENTS THAT ARE NOT HOMELESS SHELTERS

48.3.2.1 Alterations to non-sleeping areas shall comply with 29.6.1.1 or 29.6.1.2, as applicable.

ADAAG
9.5.2(1)(b)

48.3.2.2 Alterations to sleeping areas shall comply with 48.1.1 or 48.1.2 (as applicable), and 48.2.

ADAAG
9.5.2(1)(a)



3 AND 4
SEE, ALSO,
THE TEXT
NOTE
FOLLOWING
THESE TWO
PARAGRAPHS

48.3.1.1- ALTERATIONS TO THE FOLLOWING ELEMENTS SHALL REQUIRE THAT THEY BE MADE ACCESSIBLE:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) A MINIMUM OF ONE PUBLIC ENTRANCE | (4) A MINIMUM OF ONE BATHING FACILITY (IF ANY ARE PROVIDED) FOR EACH SEX |
| (2) SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS | (5) A MINIMUM OF ONE COMMON AREA |
| (3) A MINIMUM OF ONE TOILET ROOM FOR EACH SEX | (6) A MINIMUM OF ONE ROUTE CONNECTING ELEMENTS (1) THROUGH (5) |

48.3.1.2- NOTHING SHALL PREVENT ANY BUILDING OR FACILITY COVERED BY THIS SECTION FROM PROVIDING 48.3.1.1 (1) THROUGH 48.3.1.1 (6) ON ONE ACCESSIBLE FLOOR.

48.3.1- HOMELESS SHELTERS

**CHAPTER 49
MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS**

(NOTE 1: Previous editions of this Code required all Privately- or Publicly-Owned facilities with eleven [11] or more residences for lease or rent to have five percent [5%] of the total number of dwelling units fully accessible ["A" dwelling units]. As shown in Chapter 30, the scope for Privately-Owned facilities is five percent [5%] of the total number of dwellings; that for Publicly-Owned facilities now covers all housing regardless of the number of dwelling units.

NOTE 2: Although there may be minor differences between individual technical requirements of previous editions and 30.5 of this Code, if existing fully accessible ("A") dwelling units are altered, or if alterations to common use areas and/or other units affect or could affect these fully accessible ("A") dwellings, only then shall they be made to comply with 30.5.)

**Accounts For
Chapter 11X,
Volume I-C**

**Title II,
Program
Access**

**Owner Not
Pay Twice
For Same
Thing**

49.1 PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING

49.1.1 Facilities having eleven (11) or more covered multi-family dwellings for lease or rent shall have five percent (5%) of the total number of units being altered, or a minimum of one, (whichever is the greater number) comply with 30.2.6 for each alteration until the number of fully accessible ("A") dwelling units equals the number required by 30.1.2.1.3(1) if that building or facility were new construction.

**Adopts ADAAG
Language To
Scope
[Vol. I-C, 5.2(a)]**

49.2 PUBLICLY-OWNED HOUSING

49.2.1 Five percent (5%) of the total number of units being altered, or a minimum of one, (whichever is the greater number) shall comply with 30.2.6 for each alteration until the number of fully accessible ("A") dwelling units equals the number required by 30.1.2.2.2(1) if that building or facility were new construction.

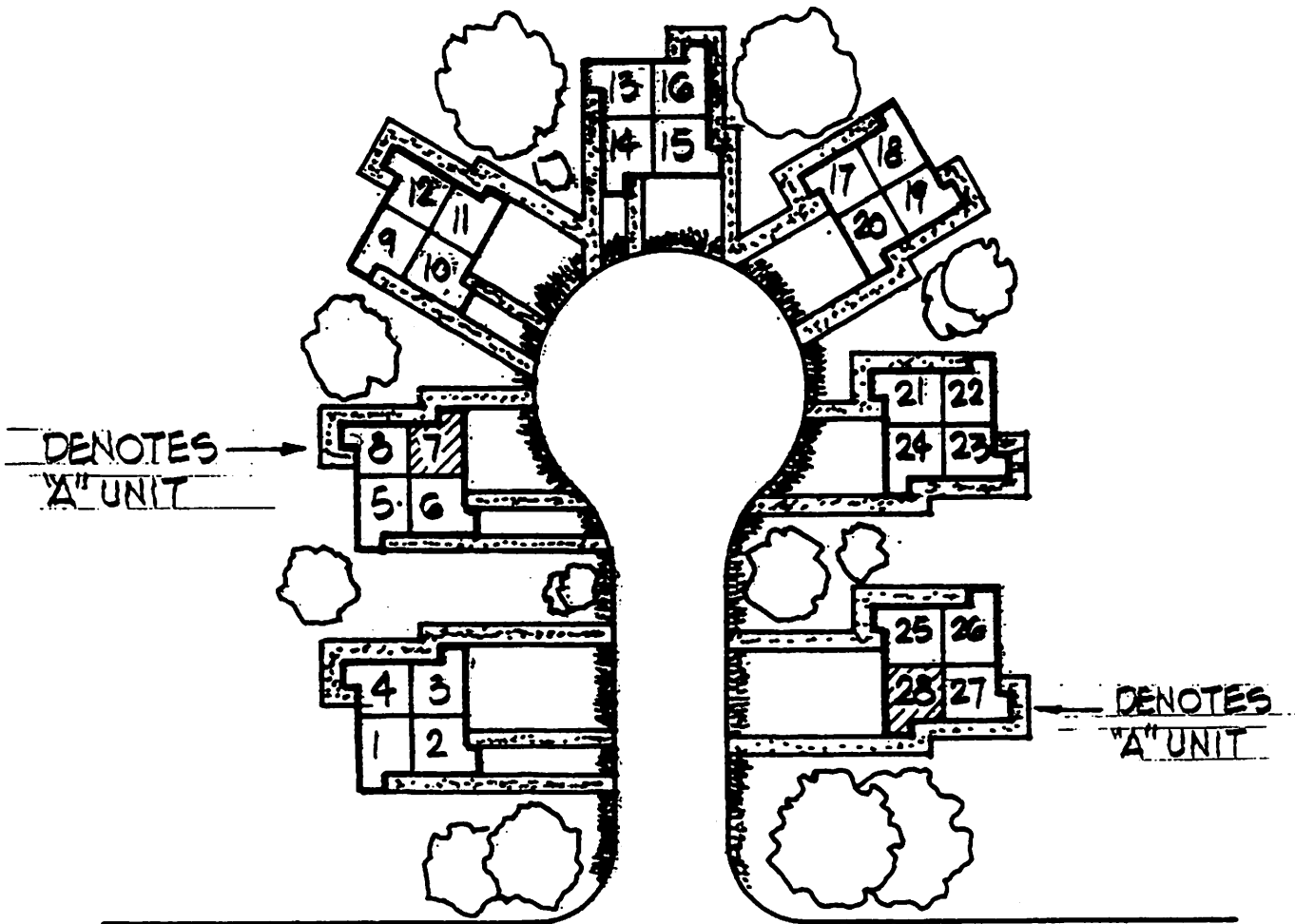
**Similar To
Privately- Owned
Housing**

49.2.2 Alterations to a specific residence provided by a private or public entity for a specific employee position shall comply with 30.1.3.

**Title I (And Title II, Subpart C):
Non-Discrimination
In Employment**

(NOTE: For 49.1 and 49.2, see, also, 30.2.8.3.)

Cross-Ref.



49.1.1-FACILITIES HAVING 11 OR MORE COVERED MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS FOR LEASE OR RENT SHALL HAVE 5% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF UNITS BEING ALTERED, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE, (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER) COMPLY WITH **30.2.6** FOR EACH ALTERATION UNTIL THE NUMBER OF FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNITS EQUALS THE NUMBER REQUIRED BY **30.1.2.1.3(d)** IF THAT BUILDING OR FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION.

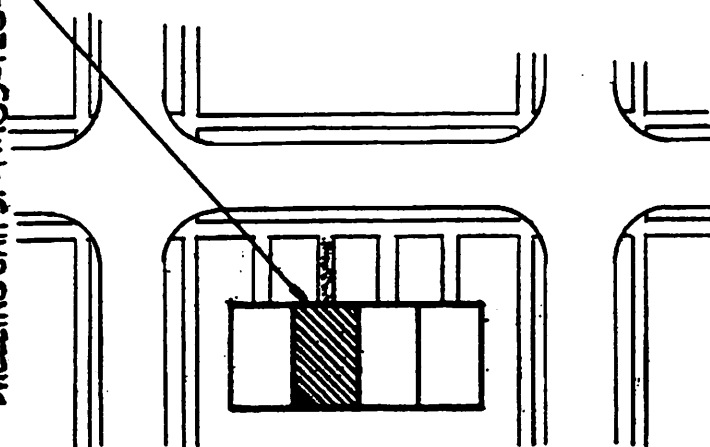
EXAMPLE (BASED ON ABOVE ILLUSTRATION):

$$\text{NUMBER OF "A" UNITS} = 28 \times .05 = 1.4 = \text{MIN. 2}$$

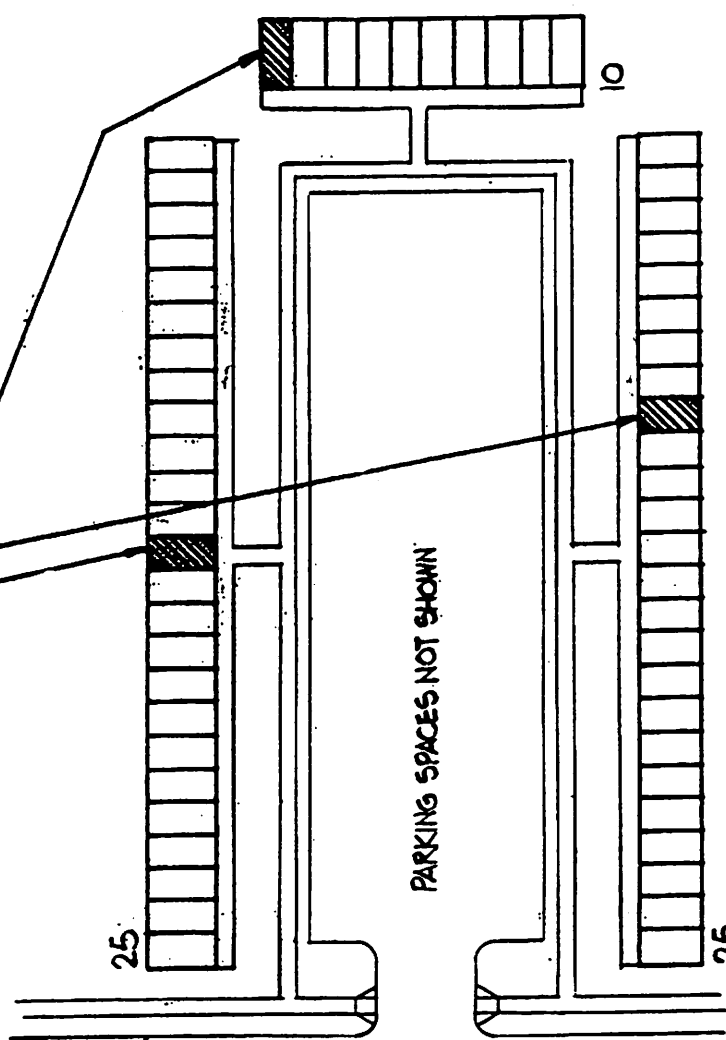
NOTE: "B" UNITS NOT REQUIRED IN ALTERATIONS OR CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

49.1-PRIVATELY-OWNED HOUSING

TOTAL DWELLING UNITS THIS SITE: 4
 MIN. NO. FULLY ACCESSIBLE
 DWELLING UNITS: 4 x .05 = .20 = MIN. 1



TOTAL DWELLING UNITS THIS SITE: 60
 MINIMUM NUMBER OF FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING
 UNITS: 60 x .05 = MIN. 3



49.2.1- 5% OF THE TOTAL NUMBER OF UNITS BEING ALTERED, OR A MINIMUM OF ONE (WHICHEVER IS THE GREATER NUMBER) SHALL COMPLY WITH 30.2.6 FOR EACH ALTERATION UNTIL THE NUMBER OF FULLY ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNITS EQUALS THE NUMBER REQUIRED BY 30.1.2.2.2(1) IF THAT BUILDING OR FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION.

NOTE: "B" UNITS NOT REQUIRED IN ALTERATIONS OR CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

49.2 - PUBLICLY-OWNED HOUSING

49.3 DISTRIBUTION

49.3.1 To the Maximum Extent Feasible distribution of fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall comply with 30.3.1 and 30.3.2.

(NOTE: As used herein, Maximum Extent Feasible shall mean that fully accessible ["A"] dwelling units shall be Reasonably Distributed throughout the facility in the same manner as new construction with due consideration for existing conditions at the specific facility being altered. For example: alterations of a three-building facility requires three [3] fully accessible ["A"] dwelling units. Buildings "A" and "B" are located site areas having relatively shallow slopes while building "C" occupies a steeply sloping section. Since an accessible entrance to building "C" can only be accomplished by extensive regrading and structural modifications, locating two of the dwelling units in Building "B" and one in building "A" will be considered Reasonable Distribution.)

Derived
From
USDoJ:
36.402(c),
35.151(b)

49.4 PARKING

49.4.1 INACCESSIBLE PARKING LOTS

49.4.1.1 Each fully accessible ("A") dwelling unit shall be provided with an accessible parking space that complies with 4.4.1. Van accessible spaces shall be provided as required by 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1 and shall comply with 4.4.2. (See, also, 4.4.2.1.)

Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(2);
ADAAG 4.1.6(1)(b)

49.4.2 PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN SEPTEMBER 1, 1973 AND MARCH 31, 1989

(NOTE: Prior to April 1, 1989 the number of accessible spaces was equal to two percent [2%] of the total number of spaces for a given lot. Van accessible spaces were not required.)

49.4.2.1 The number of accessible parking spaces to be added shall be computed as follows:

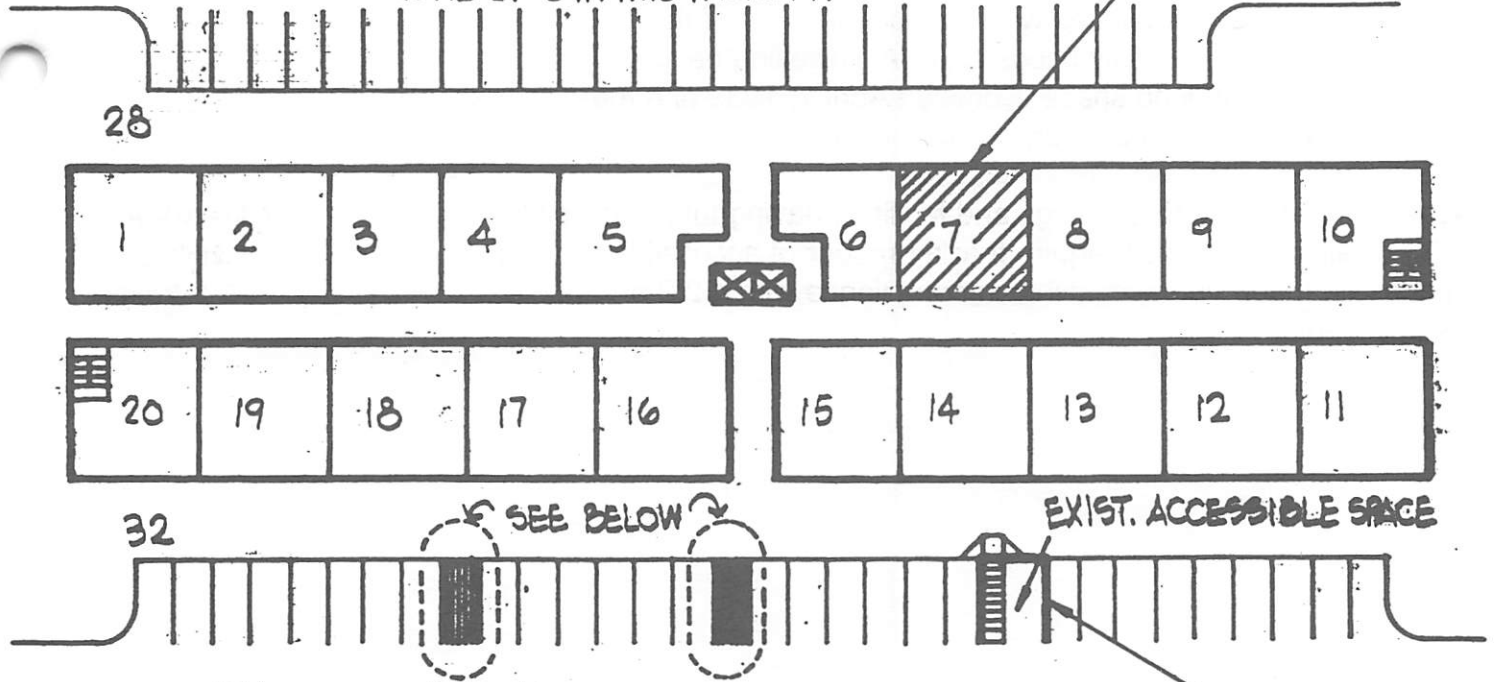
$$\begin{array}{l} \left[\begin{array}{l} \text{Number Of Fully} \\ \text{Accessible ("A") Dwelling} \\ \text{Units Required} \end{array} \right] - \left[\begin{array}{l} \text{Number Of Existing} \\ \text{Accessible Spaces} \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{l} \text{Number Of Accessible} \\ \text{Spaces to Be Added} \end{array} \right] \end{array}$$

49.4.2.1.1 If the final number is one (1) or more, then the number of spaces to be added shall include van accessible spaces in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.

Accounts For
Chapter 11X,
Volume I-C

49.4.2.1.2 If the final number is zero (0), or a negative number, then the number of existing accessible spaces to be made van accessible shall comply with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.

FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNIT
(ONE OF 3 IN THIS FACILITY)



EXISTING BUILDING: 3 STORIES, 20 UNITS PER STORY = 60 UNITS
 $60 \times .05 = 3$ FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") UNITS

NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES: $28 + 32 = 60$
 $60 \times .02 = 1.2 = \text{MIN. } 1$

49.4.2.1	NUMBER OF FULLY ACCESSIBLE ("A") DWELLING UNITS REQUIRED* (* REQUIRED BY PREVIOUS CODES)	-	NUMBER OF EXISTING ACCESSIBLE SPACES	=	NO. OF ACCESSIBLE SPACES TO BE ADDED
	3		1		2

49.4.2.1.1 IF THE FINAL NUMBER IS 1 OR MORE, THEN THE NUMBER OF SPACES TO BE ADDED SHALL INCLUDE VAN ACCESSIBLE SPACES IN COMPLIANCE WITH 4.2.2 OR 4.2.2.1, AS APPLICABLE.

49.4.2.1.2 IF THE FINAL NUMBER IS ZERO, OR A NEGATIVE NUMBER, THEN THE NUMBER OF EXISTING ACCESSIBLE SPACES TO BE MADE VAN ACCESSIBLE SHALL COMPLY WITH 4.2.2 OR 4.2.2.1, AS APPLICABLE.

49.4.2--PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN SEPTEMBER 1, 1973 AND MARCH 31, 1989

49.4.3 PARKING LOTS BUILT BETWEEN APRIL 1, 1989 AND THE EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS CODE

(NOTE: On April 1, 1989 the two percent [2%] calculation for number of accessible spaces was replaced in favor of the requirement that each fully accessible ["A"] dwelling have its own accessible parking space. Between April 1, 1989 and the effective date of this Code, van accessible spaces were not required.)

49.4.3.1 Alterations to buildings and facilities having fully accessible ("A") dwelling units shall require that a number of accessible parking spaces be made van accessible in compliance with 4.2.2 or 4.2.2.1, as applicable.

**Adds ADAAG
4.1.2(5)(b) To
Vol. I-C, 3.4(b)(2)**

**CHAPTER 50
JURY BOXES, WITNESS STANDS
AND
PRISON/JAIL HOUSING CELLS OR ROOMS**

50.1 ACCESS TO JURY BOXES AND WITNESS STANDS

50.1.1 A 30 inches wide by 48 inches long (760 mm by 1220 mm) clear floor space located in proximity to, but outside the defined area of, the raised jury box and/or witness stand may be used only under the following conditions:

**ADAAG 11.2.1(b),
Exception 1/13/98;**

****(1) It is Technically Infeasible to provide access to a jury box or witness stand via ramp or lift; or***

(2) Installation of a ramp or lift will obstruct the circulation path(s) and/or minimum egress width(s) required by Volume I.

**“Circulation Path”:
FR 1/13/98 At 2008**

50.2 FACILITIES HAVING EXISTING CELLS OR ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

****(NOTE: For new construction, this Code requires two percent [2%] of the number of cells/rooms in a facility to serve mobility impaired inmates [see 31.4.5.1]. In addition, two percent [2%] of the cells/rooms in a housing category must be accessible to serve hearing impaired inmates [see 31.4.5.6.1]. Previous editions of this Code required five percent [5%] of the total number of cells/rooms in a facility to serve only inmates with mobility impairments.)***

****50.2.1 Alterations that do not affect existing accessible cells/rooms shall require that they be made to comply with 31.4.5.6.2 and 31.4.5.6.3 until the number of existing accessible cells/rooms meeting the requirements for volume control telephones and visual alarm indicating appliances equals the number required by 31.4.5.5.10 if the facility were new construction. (See, also, the NOTES following 31.4.5.6 and 31.4.5.6.3.)***

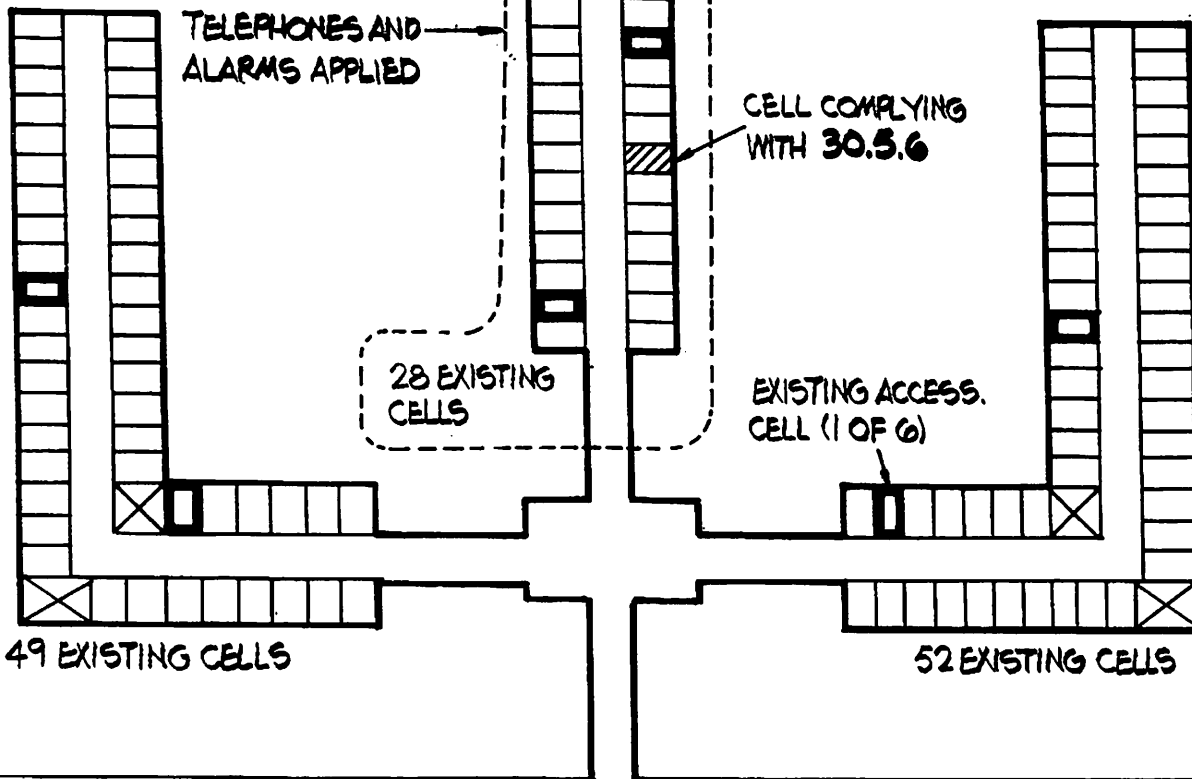
**Adds ADAAG
12.5.2(9) And 12.6
To Chap. 11X
And Vol. I-C**

50.2.2 If accessible cells or rooms serving mobility impaired inmates are altered, or if alterations to other cells, rooms, or inmate common use areas affect, or could affect these existing cells/rooms, then they shall be made to comply with 31.4.5.5.

**USDoJ 36.402(a),
36.402.(b)(2)**

HOUSING CATEGORY TO WHICH

TELEPHONES AND
ALARMS APPLIED



PREVIOUS CODE
REQUIREMENT FOR NO.
CELLS ACCESSIBLE TO
PERSONS WITH MOBILITY
IMPAIRMENTS:

$$49 + 28 + 52 = 129$$

$$129 \times .05 = 6.45 = 6$$

→ 50.2.1-

- IF THIS FACILITY WERE NEW CONSTRUCTION, THEN
MIN. NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CELLS =
 $129 \times .02 = 2.58 = 3$
- 3 OF 6 EXISTING CELLS REQUIRED TO COMPLY
WITH 31.4.5.6.2 AND 31.4.5.6.3.
- (SEE, ALSO, THE NOTES FOLLOWING 31.4.5.6
AND 31.4.5.6.3.)

NUMBER OF CELLS REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH 31.4.5.6 =
HOUSING CATEGORY HAS 28 CELLS

$$28 \times .02 = .56 = \text{MIN. OF 1}$$

(SEE, ALSO, THE NOTES FOLLOWING 31.4.5.6 AND 31.4.5.6.3.)

50.2- FACILITIES HAVING EXISTING CELLS OR ROOMS ACCESSIBLE TO PERSONS WITH MOBILITY IMPAIRMENTS

**CHAPTER 51
HISTORIC PRESERVATION**

51.1 SCOPE

51.1.1 Except as noted in 51.3.1, alterations to qualified historic buildings and facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of Parts II or III of this Code.

**ADAAG 4.1.7(1)(a);
FR 7/26/91 At 35428**

*** 51.1.2** *By virtue of age as the sole criteria, buildings and facilities shall not be eligible to utilize this Chapter.*

**Vol. I-C Interpretation;
See, Also, FR 7/26/91 At
35584 And 35711**

51.2 DEFINITION

51.2.1 QUALIFIED HISTORIC BUILDING OR FACILITY

A building or facility that is listed, or eligible for listing:

- (1) In the National Register of Historic Places; or
- (2) By the State Historic Preservation Officer, Division of Archives and History, North Carolina Department of Cultural Resources, acting on behalf of the North Carolina Historical Commission in compliance with G.S. 121-8 and N.C.A.C. 4R.0600; or
- (3) Under appropriate local law.

ADAAG 4.1.7(1)(b)(i)

**Vol. I-C, 1.3
[ADAAG
4.1.7(1)(b)(ii)]**

**ADAAG
4.1.7(1)(b)(ii)**

51.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

51.3.1 If compliance with the applicable requirements of Parts II or III of this Code for:

- * (1)** An exterior accessible route *(including parking)*;
- (2) Ramp(s);
- (3) An accessible entrance;
- (4) An interior accessible route; and
- (5) Accessible toilets

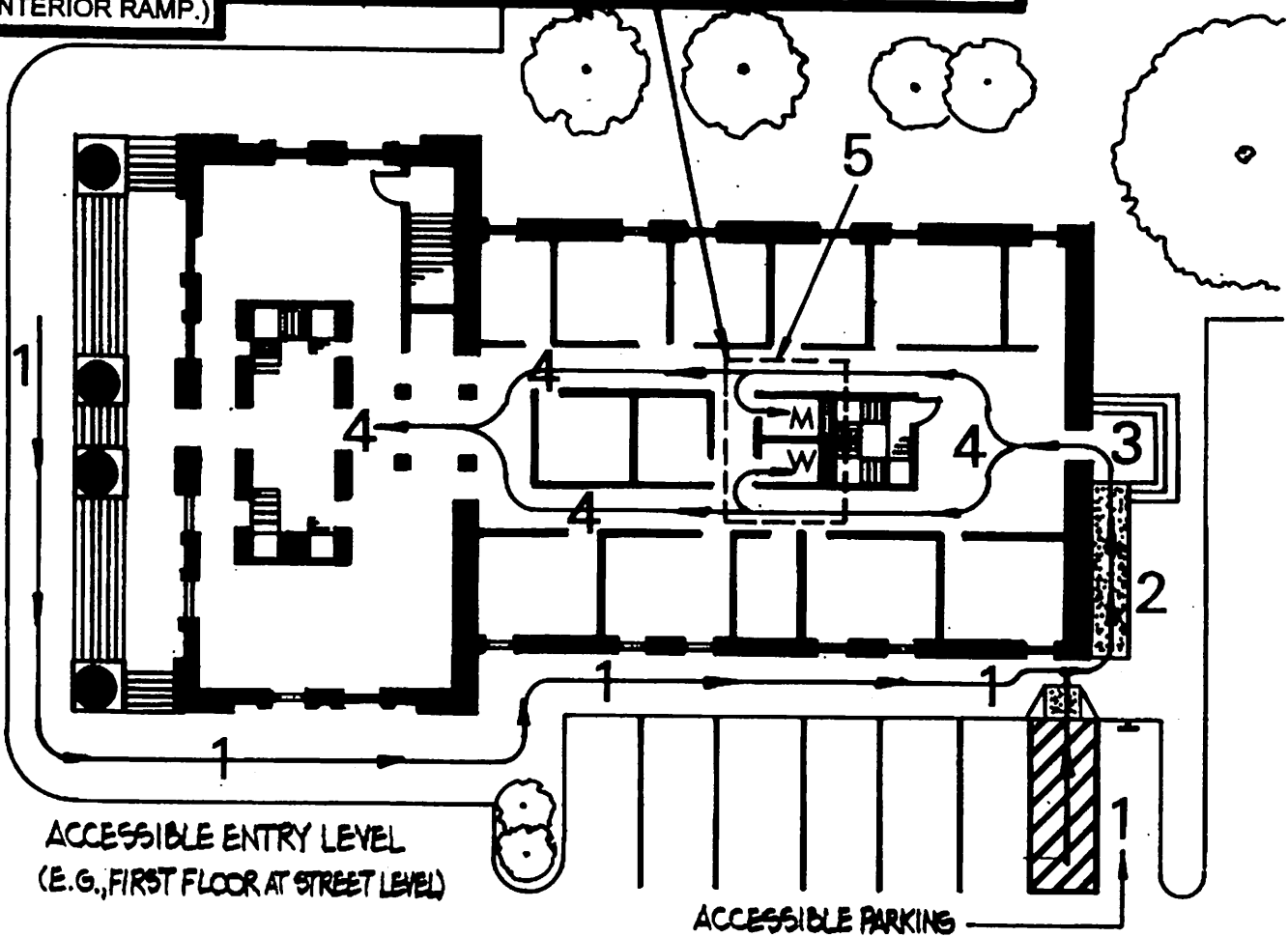
**ADAAG:
4.1.7(1)(a);
4.1.7(2)(a)(ii);
4.1.7(2)(b)**

would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, then the alternative requirements of 51.4 may be used for the feature.

51.3.2 If it is Technically Infeasible to comply with a specific accessibility requirement, then the other elements or features that are being altered and can be made accessible shall be made accessible.

**FR 7/26/91 At
35430**

51.4.5.2 IF AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE TO LEVELS ABOVE AND/OR BELOW THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRY LEVEL IS NOT PROVIDED, THEN THE ACCESSIBLE TOILET(S) SHALL BE LOCATED ON THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRY LEVEL. (FOR THE PLAN SHOWN, NOTE THE ABSENCE OF AN ELEVATOR, LIFT OR INTERIOR RAMP.)



51.3.1 IF COMPLIANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF PARTS II OR III OF THIS CODE FOR:

- (1) AN EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE (INCLUDING PARKING);
- (2) RAMPS(S);
- (3) AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE;
- (4) AN INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE; AND
- (5) ACCESSIBLE TOILETS

WOULD THREATEN OR DESTROY THE HISTORIC SIGNIFICANCE OF THE BUILDING OR FACILITY, THEN THE ALTERNATIVE REQUIREMENTS OF 51.4 MAY BE USED FOR THE FEATURE.

51.3.2 IF IT IS *TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE* TO COMPLY WITH A SPECIFIC ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENT, THEN THE OTHER ELEMENTS OR FEATURES THAT ARE BEING ALTERED AND CAN BE MADE ACCESSIBLE SHALL BE MADE ACCESSIBLE.

51.3--GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

51.4 HISTORIC PRESERVATION: MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

*** (NOTE: Public and private entities may use this Section only after consultation with the Engineering Division, North Carolina Department of Insurance and the State Historic Preservation Officer, Division of Archives and History, North Carolina Department of Cultural Resources. No entity shall unilaterally decide to use the alternative requirements of this Section.)**

ADAAG
4.1.7(2)(b);
FR 7/26/91 At
35429

51.4.1 EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

51.4.1.1 Each historic building and facility shall have a minimum of one accessible route leading from a site access point to an accessible entrance.

Vol. I-C, 3.1(a);
ADAAG
4.1.7(3)(a)

51.4.1.2 PARKING AND CURB CUTS/CURB RAMPS: See Chapters 4 and 36

Cross-Ref.

51.4.2 RAMPS

51.4.2.1 A 1:6 (25mm:150mm) maximum slope may be used for a 24 inches (610 mm) maximum horizontal distance (i.e., the total rise is limited to 4 inches [100 mm]). Landings, handrails, and edge protection shall comply with 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5, respectively.

ADAAG
4.1.7(3)(a),
Exception

51.4.3 ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE

51.4.3.1 Each historic building and facility shall be provided with a minimum of one accessible entrance used by the general public.

Vol. I-C, 4.2(a)(1);
ADAAG 4.1.7(3)(b)

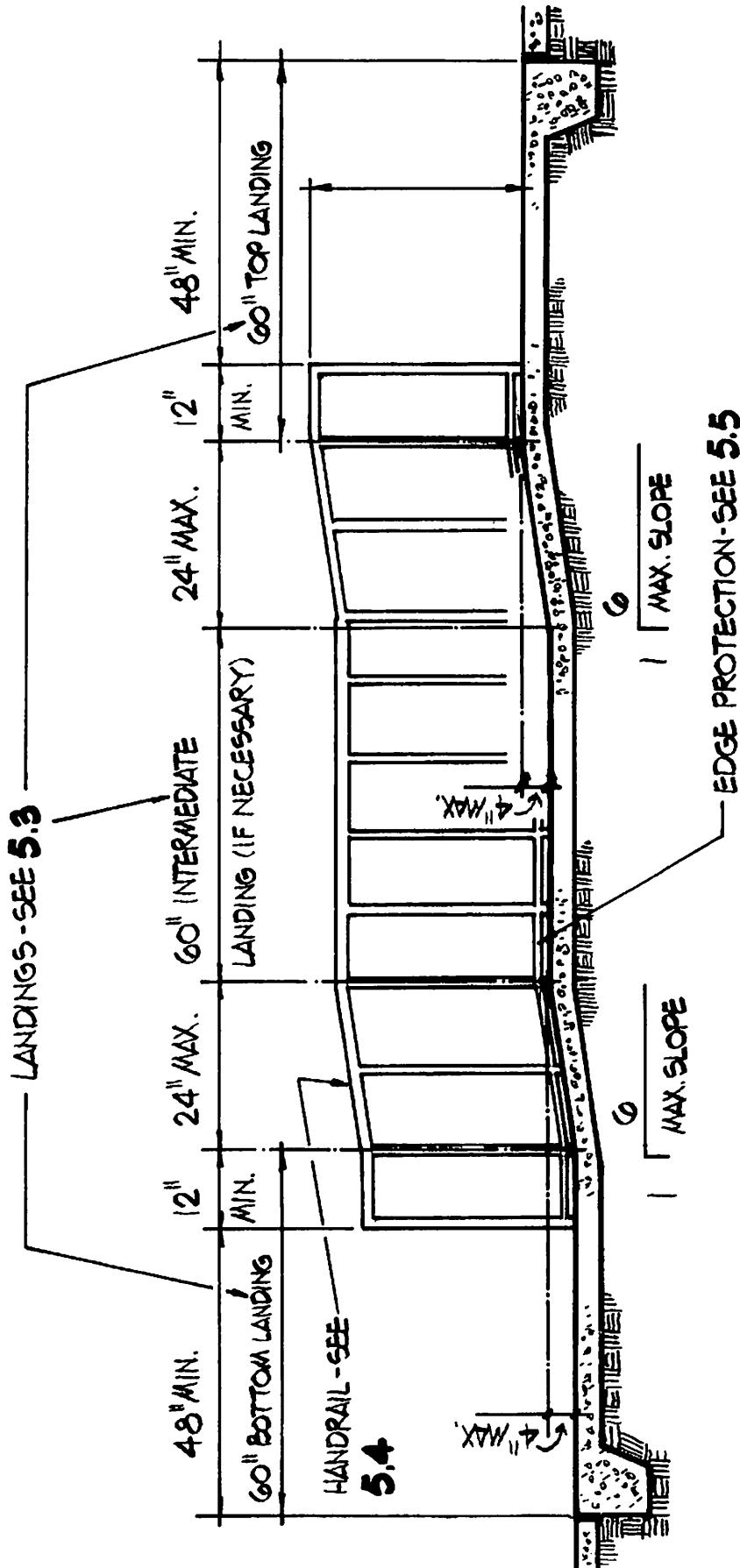
***51.4.3.1.1** If it is determined that no entrance used by the public can be made accessible, then access at any entrance not used by the general public that is open and unlocked may be used. Direction and identification signage shall be provided in compliance with 38.1.5. The accessible entrance shall also be provided with a notification system (*e.g., closed circuit telephone, door bell, push button activating an interior light, etc.*). If it is determined (*by the agency having jurisdiction over the property*) that security is, or can be, a problem, then a remote monitoring system may be used. **(NOTE: The type of notification and/or monitoring system[s] is not limited by this Code. Notification and/or security system[s] that require manual activation shall comply with 16.1.2, 16.1.3, and the applicable requirements of 16.2.)**

ADAAG
4.1.7(3)(b),
Exception

Cross-Reference

51.4.3.2 An accessible entrance shall have a minimum of one door that complies with Chapter 7. For a multi-door entrance the accessible door shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility.

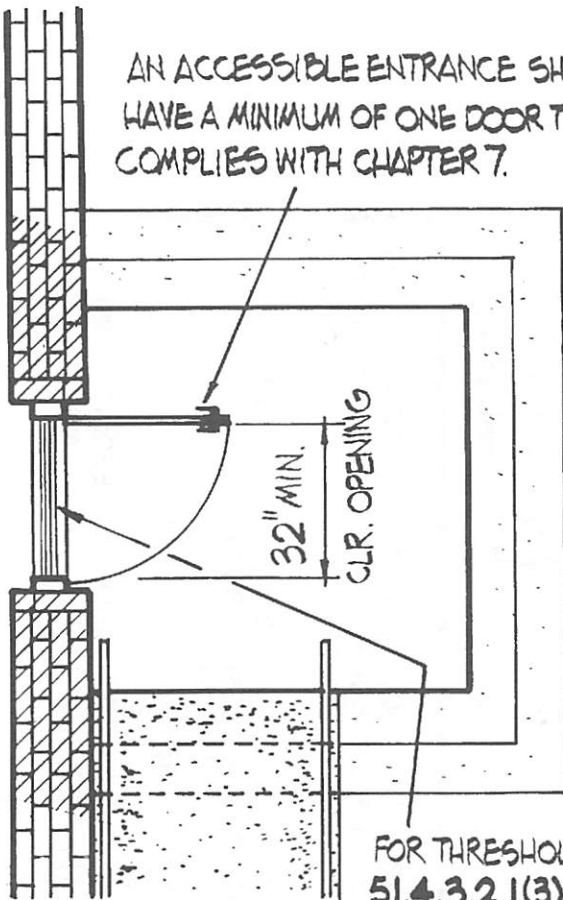
ADAAG 4.1.3(7)(c),
4.30.7



51.4.2.1- A 1:6 MAXIMUM SLOPE MAY BE USED FOR A 24 INCHES MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE (I.E., THE TOTAL RISE IS LIMITED TO 4 INCHES). LANDINGS, HANDRAILS, AND EDGE PROTECTION SHALL COMPLY WITH 5.3, 5.4, AND 5.5, RESPECTIVELY.

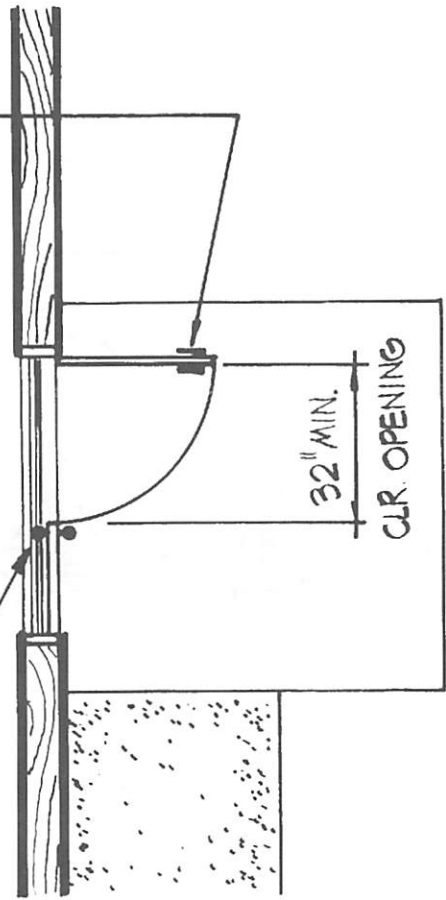
51.4.2- RAMPS

AN ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM OF ONE DOOR THAT COMPLIES WITH CHAPTER 7.

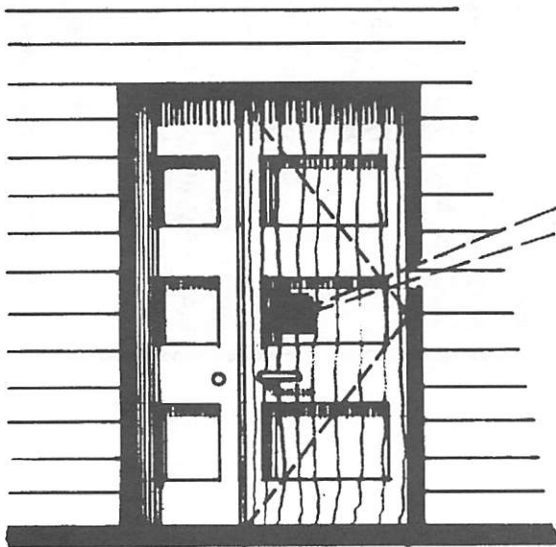


SINGLE DOOR

FOR THRESHOLD SEE 51.4.3.2.1(3) AND NOTE



MULTI-DOOR



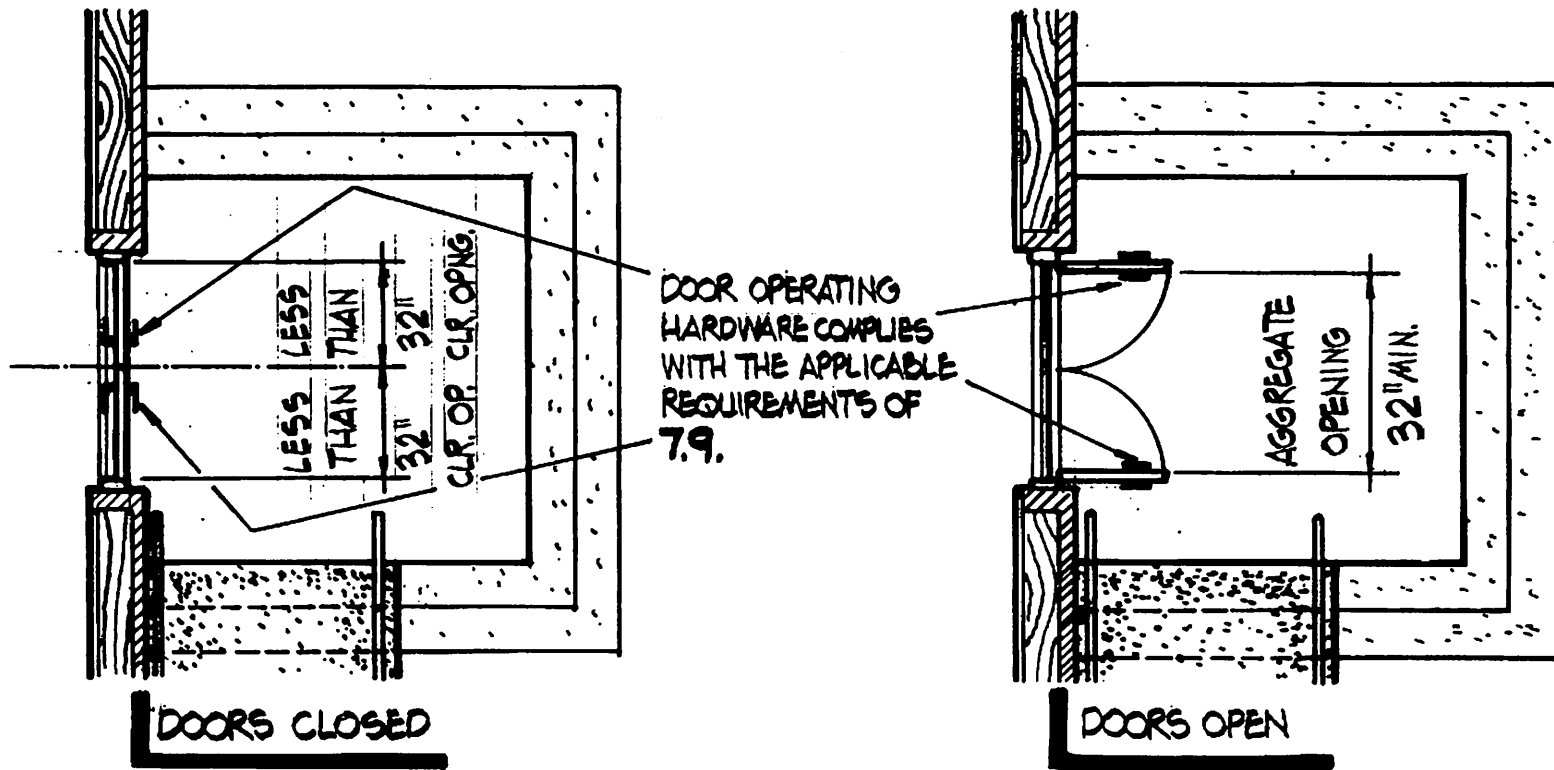
ACCESSIBLE DOOR



INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY - BOTH SIDES OF DOOR

FOR A MULTI-DOOR ENTRANCE THE ACCESSIBLE DOOR SHALL BE IDENTIFIED BY THE INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY.

51.4.3.2- DOORS (PART I)



51.4.3.2.1 FOR A DOORWAY HAVING TWO (2) DOORS WITH EACH DOOR HAVING A CLEAR OPENING THAT IS LESS THAN 32 INCHES, REPLACEMENT OF BOTH DOORS MAY NOT BE REQUIRED PROVIDED THAT ALL OF THE FOLLOWING CONDITIONS ARE SATISFIED:

- (1) THE AGGREGATE CLEAR OPENING IS 32 INCHES MINIMUM;
- (2) DOOR OPERATING HARDWARE COMPLIES WITH THE APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF 7.9; AND
- (3) THE THRESHOLD (IF ANY) HAS A 1/2 INCH MAXIMUM OVERALL HEIGHT.

(NOTE: FOR 51.4.3.2 AND 51.4.3.2.1, AN EXISTING THRESHOLD EXCEEDING 1/2 INCH MAY REMAIN IN PLACE PROVIDED THAT BEVELED EDGES COMPLYING WITH 7.8.2 ARE PROVIDED ON BOTH SIDES.)

51.4.3.2--DOORS (PART 2)

* 51.4.3.2.1 For a doorway having two (2) doors with each door having a clear opening that is less than 32 inches (815 mm), replacement of both doors may not be required provided that all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The aggregate clear opening is 32 inches (815 mm) minimum;

(2) Door operating hardware complies with the applicable requirements of 7.9; and

(3) The threshold (if any) has a 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum overall height.

(NOTE: For 51.4.3.2 and 51.4.3.2.1, an existing threshold exceeding 1/2 inch [13 mm] in overall height may remain in place provided that beveled edges complying with 7.8.2 are provided on both sides.)

Derived From:
Vol. I-C, Page 45;
ADAAG 4.1.6(3)(d)(ii)

51.4.4 INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

51.4.4.1 The accessible route from the accessible entrance shall, at a minimum, lead to all publicly used spaces located on the level of the accessible entrance. If a ramp(s), elevator(s), or lift(s) is provided, then the accessible route shall extend to all publicly used spaces on all levels served by those elements.

ADAAG 4.1.7(3)(d)

51.4.5 UNISEX TOILET ROOM

51.4.5.1 A unisex toilet room shall comply with the following:

(1) When the gross area of a building or tenant space is 2,500 gross square feet (232.25 square meters) or less, one toilet room with lockable door complying with 11.8.2 and 11.8.3 may be used by both male and female occupants.

Plumbing Code
Table 403.4
Note 4

(2) For buildings and facilities having a gross area greater than 2,500 square feet (232.25 square meters), a single toilet room having an internal 60 inches by 60 inches (1525 mm by 1525 mm), or a 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter, minimum clear floor area shall be permitted.

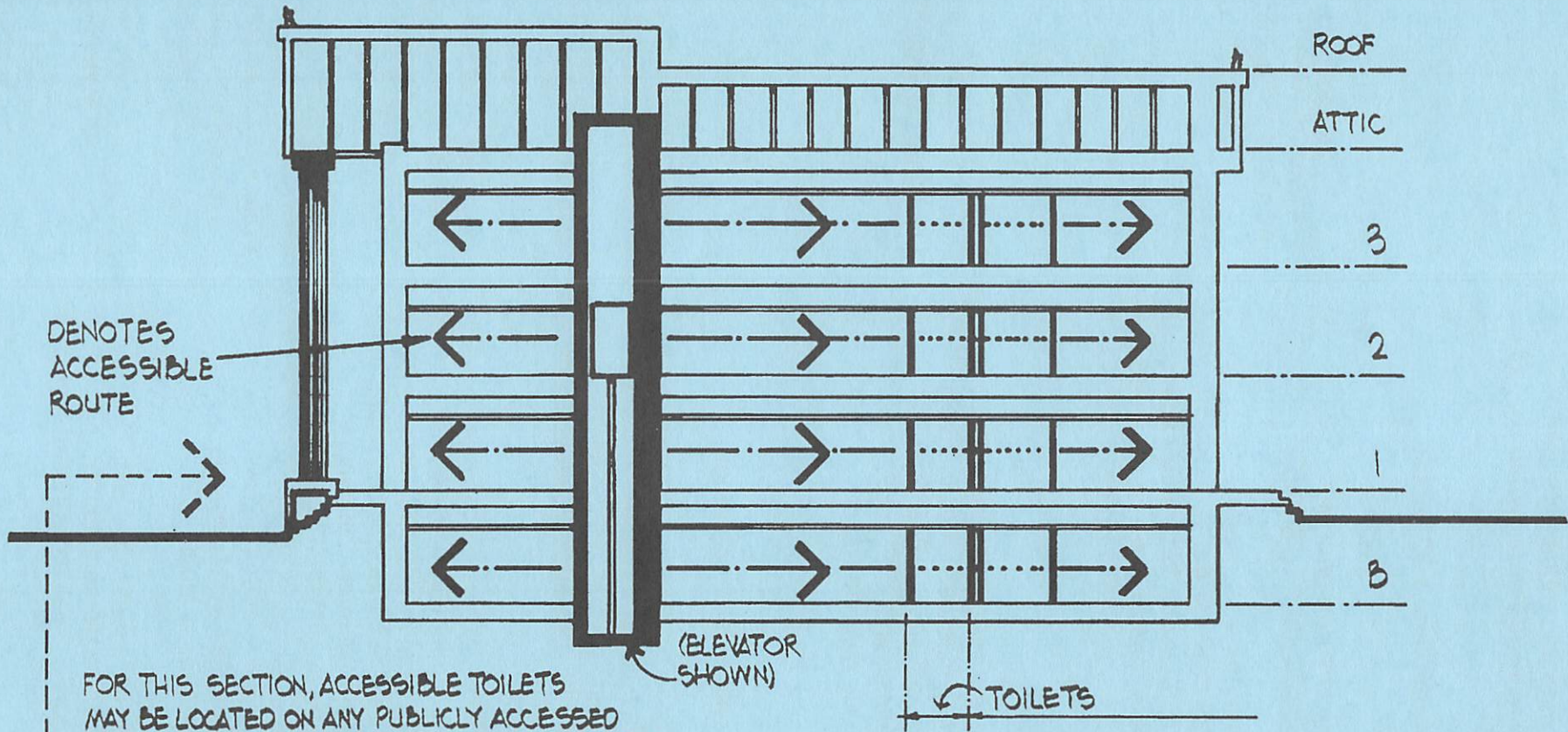
Vol. I-C, 11.3.1;
ADAAG 4.22.3
And Figure 3

51.4.5.2 If an accessible route to levels above and/or below the accessible entry level is not provided, then the accessible toilet(s) shall be located on the accessible entry level.

From ADAAG 4.1.3(5)
Exception 1; And
4.1.7(3)(c)

51.4.5.3 Each inaccessible toilet room shall be provided with signage complying with 18.1.2 indicating the direction to the accessible toilet(s). Accessible toilet room(s) shall be identified in compliance with 18.1.3(3).

ADAAG
4.1.6(3)(e)(iii)



FOR THIS SECTION, ACCESSIBLE TOILETS MAY BE LOCATED ON ANY PUBLICLY ACCESSED FLOOR LEVEL. FOR THE PLAN SHOWN AT 51.3.1 THE ACCESSIBLE TOILETS SHALL BE LOCATED **ONLY** ON THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRY LEVEL SINCE THERE IS NO ACCESS TO UPPER/LOWER LEVELS.

BUILDING SECTION

51.4.4.1- THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE FROM THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE SHALL, AT A MINIMUM, LEAD TO ALL PUBLICLY USED SPACES ON THE LEVEL OF THE ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCE.

{ IF A RAMP(S), ELEVATOR(S), OR LIFT(S) IS PROVIDED, THEN THE ACCESSIBLE ROUTE SHALL EXTEND TO ALL PUBLICLY USED SPACES ON ALL LEVELS SERVED BY THOSE ELEMENTS.

51.4.4- INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

**ACCESSIBLE TOILET ROOMS LOCATED ON
SECOND FLOOR ADJACENT TO STAIR 2
PLEASE TAKE ELEVATOR**

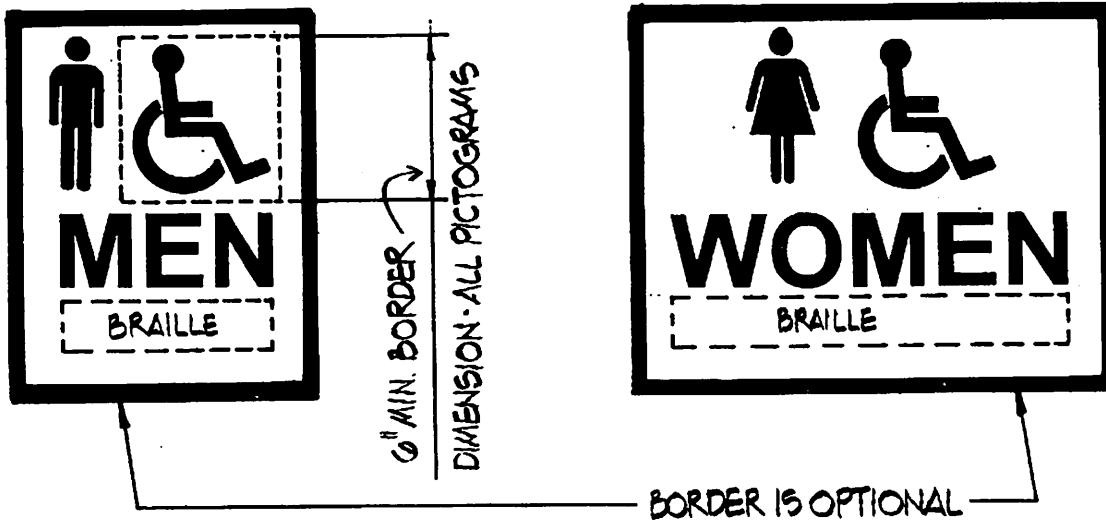
EXAMPLE 1 ↗

BORDER IS OPTIONAL

EXAMPLE 2 ↘

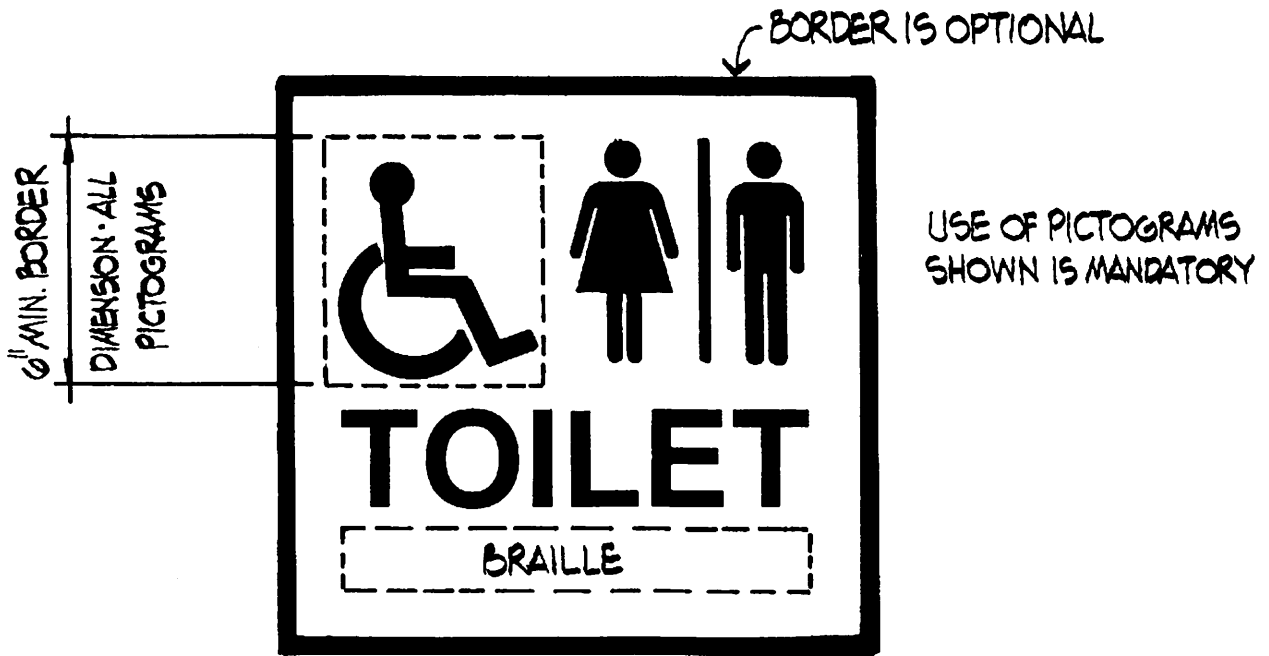
**ACCESSIBLE MEN'S AND WOMEN'S TOILET
ROOMS LOCATED THIS FLOOR
ADJACENT TO EAST STAIR**

EACH INACCESSIBLE TOILET ROOM SHALL BE PROVIDED WITH SIGNAGE
COMPLYING WITH 18.1.2 INDICATING THE DIRECTION TO THE
ACCESSIBLE TOILET(S)



ACCESSIBLE TOILET ROOM(S) SHALL BE IDENTIFIED IN
COMPLIANCE WITH 18.1.3(3).
(FOR UNISEX TOILET IDENTIFICATION SIGN SEE NEXT ILLUSTRATION)

51.4.5.3- TOILET ROOM DIRECTIONAL SIGNS (UPPER)
TOILET ROOM IDENTIFICATION SIGN (LOWER)



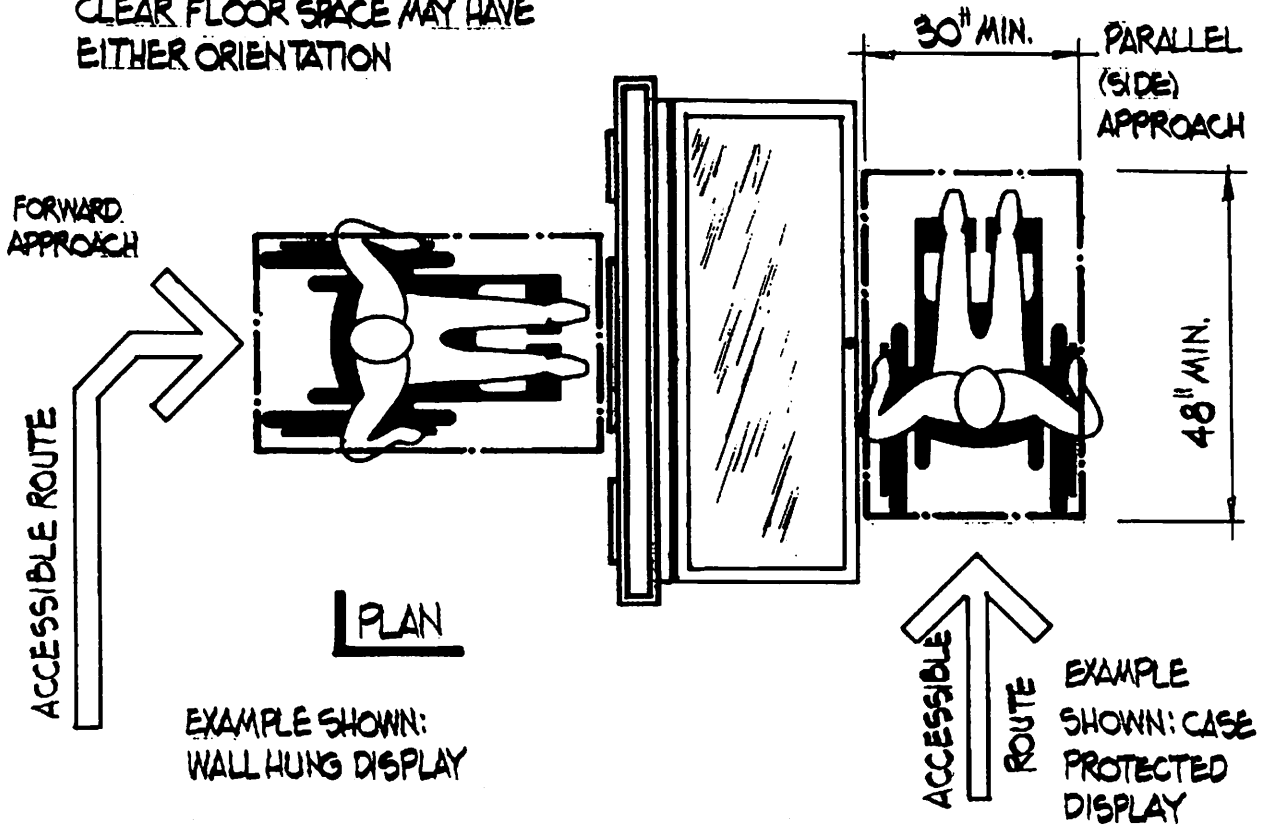
51.4.5.3- UNISEX TOILET IDENTIFICATION SIGN

51.5 HISTORIC DISPLAYS

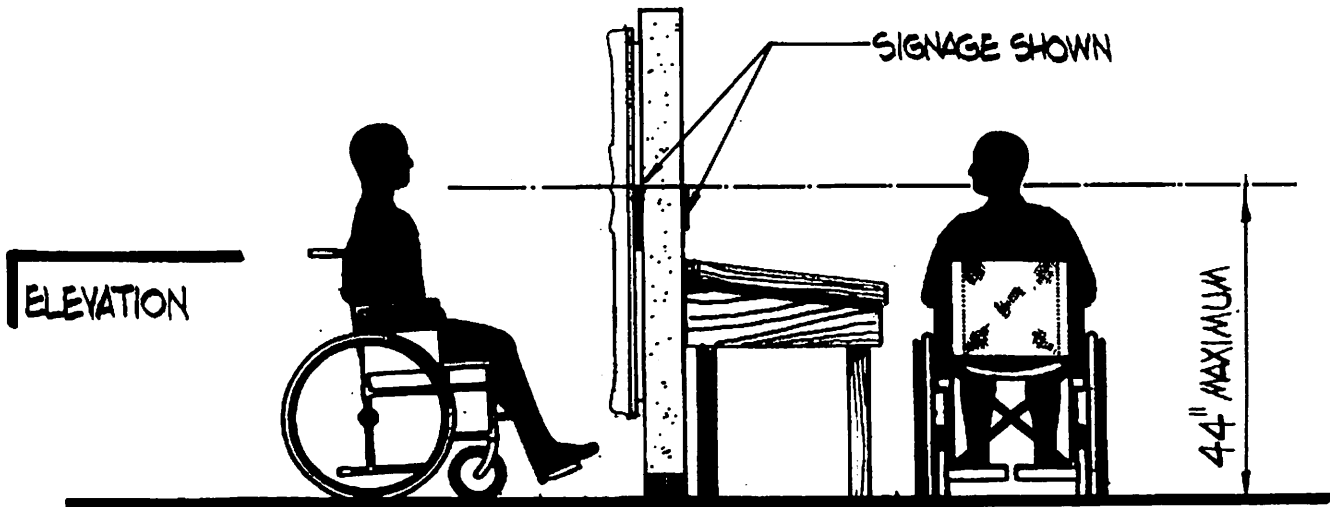
51.5.1 Displays, written information, documents, etc. shall be located in such a position that they can be seen by a seated person. Exhibits and signage displayed horizontally (e.g., documents, maps, books, stamps, etc.) shall be located at 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**ADAAG
4.1.7(3)(e)**

CLEAR FLOOR SPACE MAY HAVE EITHER ORIENTATION



DISPLAYS, WRITTEN INFORMATION, DOCUMENTS, ETC. SHALL BE LOCATED SUCH THAT THEY CAN BE SEEN BY A SEATED PERSON.



EXHIBITS AND SIGNAGE DISPLAYED HORIZONTALLY (E.G., DOCUMENTS, MAPS, BOOKS, STAMPS, ETC.) SHALL BE LOCATED AT 44" MAXIMUM ABOVE THE FINISHED FLOOR.

51.5 - HISTORIC DISPLAYS

PART V:

EXCERPTS FROM: NORTH CAROLINA GENERAL STATUTES AND AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT

**These Appendices Are NOT a Mandatory Part
Of This Code NOR Are They To Be Construed As Such;
They Are Supplemental Information Provided Solely
For The Convenience Of Building/Facility Owners
Both Public And Private, Professional Designers,
Code Enforcement Officials, Students,
And The General Public.**

**APPENDIX A
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

MOTOR VEHICLES

§20-4.01 DEFINITIONS

Unless the context requires otherwise, the following definitions apply throughout this Chapter to the defined words and phrases and their cognates.

(32) PUBLIC VEHICULAR AREA.—Any area within the State of North Carolina that is generally open to and used by the public for vehicular traffic, including by way of illustration and not limitation any drive, driveway, road, roadway, street, alley, or parking lot upon the grounds and premises of:

- a. Any public or private hospital, college, university, school, orphanage, church, or any of the institutions, parks or other facilities maintained and supported by the State of North Carolina or any of its subdivisions; or
- b. Any service station, drive-in theater, supermarket, store, restaurant, or office building, or any other business, residential, or municipal establishment providing parking space for customers, patrons, or the public, or
- c. Any property owned by the United States and subject to the jurisdiction of the State of North Carolina. (The inclusion of property owned by the United States in this definition shall not limit assimilation of North Carolina law when applicable under the provisions of Title 18, United States Code, section 13.)

The term “public vehicular area” shall also include any beach area used by the public for vehicular traffic within or leading to a subdivision for use by subdivision residents, their guests, and members of the public, whether or not the subdivision roads have been offered for dedication to the public. The term “public vehicular area” shall not be construed to mean any private property not generally open to and used by the public.

(1973, c.1330, s.1; 1975, cc.94, 208; c.716, s.5; c.743, c.859, s.1; 1977, c.313; c.464, s.34; 1979, c.39; c.423, s.1; c.574, ss.1-4; c.667, s.1; c.;680; 1981, c.606, s.3; c.792, s.2; 1983, c.435, s.8; 1983 (Reg. Sess., 1984), c. 1101, ss.1-3; 1985, c.509, s.6; 1987, c.607, s.2; c.658, s.1; 1987 (Reg. Sess., 1988), c.1069; c.1105, s.1; c.1112, ss.1-3; 1989, c.455, s.1; c.727, s.219(1); c.771, s.1; 1991, c.449, s.2; c.726, ss.1-4; 1991 (Reg. Sess., 1992), c.1015.s.1.)

CASE NOTES

Public Vehicular Area.— Evidence held sufficient to permit a finding that handicapped or wheelchair ramp in motel parking lot in front of motel door upon which most of defendant’s car had been stopped was part of a “public vehicular area” within the meaning and intent of that phrase as used in subdivision (32). *State v. Mabe*, 85 N.C. App. 500, 355 S.E. 2d 186 (1987).

OPINIONS OF ATTORNEY GENERAL

The parking lot of the restaurant is within the definition of “public vehicular area” under subdivision (32) of this section when the restaurant is closed. See opinion of Attorney General to Mr. James C. Yeatts, III, Assistant District Attorney, 17-B Judicial District, 52 N.C.A.G. 6 (1982).

PART IV:

APPENDIX FOR HISTORIC PRESERVATION

***Alterations To Buildings Or Facilities That Are Eligible
For Listing In The National Register Of Historic Places
Under The National Historic Preservation Act
(16 U.S.C. 470 Et Seq.), Or Are Designated As Historic
Under State Or Local Law, Shall Comply With
[Chapter 51 Of This Code]***

(U.S. Department Of Justice, §36.405[a], Modified)

***Alterations To Historic Properties Shall Comply, To The
Maximum Extent Feasible, With [Chapter 51 Of This Code].***

(U.S. Department Of Justice, §35.151[d][1], Modified)

**APPENDIX B
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

MOTOR VEHICLES

§20-37.5 DEFINITIONS

Unless the context requires otherwise, the following definitions apply throughout this Article to the defined words and phrases and their cognates.

- (1) "Distinguishing license plate" means a license plate that displays the International Symbol of Access using the same color, size of plate, and size of letters or numbers as a regular plate.
 - (2) "Handicapped" shall mean a person with a mobility impairment who, as determined by a licensed physician:
 - a. Cannot walk 200 feet without stopping to rest;
 - b. Cannot walk without the use of, or assistance from, a brace, cane, crutch, another person, prosthetic device, wheelchair, or other assistive device;
 - c. Is restricted by lung disease to such an extent that the person's forced (respiratory) expiratory volume of one second, when measured by spirometry, is less than one liter, or the arterial oxygen tension is less than 60 mm/hg on room air at rest;
 - d. Uses portable oxygen;
 - e. Has a cardiac condition to the extent that the person's functional limitations are classified in severity as Class III or Class IV according to standards set by the American Heart Association;
 - f. Is severely limited in their ability to walk due to an arthritic, neurological, or orthopedic condition; or
 - g. Is totally blind or whose vision with glasses is so defective as to prevent performance of ordinary activity for which eyesight is essential, as certified by a licensed ophthalmologist, optometrist, or the Division of Services for the Blind.
 - (3) "International Symbol of Access" means the symbol adopted by Rehabilitation International in 1969 at its Eleventh World Congress on Rehabilitation of the Disabled.
 - (4) "Removable windshield placard" means a two-sided, hooked placard which includes on each side:
 - a. The international Symbol of Access, which is at least three inches in height, centered on the placard, and is white on a blue shield;
 - b. An identification number;
 - c. An expiration date; and
 - d. The seal or other identification of the issuing authority.
- (1967, c.296, s.5; 1977, c.340, s.1; 1991, c.411, s.1.)

**APPENDIX C
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

§20-37.6 PARKING PRIVILEGES FOR HANDICAPPED DRIVERS AND PASSENGERS

(d) DESIGNATION OF PARKING SPACES.---Designation of parking spaces for handicapped persons on streets and public vehicular areas shall comply with G.S. 136-30. A sign designating a parking space for handicapped persons shall state the maximum penalty for parking in the space in violation of the law.

(e) ENFORCEMENT OF HANDICAPPED PARKING PRIVILEGES.---It shall be unlawful:

- (1) To park or leave standing any vehicle in a space designated with a sign pursuant to subsection (d) of this section for handicapped persons when the vehicle does not display the distinguishing license plate, removable windshield placard, or temporary removable windshield placard as provided in this section, or a disabled veteran registration plate issued under G.S. 20-79.4;
- (2) For any person not qualifying for the rights and privileges extended to handicapped persons under this section to exercise or attempt to exercise such rights or privileges by the unauthorized use of a distinguishing license plate, removable windshield placard, or temporary removable windshield placard issued pursuant to the provisions of this section;
- (3) To park or leave standing any vehicle so as to obstruct a curb ramp or curb cut for handicapped persons as provided for by the North Carolina Building Code or as designated in G.S. 136-44.14;
- (4) For those responsible for designating parking spaces for the handicapped to erect or otherwise use signs not conforming to G.S. 20-37.6(d) for this purpose.

This section is enforceable in all public vehicular areas.

(f) PENALTIES FOR VIOLATION.---

- (1) A violation of G.S. 20-37.6(e)(1), (2) or (3) is an infraction which carries a penalty of at least one hundred dollars (\$100) but not more than two hundred fifty dollars (\$250) and whenever evidence shall be presented in any court of the fact that any automobile, truck, or other vehicle was found to be parked in a properly designated handicapped parking space in violation of the provisions of this section, it shall be prima facie evidence in any court in the State of North Carolina that the vehicle was parked and left in the space by the person, firm, or corporation in whose name the vehicle is registered and licensed according to the record of the Division. No evidence tendered or presented under this authorization shall be admissible or competent in any respect in any court or tribunal except in cases concerned with a violation of this section.

Revised By NC
Genl. Assembly
House Bill 143,
Session Law
199-265

- (2) A violation of G.S. 20-37.6(e)(4) is an infraction which carries a penalty of at least one hundred dollars (\$100) but not more than two hundred fifty dollars (\$250) and whenever evidence shall be presented in any court of the fact that a nonconforming sign is being used it shall be prima facie evidence in any court in the State of North Carolina that the person, firm, or corporation with ownership of the property where the nonconforming sign is located is responsible for violation of this section. **BUILDING INSPECTORS AND OTHERS RESPONSIBLE FOR NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE VIOLATIONS SPECIFIED IN G.S. 143-138(h) WHERE SUCH SIGNS ARE REQUIRED BY THE HANDICAPPED SECTION OF THE NORTH CAROLINA STATE BUILDING CODE, MAY CAUSE A CITATION TO BE ISSUED FOR THIS VIOLATION AND MAY ALSO INITIATE ANY APPROPRIATE ACTION OR PROCEEDING TO CORRECT SUCH VIOLATION.** (Emphasis Added.)
- (3) A law-enforcement officer, including a company police officer commissioned by the Attorney General under Chapter 74E, may cause a vehicle parked in violation of this section to be towed. The officer is a legal possessor as provided in G.S. 20-161(d)(2). The officer shall not be held to answer in any civil or criminal Court action to any owner, lienholder, other person legally entitled to the possession of any motor vehicle removed from a space pursuant to this section, except where the motor vehicle is willfully, maliciously, or negligently damaged in the removal from the space to a place of storage.
- (4) Notwithstanding any other provision of the General Statutes, the provisions of this section relative to handicapped parking shall be enforced by State, county, city and other municipal authorities in their respective jurisdictions whether on public or private property in the same manner as is used to enforce other parking laws and ordinances by said agencies.

(1971, c.374, s.1; 1973 cc.126, 1384; 1977, c.340, s.2; 1979, c.632, s.7; 1983, c.326, ss. 1, 2; 1985, c.249; c.586; c.764, 1985 (Reg. Sess., 1986), c.852, s.17; 1987, c.843; 1989, c.760, s.3; 1989 (Reg. Sess., 1990), c.1052, ss.1-3.1; 1991, c.411, s.2; c.530, s.4; c.672, s.5; c.726, s.23; c.761, s.5; 1991 (Reg. Sess., 1992), c.1007, s.30, c.1043, s.4; 1993, c.373, s.1.)

Editor's Note:---Session Laws 1991, c.530, which amended this section, In s.7 provides "ANY NONCONFORMING SIGN OTHE OTHER TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICE IN USE ON THE EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS ACT [JANUARY 1, 1992] MAY REMAIN IN USE UNTIL JANUARY 1, 1994." (Emphasis Added.)

¶20-37.6A PARKING PRIVILEGES FOR OUT-OF-STATE HANDICAPPED DRIVERS AND PASSENGERS

Any vehicle displaying an out-of-State handicapped license plate, placard, or other evidence of handicap issued by the appropriate authority of the appropriate jurisdiction may park in any space reserved for the handicapped pursuant to G.S. 20-37.6.

(1981, c.48; 1991, c.411, s.3; 1991 (Reg. Sess. 1992), c.1007, s.31.)

**APPENDIX D
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

**(EXCERPTS FROM)
STATE FAIR HOUSING ACT**

¶41A-3. DEFINITIONS

(1a) "Covered multifamily dwellings" means:

- a. A building, including all units and common use areas, in which there are four or more units if the building has one or more elevators; or
- b. Ground floor units and ground floor common use areas in a building with four or more units.

(3a) "Handicapping condition" means (i) a physical or mental impairment which substantially limits one or more of a person's major life activities, (ii) a record of having such an impairment, or (iii) being regarded as having such an impairment. Handicapping condition does not include current, illegal use of or addiction to a controlled substance as defined in 21 USC. ¶802, the Controlled Substances Act. The protections against discrimination on the basis of handicapping condition shall apply to a buyer or renter of a dwelling, a person residing in or intending to reside in the dwelling after it is sold, rented, or made available, or any person associated with the buyer or renter.

(7) "Real estate transaction" means the sale, exchange, rental, or lease of real property;

(8) "Real property" means a building, structure, real estate, land, tenement, leasehold, interest in real estate cooperatives, condominium, and hereditament, corporeal and incorporeal, or any interest therein.

(1983, c.522, s.1; 1989, c.507, s.1; 1989 (Reg. Sess., 1990) c.979, s.1(1).)

¶41a-4 UNLAWFUL DISCRIMINATORY HOUSING PRACTICES

(a)(2c) Fail to design and construct covered multifamily dwellings available for first occupancy after March 13, 1991 so that:

- a. The dwellings have at least one building entrance on an accessible route, unless it is impractical to do so because of terrain or unusual site characteristics; or
- b. With respect to dwellings with a building entrance on an accessible route:
 1. The public and common use portions are readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons;
 2. There is an accessible route into and through all dwellings and units;
 3. All doors designed to allow passage into, within, and through these dwellings and individual units are wide enough for wheelchairs;
 4. Light switches, electrical switches, electrical outlets, thermostats, and other environmental controls are in accessible locations;
 5. Bathroom walls are reinforced to allow later installation of grab bars; and
 6. Kitchens and bathrooms have space for an individual in a wheelchair to maneuver.

§41A-6 EXEMPTIONS

- (a) The provisions of G.S. 41A-4, except for subdivision (a)(6), do not apply to the following:
- (1) The rental of a housing accommodation in a building which contains housing accommodations for not more than four families living independently of each other, if the lessor or a member of his family resides in one of the housing accommodations;
 - (2) The rental of a room or rooms in a private house, not a boarding house, if the lessor or a member of his family resides in the house.
 - (3) Religious institutions or organizations or charitable or educational organizations operated, supervised, or controlled by religious institutions or organizations which give preference to members of the same religion in a real estate transaction, as long as membership in such religion is not restricted by race, color, sex, national origin, handicapping condition, or familial status;
 - (4) Private clubs, not in fact open to the public, which incident to their primary purpose or purposes provide lodging, which they own or operate for other than a commercial purpose, to their members;
 - (5) With respect to discrimination based on sex, the rental or leasing of housing accommodations in single-sex dormitory property(.)
 - (6) Repealed by Session Laws 1989 (regular Session, 1990), c.979, s.4, effective July 19, 1990.
 - (7) The sale, rental, exchange, or lease of commercial real estate. For the purpose of this Chapter, commercial real estate means real property which is not intended for residential use.
- (b) No provision of this Chapter requires that a dwelling be made available to a person whose tenancy would constitute a direct threat to the health or safety of other persons or whose tenancy would result in substantial physical damage to the property of others.
- (c) No provisions in this Chapter limits the applicability of any reasonable local or State restrictions regarding the maximum number of occupants permitted to occupy a dwelling unit.
- (d) **NOTHING IN THIS CHAPTER SHALL BE DEEMED TO NULLIFY ANY PROVISIONS OF THE NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE APPLICABLE TO THE CONSTRUCTION OF RESIDENTIAL HOUSING FOR THE HANDICAPPED.**
(Emphasis Added.)
(1983, c.522, s.1; 1985, c.371, ss.1, 2; 1989, c.507, s.4; c.721, s.1; 1989, (Reg. Sess., 1990), c.979, s.4.)

(NOTE: With respect to (a)(2), see, also, Volume I, Chapter 2, DEFINITIONS: LODGING HOUSE.)

APPENDIX E
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA

¶105-130.22 TAX CREDIT FOR CONSTRUCTION OF DWELLING UNITS FOR
HANDICAPPED PERSONS

There is allowed to corporate owners of multifamily rental units located in this State as a credit against the tax imposed by this Part, an amount equal to five hundred fifty dollars (\$550.00) for each dwelling unit constructed by the corporate owner that conforms to Volume I-C [North Carolina Accessibility Code] of the North Carolina Building Code for the taxable year within which the construction of the dwelling unit is completed. The credit is provided only for dwelling units completed during the taxable year that were required to be built in compliance with Volume I-C [North Carolina Accessibility Code] of the North Carolina Building Code. If the credit allowed by this section exceeds the tax imposed by this Part reduced by all other credits allowed, the excess may be carried forward for the next succeeding year. In order to secure the credit allowed by this section the corporation shall file with its income tax return a copy of the occupancy permit on the face of which is recorded by the building inspector the number of units completed during the taxable year that conform to Volume I-C [North Carolina Accessibility Code] of the North Carolina Building Code. After recording the number of these units on the face of the occupancy permit, the building inspector shall promptly forward a copy of the permit to the Building Accessibility Section of the Department of Insurance.

(1973, c.910, s.1; 1979, c.803, ss. 1, 2; 1981, c.682; 1998-98, s.69.)

APPENDIX F
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA

¶105-151.1 CREDIT FOR CONSTRUCTION OF DWELLING UNITS FOR HANDICAPPED PERSONS

An owner of multifamily rental units located in this State is allowed a credit against the tax imposed by this Part equal to five hundred fifty dollars (\$550.00) for each dwelling unit constructed by the owner that conforms to Volume I-C [North Carolina Accessibility Code] of the North Carolina Building Code for the taxable year in which the construction of the dwelling units is completed. The credit is allowed only for dwelling units completed during the taxable year that were required to be built in compliance with Volume I-C [North Carolina Accessibility Code] of the North Carolina Building Code. If the credit allowed by this section exceeds the tax imposed by this Part reduced by all other credits allowed, the excess may be carried forward for the next succeeding year. In order to claim the credit allowed by this section, the taxpayer must file with the income tax return a copy of the occupancy permit on the face of which is recorded by the building inspector the number of units completed during the taxable year that conform to Volume I-C [North Carolina Accessibility Code] of the North Carolina Building Code. After recording the number of these units on the face of the occupancy permit, the building inspector shall promptly forward a copy of the permit to the Building Accessibility Section of the Department of Insurance.

(1973, c.910, s.2; 1979, c.803, ss. 3, 4; 1981, c.682, s.17; 1989, c.728, s.1.6; 1998-98, s.69; 1998-100, s.1.)

**APPENDIX G
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
DUTIES OF DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN RESOURCES**

§1111-11 DEFINITION OF VISUALLY HANDICAPPED PERSON

For the purpose of this Chapter, visually handicapped persons are those persons who are totally blind or whose vision with glasses is so defective as to prevent the performance of ordinary activity for which eyesight is essential.

(1935, c.53, s.10; 1939, c.124; 1971, c.1215, s.3.)

**APPENDIX H
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

**(EXCERPTS FROM)
ROADS AND HIGHWAYS**

**§136-30 UNIFORM SIGNS AND OTHER TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES ON HIGHWAYS,
STREETS, AND PUBLIC VEHICULAR AREAS**

(c) PUBLIC VEHICULAR AREAS

Except as provided in this subsection, all traffic signs and other traffic control devices placed on a public vehicular area, as defined in G.S. 20-4.01, must conform to the Uniform Manual. The owner of private property that contains a public vehicular area may place on the property a traffic control device, other than a sign designating a parking space for handicapped persons, as defined in G.S. 20-37.5, that differs in material from the uniform device but does not differ in shape, size, color, or any other way from a uniform device. The owner of private property that contains a public vehicular area may place on the property a sign designating a parking space for handicapped persons that differs in material and color from the uniform device but does not differ in shape, size, or any other way from a uniform device.

(d) DEFINITION

As used in this section, the term "Uniform Manual" means the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, published by the United States Department of Transportation, and any supplement to that Manual adopted by the North Carolina Department of Transportation. (1921, c.2, ss.9(a), 9(b); C.S., ss.3846(q), 3846(r); 1927, c.148, s.54; 1933, c.172, s.17; 1957, c.65, s.11; 1973, c.507, s.5; 1977, c.464, s.7.1; 1991, c.530, s.1; 1991 (Reg. Sess., 1992), c.818, s.2; 1993, c.51, s.1.)

Editor's Note— Session Laws 1991, c.530, which amended this section, in s.7 provides:

**“ANY NONCONFORMING SIGN OR OTHER TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICE IN USE
ON THE EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS ACT [JANUARY 1, 1992] MAY REMAIN IN
USE UNTIL JANUARY 1, 1994.”**

(Emphasis Added.)

**APPENDIX J
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

**STATE DEPARTMENTS, INSTITUTIONS,
AND COMMISSIONS**

¶143-138 NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE

See North Carolina State Building Code, Volume I-A, Part II.

**APPENDIX K
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

**(EXCERPTS FROM)
HANDICAPPED PERSONS**

¶168-1. PURPOSE AND DEFINITION

The State shall encourage and enable handicapped persons to participate fully in the social and economic life of the State and to engage in remunerative employment. The definition of "handicapped persons" shall include those individuals with physical, mental and visual disabilities. For the purposes of this Article the definition of "visually handicapped" in G.S. 111-11 shall apply. (1973, c.493, s.1.)

CASE NOTES

Legislative Intent.—The legislature intended to grant broad protection of basic rights to all persons with any type of disability, and additionally sought to grant particular protection to an especially disabled group, the "visually handicapped." *Burgess v. Joseph Schlitz Brewing Co.*, 39 N.C. App. 481, 250 S.E. 2d 687, rev'd on other grounds, 298 N.C. 520, 259 S.E. 2d 248 (1979).

Liberal Construction.—This chapter is remedial statute, and should be construed broadly rather than narrowly to achieve its purposes. *Burgess v. Joseph Schlitz Brewing Co.*, 298 N.C. 520, 259 S.E. 2d 249 (1979.)

Legal Periodicals.—For note on AIDS and employment discrimination, see 23 *Wake Forest L. Rev.* 305 (1988).

¶168-2. RIGHT OF ACCESS TO AND USE OF PUBLIC PLACES

Handicapped persons have the same right as the able-bodied to the full and free use of the streets, highways, sidewalks, walkways, public buildings, public facilities, and all other buildings and facilities, both publicly and privately owned, which serve the public. The Department of Human Resources shall develop, print, and promote the publication ACCESS NORTH CAROLINA. It shall make copies of the publication available to be Department of Commerce for its use in Welcome Centers and other appropriate Department of Commerce offices. The Department of Economic and Community Development shall promote ACCESS NORTH CAROLINA in its publications (including providing a toll-free telephone line and an address for requesting copies of the publication) and provide technical assistance to the Department of Human Resources on travel attractions to be included in ACCESS NORTH CAROLINA. The Department of Commerce shall forward all requests for mailing ACCESS NORTH CAROLINA to the Department of Human Resources.

(1973, c.493, s.1; 1991, c.672, s.4; c.726, s.23; 1991 (Reg. Sess., 1992), c.959, s.84.)

¶168-3. RIGHT TO USE PUBLIC CONVEYANCES, ACCOMMODATIONS, ETC.

The handicapped and physically disabled are entitled to accommodations, advantages, facilities, and privileges of all common carriers, airplanes, motor vehicles, railroad trains, motor buses, streetcars, boats or any other public conveyances or modes of transportation; hotels, lodging places, places of public accommodation, amusement or resort to which the general public is invited, subject only to the conditions and limitations established by law and applicable alike to all persons.

(1973, c.493, s.1.)

¶168-4.2. MAY BE ACCOMPANIED BY ASSISTANCE DOG

Every mobility impaired person, as defined in this section, visually impaired person, as broadly defined to include visual disability, or hearing impaired person, as defined in G.S. 8B-1(2), has the right to be accompanied by an assistance dog especially trained for the purpose of providing assistance to a person with the same impairing condition as the person wishing to be accompanied, in any of the places listed in G.S. 168-3, and has the right to keep the assistance dog on any premises the person leases, rents, or uses. The person qualifies for these rights upon showing of a tag, issued by the Department of Human Resources, pursuant to G.S. 168-4.3, stamped, "NORTH CAROLINA ASSISTANCE DOG PERMANENT REGISTRATION" and stamped with a registration number, or upon a showing that the dog is being trained or has been trained as an assistance dog. An assistance dog may accompany a person in any of the places listed in G.S. 168-3 but may not occupy a seat in any of these places. A mobility impaired person is a person with a physiological deficiency, regardless of its cause, nature, or extent, that renders the individual unable to move about without the aid of crutches, a wheelchair, or other form of support, or that limits the person's functional ability to ambulate, climb, descend, sit, rise, or perform any other related function.

(1985, c.514, s.1; 1987, c.401, s.1.)

¶168-4.4. RESPONSIBILITY FOR ASSISTANCE DOG

The visually impaired person, hearing impaired person, or mobility impaired person who is accompanied by an assistance dog may not be required to pay any extra compensation for the dog. The person has all the responsibilities and liabilities placed on any person by any applicable law when that person owns or uses any dog, including liability for any damage done by the dog.

(1985, c.414, s.1.)

¶168-8. RIGHT TO HABILITATION AND REHABILITATION SERVICES

Handicapped persons shall be entitled to such habilitation and rehabilitation services as available and needed for the development or restoration of their capabilities to the fullest extent possible. Such services shall include, but not be limited to, education, training, treatment and other services to provide for adequate food, clothing, housing and transportation during the course of education, training, and treatment. Handicapped persons shall be entitled to these rights subject only to conditions and limitations established by law and applicable alike to all persons.

(1973, c. 493, s.1.)

¶168-9. RIGHT TO HOUSING

Each handicapped citizen shall have the same right as any other citizen to live and reside in residential communities, homes, and group homes, and no person or group of persons, including governmental bodies or political subdivisions of the State shall be permitted, or have the authority, to prevent any handicapped citizen, on the basis of his or her handicap, from living and residing in residential communities, homes, and group homes on the same basis and conditions as any other citizen. Nothing herein shall be construed to conflict with provisions of Chapter 122C of the General Statutes.

(1975, c.635; 1985, c.589, s.61.)

**APPENDIX L
GENERAL STATUTES OF
NORTH CAROLINA**

**(EXCERPTS FROM)
HANDICAPPED PERSONS
PROTECTION ACT**

§168A-3. DEFINITIONS

- (8) "Place of public accommodations" includes, but is not limited to, any place, facility, store, other establishment, hotel, or motel, which supplies goods or services on the premises to the public or which solicits or accepts the patronage or trade of any person.
- (9) "Qualified handicapped person" means:
- a. With regard to employment, a handicapped person who can satisfactorily perform the duties of the job in question, with or without reasonable accommodation, (i) provided that the handicapped person shall not be held to standards of performance different from other employees similarly employed, and (ii) further provided that the handicapping condition does not create an unreasonable risk to the safety or health of the handicapped person, other employees, the employer's customers, or the public.
 - b. With regard to places of public accommodation a handicapped person who can benefit from the goods or services provided by the place of public accommodation; and
 - c. With regard to public services and public transportation a handicapped person who meets the prerequisites for participation that are uniformly applied to all participants, such as income or residence, and that do not have the effect of discriminating against the handicapped.
- (10) "Reasonable accommodation" means:
- a. With regard to employment, making reasonable physical changes in the workplace, including, but not limited to, making facilities accessible, modifying equipment and providing mechanical aids to assist in operating equipment, or making reasonable changes in duties of the job in question that would accommodate the known handicapping conditions of the handicapped person seeking the job in question by enabling him or her to satisfactorily perform the duties of that job; provided that "reasonable accommodation" does not require that an employer:
 - (6) Make physical changes to accommodate a handicapped person where:
 - I. For a new employee the cost of such changes would exceed five percent (5%) of the annual salary or annualized hourly wage for the job in question; or
 - II. For an existing employee the cost of the changes would bring the total cost of physical changes made to accommodate the employee's handicapping conditions since the beginning of the employee's employment with the employer to greater than five percent (5%) of the employee's current salary or current annualized hourly wage; or
 - (7) Make any changes that would impose on the employer an undue hardship, provided that the costs of less than five percent (5%) of the employee's salary or annualized wage as determined in subsection (6) above shall be presumed not to be an undue hardship.

(1985, c.571, s.1.)

Legal Periodicals.—For note on AIDS and employment discrimination, see 23 Wake Forest L. rev. 305 (1988).

(NOTE: Under the Americans with Disabilities Act, Title I—EMPLOYMENT, the definition of “Undue Hardship” is somewhat different than 6.I and 6.II of G.S. 168A-3. See Appendix M, and the Federal Register, Part V, 29 CFR 1630, July 26, 1991.)

¶168A-4. REASONABLE ACCOMMODATION DUTIES

- (a) A qualified handicapped person requesting a reasonable accommodation must apprise the employer, employment agency, labor organization, or place of public accommodation of his or her handicapping condition, submit any necessary medical documentation, make suggestions for such possible accommodations as are known to such handicapped person, and cooperate in any ensuing discussion and evaluation aimed at determining possible or feasible accommodations.
- (b) Once a qualified handicapped person has requested an accommodation, or if a potential accommodation is obvious in the circumstances, an employer, employment agency, labor organization or place of public accommodation shall investigate whether there are reasonable accommodations that can be made and make reasonable accommodations as defined in G.S. 168A-3(10).

(1985, c.571, s.1.)

¶168A-6. DISCRIMINATION IN PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION

It is a discriminatory practice for a person to deny a qualified handicapped person the full and equal enjoyment of the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, and accommodations of a place of public accommodation on the basis of a handicapping condition. **IN THE AREA OF STRUCTURAL MODIFICATIONS, THIS SECTION MAY BE SATISFIED BY COMPLIANCE WITH THE NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE.**

(Emphasis Added.)

(1985, c.571, s.1.)

**APPENDIX M
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
TITLE I—EMPLOYMENT**

SEC. 101 DEFINITIONS

(9) REASONABLE ACCOMMODATION.—The term “reasonable accommodation” may include—

(A) making existing facilities used by employees readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities;

(10) UNDUE HARDSHIP—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term “undue hardship” means an action requiring significant difficulty or expense, when considered in light of the factors set forth in subparagraph (B).

(B) FACTORS TO BE CONSIDERED.—In determining whether an accommodation would impose an undue hardship on a covered entity, factors to be considered include—

(i) the nature and cost of the accommodation needed under this Act;

(ii) the overall financial resources of the facility or facilities involved in the provision of the reasonable accommodation; the number of persons employed at such facility; the effect on expenses and resources, or the impact otherwise of such accommodation upon the operation of the facility;

(iii) the overall financial resources of the covered entity; the overall size of the business of a covered entity with respect to the number of its employees; the number, type, and location of its facilities; and

(iv) the type of operation or operations of the covered entity, including the composition, structure, and functions of the work force of such entity; the geographic separateness, administrative, or fiscal relationship of the facility or facilities in question to the covered entity.

SEC. 102 DISCRIMINATION

(b) CONSTRUCTION.—As used in subsection (a), the term “discrimination” includes—

(5)(A) not making reasonable accommodations to the known physical or mental limitations of an otherwise qualified individual with a disability who is an applicant or employee, unless such covered entity can demonstrate that the accommodation would impose an undue hardship on the operation of the business of such covered entity; or

(B) denying employment opportunities to a job applicant or employee who is an otherwise qualified individual with a disability, if such denial is based on the need such covered entity to make reasonable accommodation to the physical or mental impairments of the employee or applicant(.)

**APPENDIX N
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
TITLE II—PUBLIC SERVICES**

SEC. 101 DEFINITION.

As used in this title:

- (1) PUBLIC ENTITY.**—The term “public entity” means—

 - (A) any State or local government;
 - (B) any department, agency, special purpose district, or other instrumentality of a State or States or local government(.)
- (2) QUALIFIED INDIVIDUAL WITH A DISABILITY.**—The term “qualified individual with a disability” means an individual with a disability who, with or without reasonable modifications to rules, policies, or practices, the removal of architectural, communication, or transportation barriers, or the provision of auxiliary aids and services, meets the essential eligibility requirements for the receipt of services or the participation in programs or activities provided by a public entity.

SEC. 202 DISCRIMINATION.

Subject to the provisions of this title, no qualified individual with a disability shall, by reason of such disability, be excluded from participation in or be denied the benefits of the services, programs, or activities of a public entity, or be subjected to discrimination by any such entity.

SEC. 203 ENFORCEMENT.

The remedies, procedures, and rights set forth in section 505 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794a) shall be the remedies, procedures, and rights this title provides to any person alleging discrimination on the basis of disability in violation of section 202.

**APPENDIX P
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
28 CFR PART 35 (TITLE II)
NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF DISABILITY
IN STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT SERVICES;
FINAL RULE**

SUBPART D—PROGRAM ACCESSIBILITY

§35.150 EXISTING FACILITIES

(d) TRANSITION PLAN. (1) In the event that structural changes to facilities will be undertaken to achieve program accessibility, a public entity that employs 50 or more persons shall develop, within six months of January 26, 1992, a transition plan setting forth the steps necessary to complete such changes. A public entity shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including individuals with disabilities or organizations representing individuals with disabilities, to participate in the development of the transition plan by submitting comments. A copy of the transition plan shall be made available for public inspection.

(2) If a public entity has responsibility or authority over streets, roads, or walkways, its transition plan shall include a schedule for providing curb ramps or other sloped areas where pedestrian walks cross curbs, giving priority to walkways serving entities covered by the Act, including State and local government offices and facilities transportation, places of public accommodation, and employers, followed by walkways serving other areas.

(3) The plan shall, at a minimum—

(i) Identify physical obstacles in the public entity's facilities that limit the accessibility of its programs or activities to individuals with disabilities;

(ii) Describe in detail the methods that will be used to make the facilities accessible;

(iii) Specify the schedule for taking the steps necessary to achieve compliance with this section and if the time period of the transition plan is longer than one year, identify steps that will be taken during each year of the transition period; and

(iv) Indicate the official responsible for implementation of the plan.

**APPENDIX Q
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
TITLE III—PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS AND SERVICES
OPERATED BY PRIVATE ENTITIES**

SEC. 308 ENFORCEMENT

(b) ENFORCEMENT BY THE ATTORNEY GENERAL—

(2) AUTHORITY OF THE COURT.—In a civil action under (1)(B), the court—

(A) may grant any equitable relief that such court considers to be appropriate, including, to the extent required by this title—

(i) granting temporary, preliminary, or permanent relief;

(ii) providing an auxiliary aid or service, modification of policy, practice, or procedure, or alternative method; and

(iii) making facilities readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities;

(B) may award such other relief as the court considers to be appropriate, including monetary damages to persons aggrieved when requested by the Attorney General; and

(C) may, to vindicate the public interest, assess a civil penalty against the entity in an amount—

(i) not exceeding \$50,000 for a first violation; and

(ii) not exceeding \$100,000 for any subsequent violation.

(3) SINGLE VIOLATION.—For purposes of paragraph (2)(C), in determining whether a first or subsequent violation has occurred, a determination in a single action, by judgment or settlement, that the covered entity has engaged in more than one discriminatory act shall be counted as a single violation.

(4) PUNITIVE DAMAGES.—For purposes of subsection (b)(2)(B), the term “monetary damages” and “such other relief” does not include punitive damages.

(5) JUDICIAL CONSIDERATION.—In a civil action under paragraph (1)(B), the court, when considering what amount of civil penalty, if any, is appropriate, shall give consideration to any good faith effort to attempt to comply with this Act by the entity. In evaluating good faith, the court shall consider, among other factors it deems relevant, whether the entity could have reasonably anticipated the need for an appropriate type of auxiliary aid needed to accommodate the unique needs of a particular individual with a disability.

**APPENDIX R
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPTS FROM)
28 CFR PART 36 (TITLE III)
NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF DISABILITY
BY PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS AND COMMERCIAL FACILITIES;
FINAL RULE**

SUBPART C—SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS

¶36.304 REMOVAL OF BARRIERS

(a) GENERAL. A public accommodation shall remove architectural barriers in existing facilities, including communication barriers that are structural in nature, where such removal is readily achievable, i.e., easily accomplishable and able to be carried out without much difficulty or expense.

(b) EXAMPLES. Examples of steps to remove barriers include, but are not limited to, the following actions—

- (1) Installing ramps;
- (2) Making entrance curb cuts in sidewalks and entrances;
- (3) Repositioning shelves;
- (4) Rearranging tables, chairs, vending machines, display racks, and other furniture;
- (5) Repositioning telephones;
- (6) Adding raised markings on elevator control buttons;
- (7) Installing flashing alarm lights;
- (8) Widening doors;
- (9) Installing offset hinges to widen doorways;
- (10) Eliminating a turnstile or providing an alternative accessible path;
- (11) Installing accessible door hardware;
- (12) Installing grab bars in toilet stalls;
- (13) Rearranging toilet partitions to increase maneuvering space;
- (14) Insulating lavatory pipes under sinks to prevent burns;
- (15) Installing a raised toilet seat;
- (16) Installing a full-length bathroom mirror;
- (17) Repositioning the paper cup dispenser at an existing inaccessible water fountain;
- (18) Creating designated accessible parking spaces;
- (19) Installing an accessible paper cup dispenser at an existing inaccessible water fountain;
- (20) Removing high pile, low density carpeting; or
- (21) Installing vehicle hand controls.

(c) PRIORITIES. A public accommodation is urged to take measures to comply with the barrier removal requirements of this section in accordance with the following order of priorities.

(1) First, a public accommodation should take measures to provide access to a place of public accommodation from public sidewalks, parking, or public transportation. These measures include, for example, installing an entrance ramp, widening entrances, and providing accessible parking spaces.

(2) Second, a public accommodation should take measures to provide access to those areas of a place of public accommodation where goods and services are made available to the public. These measures include, for example, adjusting the layout of display racks, rearranging tables, providing Brailled and raised character signage, widening doors, providing visual alarms, and installing ramps.

(3) Third, a public accommodation should take measures to provide access to restroom facilities. These measures include, for example, removal of obstructing furniture or vending machines, widening of doors, installation of ramps, providing accessible signage, widening of toilet stalls, and installation of grab bars.

(4) Fourth, a public accommodation should take any other measures necessary to provide access to the goods, services, facilities, privileges, advantages, or accommodations to a place of public accommodation.

(d) RELATIONSHIP TO ALTERATIONS REQUIREMENTS OF SUBPART D OF THIS PART.

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, measures taken to comply with the barrier removal requirements of this section shall comply with the applicable requirements for alterations in ¶36.402 and ¶¶36.404-36.406 of this part for the element being altered. The path of travel requirements of ¶36.403* shall not apply to measures taken solely to comply with the barrier removal requirements of this section.

(2) If, as a result of compliance with the alterations requirements specified in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the measures required to remove a barrier would not be readily achievable, a public accommodation may take other readily achievable measures to remove the barrier that do not fully comply with the specified requirements. Such measures include, for example, providing a ramp with a steeper slope or widening a doorway to a narrower width than that mandated by the alterations requirements. No measure shall be taken, however, that poses a significant risk to the health or safety of individuals with disabilities or others.

(Emphasis Added. *36.403 is Chapter 34 of this Code.)

**APPENDIX S
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
TITLE V—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

SEC. 502. STATE IMMUNITY.

A State shall not be immune under the eleventh amendment to the Constitution of the United States from an action in Federal or State court of competent jurisdiction for a violation of this Act. In any action against a State for a violation of the requirements of this Act, remedies (including remedies both at law and in equity) are available for such a violation to the same extent as such remedies are available for such a violation in an action against any public or private entity other than a State.

**APPENDIX T
AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT**

**(EXCERPT FROM)
TITLE V—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

SEC. 506 TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE

(e) FAILURE TO RECEIVE ASSISTANCE.—AN EMPLOYER, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION, OR OTHER ENTITY COVERED UNDER THIS ACT SHALL NOT BE EXCUSED FROM COMPLIANCE WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS ACT BECAUSE OF ANY FAILURE TO RECEIVE TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE UNDER THIS SECTION, INCLUDING ANY FAILURE IN THE DEVELOPMENT OR DISSEMINATION OF ANY TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE AUTHORIZED BY THIS SECTION.

(Emphasis Added.)

**APPENDIX U
INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE**

TAX CREDITS AND DEDUCTIONS

DEDUCTIONS FOR BARRIER REMOVAL

Under IRS Code Section 190, a business can deduct up to \$15,000 of expenses per year for removing architectural and transportation barriers to make the property more accessible to persons who are elderly or have disabilities. The tax deduction can be claimed for expenses incurred in barrier removal and alterations.

DISABLED ACCESS TAX CREDIT

Under IRC Code Section 44, small businesses having total revenues of \$1,000,000 or less in the previous year or 30 or fewer employees for the previous tax year may elect to take a tax credit for fifty percent (50%) of up to \$10,000 of annual expenditures in excess of \$250 to remove barriers (a maximum credit of \$5,000). The tax credit can be used to offset the cost of undertaking barrier removal and alterations to improve accessibility; providing accessible formats such as Braille, large print type and audio tape; making available a sign language interpreter or a reader for customers or employees, and for purchasing certain adaptive equipment.

INDEX

ACCESS AISLE, Definition Of, 2.2.1

ACCESSIBLE, Definition Of, 2.2.2

ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT, Definition Of, 2.2.3

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE,

Definition Of, 2.2.4

Minimum Clear Width,

Exterior, 3.2.1

Interior, 5.2.3

Passing Space, 3.3.4, 5.2.4

Turning Space Around Obstruction,

Exterior, 3.2.2

Interior, 5.2.3

ACCESSIBLE SPACE, Definition Of, 2.2.5

ACCESSORIES

Bathroom (Residential), 30.5.3

Toilet (Non-Residential), 11.7

ACTIVATING FORCE,

(See CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS; DOORS AND DOORWAYS)

ADAPTABLE, Definition Of, 2.2.6

ADDITIONS

Area of Primary Function And, 1.3.2.1.1

As New Construction, 1.3.2.1

ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNITS, (See MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS)

ALARMS (A.K.A.: ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES)

Audible,

Maximum Sound Level, 17.2.2

Sound Level, Normal 17.2.1

Covered Multi-Family Dwelling Units, 17.4

Medical Facilities, 17.1.3

Placement, 17.1.2

Required, 17.1.1

Visual,

Corridors, 17.3.3.3

Mounting Location (Other Than Sleeping Rooms) 17.3.2

Non-Sleeping rooms, 17.3.3.2

Photometric Features, 17.3.1

Sleeping Rooms, 29.5.3

Spacing, 17.3.3

ALTERATIONS, (See, Also, Individual Headings: e.g., BATHROOMS, ENTRANCES, TOILETS, TRANSIENT LODGING, Etc.)

Access Level Compared To New Construction, 33.1.2

Accessibility,

Degree Of, 33.1.5

Maintained, 41.1.2

Where Required, 33.1.1

ALTERATIONS (cont.)

Area Of Primary Function,

Accessibility Required, 34.2.2.1

Definitions Of, 2.2.29, 34.2.2.1.1, 34.2.2.1.2, 34.2.2.1.3

Disproportionality,

Access And, 34.2.6.1

Costs Counted Towards, 34.2.5.2

Determination Of, 34.2.5.1

Further Alterations And , (See "Three Year" Rule Under This Heading)

Landlord/Tenant Responsibilities, 34.2.4

Obligations In Event Of, 34.2.6.2

Path Of Travel And, 34.2.5.2

Obligations Not Evaded, 34.2.6.3

"Three Year" Rule, 34.2.6.4

Code Not Applicable, 2.2.7.1

Costs,

And Path Of Travel, 34.2.5.2

And Technical Infeasibility, 34.1.2.4

Definition Of, 2.2.7

Effect On Existing Accessibility, 33.2.1

Follow New Construction (Part II) Standards, 33.1.3

(See, Also, Technical Infeasibility, Use Of Part III)

Historic Buildings, Chapter 51

Maintenance And Safety, 33.3

Maximum Extent Feasible, 34.1.1

Minor Alterations, 33.1.3 And Example 2

Mixed Uses/Occupancies, 1.3.3.1, 1.3.3.3

Path Of Travel,

Definition Of, 34.2.3, 34.2.3.1

Not Applicable, 33.1.3.1

Not Evaded, 34.2.6.3

"Three Year" Rule, And 34.2.6.4

Specific Facility Types (e.g., Transient Lodging, Medical), 33.1.3.2

Single Elements Individually Done, Prohibition Against, 33.1.4

Technically Infeasible (Or, Technical Infeasibility), 34.1.2.1, 34.1.2.2

Application, 34.1.2.3

Costs Not Part Of, 34.1.2.4 And Examples 1, 2

Example Of, 33.1.3 And Example 1

Part III, Use Of, 33.1.3 And Example 3

AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT

Accessibility Guidelines And Prefabricated/Premolded Showers, 12.1.9

Employment (Title I), Appendix M

Failure To Receive Technical Assistance, Appendix T

Private Entities, Public Accommodations/Services Operated By, Appendix Q

Public Services (Title II), Appendix N

Removal Of Barriers, 1.5, Appendix R

State And Local Government Services, Appendix P

State Immunity, Appendix S

APARTMENTS, (See MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS)

APPLIANCES, Residential, (See MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS)

AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE, Definition Of, 2.2.8

ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY, 1.2.3

ASSEMBLY SEATING

Access To Performing Area, 22.1.4

Aisle Width Not Reduced By Wheelchair Seating, 22.1.1.1

Aisle Seats,

Arm Rests And, 22.1.2

Identification Of, 22.1.2.1

Signage At Ticket Office, 22.1.2.2

Alterations,

Access To Performing Area, 42.4

Accessible Facility,

Aisle Seating, 42.3.1, 42.3.2

Information Signage At Ticket Office And
Seat Identification, 42.3.3

Wheelchair Seating,

Additional Spaces Required, 42.2.2.1

Not Required, 42.2.2.1.1

Clustering (Technical Infeasibility), 42.5.1

Companion Seating, 42.5.2

Dispersal Of Wheelchair Seating (Technical Infeasibility), 42.5.1

Inaccessible Facility, 42.2.1

Means Of Egress, 42.6

Assistive Listening System (A.L.S.),

Hazards Eliminated, 22.4.1.3

Location, 22.4.2

Notice Of Availability, 22.4.3

Receivers, Number Of, 22.4.1.4

Types Of, 22.4.4

When Required, 22.4.1.1, 22.4.1.2

Bleachers, Balconies, Clustering Of Seating For, 22.2.2.1

Clear Floor Space, 22.3.1

Rear Row, 22.3.2

Dispersal Of Wheelchair Seating, 22.2.2

Floor (At Wheelchair Seating), 22.1.1.1

Integration, 22.2.1

Lines Of Sight, (See Seating Choice)

Means Of Egress And Accessible Route, 22.2.1, 22.2.2.1

Press, Seating For Members Of, 22.1.5

Seating Choice, (Including Lines Of Sight/Admission Prices), 22.2.1

Scope,

Alterations, 42.1.1

New Construction, 22.1.1

ASSEMBLY SEATING (cont.)

Seating Spaces, Number Required

Aisle, 22.1.2

Companion, 22.1.1.2

Wheelchair, 22.1.1

Wheelchair Seating/Ticket Not Sold, 22.1.3

ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS (A.L.S.),

(See, Also, ASSEMBLY SEATING, Assistive Listening System)

Courtrooms, 31.3.2.8

AUDIBLE ALARM INDICATING APPLIANCES, (See ALARMS, Audible)

AUTOMATIC DOOR, Definition Of, 2.2.9

AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES (A.T.M.)

Bins (Envelops, Deposit Tickets, Waste), 16.4.8

Clear Floor Space At, 16.4.5

Controls, Mounting Height Of

Controls Defined, 16.4.3

Forward Approach, 16.4.6.1.1

Parallel (Side) Approach

Defined, 16.4.6.2.1

Greater Than 10 Inches, 16.4.6.2.3

Maximum 10 Inches Depth, 16.4.6.2.2

Drive-Up, 16.4.9

Instructions For Use, 16.4.7

Location, 16.4.2

Number Required, 16.4.1

BATHROOMS

Alterations,

Fixture Count Reduction, 39.2

Number Required, 39.1.1

Other (Non-Bathing) Fixtures, 39.4.3.2

Unisex Facility, 39.4.1.1, 39.4.3.1

Location Of, 39.4.1.2

Doors Into,

Non-Residential, 12.1.3

Residential, 30.4.4.2.1, 30.4.4.2.2

Medical Care Facilities

Patient Rooms, 28.6

Number Required For Patients, 28.2.1

Medicine Cabinets In,

Non-Residential, 12.1.10

Residential, 30.5.3.1

Residential

Accessories, 30.5.3

Adaptable, 30.2.2.1

Door, 30.4.2.3.1,

Horizontal Sliding, 30.4.4.2.2

Swing Overlap Clear Floor Area, 30.4.4.2.1

Clear Floor Area (Principal Bathroom), 30.4.4.1.1

BATHROOMS (cont.)

Limited Area And Cabinet Toe Space, 30.4.4.1.2

Clear Floor Space (Other Than Principal Bathroom), 30.4.4.1.3

Fixtures, 30.4.4.4

Principal, Defined And Number Required, 30.4.4.1.1

Second (Not Principal) Bathroom, Toilet, 30.4.4.1.3

Transient Lodging (Guest Rooms)

Clear Floor Area, 29.4.7.1

Fixtures And Accessories, 29.4.7.2

Number Required To Be Accessible, 29.4.1

Roll-In Showers,

When Required, 29.4.1

Specific Type, 29.4.7.3 (See, Also, 29.4.7.2 NOTES 3, 4)

BATHTUBS

Clear Floor Space: In-Tub Seat, 12.4.2

Built-In/Built-Up Seat, 12.4.3

Overlap Of Accessible Route, 12.4.4

Overlap By Lavatory/Vanity ,12.4.5

Enclosures, Sliding Doors And Tracks, 12.4.1.2

Glazing In, 12.4.1.3

Grab Bar(s),

Characteristics, 12.4.1.4

Control Wall, 12.4.6.1

Parallel To Tub Length, 12.4.6.2

End Wall, 12.4.6.3

Number Required, 12.1.1

Seat Capacity, 12.4.1.5

Seat Type, 12.4.1.1

Water Control Operation, 12.4.1.6

BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE,

Alterations,

Check-Out Aisles,

Number Required, Facilities Having

Accessible Aisles, 45.1.2, 45.1.2.1

Must Comply With Code If Altered, 45.1.3, 45.2.2

Inaccessible Aisles, 45.1.1, 45.2.1

Explanation Of, 26.1.1 NOTE

Check-Out Aisles,

Aisle Width, 26.3.2.1

Counter Height, 26.3.2.2

"Each Design" Explained, 26.3.1.1 NOTE

Identifying Signage, 26.3.3.1

Number Required, 26.3.1.1, 26.3.1.2

Counters In,

Height/Length, 26.2.1

Number required, 26.2.1, 26.2.3

Security Glazing/ Communications, 26.2.2 And NOTE

BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE (cont.)

Security Bollards,

Alternative Entrance/Departure Required, 26.3.4.2

Directional/Identification Signage, 26.3.4.3

"Departure" Versus "Means Of Egress" Explained, 26.3.4.3 NOTE

Store Access, 26.3.4.1

BUSINESS OCCUPANCY, 1.2.4

CARPET, (See FLOORS)

CHILDREN'S ENVIRONMENTS,

Accessible Route, Interior,

General, 32.2.2.1

Food Service Lines, 32.2.19.1

Library Card Catalog Aisle Width, 32.2.20.1

Bathtubs,

Grab Bar Mounting Height, 32.2.11.1 And NOTE

Code Requirements Not Modified For Children, 32.1.2

Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 32.2.15

Definition Of, 32.1.1

Dimension Range, 32.1.3 (See, Also, Tables In Illustrations)

Drinking Fountains And Watercoolers, 32.2.12

Elevators,

Cab Controls, 32.2.14.2

Emergency Communications, 32.2.14.3

Floor Designations, 32.2.14.1

Handrails,

Ramps And Stairs, 32.2.3

Libraries, Card Catalogs,

Aisle Width, 32.2.20.1

Base And Top Above Floor, 32.2.20.2

Other Modifications To Serve Children, 32.1.2.1 And NOTE

Restaurants And Cafeterias,

Tableware, Dishware, Condiments,

Beverage Dispensers, 32.2.19.4

Tray Slide,

Horizontal Side Reach, 32.2.19.3

Location Above Floor,

Staffed Service Line, 32.2.19.3

Self-Service Line, 32.2.19.3.1

School Loading Zones,

Minimum Number, 32.2.1.1

Weather Protection, 32.2.1.1

Size, 32.2.1.2

Seating And Tables (Fixed Facilities),

Exception For Ages Five And Younger, 32.2.18.3

Knee Clearance, 32.2.18.1

Working Surface Above Floor, 32.2.18.2

CHILDREN'S ENVIRONMENTS (cont.)

Showers,

- Controls/Soap Tray, 32.2.10.2
- Grab Bar Mounting Height, 32.2.10.3
- Top Of Seat Location, 32.2.10.1

Signage, 32.2.16

Storage,

- Clothes Hanger Rods, Coat Hooks, 32.2.17.2
- Fixed/Built-In Facilities, 32.2.17.1
- Shelves, 32.1.17.2

Telephones, 32.2.13

Toilet Rooms

Accessories,

- Dispensers, 32.2.9.3
- Mirrors, 32.2.9.1
- Shelves, 32.2.9.2
- Towel Bars, 32.2.9.3

Grab Bars,

- Height Above Floor, 32.2.5.1
 - At Flush Valve Watercloset, NOTE 1
 - At Flush Valve Or Flush Tank Watercloset, NOTE 2
 - At Flush Tank Watercloset, NOTE 3

Lavatories And Sinks

- Rim/Countertop Above Floor, 32.2.7.1
 - Exception For Ages Five And Younger, 32.2.7.1.1

Stalls, Minimum Size,

- Front Entry Stall (Alterations), 32.2.4.1.3
- Front Entry Stall (When Required By 11.4.3) And Wall-Hung Fixture, 32.2.4.1.2
- Toe Space, 32.2.4.2
- Type I, 32.2.4.1.1

Urinals,

- Flush Control Above Floor, 32.2.8.2
- Rim Height Above Floor, 32.2.8.1

Waterclosets,

- Fixture Centerline From Wall, 32.2.6.1
- Flush Control Above Floor, 32.2.6.2
- Paper Dispenser Location, 32.2.6.3
- Seat Location Above Floor, 32.2.6.1

CIRCULATION PATH, Definition Of, 2.2.10

CLEAR, Definition Of, 2.2.11

CLEAR FLOOR AREA, Definition, 2.2.12

CLEAR FLOOR SPACE, Definition, 2.2.13

CLOSED CIRCUIT TELEPHONE, Definition Of, 2.2.15
CODE,

- Applicable To, 1.2.1
- Occupancy Classifications, 1.2.2
- Title Of, 1.1

COMMERCIAL FACILITY, Defined, 1.4.3

COMMON USE, Definition Of, 2.2.16

COMPLY WITH, Explanation Of, 2.3.1

CONSTRUCTION,

- Addition, 1.3.2
- Alterations, Chapters 33 And 34
- New, 1.3.1

CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS,

- Applicable To, 16.1.1
- Activating Force, 16.1.2
- Clear Floor Space At, 16.1.3
- Communications Outlets, 16.2.3
- Electrical Outlets, 16.2.3
- Exceptions To Compliance, 16.3
- Height Above Finished Floor/Ground Level,
 - Forward Reach,
 - Knee Space Under, 16.2.1.3
 - Over Obstruction, 16.2.1.2
 - Unobstructed, 16.2.1.1
 - Parallel (Side) Reach,
 - Over Obstruction, 16.2.2.2
 - Unobstructed, 16.2.2.1

COOKING APPLIANCES,

- Ovens, 30.5.4.4.2
- Ranges, 30.5.4.4.1
- Range-Oven, 30.5.4.4.3

COURTHOUSES,

- Application Of Code, 31.1.1
- Entrances,
 - Definition Of,
 - Restricted, 31.2.1
 - Secured, 31.2.2
 - Signage At Both, 31.3.1.1.1 NOTE
 - Number Of Restricted, Secured 31.3.1.1.1
 - Secured, Doors And Security Personnel, 31.3.1.1.2
 - Two-Way Communication, see Security Systems

Holding Facilities (Cells)

- Benches Within, 31.3.3.3.6
- Doors, 31.3.3.3.1
- Drinking Fountains, 31.3.3.3.3
- Fixed/Built-In Seating/Tables, 31.3.3.3.4
- Space Adjacent To Bed, 31.3.3.3.5
- Toilet/Bathing Facilities, 31.3.3.3.2

COURTHOUSES (cont.)

Location Of, 31.3.3.1

Number Required,

Central Facilities,

Separated By Age And Sex, 31.3.3.2.1

Court-Floor Facilities,

Not Separated By Age Or Sex, 31.3.3.2.3 And NOTE

Separated by Age And Sex, 31.3.3.2.2

Visiting Areas, 31.3.3.3.7

Security Systems, 31.3.1.2.1

Two-Way Communication, 31.3.1.2.2

COURTROOMS,

Assistive Listening System Within,

Identifying Signage, 31.3.2.8.3

Number Of Receivers, 31.3.2.8.2

Alterations,

Access To Jury Box/Witness Stand, 50.1.1

Bailiff, Court Reporter, Litigants, Counsel Stations, 31.3.2.4.1

Clerk /Deputy Clerk Station, 31.3.2.5.1

Elements On Accessible Route, 31.3.2.1

Fixed Seats, (See SPECTATOR, PRESS AND OTHER FIXED SEATING)

Judges' Bench, 31.3.2.5.1

Jury

Box,

Clear Floor Seating Space, 31.3.2.3.1

Clear Floor Area, 31.3.2.1.1

Orientation/Deliberation Rooms,

Drinking Fountains Within, 31.3.2.7.2

Location On Accessible Route, 31.3.2.7.1

Refreshment Amenities (Kitchens, Kitchenettes), 31.3.2.7.3

Spectator, Press, Other Fixed Seating Areas

Assistive Listening System

Applicable To, 31.3.2.8.1

Number Of Receivers, 31.3.2.8.2

Signage About, 31.3.2.8.3

Clear Floor Space, 31.3.2.6.3

Definition Of, 31.3.2.6.1

Number Of Seats/Identification, 31.3.2.6.2

Witness Stand,

Clear Floor Area, 31.3.2.1.1

Clear Floor Space Within, 31.3.2.3.1, 31.3.2.3.2

CROSS SLOPE, Definition Of, 2.2.17

CURB CUT,

Alterations,

Clear Width, 36.4.1

Slope, 36.4.2, 36.4.2.1

Clear Width, 4.7.1.3

Construction, 4.7.1.2

Continuous Common Surface, 4.7.2.5

CURB CUT (cont.)

Corner,

- Clear Space At Bottom, 4.8.2
- Clear Width, 4.8.1
- Contained Within Crosswalk Markings, 4.8.1.1
- Defined, 4.7.1.5
- Defined Edges/Returned Curbs, 4.8.1.2
- Side Flares, 4.8.1.1
- Slope, 4.8.1
- Straight Curb Length, 4.8.1.1
- Top Landing, 4.8.3

Definition Of, 2.2.18

Handrails,

- Required, 4.7.1.6
- Side Flares And, 4.7.2.4

Marked Crossings, 4.7.2.6

Returned Curb, 4.7.2.3

Side Flares, 4.7.2.1, 4.7.2.2

- Not Required, 4.7.2.3

Slope At Toe, 4.7.1.3

Slope Of Walking Surface, 4.7.1.3

Top Landing, 4.8.3

Unobstructed, 4.7.1.1

CURB RAMP,

Alterations,

- Clear Width, 36.4.1
- Slope, 36.4.2, 36.4.2.1

Clear Width, 4.7.1.3

Construction, 4.7.1.2

Definition Of, 2.2.19

Edge Protection, 4.7.3.2

Handrails Required, 4.7.1.6, 4.7.3.2

Parking Access Aisle, Within Boundaries Of/Projecting Into, 4.7.1.1.1

Projecting Into Vehicular Way, 4.7.1.1.1

Slope At Toe, 4.7.1.3

Slope Of Walking Surface, 4.7.1.3

Side Flares, 4.7.3.1

Top Landing, 4.8.3

Unobstructed, 4.7.1.1

Walking Surface, 4.7.1.2

DETECTABLE WARNING, Definition Of, 2.2.20

- General, (Reserved: See NOTE, HEAD OF CHAPTER 19)

Rail Transit Platform Edge

- Alterations, 44.3.3.1 Note 3

- New Construction, 24.3.9

DOORS AND DOORWAYS,

Activating Pressure,

Exterior, 7.6.2

Fire, 7.6.4

Interior, 7.6.1

Not Applicable To Operating Hardware, 7.6.3

Automatic, 7.1.3

Bottom Panel, Framed Glass And, 7.4.1

Clear Floor Space At, 7.3.1

Clear Opening, 7.2.1

No Through Passage 7.2.1.1

Closers, 7.7

Folding Doors, (See HORIZONTAL SLIDING)

Gates, 7.2.3

Glass, 7.4.2

Hazardous Areas And Detectable Warning,

Not Applied To Exit Doors, 7.10.3

Required, 7.10.1

Type, 7.10.2

Historic Preservation,

Number Required, 51.4.3.2

Two-Leaf Doors, 51.4.3.2.1

Horizontal Sliding, 7.3.4

In Series, 7.3.3

Number Accessible, 7.1.1

Openings In Thick Partitions/Walls, 7.3.5

Operation Effort, 7.1.2

Operating Hardware

Characteristics, 7.9.1.1

Horizontal Sliding Doors, 7.9.1.3

Mounting Height, 7.9.2.1

Types, 7.9.1.2

Patient Bedroom/Toilet Room, 28.4

Power Assisted, 7.1.4

Right-Angle Consecutive, 7.3.6

Revolving And Turnstiles, 7.2.4

Security Sights (Residential), 30.4.2.3.2

Thresholds,

General, 7.8.2 (See, Also, NOTE Following 51.4.3.2.1)

Maximum Overall Height, 7.8.1

Two-Leaf, 7.2.2

Vision Panels In, 7.5

DORMITORIES, 1.2.9.2, 29.1.1.2

DRESSING ROOMS,

Alterations,

Comply With, 46.1

Directional Signage, 46.2

Number Required,

Technical Infeasibility, 46.1.1

Bench,

Characteristics Of, 27.1.3.1

Relation to Clear Floor Space, 27.1.3.2

Wet Locations, 27.1.3.3

Clear Floor Space, Size Of,

And Curtain, 27.1.2.2

And Swing Door, 27.1.2.1

“Each Type Of Use” Explained, 27.1.1.1 Note

Identifying Signage, 27.1.5

Location, 27.1.1.2

Mirrors, 27.1.4

Number Required, 27.1.1.1

DRINKING FOUNTAINS,

Activating Force, 13.1.2

Location, 13.1.1

Clear Floor Space At,

Size, 13.2.1

Orientation, 13.2.2, 13.2.5

Compressor Housing, 13.2.4

Controls, 13.1.2

Location In Recess,

Cantilevered, Wall Mounted, Pedestal,

Maximum Protrusion, 13.2.2

Depth And Width Of, 13.2.2

Floor Mounted, 13.2.5

Knee And Toe Space Under,

Cantilevered Fixture, 13.2.3

Wall Mounted Fixture, 13.2.4

Spouts,

Height Above Floor, 13.1.4

Location, 13.1.3

Oval Basin, 13.1.3

Number Required to Be Accessible, 13.1.5, 13.1.5.1, 13.1.6

Oval Bowls, 13.1.3

Water Stream, Height Of 13.1.3

EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY, 1.2.5

ELECTRICAL OUTLETS, (See: CONTROLS AND OPERATING MECHANISMS)

ELEMENT, Definition Of, 2.2.21

ELEVATORS,

Accessibility Maintained,

Alterations, 41.1.2.1

Exception For Privately-Owned

Multi-Family Dwellings, 41.1.2.2

New Construction, 15.2.10

Alterations,

Cab Dimensions,

Other Than 48" x 48", 41.3.2

Technical Infeasibility (48" x 48"), 41.3.1

Disproportionality, 41.2.1, 41.2.2, 41.2.3 Note 1

Door Clear Opening, 41.3.3

Door Protective/Reopening Device, 41.4

Alterations

Facilities With,

An Accessible Unit, 41.2.3

An Inaccessible Unit, 41.2.2

Required By

Path of Travel, 41.2.1

Structural Changes For Stair/Escalator, 41.1.1

Automatic Operation, 15.3

Buildings Requiring Elevators,

Allowance For Prisons, 31.4.2.2

Non-Residential, 15.2

Residential, 30.4.1.5

Cab Controls,

Buttons, 15.9.4

Location, 15.9.1

Height Above Floor, 15.9.2, 15.9.3

Control Buttons,

Braille, 15.9.5.1

Color Contrast/Finish, 15.9.5.3

Characters Used With, 15.9.5

Height Of, 15.9.5.1

Emergency 15.9.3

Floor Designations, Applied Plates, 15.9.5.4

Main floor, 15.9.5.2

Location, 15.9.1

Visual Indicators, 15.9.5.5

Car Position Indicator

Audible Signal, Decibel Level 15.9.6.2

Illuminated, 15.9.6.1

Size, 15.9.6.1

Verbal Annunciation, Use Of 15.9.6.2

Cab Dimension,

With Center-Opening Doors, 15.4.1

With Side-Slide Doors, 15.4.2

ELEVATORS (cont.)

Car Sill/Landing Gap, 15.4.4

Door Clear Opening, 15.4.3

Door Signal/Hall Call Timing

Doors Fully Open, 15.7.4

Formula, 15.7.1

In-Car Lantern, 15.7.2

Notification Time, 15.7.3

Door Protective/Re-Opening Device,

Effective Time Period, 15.6.3

Height Above Floor, 15.6.2

Required, 15.6.1

Emergency Communications,

Height Above Floor, 15.10.4

Operating Force, Compartment Door, 15.10.3

Telephone Handset, 15.10.2

Type Required, 15.10.1

Entrance Markings,

Characters Used With, 15.5.3.3

Height Above Floor, 15.5.3.2

Location, 15.5.3.1

Floor,

Lobby And Cab Surfaces, 15.8

Stops, 15.1.1

Freight, 15.1.4

From Garage, 15.1.5

Hall Call Buttons,

Directional,

Button Size, 15.5.1.3

Indicators, 15.5.1.2

Height Above Floor, 15.5.1.1

Objects Beneath, Projection Of, 15.5.1.5

Visual Indication, 15.5.1.4

Hall Lantern, 15.5.2

In-Car Lantern, 15.5.2.2

Lifts, (See PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFTS)

Lighting Level, 15.1.6

Location Of, 15.1.3

Mezzanines,

Required to Stop At, 15.1.1

Restaurants And, 23.3.2, 23.3.2.1

Number Required, 15.1.2

Ramps, In Lieu Of, 15.1.7

Self-Leveling, (See AUTOMATIC OPERATION)

EMPLOYEE WORK AREAS, 1.2.12

EMPLOYMENT, (See REASONABLE ACCOMMODATION)

ENTRANCES,

Accessible, Definition Of, 6.1.2

Alterations,

Number Required,

Accessible Buildings, 38.1.2, 38.1.3

Inaccessible Buildings, 38.1.1

Path Of Travel, 38.1.4

Signage, Directional/Identifying, 38.1.5

Methods of Achieving, 6.1.5

Not Evaded, 6.1.6

Accessible Route, Connection To

Exterior Spaces, 6.1.3

Interior Spaces, 6.1.4

Building Access

From Garage, 6.2.2.1

Signage At Inaccessible Entrances, 6.2.3

Tunnel/Elevated Walkway 6.2.2.1.1

Definition Of, 2.2.22

Location Due To Flood Plain, 6.2.1.1

Exception For Coastal High Hazard Area, 1.2.6.3.1

Number Required

Alterations, 38.1.1

Multi-Family Dwellings,

Dwelling Units, 30.4.2.1.1

Privately-Owned Building, 30.4.2.1.2

Publicly-Owned Building, 30.4.2.1.3

New Construction, 6.2.1.1, 6.2.1.2, 6.2.1.4

Transportation Terminals,

Airline Passenger, 6.2.1.7

Others, 24.3.3

At Ground Level, 6.2.1.1

Public, Definition Of, 6.1.1

Separate Tenants, 6.2.1.3

Service Entrances, 6.2.1.5

Usable At All Times, 6.2.1.6

EXEMPTIONS TO COMPLIANCE, 1.2.11

EXISTING BUILDINGS,

Additions To, 1.3.2.1, 1.3.2.1.1

Area Of Primary Function,

Alteration Of 1.3.2.1.1, 34.2

Removal Of Barriers, 33.4 And Appendix R

EXITS, (See MEANS OF EGRESS)

FACILITY, Definition Of, 2.2.23

FACTORY-INDUSTRIAL OCCUPANCY, 1.2.6.1

FIXED OR BUILT-IN SEATING AND TABLES,

Accessible Route To, 21.1.2

Clear Floor Space At, 21.2.1

Height Of Top Surface, 21.3.2

Knee Clearance, 21.3.1

Number Required, 21.1.1

Seating Areas, 21.2.2, 21.2.2.1

FIREWALLS,

And Mixed Use/Occupancies, 1.3.3.3

Single Use/Occupancy, 1.3.3.2

FLOORS,

Application Of Requirements, 9.1.1

Carpet And Carpet Tile,

Edge Trim, 9.2.2

Maximum Pile Height, 9.2.2

Stable Surface, 9.2.1

Common Level Throughout, 9.1.2

Gratings, 9.3

Raised/Depressed/Outdoor, (See RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS, Dining Areas)

FOOD SERVICE LINES, (See RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS)

GRAB BARS

Abrasive Elements Not Permitted, 11.5.5

Bathroom (Residential), 30.2.2.1, 30.4.4.3

Edge Radius, 11.5.5

Gripping Surface Dimensions Of, 11.5.1

Hand Space, 11.5.2

Load Capacity, 11.5.3

Location, (See HEADINGS FOR INDIVIDUAL FIXTURES)

Located In Recess, 11.5.2

Rotation Not Permitted, 11.5.4

Surface Of, 11.5.5

GRATINGS, Opening Size, 3.3.6

GROUND FLOOR, Definition Of, 2.2.24

HANDRAILS, (See RAMPS Or STAIRS)

HANDICAPPED PERSONS, (N.C. GENERAL STATUTES) Appendix K

HANDICAPPED PERSONS PROTECTION ACT, (N.C. GENERAL STATUTES), Appendix L

HARDWARE, (See DOORS AND DOORWAYS, Operating Hardware)

HAZARDOUS AREA, Signage At, 18.5 (See, Also, DOORS AND DOORWAYS)

HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY, 1.2.6.2

HISTORIC PRESERVATION,

Accessible Route,

Exterior 51.4.1

Interior, 51.4.4

Accessibility,

Destructive Alteration And Alternative Requirements, 51.3.1

General, 51.1.1

Minimum Elements, 51.3.1

Building Age, 51.1.2

HISTORIC PRESERVATION (cont.)

Consultation With Archives/History And Engineering Division, 51.4 NOTE

Displays, 51.5

Entrance,

Door At, 51.4.3.2

Identification Of, 51.4.3.2

Threshold, 51.4.3.2.1(3) And NOTE

Minimum Number, 51.4.3.1

Other Entrance, 51.4.3.1.1

(Includes Notification And Security Systems)

Used By General Public, 51.4.3.1

Old Buildings Not Qualified, 51.1.2

Parking, 51.4.1.2

Qualified Building/Facility, 51.2.1

Ramps, 51.4.2

Toilet Room(s),

Accessible Route To Entry Level Only, 51.4.5.2

Signage At, 51.4.5.3

Unisex, 51.4.5.1

Technical Infeasibility, 51.3.2

IF...THEN, Explanation Of, 2.3.2

INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCIES,

Restrained, 1.2.7.2

Unrestrained, 1.2.7.1

ISLANDS, Accessible Route,

Over, 4.10.1(2)

Through, 4.10.1(1)

JAILS, (See PRISONS)

KITCHENS, RESIDENTIAL

Adaptable, 30.2.2

Not Applicable To Clear Floor Area, 30.2.2.1.1(5)

Appliances,

Cooking, 30.5.4.4.1

Dishwasher, 30.5.4.4.5

Freezer, (See REFRIGERATOR)

Oven, 30.5.4.4.2

Range/Oven, 30.5.4.4.3

Refrigerator, 30.5.4.4.4

Trash Compactor, 30.5.4.4.6

Cabinets,

Wall, Height Above Floor, 30.5.4.2.1

Hardware, 30.5.4.2.2

Touch Latches, 30.5.4.2.4

Drawer Operation, 30.5.4.2.3

Clear Floor Area, 30.4.4.1.1

Clear Floor Space, 30.5.2.1

Sink, 30.5.4.3

KITCHENS, RESIDENTIAL (cont.)

Work Top

- Adjustable Height, 30.5.4.1.1(1)
- Clear Floor Space, Orientation Of, 30.5.4.1.3
- Clear Working Width, 30.5.4.1.2
- Fixed, 30.5.4.1.1(2)
- Knee Clearance, 30.5.4.1.3
- Pull-Out, 30.5.4.1.1(3)
- Underside, 30.5.4.1.4

LAVATORIES,

- Baffle And Toe Space, 11.6.2(5)
- Clear Floor Space At, 11.6.2(3)
- Extension From Wall/Partition, 11.6.2(2)
- Faucets For, 11.6.2(6)
- Self-Closing Valves, 11.6.2(6)
- Height Of Rim, 11.6.2(1)
- Hot Water Supply/Drain Lines, 11.6.2(5)
- Knee Clearance, 11.6.2(1)
 - And Water Supply/Drain Lines, 11.6.2(4)

LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY FACILITIES,

Assistive Listening System,

- Location In Relation To Room Front, 31.5.2.4
- Number Of Receivers, 31.5.2.4
- Signage About, 31.5.2.5

Legislative Facility, Definition Of, 31.5.1.1

- Chamber, Comparison With Judge's, 31.5.1.1 And NOTE

Raised Or Depressed Areas, 31.5.2.1

Regulatory Facility, Definition Of, 31.5.1.2

Speakers' Platform, 31.5.2.2

Spectator, Press, Other Fixed Seating Areas, 31.5.2.3

LIBRARIES,

Application Of Code, 25.1.1

Book Stacks

- Clear Width Between, 25.2.1
- Height Of, 25.2.2

Card Catalogs

- Clear Aisle Width/Height Of Base, 25.3.1.1
- Electronic, 25.3.1.3
- Height To Top, 25.3.1.2

Check-Out Areas

- Counter Section, 25.4.1
- Number Of Sections Required, 25.4.1, 25.4.1.1

Fixed Facilities, Number Required, 25.1.2

Magazine Displays

- Clear Aisle Width, 25.3.2.1
- Top Shelf Of, 25.3.2.2

Traffic Control

- Security Gates, Clear Opening At, 25.5.1
- Turnstile, 25.5.2

MAINTENANCE AND SAFETY, (See ALTERATIONS, Maintenance And Safety)
MARKED CROSSING, Definition of, 2.2.25
MAXIMUM EXTENT FEASIBLE, (See ALTERATIONS, Maximum Extent Feasible)
MAY, Definition Of, 2.3.3

MEANS OF EGRESS,

Accessory, (See TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES, Escalators)

Alterations,

If Added During, 38.2.2

Not Required In, 38.2.1

Sprinklered Facilities, 38.2.3

Area(s) Of Rescue Assistance,

Clear Floor Space,

Access to, 6.3.2.3.4

Door Not Obstruction To, 6.3.2.3.3

Locations Of, 6.3.2.2.1(1) Through 6.3.2.2.1(7)

Number/Size Of, 6.3.2.3.1, 6.3.2.3.2

Horizontal Exit, Use Of, 6.3.2.1.2

Inmate Areas, Group I-Restrained, 6.3.3.1(2)

Parking Lots And Open Garages, 6.3.3.1(3)

Sprinklered Facilities, 6.3.3.1 (See, Also, NOTE)

From Dwelling Units, 30.4.2.2.1

Number Required, 6.3.1, 6.3.2.1.1

Signage,

Directional, 6.3.2.6.2

Identifying, 6.3.2.6.1 And NOTE 1

Illuminated, 6.3.2.6.1

Stair Handrails, Separation Between, 6.3.2.4

Two-Way Communication,

Audible And Visual, 6.3.2.5.1

Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 6.3.2.5.3

Instruction For Use Of, 6.3.2.5.2

Power Supply To, 6.3.2.5.4

Exit Signs, 6.3.2.6.1 NOTE 2

MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES: GROUP I-UNRESTRAINED,

(For GROUP I-RESTRAINED, See 31.4.5.7)

Alterations,

Individual Patient Room,

To Be Added , 47.3.1

Not Required To Be Added, 47.3.1.1

Number Of Patient Rooms,

Inaccessible Facility, 47.2.1

Accessible Facility, 47.2.1.1

Must Comply with Code If Altered, 47.2.1.2

Parking,

Inaccessible Facilities, 47.1.1

Accessible Facilities, 47.1.2.1, 47.1.2.1.1

Adding Van Accessible Spaces Only, 47.1.2.1.2

MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES (cont.)

Parking At, 28.1.4.1, 28.1.4.2

Above-Ground Signs, Access Aisles, Etc., 28.1.4.4

Van Accessible, 28.1.4.3

Patient Bedroom,

Accessible Route To Bed, 28.5.3

Door, 28.4.1.1.1

Clear Floor Area In, 28.5.1, 28.5.1.1

Clear Floor Space At Bed, 28.5.2

Patient Toilet Room,

Clear Floor Area In, Table Following 28.6.3

Door, 28.4.1.1

Fixtures, Grab Bars, Accessories, 28.6.3

Location Of, 28.6.1

Remotely Located, 28.6.1.1

Number Of Patient Rooms, 28.2.1

Residential Care Facilities, 28.1.2

Scope Of Code, 28.1.1, 28.2.1 NOTE 1

Weather-Protected Entrance, 28.3

MEDICINE CABINETS, 11.7.3(3), 30.5.3.1

MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY, 1.2.8 (See, Also, BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE)

Elevator Required In, 15.2.5 And NOTE

Exception In Coastal High Hazard Areas, 1.2.6.3.1

Small Toilets In, 11.8.1.1(4)

MIRRORS,

Dressing/Fitting Rooms, 27.1.4

Toilet Rooms, 11.7.1

MIXED USE/OCCUPANCY, 1.3.3

MONUMENTAL STAIRS, 8.1.2

MOTELS, HOTELS, (See TRANSIENT LODGING)

MOTOR VEHICLES (N.C. GENERAL STATUTES),

Definitions (Accessibility Related), Appendix B

Handicapped Drivers/Passengers Parking Privileges, Appendix C

Public Vehicular Area, Appendix A

MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS,

Accessible Dwelling Units, Definition, 30.2.1

Number Required,

Private Ownership, 30.1.2.1

Public Ownership, 30.1.2.2

Accessible Route,

Changes In Floor Level Within, 30.4.1.2

Passing Space, 30.4.1.3

To And Through Unit, 30.4.1.1

Adaptable Dwelling Units,

Definition, 30.2.2.1

Not Applicable To, 30.2.2.1.1

MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS (cont.)

Alterations,

- Employee Positions, 49.2.2
- Fully Accessible Dwelling Units,
 - Distribution Of, 49.3.1
 - Number Required,
 - Private-Ownership, 49.1
 - Public Ownership, 49.2.1

Parking

- Serving Dwelling Units,
 - Inaccessible Lots, 49.4.1
 - Accessible Lots, 49.4.2.1, 49.4.2.1.1
 - Providing Van Accessible Spaces Only, 49.4.2.1.2, 49.4.3.1

Bathroom,

- Clear Floor Area (Principal), 30.4.4.1.1
 - Limited Area And Cabinet Toe Space, 30.4.4.1.2
- Clear Floor Space (Other Than Principal Bathroom), 30.4.4.1.3

Fixtures,

- Bathing, 30.4.4.4.3
- Lavatory, 30.4.4.4.2
- Watercloset, 30.4.4.4.1
- Fixture Location, 30.4.4.1.4
- Grab Bars, 30.2.2.1, 30.4.4.3

Classes Of Dwelling Units, 30.3.2

Clear Floor Space, General, 30.5.2

Common Use Areas,

- Definition, 30.2.3.1
- Number Required, 30.2.3.1
- Parking At, 30.4.1.4.3-30.4.1.4.5

Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 30.4.3

Covered Multi-Family Dwelling, Definition Of,

- Privately-Owned, 30.2.4.1
- Publicly-Owned, 30.2.4.2

Doors And Doorways,

General,

- Security Sights ("Peepholes"), 30.4.2.3.2
- Scope, 30.4.2.3.1

Bathroom,

- And Fixture Clear Floor Space, 30.4.4.2.1
- Horizontal Sliding, 30.4.4.2.2
- Overlap Of Clear Floor Area, 30.4.4.2.1

Dwelling Unit, Definition, 30.2.5

Elevators, Required

- Garage To Residential Floor(s), 30.4.1.5.5
- Private Ownership, 30.4.1.5.1-30.4.1.5.3
- Public Ownership, 30.4.1.5.4

MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS (cont.)

Employee Positions,

Alterations, 49.2.2

New Construction, 30.1.3

Entrances,

Building,

Privately-Owned, 30.4.2.1.2

Publicly-Owned, 30.4.2.1.3

To Dwelling Unit, 30.4.2.1.1

Exits, (See Means Of Egress)

Fully Accessible Dwelling Units,

Definition Of, 30.2.6

Number Required,

For Specific Employee Positions, 30.1.3

Private Ownership, 30.1.2.1.3(1)

Public Ownership, 30.1.2.2.1, 30.1.2.2.2(1)

Grab Bars, 30.4.4.3

Ground Floor, Definition, 30.2.7.1

Elevated First Residential Floor, 30.2.7.1.1

Integration And Distribution,

Buildings With Elevators,

All Floors, 30.3.3.1

Elevated First Residential Floor (Privately-Owned), 30.3.3.2

Buildings Without Elevators (Privately-Owned), 30.3.4

Common Wall, Either Side Of, 30.3.5

Classes Of Dwelling Units, 30.3.2

Segregation Prohibited, 30.3.1

Kitchen,

Appliances,

Cooking, 30.5.4.4.1

Dishwasher, 30.5.4.4.5

Oven, 30.5.4.4.2

Range-Oven, 30.5.4.4.3

Refrigerator-Freezer, 30.5.4.4.4

Trash Compactor, 30.5.4.4.6

Cabinets,

Doors, Handles/Pulls, 30.5.4.2.2

Drawers, 30.5.4.2.3

Touch Latches, 30.5.4.2.4

Wall, Lowest Shelf Of, 30.5.4.2.1

Clear Floor Area In, 30.4.4.1.1

Limited Area And Cabinet Toe Space, 30.4.4.1.2

Shelves, 30.5.4.2.1

MULTI-FAMILY DWELLINGS (cont.)

Sink,

- Clear Floor Space And Extension Under, 30.5.4.3.1
- Knee Clearance, 30.5.4.3.1
- Orientation Of, 30.5.4.3.1
- Garbage Disposal And, 30.5.4.3.4
- Number Required, 30.5.4.3.3
- Width Of, 30.5.4.3.2

Laundry Equipment,

- Common Use Area, 30.6.1, 30.6.4
- Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 30.6.3
- Features Of, 30.6.3
- Location Of, 30.6.2
- When Required, 30.6.1

Means Of Egress, 30.4.2.2

Parking,

- Above-Ground Signs, 30.4.1.4.5
- Access Aisles, 30.4.1.4.4
- Distribution Of, 30.4.1.4.2
- Number Required (For Dwelling Units), 30.4.1.4.1

Scope, 30.1.1

Storage (Other Than Kitchen Base/Wall

- Cabinets/Shelves), 30.5.4.5

Telephones,

- Controls, Height Of, 30.5.5.2
- Hearing Aid Compatible, 30.5.5.3
- Location Of, 30.5.5.1
- Volume Control/Decibel Level, 30.5.5.3

NEW CONSTRUCTION, 1.3.1.1

NORTH CAROLINA BUILDING CODE, (N.C. GENERAL STATUTE) Appendix J

NORTH CAROLINA GENERAL STATUTES,

Handicapped Persons, Appendix K

Handicapped Persons Protection Act, Appendix L

Motor Vehicles, Appendix A

Parking [Above-Ground Signs And Parking Signs], Appendix C

State Fair Housing Act, Appendix D

Tax Credit, Appendices E and F

Visually Handicapped, Appendix G

OBSTRUCTION, Turning Space Around

- Exterior, 3.2.2

- Interior, 5.2.3

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATIONS, Code Applicable To, 1.2.2

OPERABLE PART, Definition Of, 2.2.26

OVERHEAD CLEARANCE,

In Circulation Spaces, 10.2.1

Parking Spaces, 4.4.5

Protective Barrier Required, 10.2.2

PARKING,

Above-Ground Signs Required At, 4.1.2, 4.2.1
Accessible Route, Vehicular Overhang Of, 4.4.4

Access Aisle And Connection
To Building Entrance, 4.4.3
Travel Distance, 4.6.1

Accessibility Required, 4.1.1

Alterations,

Defined, 36.1.1

Number Of Parking Spaces,

Added To Accessible Parking Lots, 36.2.2 And 36.2.3

Both Types, 36.2.2.1, 36.2.2.1.1

Van Accessible Spaces Only, 36.2.2.1.2, 36.2.3.1

Inaccessible Parking Lots, 36.2.1.1

Technical Infeasibility/Zoning Ordinances, 36.3

Automobile Showrooms, 4.3.3

Access Aisle

Accessible Route, Connection To, 4.4.3

Delineation (Marking) Of, 4.2.3

Sharing Of, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.4.2.1

Width Of, (See SIZE OF SPACES AND ACCESS AISLES)

Decks,

Accessibility Required, 4.5.1

Location/Distribution Within, 4.5.2

Number Of Spaces,

Medical Facility, 28.1.4.1, 28.1.4.2

Non-Medical/Non-Residential Facilities, 4.2.1

Dispersal Of Spaces, 4.1.1.1

Location In Relation To,

Buildings, 4.6.2

Entrances, 4.6.1.1

Medical Facilities And, 28.1.4.1, 28.1.4.2

Multiple-Entrance Buildings, 4.1.1.1

Number Of

Accessible Spaces, 4.2.1

Van Accessible Spaces, 4.2.2, 4.2.2.1

Overhead Clearance, 4.4.5

Parking Signs, 4.2.1, 4.2.2

Size of Spaces And Access Aisles,

Accessible, 4.4.1

Slope Of, 4.4.6

Van Accessible, 4.4.2

Vehicular Overhang, 4.4.4

PASSENGER LOADING ZONES,

Curb Cuts/Curb Ramps, 4.11.2

Drainage Slope Of, 4.11.3

Identifying Sign, 4.11.5, 4.11.5.1

Overhead Clearance, 4.11.4

Schools, 32.2.1

Size/Location Of, 4.11.1, 28.3.1 (See, Also, 31.4.5.7.5)

PATH OF TRAVEL, 34.2.3 And 34.2.3.1

PLACE OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION, Defined, 1.4.2

PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFT,

Alterations,

 General, 41.5

 Courtrooms, 50.1.1

Clear Floor Space At,

 Bottom Landing, 15.11.2.2

 Top Landing, 15.11.2.3

Floor Surface, 15.11.2.7

Guardrails, 15.11.2.8

Judge's Bench/Clerk Station, 31.3.2.1.1

Key Operation, 15.11.2.1

Location Of, 15.11.2.1

New Construction, 15.11.1.1

Platform

 Area, 15.11.2.6

 Size, 15.11.2.5

Operating Mechanisms, Force To Use, 15.11.2.4

Unassisted Use, 15.11.1.2

Vertical Travel Distance, 15.11.2.9

POWER ASSISTED DOOR, Definition Of, 2.2.28

PRESS, Seating For Members Of,

 Assembly Seating, 22.1.5

 Courtrooms, 31.3.2.6

PRIMARY FUNCTION, Definition Of, 2.2.29

PRISONS, (Includes JAILS And DETENTION CENTERS)

Alterations,

 Number Of Cells/Rooms, Existing Accessible Facilities,

 Hearing-Impaired Inmates, see 33.1.3

 Serving Mobility-Impaired Inmates, 50.2.1

 Comply With This Code If Altered, 50.2.2

 Number Of Cells/Rooms, Inaccessible Facilities,

 Serving Hearing-Impaired Inmates, see 33.1.3

 Serving Mobility-Impaired Inmates, see 33.1.3

Applicability Of Code, 31.1.2

Cells/Rooms,

 Benches Within, 31.4.5.5.9

 Communication Devices,

 Alarm Indicating Appliances, 31.4.5.6.3

 Exception, 31.4.5.6.3 NOTE

PRISONS (cont.)

- Serving Mobility-Impaired Inmates, 31.4.5.5.10
- Telephones, 31.4.5.6.2
- Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 31.4.5.5.5
- Doors, 31.4.5.5.2
- Drinking Fountains Serving, 31.4.5.5.4
- Fixed/Built-In Seating/Tables, 31.4.5.5.7
- Located On Accessible Route, 31.4.5.5.1
- Medical Care Facilities
 - Entrance, Weather Protection Not Required, 31.4.5.7.5
 - Isolation Cells/Rooms, 31.4.5.7.4
 - Number Cells/Rooms, 31.4.5.7.2
 - When Required, 31.4.5.7.1
- Space Adjacent To Bed, 31.4.5.5.8
- Storage Facilities, 31.4.5.5.6
- Suicide Prevention, Allowance For, 31.4.5.4
- Toilet/Bathing Facilities, 31.4.5.5.3
- Doors, Operated Only by Security Personnel, 31.4.2.4
- Elevators, Requirements When Not Provided, 31.4.2.2
- Housing Category, 31.4.1.1
- Inmate Common Use Areas, Application And Definition, 31.1.2.1
- Means Of Egress (Inmate Housing/Common Areas), 6.3.3.1(2)
- Number Of Cells/Rooms,
 - Accessible Units And Common Wall, 31.4.5.2
 - Serving Mobility-Impaired Inmates, 31.4.5.1
 - Serving Hearing-Impaired Inmates, 31.4.5.6.1
 - Special Housing/Holding, 31.4.5.3
- Public Areas, 31.1.2
- Security Systems, 31.4.3
- Signage, 31.4.2.5
- Visiting Areas,
 - Counters In, 31.4.4.2.1
 - Fixed Cubicles, 31.4.4.2.1
 - Inmate and Public Sides Accessible, 31.4.4.1,
 - Public Side Only, 31.4.4.1.1
 - Location On Accessible Route, 31.4.4.1
 - Non-Contact, Definition Of, 31.4.1.2
 - Number Required, 31.4.4.2.1
 - Partitions Separating Inmates/Visitors, 31.4.4.3
- Text Telephones (TDD),
 - Exception For Shelf And Outlet, 31.4.4.4.2
 - Within Security Area, 31.4.4.4.1

PROTRUDING OBJECTS,

- Accessible Route, Narrowing Of, 10.5.1.
- General, 10.1.1
- Clear Headroom,
 - Height Of, 10.2.1
 - Warning Barrier Required, 10.2.2

PROTRUDING OBJECTS (cont.)

Free-Standing Objects,

At, Or Below, 27 Inches Above

Finished Floor, 10.4.2

Distance Between Posts/Pylons More

Than 12 inches, 10.4.3

More Than 27 To 80 Inches Above

Finished Floor, 10.4.1

Maximum Width, Single Object, 10.5.1

Maximum Protrusion,

Object At/Below 27 Inches Above

Finished Floor, 10.3.2

Object Between 27 To 80 Inches Above

Finished Floor, 10.3.1

Posts Or Pylons, (See FREE-STANDING OBJECTS)

PUBLIC USE, Definition Of, 2.2.30

RAMPS,

Alterations,

Clear Width, 37.1.3

Slope, 37.1.1, 37.1.2

Application, 5.1.1

Clear Width,

Exterior, 3.2.1

Interior, 5.2.3

Cross Slope, 5.1.3

Definition Of, 2.2.31

Door At Landings, 5.3.7

Drop-Off, Defined, 5.5.1

Edge Protection, 5.5.2

Handrails

Continuous, 5.4.2(3)

Edge Radius, 5.4.2(10)

End Return, 5.4.2(8)

Extensions, 5.4.2(3)

Not Required 5.4.2(5)

Gripping Surface,

Continuous, 5.4.2(6), 32.2.3.2

Outside Dimensions Of, 5.4.2(1)

Hand Space, 5.4.2(4)

In Recess, 5.4.3

Inside 5.4.2(5)

Mounting Height, 5.4.2(2)

Protrusion, 5.4.2(7)

Required, 5.4.1

Rotation Not Permitted, 5.4.2(9)

Surface Of, 5.4.2(10)

Intermediate Landings Required, 5.3.1, 5.3.2

RAMPS (cont.)

Landings, Size Of

Bottom, 5.3.8

90 Degree Turn, 5.3.5

180 Degree Turn, 5.3.6

Straight Run, 5.3.4

Top, 5.3.3

Live Load, 5.1.4

Slope,

Alterations, 37.1.1, 37.1.2

Historic Preservation, 51.4.2.1

New Construction, 5.2.1

Walking Surfaces Of, 5.1.2

REASONABLE ACCOMMODATION, (EMPLOYMENT DUTY)

Federal, Appendix M

State, Appendix L

REGULATORY FACILITIES, (See LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY FACILITIES)

REMOVAL OF BARRIERS,

Duties Of Code Official, 33.4.2

Examples Of, Appendix R

Not Initiated By Code Official, 33.4.1

Owner And/Or Tenant Responsibility, 33.4.1

Required By Federal Law, 33.4.1, Appendix R

RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY,

Group R1 (Transient), 1.2.9.1

Exemption For, 1.2.9.1.1

Group R1 (Non-Transient), 1.2.9.2

Group R2, (Multiple Dwellings), 1.2.9.3

RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS,

Alterations,

Dining Areas, Raised, Depressed, Outdoor.

Inaccessible, 43.1.2

Maintain Existing Access, 43.1.1

Applicability, 23.1.1

Distribution, Tables/Counters, 23.1.5

Counter/Bar,

Service And Consumption

Accessible Space, Dimensions, 23.2.1

Accessible Space Not Required, 23.2.1.1

Dining Areas

Raised, Depressed, Outdoor, 23.3.1

Mezzanine Not Served by Elevator, 23.3.2

Served By Elevator, 23.3.2.1

RESTAURANTS AND CAFETERIAS (cont.)

Food Service Lines

Clear Floor Space, 23.4.4

Clear Width, 23.4.1

Tray Slide, Height Above Floor, 23.4.2

Self-Service Shelves, Number And Height
Above Floor, 23.4.3

Tableware, Condiments, Dispensers, 23.5

Number Of

Counter Spaces, 23.1.3

Tables, 23.1.2

Raised Platforms, 23.7

Vending Machines, 23.6

RUNNING SLOPE, Definition Of, 2.2.32

SERVICE ENTRANCE,

As Building Entrance, 6.2.1.5

Definition Of, 2.2.33

SHALL, Definition Of, 2.3.4

SHELVES,

Bathroom/ Toilet, 11.7.2

Closet, 20.3.2.3

Kitchen, 30.5.4.2.1

SHOWERS,

Accessible Route To, 12.1.8

Clear Floor Area In Room, 12.1.8

Curb At, 12.1.6

Doors, Use Of, 12.1.3.1

Glazing In, 12.1.3.2

Floor Finish, 12.1.5

Grab Bars,

Characteristics, 12.1.4

Children, 32.2.10.3

In Private Office, 12.1.2

Number Required, 12.1.1

Prefabricated/Premolded Units, 12.1.9

Roll-In Shower: 30" x 60",

Access Via, 12.3.1.1

Clear Floor Space At, 12.3.1.2

Lavatory Overlap Of, 12.3.1.7

Controls/Shower Spray, Hand-Held, 12.3.1.3

Vandalism And, 12.3.1.4

Grab Bar, 12.3.1.5

Seat, 12.3.1.6

Location Of, 12.3.1.6.1

SHOWERS (cont.)

Roll-In Shower, Transient Lodging

- Controls/Shower Spray, Hand-Held, 29.4.7.3.2
- Curb/Threshold Not Permitted, 29.4.7.3.1
- Entry Opening, 29.4.7.3.1
- Grab Bars, 29.4.7.3.4
- Other Types Acceptable, 29.4.7.2 Table, NOTES 3, 4
- Seat, 29.4.7.3.3
- When Required, 29.4.1

Roll-In Shower: 60" x 60",

- Clear Floor Space At, 12.3.2.1
- Controls/Shower Spray, Hand-Held, 12.3.2.2
- Doors, Use Of, 12.3.2.1
- Grab Bars, 12.3.2.3
- Seat, Controls, Grab Bars, 12.3.2.4

Threshold, 12.1.6

Transfer-Type Shower,

- Clear Floor Space At, 12.2.1
- Controls/Soap Tray, 12.2.3
- Grab Bar, Length And Mounting Height, 12.2.4
- Seat In, 12.2.2
- Shower Spray, Hand-Held, 12.2.5
 - Vandalism And, 12.2.5.1

Unobstructed Use Of, 12.1.7

SIGNAGE,

Approach To, 18.4.2

Assistive Listening Systems, Identifying

- Assembly Seating, 22.4.3
- Courtrooms, 31.3.2.8.3

Braille, Use Of, 18.3.2

Character Height/Proportion, 18.2.1

Definition Of, 2.2.34

Direction/Information, 18.1.2

Exemption, 18.6

Finish And Color Contrast, 18.1.4

Hazardous Areas, 18.5

International Symbol Of Accessibility, Use Of,

- Alterations, Inaccessible Toilets In, 18.1.3(3)
- Parking Spaces, 4.2.1,
- Passenger Loading Zones, 18.1.3(1)
- Inaccessible Entrances, 18.1.3(2)

Mounting,

- Adjacent To Door Strike Jamb, 18.4.1
 - Space Unavailable, 18.4.1.1
- Height Above Floor, 18.4.3
- Two-Leaf Doors, 18.4.1.1
 - Space Unavailable, 18.4.1.2 And NOTE

SIGNAGE (cont.)

Overhead, Projected/Suspended, 18.2.2

Clear Headroom, 10.2.1

Permanent Rooms/Spaces, 18.1.1

Pictograms,

At Toilets, 18.3.3

Written Description And, 18.3.4

Raised Letters/Numerals, 18.3.1

Safety Devices, And, 18.1.1.1

Identification Of, 18.4.3.1

Standard Symbols, 18.3.4 NOTE

Telephones,

TDD, 14.3.3

Volume Control, 14.2.5.2

SINKS, 11.11

SITE, Definition Of, 2.2.35

SITE ACCESS,

Accessible Entrances, 3.1.4

Accessible Route,

And General Public Route, 3.1.2

Clear Width Of, 3.2.1

Number Required, 3.1.1

Protruding Objects In, 3.1.5

Turning Space At Obstruction, Level Plane, 3.2.2

Alterations,

Accessible Route,

Clear Width Of, 35.1.1

Passing Space, 35.2.1

Walks,

As Ramp, 3.3.2

Definition Of, 2.2.41

Changes In Level, 3.3.1

Continuous Surface, 3.3.3

Cross Slope, 3.3.2

Crossing Driveways/Parking Lots, 3.3.3

Finished Surface Of, 9.1.1

Gratings In, 3.3.6

Slope Of, 3.3.2

Termination At Door, 3.3.5

SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS, Definition Of, 2.2.36

SPACE, Definition Of, 2.2.37

STAIRS,

Application, 8.1.1

Brick Treads/Nosings, 8.2.3.3

STAIRS (cont.)

Handrails,

- Abrasive Elements And, 8.3.10
- Area Of Rescue Assistance And Distance Between, 8.1.3
- Continuous Both Sides, 8.3.3
- Edge Radius, 8.3.10
- End Return, 8.3.8
- Extensions, 8.3.3
 - And Newel Posts, 8.3.7 NOTE
 - Not Required 8.3.6
- Gripping Surface,
 - Continuous, 8.3.3
 - Outside Dimension, 8.3.1
- Hand Space, 8.3.5
- In Recess, 8.3.11
- Inside, 8.3.6
- Mounting Height, 8.3.2
- Protrusion, 8.3.4
- Rotation Not Permitted, 8.3.9
- Surface Of, 8.3.10

Monumental, Use Of, 8.1.2

Nosings,

- Absence Of, 8.2.3.1
- Brick, 8.2.3.3
- Curvature Of Leading Edge, 8.2.2
- Extension Of, 8.2.3.1
- Square Prohibited, 8.2.2
- Underside Angle, 8.2.3.1

Outdoor Conditions, 8.4

Riser, Flush, 8.2.3.1

- Sloping, 8.2.3.2

Tread Depth, 8.2.1

STATE FAIR HOUSING ACT, (N.C. GENERAL STATUTES) Appendix D

STORAGE OCCUPANCY, 1.2.6.3

STORAGE,

- Clear Floor Space, 20.2.1
- Covered Multi-Family Dwelling Units,
 - In Kitchen, 30.5.4.2
 - Other Areas, 30.5.4.5
- Exemption From Code, 20.5.1
- Height Above Floor
 - Forward Reach, 20.3.1
 - Parallel (Side) Reach, 20.3.2
 - Clothes Hanger Rod, 20.3.2.3
- Number Required, 20.1.1

STORAGE (cont.)

Operating Hardware,

Acceptable Types, 20.4.1

Touch Latches, 20.4.2

Unobstructed Access To, 20.1.2

Shallow Closets, Doors To, 20.1.3

Transient Lodging,

Kitchen, 29.4.5.2

Other Areas, 29.4.9

TAX CREDIT (N.C. GENERAL STATUTES), Appendices E And F

TAX CREDIT (U.S. INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE), Appendix U

TAX DEDUCTION, (U.S. INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE), Appendix U

TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE/TECHNICAL INFEASIBILITY, 34.1.2

TELEPHONES,

Access Not Obstructed, 14.2.2

Accessible, (See VOLUME CONTROL)

Alterations,

Number Required,

Volume Control, 40.1.1, 40.1.1.1

Text (TDD), 40.2.1, 40.2.2

Application Of Code, 14.1.1

Books, Access To Via

Forward Reach, 14.2.6.1

Location Not Hindrance To Phone Access, 14.2.6.3

Parallel (Side) Reach, 14.2.6.2

Clear Floor Space At, 14.2.1

Controls And Operating Mechanisms

Height Of,

Forward Approach, 14.2.3.3

Parallel (Side) Approach, 14.2.4.3

Enclosure Walls, Space Between,

Forward Approach, 14.2.3.1, 14.2.3.4

Parallel (Side) Approach, 14.2.4.1

Guest Rooms (Transient Lodging), 29.5.2, 29.5.5

Location Of, 14.1.6

Multi-Family Dwellings, 30.5.5

Protruding Object, 14.1.5

Push Button Controls, 14.1.4

Shelf, Projection Of,

Forward Approach, 14.2.3.2

Parallel (Side) Approach, 14.2.4.2

TELEPHONES (cont.)

Text (TDD),

- Acoustic Coupler, 14.3.2.1
- Clear Floor Space, Orientation Of, 14.3.2.3
- Connections For Portable, 14.3.2.2
- Counted Separately From Volume Control, 14.1.7
- Definition Of, 2.2.38
- Location, 14.3.2.1
- Number Of,
 - General, 14.3.1.1(1), 14.3.1.2
 - Medical Facilities, 14.3.1.1(3)
 - Publicly-Owned Facilities, 14.3.1.1(2)
 - Transit Facilities, 24.3.12.4
 - Airport Passenger Terminal, 24.4.5
- Portable And Shelf, 14.3.2.2

Volume Control

- Cord Length, 14.2.5.3
- Hearing Aid Compatible And dbA Setting, 14.2.5.1
- Number Required, 14.1.1, 14.1.3
- Required, 14.1.2

Signage, Identifying

- TDD, 14.3.3.2
- Direction To, 14.3.3.1, 14.3.3.3
- Volume Control, 14.2.5.2

TEMPORARY STRUCTURES,

- Application Of Code, 1.2.10.1
- Examples Of, 1.2.10.2

TOILETS

Access To,

- General, 11.2.1
- Schools, 11.2.2
- Shopping Malls, 11.2.2

Accessible Fixtures,

- Clear Floor Space/Accessible Route Overlap, 11.3.1.1

Accessories,

- Dispensers/Disposals, 11.7.3(1)
- Medicine Cabinets, 11.7.3(3)
- Mirrors, 11.7.1
- Shelves, 11.7.2
- Towel Bars, 11.7.3(1)
- Waste Receptacles, 11.7.3(2)

TOILETS (cont.)

Alterations,

Fixture Count Reduction, 39.2

Historic Buildings,

And Accessible Route, 51.4.5.2

Directional Signage, 51.4.5.3

Identifying Signage, 51.4.5.3

Unisex Room,

Size Of, 39.4.2.1, 39.4.2.2

Use Of, 51.4.5.1

Number Accessible, 39.1.1

Signage, Directional/Identifying, 39.1.1

Toilet Stalls,

Front Entry, 39.3.1(1)

Narrow, 39.3.1(3)

Side Entry, 39.3.1(2)

Types I Or II And Technical Infeasibility, 39.3.1

Unisex Room,

In Homeless Shelters, 48.3.1.1(4) NOTE

Location Of, 39.4.1.2

Use Of, 39.4.1.1

Clear Floor Area, 11.3.1

Limited Space Available, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.1.3

Diaper Changing Tables,

Built-In, 11.7.4.2.3

Clear Floor Space At, 11.7.4.2.4, 11.7.4.3.1(3)

And Individual Toilet Rooms, 11.7.4.4

Knee Space, 11.7.4.2.4, 11.7.4.3.1(3)

Located On Accessible Route, 11.7.4.2.1, 11.7.4.3.1(1)

Number Required, 11.7.4.1.1

Placement In Room, 11.7.4.2.2, 11.7.4.3.1(1)

Prefabricated/Premolded, 11.7.4.3

Height Of Bed, 11.7.4.3.1(4)

Height To Handle/Strap, 11.7.4.3.1(2)

Doors,

Overlap Of Clear Floor Area, 11.3.2.2

Overlap Of Clear Floor Space Prohibited, 11.3.2.2

Room Entry, 11.3.2.1,

Stall, Operating Hardware For, 11.4.4

Family, (See UNISEX/DISABLED)

Fixture Count Reduction, (See ALTERATIONS)

Fixtures,

Lavatory, 11.6.2

Number Of, 11.1.2

Urinal, 11.6.3

Watercloset, 11.6.1

TOILETS (cont.)

Grab Bars,

- Edge Radius, 11.5.5
- Gripping Surface, Outside Width/Diameter, 11.5.1
- Hand Clearance, 11.5.2
- Load Carrying Capacity, 11.5.3
- Located In Recess, 11.5.2
- Rotation Not Permitted, 11.5.4
- Surface Of, 11.5.5

Horizontal Travel Distance To (Schools, Shopping Malls) 11.2.2

- Alterations, 39.4.1.2

Individual Rooms,

- Accessories In, 11.8.3.3

Fixtures,

- Lavatory, 11.8.3.2
- Watercloset, 11.8.3.1

- Grab Bars, 11.8.3.1

Room Sizes,

- Door Adjacent To Lavatory, 11.8.2.2
- Door Directly Opposite Fixtures, 11.8.2.1

When Permitted,

- General, 11.8.1.1
- Modular Classrooms And Grades K-2, 11.8.1.2

Medicine Cabinets In, 11.7.3(3)

Number Required To Be Accessible

- Alterations, 39.1.1
- New Construction, 11.1.1

Paper (Toilet Tissue) Dispensers, 11.6.1(5)

Portable,

- Access To, 11.10.2
- Accessibility Not Required, 11.11.1
- Identification Of, 11.10.1
- Number Required, 11.10.1
- When Required, 11.10.1

Private, Required To Be Adaptable, 11.1.3

Stalls,

- Front Entry And When Required, 11.4.3
- Type I, 11.4.1
- Toe Clearance, 11.4.5
- Type II, 11.4.2

Unisex/Disabled,

- Accessories In, 11.9.5
- Clear Floor Area In, 11.9.1
- Elevator And, 11.9.1 NOTE
- Fixtures,
 - Lavatory, 11.9.3
 - Watercloset, 11.9.2

TOILETS (cont.)

- Grab Bars, 11.9.4
- Signage, Directional And Identifying, 11.9.1 NOTE
- When Required, 11.9.1

TRANSIENT LODGING,

- Alarms,
 - General, (See Chapter 17)
 - In Guest Rooms, (See COMMUNICATION DEVICES, Visual Alarm)
- Access To/Within Rooms, 29.4.3.1
 - Multi-Level Rooms, 29.4.3.1.1
- Alterations,
 - Number Of Guest Rooms Serving Mobility-Impaired Persons,
 - Accessible Facilities, 48.1.2.1, 48.1.2.2
 - If Not Altered, Provide Communications Only, 48.1.2.3
 - Comply With Code If Altered, 48.1.2.4
 - Inaccessible Facilities, 48.1.1
 - Number Of Guest Rooms Serving Hearing-Impaired Persons, 48.2
- Homeless Shelters, Halfway Houses, Transient Group Homes,
 - Accessible Route, 48.3.1.1(6)
 - Bathing Facility, 48.3.1.1(4) And NOTE
 - Common Area, 48.3.1.1(5)
 - Elements On One Floor, 48.3.1.2
 - Entrances, Number Of, 48.3.1.1(1)
 - Sleeping Accommodations, 48.3.1.1(2)
 - Toilet Rooms, 48.3.1.1(3), See, Also, NOTE Following (4)
- Bathroom,
 - Guest Room, 29.4.7
 - Number Required,
 - Full Bathroom, 29.4.3.2(4)
 - Half-Bath, 29.4.3.2(5)
- Bedroom, Clear Floor Space In, 29.4.6
- Classes Of Sleeping Accommodations, 29.3
- Communication Devices Within Room,
 - Equivalent Facilitation, 29.5.5
 - Serving Hearing-Impaired Persons, 29.5.2, 29.5.3, 29.5.4
 - Serving Mobility-Impaired Persons, 29.4.2
 - Telephones,
 - TDD, 29.5.2.2
 - Volume Control, 29.5.2.1
 - Visual Alarm Indicating Appliances, 29.5.3
 - Visual Notification Devices, 29.5.4
- Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 29.4.8
- Definition Of, 2.2.39
- Doors/Doorways,
 - Accessible Rooms, 29.4.4.1
 - Other Guest Rooms, 29.4.4.2
- Dormitories, Fraternities, Sororities,
 - Comply With Chapter 29, 1.2.9.2, 29.1.1.2

TRANSIENT LODGING (cont.)

Exemption, 1.2.9.1.1, 29.1.1

Halfway Houses, (See HOMELESS SHELTERS)

Homeless Shelters

Amenities, Location Of, 29.6.1.1, 29.6.1.2

Communication Devices Within Room,

Serving Hearing-Impaired Persons, 29.6.3

Serving Mobility-Impaired Persons, 29.6.2.1

Multi-Bed Room/Space, 29.6.2.2

Number Of Rooms

Serving Hearing Impaired Persons, 29.6.3.1

Serving Mobility Impaired Persons, 29.6.2.1

Integration,

Accessible Units And Common Wall, 29.2.4

Not Permitted, 29.2.4 NOTE

Segregation Prohibited, 29.2.1

Building With Elevator, 29.2.2

Without Elevator, 29.2.3

And Site Design, 29.3.3.1

Kitchens, Kitchenettes

Accessibility Required, 29.4.5.1

Clear Floor Space In, 29.4.5.2

Cooking Appliance, 29.4.5.5

Countertops, 29.4.5.3

Refrigerators, 29.4.5.2

Storage Space, 29.4.5.2

Work Top, 29.4.5.4

Number of Rooms,

Serving Hearing-Impaired Persons, 29.5.1

Serving Mobility-Impaired Persons, 29.4.1

With Roll-In Showers, 29.4.1

Parking, 4.2.1, 29.4.3.2(6)

Patios, 29.4.3.2(7)

Percentage Of Beds In Homeless Shelters, 29.4.1 NOTE, 29.6.2.2

Public Areas, 29.1.1

Roll-In Shower: 36" x 60"

Controls/Hand-Held Shower Spray, 29.4.7.3.2

Curb/Threshold Not Permitted, 29.4.7.3.1

Entry Opening, 29.4.7.3.1

Grab Bars, 29.4.7.3.4

Other Types Acceptable, 29.4.7.2 Table, NOTES 3, 4

Seat, 29.4.7.3.3

When Required, 29.4.1

Spaces Within Room, 29.4.3.2

Storage, 29.4.9

Telephones,

In Guest Rooms, (See COMMUNICATION DEVICES)

Public, (See Chapter 14)

TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES,

Applicability Of Code, 24.1.1

ALTERATIONS:

BUS-

- Passenger Pads, 44.2.1
- Route Identification Signs, 44.2.2

GENERAL-

- Area Of Primary Function, Elements Of, 44.1.3.1
- Key Stations And C.E.O. Responsibilities, NOTE (At Chapter Head)
- Path Of Travel And Disproportionality, 44.1.1.1
 - Applicable To Passenger Services Only, 44.1.1.2
 - Elements Of, 44.1.2.1
- Secondary Services (Newsstands, Etc.), 44.1.1.3

RAIL-

- Accessible Route-Features (E.G. Fare Machines, Signage, Track Crossing, Etc.), 44.3.3.1
- Circulation Path, 44.3.1.1
- Direct Connections, 44.3.3.2
- Entrances (Number Of), 44.3.2.1
- Platform/Vehicle Separations,
 - Automated Guideway Transit (AGT), 44.3.4.3.1
 - New Vehicles/Key Stations, 44.3.4.1.1
 - Operational/Structural Necessity, 44.3.4.4
 - Retrofitted Vehicles/Key Stations, 44.3.4.2.1

NEW CONSTRUCTION:

AIRPORTS-

- Baggage/Retrieval Systems, 24.4.4.2
- Circulation Path, 24.4.1.1
- Entrances, 6.2.1
- Gates, 24.4.4.1
- Text Telephones (TDD), 24.4.5
- Ticketing Areas, 24.4.2
- Security Systems, 24.4.3

BUS-

- Passenger Pads,
 - Accessible Route/Connection To
 - Streets, Walks, Etc., 24.2.2.5
 - Cross Slope, 24.2.2.3
 - Size Of, 24.2.2.2
 - Reduction Of, 24.2.2.4
 - Slope Direction, 24.2.2.3
 - Surface Of, 24.2.2.1
- Route Identification Signs 24.2.4.1
 - Reduced Size Allowed, 24.2.4.1.1
- Schedules, Timetables, Route Maps, 24.2.4.2
- Stops, Site Location, 24.2.1

TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES (cont.)

Shelters,

Accessible Route To/Within, 24.2.3.1

Clear Floor Space,

Size/Location Of, 24.2.3.2

GENERAL-

Clocks,

Characteristics, 24.3.12.3.1

Color Contrast, 24.3.12.3.2

Overhead Location, 24.3.12.3.3

Placement Of, 24.3.12.3.4

Elevators, 15.2.6, 15.2.7, 24.3.4

Public Address Systems In,

General, 24.3.12.1.1

Systems To Accommodate Hearing
Impaired Persons, 24.3.12.2.2

Visual Paging/Notification System,

Required And Visibility Of, 24.3.12.2.1

RAIL-

Baggage Check-In/Retrieval

Clear Floor Space At, 24.3.8.4.1

Security Barriers, 24.3.8.4.2

Boarding/Deboarding Locations, 24.3.11

Circulation Path, 24.3.2

Illumination Of, 24.3.7.4

Detectable Warning, (See PLATFORM EDGES)

Direct Connections, 24.3.6

Escalators,

Facilitate Emergency Egress, 24.3.5.1 NOTE

Width Of, 24.3.5.1

Top/Bottom Treads,

Required To Be Level, 24.3.5.2

Marking Of, 24.3.5.3

Entrances,

Number Of, 24.3.3.1

Signage For, 24.3.3.1.1

Fare Machines,

Bins At, 24.3.8.1.8

Clear Floor Space At, 24.3.8.1.3

Controls And Operating Mechanisms, 24.3.8.1.4

Height Of, 24.3.8.1.5, 24.3.8.1.6

Entry/Exit, 24.3.8.1.2

Instructions For Use Of, 24.3.8.1.7

Location Of, 24.3.8.1.1

Gates,

Bottom Panel, 24.3.8.2.2

Clear Opening, 24.3.8.2.1

Operating Hardware, 24.3.8.2.2

TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES (cont.)

Platform Edges, Detectable Warning On, 24.3.9

Platform/Vehicle Separations,

Automated Guideway Transit (AGT), 24.3.10.3

Commuter, High Speed, Inter-City, Light,
Monorail, Rapid Rail, 24.3.10.2

How Measured, 24.3.10.1

Operational/Structural Necessity, 24.3.10.5

Signage,

Illumination Of, 24.3.7.4

Station Entrance, 24.3.7.1

Station Identification, 24.3.7.2

Route, 24.3.7.3

Text Telephone (TDD), 24.3.12.4

Ticketing Areas, 24.3.8.3

Track Crossing,

Alternate Route Required, 24.3.2.3.3

Finished Surface And Rails, 24.3.2.3.1

Separation From Rails, 24.3.2.3.2

Types, Subject To Code, 24.3.1.1

Definitions, 24.3.1.2

Vehicle Floor Level, (See PLATFORM/VEHICLE SEPARATIONS)

URINALS,

Clear Floor Space At, 11.6.3(3)

Flush Control, 11.6.3(4)

Privacy Screens, Clear Width Between, 11.6.3(3)

Projection From Wall, 11.6.3(2)

Rim Height, 11.6.3(1)

Types, 11.6.3(1)

VEHICULAR WAY, Definition Of, 2.2.40

VISUALLY HANDICAPPED PERSON (N.C. GENERAL STATUTE), Appendix G

WASTE RECEPTACLES, 11.7.3(2)

WATERCLOSETS,

Flush Control, 11.6.1(4), NOTE

Grab Bars At, 11.4.1(4)-11.4.1(5), 11.4.2(4),
11.4.3(4), 39.3.1(1)4, 39.3.1(2)4

Residential Bathroom, Location In, 30.4.4.1.4

Seat,

Applicability, 11.6.1(3)

Contoured, 11.6.1(1)

Height Above Floor, 11.6.1(1),

Spring-Loading Prohibited, 11.6.1(2)

Sidewall-To-Fixture Centerline Dimension, 11.6.1(1) And NOTE

Toilet Paper Dispenser, 11.6.1(5)

WATERCOOLERS, (See DRINKING FOUNTAINS)

WHEELCHAIR LIFT, (See PLATFORM WHEELCHAIR LIFT)

WORK TOPS,

Multi-Family Dwellings, 30.5.4.1

Transient Lodging, 29.4.5.4

Clear Working Width, 30.5.4.1.2

Clear Floor Space At, 30.5.2.1

Extension Under Unit And

Orientation, 30.5.4.1.3

Height Of,

Adjustable, 30.5.4.1.1(1)

Fixed, 30.5.4.1.1(2)

Pull-Out, 30.5.4.1.1(3)

Knee Space, 30.5.4.1.3

Undersurface, 30.5.4.1.5